EUROPEAN AVIATION SAFETY AGENCY
AGENCE EUROPÉENNE DE LA SÉCURITÉ AÉRIENNE
EUROPÄISCHE AGENTUR FÜR FLUGSICHERHEIT

AIR OPERATIONS
COMMERCIAL AIR TRANSPORT

(Aeroplanes and Helicopters)

First issue May 2013

AIR OPS –
Commercial Air Transport

Commission Regulation (EU) No 965/2012 of 05 October 2012
laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures related to air operations pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008
of the European Parliament and of the Council
Initially published on 25.10.2012, Official Journal L 296

+ related EASA Decisions
(AMC&GM)

ED Decision 2012/015/R (GM to Definitions for terms used in Annexes II-V (OPS - Annex I))
ED Decision 2012/016/R (AMC and GM to Part-ARO (OPS - Annex II))
ED Decision 2012/017/R (AMC and GM to Part-ORO (OPS - Annex III))
ED Decision 2012/018/R (AMC and GM to Part-CAT (OPS - Annex IV))
ED Decision 2012/019/R (AMC and GM to Part-SPA (OPS - Annex V))

EUROPEAN AVIATION SAFETY AGENCY
AGENCE EUROPÉENNE DE LA SÉCURITÉ AÉRIENNE
EUROPÄISCHE AGENTUR FÜR FLUGSICHERHEIT

Europe Direct is a service to help you find answers to your questions about the European Union

Freephone number (*)**:**
00 800 6 7 8 9 10 11

(*) Certain mobile telephone operators do not allow access to 00 800 numbers or these calls may be billed.

More information on the European Union is available on the Internet (http://europa.eu).

Cataloguing data can be found at the end of this publication.

Luxembourg: Publications Office of the European Union, 2013

ISBN 978-92-9210-150-3
doi:10.2822/42097

Layout by EASA.

Dear Reader,

We are pleased to confirm that the EASA Technical Publications are becoming more known and also more successful. 2013 starts with two new productions, AIR OPS and Part-21. This AIR OPS version you are looking at contains the first package of all adopted OPS rules in the Technical Publications format. It includes Definitions, Authority Requirements, Organisation Requirements, Commercial Air Transport, and Specific Approvals. The upcoming Annexes that are yet to be adopted will also be published in the Technical Publications format on a CD.

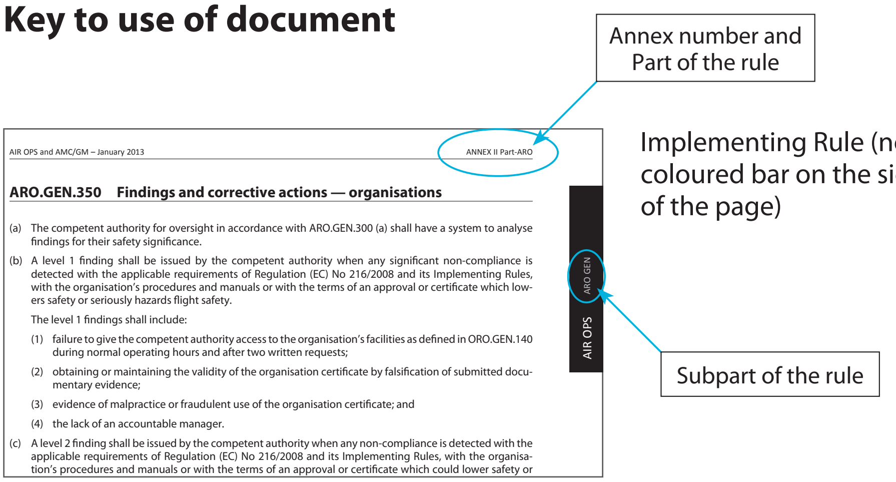
The Agency's 3 other Technical Publications of 2012 — Part-M, Part-145 and Part-66 — are also available for our stakeholders. In 2013 and beyond, there will be additional new Technical Publications in the various technical fields.

Cologne, May 2013

Patrick Goudou
Executive Director, EASA

Disclaimer

Key to use of document



ARO.GEN.350 Findings and corrective actions — organisations

(a) The competent authority for oversight in accordance with ARO.GEN.300 (a) shall have a system to analyse findings for their safety significance.

(b) A level 1 finding shall be issued by the competent authority when any significant non-compliance is detected with the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, with the organisation's procedures and manuals or with the terms of an approval or certificate which lowers safety or seriously hazards flight safety.

The level 1 findings shall include:

(1) failure to give the competent authority access to the organisation's facilities as defined in ORO.GEN.140 during normal operating hours and after two written requests;

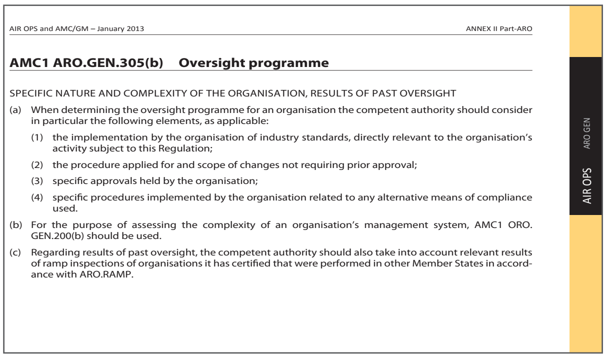
(2) obtaining or maintaining the validity of the organisation certificate by falsification of submitted documentary evidence;

(3) evidence of malpractice or fraudulent use of the organisation certificate; and

(4) the lack of an accountable manager.

(c) A level 2 finding shall be issued by the competent authority when any non-compliance is detected with the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, with the organisation's procedures and manuals or with the terms of an approval or certificate which could lower safety or

Implementing Rule (no coloured bar on the side of the page)



AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight programme

SPECIFIC NATURE AND COMPLEXITY OF THE ORGANISATION, RESULTS OF PAST OVERSIGHT

(a) When determining the oversight programme for an organisation the competent authority should consider in particular the following elements, as applicable:

(1) the implementation by the organisation of industry standards, directly relevant to the organisation's activity subject to this Regulation;

(2) the procedure applied for and scope of changes not requiring prior approval;

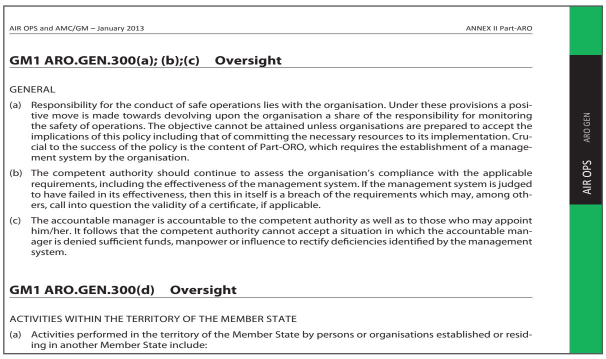
(3) specific approvals held by the organisation;

(4) specific procedures implemented by the organisation related to any alternative means of compliance used.

(b) For the purpose of assessing the complexity of an organisation's management system, AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(b) should be used.

(c) Regarding results of past oversight, the competent authority should also take into account relevant results of ramp inspections of organisations it has certified that were performed in other Member States in accordance with ARO.RAMP.

AMC – Acceptable Means of Compliance [pages with thick yellow bars (light grey)]



GM1 ARO.GEN.300(a); (b);(c) Oversight

GENERAL

(a) Responsibility for the conduct of safe operations lies with the organisation. Under these provisions a positive move is made towards devolving upon the organisation a share of the responsibility for monitoring the safety of operations. The objective cannot be attained unless organisations are prepared to accept the implications of this policy including that of committing the necessary resources to its implementation. Crucial to the success of the policy is the content of Part-ORO, which requires the establishment of a management system by the organisation.

(b) The competent authority should continue to assess the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements, including the effectiveness of the management system. If the management system is judged to have failed in its effectiveness, then this in itself is a breach of the requirements which may, among others, call into question the validity of a certificate, if applicable.

(c) The accountable manager is accountable to the competent authority as well as to those who may appoint him/her. It follows that the competent authority cannot accept a situation in which the accountable manager is denied sufficient funds, manpower or influence to rectify deficiencies identified by the management system.

GM1 ARO.GEN.300(d) Oversight

ACTIVITIES WITHIN THE TERRITORY OF THE MEMBER STATE

(a) Activities performed in the territory of the Member State by persons or organisations established or residing in another Member State include:

GM – Guidance Material [pages with thick green bars (dark grey)]

European Aviation Safety Agency

CONSOLIDATED DOCUMENT OF ANNEX I – DEFINITIONS FOR TERMS USED IN ANNEXES II–V

Implementing Rule, Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material

First edition: May 2013

Contents

Dear Reader 3
Disclaimer 4
Key to use of document 5

ANNEX I
Definitions for terms used in Annexes II-V 9
GM1 Annex I Definitions 16
GM2 Annex I Definitions 17
GM3 Annex I Definitions 25
GM4 Annex I Definitions 25
GM5 Annex I Definitions 25
GM6 Annex I Definitions 25
GM7 Annex I Definitions 25
GM8 Annex I Definitions 25
GM9 Annex I Definitions 26
GM10 Annex I Definitions 26

ANNEX I
Definitions for terms used in Annexes II-V

For the purpose of this Regulation, the following definitions shall apply:

1. 'Accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA)' means the length of the take-off run available plus the length of stopway, if such stopway is declared available by the State of the aerodrome and is capable of bearing the mass of the aeroplane under the prevailing operating conditions.
2. 'Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC)' means non-binding standards adopted by the Agency to illustrate means to establish compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.
3. 'Acceptance checklist' means a document used to assist in carrying out a check on the external appearance of packages of dangerous goods and their associated documents to determine that all appropriate requirements have been met with.
4. 'Adequate aerodrome' means an aerodrome on which the aircraft can be operated, taking account of the applicable performance requirements and runway characteristics.
5. For the purpose of passenger classification:
   (a) 'adult' means a person of an age of 12 years and above;
   (b) 'child/children' means persons who are of an age of two years and above but who are less than 12 years of age;
   (c) 'infant' means a person under the age of two years.
6. 'Aeroplane' means an engine-driven fixed-wing aircraft heavier than air that is supported in flight by the dynamic reaction of the air against its wings.
7. 'Aided night vision imaging system (NVIS) flight' means, in the case of NVIS operations, that portion of a visual flight rules (VFR) flight performed at night when a crew member is using night vision goggles (NVG).
8. 'Aircraft' means a machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air other than the reactions of the air against the earth's surface.
9. 'Alternative means of compliance' mean those means that propose an alternative to an existing Acceptable Means of Compliance or those that propose new means to establish compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules for which no associated AMC have been adopted by the Agency.
10. 'Anti-icing', in the case of ground procedures, means a procedure that provides protection against the formation of frost or ice and accumulation of snow on treated surfaces of the aircraft for a limited period of time (hold-over time).
11. 'Cabin crew member' means an appropriately qualified crew member, other than a flight crew or technical crew member, who is assigned by an operator to perform duties related to the safety of passengers and flight during operations.
12. 'Category I (CAT I) approach operation' means a precision instrument approach and landing using an instrument landing system (ILS), microwave landing system (MLS), GLS (ground-based augmented global navigation satellite system (GNSS/GBAS) landing system), precision approach radar (PAR) or GNSS using a satellite-based augmentation system (SBAS) with a decision height (DH) not lower than 200 ft and with a runway visual range (RVR) not less than 550 m for aeroplanes and 500 m for helicopters.
13. 'Category II (CAT II) operation' means a precision instrument approach and landing operation using ILS or MLS with:
    (a) DH below 200 ft but not lower than 100 ft; and
    (b) RVR of not less than 300 m.
14. 'Category IIIA (CAT IIIA) operation' means a precision instrument approach and landing operation using ILS or MLS with:
    (a) DH lower than 100 ft; and

(b) RVR not less than 200 m.

15. 'Category IIIB (CAT IIIB) operation' means a precision instrument approach and landing operation using ILS or MLS with:

    (a) DH lower than 100 ft, or no DH; and

    (b) RVR lower than 200 m but not less than 75 m.

16. 'Category A with respect to helicopters' means a multi-engined helicopter designed with engine and system isolation features specified in the applicable airworthiness codes and capable of operations using take-off and landing data scheduled under a critical engine failure concept that assures adequate designated surface area and adequate performance capability for continued safe flight or safe rejected take-off in the event of engine failure.

17. 'Category B with respect to helicopters' means a single-engined or multi-engined helicopter that does not meet Category A standards. Category B helicopters have no guaranteed capability to continue safe flight in the event of an engine failure, and unscheduled landing is assumed.

18. 'Certification Specifications' (CS) mean technical standards adopted by the Agency indicating means to show compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules and which can be used by an organisation for the purpose of certification.

19. 'Circling' means the visual phase of an instrument approach to bring an aircraft into position for landing on a runway/FATO that is not suitably located for a straight-in approach.

20. 'Clearway' means a defined rectangular area on the ground or water under the control of the appropriate authority, selected or prepared as a suitable area over which an aeroplane may make a portion of its initial climb to a specified height.

21. 'Cloud base' means the height of the base of the lowest observed or forecast cloud element in the vicinity of an aerodrome or operating site or within a specified area of operations, normally measured above aerodrome elevation or, in the case of offshore operations, above mean sea level.

22. 'Code share' means an arrangement under which an operator places its designator code on a flight operated by another operator, and sells and issues tickets for that flight.

23. 'Congested area' means in relation to a city, town or settlement, any area which is substantially used for residential, commercial or recreational purposes.

24. 'Contaminated runway' means a runway of which more than 25% of the runway surface area within the required length and width being used is covered by the following:

    (a) surface water more than 3 mm (0.125 in) deep, or by slush, or loose snow, equivalent to more than 3 mm (0.125 in) of water;

    (b) snow which has been compressed into a solid mass which resists further compression and will hold together or break into lumps if picked up (compacted snow); or

    (c) ice, including wet ice.

25. 'Contingency fuel' means the fuel required to compensate for unforeseen factors that could have an influence on the fuel consumption to the destination aerodrome.

26. 'Continuous descent final approach (CDFA)' means a technique, consistent with stabilised approach procedures, for flying the final-approach segment of a non-precision instrument approach procedure as a continuous descent, without level-off, from an altitude/height at or above the final approach fix altitude/height to a point approximately 15 m (50 ft) above the landing runway threshold or the point where the flare manoeuvre shall begin for the type of aircraft flown.

27. 'Converted meteorological visibility (CMV)' means a value, equivalent to an RVR, which is derived from the reported meteorological visibility.

28. 'Crew member' means a person assigned by an operator to perform duties on board an aircraft.

29. 'Critical phases of flight' in the case of aeroplanes means the take-off run, the take-off flight path, the final approach, the missed approach, the landing, including the landing roll, and any other phases of flight as determined by the pilot-in-command or commander.

30. 'Critical phases of flight' in the case of helicopters means taxiing, hovering, take-off, final approach, missed approach, the landing and any other phases of flight as determined by the pilot-in-command or commander.

31. 'Damp runway' means a runway where the surface is not dry, but when the moisture on it does not give it a shiny appearance.

32. 'Dangerous goods (DG)' means articles or substances which are capable of posing a risk to health, safety, property or the environment and which are shown in the list of dangerous goods in the Technical Instructions or which are classified according to those Instructions.

33. 'Dangerous goods accident' means an occurrence associated with and related to the transport of dangerous goods by air which results in fatal or serious injury to a person or major property damage.

34. 'Dangerous goods incident' means:

    (a) an occurrence other than a dangerous goods accident associated with and related to the transport of dangerous goods by air, not necessarily occurring on board an aircraft, which results in injury to a person, property damage, fire, breakage, spillage, leakage of fluid or radiation or other evidence that the integrity of the packaging has not been maintained;

    (b) any occurrence relating to the transport of dangerous goods which seriously jeopardises an aircraft or its occupants.

35. 'De-icing', in the case of ground procedures, means a procedure by which frost, ice, snow or slush is removed from an aircraft in order to provide uncontaminated surfaces.

36. 'Defined point after take-off (DPATO)' means the point, within the take-off and initial climb phase, before which the helicopter's ability to continue the flight safely, with the critical engine inoperative, is not assured and a forced landing may be required.

37. 'Defined point before landing (DPBL)' means the point within the approach and landing phase, after which the helicopter's ability to continue the flight safely, with the critical engine inoperative, is not assured and a forced landing may be required.

38. 'Distance DR' means the horizontal distance that the helicopter has travelled from the end of the take-off distance available.

39. 'Dry lease agreement' means an agreement between undertakings pursuant to which the aircraft is operated under the air operator certificate (AOC) of the lessee.

40. 'Dry operating mass' means the total mass of the aircraft ready for a specific type of operation, excluding usable fuel and traffic load.

41. 'Dry runway' means a runway which is neither wet nor contaminated, and includes those paved runways which have been specially prepared with grooves or porous pavement and maintained to retain 'effectively dry' braking action even when moisture is present.

42. 'Elevated final approach and take-off area (elevated FATO)' means a FATO that is at least 3 m above the surrounding surface.

43. 'En-route alternate (ERA) aerodrome' means an adequate aerodrome along the route, which may be required at the planning stage.

44. 'Enhanced vision system (EVS)' means a system to display electronic real-time images of the external scene achieved through the use of imaging sensors.

45. 'Final approach and take-off area (FATO)' means a defined area for helicopter operations, over which the final phase of the approach manoeuvre to hover or land is completed, and from which the take-off manoeuvre is commenced. In the case of helicopters operating in performance class 1, the defined area includes the rejected take-off area available.

46. 'Flight data monitoring (FDM)' means the proactive and non-punitive use of digital flight data from routine operations to improve aviation safety.

47. 'Flight simulation training device (FSTD)' means a training device which is:

    (a) in the case of aeroplanes, a full flight simulator (FFS), a flight training device (FTD), a flight and navigation procedures trainer (FNPT), or a basic instrument training device (BITD);

    (b) in the case of helicopters, a full flight simulator (FFS), a flight training device (FTD) or a flight and navigation procedures trainer (FNPT).

48. 'Fuel ERA aerodrome' means an ERA aerodrome selected for the purpose of reducing contingency fuel.

49. 'GBAS landing system (GLS)' means an approach landing system using ground based augmented global navigation satellite system (GNSS/GBAS) information to provide guidance to the aircraft based on its lateral and vertical GNSS position. It uses geometric altitude reference for its final approach slope.

50. 'Ground emergency service personnel' means any ground emergency service personnel (such as policemen, firemen, etc.) involved with helicopter emergency medical services (HEMSs) and whose tasks are to any extent pertinent to helicopter operations.

51. ‘Grounding’ means the formal prohibition of an aircraft to take-off and the taking of such steps as are necessary to detain it.

52. ‘Head-up display (HUD)’ means a display system which presents flight information to the pilot’s forward external field of view and which does not significantly restrict the external view.

53. ‘Head-up guidance landing system (HUDLS)’ means the total airborne system that provides head-up guidance to the pilot during the approach and landing and/or missed approach procedure. It includes all sensors, computers, power supplies, indications and controls.

54. ‘Helicopter’ means a heavier-than-air aircraft supported in flight chiefly by the reactions of the air on one or more power-driven rotors on substantially vertical axes.

55. ‘Helicopter hoist operation (HHO) crew member’ means a technical crew member who performs assigned duties relating to the operation of a hoist.

56. ‘Helideck’ means a FATO located on a floating or fixed offshore structure.

57. ‘HEMS crew member’ means a technical crew member who is assigned to a HEMS flight for the purpose of attending to any person in need of medical assistance carried in the helicopter and assisting the pilot during the mission.

58. ‘HEMS flight’ means a flight by a helicopter operating under a HEMS approval, the purpose of which is to facilitate emergency medical assistance, where immediate and rapid transportation is essential, by carrying:
    (a) medical personnel;
    (b) medical supplies (equipment, blood, organs, drugs); or
    (c) ill or injured persons and other persons directly involved.

59. ‘HEMS operating base’ means an aerodrome at which the HEMS crew members and the HEMS helicopter may be on stand-by for HEMS operations.

60. ‘HEMS operating site’ means a site selected by the commander during a HEMS flight for helicopter hoist operations, landing and take-off.

61. ‘HHO flight’ means a flight by a helicopter operating under an HHO approval, the purpose of which is to facilitate the transfer of persons and/or cargo by means of a helicopter hoist.

62. ‘HHO offshore’ means a flight by a helicopter operating under an HHO approval, the purpose of which is to facilitate the transfer of persons and/or cargo by means of a helicopter hoist from or to a vessel or structure in a sea area or to the sea itself.

63. ‘HHO passenger’ means a person who is to be transferred by means of a helicopter hoist.

64. ‘HHO site’ means a specified area at which a helicopter performs a hoist transfer.

65. ‘Hold-over time (HoT)’ means the estimated time the anti-icing fluid will prevent the formation of ice and frost and the accumulation of snow on the protected (treated) surfaces of an aeroplane.

66. ‘Hostile environment’ means:
    (a) an environment in which:
        (i) a safe forced landing cannot be accomplished because the surface is inadequate;
        (ii) the helicopter occupants cannot be adequately protected from the elements;
        (iii) search and rescue response/capability is not provided consistent with anticipated exposure; or
        (iv) there is an unacceptable risk of endangering persons or property on the ground.
    (b) in any case, the following areas:
        (i) for overwater operations, the open sea areas North of 45N and South of 45S designated by the authority of the State concerned;
        (ii) those parts of a congested area without adequate safe forced landing areas.

67. ‘Landing decision point (LDP)’ means the point used in determining landing performance from which, an engine failure having been recognised at this point, the landing may be safely continued or a balked landing initiated.

68. ‘Landing distance available (LDA)’ means the length of the runway which is declared available by the State of the aerodrome and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane landing.

69. 'Landplane' means a fixed wing aircraft which is designed for taking off and landing on land and includes amphibians operated as landplanes.

70. 'Local helicopter operation' means a commercial air transport operation of helicopters with a maximum certified take-off mass (MCTOM) over 3 175 kg and a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of nine or less, by day, over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks, conducted within a local and defined geographical area specified in the operations manual.

71. 'Low visibility procedures (LVP)' means procedures applied at an aerodrome for the purpose of ensuring safe operations during lower than Standard Category I, other than Standard Category II, Category II and III approaches and low visibility take-offs.

72. 'Low visibility take-off (LVTO)' means a take-off with an RVR lower than 400 m but not less than 75 m.

73. 'Lower than Standard Category I (LTS CAT I) operation' means a Category I instrument approach and landing operation using Category I DH, with an RVR lower than would normally be associated with the applicable DH but not lower than 400 m.

74. 'Maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC)' means the maximum passenger seating capacity of an individual aircraft, excluding crew seats, established for operational purposes and specified in the operations manual. Taking as a baseline the maximum passenger seating configuration established during the certification process conducted for the type certificate (TC), supplemental type certificate (STC) or change to the TC or STC as relevant to the individual aircraft, the MOPSC may establish an equal or lower number of seats, depending on the operational constraints.

75. 'Medical passenger' means a medical person carried in a helicopter during a HEMS flight, including but not limited to doctors, nurses and paramedics.

76. 'Night' means the period between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight or such other period between sunset and sunrise as may be prescribed by the appropriate authority, as defined by the Member State.

77. 'Night vision goggles (NVG)' means a head-mounted, binocular, light intensification appliance that enhances the ability to maintain visual surface references at night.

78. 'Night vision imaging system (NVIS)' means the integration of all elements required to successfully and safely use NVGs while operating a helicopter. The system includes as a minimum: NVGs, NVIS lighting, helicopter components, training and continuing airworthiness.

79. 'Non-hostile environment' means an environment in which:

    (a) a safe forced landing can be accomplished;

    (b) the helicopter occupants can be protected from the elements; and

    (c) search and rescue response/capability is provided consistent with the anticipated exposure.

    In any case, those parts of a congested area with adequate safe forced landing areas shall be considered non-hostile.

80. 'Non-precision approach (NPA) operation' means an instrument approach with a minimum descent height (MDH), or DH when flying a CDFA technique, not lower than 250 ft and an RVR/CMV of not less than 750 m for aeroplanes and 600 m for helicopters.

81. 'NVIS crew member' means a technical crew member assigned to an NVIS flight.

82. 'NVIS flight' means a flight under night visual meteorological conditions (VMC) with the flight crew using NVGs in a helicopter operating under an NVIS approval.

83. 'Offshore operations' means operations which routinely have a substantial proportion of the flight conducted over sea areas to or from offshore locations.

84. 'Operating site' means a site, other than an aerodrome, selected by the operator or pilot-in-command or commander for landing, take-off and/or external load operations.

85. 'Operation in performance class 1' means an operation that, in the event of failure of the critical engine, the helicopter is able to land within the rejected take-off distance available or safely continue the flight to an appropriate landing area, depending on when the failure occurs.

86. 'Operation in performance class 2' means an operation that, in the event of failure of the critical engine, performance is available to enable the helicopter to safely continue the flight, except when the failure occurs early during the take-off manoeuvre or late in the landing manoeuvre, in which cases a forced landing may be required.

87. 'Operation in performance class 3' means an operation that, in the event of an engine failure at any time during the flight, a forced landing may be required in a multi-engined helicopter and will be required in a single-engined helicopter.

88. 'Operational control' means the responsibility for the initiation, continuation, termination or diversion of a flight in the interest of safety.

89. 'Other than Standard Category II (OTS CAT II) operation' means a precision instrument approach and landing operation using ILS or MLS where some or all of the elements of the precision approach category II light system are not available, and with:

    (a) DH below 200 ft but not lower than 100 ft; and

    (b) RVR of not less than 350 m.

90. 'Performance class A aeroplanes' means multi-engined aeroplanes powered by turbo-propeller engines with an MOPSC of more than nine or a maximum take-off mass exceeding 5 700 kg, and all multi-engined turbo-jet powered aeroplanes.

91. 'Performance class B aeroplanes' means aeroplanes powered by propeller engines with an MOPSC of nine or less and a maximum take-off mass of 5 700 kg or less.

92. 'Performance class C aeroplanes' means aeroplanes powered by reciprocating engines with an MOPSC of more than nine or a maximum take-off mass exceeding 5 700 kg.

93. 'Pilot-in-command' means the pilot designated as being in command and charged with the safe conduct of the flight. For the purpose of commercial air transport operations, the 'pilot-in-command' shall be termed the 'commander'.

94. 'Principal place of business' means the head office or registered office of the organisation within which the principal financial functions and operational control of the activities referred to in this Regulation are exercised.

95. 'Prioritisation of ramp inspections' means the dedication of an appropriate portion of the total number of ramp inspections conducted by or on behalf of a competent authority on an annual basis as provided in Part-ARO.

96. 'Public interest site (PIS)' means a site used exclusively for operations in the public interest.

97. 'Ramp inspection' means the inspection of aircraft, of flight and cabin crew qualifications and of flight documentation in order to verify the compliance with the applicable requirements.

98. 'Rectification interval' means a limitation on the duration of operations with inoperative equipment.

99. 'Rejected take-off distance available (RTODAH)' means the length of the final approach and take-off area declared available and suitable for helicopters operated in performance class 1 to complete a rejected take-off.

100. 'Rejected take-off distance required (RTODRH)' means the horizontal distance required from the start of the take-off to the point where the helicopter comes to a full stop following an engine failure and rejection of the take-off at the take-off decision point.

101. 'Runway visual range (RVR)' means the range over which the pilot of an aircraft on the centre line of a runway can see the runway surface markings or the lights delineating the runway or identifying its centre line.

102. 'Safe forced landing' means an unavoidable landing or ditching with a reasonable expectancy of no injuries to persons in the aircraft or on the surface.

103. 'Seaplane' means a fixed wing aircraft which is designed for taking off and landing on water and includes amphibians operated as seaplanes.

104. 'Separate runways' means runways at the same aerodrome that are separate landing surfaces. These runways may overlay or cross in such a way that if one of the runways is blocked, it will not prevent the planned type of operations on the other runway. Each runway shall have a separate approach procedure based on a separate navigation aid.

105. 'Special VFR flight' means a VFR flight cleared by air traffic control to operate within a control zone in meteorological conditions below VMC.

106. 'Stabilised approach (SAp)' means an approach that is flown in a controlled and appropriate manner in terms of configuration, energy and control of the flight path from a pre-determined point or altitude/height down to a point 50 ft above the threshold or the point where the flare manoeuvre is initiated if higher.

107. 'Take-off alternate aerodrome' means an alternate aerodrome at which an aircraft can land should this become necessary shortly after take-off and if it is not possible to use the aerodrome of departure.

108. 'Take-off decision point (TDP)' means the point used in determining take-off performance from which, an engine failure having been recognised at this point, either a rejected take-off may be made or a take-off safely continued.

109. 'Take-off distance available (TODA)' in the case of aeroplanes means the length of the take-off run available plus the length of the clearway, if provided.

110. 'Take-off distance available (TODAH)' in the case of helicopters means the length of the final approach and take-off area plus, if provided, the length of helicopter clearway declared available and suitable for helicopters to complete the take-off.

111. 'Take-off distance required (TODRH)' in the case of helicopters means the horizontal distance required from the start of the take-off to the point at which take-off safety speed (VTOSS), a selected height and a positive climb gradient are achieved, following failure of the critical engine being recognised at the TDP, the remaining engines operating within approved operating limits.

112. 'Take-off flight path' means the vertical and horizontal path, with the critical engine inoperative, from a specified point in the take-off for aeroplanes to 1 500 ft above the surface and for helicopters to 1 000 ft above the surface.

113. 'Take-off mass' means the mass including everything and everyone carried at the commencement of the take-off for helicopters and take-off run for aeroplanes.

114. 'Take-off run available (TORA)' means the length of runway that is declared available by the State of the aerodrome and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane taking off.

115. 'Technical crew member' means a crew member in commercial air transport HEMS, HHO or NVIS operations other than a flight or cabin crew member, assigned by the operator to duties in the aircraft or on the ground for the purpose of assisting the pilot during HEMS, HHO or NVIS operations, which may require the operation of specialised on-board equipment.

116. 'Technical Instructions (TI)' means the latest effective edition of the *Technical Instructions for the Safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air*, including the Supplement and any Addenda, approved and published by the International Civil Aviation Organisation.

117. 'Traffic load' means the total mass of passengers, baggage, cargo and carry-on specialist equipment, including any ballast.

118. 'Unaided NVIS flight' means, in the case of NVIS operations, that portion of a VFR flight performed at night when a crew member is not using NVG.

119. 'Undertaking' means any natural or legal person, whether profit-making or not, or any official body whether having its own personality or not.

120. 'V1' means the maximum speed in the take-off at which the pilot must take the first action to stop the aeroplane within the accelerate-stop distance. V1 also means the minimum speed in the take-off, following a failure of the critical engine at VEF, at which the pilot can continue the take-off and achieve the required height above the take-off surface within the take-off distance.

121. 'VEF' means the speed at which the critical engine is assumed to fail during take-off.

122. 'Visual approach' means an approach when either part or all of an instrument approach procedure is not completed and the approach is executed with visual reference to the terrain.

123. 'Wet lease agreement' means an agreement between air carriers pursuant to which the aircraft is operated under the AOC of the lessor.

124. 'Wet runway' means a runway of which the surface is covered with water, or equivalent, less than specified by the 'contaminated runway' definition or when there is sufficient moisture on the runway surface to cause it to appear reflective, but without significant areas of standing water.

GM1 Annex I Definitions

DEFINITIONS FOR TERMS USED IN ACCEPTABLE MEANS OF COMPLIANCE AND GUIDANCE MATERIAL

For the purpose of Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material to Regulation (EU) No 965/2012 [air operations], the following definitions should apply:

(a) 'Committal point' means the point in the approach at which the pilot flying decides that, in the event of an engine failure being recognised, the safest option is to continue to the elevated final approach and take-off area (elevated FATO).

(b) 'Emergency locator transmitter' is a generic term describing equipment that broadcasts distinctive signals on designated frequencies and, depending on application, may be activated by impact or may be manually activated.

(c) 'Exposure time' means the actual period during which the performance of the helicopter with the critical engine inoperative in still air does not guarantee a safe forced landing or the safe continuation of the flight.

(d) 'Fail-operational flight control system' means a flight control system with which, in the event of a failure below alert height, the approach, flare and landing can be completed automatically. In the event of a failure, the automatic landing system will operate as a fail-passive system.

(e) 'Fail-operational hybrid landing system' means a system that consists of a primary fail-passive automatic landing system and a secondary independent guidance system enabling the pilot to complete a landing manually after failure of the primary system.

(f) 'Fail-passive flight control system': a flight control system is fail-passive if, in the event of a failure, there is no significant out-of-trim condition or deviation of flight path or attitude but the landing is not completed automatically. For a fail-passive automatic flight control system the pilot assumes control of the aeroplane after a failure.

(g) 'Flight control system' in the context of low visibility operations means a system that includes an automatic landing system and/or a hybrid landing system.

(h) 'HEMS dispatch centre' means a place where, if established, the coordination or control of the helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS) flight takes place. It may be located in a HEMS operating base.

(i) 'Hybrid head-up display landing system (hybrid HUDLS)' means a system that consists of a primary fail-passive automatic landing system and a secondary independent HUD/HUDLS enabling the pilot to complete a landing manually after failure of the primary system.

(j) 'Landing distance available (LDAH)' means the length of the final approach and take-off area plus any additional area declared available by the State of the aerodrome and suitable for helicopters to complete the landing manoeuvre from a defined height.

(k) 'Landing distance required (LDRH)', in the case of helicopters, means the horizontal distance required to land and come to a full stop from a point 15 m (50 ft) above the landing surface.

(l) 'Maximum structural landing mass' means the maximum permissible total aeroplane mass upon landing under normal circumstances.

(m) 'Maximum zero fuel mass' means the maximum permissible mass of an aeroplane with no usable fuel. The mass of the fuel contained in particular tanks should be included in the zero fuel mass when it is explicitly mentioned in the aircraft flight manual.

(n) 'Overpack', for the purpose of transporting dangerous goods, means an enclosure used by a single shipper to contain one or more packages and to form one handling unit for convenience of handling and stowage.

(o) 'Package', for the purpose of transporting dangerous goods, means the complete product of the packing operation consisting of the packaging and its contents prepared for transport.

(p) 'Packaging', for the purpose of transporting dangerous goods, means receptacles and any other components or materials necessary for the receptacle to perform its containment function.

(q) 'Rotation point (RP)' means the point at which a cyclic input is made to initiate a nose-down attitude change during the take-off flight path. It is the last point in the take-off path from which, in the event of an engine failure being recognised, a forced landing on the aerodrome can be achieved.

(r) 'Touch down and lift-off area (TLOF)' means a load-bearing area on which a helicopter may touch down or lift off.

GM2 Annex I Definitions

ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

The following abbreviations and acronyms are used in the Annexes to this Regulation:

A	aeroplane
a/c	aircraft
AAC	aeronautical administrative communications
AAL	above aerodrome level
AC	advisory circular
AC	alternating current
ACAS	airborne collision avoidance system
ADF	automatic direction finder
ADG	air driven generator
ADS	automatic dependent surveillance
ADS-B	automatic dependent surveillance - broadcast
ADS-C	automatic dependent surveillance – contract
AEA	Association of European Airlines
AEO	all-engines-operative
AFFF	aqueous film forming foams
AFM	aircraft flight manual
AFN	aircraft flight notification
AFN	ATS facilities notification
AGL	above ground level
AHRS	attitude heading reference system
AIS	aeronautical information service
ALARP	as low as reasonably practicable
ALSF	approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights
AMC	Acceptable Means of Compliance
AML	aircraft maintenance licence
AMSL	above mean sea level
ANP	actual navigation performance
AOC	aeronautical operational control
AOC	air operator certificate
APU	auxiliary power unit
APV	approach procedure with vertical guidance
ARA	airborne radar approach
ARA	Authority Requirements for Aircrew
ARO	Authority Requirements for Air Operations
ARP	Aerospace Recommended Practices
ASC	Air Safety Committee
ASDA	accelerate-stop distance available
ASE	altimeter system error
ATA	Air Transport Association
ATC	air traffic control
ATIS	automatic terminal information service
ATN	air traffic navigation
ATPL	airline transport pilot licence
ATQP	alternative training and qualification programme
ATS	air traffic services
ATSC	air traffic service communication

AVGAS	aviation gasoline
AVTAG	aviation turbine gasoline (wide-cut fuel)
AWO	all-weather operations
BALS	basic approach lighting system
BCAR	British civil airworthiness requirements
BITD	basic instrument training device
CAP	controller access parameters
CAT	commercial air transport
CAT I/II/III	category I / II / III
CBT	computer-based training
CC	cabin crew
CDFA	continuous descent final approach
CDL	configuration deviation list
CFIT	controlled flight into terrain
CG	centre of gravity
CM	context management
CMV	converted meteorological visibility
CofA	certificate of airworthiness
COP	code of practice
CoR	certificate of registration
CP	committal point
CPA	closest point of approach
CPDLC	controller pilot data link communication
CPL	commercial pilot licence
C-PED	controlled portable electronic device
CRE	class rating examiner
CRI	class rating instructor
CRM	crew resource management
CS	Certification Specifications
CVR	cockpit voice recorder
DA	decision altitude
DA/H	decision altitude/height
DAP	downlinked aircraft parameters
D-ATIS	digital automatic terminal information service
DC	direct current
DCL	departure clearance
D-FIS	data link flight information service
DG	dangerous goods
DH	decision height
DI	daily inspection
DIFF	deck integrated fire fighting system
DLR	data link recorder
DME	distance measuring equipment
D-METAR	data link – meteorological aerodrome report
D-OTIS	data link – operational terminal information service
DPATO	defined point after take-off
DPBL	defined point before landing
DR	decision range
DSTRK	desired track
EC	European Community
ECAC	European Civil Aviation Conference

EFB	electronic flight bag
EFIS	electronic flight instrument system
EGNOS	European geostationary navigation overlay service
EGT	exhaust gas temperature
ELT	emergency locator transmitter
ELT(AD)	emergency locator transmitter (automatically deployable)
ELT(AF)	emergency locator transmitter (automatic fixed)
ELT(AP)	emergency locator transmitter (automatic portable)
ELT(S)	survival emergency locator transmitter
EPE	estimated position of error
EPR	engine pressure ratio
EPU	estimated position of uncertainty
ERA	en-route alternate (aerodrome)
ERP	emergency response plan
ETOPS	extended range operations with two-engined aeroplanes
EU	European Union
EUROCAE	European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment
EVS	enhanced vision system
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAF	final approach fix
FALS	full approach lighting system
FANS	future air navigation systems
FAP	final approach point
FAR	Federal Aviation Regulation
FATO	final approach and take-off
FC	flight crew
FCL	flight crew licensing
FCOM	flight crew operating manual
FDM	flight data monitoring
FDO	flying display operation
FDR	flight data recorder
FFS	full flight simulator
FGS	flight control/guidance system
FI	flight instructor
FLIPCY	flight plan consistency
FLTA	forward-looking terrain avoidance
FMECA	failure mode, effects and criticality analysis
FMS	flight management system
FNPT	flight and navigation procedures trainer
FOD	foreign object damage
fpm	feet per minute
FSTD	flight simulation training device
ft	feet
FTD	flight training device
FTE	full time equivalent
FTL	flight and duty time limitations
g	gram
GAGAN	GPS aided geo augmented navigation
GBAS	ground-based augmentation system
GCAS	ground collision avoidance system
GEN	general

GIDS	ground ice detection system
GLS	GBAS landing system
GM	Guidance Material
GMP	general medical practitioner
GNSS	global navigation satellite system
GPS	global positioning system
GPWS	ground proximity warning system
H	helicopter
HEMS	helicopter emergency medical service
HF	high frequency
Hg	mercury
HHO	helicopter hoist operation
HIALS	high intensity approach lighting system
HIGE	hover in ground effect
HLL	helideck limitations list
HOGE	hover out of ground effect
HoT	hold-over time
hPa	hectopascals
HPL	human performance and limitations
HUD	head-up display
HUDLS	head-up guidance landing system
HUMS	health usage monitor system
IAF	initial approach fix
IALS	intermediate approach lighting system
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
IDE	instruments, data and equipment
IF	intermediate fix
IFR	instrument flight rules
IFSD	in-flight shutdown
IGE	in ground effect
ILS	instrument landing system
IMC	instrument meteorological conditions
in	inches
INS	inertial navigation system
IP	intermediate point
IR	Implementing Rule
IR	instrument rating
IRS	inertial reference system
ISA	international standard atmosphere
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
IV	intravenous
JAA	Joint Aviation Authorities
JAR	Joint Aviation Requirements
kg	kilograms
km	kilometres
kt	knots
LDA	landing distance available
LDP	landing decision point
LED	light-emitting diode
LHS	left hand seat
LIFUS	line flying under supervision

LNAV	lateral navigation
LoA	letter of acceptance
LOC	localiser
LOE	line-oriented evaluation
LOFT	line-oriented flight training
LOQE	line-oriented quality evaluation
LOS	limited obstacle surface
LPV	localiser performance with vertical guidance
LRCS	long range communication system
LRNS	long range navigation system
LVO	low visibility operation
LVP	low visibility procedures
LVTO	low visibility take-off
m	metres
MALS	medium intensity approach lighting system
MALSF	medium intensity approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights
MALSR	medium intensity approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights
MAPt	missed approach point
MCTOM	maximum certified take-off mass
MDA	minimum descent altitude
MDH	minimum descent height
MEA	minimum en-route altitude
MED	medical
MEL	minimum equipment list
METAR	meteorological aerodrome report
MGA	minimum grid altitude
MHA	minimum holding altitude
MHz	megahertz
MID	midpoint
MLR	manuals, logs and records
MLS	microwave landing system
MLX	millilux
mm	millimetres
MM	multi-mode
MMEL	master minimum equipment list
MNPS	minimum navigation performance specifications
MOC	minimum obstacle clearance
MOCA	minimum obstacle clearance altitude
MOPSC	maximum operational passenger seating configuration
MORA	minimum off-route altitude
MPSC	maximum passenger seating capacity
MSA	minimum sector altitude
MSAS	multi-functional satellite augmentation system
MTCA	minimum terrain clearance altitude
N	North
NADP	noise abatement departure procedure
NALS	no approach lighting system
NCC	non-commercial operations with complex motor-powered aircraft
NCO	non-commercial operations with other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft
NF	free power turbine speed
NG	engine gas generator speed

NM	nautical miles
NOTAM	notice to airmen
NOTECHS	non-technical skills evaluation
NOTOC	notification to captain
NPA	non-precision approach
NPA	Notice of Proposed Amendment
NVD	night vision device
NVG	night vision goggles
NVIS	night vision imaging system
OAT	outside air temperature
OCH	obstacle clearance height
OCL	oceanic clearance
ODALS	omnidirectional approach lighting system
OEI	one-engine-inoperative
OFS	obstacle-free surface
OGE	out of ground effect
OIP	offset initiation point
OM	operations manual
OML	operational multi-pilot limitation
ONC	operational navigation chart
OPS	operations
ORO	Organisation Requirements for Air Operations
OTS CAT II	other than standard category II
PAPI	precision approach path indicator
PAR	precision approach radar
PBE	protective breathing equipment
PBN	performance-based navigation
PCDS	personnel carrying device system
PDA	premature descent alert
PDP	predetermined point
PED	portable electronic device
PIC	pilot-in-command
PIN	personal identification number
PIS	public interest site
PNR	point of no return
POH	pilot's operating handbook
PRM	person with reduced mobility
QAR	quick access recorder
QFE	atmospheric pressure at aerodrome elevation / runway threshold
QNH	atmospheric pressure at nautical height
RA	resolution advisory
RAT	ram air turbine
RCC	rescue coordination centre
RCF	reduced contingency fuel
RCLL	runway centre line lights
RF	fixed radius
RF	radio frequency
RFC	route facility chart
RI	ramp inspection
RI	rectification interval
RIE	rectification interval extension

RMA	regional monitoring agency
RNAV	area navigation
RNP	required navigation performance
ROD	rate of descent
RP	rotation point
RTCA	Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics
RTODAH	rejected take-off distance available (helicopters)
RTODRH	rejected take-off distance required (helicopters)
RTOM	reduced take-off mass
RTZL	runway touchdown zone lights
RVR	runway visual range
RVSM	reduced vertical separation minima
S	South
SAFA	safety assessment of foreign aircraft
SALS	simple approach lighting system
SALSF	simple approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights
SAp	stabilised approach
SAP	system access parameters
SAR	search and rescue
SAS	stability augmentation system
SBAS	satellite-based augmentation system
SCC	senior cabin crew
SCP	special category of passenger
SDCM	system of differential correction and monitoring
SFE	synthetic flight examiner
SFI	synthetic flight instructor
SID	standard instrument departure
SMM	safety management manual
SMS	safety management system
SNAS	satellite navigation augmentation system
SOP	standard operating procedure
SPA	operations requiring specific approvals
SPECI	aviation selected special weather report
SPO	specialised operations
SRA	surveillance radar approach
SSALF	simplified short approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights
SSALR	simplified short approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights
SSALS	simplified short approach lighting system
SSEC	static source error correction
SSR	secondary surveillance radar
STAR	standard terminal arrival route
STC	supplemental type certificate
TA	traffic advisory
TAC	terminal approach chart
TAS	true airspeed
TAWS	terrain awareness warning system
TC	technical crew
TC	type certificate
TCAS	traffic collision avoidance system
TCCA	Transport Canada Civil Aviation
TCH	type certificate holder

TDP	take-off decision point
TDZ	touchdown zone
THR	threshold
TI	Technical Instructions
TIT	turbine inlet temperature
TMG	touring motor glider
TODA	take-off distance available (aeroplanes)
TODAH	take-off distance available (helicopters)
TODRH	take-off distance required (helicopters)
TORA	take-off run available
T-PED	transmitting portable electronic device
TRE	type rating examiner
TRI	type rating instructor
TSE	total system error
TVE	total vertical error
TWIP	terminal weather information for pilots
UMS	usage monitoring system
UTC	coordinated universal time
V2	take-off safety speed
V50	stalling speed
VAT	indicated airspeed at threshold
VDF	VHF direction finder
VFR	visual flight rules
VHF	very high frequency
VIS	visibility
VMC	visual meteorological conditions
VMO	maximum operating speed
VNAV	vertical navigation
VOR	VHF omnidirectional radio range
VT	threshold speed
VTOL	vertical take-off and landing
VTOSS	take-off safety speed
WAAS	wide area augmentation system
WAC	world aeronautical chart
WIFI	wireless fidelity
ZFTT	zero flight-time training

GM3 Annex I Definitions

HELICOPTER EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES (HEMS) FLIGHT

(a) A HEMS flight (or more commonly referred to as HEMS mission) normally starts and ends at the HEMS operating base following tasking by the 'HEMS dispatch centre'. Tasking can also occur when airborne, or on the ground at locations other than the HEMS operating base.

(b) The following elements should be regarded as integral parts of the HEMS mission:

(1) flights to and from the HEMS operating site when initiated by the HEMS dispatch centre;

(2) flights to and from an aerodrome/operating site for the delivery or pick-up of medical supplies and/or persons required for completion of the HEMS mission; and

(3) flights to and from an aerodrome/operating site for refuelling required for completion of the HEMS mission.

GM4 Annex I Definitions

HEAD-UP GUIDANCE LANDING SYSTEM (HUDLS)

A HUDLS is typically used for primary approach guidance to decision heights of 50 ft.

GM5 Annex I Definitions

HOSTILE ENVIRONMENT

The open sea areas considered to constitute a hostile environment should be designated by the appropriate authority in the appropriate Aeronautical Information Publication or other suitable documentation.

GM6 Annex I Definitions

NIGHT VISION IMAGING SYSTEM (NVIS)

Helicopter components of the NVIS include the radio altimeter, visual warning system and audio warning system.

GM7 Annex I Definitions

OFFSHORE OPERATIONS

Offshore operations include, but are not limited to, support of offshore oil, gas and mineral exploitation and sea-pilot transfer.

GM8 Annex I Definitions

PUBLIC INTEREST SITE

An example of a public interest sites is a landing site based at a hospital located in a hostile environment in a congested area, which due to its size or obstacle environment does not allow the application of performance class 1 requirements that would otherwise be required for operations in a congested hostile environment.

GM9 Annex I Definitions

TECHNICAL INSTRUCTIONS

The ICAO document number for the Technical Instructions is Doc 9284-AN/905.

GM10 Annex I Definitions

V_1

The first action includes for example: apply brakes, reduce thrust, deploy speed brakes.

European Aviation Safety Agency

CONSOLIDATED DOCUMENT OF ANNEX II – AUTHORITY REQUIREMENTS FOR AIR OPERATIONS – PART-ARO

Implementing Rule, Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material

First edition: May 2013

Contents

ANNEX II — Authority requirements for air operations — [Part-ARO] 5
ARO.GEN.005 Scope 5

SUBPART GEN — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 6
ARO.GEN.115 Oversight documentation.. 6
ARO.GEN.120 Means of compliance 6
AMC1 ARO.GEN.120(d)(3) Means of compliance 7
GM1 ARO.GEN.120 Means of compliance 8
ARO.GEN.125 Information to the Agency 9
ARO.GEN.135 Immediate reaction to a safety problem.. 10
ARO.GEN.200 Management system 11
AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(a) Management system... 12
GM1 ARO.GEN.200(a) Management system.. 13
AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system 14
AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system 14
AMC2 ARO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system 15
GM1 ARO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management System 16
AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(d) Management system.. 18
ARO.GEN.205 Allocation of tasks to qualified entities 19
GM1 ARO.GEN.205 Allocation of tasks to qualified entities 20
ARO.GEN.210 Changes in the management system 21
ARO.GEN.220 Record-keeping.. 22
AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a) Record-keeping.. 23
AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(1);(2);(3) Record-keeping 23
AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(4) Record-keeping 23
GM1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(4) Record-keeping 24
AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(6) Record-keeping 25
GM1 ARO.GEN.220 Record-keeping.. 26
ARO.GEN.300 Oversight 27
AMC1 ARO.GEN.300 (a);(b);(c) Oversight... 28
GM1 ARO.GEN.300(a); (b);(c) Oversight 29
GM1 ARO.GEN.300(d) Oversight 29
ARO.GEN.305 Oversight programme 30
AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight programme 31
AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight programme 32
GM1 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight Programme 33
AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b)(1) Oversight programme.. 34
AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(b)(1) Oversight programme.. 34
AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b);(c) Oversight programme 34
AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(c) Oversight programme... 35
AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(c) Oversight programme... 35
AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(d) Oversight programme 35
ARO.GEN.310 Initial certification procedure — organisations.. 36
AMC1 ARO.GEN.310(a) Initial certification procedure – organisations 37
ARO.GEN.330 Changes — organisations 38
AMC1 ARO.GEN.330 Changes – organisations 39
GM1 ARO.GEN.330 Changes – organisations... 40
ARO.GEN.350 Findings and corrective actions — organisations... 41
GM1 ARO.GEN.350 Findings and corrective actions – organisations... 42
ARO.GEN.355 Findings and enforcement measures — persons 43
GM1 ARO.GEN.355(b) Findings and enforcement measures – persons 44

SUBPART OPS — AIR OPERATIONS 45
ARO.OPS.100 Issue of the air operator certificate 45
ARO.OPS.105 Code-share arrangements 45
AMC1 ARO.OPS.105 Code-share arrangements.. 46
AMC2 ARO.OPS.105 Code-share arrangements.. 46

ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements ... 47
AMC1 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements ... 48
AMC2 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements ... 48
GM1 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements ... 49
GM2 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements ... 49
ARO.OPS.200 Specific approval procedure ... 50
AMC1 ARO.OPS.200 Specific approval procedure ... 51
AMC2 ARO.OPS.200 Specific approval procedure ... 51
ARO.OPS.205 Minimum equipment list approval ... 53
GM1 ARO.OPS.205 Minimum equipment list approval ... 54
ARO.OPS.210 Determination of local area ... 55
GM1 ARO.OPS.210 Determination of local area ... 56
ARO.OPS.215 Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area ... 57
AMC1 ARO.OPS.215 Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area ... 58
AMC2 ARO.OPS.215 Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area ... 58
ARO.OPS.220 Approval of helicopter operations to or from a public interest site ... 59
AMC1 ARO.OPS.220 Approval of helicopter operations to or from a public interest site ... 60
AMC2 ARO.OPS.220 Approval of helicopter operations to or from a public interest site ... 60
ARO.OPS.225 Approval of operations to an isolated aerodrome ... 61
GM1 ARO.OPS.225 Approval of operations to an isolated aerodrome ... 62

SUBPART RAMP — RAMP INSPECTIONS OF AIRCRAFT OF OPERATORS UNDER THE REGULATORY OVERSIGHT OF ANOTHER STATE ... 63

ARO.RAMP.005 Scope ... 63
ARO.RAMP.100 General ... 63
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.100 General ... 64
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.100(b) General ... 64
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.100(c)(1) General ... 65
GM1 ARO.RAMP.100(c)(1) General ... 66
ARO.RAMP.105 Prioritisation criteria ... 67
GM1 ARO.RAMP.105(b)(2)(i) Prioritisation criteria ... 68
ARO.RAMP.110 Collection of information ... 69
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.110 Collection of information ... 70
ARO.RAMP.115 Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 71
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(a) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 72
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(1) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 72
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 73
AMC2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 73
AMC3 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 76
AMC4 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 77
GM1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of inspectors ... 87
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2)(i) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 88
AMC2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2)(i) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 102
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(3) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 110
AMC2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(3) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 110
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 111
GM1 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 112
GM2 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 113
GM3 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors ... 114
ARO.RAMP.120 Approval of training organisations ... 115
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.120 Approval of training organisations ... 116
ARO.RAMP.125 Conduct of ramp inspections ... 117
AMC1 ARO.RAMP.125(b) Conduct of Ramp inspections ... 118
GM1 ARO.RAMP.125(b) Conduct of Ramp inspections ... 119
ARO.RAMP.130 Categorisation of findings ... 120
ARO.RAMP.135 Follow-up actions on findings ... 120

ARO.RAMP.140 Grounding of aircraft 120
ARO.RAMP.145 Reporting 121
ARO.RAMP.150 Agency coordination tasks 121
ARO.RAMP.155 Annual report 122
ARO.RAMP.160 Information to the public and protection of information 122

Appendix I 123

Appendix II 125

Appendix III 128

Appendix IV 130

ANNEX II AUTHORITY REQUIREMENTS FOR AIR OPERATIONS [PART-ARO]

ARO.GEN.005 Scope

This Annex establishes requirements for the administration and management system to be fulfilled by the Agency and Member States for the implementation and enforcement of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules regarding civil aviation air operations.

SUBPART GEN — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section I — General

ARO.GEN.115 Oversight documentation

The competent authority shall provide all legislative acts, standards, rules, technical publications and related documents to relevant personnel in order to allow them to perform their tasks and to discharge their responsibilities.

ARO.GEN.120 Means of compliance

(a) The Agency shall develop Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) that may be used to establish compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules. When the AMC are complied with, the related requirements of the Implementing Rules are met.

(b) Alternative means of compliance may be used to establish compliance with the Implementing Rules.

(c) The competent authority shall establish a system to consistently evaluate that all alternative means of compliance used by itself or by organisations and persons under its oversight allow the establishment of compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.

(d) The competent authority shall evaluate all alternative means of compliance proposed by an organisation in accordance with ORO.GEN.120 (b) by analysing the documentation provided and, if considered necessary, conducting an inspection of the organisation.

When the competent authority finds that the alternative means of compliance are in accordance with the Implementing Rules, it shall without undue delay:

(1) notify the applicant that the alternative means of compliance may be implemented and, if applicable, amend the approval or certificate of the applicant accordingly; and

(2) notify the Agency of their content, including copies of all relevant documentation.

(3) inform other Member States about alternative means of compliance that were accepted.

(e) When the competent authority itself uses alternative means of compliance to achieve compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules it shall:

(1) make them available to all organisations and persons under its oversight; and

(2) without undue delay notify the Agency.

The competent authority shall provide the Agency with a full description of the alternative means of compliance, including any revisions to procedures that may be relevant, as well as an assessment demonstrating that the Implementing Rules are met.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.120(d)(3) Means of compliance

GENERAL

The information to be provided to other Member States following approval of an alternative means of compliance should contain a reference to the Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) to which such means of compliance provides an alternative, as well as a reference to the corresponding Implementing Rule, indicating as applicable the subparagraph(s) covered by the alternative means of compliance.

GM1 ARO.GEN.120 Means of compliance

GENERAL

Alternative means of compliance used by a competent authority or by organisations under its oversight may be used by other competent authorities or organisations only if processed again in accordance with ARO. GEN.120 (d) and (e).

ARO.GEN.125 Information to the Agency

(a) The competent authority shall without undue delay notify the Agency in case of any significant problems with the implementation of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.

(b) The competent authority shall provide the Agency with safety-significant information stemming from the occurrence reports it has received.

ARO.GEN.135 Immediate reaction to a safety problem

(a) Without prejudice to Directive 2003/42/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council the competent authority shall implement a system to appropriately collect, analyse and disseminate safety information.

(b) The Agency shall implement a system to appropriately analyse any relevant safety information received and without undue delay provide to Member States and the Commission any information, including recommendations or corrective actions to be taken, necessary for them to react in a timely manner to a safety problem involving products, parts, appliances, persons or organisations subject to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.

(c) Upon receiving the information referred to in (a) and (b), the competent authority shall take adequate measures to address the safety problem.

(d) Measures taken under (c) shall immediately be notified to all persons or organisations which need to comply with them under Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules. The competent authority shall also notify those measures to the Agency and, when combined action is required, the other Member States concerned.

Section II — Management

ARO.GEN.200 Management system

(a) The competent authority shall establish and maintain a management system, including as a minimum:

(1) documented policies and procedures to describe its organisation, means and methods to achieve compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules. The procedures shall be kept up-to-date and serve as the basic working documents within that competent authority for all related tasks;

(2) a sufficient number of personnel to perform its tasks and discharge its responsibilities. Such personnel shall be qualified to perform their allocated tasks and have the necessary knowledge, experience, initial and recurrent training to ensure continuing competence. A system shall be in place to plan the availability of personnel, in order to ensure the proper completion of all tasks;

(3) adequate facilities and office accommodation to perform the allocated tasks;

(4) a function to monitor compliance of the management system with the relevant requirements and adequacy of the procedures including the establishment of an internal audit process and a safety risk management process. Compliance monitoring shall include a feedback system of audit findings to the senior management of the competent authority to ensure implementation of corrective actions as necessary; and

(5) a person or group of persons, ultimately responsible to the senior management of the competent authority for the compliance monitoring function.

(b) The competent authority shall, for each field of activity, including management system, appoint one or more persons with the overall responsibility for the management of the relevant task(s).

(c) The competent authority shall establish procedures for participation in a mutual exchange of all necessary information and assistance with other competent authorities concerned including on all findings raised and follow-up actions taken as a result of oversight of persons and organisations exercising activities in the territory of a Member State, but certified by the competent authority of another Member State or the Agency.

(d) A copy of the procedures related to the management system and their amendments shall be made available to the Agency for the purpose of standardisation.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(a) Management system

GENERAL

(a) All of the following should be considered when deciding upon the required organisational structure:

(1) the number of certificates, attestations, authorisations and approvals to be issued;

(2) the number of certified persons and organisations exercising an activity within that Member State, including persons or organisations certified by other competent authorities;

(3) the possible use of qualified entities and of resources of other competent authorities to fulfil the continuing oversight obligations;

(4) the level of civil aviation activity in terms of (i) number and complexity of aircraft operated; (ii) size and complexity of the Member State's aviation industry;

(5) the potential growth of activities in the field of civil aviation.

(b) The set-up of the organisational structure should ensure that the various tasks and obligations of the competent authority do not rely solely on individuals. A continuous and undisturbed fulfilment of these tasks and obligations of the competent authority should also be guaranteed in case of illness, accident or leave of individual employees.

GM1 ARO.GEN.200(a) Management system

GENERAL

(a) The competent authority designated by each Member State should be organised in such a way that:

(1) there is specific and effective management authority in the conduct of all relevant activities;

(2) the functions and processes described in the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008[1] and its Implementing Rules and AMCs, Certification Specifications (CSs) and Guidance Material (GM) may be properly implemented;

(3) the competent authority's organisation and operating procedures for the implementation of the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules are properly documented and applied;

(4) all competent authority personnel involved in the related activities are provided with training where necessary;

(5) specific and effective provision is made for the communication and interface as necessary with the Agency and the competent authorities of other Member States; and

(6) all functions related to implementing the applicable requirements are adequately described.

(b) A general policy in respect of activities related to the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules should be developed, promoted and implemented by the manager at the highest appropriate level; for example the manager at the top of the functional area of the competent authority that is responsible for such activities.

(c) Appropriate steps should be taken to ensure that the policy is known and understood by all personnel involved, and all necessary steps should be taken to implement and maintain the policy.

(d) The general policy, whilst also satisfying additional national regulatory responsibilities, should in particular take into account:

(1) the provisions of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008;

(2) the provisions of the applicable Implementing Rules and their AMCs, CSs and GM;

(3) the needs of industry; and

(4) the needs of the Agency and of the competent authority.

(e) The policy should define specific objectives for key elements of the organisation and processes for implementing related activities, including the corresponding control procedures and the measurement of the achieved standard.

[1] Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC. OJ L 79, 19.3.2008, p. 1.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system

DOCUMENTED POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

(a) The various elements of the organisation involved with the activities related to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules should be documented in order to establish a reference source for the establishment and maintenance of this organisation.

(b) The documented procedures should be established in a way that facilitates their use. They should be clearly identified, kept up-to-date and made readily available to all personnel involved in the related activities.

(c) The documented procedures should cover, as a minimum, all of the following aspects:

(1) policy and objectives;

(2) organisational structure;

(3) responsibilities and associated authority;

(4) procedures and processes;

(5) internal and external interfaces;

(6) internal control procedures;

(7) training of personnel;

(8) cross-references to associated documents;

(9) assistance from other competent authorities or the Agency (where required).

(d) It is likely that the information is held in more than one document or series of documents, and suitable cross-referencing should be provided. For example, organisational structure and job descriptions are not usually in the same documentation as the detailed working procedures. In such cases it is recommended that the documented procedures include an index of cross-references to all such other related information, and the related documentation should be readily available when required.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system

QUALIFICATION AND TRAINING – GENERAL

(a) The competent authority should ensure appropriate and adequate training of its personnel to meet the standard that is considered necessary to perform the work. To ensure personnel remain qualified, arrangements should be made for initial and recurrent training as required.

(b) The basic capability of the competent authority's personnel is a matter of recruitment and normal management functions in selection of personnel for particular duties. Moreover, the competent authority should provide training in the basic skills as required for those duties. However, to avoid differences in understanding and interpretation, all personnel should be provided with further training specifically related to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, its Implementing Rules and related AMCs, CSs and GM, as well as related to the assessment of alternative means of compliance.

(c) The competent authority may provide training through its own training organisation with qualified trainers or through another qualified training source.

(d) When training is not provided through an internal training organisation, adequately experienced and qualified persons may act as trainers, provided their training skills have been assessed. If required, an individual training plan should be established covering specific training skills. Records should be kept of such training and of the assessment, as appropriate.

AMC2 ARO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system

QUALIFICATION AND TRAINING – INSPECTORS

(a) Initial training programme:

The initial training programme for inspectors should include, as appropriate to their role, current knowledge, experience and skills in at least all of the following:

(1) aviation legislation organisation and structure;

(2) the Chicago Convention, relevant ICAO annexes and documents;

(3) the applicable requirements and procedures;

(4) management systems, including auditing, risk assessment and reporting techniques;

(5) human factors principles;

(6) rights and obligations of inspecting personnel of the competent authority;

(7) 'on-the-job' training;

(8) suitable technical training appropriate to the role and tasks of the inspector, in particular for those areas requiring approvals.

(b) Recurrent training programme:

The recurrent training programme should reflect, at least, changes in aviation legislation and industry. The programme should also cover the specific needs of the inspectors and the competent authority.

GM1 ARO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management System

SUFFICIENT PERSONNEL

(a) This GM on the determination of the required personnel is limited to the performance of certification and oversight tasks, excluding personnel required to perform tasks subject to any national regulatory requirements.

(b) The elements to be considered when determining required personnel and planning their availability may be divided into quantitative and qualitative elements:

(1) Quantitative elements:

(i) the estimated number of initial certificates to be issued;

(ii) the number of organisations certified by the competent authority;

(iii) the number of persons to whom the competent authority has issued a licence, certificate, rating, authorisation or attestation;

(iv) the estimated number of persons and organisations exercising their activity within the territory of the Member State and established or residing in another Member State.

(2) Qualitative elements:

(i) the size, nature and complexity of activities of certified organisations (cf. AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(b)), taking into account:

(A) privileges of the organisation;

(B) type of approval, scope of approval, multiple certification;

(C) possible certification to industry standards;

(D) types of aircraft / flight simulation training devices (FSTDs) operated;

(E) number of personnel; and

(F) organisational structure, existence of subsidiaries;

(ii) the safety priorities identified;

(iii) the results of past oversight activities, including audits, inspections and reviews, in terms of risks and regulatory compliance, taking into account:

(A) number and level of findings;

(B) timeframe for implementation of corrective actions; and

(C) maturity of management systems implemented by organisations and their ability to effectively manage safety risks, taking into account also information provided by other competent authorities related to activities in the territory of the Member States concerned; and

(iv) the size and complexity of the Member State's aviation industry and the potential growth of activities in the field of civil aviation, which may be an indication of the number of new applications and changes to existing certificates to be expected.

(c) Based on existing data from previous oversight planning cycles and taking into account the situation within the Member State's aviation industry, the competent authority may estimate:

(1) the standard working time required for processing applications for new certificates (for persons and organisations);

(2) the number of new certificates to be issued for each planning period; and

(3) the number of changes to existing certificates to be processed for each planning period.

(d) In line with the competent authority's oversight policy, the following planning data should be determined specifically for each type of organisation certified by the competent authority:

(1) standard number of audits to be performed per oversight planning cycle;

(2) standard duration of each audit;

(3) standard working time for audit preparation, on-site audit, reporting and follow-up, per inspector;

(4) standard number of ramp and unannounced inspections to be performed;

(5) standard duration of inspections, including preparation, reporting and follow-up, per inspector;

(6) minimum number and required qualification of inspectors for each audit/inspection.

(e) Standard working time could be expressed either in working hours per inspector or in working days per inspector. All planning calculations should then be based on the same unit (hours or working days).

(f) It is recommended to use a spreadsheet application to process data defined under (c) and (d), to assist in determining the total number of working hours / days per oversight planning cycle required for certification, oversight and enforcement activities. This application could also serve as a basis for implementing a system for planning the availability of personnel.

(g) For each type of organisation certified by the competent authority the number of working hours / days per planning period for each qualified inspector that may be allocated for certification, oversight and enforcement activities should be determined, taking into account:

(1) purely administrative tasks not directly related to oversight and certification;

(2) training;

(3) participation in other projects;

(4) planned absence; and

(5) the need to include a reserve for unplanned tasks or unforeseeable events.

(h) The determination of working time available for certification, oversight and enforcement activities should also consider:

(1) the possible use of qualified entities; and

(2) possible cooperation with other competent authorities for approvals involving more than one Member State.

(i) Based on the elements listed above, the competent authority should be able to:

(1) monitor dates when audits and inspections are due and when they have been carried out;

(2) implement a system to plan the availability of personnel; and

(3) identify possible gaps between the number and qualification of personnel and the required volume of certification and oversight.

Care should be taken to keep planning data up-to-date in line with changes in the underlying planning assumptions, with particular focus on risk-based oversight principles.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.200(d) Management system

PROCEDURES AVAILABLE TO THE AGENCY

(a) Copies of the procedures related to the competent authority's management system and their amendments to be made available to the Agency for the purpose of standardisation should provide at least the following information:

(1) Regarding continuing oversight functions undertaken by the competent authority, the competent authority's organisational structure with description of the main processes. This information should demonstrate the allocation of responsibilities within the competent authority, and that the competent authority is capable of carrying out the full range of tasks regarding the size and complexity of the Member State's aviation industry. It should also consider overall proficiency and authorisation scope of competent authority personnel.

(2) For personnel involved in oversight activities, the minimum professional qualification requirements and experience and principles guiding appointment (e.g. assessment).

(3) How the following are carried out: assessing applications and evaluating compliance, issuance of certificates, performance of continuing oversight, follow-up of findings, enforcement measures and resolution of safety concerns.

(4) Principles of managing exemptions and derogations.

(5) Processes in place to disseminate applicable safety information for timely reaction to a safety problem.

(6) Criteria for planning continuing oversight (oversight programme), including adequate management of interfaces when conducting continuing oversight (air operations, flight crew licensing, continuing airworthiness management for example).

(7) Outline of the initial training of newly recruited oversight personnel (taking future activities into account), and the basic framework for continuation training of oversight personnel.

(b) As part of the continuous monitoring of a competent authority, the Agency may request details of the working methods used, in addition to the copy of the procedures of the competent authority's management system (and amendments). These additional details are the procedures and related guidance material describing working methods for competent authority personnel conducting oversight.

(c) Information related to the competent authority's management system may be submitted in electronic format.

ARO.GEN.205 Allocation of tasks to qualified entities

(a) Tasks related to the initial certification or continuing oversight of persons or organisations subject to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules shall be allocated by Member States only to qualified entities. When allocating tasks, the competent authority shall ensure that it has:

(1) put a system in place to initially and continuously assess that the qualified entity complies with Annex V to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008.

This system and the results of the assessments shall be documented.

(2) established a documented agreement with the qualified entity, approved by both parties at the appropriate management level, which clearly defines:

(i) the tasks to be performed;

(ii) the declarations, reports and records to be provided;

(iii) the technical conditions to be met in performing such tasks;

(iv) the related liability coverage; and

(v) the protection given to information acquired in carrying out such tasks.

(b) The competent authority shall ensure that the internal audit process and safety risk management process required by ARO.GEN.200 (a) (4) covers all certification or continuing oversight tasks performed on its behalf.

GM1 ARO.GEN.205 Allocation of tasks to qualified entities

CERTIFICATION TASKS

The tasks that may be performed by a qualified entity on behalf of the competent authority include those related to the initial certification and continuing oversight of persons and organisations as defined in this Regulation, with the exclusion of the issuance of certificates, licences, ratings or approvals.

ARO.GEN.210 Changes in the management system

(a) The competent authority shall have a system in place to identify changes that affect its capability to perform its tasks and discharge its responsibilities as defined in Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules. This system shall enable it to take action as appropriate to ensure that its management system remains adequate and effective.

(b) The competent authority shall update its management system to reflect any change to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules in a timely manner, so as to ensure effective implementation.

(c) The competent authority shall notify the Agency of changes affecting its capability to perform its tasks and discharge its responsibilities as defined in Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.

ARO.GEN.220 Record-keeping

(a) The competent authority shall establish a system of record-keeping providing for adequate storage, accessibility and reliable traceability of:

(1) the management system's documented policies and procedures;

(2) training, qualification and authorisation of its personnel;

(3) the allocation of tasks, covering the elements required by ARO.GEN.205 as well as the details of tasks allocated;

(4) certification processes and continuing oversight of certified organisations;

(5) details of training courses provided by certified organisations, and if applicable, records relating to FSTDs used for such training;

(6) oversight of persons and organisations exercising activities within the territory of the Member State, but overseen or certified by the competent authority of another Member State or the Agency, as agreed between these authorities;

(7) the evaluation and notification to the Agency of alternative means of compliance proposed by organisations subject to certification and the assessment of alternative means of compliance used by the competent authority itself;

(8) findings, corrective actions and date of action closure;

(9) enforcement measures taken;

(10) safety information and follow-up measures; and

(11) the use of flexibility provisions in accordance with Article 14 of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008.

(b) The competent authority shall maintain a list of all organisation certificates it issued.

(c) All records shall be kept for the minimum period specified in this Regulation. In the absence of such indication, records shall be kept for a minimum period of 5 years subject to applicable data protection law.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a) Record-keeping

GENERAL

(a) The record-keeping system should ensure that all records are accessible whenever needed within a reasonable time. These records should be organised in a way that ensures traceability and retrievability throughout the required retention period.

(b) Records should be kept in paper form or in electronic format or a combination of both media. Records stored on microfilm or optical disc form are also acceptable. The records should remain legible and accessible throughout the required retention period. The retention period starts when the record has been created.

(c) Paper systems should use robust material, which can withstand normal handling and filing. Computer systems should have at least one backup system, which should be updated within 24 hours of any new entry. Computer systems should include safeguards against unauthorised alteration of data.

(d) All computer hardware used to ensure data backup should be stored in a different location from that containing the working data and in an environment that ensures they remain in good condition. When hardware- or software-changes take place, special care should be taken that all necessary data continue to be accessible at least through the full period specified in the relevant Subpart or by default in ARO. GEN.220 (c).

AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(1);(2);(3) Record-keeping

COMPETENT AUTHORITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

Records related to the competent authority's management system should include, as a minimum and as applicable:

(a) the documented policies and procedures;

(b) the personnel files of competent authority personnel, with supporting documents related to training and qualifications;

(c) the results of the competent authority's internal audit and safety risk management processes, including audit findings and corrective actions; and

(d) the contract(s) established with qualified entities performing certification or oversight tasks on behalf of the competent authority.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(4) Record-keeping

ORGANISATIONS

Records related to an organisation certified by the competent authority should include, as appropriate to the type of organisation:

(a) the application for an organisation approval;

(b) the documentation based on which the approval has been granted and any amendments to that documentation;

(c) the organisation approval certificate including any changes;

(d) a copy of the continuing oversight programme listing the dates when audits are due and when such audits were carried out;

(e) continuing oversight records including all audit and inspection records;

(f) copies of all relevant correspondence;

(g) details of any exemption and enforcement actions;

(h) any report from other competent authorities relating to the oversight of the organisation; and

(i) a copy of any other document approved by the competent authority.

GM1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(4) Record-keeping

ORGANISATIONS – DOCUMENTATION

Documentation to be kept as records in support of the approval include the management system documentation, including any technical manuals, such as the operations manual, and training manual, that have been submitted with the initial application, and any amendments to these documents.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.220(a)(6) Record-keeping

ACTIVITIES PERFORMED IN THE TERRITORY OF A MEMBER STATE BY PERSONS OR ORGANISATIONS ESTABLISHED OR RESIDING IN ANOTHER MEMBER STATE

(a) Records related to the oversight of activities performed in the territory of a Member State by persons or organisations established or residing in another Member State should include, as a minimum:

  (1) oversight records including all audit and inspection records and related correspondence;

  (2) copies of all relevant correspondence to exchange information with other competent authorities relating to the oversight of such persons/organisations;

  (3) details of any enforcement measures and penalties; and

  (4) any report from other competent authorities relating to the oversight of these persons/organisations, including any notification of evidence showing non-compliance with the applicable requirements.

(b) Records should be kept by the competent authority having performed the audit or inspection and should be made available to other competent authorities at least in the following cases:

  (1) serious incidents or accidents;

  (2) findings through the oversight programme where organisations certified by another competent authority are involved, to determine the root cause;

  (3) an organisation being certified or having approvals in several Member States.

(c) When records are requested by another competent authority, the reason for the request should be clearly stated.

(d) The records can be made available by sending a copy or by allowing access to them for consultation.

GM1 ARO.GEN.220 Record-keeping

GENERAL

Records are required to document results achieved or to provide evidence of activities performed. Records become factual when recorded. Therefore, they are not subject to version control. Even when a new record is produced covering the same issue, the previous record remains valid.

Section III — Oversight, Certification And Enforcement

ARO.GEN.300 Oversight

(a) The competent authority shall verify:

(1) compliance with the requirements applicable to organisations prior to the issue of an organisation certificate or approval, as applicable;

(2) continued compliance with the applicable requirements of organisations it has certified;

(3) implementation of appropriate safety measures mandated by the competent authority as defined in ARO.GEN.135 (c) and (d).

(b) This verification shall:

(1) be supported by documentation specifically intended to provide personnel responsible for safety oversight with guidance to perform their functions;

(2) provide the persons and organisations concerned with the results of safety oversight activity;

(3) be based on audits and inspections, including ramp and unannounced inspections; and

(4) provide the competent authority with the evidence needed in case further action is required, including the measures foreseen by ARO.GEN.350 and ARO.GEN.355.

(c) The scope of oversight defined in (a) and (b) shall take into account the results of past oversight activities and the safety priorities.

(d) Without prejudice to the competences of the Member States and to their obligations as set out in ARO.RAMP, the scope of the oversight of activities performed in the territory of a Member State by persons or organisations established or residing in another Member State shall be determined on the basis of the safety priorities, as well as of past oversight activities.

(e) Where the activity of a person or organisation involves more than one Member State or the Agency, the competent authority responsible for the oversight under (a) may agree to have oversight tasks performed by the competent authority(ies) of the Member State(s) where the activity takes place or by the Agency. Any person or organisation subject to such agreement shall be informed of its existence and of its scope.

(f) The competent authority shall collect and process any information deemed useful for oversight, including for ramp and unannounced inspections.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.300 (a);(b);(c) Oversight

GENERAL

(a) The competent authority should assess the organisation and monitor its continued competence to conduct safe operations in compliance with the applicable requirements. The competent authority should ensure that accountability for assessing organisations is clearly defined. This accountability may be delegated or shared, in whole or in part. Where more than one competent authority is involved, a responsible person should be appointed under whose personal authority organisations are assessed.

(b) It is essential that the competent authority has the full capability to adequately assess the continued competence of an organisation by ensuring that the whole range of activities is assessed by appropriately qualified personnel.

GM1 ARO.GEN.300(a); (b);(c) Oversight

GENERAL

(a) Responsibility for the conduct of safe operations lies with the organisation. Under these provisions a positive move is made towards devolving upon the organisation a share of the responsibility for monitoring the safety of operations. The objective cannot be attained unless organisations are prepared to accept the implications of this policy including that of committing the necessary resources to its implementation. Crucial to the success of the policy is the content of Part-ORO, which requires the establishment of a management system by the organisation.

(b) The competent authority should continue to assess the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements, including the effectiveness of the management system. If the management system is judged to have failed in its effectiveness, then this in itself is a breach of the requirements which may, among others, call into question the validity of a certificate, if applicable.

(c) The accountable manager is accountable to the competent authority as well as to those who may appoint him/her. It follows that the competent authority cannot accept a situation in which the accountable manager is denied sufficient funds, manpower or influence to rectify deficiencies identified by the management system.

GM1 ARO.GEN.300(d) Oversight

ACTIVITIES WITHIN THE TERRITORY OF THE MEMBER STATE

(a) Activities performed in the territory of the Member State by persons or organisations established or residing in another Member State include:

   (1) activities of organisations certified by the competent authority of any other Member State or the Agency; and

   (2) activities of persons holding a licence, certificate, rating, or attestation issued by the competent authority of any other Member State.

(b) Audits and inspections of such activities, including ramp and unannounced inspections, should be prioritised towards those areas of greater safety concern, as identified through the analysis of data on safety hazards and their consequences in operations.

ARO.GEN.305 Oversight programme

(a) The competent authority shall establish and maintain an oversight programme covering the oversight activities required by ARO.GEN.300 and by ARO.RAMP.

(b) For organisations certified by the competent authority, the oversight programme shall be developed taking into account the specific nature of the organisation, the complexity of its activities, the results of past certification and/or oversight activities required by ARO.GEN and ARO.RAMP and shall be based on the assessment of associated risks. It shall include within each oversight planning cycle:

(1) audits and inspections, including ramp and unannounced inspections as appropriate; and

(2) meetings convened between the accountable manager and the competent authority to ensure both remain informed of significant issues.

(c) For organisations certified by the competent authority an oversight planning cycle not exceeding 24 months shall be applied.

The oversight planning cycle may be reduced if there is evidence that the safety performance of the organisation has decreased.

The oversight planning cycle may be extended to a maximum of 36 months if the competent authority has established that, during the previous 24 months:

(1) the organisation has demonstrated an effective identification of aviation safety hazards and management of associated risks;

(2) the organisation has continuously demonstrated under ORO.GEN.130 that it has full control over all changes;

(3) no level 1 findings have been issued; and

(4) all corrective actions have been implemented within the time period accepted or extended by the competent authority as defined in ARO.GEN.350 (d)(2).

The oversight planning cycle may be further extended to a maximum of 48 months if, in addition to the above, the organisation has established, and the competent authority has approved, an effective continuous reporting system to the competent authority on the safety performance and regulatory compliance of the organisation itself.

(d) For persons holding a licence, certificate, rating, or attestation issued by the competent authority the oversight programme shall include inspections, including unannounced inspections, as appropriate.

(e) The oversight programme shall include records of the dates when audits, inspections and meetings are due and when such audits, inspections and meetings have been carried out.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight programme

SPECIFIC NATURE AND COMPLEXITY OF THE ORGANISATION, RESULTS OF PAST OVERSIGHT

(a) When determining the oversight programme for an organisation the competent authority should consider in particular the following elements, as applicable:

  (1) the implementation by the organisation of industry standards, directly relevant to the organisation's activity subject to this Regulation;

  (2) the procedure applied for and scope of changes not requiring prior approval;

  (3) specific approvals held by the organisation;

  (4) specific procedures implemented by the organisation related to any alternative means of compliance used.

(b) For the purpose of assessing the complexity of an organisation's management system, AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(b) should be used.

(c) Regarding results of past oversight, the competent authority should also take into account relevant results of ramp inspections of organisations it has certified that were performed in other Member States in accordance with ARO.RAMP.

AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight programme

PROCEDURES FOR OVERSIGHT OF OPERATIONS

(a) Each organisation to which a certificate has been issued should have an inspector specifically assigned to it. Several inspectors should be required for the larger companies with widespread or varied types of operation. This does not prevent a single inspector being assigned to several companies. Where more than one inspector is assigned to an organisation, one of them should be nominated as having overall responsibility for supervision of, and liaison with, the organisation's management, and be responsible for reporting on compliance with the requirements for its operations as a whole.

(b) Audits and inspections, on a scale and frequency appropriate to the operation, should cover at least:

(1) infrastructure,

(2) manuals,

(3) training,

(4) crew records,

(5) equipment,

(6) release of flight/dispatch,

(7) dangerous goods,

(8) organisation's management system.

(c) The following types of inspections should be envisaged, as part of the oversight programme:

(1) flight inspection,

(2) ground inspection (documents and records),

(3) ramp inspection.

The inspection should be a 'deep cut' through the items selected and all findings should be recorded. Inspectors should review the root cause(s) identified by the organisation for each confirmed finding.

Inspectors should be satisfied that the root cause(s) identified and the corrective actions taken are adequate to correct the non-compliance and to prevent re-occurrence.

(d) Audits and inspections may be conducted separately or in combination. Audits and inspections may, at the discretion of the competent authority, be conducted with or without prior notice to the organisation.

(e) Where it is apparent to an inspector that an organisation has permitted a breach of the applicable requirements, with the result that air safety has, or might have, been compromised, the inspector should ensure that the responsible person within the competent authority is informed without delay.

(f) In the first few months of a new operation, inspectors should be particularly alert to any irregular procedures, evidence of inadequate facilities or equipment, or indications that management control of the operation may be ineffective. They should also carefully examine any conditions that may indicate a significant deterioration in the organisation's financial management. When any financial difficulties are identified, inspectors should increase technical surveillance of the operation with particular emphasis on the upholding of safety standards.

(g) The number or the magnitude of the non-compliances identified by the competent authority will serve to support the competent authority's continuing confidence in the organisation's competence or, alternatively, may lead to an erosion of that confidence. In the latter case the competent authority should review any identifiable shortcomings of the management system.

GM1 ARO.GEN.305(b) Oversight Programme

FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Examples of trends that may indicate problems in a new organisation's financial management are:

(a) significant lay-offs or turnover of personnel;

(b) delays in meeting payroll;

(c) reduction of safe operating standards;

(d) decreasing standards of training;

(e) withdrawal of credit by suppliers;

(f) inadequate maintenance of aircraft;

(g) shortage of supplies and spare parts;

(h) curtailment or reduced frequency of revenue flights; and

(i) sale or repossession of aircraft or other major equipment items.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b)(1) Oversight programme

AUDIT

(a) The oversight programme should indicate which aspects of the approval will be covered with each audit.

(b) Part of an audit should concentrate on the organisation's compliance monitoring reports produced by the compliance monitoring personnel to determine if the organisation is identifying and correcting its problems.

(c) At the conclusion of the audit, an audit report should be completed by the auditing inspector, including all findings raised.

AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(b)(1) Oversight programme

RAMP INSPECTIONS

(a) When conducting a ramp inspection of aircraft used by organisations under its regulatory oversight the competent authority should, in as far as possible, comply with the requirements defined in ARO.RAMP.

(b) When conducting ramp inspections on other-than-suspected aircraft, the competent authority should take into account the following elements:

    (1) repeated inspections should be avoided of those organisations for which previous inspections have not revealed safety deficiencies;

    (2) the oversight programme should enable the widest possible sampling rate of aircraft flying into their territory; and

    (3) there should be no discrimination on the basis of the organisation's nationality, the type of operation or type of aircraft, unless such criteria can be linked to an increased risk.

(c) For aircraft other than those used by organisations under its regulatory oversight, when conducting a risk assessment the competent authority should consider aircraft that have not been ramp inspected for more than 6 months.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(b);(c) Oversight programme

INDUSTRY STANDARDS

(a) For organisations having demonstrated compliance with industry standards, the competent authority may adapt its oversight programme, in order to avoid duplication of specific audit items.

(b) Demonstrated compliance with industry standards should not be considered in isolation from the other elements to be considered for the competent authority's risk-based oversight.

(c) In order to be able to credit any audits performed as part of certification in accordance with industry standards, the following should be considered:

    (1) the demonstration of compliance is based on certification auditing schemes providing for independent and systematic verification;

    (2) the existence of an accreditation scheme and accreditation body for certification in accordance with the industry standards has been verified;

    (3) certification audits are relevant to the requirements defined in Annex III (Part-ORO) and other Annexes to this Regulation as applicable;

    (4) the scope of such certification audits can easily be mapped against the scope of oversight in accordance with Annex III (Part-ORO);

    (5) audit results are accessible to the competent authority and open to exchange of information in accordance with Article 15(1) of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008; and

    (6) the audit planning intervals of certification audits i.a.w. industry standards are compatible with the oversight planning cycle.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(c) Oversight programme

OVERSIGHT PLANNING CYCLE

(a) When determining the oversight planning cycle and defining the oversight programme, the competent authority should assess the risks related to the activity of each organisation and adapt the oversight to the level of risk identified and to the organisation's ability to effectively manage safety risks.

(b) The competent authority should establish a schedule of audits and inspections appropriate to each organisation's business. The planning of audits and inspections should take into account the results of the hazard identification and risk assessment conducted and maintained by the organisation as part of the organisation's management system. Inspectors should work in accordance with the schedule provided to them.

(c) When the competent authority, having regard to an organisation's safety performance, varies the frequency of an audit or inspection it should ensure that all aspects of the operation are audited and inspected within the applicable oversight planning cycle.

(d) The section(s) of the oversight programme dealing with ramp inspections should be developed based on geographical locations, taking into account aerodrome activity, and focusing on key issues that can be inspected in the time available without unnecessarily delaying the operations.

AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(c) Oversight programme

OVERSIGHT PLANNING CYCLE

(a) For each organisation certified by the competent authority all processes should be completely audited at periods not exceeding the applicable oversight planning cycle. The beginning of the first oversight planning cycle is normally determined by the date of issue of the first certificate. If the competent authority wishes to align the oversight planning cycle with the calendar year, it should shorten the first oversight planning cycle accordingly.

(b) The interval between two audits for a particular process should not exceed the interval of the applicable oversight planning cycle.

(c) Audits should include at least one on-site audit within each oversight planning cycle. For organisations exercising their regular activity at more than one site, the determination of the sites to be audited should consider the results of past oversight, the volume of activity at each site, as well as main risk areas identified.

(d) For organisations holding more than one certificate, the competent authority may define an integrated oversight schedule to include all applicable audit items. In order to avoid duplication of audits, credit may be granted for specific audit items already completed during the current oversight planning cycle, subject to four conditions:

  (1) the specific audit item should be the same for all certificates under consideration;

  (2) there should be satisfactory evidence on record that such specific audit items were carried out and that all corrective actions have been implemented to the satisfaction of the competent authority;

  (3) the competent authority should be satisfied that there is no reason to believe standards have deteriorated in respect of those specific audit items being granted a credit;

  (4) the interval between two audits for the specific item being granted a credit should not exceed the applicable oversight planning cycle.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.305(d) Oversight programme

PERSONS HOLDING A LICENCE, CERTIFICATE, RATING OR ATTESTATION

The oversight of persons holding a licence, certificate, rating or attestation should normally be ensured as part of the oversight of organisations. Additionally, the competent authority should verify compliance with applicable requirements when endorsing or renewing ratings.

To properly discharge its oversight responsibilities, the competent authority should perform a certain number of unannounced verifications.

ARO.GEN.310 Initial certification procedure — organisations

(a) Upon receiving an application for the initial issue of a certificate for an organisation, the competent authority shall verify the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements. This verification may take into account the statement referred to in ORO.AOC.100 (b).

(b) When satisfied that the organisation is in compliance with the applicable requirements, the competent authority shall issue the certificate(s), as established in Appendices I to II. The certificate(s) shall be issued for an unlimited duration. The privileges and scope of the activities that the organisation is approved to conduct shall be specified in the terms of approval attached to the certificate(s).

(c) To enable an organisation to implement changes without prior competent authority approval in accordance with ORO.GEN.130, the competent authority shall approve the procedure submitted by the organisation defining the scope of such changes and describing how such changes will be managed and notified.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.310(a) Initial certification procedure – organisations

VERIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE

(a) Upon receipt of an application for an air operator certificate (AOC), the competent authority should:

(1) assess the management system and processes, including the operator's organisation and operational control system;

(2) review the operations manual and any other documentation provided by the organisation; and

(3) for the purpose of verifying the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements, conduct an audit at the organisation's facilities. The competent authority may require the conduct of one or more demonstration flights operated as if they were commercial flights.

(b) The competent authority should ensure that the following steps are taken:

(1) The organisation's written application for an AOC should be submitted at least 90 days before the date of intended operation, except that the operations manual may be submitted later, but not less than 60 days before the date of intended operation. The application form should be printed in language(s) of the competent authority's choosing.

(2) An individual should be nominated by the responsible person of the competent authority to oversee, to become the focal point for all aspects of the organisation certification process and to coordinate all necessary activity. The nominated person should be responsible to the responsible person of the competent authority for confirming that all appropriate audits and inspections have been carried out. He/she should also ensure that the necessary specific or prior approvals required by (b)(3) are issued in due course. Of particular importance on initial application is a careful review of the qualifications of the organisations' nominated persons. Account shall be taken of the relevance of the nominee's previous experience and known record.

(3) Submissions that require the competent authority's specific or prior approval should be referred to the appropriate department of the competent authority. Submissions should include, where relevant, the associated qualification requirements and training programmes.

(c) The ability of the applicant to secure, in compliance with the applicable requirements and the safe operation of aircraft, all necessary training and, where required, licensing of personnel, should be assessed. This assessment should also include the areas of responsibility and the numbers of those allocated by the applicant to key management tasks.

(d) In order to verify the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements, the competent authority should conduct an audit of the organisation, including interviews of personnel and inspections carried out at the organisation's facilities.

The competent authority should only conduct such audit after being satisfied that the application shows compliance with the applicable requirements.

(e) The audit should focus on the following areas:

(1) detailed management structure, including names and qualifications of personnel required by ORO.GEN.210 and adequacy of the organisation and management structure;

(2) personnel:

(i) adequacy of number and qualifications with regard to the intended terms of approval and associated privileges;

(ii) validity of licences, ratings, certificates or attestations as applicable;

(3) processes for safety risk management and compliance monitoring;

(4) facilities – adequacy with regard to the organisation's scope of work;

(5) documentation based on which the certificate should be granted (organisation documentation as required by Part-ORO, including technical manuals, such as operations manual or training manual).

(f) In case of non-compliance, the applicant should be informed in writing of the corrections that are required.

(g) When the verification process is complete, the person with overall responsibility, nominated in accordance with (b)(2), should present the application to the person responsible for the issue of an AOC together with a written recommendation and evidence of the result of all investigations or assessments which are required before the operator certificate is issued. Approvals required shall be attached to the recommendation. The competent authority should inform the applicant of its decision concerning the application within 60 days of receipt of all supporting documentation. In cases where an application for an organisation certificate is refused, the applicant should be informed of the right of appeal as exists under national law.

ARO.GEN.330 Changes — organisations

(a) Upon receiving an application for a change that requires prior approval, the competent authority shall verify the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements before issuing the approval.

The competent authority shall prescribe the conditions under which the organisation may operate during the change, unless the competent authority determines that the organisation's certificate needs to be suspended.

When satisfied that the organisation is in compliance with the applicable requirements, the competent authority shall approve the change.

(b) Without prejudice to any additional enforcement measures, when the organisation implements changes requiring prior approval without having received competent authority approval as defined in (a), the competent authority shall suspend, limit or revoke the organisation's certificate.

(c) For changes not requiring prior approval, the competent authority shall assess the information provided in the notification sent by the organisation in accordance with ORO.GEN.130 to verify compliance with the applicable requirements. In case of any non-compliance, the competent authority shall:

(1) notify the organisation about the non-compliance and request further changes;

(2) in case of level 1 or level 2 findings, act in accordance with ARO.GEN.350.

AMC1 ARO.GEN.330 Changes – organisations

GENERAL

(a) Changes in nominated persons:

The competent authority should be informed of any changes to personnel specified in Part-ORO that may affect the certificate or terms of approval/approval schedule attached to it. When an organisation submits the name of a new nominee for any of the persons nominated as per ORO.GEN.210(b), the competent authority should require the organisation to produce a written résumé of the proposed person's qualifications. The competent authority should reserve the right to interview the nominee or call for additional evidence of his/her suitability before deciding upon his/her acceptability.

(b) A simple management system documentation status sheet should be maintained, which contains information on when an amendment was received by the competent authority and when it was approved.

(c) The organisation should provide each management system documentation amendment to the competent authority, including for the amendments that do not require prior approval by the competent authority. Where the amendment requires competent authority approval, the competent authority, when satisfied, should indicate its approval in writing. Where the amendment does not require prior approval, the competent authority should acknowledge receipt in writing within 10 working days.

(d) For changes requiring prior approval, in order to verify the organisation's compliance with the applicable requirements, the competent authority should conduct an audit of the organisation, limited to the extent of the changes. If required for verification, the audit should include interviews and inspections carried out at the organisation's facilities.

GM1 ARO.GEN.330 Changes – organisations

CHANGE OF NAME OF THE ORGANISATION

(a) On receipt of the application and the relevant parts of the organisation's documentation as required by Part-ORO, the competent authority should re-issue the certificate.

(b) A name change alone does not require the competent authority to audit the organisation, unless there is evidence that other aspects of the organisation have changed.

ARO.GEN.350 Findings and corrective actions — organisations

(a) The competent authority for oversight in accordance with ARO.GEN.300 (a) shall have a system to analyse findings for their safety significance.

(b) A level 1 finding shall be issued by the competent authority when any significant non-compliance is detected with the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, with the organisation's procedures and manuals or with the terms of an approval or certificate which lowers safety or seriously hazards flight safety.

The level 1 findings shall include:

(1) failure to give the competent authority access to the organisation's facilities as defined in ORO.GEN.140 during normal operating hours and after two written requests;

(2) obtaining or maintaining the validity of the organisation certificate by falsification of submitted documentary evidence;

(3) evidence of malpractice or fraudulent use of the organisation certificate; and

(4) the lack of an accountable manager.

(c) A level 2 finding shall be issued by the competent authority when any non-compliance is detected with the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, with the organisation's procedures and manuals or with the terms of an approval or certificate which could lower safety or hazard flight safety.

(d) When a finding is detected during oversight or by any other means, the competent authority shall, without prejudice to any additional action required by Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, communicate the finding to the organisation in writing and request corrective action to address the non-compliance(s) identified. Where relevant, the competent authority shall inform the State in which the aircraft is registered.

(1) In the case of level 1 findings the competent authority shall take immediate and appropriate action to prohibit or limit activities, and if appropriate, it shall take action to revoke the certificate or specific approval or to limit or suspend it in whole or in part, depending upon the extent of the level 1 finding, until successful corrective action has been taken by the organisation.

(2) In the case of level 2 findings, the competent authority shall:

(i) grant the organisation a corrective action implementation period appropriate to the nature of the finding that in any case initially shall not be more than 3 months. At the end of this period, and subject to the nature of the finding, the competent authority may extend the 3 month period subject to a satisfactory corrective action plan agreed by the competent authority; and

(ii) assess the corrective action and implementation plan proposed by the organisation and, if the assessment concludes that they are sufficient to address the non-compliance(s), accept these.

(3) Where an organisation fails to submit an acceptable corrective action plan, or to perform the corrective action within the time period accepted or extended by the competent authority, the finding shall be raised to a level 1 finding and action taken as laid down in (d)(1).

(4) The competent authority shall record all findings it has raised or that have been communicated to it and, where applicable, the enforcement measures it has applied, as well as all corrective actions and date of action closure for findings.

(e) Without prejudice to any additional enforcement measures, when the authority of a Member State acting under the provisions of ARO.GEN.300 (d) identifies any non-compliance with the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules by an organisation certified by the competent authority of another Member State or the Agency, it shall inform that competent authority and provide an indication of the level of finding.

GM1 ARO.GEN.350 Findings and corrective actions – organisations

TRAINING

For a level 1 finding it may be necessary for the competent authority to ensure that further training by the organisation is carried out and audited by the competent authority before the activity is resumed, dependent upon the nature of the finding.

ARO.GEN.355 Findings and enforcement measures — persons

(a) If, during oversight or by any other means, evidence is found by the competent authority responsible for oversight in accordance with ARO.GEN.300 (a) that shows a non-compliance with the applicable requirements by a person holding a licence, certificate, rating or attestation issued in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, the competent authority shall act in accordance with ARA.GEN.355 (a) to (d) of Annex VI (Part-ARA) to Commission Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX.

(b) If, during oversight or by any other means, evidence is found showing a non-compliance with the applicable requirements by a person subject to the requirements laid down in Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules and not holding a licence, certificate, rating or attestation issued in accordance with that Regulation and its Implementing Rules, the competent authority that identified the non-compliance shall take any enforcement measures necessary to prevent the continuation of that non-compliance.

GM1 ARO.GEN.355(b) Findings and enforcement measures – persons

GENERAL

This provision is necessary to ensure that enforcement measures will be taken also in cases where the competent authority may not act on the licence, certificate or attestation. The type of enforcement measure will depend on the applicable national law and may include for example the payment of a fine or the prohibition from exercising.

It covers two cases:

(a) persons subject to the requirements laid down in Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules who are not required to hold a licence, certificate or attestation; and

(b) persons who are required to hold a licence, rating, certificate or attestation, but who do not hold the appropriate licence, rating, certificate or attestation as required for the activity they perform.

SUBPART OPS — AIR OPERATIONS

Section I — Certification of commercial air transport operators

ARO.OPS.100 Issue of the air operator certificate

(a) The competent authority shall issue the air operator certificate (AOC) when satisfied that the operator has demonstrated compliance with the elements required in ORO.AOC.100.

(b) The certificate shall include the associated operations specifications.

ARO.OPS.105 Code-share arrangements

In considering the safety of a code-share agreement involving a third-country operator, the competent authority shall:

(1) satisfy itself, following the verification by the operator as set out in ORO.AOC.115, that the third-country operator complies with the applicable ICAO standards;

(2) liaise with the competent authority of the State of the third-country operator as necessary.

AMC1 ARO.OPS.105 Code-share arrangements

SAFETY OF A CODE-SHARE AGREEMENT

(a) When evaluating the safety of a code-share agreement, the competent authority should check that the:

(1) documented information provided by the applicant in accordance with ORO.AOC.115 is complete and shows compliance with the applicable ICAO standards; and

(2) operator has established a code-share audit programme for monitoring continuous compliance of the third country operator with the applicable ICAO standards.

(b) The competent authority should request the applicant to make a declaration covering the above items.

(c) In case of non-compliance the applicant should be informed in writing of the corrections which are required.

AMC2 ARO.OPS.105 Code-share arrangements

AUDITS PERFORMED BY A THIRD PARTY PROVIDER

When audits are performed by a third party provider, the competent authority should verify if the third party provider meets the criteria established in AMC2 ORO.AOC.115(b).

ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements

(a) The competent authority shall approve a lease agreement when satisfied that the operator certified in accordance with Annex III (Part-ORO) complies with:

(1) ORO.AOC.110 (d), for dry leased-in third country aircraft;

(2) ORO.AOC.110 (c), for wet lease-in of an aircraft from a third country operator;

(3) ORO.AOC.110 (e), for dry lease-out of an aircraft to any operator;

(4) relevant requirements of continuing airworthiness and air operations, for dry lease-in of an aircraft registered in the EU and wet lease-in of an aircraft from an EU operator.

(b) The approval of a wet lease-in agreement shall be suspended or revoked whenever:

(1) the AOC of the lessor or lessee is suspended or revoked;

(2) the lessor is subject to an operating ban pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 of the European Parliament and of the Council.

(c) The approval of a dry lease-in agreement shall be suspended or revoked whenever the certificate of airworthiness of the aircraft is suspended or revoked.

(d) When asked for the prior approval of a dry-lease out agreement in accordance with ORO.AOC.110 (e), the competent authority shall ensure:

(1) proper coordination with the competent authority responsible for the continuing oversight of the aircraft, in accordance with Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 , or for the operation of the aircraft, if it is not the same authority;

(2) that the aircraft is timely removed from the operator's AOC.

AMC1 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements

WET LEASE-IN

(a) Before approving a wet lease-in agreement the competent authority of the lessee should assess available reports on ramp inspections performed on aircraft of the lessor.

(b) The competent authority should only approve a wet lease-in agreement if the routes intended to be flown are contained within the authorised areas of operations specified in the AOC of the lessor.

AMC2 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements

SHORT TERM WET LEASE-IN

The competent authority of the lessee may approve third country operators individually or a framework contract with more than one third country operator in anticipation of operational needs or to overcome operational difficulties taking into account the conditions defined in Article 13(3) of Regulation (EC) No 1008/2008.

GM1 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements

APPROVAL

(a) Except for wet lease-out, approval for an EU operator to lease an aircraft of another operator should be issued by the competent authority of the lessee and the competent authority of the lessor.

(b) When an EU operator leases an aircraft of an undertaking or person other than an operator the competent authority of the lessee should issue the approval.

GM2 ARO.OPS.110 Lease agreements

DRY LEASE-OUT

The purpose of the requirement for the competent authority to ensure proper coordination with the authority that is responsible for the oversight of the continuing airworthiness of the aircraft in accordance with Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003[2] is to ensure that appropriate arrangements are in place to allow:

(a) the transfer of regulatory oversight over the aircraft, if relevant; or

(b) continued compliance of the aircraft with the requirements of Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003.

2 OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1.

Section II — Approvals

ARO.OPS.200 Specific approval procedure

(a) Upon receiving an application for the issue of a specific approval or changes thereof, the competent authority shall assess the application in accordance with the relevant requirements of Annex V (Part-SPA) and conduct, where relevant, an appropriate inspection of the operator.

(b) When satisfied that the operator has demonstrated compliance with the applicable requirements, the competent authority shall issue or amend the approval. The approval shall be specified in the operations specifications, as established in Appendix II.

AMC1 ARO.OPS.200 Specific approval procedure

PROCEDURES FOR THE APPROVAL OF CARRIAGE OF DANGEROUS GOODS

When verifying compliance with the applicable requirements of SPA.DG.100, the competent authority should check that:

(a) the procedures specified in the operations manual are sufficient for the safe transport of dangerous goods;

(b) operations personnel are properly trained in accordance with the ICAO Technical Instructions for the Safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air (ICAO Doc 9284-AN/905); and

(c) a reporting scheme is in place.

AMC2 ARO.OPS.200 Specific approval procedure

PROCEDURES FOR THE APPROVAL FOR REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA (RVSM) OPERATIONS

(a) When verifying compliance with the applicable requirements of Subpart D of Annex V (SPA.RVSM), the competent authority should verify that:

(1) each aircraft holds an adequate RVSM airworthiness approval;

(2) procedures for monitoring and reporting height keeping errors have been established;

(3) a training programme for the flight crew involved in these operations has been established; and

(4) operating procedures have been established.

(b) Demonstration flight(s)

The content of the RVSM application may be sufficient to verify the aircraft performance and procedures. However, the final step of the approval process may require a demonstration flight. The competent authority may appoint an inspector for a flight in RVSM airspace to verify that all relevant procedures are applied effectively. If the performance is satisfactory, operation in RVSM airspace may be permitted.

(c) Form of approval documents

Each aircraft group for which the operator is granted approval should be listed in the approval.

(d) Airspace monitoring

For airspace, where a numerical target level of safety is prescribed, monitoring of aircraft height keeping performance in the airspace by an independent height monitoring system is necessary to verify that the prescribed level of safety is being achieved. However, an independent monitoring check of an aircraft is not a prerequisite for the grant of an RVSM approval.

(1) Suspension, revocation and reinstatement of RVSM approval

The incidence of height keeping errors that can be tolerated in an RVSM environment is small. It is expected of each operator to take immediate action to rectify the conditions that cause an error. The operator should report an occurrence involving poor height keeping to the competent authority within 72 hours. The report should include an initial analysis of causal factors and measures taken to prevent repeat occurrences. The need for follow-up reports should be determined by the competent authority. Occurrences that should be reported and investigated are errors of:

(i) total vertical error (TVE) equal to or greater than ±90 m (±300 ft);

(ii) altimeter system error (ASE) equal to or greater than ±75 m (±245 ft); and

(iii) assigned altitude deviation equal to or greater than ±90 m (±300 ft).

Height keeping errors fall into two broad categories:

– errors caused by malfunction of aircraft equipment; and

– operational errors.

(2) An operator that consistently experiences errors in either category should have approval for RVSM operations suspended or revoked. If a problem is identified that is related to one specific aircraft

type, then RVSM approval may be suspended or revoked for that specific type within that operator's fleet.

(3) Operators' actions:

The operator should make an effective, timely response to each height keeping error. The competent authority may consider suspending or revoking RVSM approval if the operator's responses to height keeping errors are not effective or timely. The competent authority should consider the operator's past performance record in determining the action to be taken.

(4) Reinstatement of approval:

The operator should satisfy the competent authority that the causes of height keeping errors are understood and have been eliminated and that the operator's RVSM programmes and procedures are effective. At its discretion and to restore confidence, the competent authority may require an independent height monitoring check of affected aircraft to be performed.

ARO.OPS.205 Minimum equipment list approval

(a) When receiving an application for initial approval of a minimum equipment list (MEL) or an amendment thereof from an operator, the competent authority shall assess each item affected, to verify compliance with the applicable requirements, before issuing the approval.

(b) The competent authority shall approve the operator's procedure for the extension of the applicable rectification intervals B, C and D, if the conditions specified in ORO.MLR.105 (f) are demonstrated by the operator and verified by the competent authority.

(c) The competent authority shall approve, on a case-by-case basis, the operation of an aircraft outside the constraints of the MEL but within the constraints of the master minimum equipment list (MMEL), if the conditions specified in ORO.MLR.105 are demonstrated by the operator and verified by the competent authority.

GM1 ARO.OPS.205 Minimum equipment list approval

EXTENSION OF RECTIFICATION INTERVALS

The competent authority should verify that the operator does not use the extension of rectification intervals as a means to reduce or eliminate the need to rectify MEL defects in accordance with the established category limit. The extension of rectification intervals should only be considered valid and justifiable when events beyond the operator's control have precluded rectification.

ARO.OPS.210 Determination of local area

The competent authority may determine a local area for the purpose of flight crew training and checking requirements.

GM1 ARO.OPS.210 Determination of local area

GENERAL

The local area should reflect the local environment and operating conditions.

ARO.OPS.215 Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

(a) The Member State shall designate those areas where helicopter operations may be conducted without an assured safe forced landing capability, as described in CAT.POL.H.420.

(b) Before issuing the approval referred to in CAT.POL.H.420 the competent authority shall have considered the operator's substantiation precluding the use of the appropriate performance criteria.

AMC1 ARO.OPS.215 Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

APPROVALS THAT REQUIRE ENDORSEMENT

(a) Whenever the operator applies for an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420 for which an endorsement from another State is required, the competent authority should only grant the approval once endorsement of that other State has been received.

(b) The Operations Specification should be amended to include those areas for which endorsement was received.

AMC2 ARO.OPS.215 Approval of helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

ENDORSEMENT BY ANOTHER STATE

(a) Whenever the operator applies for an endorsement to operate over hostile environment located outside a congested area in another State in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420, the competent authority of that other State should only grant the endorsement once it is satisfied that:

(1) the safety risk assessment is appropriate to the area overflown; and

(2) the operator's substantiation that preclude the use of the appropriate performance criteria are appropriate for the area overflown.

(b) The competent authority of that other State should inform the competent authority of the Member State responsible for issuing the approval.

ARO.OPS.220 Approval of helicopter operations to or from a public interest site

The approval referred to in CAT.POL.H.225 shall include a list of the public interest site(s) specified by the operator to which the approval applies.

AMC1 ARO.OPS.220 Approval of helicopter operations to or from a public interest site

APPROVALS THAT REQUIRE ENDORSEMENT

Whenever the operator applies for an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.225 to conduct operations to or from a public interest site (PIS) for which an endorsement from another State is required, the competent authority should only grant such approval once endorsement of that other State has been received.

AMC2 ARO.OPS.220 Approval of helicopter operations to or from a public interest site

ENDORSEMENT BY ANOTHER STATE

(a) Whenever the operator applies for an endorsement to operate to/from a public interest site in another State in accordance with CAT.POL.H.225, the competent authority of that other State should only grant the endorsement once it is satisfied that:

 (1) the conditions of CAT.POL.H.225 (a)(1) through (5) can be met by the operator at those sites for which endorsement is requested; and

 (2) the operations manual includes the procedures to comply with CAT.POL.H.225 (b) for these sites for which endorsement is requested.

(b) The competent authority of that other State should inform the competent authority of the Member State responsible for issuing the approval.

ARO.OPS.225 Approval of operations to an isolated aerodrome

The approval referred to in CAT.OP.MPA.106 shall include a list of the aerodromes specified by the operator to which the approval applies.

GM1 ARO.OPS.225 Approval of operations to an isolated aerodrome

GENERAL

The use of an isolated aerodrome exposes the aircraft and passengers to a greater risk than to operations where a destination alternate aerodrome is available. Whether an aerodrome is classified as an isolated aerodrome or not often depends on which aircraft are used for operating the aerodrome. The competent authority should therefore assess whether all possible means are applied to mitigate the greater risk.

SUBPART RAMP — RAMP INSPECTIONS OF AIRCRAFT OF OPERATORS UNDER THE REGULATORY OVERSIGHT OF ANOTHER STATE

ARO.RAMP.005 Scope

This Subpart establishes the requirements to be followed by the competent authority or the Agency when exercising its tasks and responsibilities regarding the performance of ramp inspections of aircraft used by third country operators or used by operators under the regulatory oversight of another Member State when landed at aerodromes located in the territory subject to the provisions of the Treaty.

ARO.RAMP.100 General

(a) Aircraft, as well as their crew, shall be inspected against the applicable requirements.

(b) In addition to conducting ramp inspections included in its oversight programme established in accordance with ARO.GEN.305, the competent authority shall perform a ramp inspection of an aircraft suspected of not being compliant with the applicable requirements.

(c) Within the development of the oversight programme established in accordance with ARO.GEN.305, the competent authority shall establish an annual programme for the conduct of ramp inspections of aircraft. This programme shall:

(1) be based on a calculation methodology that takes into account historical information on the number and nature of operators and their number of landings at its aerodromes, as well as safety risks; and

(2) enable the competent authority to give priority to the inspections of aircraft on the basis of the list referred to in ARO.RAMP.105 (a).

(d) When it so deems necessary, the Agency, in cooperation with the Member States in whose territory the inspection shall take place, shall conduct ramp inspections of aircraft to verify compliance with the applicable requirements for the purpose of:

(1) certification tasks assigned to the Agency by Regulation (EC) No 216/2008;

(2) standardisation inspections of a Member State; or

(3) inspections of an organisation to verify compliance with the applicable requirements in potentially unsafe situations.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.100 General

RAMP INSPECTIONS

(a) The ramp inspection should normally be performed during a turn-around.

(b) In addition to the applicable requirements, when inspecting the technical condition of the aircraft, it should be checked against the aircraft manufacturer's standard.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.100(b) General

SUSPECTED AIRCRAFT

In determining whether an aircraft is suspected of not being compliant with the applicable requirements the following should be taken into account:

(a) information regarding poor maintenance of, or obvious damage or defects to an aircraft;

(b) reports that an aircraft has performed abnormal manoeuvres that give rise to serious safety concerns in the airspace of a Member State;

(c) a previous ramp inspection that has revealed deficiencies indicating that the aircraft does not comply with the applicable requirements and where the competent authority suspects that these deficiencies have not been corrected;

(d) evidence that the State in which an aircraft is registered is not exercising proper safety oversight; or

(e) concerns about the operator of the aircraft that have arisen from occurrence reporting information and non-compliances recorded in a ramp inspection report on any other aircraft used by that operator.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.100(c)(1) General

ANNUAL PROGRAMME

(a) Calculation methodology

The competent authority should calculate the number of points to be achieved in the following year. The number of points should be submitted to the Agency before the 1st of September prior to the year for which the points apply. For this purpose, the following formula should be used:

$Q = (Opr \geq 12) + (0.2 * Opr < 12) + (0.001 * Lnd)$, where:

'Q' = annual quota;

'Opr≥12' is the number of operators whose aircraft have landed in the previous year at aerodromes located in the Member State at least 12 times;

'Opr<12' is the number of operators whose aircraft have landed in the previous year at aerodromes in the territory of the Member State less than 12 times;

'Lnd' is the number of landings performed by those operators' aircraft at aerodromes located in the Member State in the previous year.

(b) Inspections should be valued differently in accordance with the following criteria:

(1) prioritised ramp inspections and the first inspection of a new operator conducted on an aerodrome located within a radius ≤ 250 km from the competent authority's main office have a value of 1.5 points;

(2) prioritised ramp inspections and the first inspection of a new operator conducted on an aerodrome located within a radius > 250 km from the competent authority's main office have a value of 2.25 points;

(3) inspections conducted between the hours of 20:00 and 06:00 local time, during weekends or national holidays have a value of 1.25 points;

(4) inspections conducted on operators for which the previous inspection was performed more than 8 weeks before have a value of 1.25 points;

(5) any other inspections have a value of 1 point; and

(6) for specific circumstances falling under two or more of the above situations, the above-mentioned factors may be combined by multiplication (e.g. prioritised inspection performed at an airport located at 600 km from the main office, during the weekend on an operator that was not inspected over the last 3 months will have a value of: 2.25 * 1.25 * 1.25 = 3,52 points).

GM1 ARO.RAMP.100(c)(1) General

NUMBER OF INSPECTION POINTS

The quotation is a statistical assumption only and does not necessarily mean that operators in the group 'Opr≥12' always need to be inspected. As deemed necessary by the inspecting authorities, operators may be inspected more than once (taking into account AMC2 ARO.GEN.305(b)(1) whilst sticking to the calculated number of points; as a result, some operators might not be inspected in any given year.

ARO.RAMP.105 Prioritisation criteria

(a) The Agency shall provide competent authorities with a list of operators or aircraft identified as presenting a potential risk, for the prioritisation of ramp inspections.

(b) This list shall include:

(1) operators of aircraft identified on the basis of the analysis of available data in accordance with ARO. RAMP.150 (b)(4);

(2) operators or aircraft communicated to the Agency by the European Commission and identified on the basis of:

(i) an opinion expressed by the Air Safety Committee (ASC) within the context of the implementation of Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 that further verification of effective compliance with relevant safety standards through systematic ramp inspections is necessary; or

(ii) information obtained by the European Commission from the Member States pursuant to Article 4(3) of Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005.

(3) aircraft operated into the territory subject to the provisions of the Treaty by operators included in Annex B of the list of operators subject to an operating ban pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005.

(4) aircraft operated by operators certified in a State exercising regulatory oversight over operators included in the list referred to in (3).

(5) aircraft used by a third-country operator that operates into, within or out of the territory subject to the provisions of the Treaty for the first time or whose authorisation issued in accordance with ART. GEN.205 is limited or reinstated after suspension or revocation.

(c) The list shall be produced, in accordance with procedures established by the Agency, after every update of the Community list of operators subject to an operating ban pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005, and in any case at least once every 4 months.

GM1 ARO.RAMP.105(b)(2)(i) Prioritisation criteria

LIST OF OPERATORS

The list of operators may include aircraft of operators or aircraft that have been withdrawn from the list of air carriers subject to an operating ban within the EU, as established by Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 of the European Parliament and of the Council[3].

[3] OJ L 344, 27.12.2005, p. 15.

ARO.RAMP.110 Collection of information

The competent authority shall collect and process any information deemed useful for conducting ramp inspections.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.110 Collection of information

COLLECTION OF INFORMATION

The information should include:

(a) important safety information available, in particular, through:

(1) pilot reports;

(2) maintenance organisation report;

(3) incident reports;

(4) reports from other organisations, independent from the inspection authorities; and

(5) complaints.

(b) information on action(s) taken subsequent to a ramp inspection, such as:

(1) aircraft grounded;

(2) aircraft or operator banned from a Member State pursuant to Article 6 of Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 or banned from the EU;

(3) corrective action required;

(4) contacts with the operator's competent authority; and

(5) restrictions on flight operations.

(c) follow-up information concerning the operator, such as:

(1) implementation of corrective action(s); and

(2) recurrence of non-compliance.

ARO.RAMP.115 Qualification of ramp inspectors

(a) The competent authority and the Agency shall have qualified inspectors to conduct ramp inspections.

(b) Ramp inspectors shall:

(1) possess the necessary aeronautical education or practical knowledge relevant to their area(s) of inspection;

(2) have successfully completed:

(i) appropriate specific theoretical and practical training, in one or more of the following areas of inspection:

(A) flight deck;

(B) cabin safety;

(C) aircraft condition;

(D) cargo;

(ii) appropriate on-the-job training delivered by a senior ramp inspector appointed by the competent authority or the Agency;

(3) maintain the validity of their qualification by undergoing recurrent training and by performing a minimum of 12 inspections in every 12 month period.

(c) The training in (b)(2)(i) shall be delivered by the competent authority or by any training organisation approved in accordance with ARO.RAMP.120 (a).

(d) The Agency shall develop and maintain training syllabi and promote the organisation of training courses and workshops for inspectors to improve the understanding and uniform implementation of this Subpart.

(e) The Agency shall facilitate and coordinate an inspector exchange programme aimed at allowing inspectors to obtain practical experience and contributing to the harmonisation of procedures.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(a) Qualification of ramp inspectors

BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE AND EXPERIENCE

The background knowledge and/or working experience of the inspector determines the privileges of the inspector. The competent authority should determine what the inspector is entitled to inspect taking into account the following considerations:

(a) background knowledge;

(b) working experience; and

(c) interrelation of the inspection item with other disciplines (e.g. a former cabin crew member may require additional training on minimum equipment list (MEL) issues before being considered eligible for inspection of safety items in the cabin).

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(1) Qualification of ramp inspectors

ELIGIBILITY CRITERIA

(a) The candidate should be considered eligible to become a ramp inspector provided he/she meets the following criteria:

 (1) has good knowledge of the English language; and

 (2) education and experience over the previous 5 years in accordance with one of the following items:

  (i) has successfully completed post-secondary education with a duration of at least 3 years and after that at least 2 years aeronautical experience in the field of aircraft operations or maintenance, or personnel licensing;

  (ii) has or has had a commercial/airline transport pilot licence and preferably carried out such duties for at least 2 years;

  (iii) has or has had a flight engineer licence and preferably carried out such duties for at least 2 years;

  (iv) has been a cabin crew member and preferably carried out such duties in commercial air transport for at least 2 years;

  (v) has been licensed as maintenance personnel and preferably exercised the privileges of such licence for at least 2 years;

  (vi) has successfully completed professional training in the field of air transport of dangerous goods and preferably after that at least 2 year- experience in this field; or

  (vii) has successfully completed post-secondary aeronautical education with a duration of at least 2 years.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors

SENIOR RAMP INSPECTORS

(a) The competent authority should appoint senior ramp inspectors provided they meet the qualification criteria established by that competent authority. These qualification criteria should contain at least the following requirements:

(1) the appointee has been a qualified ramp inspector over the 3 years prior to his/her appointment;

(2) the appointee has performed a minimum of 72 ramp inspections during the 36 months prior to the appointment, evenly spread over this period; and

(3) the senior ramp inspector will remain qualified only if performing at least 24 ramp inspections during any 12 months period after his/her initial qualification.

(b) If the competent authority does not have senior ramp inspectors to conduct on-the-job training, such training should be performed by a senior ramp inspector from another State, either in the competent authority of the trainee or in the competent authority of the senior ramp inspector.

(c) Additional factors to be considered when nominating senior ramp inspectors include knowledge of training techniques, professionalism, maturity, judgment, integrity, safety awareness, communication skills, personal standards of performance and a commitment to quality.

(d) If a senior ramp inspector should lose his/her qualification as a result of failure to reach the minimum number of inspections mentioned in ARO.RAMP.115 (b)(3), he/she should be requalified by the Member State authority by performing at least four inspections under the supervision of a senior ramp inspector, within a maximum period of 2 months.

(e) Senior ramp inspectors, like any other inspectors, should also receive recurrent training according to the frequency mentioned in AMC1-ARO.RAMP.115(b)(3).

AMC2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors

SCOPE AND DURATION OF INITIAL TRAINING

Initial training should encompass:

– initial theoretical training,

– practical training, and

– on-the-job training.

(a) Initial theoretical training

(1) The scope of the initial theoretical training is to familiarise the inspectors with the framework and the European dimension of the Ramp Inspection Programme, and with the common inspection, finding categorisation, reporting and follow-up procedures. The primary scope of the theoretical training is not the transfer of technical (operational, airworthiness, etc.) knowledge. The trainees should possess such knowledge, either from previous work experience or through specialised training, prior to attending the theoretical course. The duration of the initial theoretical training should be no less than 3 training days.

(2) In case an integrated course is delivered (consisting of both the transfer of technical knowledge and specific ramp inspection information), the duration of the course should be extended accordingly.

(3) The initial theoretical training shall be conducted in accordance with the syllabus in AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2)(i).

(b) Practical training

(1) The scope of practical training is to instruct on inspection techniques and specific areas of attention without any interference with the flight crew. Preferably, this should be done in a non-operational environment (e.g. on an aircraft in a maintenance hangar). Alternatively, aircraft with an adequate turnaround time may be used. In the latter case the flight and/or ground crew should be informed about the training character of the inspection.

(2) The duration of the practical training should be no less than 1 training day. The competent authority may decide to lengthen the training based on the level of expertise of the attendees. Practical training may be split into several sessions provided an adequate training tracking system is in place.

(3) The practical training should be conducted in accordance with the syllabus in AMC2-ARO RAMP.115(b)(2)(i).

ON-THE-JOB TRAINING

(c) Scope of on-the-job training

(1) The objective of the on-the-job training should be to familiarise the trainees with the particularities of performing a ramp inspection in a real, operational environment. The competent authority should ensure that on-the-job training is undertaken only by trainees that have successfully completed theoretical and practical training.

(2) The competent authority should ensure that the area of expertise of the trainee is compatible with the one of the senior ramp inspector delivering on-the-job training.

(3) When selecting the operators to be inspected during the on-the-job training programme, the senior ramp inspector should ensure:

(i) that the training can be performed on a sufficient level but without undue hindrance or delay of the inspected operator; and

(ii) that the ramp inspections are conducted on different operators (i.e., EU operators, third country operators), different aircraft types and aircraft configurations (i.e., jet and propeller aircraft, single aisle and wide-body aeroplanes, passenger operations and cargo operations), different types of operations (i.e., commercial operations and general aviation, etc., long-haul and short-haul operations).

(4) On-the-job training should comprise two phases:

(i) observing inspector: during this phase the trainee should accompany and observe the senior ramp inspector when performing a series of ramp inspections (including the preparation of the inspection and post-inspection activities: reporting, follow-up); and

(ii) inspector under supervision: during this phase the trainee should gradually start to perform ramp inspections under the supervision and guidance of the senior ramp inspector.

(d) Duration and conduct of on-the-job training

(1) The duration of the on-the-job training should be customised to the particular training needs of every trainee. As a minimum, the on-the-job training programme should contain at least six observed ramp inspections and six ramp inspections performed under the supervision of the senior ramp inspector, over a period of a maximum of 6 months. In general, on-the-job training should start as soon as possible after the completion of the practical training and cover all inspection items that the inspector will be privileged to inspect.

The on-the-job training may be given by more than one senior ramp inspector. In such cases appropriate records should be maintained for each trainee documenting the training received (when the trainee is observing the inspection) and his/her ability to effectively perform ramp inspections (under supervision). For this purpose, the senior ramp inspector should use a checklist containing the applicable elements presented in GM2 ARO.RAMP.115(c).

(2) Before starting on-the-job training the trainee should be briefed with regard to the general objectives and working methods of the training.

(3) Before every inspection the trainee should be briefed with regard to the particular objectives and lessons to be learned during this inspection.

(4) After every day of inspection the trainee should be debriefed with regard to his/her performance and progress and areas where improvement is needed.

(e) Elements to be covered during the on-the-job training

On-the-job training should address the following elements However, some of the situations described below do not happen very often (i.e. grounding of an aircraft) and should, therefore, be presented by the senior ramp inspector during one of the debriefings.

(1) Preparation of an inspection:

(i) use of the centralised database to prepare an inspection;

(ii) other sources of information (such as passenger complaints, maintenance organisation reports, air traffic control (ATC) reports;

(iii) areas of concern and/or open findings;

(iv) retrieval of updated reference materials: Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs), navigation and weather charts;

(v) selection of operator(s) to be inspected (oversight programme, priority list);

(vi) task allocation among members of a ramp inspection team; and

(vii) daily/weekly/monthly ramp inspection schedule.

(2) Administrative issues:

(i) ramp inspector's credentials, rights and obligations;

(ii) special urgency procedures (if any);

(iii) national (local) aerodrome access procedures;

(iv) safety and security airside procedures; and

(v) ramp inspector kit (electric torch, fluorescent vest, ear plugs, digital camera, checklists, etc.).

(3) Cooperation with airport and air navigation services to obtain actual flight information, parking position, time of departure, etc.

(4) Ramp inspection:

(i) introduction to the pilot-in-command/commander, flight crew, cabin crew, ground crew;

(ii) inspection items: according to the area of expertise of the trainee;

(iii) findings (identification, categorisation, reporting, evidencing);

(iv) corrective actions – class 2;

(v) corrective actions – class 3:

(A) Class 3a) enforcement of restriction(s) on aircraft flight operations (cooperation with other services/authorities to enforce a restriction);

(B) Class 3b) request of an immediate corrective action(s), satisfactory completion of an immediate corrective action;

(C) Class 3c) grounding of an aircraft: notification of the grounding decision to the aircraft commander; national procedures to prevent the departure of a grounded aircraft; communication with the State of operator/registry;

(vi) Proof of Inspection:

(A) completion and delivery of the Proof of Inspection report; and

(B) request of acknowledgement of receipt (document or a refusal to sign)

(5) Human factors elements:

(i) cultural aspects;

(ii) resolution of disagreements and/or conflicts; and

(iii) crew stress.

(f) Assessment of trainees

The assessment of the trainee should be done by the senior ramp inspector while the trainee is performing ramp inspections under supervision. The trainee should be considered to have successfully completed the on-the-job training only after demonstrating to the senior ramp inspector that he/she possess the professional capacity, knowledge, judgment and ability to perform ramp inspections in accordance with the requirements of this Subpart.

AMC3 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors

QUALIFICATION OF THE INSPECTOR AFTER SUCCESSFUL COMPLETION OF TRAINING

Qualification of the inspector after successful completion of training

(a) Successful completion of theoretical training should be demonstrated by passing an evaluation by the competent authority or by the approved training organisation.

(b) Successful completion of practical and on–the-job training should be assessed by the senior ramp inspector providing on-the-job training, through evaluation of the trainee's ability to effectively perform ramp inspections in an operational environment.

(c) The competent authority should issue a formal qualification statement for each qualified inspector listing the inspecting privileges.

(d) The background knowledge and working experience of the inspector should determine the privileges of the inspector (the scope of his/her inspection; what he/she is entitled to inspect). The numerous varieties in backgrounds of the candidate inspectors make it impossible to issue a full set of templates showing the background-privileges relation. It is, therefore, up to the competent authority to determine the eligibility and the related privileges for the inspector, whereby the following should be considered:

(1) background knowledge;

(2) working experience; and

(3) interrelation of the inspection item with other disciplines (e.g. former cabin crew member may require additional training on MEL issues before being considered eligible for safety items in the cabin).

(e) The competent authority should issue the qualification statement only after the candidate has successfully completed the theoretical, practical and on-the-job-training.

(f) The competent authority should put in place a system that will ensure that their inspectors meet at all times the qualification criteria with regard to eligibility, training and recent experience.

AMC4 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of ramp inspectors

CHECKLIST ON-THE-JOB TRAINING OF INSPECTORS

On-the-Job Training of Ramp Inspection Inspectors		
Competent Authority	Senior ramp inspector:	
Name of trainee:	Place:	
Date:	Ramp Inspection Number:	
Operator:	A/C Registration:	A/C Type:

A	**Flight deck**	**Check: (Description/ notes)**	**Observation**	**Under Supervision**
General				
1	**General condition**	• inappropriately pulled circuit breakers • reinforced flight crew compartment door, if required • crew baggage • flight crew seats • emergency exits (serviceability) • escape ropes (secured or not)	❑	❑
		Note:		
2	**Emergency exit**	• Are exits serviceable (if not, check MEL limitations) • Possible obstacles	❑	❑
		Note:		
3	**Equipment**	ACAS/TCAS II: • Presence • System test/passed 8.33 kHz: (if required) • Radio channel spacing RNAV: • Authorisation to perform operations in RNAV airspace. GPWS/TAWS: • presence • TAWS/SRPBZ for forward looking terrain avoidance function • System test (if possible) MNPS • Special authorisation	❑	❑
		Note:		
Documentation				
4	**Manuals**	• Presence of the applicable parts of the operations manual • Up-to-date • Competent authority approval where applicable content (complies with the requirements) • Presence of aircraft flight manual / performance data • Differences regarding manuals of aircraft of ex-Soviet design (e.g. Rukowodstwo.	❑	❑
		Note:		

5	**Checklists**	• Available/within reach • Tidiness/cleanness • Normal • Abnormal • Emergency • Up-to-date/not for training, etc. • Content (compliance with the operator procedures) • Appropriate for aircraft configuration being used	❏	❏
		Note:		
6	**Radio navigation/ instrument charts**	• Presence of instrument approach charts (available/within reach/ up-to-date) • Presence of en-route charts (available/within reach/up-to-date) • Route covering	❏	❏
		Note:		
7	**Minimum equipment list**	• Availability/within reach • Up-to-date/less restrictive than MMEL • Does content reflect aircraft's equipment • Possible deferred defects/ accordance with instructions • Possible use of MMEL • Rukowodstwo (check when possible)	❏	❏
		Note:		
8	**Certificate of registration**	• On-board • Accuracy (Reg. mark, A/C type and S/N) • Format • English translation when needed • Identification plate (S/N)	❏	❏
		Note:		
9	**Noise certificate**	• On-board • Approval (state of registry)	❏	❏
		Note:		
10	**AOC or equivalent**	• Accuracy • Content (operator identification, validity, date of issue, A/C type, OPS SPECS)	❏	❏
		Note:		
11	**Radio licence**	• On-board • Accuracy with installed equipment	❏	❏
		Note:		
12	**Certificate of airworthiness (C of A)**	• On-board (original or certified true copy) • Accuracy • Validity	❏	❏
		Note:		

Flight data				
13	**Flight preparation**	• Operational flight plan on board • Proper filling • Signed by pilot-in-command/commander (and where applicable, Dispatch) • Fuel calcaulation • Fuel monitoring/management • NOTAMs • Updated meteorological information • Letter Y in flight plan	❑	❑
		Note:		
14	**Mass and balance calculation**	• On-board • Accuracy (calculations/ limits) • Pilots acceptance • Load and trim sheet/ actual load distribution	❑	❑
		Note:		
Safety equipment				
15	**Hand fire extinguishers**	• On-board • Condition/pressure indicator • Mounting (secured) • Expiry date (if any) • Access • Sufficient number	❑	❑
		Note:		
16	**Life jackets/flotation devices**	• On-board • Access/within reach • Condition • Expiry date (where applicable) • Sufficient number	❑	❑
		Note:		
17	**Harness**	• On-board (no seatbelt) • Condition • Sufficient number (one for each crew member)	❑	❑
		Note:		
18	**Oxygen equipment**	• On-board • Condition • Cylinder pressure (minimum acc. to operations manual) • Ask crew to perform the operational function check of combined oxygen and communication system • Follow practice of the flight crew	❑	❑
		Note:		
19	**Independent Portable light**	• On-board • Appropriate quantities • Condition • Serviceability • Access/within reach • The need for an independent portable light (departure or arrival at night time)	❑	❑
		Note:		

Flight crew				
20	**Flight crew licence/ composition**	• On-board • Form/content/English translation when needed • Validity • Ratings (appropriate type) (pilot-in-command (PIC)/ATPL) • Pilots' age • Possible difference with ICAO Annex 1 (concerning the age of pilots) • In case of validation (all documents needed) • Medical assessment/ check interval • Spare eye glasses if applicable	❑	❑
		Note:		
Journey log book / Technical log or equivalent				
21	**Journey log book or equivalent**	• On-board • Content • Filling (carefully and properly)	❑	❑
		Note:		
22	**Maintenance release**	• Validity • When need of maintenance, technical log has been complied with • When ETOPS, requirement are met • Signed off • Verify that maintenance release has not expired • Ex-Soviet built A/C	❑	❑
		Note:		
23	**Defect notification and rectification**	• Number of deferred defects • All defects been notified • Defect deferments include time limits and comply with the stated time limits • All the defects are notified • Technical log markings (should be understandable by captain) • Ex-Soviet built A/C	❑	❑
		Note:		
24	**Pre-flight inspection**	• Performed (inbound/ outbound flight) • Signed off	❑	❑
		Note:		
B	**Cabin Safety**			
1	**General internal condition**	• General condition • Possible loose carpets • Possible loose or damaged floor panels • Possible loose or damaged wall panels • Seats • Markings of unserviceable seats • Lavatories • Lavatory smoke detectors • Safety and survival equipment (shall be reliable, readily accessible and easily identified. Instructions for operation shall be clearly marked) • Possible obstacles to perform normal and abnormal duties	❑	❑
		Note:		

2	**Cabin crew stations and crew rest area**	• Presence of cabin crew seats and compliance with the requirement • Sufficient number • Condition (seatbelt, harness) • Emergency equipment (independent portable light, fire extinguishers, portable breathing equipment …) • Cabin preparation list	❑	❑
		Note:		
3	**First-aid kit/ emergency medical kit**	• On-board • Condition • Expiry date • Location (as indicated) • Identification • Adequacy • Access • Operating instructions (clear)	❑	❑
		Note:		
4	**Hand fire extinguishers**	• On-board • Condition (pressure indicator) • Expiry date (if available) • Mounting and access • Number	❑	❑
		Note:		
5	**Life jackets/ flotation devices**	• On-board • Easy access • Condition • Expiry dates as applicable • Sufficient number • Infant vest	❑	❑
		Note:		
6	**Seat belt and seat condition**	• On-board • Sufficient number • Condition • Availability of extension belts • Cabin seats (verify the condition) • If unserviceable check U/S-tag. • Restraint bars	❑	❑
		Note:		
7	**Emergency exit, lightning and marking, independent portable light**	• Emergency exits (condition) • Emergency exit signs/ presence (condition) • Operation instructions (markings and passenger emergency briefing cards) • Floor path markings (ask to switch on). Possible malfunction/MEL • Lighting • Independent Portable light and batteries (condition) • Sufficient number of Independent Portable light (night operations) • Availability on each cabin attendant's station.	❑	❑
		Note:		

8	**Slides/life-rafts (as required), ELT**	• Slides on-board • Condition • Expiry date • Sufficient number • Location and mounting • Bottle pressure gauge • ELT on board • ELT (condition and date)	❑	❑
		Note:		
9	**Oxygen supply (cabin crew and passengers)**	• Presence • Sufficient quantity of masks (cabin crew and passengers) • Drop-out panels are free to fall • Passenger instructions (passenger emergency briefing cards) • Portable cylinder supply and medical oxygen, check pressure and mounting	❑	❑
		Note:		
10	**Safety instructions**	• On-board • Tidiness • Accuracy/content (A/C type) • Sufficient numbers (passenger emergency briefing card for each passenger) • Cards for flight crew (check emergency equipment locations)	❑	❑
		Note:		
11	**Cabin crew members**	• General overview of cabin crew (conditions) • The sufficient number of cabin crew (appropriate) • How the duty stations are manned • Follow practice of the cabin crew • When refuelling with passengers on-board check procedures	❑	❑
		Note:		
12	**Access to emergency exits**	• Access areas • Possible obstacles for evacuation (foldable jump seat or seat backrest table)	❑	❑
		Note:		
13	**Stowage of passenger baggage**	• Hand baggage storages in cabin • Size of hand baggage • Quantity of hand baggage • Weight of hand baggage • Placed under seat (restraint bar)	❑	❑
		Note:		
14	**Seat capacity**	• Number of passengers/ permitted • Sufficient seat capacity	❑	❑
		Note:		

C	Aircraft condition			
1	**General external condition**	• Radom (latches/painting) • Windshields • Wipers • Static ports/areas • AoA probes • Pitot tubes • TAT probe • Crew oxygen discharge indicator (if exist) • Ground power connection (condition) • Wings (general condition, ice/snow contamination) • Fairings • Leading edge (dents) • Winglets • Trailing edge/static dischargers • Look for hydraulic leaks • Look for fuel leak • Fuselage • Tail section/static dischargers • APU cooling air inlet • APU exhaust air/surge • Look at APU area for leaks • Tail bumper (contact markings) • Maintenance and service panels (water/waste/ hydraulic maintenance panels/refuel panels/ cargo door control panel/RAT door) • Cabin windows • Exterior lights • Painting (condition) • Cleanliness • Markings/operational instructions and registration • Obvious repairs • Obvious damage	❑	❑
		Note:		
2	**Doors and hatches**	• Passenger doors (condition) • Emergency exits (condition) • Cargo doors (condition) • Avionics compartment doors (condition) • Accessory compartment doors (condition) • Operation instructions of all doors • Lubrications of all doors • Door seals • Handles	❑	❑
		Note:		
3	**Flight controls**	• Ailerons (condition) • Slats/Krueger flaps/Notch flap (condition) • Spoiler panels (condition) • Flaps/track fairings (condition) • Rudder (condition) • Elevators (condition) • Stabiliser (condition) *Note! Check for leaks, flap drooping, wearing, corrosion, disbonding, dents, loose fittings and obvious damages.*	❑	❑
		Note:		

4	**Wheels, tyres and brakes**	• Wheels (assy condition, bolts and paint markings) • Tires (condition and pressure). Check for cuts, groove cracks, worn out shoulders, blister, bulges, flat spots) • Worn tire areas (measure the tread depth) • If cuts measure depth • Brakes (condition, wearing pins) • Measure and familiarise length of the pin/check for the limits.	❑	❑
		Note:		
5	**Undercarriage**	• Landing gear/hinges (general condition/leaks) • Struts • Locking mechanisms • Hydraulic (or pneumatic) lines (condition) • Strut pressure (visual check/piston length) • Lubrication • Electric lines and plugs. • Bonding • Cleanliness • FOD (foreign object damage) • Surface (plasma) and paintings • Check for corrosion • Placards and markings (nitrogen pressure table) • Dampers and bogie cylinders (check for leaks) • Landing gear strut doors *Use independent portable light and mirror*	❑	❑
		Note:		
6	**Wheel well**	• General condition (structures) • Possible corrosion • Cleanliness • Installations (wiring, piping, hoses, hydraulic containers and devices) • Check for leaks • Wheel well doors (hinges) • Check for maintenance safety pins	❑	❑
		Note:		
7	**Powerplant and pylon**	• Air intake ring (general condition/inner skin and acoustic panels) • Engine cowlings (panels aligned, handles aligned, vortex generators/access doors) • Intake area fasteners • Sensors • Thrust reverses (ring and inner doors or thrust reverser doors) • Reverser duct inner skin and acoustic panels • Outlet guide vanes (from behind/reverser duct) • Exhaust barrel (inner and outer skin) • Drain mast/leaks • Pylons (sealants, panels, doors and blow-out-doors, possible leaks)	❑	❑
		Note:		

8	**Fan blades, propellers, rotors (main/tail)**	• Fan blades: general condition (check for foreign object damage, cracks, nicks, cuts, corrosion and erosion) • Fan blade: o Leading edge o Mid-span shroud (no stacked) o Tip o Contour surface o Root area o platform *Note! Wait until rotation stop! Use independent portable light and mirror for the backside of the blades.* • Spinner (damages/bolts) • Fan outlet vanes (thorough the fan) • FOD (foreign object damage) • Split fairing • Blades (general condition) • Tip and mid area (75% from root) • (Check for nicks, dents, cracks, leakages and …) • Hub/spinner • Looseness of blades in hub	❑	❑
		Note:		
9	**Obvious repairs**	• During the inspection of C-items notify unusual design and repairs obviously not carried out in accordance with the applicable AMM/SRM	❑	❑
		Note:		
10	**Obvious unrepaired damages**	• During the inspection of C-items notify unassessed and unrecorded damages and corrosion (lightning strike, bird strikes, FODs, etc.) • Check damage charts	❑	❑
		Note:		
11	**Leakage**	• During the inspection of C-items notify all the leaks: • Fuel leaks • Hydraulic leaks • Toilet liquid leaks • When leak: measure the leak rate and check the leak rates from AMM etc. if it is allowable and within normal operation limits or not. • Wear eye protection and use proper inspection gears for inspection	❑	❑
		Note:		
D	**Cargo**			
1	**General condition of cargo compartment**	• Cleanliness • Lightning • Fire protection/detection/ extinguishing systems and smoke detectors • Floor panels • Wall panels/markings • Blow-out-panels • Ceilings • Wall and ceiling panel sealants • Cargo nets/door nets • Fire extinguishers • Cargo roller and driving system and control panel	❑	❑
		Note:		

2	**Dangerous goods**	• Operations manual/ information required by ICAO Annex 18 • Technical Instructions (ICAO Doc. 9284-AN/905) are applied If dangerous goods on-board: • Pilots' notification • Stowing of dangerous goods cargo • Packaging (condition, leaks, damage) • Labelling If leak or damage of dangerous goods cargo: • Condition of other cargo • Follow removal • Follow cleaning of contamination.	❑	❑
		Note:		
3	**Secure stowage of cargo**	• Load distribution (floor limits, pallets and containers/maximum gross weight) • Flight kit/spare wheel/ ladders (secured) • Cargo (secured) • Condition and presence of: • Lockers • Restraints • Pallets • Nets • Straps • Containers • Container locks on the floor • Heavy items securing inside containers	❑	❑
		Note:		
E	**General**			
1	**General**	**Note:**	❑	❑

Additional elements (O) observed/performed (P) during On the Job Training	
(Please List)	
Assessment	
- **Was the inspection carried out in a satisfactory manner regarding:**	
- **preparation of the inspection**	❑ **Yes** ❑ **No** (provide further details below*)
- **ramp inspection**	❑ **Yes** ❑ **No** (provide further details below*)
- **proof of inspection**	❑ **Yes** ❑ **No** (provide further details below*)
- **human factors elements**	❑ **Yes** ❑ **No** (provide further details below*)
- **Further training needed:**	
Additional Remarks:*	
Signature of the trainee:	**Signature of the senior ramp inspector:**

GM1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) Qualification of inspectors

PRIVILEGES OF EXPERIENCED INSPECTORS

(a) The following example shows the typical privileges of an experienced commercial pilot licence/airline transport pilot licence (CPL/ATPL) holder and of an experienced aircraft maintenance engineer:

Example:

Typical inspection privileges of a CPL/ATPL holder could include the following inspection checklist items in Appendices III and IV of this section:

A items

B Items

C items

D1/D3 items

Typical inspection privileges of an aircraft maintenance licence (AML) holder could include the following inspection checklist items:

A items except for A3, A4, A5, A6, A13, A14, A20

B items except for B11, B14

C items

D1 items

(b) The competent authority may decide to enlarge the privileges of the inspector if the basic knowledge of the inspector has been satisfactory enlarged by additional theoretical trainings and/or practical trainings. This may require the subsequent following of the relevant module of the ramp inspection training in order to obtain the necessary knowledge to exercise that new privilege. As an example: if an AML holder has acquired knowledge on the operational items of the “A” section (flight crew compartment items) of the checklist (e.g. because he/she obtained his/her CPL), the privileges may be expanded. He/she should be required, however, to receive the theoretical, practical and on-the-job training on how to inspect those new items. Considering that the inspector is already qualified, the OJT could:

(1) be performed in a class room environment using various (representative) examples when no aircraft is required for the training. E.g.: normally the interaction with the flight crew is part of the OJT. However, if the inspector is privileged on other A-items on the checklist and therefore familiar with interviewing the flight crew in the flight crew compartment, the OJT of inspection items A13 and A14 could be done in a classroom; or

(2) be limited in terms of number of inspections depending on the number of new inspection items to be trained; the minimum number of OJT inspections as described in AMC2-ARO.RAMP 115(b)(2) point (d)(1) does not apply since the number of 6 observer and 6 supervised inspections is aiming at a 50 % average coverage of all inspection items during these inspections. For the limited OJT, the number of inspections should be reasonable and should be determined by the senior inspector whereby the new items should be inspected at least 3 times as an observer and 3 times under supervision.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2)(i) Qualification of ramp inspectors

SYLLABUS OF THEORETICAL KNOWLEDGE FOR RAMP INSPECTORS − INITIAL (THEORETICAL) TRAINING COURSE

- Module (GEN): GENERAL OVERVIEW (legal)
- Module (A): Flight crew compartment inspection items
- Module (B): Cabin safety inspection items
- Module (C): Aircraft condition inspection items
- Module (D): Cargo inspection items

MODULE (GEN) **a. OVERVIEW OF THE SAFETY ASSESSMENT OF AIRCRAFT**	
i. Introduction • The Ramp Inspection Programme Overview • Role and responsibilities of the Agency – Overview ii. **The EU Ramp Inspection programme** – ICAO basic references • ICAO convention • Annex 1 – Personnel Licensing • Annex 6 – Operations of Aircraft • Annex 8 – Airworthiness of Aircraft – Main features • Application by all participating States • Dissemination of inspection results • Bottom-up approach • Focused attention • Compliance with ICAO standards iii. Principles of the EU Ramp Inspection Programme • EU Member State Role • States on safety assessment of foreign aircraft (SAFA) working arrangements with the Agency • Common procedures and common reporting format • The centralised data base – introduction • The legal obligation to inspect iv. **The European Commission** • Role and responsibility • Legislative power v. The European Aviation Safety Agency • Role and responsibilities • The executive tasks • Collection of inspection reports • Maintenance of the centralised database • Analysis of relevant information • Reporting to European Commission and Member States • Advising the European Commission and Member States on follow-up actions • Developing training programmes and fostering the organisation and implementation of training courses and workshops vi. EU and non-EU Member States • Role and responsibilities • EU Member States • Non-EU States that have signed the Working Arrangement vii. Eurocontrol • Role and responsibilities viii. **The Air Safety Committee – (ASC**) • Role and responsibilities • Representation of EU Member States • Legislative advisory role ix. **The European SAFA Steering Expert Group – (ESSG**) • **Role and responsibilities** • **Representation of EU Member States and non-EU Member States** technical advisory role	Objectives: 1. Trainees should know the background of the EU Ramp Inspection Programme 2. Trainees should be able to identify the main elements of the Programme 3. Trainees should understand the role of ramp inspections in the general safety oversight context

b. THE EU ramp inspection programme's legal framework	
i. Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 *Scope and relevance* ii. Regulation (EC) No 474/2006[4] and subsequent amendments *Scope and relevance* • Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 – General overview • Article 10 – oversight and enforcement	Objectives: 1. Trainees should fully understand the legal instruments of the Programme 2. Trainees should be able to identify the stakeholders and their responsibilities 3. Trainees should be capable to define the relationship between the Ramp Inspection Programme and the EU List of Banned air carriers

[4] Commission Regulation (EC) No 474/2006 of 22 March 2006 establishing the Community list of air carriers which are subject to an operating ban within the Community referred to in Chapter II of Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 of the European Parliament and of the Council (Text with EEA relevance), As last amended by Commission Regulation (EC) No 619/2009 of 13 July 2009, OJ L 182, 15.7.2009, p. 4–24.

c. The ICAO framework	
i. International Requirements • The Chicago Convention – general overview • The ICAO general overview • The Convention – key ramp inspection-related Articles • Article 11 – Applicability of air regulations • Article 12 – Rules of the air • Article 16 – Search of aircraft • Article 29 – Documents carried on aircraft • Article 30 – Aircraft radio equipment • Article 31 – Certificate of airworthiness • Article 32 – Licences of personnel • Article 33 – Recognition of certificates and licences • Article 37 – Adoption of international standards and recommended practices • Article 38 – Departures from international standards and procedures • Article 83 *bis* – Transfer of certain functions and duties ii. Ramp inspection (RI) and ICAO – Annex 7 (Aircraft Nationality and Registration Marks) – Overview • The Certificate of Registration • Example of Certificate of Registration • The identification plate iii. RI and ICAO – Annex 8 (Airworthiness of Aircraft) – Overview • Validity of the Certificate of Airworthiness • Standard form of Certificate of Airworthiness • Emergency exits, markings and lights • Safety and survival equipment iv. RI and ICAO – Annex 1 (Personnel Licensing) – Overview • General rules concerning licenses v. RI and ICAO – Annex 6 (Operation of Aircraft) – Overview • Part I, International commercial air transport aeroplanes • Part II, International general aviation aeroplanes • Part III, International operations helicopter vi. RI and ICAO – Annex 16 (Environmental Protection) – Overview • Noise Certificate (applicability to SAFA programme) **RI and ICAO – Annex 18 (The Safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air)** • Overview • Dangerous goods Technical Instructions for the safe transport of dangerous goods by air (Doc 9284) **RI and ICAO Doc 7030 (Regional Supplementary procedures)** • Overview • Applicability	Objectives: 1. Trainees should be able to outline ICAO's role and responsibilities within the international civil aviation context. 2. Trainees should understand the obligations of the signatory States. 3. Trainees should understand the direct relationship between ICAO standards and ramp inspection.

d. Safety Assessment technical aspects overview
i. Preparation of the inspection
ii. Subjects of the inspection: • Aircraft used by third country operators or used by operators under the regulatory oversight of another Member State. • Technical considerations • Experience/feedback from previous checks • "Intelligence" (centralised database, ATC, passenger complaints, etc.) • Prioritisation
iii. Elements to be inspected: • In principle, all RI checklist items; but: • other considerations for a limited inspection: • Time available (stop duration, slot, no unreasonable delay) • Inspector privileges • Areas of concern (based upon previous checks and/or centralised database) • Context (recent/old aircraft, new airline, new type of aircraft) • Intelligence information
iv Planning the inspection: • Efficient use of the time available • Considerations for inspections on arrival or departure • Any day in a week, any time in a day
v. Short transit times: • Walk around check during off boarding • Segmented inspections
vi. Toolkit for the RI inspector: • Inspector's documentation (RI procedures, regulations, updated reference material, etc.) • Inspector's tools (vest, Independent Portable light, camera, telephone, protective personal equipment, etc.) • Inspector's identification (authority ID, airport badge) • Airline documentation available
vii. Teamwork: • Preferably two inspectors covering all fields of expertise • Briefing on task allocation
viii. The ramp inspection checklist: • Aspects to be covered by the ramp inspection • The ramp inspection checklist (format/structure and overview of contents)
ix. Starting the Inspection: • Introduction to the crew (flight crew/technical staff/airline representative/translator) • Determination of available inspection time • Explain that any operator is subject to inspections (ramp inspection principle)
x. Code of conduct: • Human factor principle (inspection = intrusion) • Cooperation with the crew • Time efficiency • Collection of evidence
xi. Categorisation of findings: • Definition of finding: Deviation from the standards • Category 3 finding with major influence on safety • Category 2 finding with significant influence on safety • Category 1 finding with minor influence on safety

xii. Follow-up actions:
- Relationship between finding and action
- Class 1 action
- Class 2 action
- Class 3 actions

xiii. Concluding the inspection:
- Debriefing of inspection results
- Delivery of proof of inspection to the pilot-in-command/commander/airline representative/sub-contractors

e. Ramp inspection centralised database – Hands-on training	
• Purpose of the database • The database as inspectors' tool • RI database – input • RI database – output • RI database – search • Focused inspection module • Follow-up actions: operator logging • Database analytical tools and reports	Objectives: 1. Trainees should have the relevant knowledge to input and retrieve data from the RI centralised database. 2. Trainees should know the analysis process and its deliverables. 3. Trainees should understand the analysis dependability on the accuracy of the inspection reports.

2. MODULE (A) a. RAMP INSPECTION ITEMS (A)	
A1 general condition (flight crew compartment) • Circuit breakers (C/B) (inappropriately pulled/popped) • Secure stowage of interior equipment (incl. baggage) • Crew seats (manual or electrical) • Security/reinforced flight crew compartment door • General condition of flight crew compartment **A2 Emergency Exit (flight crew compartment)** • Access (easy/no blockings) • Escape ropes (secured) • Emergency exits (flight crew compartment) **A3 Equipment** • Awareness of different design philosophies of A/C systems (BITE, message displays/status) • Proper functioning (system test) **GPWS – TAWS** • General (basic principles) • Forward looking terrain avoidance function (7-channel SRPBZ ICAO compliant) • Presence of the equipment • Validity of GPWS database • System test – passed • CIS built A/C systems (SSOS, SPPZ and SRPBZ) **ACAS/TCAS II** • General (applicability and principles) • Mode S transponder and ACAS II (general) • System test **8.33 kHz radio channel spacing** • Selection of an 8.33 kHz channel • Presence of 6 or 5 digits (132.055 or 32.055) • Letter Y in field 10 of the flight plan **RNAV – BRNAV – PRNAV** • General (applicability and principles) • Special authorisation • Required equipment • Flight planning and completion of the flight **RVSM** • General (applicability and principles) • Special authorisation • Required equipment • Flight planning and completion of the flight **MNPS** • General (applicability and principles) • Special authorisation • Required equipment • Flight planning and completion of the flight	Objectives: Trainees should possess the relevant knowledge enabling them to inspect each item.

2. MODULE (A) a. RAMP INSPECTION ITEMS (A)	
A4 Manuals • Operation manual (structure) • Aircraft flight manual (structure) • Competent Authority approval • Update status • Ex-Soviet-built aircraft Rukowodstwo or RLE • Electronic flight bag (EFB class 1, 2 and 3) • Content in relation to flight preparation **A5 Checklists** • Availability: within reach and update status • Compliance with operator procedures (normal, abnormal and emergency) • Appropriateness of checklist used (aircraft checklists) • A/C system integrated checklists • Ex-Soviet-built aircraft issues (pilot's checklist and flight engineer's checklist) **A6 Radio navigation/instrument charts** • Required charts (departure, en-route, destination and alternate): • within reach and update status • Validity of FMS database • Electronic maps and charts • The AIRAC Cycle **A7 Minimum equipment list (MEL)** • Availability: approval and update status • Content: MEL reflects installed equipments • Ex-Soviet-built aircraft: 'Rukowodstwo' content • Relationship MEL/Master MEL • CDL (configuration deviation list) **A8 Certificate of Registration** • Availability and accuracy • Original documents and certified copies acceptability • Presence of mandatory information on the certificate: • Identification plate (type – location) **A9 Noise certificate** • Availability (if applicable) • Multiple noise certification • Approval status **A10 AOC or equivalent** • Availability (original or copy) and accuracy • Content in compliance with requirements/format • Content of operational specifications **A11 Radio (station) license** • Availability and accuracy • Original documents and certified copies acceptability	

2. MODULE (A) **a. RAMP INSPECTION ITEMS (A)**	
A12 Certificate of Airworthiness (C of A) • Format of Certificate of Airworthiness • Original documents and certified copies acceptability • Presence, accuracy and validity **A13 Flight preparation** • Presence and accuracy of operational flight plan • Performance calculations • Proper fuel calculation and monitoring • Special considerations for ETOPS operations • Availability and update of meteorological information • Availability and update of NOTAMS **A14 Mass and balance calculation** • Availability and accuracy • Data available for a verification by crew **A15 Hand fire extinguishers** • Validity, access and locations • Mounting • Types **A16 Life-jackets/flotation devices** • Validity, access and locations • Applicability **A17 Harness** • Presence (and usage) • Availability for all flight crew members • Requirements for different crew positions • Conditions (wearing) **A18 Oxygen equipment** • Presence, access and condition • Oxygen cylinder pressure • Minimum required according to the operations manual (in case of low pressure) • Operational functional check of the combined oxygen and communication system (crew) **A19 Independent portable light** • Number of required independent portable light(s) (day/night) • Condition, serviceability and access	

2. MODULE (A) a. RAMP INSPECTION ITEMS (A)	
A20 Flight crew licences • Validity of crew licences and appropriate ratings • Validation of foreign licences • Validity of medical certificate • Special medical conditions (spare glasses, etc.) Age limitations • Minimum crew requirements **A21 Journey Log book** • Content of journey log book (recommendation/roman numerals) • Examples of journey log books **A22 Maintenance Release** • Applicable requirements and duties of the PIC/ commander **A23 Defect notification and rectification (incl. technical log)** • Defects notification • Cross check with MEL • History of defects/notification (incl. hold item list) **A24 Pre-flight inspection** • Applicable requirements and duties of the PIC	

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">MODULE (B)

a. Ramp inspection items (b)</th></tr>
<tr><td>B1 General internal condition
General condition
Safety and survival equipment
Design and construction
B2 Cabin Crew Stations and Crew Rest Area
Cabin crew seats (number, material/fire resistant and condition, upright position/safety hazard)
Equipment
B3 First-aid kit/emergency medical kit
Recommendation on contents (validity)
Locations of kits
Adequacy
Readily/access
Identifications/markings/seals
B4 Hand fire extinguishers
Validity, access and locations
Mounting
Types
B5 Life-jackets/flotation devices
Validity, access and locations
Applicability
Different models of jackets and/or flotation devices on-board
Instructions for passengers (written and demonstration)
B6 Seat belt and seat condition
Seats and belts (material/condition/installation)
Portable light (cabin crew)
Instructions for passengers (written and demonstration)
Opening assistance systems
B7 Emergency exit, lighting and marking, independent portable light
Evacuation signs
Lighting and marking (passenger compartment)
Independent Portable light
B8 Slides/life-rafts/ELTs
Slides/rafts general (locations, types)
Serviceability – pressure gauge/green band
Instructions for passengers (written and demonstration)
Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) (general/types/location)
B9 Oxygen supply (cabin crew and passengers)
Oxygen supply: cylinders and generators
Serviceability – pressure gauge/green band
Models/A/C types
Drop-out panels/storage of masks
B10 Safety instructions
Availability and accuracy</td><td>Objectives:
Trainees should possess the relevant knowledge enabling them to inspect each item.</td></tr>
</table>

MODULE (B) a. Ramp inspection items (b)	
B11 Cabin crew members • Appropriate number of cabin crew (A/C type) • Refuelling with passengers on-board (crew positions **B12 Access to emergency exits** • Number and location of exits • Different models and sizes (A/C type) • Obstructions • Instructions for passengers (written and demonstration) **B13 Stowage of passenger baggage's (cabin luggage)** • Proper storage (size, weight and number) • Safety risks **B14 Seat capacity** • Numbers of seats (A/C type) • Max number of passengers (A/C type)	

MODULE (C) RAMP INSPECTION ITEMS (C)	
C1 General External Condition • Corrosion (different corrosion types) • Cleanliness and contamination (fuselage and wings) • Windows and windshields (delamination) • Exterior lights (landing lights, NAV-lights, strobes, beacon...) • Markings • De-icing requirements **C2 Doors and hatches** • Door types (normal – emergency – cargo doors) • Markings and placards of doors • Operating instructions of doors • Condition and possible damages **C3 Flight controls** • Condition and possible damages, corrosion and loose parts • Rotor head condition • Leakage **C4 Wheels, tyres and brakes** • Tyre pressure (cockpit indications/wheel integrated gauge) • Brake condition • Condition and possible damages, leaking and loose parts **C5 Undercarriage** • Condition and possible damages, corrosion and loose parts • Strut (and tilt cylinder) pressure **C6 Wheel well** • Condition and possible damages, corrosion, leaks and loose parts **C7 Powerplant and pylon** • Cowlings, cowling doors and blow-out doors • Condition and possible damages, corrosion, leaks and loose parts • Pylon, pylon doors, blow-out panels and missing rivets • Condition and possible damages, corrosion, leaks and loose parts • Reversers' condition **C8 Fan blades, propellers, rotors** • Types of fan blades/propellers/rotors • Foreign object damage (FOD), (dents, nicks, blade bending) • De-icing (boots and heating elements) **C9 Obvious repairs** • Obvious repairs/maintenance release, technical log, **C10 Obvious unprepared damage** • Damages/missing maintenance release, technical log, • Assessment of damage **C11 Leakage** • Obvious leakage, technical log, • Types and assessment of leakage • Toilet leaks/blue ice etc.	Objectives: Trainees should possess the relevant knowledge enabling them to inspect each item.

MODULE (D) Ramp inspections items (D)	
D1 General condition of cargo compartment • Structures, wall panels, wall sealing • Fire detection & extinguishing systems • Blow-out panels • 9G-net • Containers • Loading instructions/door instructions • Damage **D2 Dangerous goods** • Notification to the pilot-in-command/commander • Segregation and accessibility • Packaging and labelling • Limitations/restrictions (cargo aircraft) goods) **D3 Cargo stowage** • Loading instructions (placards, wall markings) • Flight kit (secured) • Pallets, nets, straps, containers (secured) • Loading limitations (weight, size and height) **E1 General** • All the general items that may have a direct relation with the safety of the aircraft or its occupants	Objectives: Trainees should possess the relevant knowledge enabling them to inspect each item.

AMC2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2)(i) Qualification of ramp inspectors

SYLLABUS OF PRACTICAL TRAINING FOR RAMP INSPECTORS – INITIAL (PRACTICAL) TRAINING COURSE

- Module (A): Flight crew compartment inspection items
- Module (B): Cabin safety inspection items
- Module (C): Aircraft condition inspection items
- Module (D): Cargo inspection items

MODULE A (Flight crew compartment inspection items)	
A1 General condition (of flight crew compartment) • Security/reinforced door (how to recognise) • Reinforced flight crew compartment door installations/locking functions (with a real example) • C/Bs/ circuit breakers (recognise pulled/popped) • Crew seats/serviceability (functions of seats/manual – electrical) • Examples of storage of flight cases and crew luggage (possible safety hazards) • Check cleanness of flight crew compartment	Objectives: Trainees should be able to use their technical knowledge and ramp inspection techniques in a satisfactory manner during the subsequent on-the-job training
A2 Emergency exit (flight crew compartment) • Recognise easy access (no blockings) • Escape ropes (check if secured) **A3 Equipment** **GPWS-TAWS:** • GPWS, locate instruments in cockpit • Aural warning test demonstrating: Sounds/display patterns • Recognise CIS-built A/C systems (if possible): SSOS – SPPZ – SRPBZ **ACAS/TCAS II** • Locate instruments in cockpit • Mode S transponder and ACAS II (locate and check the model) • System warning test/indications **8.33 kHz radio channel spacing** • Indication in the flight plan (examples) • How to check real channel spacing during the inspection (performed with real radios or approved training devices) **A4 Manuals (flight manuals only)** • Operations manual: (content/handling exercise) • Aircraft flight manual (examples) • Electronic manuals (lap-tops)/integrated systems **A5 Checklists** • Check validity normal-, abnormal-, emergency checklists and 'quick reference handbook' • Meaning of 'available'/within reach (case study/ examples) • A/C sys integrated checklists (demonstration of system) • Ex-Soviet-built A/C checklists (recognise/examples) **A6 Radio navigation/instrument charts** • Check the covering of charts • En-route and instruments approach charts (view examples) • Locations in the flight crew compartment • Electronic maps and charts (examples) • Check updating markings of the charts and folders. • FMS navigation data-base (check the "INIT" page for validity) **A7 Minimum equipment list (MEL)** • Check the deferred defects are in accordance with the MEL instructions • Inspect MEL according the current MMEL • Approval (check) • 'Rukowodstwo' (examples)	

MODULE A (Flight crew compartment inspection items)	
A8 Certificate of Registration (CoR) • Content and accuracy of the Certificate of Registration (various examples/check) • Requirements of certified true copy (examples of copies) • Common location in the A/C • Identification plate/show various locations in A/C **A9 Noise certificate** • Format of the noise certificate • Content of noise certificate/approval/(check) **A10 Air Operator Certificate (AOC) or equivalent** • Format of the air operator certificate • Content and accuracy of AOC/approval (check compliance with the requirement) • Show location (A/C documents or door) **A11 Radio (station) licence** • Format of the radio station licence (examples) • Show location (a/c documents or door) **A12 Certificate of Airworthiness (C of A)** • Check certificate and content (recognise standard form) • Accuracy and validity (check) • Show location (A/C documents or door) **A13 Flight preparation** • Check operational flight plan, proper filling and relevant documents • Proper fuel calculation and monitoring (demonstration of various examples) • NOTAMs/check validity (examples) • Weather information/available and within reach (demonstrate updated reports/ examples) **A14 Mass and balance calculation** • Check examples of different type weight and balance sheets/A/C types (manual and computerised) **A15 Hand fire extinguishers** • Locations/access (flight crew compartment visit) • Condition and pressure gauge • Familiarise with different date markings (inspection date or expiry date) • Mountings (review examples) • Types (review examples) **A16 Life-jackets/flotation devices** • Locations • Familiarise with date markings • Extra raft location in flight crew compartment (installation, pressure gauge)	

MODULE A (Flight crew compartment inspection items)	
A17 Harness • Worn out (examples) • Locks (common problems) **A18 Oxygen equipment** • Storage of masks (Quick Donning/Balloon) • Pressure gauge (check green band) • Radio boom – mask check **A19 Independent Portable light** • Locations • Operational check **A20 Flight crew licences** • Licenses of personnel: - endorsement of certificates and licenses - validity of endorsed certificates and licenses - language proficiency - medical certificate (spare glasses etc.) - validity of licences • Aeroplane flight crew: - composition of the flight crew - age limitations **A21 Journey logbook** • Content of journey log book (check markings and comply with the requirement) • Responsibility of signing log book (example) **A22 Maintenance release** • Aeroplane maintenance (maintenance record) • Maintenance release, general (checkmark or sign) • Relevant release for service (examples) **A23 Defect notification and rectification (incl. Tech Log)** • Open defects • History of defects (including hold item list) **A24 Pre-flight inspection** • Pre-flight inspection sheet and journey log book (presence and signed off)	

MODULE B (Cabin Safety)	
B1 General internal condition (cabin) • Safety and survival equipment (cabin visit for the locations) • Design and construction (familiarise with different type cabins) • Recognise loose carpet and damaged floor panel • System design features: - recognise right materials *(Cabin visit)* - lavatory smoke detection system/*Cabin visit for the locations* - built-in fire extinguisher system for each receptacle intended for disposal of towels, paper or waste (how to check extinguishers)/*Cabin visit for the locations* • Check that normal and abnormal duties by cabin crew may be performed without hindrance (*Guided tour in cabin for demonstration of duties*) **B2 Cabin crew stations and crew rest area** • Cabin crew seats (cabin visit for number, material and condition) • Cabin crew seats upright position (case study/ recognise safety hazard) • Familiarise with problems with belt wearing and fast locks • Familiarise with seat attachment to the floor or wall • Easy access to emergency equipment (cabin visit for locations and condition) **B3 First-aid kit/emergency medical kit** • Cabin visit for locations (readily/access) • Adequacy (how to determine) • Confirmation that contents match the relevant checklist • Identifications/markings/seals (examples) **B4 Hand fire extinguishers** • Cabin visit for locations (readily/access) • Checking serviceability **B5 Life-jackets/flotation devices** • Different models of life- jackets and flotation devices • Instructions for passengers • Condition and serviceability **B6 Seat belt and seat condition** • Seat belt material/condition (examples) • Recognise common problems with fast locks • Recognise common problems with seat belt wearing • Installation of seat belts (hazard to block evacuation) • Extra belts (locations) • Passenger seats (number and condition) • Passenger seat materials/fire resistant (recognise right materials) • Seat attach to the cabin floor (how to check) **B7 Emergency exit, lighting and marking, independent portable light** • Lighting and marking (cabin visit for locations and condition) • Condition and serviceability of exits • Instructions for passengers • Availability, serviceability and easy access of independent Portable light	Objectives: Trainees should be able to use their technical knowledge and ramp inspection techniques in a satisfactory manner during the subsequent on-the-job training

MODULE B (Cabin Safety)	
B8 Slides/life-rafts/ELT's • Slides/rafts general (cabin visit for locations and condition) • Check pressure gauge and recognise green band • Recognise condition of slides and rafts and familiarise with expiry date markings • Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) (cabin visit for locations and condition) • Automatic fixed ELT (examples/how to recognise) • Automatic portable ELT (examples/how to recognise) • Automatic deployable ELT (examples/how to recognise) **B9 Oxygen supply (cabin crew and passengers)** • Check oxygen supply (cylinders and generators) (cabin visit for locations and condition) • Check the cylinder pressure gauge and recognise green band • Drop-out panels (cabin visit for locations and condition) • Storage of masks/serviceability **B10 Safety instructions** • The meaning of available (within reach) • The meaning of accuracy/A/C types (recognise difference in instructions) • Content of instructions **B11 Cabin crew members** • Appropriate number of cabin crew (how to check) • Refuelling with passengers on board (check cabin crew positions) • Cabin crew member's type training document (familiarise with different types) **B12 Access to emergency exits** • Number and location of exits • Different models and sizes (A/C type) • Instructions for passengers (written and demonstration) • Obstructions (requirement on the projected opening) **B13 Stowage of passenger baggage (cabin luggage)** • Recognise proper storage (size, weight and number) • Familiarise and recognise safety risks (case study) **B14 Seat capacity** • Max number of passengers according to the cabin configuration • Compare the numbers of passenger and the number of serviceable seats • Interrelation with other inspection items: maximum number of passengers influenced by: B6 (inoperative seat) and/or B7 (inoperative exit)	

MODULE C (aircraft condition)	
C1 General external condition • Recognise presence of ice, snow and frost • Condition of paint (familiarise when loose of painting is problem) • Recognise legibility of aircraft's markings (registration) • Corrosion (familiarise and recognise different corrosion types) • Cleanliness and contamination of fuselage and wings (familiarise and recognise) • Windshields (recognise delaminating) • Windows (recognise damages and problems) • Exterior lights (landing lights, NAV-lights, strobes, beacon, etc.) (check the condition) • Recognise marks of lightning strike **C2 Doors and hatches** • Familiarise with different door types/structures (aircraft visit for locations) • Cockpit indications of doors (flight crew compartment visit) • Familiarise with markings and placards of doors • Operating instructions of doors (recognise hazards if lack of markings) • Recognise normal condition and possible damages/loosing parts **C3 Flight controls** • Condition and possible damages, corrosion and loose parts • Recognise marks of lightning strike • Familiarise with static dischargers (recognise when missing) • Recognise possible defects and damages **C4 Wheels, tyres and brakes** • Familiarise with different tyre models • Familiarise with different brake assemblies • Familiarise with maintenance manual limits • Recognise brake wearing indicator 'pin' (examples/locations) • Recognise normal condition and possible damages, leaking and loose parts • Tyre wear/tyre pressure (check) **C5 Undercarriage** • Condition and possible damages, corrosion and loose parts • Proper strut (and tilt cylinder pressure) • Lubrication (recognise signs of lubrication) • Familiarise with marking placards • Recognise bonding wires • Possible defects and damages **C6 Wheel well** • Condition and possible damages, corrosion and loose parts • Lubrication (recognise signs of lubrication) • Familiarise with marking placards • Recognise bonding wires • Possible defects and damages **C7 Powerplant and pylon** • Powerplants (type of engines) • Cowlings, cowling doors and blow-out doors • Leaks (hydraulic, fuel, oil) • Condition and possible damages, corrosion, leaks and loose parts • Recognise engine sensors (condition) • Possible defects and damages • Pylon (types of pylons) – Recognise pylon doors, panels and blow-out panels and loose rivets – bolts • Reverser's condition (broken hinges and proper closure)	Objectives: Trainees should be able to use their technical knowledge and ramp inspection techniques in a satisfactory manner during the subsequent on-the-job training

MODULE C (aircraft condition)	
C8 Fan blades, propellers, rotors • Typical foreign object damages (FOD), (examples of dents, nicks and blade bending) • Recognise looseness of blades in hub • Possible defects and damages (familiarise with procedures related to compliance with engine maintenance manual) • Check de-icing boots **C9 Obvious repairs** • Recognise obvious repairs (examples) • Maintenance release/technical log **C10 Obvious unrepaired damage** • Recognise obvious damages (examples) • Damages/maintenance release/technical log • Recognise assessment of damage (examples) **C11 Leakage** • Fluid leaks outside of limits (examples fuel, hydraulic, oil) • Obvious leak: check the maintenance release, technical log • Recognise toilet leaks (blue ice examples) • Recognise de-icing fluids on the A/C (aircraft visit for locations)	

MODULE D (Cargo)	
D1 General condition of cargo compartment • Cargo compartment (aircraft visit for locations) • Check wall panels • Recognise wall sealing • Familiarise with A/C systems in cargo compartment: - fire containment, detection and extinguishing systems - ventilation - heating - loading systems (rollers) - lighting • Recognise blow-out panels • Familiarise with 9G-net • Cargo restraining devices • Check cargo door sealing for ETOPS • Containers • Loading instructions/door instructions • Damages in cargo compartment • Recognise obvious repairs in cargo compartment **D2 Dangerous goods (DG)** • How to recognise the special authorisation to transport DG • Assessing the scope of the authorisation (different classes) • Notification to Captain (NOTOC) format and content • Segregation and accessibility • Examples of packaging and labelling of DG • Identifying limitations and restrictions for certain (sub)classes of DG • Identification and removal of contamination with DG **D3 Secure cargo stowage** • Cargo bay (guided visit for locations) • Loading instructions (placards, wall markings/tidiness) • Familiarise with flight kit/spare wheel (secured) • Familiarise with pallets, nets, straps, containers (secured) • Recognising loading limits (weight and height)	

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(3) Qualification of ramp inspectors

RECURRENT TRAINING

(a) Once qualified, ramp inspectors should undergo recurrent training in order to be kept up-to-date.

(b) The competent authority should ensure that all ramp inspectors undergo recurrent training at least once every 3 years after being qualified as ramp inspectors or when deemed necessary by the competent authority or the Agency, e.g. after major changes in the inspection procedures. The Agency will inform the competent authority of such necessity.

(c) Recurrent training should be delivered by a competent authority or by an approved training organisation.

(d) The recurrent training should cover at least the following elements:

(1) new regulatory and procedural developments;

(2) new operational practices;

(3) articulation review of other European processes and regulations (list of banned operators or aircraft pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005, authorisation of third-country operators); using data collected through ramp inspections; and

(4) standardisation and harmonisation issues.

AMC2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(3) Qualification of ramp inspectors

RECENT EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS

(a) The minimum number of inspections required for ramp inspectors to maintain their qualification should be conducted during any 12-month period after undergoing training, evenly spread during such intervals.

(b) This number may be reduced by the number of inspections on aircraft operated by domestic operators if the inspector is also a qualified flight operations, ramp or airworthiness inspector of a competent authority and is regularly engaged in the oversight of such operators.

(c) If the inspector loses his/her qualification as a result of not reaching the minimum number of inspections mentioned in (a) he/she may be requalified by the competent authority by performing a number of inspections under the supervision of a senior ramp inspector. The number of supervised inspections should not be less than half the number of missed inspections according to the minimum requirement. The time between these two inspections should be not more than 90 calendar days.

(d) If the inspector loses his/her qualification because he/she has not been engaged in performing inspections on aircraft for more than 12 months, he/she may be requalified by the competent authority only after successfully completing on-the-job-training as prescribed in GM2 ARO.RAMP.115(b)(2) and any recurrent training required.

(e) If the inspector loses his/her qualification because he/she has not been engaged in performing inspections on aircraft for more than 36 months, he/she should be fully requalified by successfully completing initial theoretical, practical and on-the-job training.

(f) The competent authority should ensure that all ramp inspectors undergo recurrent training at least once every 3 years after being qualified as ramp inspectors and whenever deemed necessary by the Agency due to significant changes of the ramp inspection programme.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors

CRITERIA FOR TRAINING ORGANISATIONS

(a) The training organisation should appoint a manager who is responsible for ensuring that training courses are managed and carried out in accordance with the following criteria:

(1) The training organisation should contract sufficient personnel to develop and deliver ramp inspection training courses in accordance with the technical criteria required by the Agency.

(2) The size and structure of training facilities should ensure protection from the prevailing weather elements and proper operation of all planned training and examination on any particular day.

(3) Fully enclosed appropriate accommodation, separate from other facilities, should be provided for the instruction. In case the training will be given in other facilities than its own training facility, such facility should meet the same criteria.

(4) Classrooms should have appropriate presentation equipment, of a standard that ensures students can easily read presentation text/drawings/diagrams and figures from any position in the classroom.

(5) The training organisation should establish appropriate procedures to ensure proper training standards and compliance with the applicable criteria, including a quality system to ensure adequate control of the training preparation and delivery process.

(6) The training should be conducted in the English language with the aim to train the trainee in the jargon to be used during the ramp inspection.

(7) The training organisation should demonstrate that compliance with the applicable criteria is maintained in time, and that the content of the training course is always kept in line with the applicable syllabi.

(8) The training organisation should put in place a system to evaluate the effectiveness of training provided, based upon feedback collected from course participants after each training delivery. An annual review summarising the results of the feedback system together with the training organisation's corrective actions (if any) shall be sent to the Agency.

(i) Training organisations providing ramp inspection training courses should use only training instructors meeting the experience and qualifications criteria listed hereunder:

(ii) knowledge of the EU Ramp Inspection Programme;

(iii) knowledge of training delivery methods and techniques;

(iv) for instructors delivering training on inspection items and/or delivering practical training:

(A) meets the eligibility requirements for inspectors;

(B) knowledge of the ramp inspection methodology through participation, as an inspector or as an observer under the guidance of a senior ramp inspector, in at least 30 inspections in the previous 5 years before being nominated as an instructor.

(v) for instructors delivering training on the regulatory framework and general ramp inspection process, at least 2 years of direct experience in the EU ramp inspection programme (previous SAFA Programme), e.g. either as an inspector or as a national coordinator or as an aviation safety regulations/legislation expert.

(9) Fulfilment of the criteria above should be attested by the training organisation based, as a minimum, on individual self-declaration.

(10) Training organisations should only employ training instructors that have maintained their proficiency by performing or observing a minimum of six ramp inspections per year.

(11) All instructors should attend a recurrent training workshop organised by the Agency, aiming at updating their knowledge with new developments of the EU Ramp Inspection Programme as well as standardisation and harmonisation issues. The Agency's workshop should be attended whenever it would be deemed necessary due to significant changes in the Ramp Inspection Programme's structure and procedures, with a minimum of at least once every 3 years.

GM1 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors

CHECKLIST FOR THE EVALUATION OF A 3RD PARTY TRAINING ORGANISATION

The competent authority should ensure that their training programmes and/or their systems for the evaluation of third party training organisations are amended accordingly to reflect any recommendations arising from the standardisation audits conducted by the Agency in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 736/2006[5].

[5] OJ L 129, 17.5.2006, p.10.

GM2 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors

CHECKLIST FOR THE EVALUATION OF A 3RD PARTY TRAINING ORGANISATION

1 ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE					
No.		**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
	1	Has a manager with corporate authority been appointed?			
	2	Has the training provider contracted enough personnel to develop and deliver EU ramp inspection training?			
	3	Is the development and delivery of training in accordance with the technical criteria required by the Agency?			
2 FACILITIES					
No.		**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
	1	Does the size and structure of the available training facilities ensure adequate protection against weather elements?			
	2	Does the size and structure of the available training facilities provide proper training activities?			
3 INSTRUCTIONAL EQUIPMENT					
No.		**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
	1	Is the presentation equipment appropriate for the training to be delivered?			
	2	Can the trainees easily read the presented material from any position in the classroom?			
4 TRAINING PROCEDURE					
No.		**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
	1	Has the training provider established appropriate procedures to ensure proper training standards?			
	2	Has the training provider established a system to control the training preparation and delivery process?			
	3	Is the course material written in the English language and will the course be given in the English language?			
	4	Has the training provider demonstrated how compliance with technical criteria is maintained in time and kept in line with the training syllabi?			
	5	Has the training provider developed a system to evaluate the effectiveness of training provided?			
	6	Has the training provider devised a system to evaluate the effectiveness of the training based upon the feedback received?			

GM3 ARO.RAMP.115(c) Qualification of ramp inspectors

CHECKLIST FOR THE EVALUATION OF RAMP INSPECTIONS TRAINING INSTRUCTORS

1 Qualification Criteria				
No.	**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
1	Do the instructors possess knowledge of the EU Ramp Inspection Programme?			
2	Do the instructors have the knowledge on training methods and techniques?			
3	Do the instructors delivering training on inspection items/practical training meet the eligibility and inspection experience requirements?			
4	Do the other instructors meet the working experience criteria?			
2 Qualification records				
No.	**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
1	Has the training organisation created and maintained proper records on their instructors?			
3 Recent experience and recurrent training				
No.	**DESCRIPTION**	**YES**	**NO**	**REMARKS**
1	Do the instructors meet, if applicable, the requirements on recent experience?			
2	Do the instructors meet the requirements on recurrent training?			

ARO.RAMP.120 Approval of training organisations

(a) The competent authority shall approve a training organisation, having its principal place of business in the territory of the respective Member State, when satisfied that the training organisation:

(1) has nominated a head of training possessing sound managerial capability to ensure that the training provided is in compliance with the applicable requirements;

(2) has available training facilities and instructional equipment suitable for the type of training provided;

(3) provides training in accordance with the syllabi developed by the Agency in accordance with ARO.RAMP.115 (d);

(4) uses qualified training instructors.

(b) If so requested by the competent authority, the verification of compliance and continuous compliance with the requirements referred to in (a) shall be performed by the Agency.

(c) The training organisation shall be approved to provide one or more of the following types of training:

(1) initial theoretical training;

(2) initial practical training;

(3) recurrent training.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.120 Approval of training organisations

TRAINING ORGANISATIONS PROVIDING TRAINING TO RAMP INSPECTORS

(a) The competent authority employing a third party organisation for the purpose of ramp inspections related training should put in place a system to evaluate such an organisation. The system should be simple, transparent and proportionate. Such a system should take into account evaluations conducted by other Member State authorities.

(b) When an evaluation is performed by the Agency on behalf of a competent authority the result of this evaluation should be used by any Member State as a basis for its own evaluation.

(c) For each qualified training organisation, a competent authority should communicate to the Agency the following details:

  (1) full legal name;

  (2) address; and

  (3) scope of training (i.e. theoretical training, practical training and a combination of these trainings).

ARO.RAMP.125 Conduct of ramp inspections

(a) Ramp inspections shall be performed in a standardised manner using the form established in either Appendix III or Appendix IV.

(b) When performing a ramp inspection, the inspector(s) shall make all possible efforts to avoid an unreasonable delay of the aircraft inspected.

(c) On completion of the ramp inspection, the pilot-in-command or, in his/her absence, another member of the flight crew or a representative of the operator shall be informed of the ramp inspection's results using the form established in Appendix III.

AMC1 ARO.RAMP.125(b) Conduct of Ramp inspections

GENERAL

(a) Ramp inspections should be performed by inspectors possessing the necessary knowledge relevant to the area of inspection whereby technical, airworthiness and operational knowledge must be represented in case all items of the checklist are being verified. When a ramp inspection is performed by two or more inspectors, the main elements of the inspection – the visual inspection of the aircraft exterior, the inspection in the flight deck and the inspection of the passenger cabin and/or cargo compartments – may be divided among the inspectors, according to their privileges granted in accordance with ARO.RAMP.115.

(b) The competent authority should put in place appropriate procedures to allow them unrestricted access to the aircraft to be inspected. In this respect ramp inspectors should possess adequate credentials.

(c) Inspectors should identify themselves to the pilot–in-command/commander of the aircraft or, in his/her absence, to a member of the flight crew or to the most senior representative of the operator prior to commencing the on-board part of their ramp inspection. When it is not possible to inform any representative of the operator or when there is no such representative present in or near the aircraft, the general principle should be not to perform a ramp inspection. In special circumstances it may be decided to perform a ramp inspection but this should be limited to a visual check of the aircraft exterior.

(d) The inspection should be as comprehensive as possible within the time and resources available. This means that if only a limited amount of time or resources is available, not all inspection items but a reduced number may be verified. According to the time and resources available for a ramp inspection, the items that are to be inspected should be selected accordingly in conformity with the objectives of the ramp inspection programme. Items not being inspected may be inspected during a next inspection.

(e) Inspectors should show tact and diplomacy when performing a ramp inspection. A certain amount of inconvenience to flight and cabin crews, handling agents and other personnel involved in ground handling activities may arise but inspectors should try to reduce it to the minimum. Unnecessary contact with passengers should be avoided.

(f) Ramp inspectors should not open any hatches, doors or panels themselves nor should they operate or interfere with any aircraft controls or equipment. When such actions are required for the scope of the inspection, the ramp inspectors should request the assistance of the operator's personnel (flight crew, cabin crew, ground crew).

(g) The items to be inspected should be selected from the ramp inspection checklist (see Appendices III and IV). The ramp inspection checklist contains a total of 54 items. Of these, 24 relate to operational requirements (A-items) to be checked on the flight crew compartment, 14 items address safety and cabin items (B-items), 12 items are concerning the aircraft condition (C-items) and three items (D-items) are related to the inspection of cargo (including dangerous goods) and the cargo compartment. In case of any general inspection items not addressed by the other items of the checklist, they may be administered by the E-item (General) of the checklist.

(h) Items which have been inspected as well as any possible findings and observations will be recorded in the Ramp Inspections Report (see Appendices III and IV).

(i) ARO.RAMP.125 (c) requires that the operator is informed about the results of every ramp inspection by providing it with a copy of the Proof of Inspection (see Appendix III). A signed acknowledgement of receipt should be requested from the recipient and retained by the inspector. Refusal by the recipient to sign should be recorded in the document.

GM1 ARO.RAMP.125(b) Conduct of Ramp inspections

UNREASONABLE DELAY

The inspector(s) intending to conduct the ramp inspection should be able to start the inspection immediately. The inspector(s) should ensure that the inspection can be carried out expeditiously. Delays related to the availability of the inspector(s) or the necessary inspection documentation or similar avoidable reasons of delay caused by the inspector(s), which are not directly related to safety, should be avoided without exception.

ARO.RAMP.130 Categorisation of findings

For each inspection item, three categories of possible non-compliance with the applicable requirements are defined as findings. Such findings shall be categorised as follows:

(1) a category 3 finding is any detected significant non-compliance with the applicable requirements or the terms of a certificate that has a major influence on safety;

2) a category 2 finding is any detected non-compliance with the applicable requirements or the terms of a certificate that has a significant influence on safety;

(3) a category 1 finding is any detected non-compliance with the applicable requirements or the terms a certificate that has a minor influence on safety.

ARO.RAMP.135 Follow-up actions on findings

(a) For a category 2 or 3 finding the competent authority, or where relevant the Agency, shall:

  (1) communicate the finding in writing to the operator, including a request for evidence of corrective actions taken; and

  (2) inform the competent authority of the State of the operator and, where relevant, the State in which the aircraft is registered and where the licence of the flight crew was issued. Where appropriate, the competent authority or Agency shall request confirmation of their acceptance of the corrective actions taken by the operator in accordance with ARO.GEN.350 or ARO.GEN.355.

(b) In addition to (a), in the case of a category 3 finding, the competent authority shall take immediate steps by:

  (1) imposing a restriction on the aircraft flight operation;

  (2) requesting immediate corrective actions;

  (3) grounding the aircraft in accordance with ARO.RAMP.140; or

  (4) imposing an immediate operating ban in accordance with Article 6 of Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005.

(c) When the Agency has raised a category 3 finding, it shall request the competent authority where the aircraft is landed to take the appropriate measures in accordance with (b).

ARO.RAMP.140 Grounding of aircraft

(a) In the case of a category 3 finding where it appears that the aircraft is intended or is likely to be flown without completion by the operator or owner of the appropriate corrective action, the competent authority shall:

  (1) notify the pilot-in-command/commander or the operator that the aircraft is not permitted to commence the flight until further notice; and

  (2) ground that aircraft.

(b) The competent authority of the State where the aircraft is grounded shall immediately inform the competent authority of the State of the operator and of the State in which the aircraft is registered, if relevant, and the Agency in the case of a grounded aircraft used by a third-country operator.

(c) The competent authority shall, in coordination with the State of the operator or the State of Registry, prescribe the necessary conditions under which the aircraft can be allowed to take-off.

(d) If the non-compliance affects the validity of the certificate of airworthiness of the aircraft, the grounding shall only be lifted by the competent authority when the operator shows evidence that:

  (1) compliance with the applicable requirements has been re-established;

  (2) it has obtained a permit-to-fly in accordance with Commission Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, for aircraft registered in a Member State;

(3) a permit-to-fly or equivalent document of the State of Registry or the State of the operator for aircraft registered in a third country and operated by an EU or a third country operator; and

(4) permission from third countries which will be overflown, if applicable.

ARO.RAMP.145 Reporting

(a) Information collected in accordance with ARO.RAMP.125 (a) shall be entered into the centralised database referred to in ARO.RAMP.150 (b)(2), within 21 calendar days after the inspection.

(b) The competent authority or the Agency shall enter into the centralised database any information useful for the application of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules and for the accomplishment by the Agency of the tasks assigned to it by this Annex, including the relevant information referred to in ARO.RAMP.110.

(c) Whenever the information as referred to in ARO.RAMP.110 shows the existence of a potential safety threat, such information shall also be communicated to each competent authority and the Agency without delay.

(d) Whenever information concerning aircraft deficiencies is given by a person to the competent authority, the information referred to in ARO.RAMP.110 and ARO.RAMP.125 (a) shall be de-identified regarding the source of such information.

ARO.RAMP.150 Agency coordination tasks

(a) The Agency shall manage and operate the tools and procedures necessary for the storage and exchange of:

(1) the information referred to in ARO.RAMP.145, using the forms as established in Appendices III and IV;

(2) the information provided by third countries or international organisations with whom appropriate agreements have been concluded with the EU, or organisations with whom the Agency has concluded appropriate arrangements in accordance with Article 27(2) of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008.

(b) This management shall include the following tasks:

(1) store data from the Member States relevant to the safety information on aircraft landing at aerodromes located in the territory subject to the provisions of the Treaty;

(2) develop, maintain and continuously update a centralised database containing all the information referred to in (a)(1) and (2);

(3) provide necessary changes and enhancements to the database application;

(4) analyse the centralised database and other relevant information concerning the safety of aircraft and of air operators and, on that basis:

(i) advise the Commission and the competent authorities on immediate actions or follow-up policy;

(ii) report potential safety problems to the Commission and to the competent authorities;

(iii) propose coordinated actions to the Commission and to the competent authorities, when necessary on safety grounds, and ensure coordination at the technical level of such actions;

(5) liaise with other European institutions and bodies, international organisations and third country competent authorities on information exchange.

ARO.RAMP.155 Annual report

The Agency shall prepare and submit to the Commission an annual report on the ramp inspection system containing at least the following information:

(a) status of the progress of the system;

(b) status of the inspections performed in the year;

(c) analysis of the inspection results with indication of the categories of findings;

(d) actions taken during the year;

(e) proposals for further improving the ramp inspection system; and

(f) annexes containing lists of inspections sorted out by State of operation, aircraft type, operator and ratios per item.

ARO.RAMP.160 Information to the public and protection of information

(a) Member States shall use the information received by them pursuant to ARO.RAMP.105 and ARO.RAMP.145 solely for the purpose of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its implementing rules and shall protect it accordingly.

(b) The Agency shall publish an aggregated information report annually that shall be available to the public containing the analysis of the information received in accordance with ARO.RAMP.145. The report shall be simple and easy to understand, and the source of the information shall be de-identified.

Appendix I

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3">AIR OPERATOR CERTIFICATE

(Approval schedule for air operators)

Types of operation: Commercial air transport (CAT) ❑ Passengers; ❑ Cargo;
❑ Other[1]:……..
Commercial specialised operations (SPO) ❑[2]……..</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">[5]</td><td>State of the Operator[3]</td><td rowspan="2">[5]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Issuing Authority[4]</td></tr>
<tr><td>AOC #[6]:</td><td rowspan="4">Operator Name[7]

Dba Trading Name[8]

Operator address[10]:

Telephone[11]:

Fax:

E-mail:</td><td rowspan="4">Operational Points of Contact:[9]

Contact details, at which operational management can be contacted without undue delay, are listed in ....[12] .</td></tr>
<tr><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">This certificate certifies that ……………………..[13] is authorised to perform commercial air operations, as defined in the attached operations specifications, in accordance with the operations manual, Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Date of issue[14]:</td><td colspan="2">Name and Signature[15]:

Title:</td></tr>
</table>

1. Other type of transportation to be specified.
2. Specify the type of operation, e.g., agriculture, construction, photography, surveying, observation and patrol, aerial advertisement.
3. Replaced by the name of the State of the Operator.
4. Replaced by the identification of the issuing competent authority.
5. For use of the competent authority.
6. Approval reference, as issued by the competent authority.
7 Replaced by the operator's registered name.
8. Operator's trading name, if different. Insert "Dba" (for "Doing business as") before the trading name.
9. The contact details include the telephone and fax numbers, including the country code, and the e-mail address (if available) at which operational management can be contacted without undue delay for issues related to flight operations, airworthiness, flight and cabin crew competency, dangerous goods and other matters as appropriate.
10. Operator's principal place of business address.

11. Operator's principal place of business telephone and fax details, including the country code. E-mail to be provided if available.
12. Insertion of the controlled document, carried on board, in which the contact details are listed, with the appropriate paragraph or page reference. E.g.: "Contact details … are listed in the operations manual, gen/basic, chapter 1, 1.1"; or "… are listed in the operations specifications, page 1"; or "… are listed in an attachment to this document".
13. Operator's registered name.
14. Issue date of the AOC (dd-mm-yyyy).
15. Title, name and signature of the competent authority representative. In addition, an official stamp may be applied on the AOC.

EASA FORM 138 Issue 1

Appendix II

OPERATIONS SPECIFICATIONS
(subject to the approved conditions in the operations manual)

Issuing Authority Contact Details

Telephone[1]: ____________________; Fax: ____________________;

E-mail: ____________________

AOC#[2]: Operator: Name[3]: Date[4]: Signature:

Dba Trading Name

Operations Specifications#:

Aircraft Model[5]:

Registration Marks[6]:

Commercial operations ❑……..

Area of operation[7]:

Special Limitations[8]:

Specific Approvals:	Yes	No	Specification[9]	Remarks
Dangerous Goods	❑	❑		
Low Visibility Operations Take-off Approach and Landing Take-off	 ❑ ❑	 ❑ ❑	RVR[11]: m CAT[10].... RVR: m DH: ft	
RVSM[12] ❑ N/A	❑	❑		
ETOPS[13] ❑ N/A	❑	❑	Maximum Diversion Time[14]: min.	
Navigation specifications for PBN Operations[15]	❑	❑		[16]
Minimum navigation performance specification	❑	❑		

Helicopter operations with the aid of night vision imaging systems	❑	❑		
Helicopter hoist operations	❑	❑		
Helicopter emergency medical service operations	❑	❑		
Cabin crew training[17]	❑	❑		
Issue of CC attestation[18]	❑	❑		
Continuing airworthiness	❑	❑	[19]	
Others[20]				

1. Telephone and fax contact details of the competent authority, including the country code. E-mail to be provided if available.
2. Insertion of associated air operator certificate (AOC) number.
3. Insertion of the operator's registered name and the operator's trading name, if different. Insert "Dba" before the trading name (for "Doing business as").
4. Issue date of the operations specifications (dd-mm-yyyy) and signature of the competent authority representative.
5 Insertion of ICAO designation of the aircraft make, model and series, or master series, if a series has been designated (e.g. Boeing-737-3K2 or Boeing-777-232).
6. Either the registration marks are listed in the operations specifications or in the operations manual. In the latter case the related operations specifications must make a reference to the related page in the operation manual. In case not all specific approvals apply to the aircraft model, the registration marks of the aircraft could be entered in the remark column to the related specific approval.
7. Listing of geographical area(s) of authorised operation (by geographical coordinates or specific routes, flight information region or national or regional boundaries).
8. Listing of applicable special limitations (e.g. VFR only, Day only, etc.).
9. List in this column the most permissive criteria for each approval or the approval type (with appropriate criteria).
10. Insertion of applicable precision approach category: CAT I, II, IIIA, IIIB or IIIC. Insertion of minimum runway visual range (RVR) in meters and decision height (DH) in feet. One line is used per listed approach category.
11. Insertion of approved minimum take-off RVR in meters. One line per approval may be used if different approvals are granted.
12. Not Applicable (N/A) box may be checked only if the aircraft maximum ceiling is below FL290.
13. Extended range operations (ETOPS) currently applies only to two-engined aircraft. Therefore the Not Applicable (N/A) box may be checked if the aircraft model has more or less than two engines.
14. The threshold distance may also be listed (in NM), as well as the engine type.
15. Performance-based navigation (PBN): one line is used for each PBN approval (e.g. area navigation (RNAV) 10, RNAV 1, required navigation performance (RNP) 4,…), with appropriate limitations or conditions listed in the "Specifications" and/or "Remarks" columns.
16. Limitations, conditions and regulatory basis for operational approval associated with the PBN approval (e.g. global navigation satellite system (GNSS), distance measuring equipment/DME/inertial reference unit (DME/DME/IRU), …).
17. Approval to conduct the training course and examination to be completed by applicants for a cabin crew attestation as specified in Annex V (Part-CC) to Commission Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX[6].

[6] OJ L xxx, xx.xx.xxxx, p. x.

18. Approval to issue cabin crew attestations as specified in Annex V (Part-CC) to Commission Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX.
19. The name of the person/organisation responsible for ensuring that the continuing airworthiness of the aircraft is maintained and a reference to the regulation that requires the work, i.e. Annex I (Part-M), Subpart G to Commission Regulation (EC) 2042/2003.
20. Other approvals or data can be entered here, using one line (or one multi-line block) per authorisation (e.g. short landing operations, steep approach operations, helicopter operations to/from a public interest site, helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area, helicopter operations without a safe forced landing capability, operations with increased bank angles, maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval, aircraft used for non-commercial operations).

EASA FORM 139 Issue 1

Appendix III

Proof of Ramp Inspection

Date:	Time:	Place:	Free format information of competent authority (logo, contact details tel/fax/email)
Operator:	State:	AOC no.:	
Route from: Flight no:	Route to:	Flight no:	
Flight type: Chartered by Operator:	Aircraft type:	Aircraft configuration:	
Charterer's State:	Registration mark:	Construction no:	
Flight crew State(s) of licensing:	Acknowledgement of Receipt(*) Name: …………………………………….. Function: ……………………………. Function: ………………………………	Signature: ………………………………	

		Check	Remark
A	**Flight deck**		
1	General condition		
2	Emergency exit		
3	Equipment		
	Documentation		
4	Manuals		
5	Checklists		
6	Navigation/ instrument charts		
7	Minimum equipment list		
8	Certificate of registration		
9	Noise certificate (where applicable)		
10	AOC or equivalent		
11	Radio licence		
12	Certificate of Airworthiness		
	Flight data		
13	Flight preparation		
14	Mass and balance calculation		
	Safety equipment		
15	Hand fire extinguishers		
16	Life-jackets / flotation devices		
17	Harness		
18	Oxygen equipment		
19	Independent Portable light		

		Check	Remark
	Flight crew		
20	Flight crew licence/composition		
	Journey log book / Technical log or equivalent		
21	Journey log book or equivalent		
22	Maintenance release		
23	Defect notification and rectification (incl. Tech log)		
24	Pre-flight inspection		
B	**Cabin Safety**		
1	General internal condition		
2	Cabin crew station and crew rest area		
3	First-aid kit / Emergency medical kit		
4	Hand fire extinguishers		
5	Life-jackets / flotation devices		
6	Seat belt and seat condition		
7	Emergency exit, lighting and Independent Portable light		
8	Slides /Life-rafts (as required), ELT		
9	Oxygen Supply (Cabin Crew and Passengers)		
10	Safety Instructions		
11	Cabin crew members		
12	Access to emergency exits		
13	Stowage of passenger baggage		
14	Seat capacity		

		Check	Remark
C	**Aircraft condition**		
1	General external condition		
2	Doors and hatches		
3	Flight controls		
4	Wheels, tyres and brakes		
5	Undercarriage, skids/floats		
6	Wheel well		
7	Powerplant and pylon		
8	Fan blades, Propellers, Rotors (main/tail)		
9	Obvious repairs		
10	Obvious unrepaired damage		
11	Leakage		
D	**Cargo**		
1	General condition of cargo compartment		
2	Dangerous goods		
3	Cargo stowage		
E	**General**		
1	General		

Action Taken		Inspection Item	Category	Remarks
	(3d) Immediate operating ban			
	(3c) Aircraft grounded by inspecting NAA			
	(3b) Corrective actions before flight			
	(3a) Restrictions on the aircraft operation			
	(2) Information to the authority and operator			
	(1) Information to the pilot-in-command/			
	(0) No remarks			
Inspector(s) sign or code				

Crew comments (if any):

(*) Signature by any member of the crew or other representative of the inspected operator does in no way imply acceptance of the listed findings but simply a confirmation that the aircraft has been inspected on the date an at the place indicated on this document. This report represents an indication of what was found on this occasion and must not be construed as a determination that the aircraft is fit for the intended flight. Data submitted in this report can be subject to changes upon entering into the centralised database.

EASA FORM 136 Issue 1

Appendix IV

Ramp inspection report

Competent Authority (*name*)
(*State*)
Ramp Inspection Report
NR: _._._._-_._._._-_._._._

Source: RI

Date: __.__.____ Place: _______

Local time: __:__

Operator: _________ AOC Number: _______

State: _________ Type of Operation: _______

Route from: _________ Flight Number: _______

Route to: _________ Flight Number: _______

Chartered by Operator*:_________ Charterer's State*: _______

* (where applicable)

Aircraft Type: _______ Registration Marks: _______

Aircraft Configuration: _______ Construction Number:_______

Flight crew: State of Licensing: _______

2nd State of Licensing*: _______

* (*where applicable*)

Findings:

Code / Std / Ref / Cat / Finding Detailed Description

_._._ _ _._._ _ ....

_._._ _ _._._ _ ....

_._._ _ _._._ _ ....

_._._ _ _._._ _ ....

_._._ _ _._._ _ ....

Class of actions taken: Detailed Description

❑ 3d) Immediate operating ban

❑ 3c) Aircraft grounded by inspecting competent authority..

❑ 3b) Corrective actions before flight..

❑ 3a) Restriction on aircraft flight operation..

❑ 2) Information to the competent authority and Operator

❑ 1) Information to pilot-in-command

Additional information (*if any*)

Inspector's names or no:..

– This report represents an indication of what was found on this occasion and must not be construed as a determination that the aircraft is fit for the intended flight.

– Data submitted in this report can be subject to changes for correct wording upon entering into the centralised database.

Item Code	Checked	Remark
A. Flight Deck		
General		
1. General Condition	1.	1.
2. Emergency Exit	2.	2.
3. Equipment	3.	3.
Documentation		
4. Manuals	4.	4.
5. Checklists	5.	5.
6. Radio Navigation Charts	6.	6.
7. Minimum Equipment List	7.	7.
8. Certificate of registration	8.	8.
9. Noise certificate (where applicable	9.	9.
10. AOC or equivalent	10.	10.
11. Radio licence	11.	11.
12. Certificate of Airworthiness (C of A	12.	12.
Flight data		
13. Flight preparation	13.	13.
14. Mass and balance calculation	14.	14.
Safety Equipment		
15. Hand fire extinguishers	15.	15.
16. Life-jackets / flotation device	16.	16.
17. Harness	17.	17.
18. Oxygen equipment	18.	18.
19. Independent Portable light	19.	19.
Flight Crew		
20. Flight crew licence/composition	20.	20.

Item Code	Checked	Remark
Journey logbook / Technical log or equivalent		
21. Journey log book, or equivalent	21.	21.
22. Maintenance release	22.	22.
23. Defect notification and rectification (incl. Tech log	23.	23.
24. Pre-flight inspection	24.	24.
B. Cabin Safety		
1. General Internal Condition	1.	1.
2. Cabin crew stations and crew rest area	2.	2.
3. First-aid kit/ Emergency medical kit	3.	3.
4. Hand fire extinguishers	4.	4.
5. Life-jackets / Flotation devices	5.	5.
6. Seat belt and seat condition	6.	6.
7. Emergency exit, lighting and Independent Portable light	7.	7.
8. Slides /Life-rafts (as required), ELT	8.	8.
9. Oxygen Supply (Cabin Crew and Passengers)	9.	9.
10. Safety Instructions	10.	10.
11. Cabin crew members	11.	11.
12. Access to emergency exits	12.	12.
13. Stowage of passenger baggage	13.	13.
14. Seat capacity	14.	14.

Item Code	***Checked***	***Remark***
C. Aircraft Condition		
1. General external condition	1.	1.
2. Doors and hatches	2.	2.
3. Flight controls	3.	3.
4. Wheels, tyres and brakes	4.	4.
5. Undercarriage skids/floats	5.	5.
6. Wheel well	6.	6.
7. Powerplant and pylon	7.	7.
8. Fan blades, Propellers, Rotors (main & tail)	8.	8.
9. Obvious repairs	9.	9.
10. Obvious unrepaired damage	10.	10.
11. Leakage	11.	11.
....		
D. Cargo		
1. General condition of cargo compartment	1.	1.
2. Dangerous Goods	2.	2.
3. Stowage of cargo	3.	3.
E. General		
1. General	1.	1.

EASA FORM 137 Issue 1

European Aviation Safety Agency

CONSOLIDATED DOCUMENT OF ANNEX III – ORGANISATION REQUIREMENTS FOR AIR OPERATIONS – PART-ORO

Implementing Rule, Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material

First edition: May 2013

Contents

Annex III — Organisation requirements for air operations — [Part-ORO] 7
ORO.GEN.005 Scope 7

SUBPART GEN — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 8
ORO.GEN.105 Competent authority 8
ORO.GEN.110 Operator responsibilities... 8
AMC1 ORO.GEN.110(c) Operator responsibilities 9
GM1 ORO.GEN.110(c) Operator responsibilities 10
AMC1 ORO.GEN.110(f)(h) Operator responsibilities 11
ORO.GEN.115 Application for an operator certificate 12
ORO.GEN.120 Means of compliance 12
AMC1 ORO.GEN.120(a) Means of compliance 13
ORO.GEN.125 Terms of approval and privileges of an operator 14
AMC1 ORO.GEN.125 Terms of approval and privileges of an operator 15
ORO.GEN.130 Changes 16
AMC1 ORO.GEN.130 Changes 17
GM1 ORO.GEN.130(a) Changes 18
GM2 ORO.GEN.130(a) Changes 18
GM3 ORO.GEN.130(b) Changes 18
ORO.GEN.135 Continued validity 20
ORO.GEN.140 Access 20
ORO.GEN.150 Findings 20
AMC1 ORO.GEN.150(b) Findings 21
GM1 ORO.GEN.150 Findings 22
ORO.GEN.155 Immediate reaction to a safety problem 23
ORO.GEN.160 Occurrence reporting 23
AMC1 ORO.GEN.160 Occurrence reporting 24
ORO.GEN.200 Management system 25
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1);(2);(3);(5) Management system 26
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system 27
GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system 28
GM2 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system 28
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system 29
GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system 30
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(3) Management system 31
GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(3) Management system 32
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(4) Management system 33
GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(4) Management system 34
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(5) Management system 35
AMC2 ORO.GEN.200(a)(5) Management system 35
GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(5) Management system 36
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system 37
GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system 39
GM2 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system 39
GM3 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system 40
GM4 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system 43
AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(b) Management system 44
ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 45
AMC1 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 46
AMC1 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 46
GM1 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 47
GM2 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 47
GM1 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 47
GM2 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities 47
ORO.GEN.210 Personnel requirements 48
ORO.GEN.215 Facility requirements 48

ORO.GEN.220 Record-keeping ... 48
AMC1 ORO.GEN.220(b) Record-keeping ... 49
GM1 ORO.GEN.220(b) Record-keeping ... 50

SUBPART AOC — AIR OPERATOR CERTIFICATION ... 51

ORO.AOC.100 Application for an air operator certificate ... 51
AMC1 ORO.AOC.100 Application for an air operator certificate (AOC) ... 52
ORO.AOC.105 Operations specifications and privileges of an AOC holder ... 53
ORO.AOC.110 Leasing agreement ... 53
AMC1 ORO.AOC.110 Leasing agreement ... 54
AMC1 ORO.AOC.110(c) Leasing agreement ... 54
AMC2 ORO.AOC.110(c) Leasing agreement ... 54
GM1 ORO.AOC.110(c) Leasing agreement ... 55
AMC1 ORO.AOC.110(f) Leasing agreement ... 56
ORO.AOC.115 Code-share agreements ... 57
AMC1 ORO.AOC.115(a)(1) Code share agreements ... 58
AMC1 ORO.AOC.115(b) Code share arrangements ... 58
AMC2 ORO.AOC.115(b) Code share agreements ... 59
ORO.AOC.120 Approvals to provide cabin crew training and to issue cabin crew attestations ... 60
ORO.AOC.125 Non-commercial operations of aircraft listed in the operations specifications by the holder of an AOC ... 60
ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring — aeroplanes ... 61
AMC1 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes ... 62
GM1 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes ... 64
Appendix 1 to AMC1 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes ... 69
GM2 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes ... 71
ORO.AOC.135 Personnel requirements ... 72
AMC1 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements ... 73
AMC2 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements ... 73
GM1 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements ... 74
GM2 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements ... 74
ORO.AOC.140 Facility requirements ... 75
ORO.AOC.150 Documentation requirements ... 75

SUBPART MLR — MANUALS, LOGS AND RECORDS ... 76

ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual — general ... 76
ORO.MLR.101 Operations manual — structure ... 76
AMC1 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – general ... 77
AMC2 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – General ... 77
AMC3 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – general ... 78
AMC4 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – General ... 90
GM1 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – general ... 91
GM1 ORO.MLR.100(h) Operations manual – general ... 91
ORO.MLR.105 Minimum equipment list ... 92
GM1 ORO.MLR.105(a) Minimum equipment list ... 94
AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(c) Minimum equipment list ... 95
AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(d)(3) Minimum equipment list ... 95
GM1 ORO.MLR.105(e);(f) Minimum equipment list ... 96
AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(f) Minimum equipment list ... 97
GM1 OR.OPS.MLR.105(f) Minimum equipment list ... 98
AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(g) Minimum equipment list ... 99
GM1 ORO.MLR.105(g) Minimum equipment list ... 100
AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(h) Minimum equipment list ... 101
AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(j) Minimum equipment list ... 101
GM1 ORO.MLR.105(j) Minimum equipment list ... 102
ORO.MLR.110 Journey log ... 103
AMC1 ORO.MLR.110 Journey log ... 104
GM1 ORO.MLR.110 Journey log ... 105

ORO.MLR.115 Record-keeping ... 106
AMC1 ORO.MLR.115 Record-keeping ... 107

SUBPART SEC — SECURITY ... 108
ORO.SEC.100.A Flight crew compartment security ... 108
ORO.SEC.100.H Flight crew compartment security ... 108

SUBPART FC — FLIGHT CREW ... 109
ORO.FC.005 Scope ... 109
ORO.FC.100 Composition of flight crew ... 109
AMC1 ORO.FC.100(c) Composition of flight crew ... 110
ORO.FC.105 Designation as pilot-in-command/commander ... 111
AMC1 ORO.FC.105(b)(2);(c) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander ... 112
AMC1 ORO.FC.105(c) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander ... 113
AMC2 ORO.FC.105(c) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander ... 113
GM1 ORO.FC.105(d) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander ... 114
ORO.FC.110 Flight engineer ... 115
ORO.FC.115 Crew resource management (CRM) training ... 115
ORO.FC.120 Operator conversion training ... 115
ORO.FC.125 Differences training and familiarisation training ... 115
AMC1 ORO.FC.125 Differences training and familiarisation training ... 116
ORO.FC.130 Recurrent training and checking ... 117
ORO.FC.135 Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat ... 117
ORO.FC.140 Operation on more than one type or variant ... 117
ORO.FC.145 Provision of training ... 117
AMC1 ORO.FC.145(b) Provision of training ... 118
AMC1 ORO.FC.145(d) Provision of training ... 118
ORO.FC.200 Composition of flight crew ... 119
ORO.FC.A.201 In-flight relief of flight crew members ... 119
ORO.FC.202 Single-pilot operations under IFR or at night ... 120
AMC1 ORO.FC.200(a) Composition of flight crew ... 121
ORO.FC.205 Command course ... 122
AMC1 ORO.FC.205 Command course ... 123
ORO.FC.215 Initial operator's crew resource management (CRM) training ... 124
AMC1 ORO.FC.115&215 Crew resource management (CRM) training ... 125
AMC1.1 ORO.FC.115&.215 Crew resource management (CRM) training ... 128
GM1 ORO.FC.115&.215 Crew resource management (CRM) training ... 129
ORO.FC.220 Operator conversion training and checking ... 130
AMC1 ORO.FC.220 Operator conversion training and checking ... 131
AMC2 ORO.FC.220 Operator conversion training and checking ... 133
GM1 ORO.FC.220(b) Operator conversion training and checking ... 134
GM1 ORO.FC.220(d) Operator conversion training and checking ... 134
ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking ... 135
AMC1 ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking ... 136
AMC2 ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking ... 141
GM1 ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking ... 142
ORO.FC.235 Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat ... 143
AMC1 ORO.FC.235(d) Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat ... 144
GM1 ORO.FC.235(f);(g) Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat ... 145
ORO.FC.240 Operation on more than one type or variant ... 146
AMC1 ORO.FC.240 Operation on more than one type or variant ... 147
ORO.FC.A.245 Alternative training and qualification programme ... 149
AMC1 ORO.FC.A.245 Alternative training and qualification programme ... 150
GM1 ORO.FC.A.245 Alternative training and qualification programme ... 154
AMC1 ORO.FC.A.245(a) Alternative training and qualification programme ... 155
AMC1 ORO.FC.A.245(d)(e)(2) Alternative training and qualification programme ... 155
ORO.FC.A.250 Commanders holding a CPL(A) ... 156
ORO.FC.H.250 Commanders holding a CPL(H) ... 156

SUBPART CC — CABIN CREW 157
ORO.CC.005 Scope 157
ORO.CC.100 Number and composition of cabin crew 158
AMC1 ORO.CC.100 Number and composition of cabin crew 159
GM1 ORO.CC.100 Number and composition of cabin crew 160
ORO.CC.110 Conditions for assignment to duties... 161
ORO.CC.115 Conduct of training courses and associated checking 161
GM1 ORO.CC.115 Conduct of training courses and associated checking 162
AMC1 ORO.CC.115(c) Conduct of training courses and associated checking 163
AMC1 ORO.CC.115(d) Conduct of training courses and associated checking............................... 163
AMC1 ORO.CC.115(e) Conduct of training courses and associated checking............................... 163
GM1 ORO.CC.115(e) Conduct of training courses and associated checking................................. 166
ORO.CC.120 Initial training course 167
ORO.CC.125 Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training 167
AMC1 ORO.CC.125(c) Aircraft type specific training and operator
conversion training... 168
AMC1 ORO.CC.125(d) Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training................ 169
AMC1 ORO.CC.125 & ORO.CC.130 Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training
& Differences training 171
AMC1 ORO.CC.125(b) & ORO.CC.130(c) Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training
& Differences training 171
ORO.CC.130 Differences training.. 172
ORO.CC.135 Familiarisation.. 172
AMC1 ORO.CC.135 Familiarisation 173
ORO.CC.140 Recurrent training 174
AMC1 ORO.CC.140 Recurrent training 175
ORO.CC.145 Refresher training 176
AMC1 ORO.CC.145 Refresher training 177
GM1 ORO.CC.145 Refresher training 178
ORO.CC.200 Senior cabin crew member... 179
AMC1 ORO.CC.200(c) Senior cabin crew member 180
AMC1 ORO.CC.200(d) Senior cabin crew member 180
ORO.CC.205 Reduction of the number of cabin crew during ground operations and in unforeseen
circumstances... 181
AMC1 ORO.CC.205(c)(1) Reduction of the number of cabin crew during ground operations
and in unforeseen circumstances.. 182
ORO.CC.210 Additional conditions for assignment to duties.. 183
GM1 ORO.CC.210(d) Additional conditions for assignment to duties 184
ORO.CC.215 Training and checking programs and related documentation 185
GM1 ORO.CC.215(b)(2) Training and checking programmes and related documentation 186
ORO.CC.250 Operation on more than one aircraft type or variant 187
AMC1 ORO.CC.250(b) Operation on more than one aircraft type or variant 188
GM1 ORO.CC.250 Operation on more than one aircraft type or variant.. 189
ORO.CC.255 Single cabin crew member operations 190

SUBPART TC — TECHNICAL CREW IN HEMS, HHO OR NVIS OPERATIONS 191
ORO.TC.100 Scope 191
ORO.TC.105 Conditions for assignment to duties 191
GM1 ORO.TC.105 Conditions for assignment to duties 192
ORO.TC.110 Training and checking.. 193
AMC1 ORO.TC.110 Training and checking 194
ORO.TC.115 Initial training 195
AMC1 ORO.TC.115 Initial training 196
ORO.TC.120 Operator conversion training 197
AMC1 ORO.TC.120&.125 Operator conversion training and differences training.......................... 198
AMC2 ORO.TC.120&.125 Operator conversion training and differences training.......................... 199
ORO.TC.125 Differences training 200
ORO.TC.130 Familiarisation flights 200

ORO.TC.135 Recurrent training 200
AMC1 ORO.TC.135 Recurrent training.. 201
ORO.TC.140 Refresher training 202
AMC1 ORO.TC.140 Refresher training.. 203

ANNEX III
ORGANISATION REQUIREMENTS FOR AIR OPERATIONS
[PART-ORO]

ORO.GEN.005 Scope

This Annex establishes requirements to be followed by an air operator conducting commercial air transport operations.

SUBPART GEN — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section I — General

ORO.GEN.105 Competent authority

For the purpose of this Annex, the competent authority exercising oversight over operators subject to a certification obligation shall be for operators having their principal place of business in a Member State, the authority designated by that Member State.

ORO.GEN.110 Operator responsibilities

(a) The operator is responsible for the operation of the aircraft in accordance with Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, the relevant requirements of this Annex and its certificate.

(b) Every flight shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions of the operations manual.

(c) The operator shall establish and maintain a system for exercising operational control over any flight operated under the terms of its certificate.

(d) The operator shall ensure that its aircraft are equipped and its crews are qualified as required for the area and type of operation.

(e) The operator shall ensure that all personnel assigned to, or directly involved in, ground and flight operations are properly instructed, have demonstrated their abilities in their particular duties and are aware of their responsibilities and the relationship of such duties to the operation as a whole.

(f) The operator shall establish procedures and instructions for the safe operation of each aircraft type, containing ground staff and crew member duties and responsibilities for all types of operation on the ground and in flight. These procedures shall not require crew members to perform any activities during critical phases of flight other than those required for the safe operation of the aircraft.

(g) The operator shall ensure that all personnel are made aware that they shall comply with the laws, regulations and procedures of those States in which operations are conducted and that are pertinent to the performance of their duties.

(h) The operator shall establish a checklist system for each aircraft type to be used by crew members in all phases of flight under normal, abnormal and emergency conditions to ensure that the operating procedures in the operations manual are followed. The design and utilisation of checklists shall observe human factors principles and take into account the latest relevant documentation from the aircraft manufacturer.

(i) The operator shall specify flight planning procedures to provide for the safe conduct of the flight based on considerations of aircraft performance, other operating limitations and relevant expected conditions on the route to be followed and at the aerodromes or operating sites concerned. These procedures shall be included in the operations manual.

(j) The operator shall establish and maintain dangerous goods training programmes for personnel as required by the Technical Instructions which shall be subject to review and approval by the competent authority. Training programmes shall be commensurate with the responsibilities of personnel.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.110(c) Operator responsibilities

OPERATIONAL CONTROL

The organisation and methods established to exercise operational control should be included in the operations manual and should cover at least a description of responsibilities concerning the initiation, continuation and termination or diversion of each flight.

GM1 ORO.GEN.110(c) Operator responsibilities

OPERATIONAL CONTROL

(a) ORO.GEN.110(c) does not imply a requirement for licensed flight dispatchers or a full flight watch system.

(b) If the operator employs flight operations officers in conjunction with a method of operational control, training for these personnel should be based on relevant parts of ICAO Doc 7192 Training Manual, Part D-3. This training should be described in the operations manual.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.110(f)(h) Operator responsibilities

ESTABLISHMENT OF PROCEDURES

(a) An operator should establish procedures to be followed by cabin crew covering at least:

(1) arming and disarming of slides;

(2) operation of cabin lights, including emergency lighting;

(3) prevention and detection of cabin, oven and toilet fires;

(4) actions to be taken when turbulence is encountered; and

(5) actions to be taken in the event of an emergency and/or an evacuation.

(b) When establishing procedures and a checklist system for cabin crew with respect to the aircraft cabin, the operator should take into account at least the following duties:

Duties	Pre-take off	In-flight	Pre-landing	Post-landing
(1) Briefing of cabin crew by the senior cabin crew member prior to commencement of a flight or series of flights	x			
(2) Check of safety and emergency equipment in accordance with operator's policies and procedures	x			
(3) Security checks as applicable	x			x
(4) Passenger embarkation and disembarkation	x			x
(5) Securing of passenger cabin (e.g. seat belts, cabin cargo/baggage)	x		x	
(6) Securing of galleys and stowage of equipment	x	if required	x	
(7) Arming of door/exit slides	x			
(8) Safety briefing / information to passengers	x	x	x	x
(9) 'Cabin secure' report to flight crew	x	if required	x	
(10) Operation of cabin lights	x	if required	x	x
(11) Cabin crew at assigned crew stations	x	if required	x	x
(12) Surveillance of passenger cabin	x	x	x	x
(13) Prevention and detection of fire in the cabin (including the combi-cargo area, crew rest areas, galleys, lavatories and any other cabin remote areas) and instructions for actions to be taken	x	x	x	x
(14) Actions to be taken when turbulence is encountered		x		
(15) Actions to be taken in case of in-flight incidents (e.g. medical emergency)		x		
(16) Actions to be taken in the event of emergency situations	x	x	x	x
(17) Disarming of door/exit slides				x
(18) Reporting of any deficiency and/or un-serviceability of equipment and/or any incident	x	x	x	x

(c) The operator should specify the contents of safety briefings for all cabin crew members prior to the commencement of a flight or series of flights.

ORO.GEN.115 Application for an operator certificate

(a) The application for an operator certificate or an amendment to an existing certificate shall be made in a form and manner established by the competent authority, taking into account the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.

(b) Applicants for an initial certificate shall provide the competent authority with documentation demonstrating how they will comply with the requirements established in Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules. Such documentation shall include a procedure describing how changes not requiring prior approval will be managed and notified to the competent authority.

ORO.GEN.120 Means of compliance

(a) Alternative means of compliance to those adopted by the Agency may be used by an operator to establish compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules.

(b) When an operator subject to certification wishes to use an alternative means of compliance to the Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) adopted by the Agency to establish compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, it shall, prior to implementing it, provide the competent authority with a full description of the alternative means of compliance. The description shall include any revisions to manuals or procedures that may be relevant, as well as an assessment demonstrating that the Implementing Rules are met.

The operator may implement these alternative means of compliance subject to prior approval by the competent authority and upon receipt of the notification as prescribed in ARO.GEN.120 (d).

AMC1 ORO.GEN.120(a) Means of compliance

DEMONSTRATION OF COMPLIANCE

In order to demonstrate that the Implementing Rules are met, a risk assessment should be completed and documented. The result of this risk assessment should demonstrate that an equivalent level of safety to that established by the Acceptable Means of Compliance (AMC) adopted by the Agency is reached.

ORO.GEN.125 Terms of approval and privileges of an operator

A certified operator shall comply with the scope and privileges defined in the operations specifications attached to the operator's certificate.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.125 Terms of approval and privileges of an operator

MANAGEMENT SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION

The management system documentation should contain the privileges and detailed scope of activities for which the operator is certified, as relevant to the applicable requirements. The scope of activities defined in the management system documentation should be consistent with the terms of approval.

ORO.GEN.130 Changes

(a) Any change affecting:

(1) the scope of the certificate or the operations specifications of an operator; or

(2) any of the elements of the operator's management system as required in ORO.GEN.200 (a)(1) and (a)(2),

shall require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) For any changes requiring prior approval in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, the operator shall apply for and obtain an approval issued by the competent authority. The application shall be submitted before any such change takes place, in order to enable the competent authority to determine continued compliance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules and to amend, if necessary, the operator certificate and related terms of approval attached to it.

The operator shall provide the competent authority with any relevant documentation.

The change shall only be implemented upon receipt of formal approval by the competent authority in accordance with ARO.GEN.330.

The operator shall operate under the conditions prescribed by the competent authority during such changes, as applicable.

(c) All changes not requiring prior approval shall be managed and notified to the competent authority as defined in the procedure approved by the competent authority in accordance with ARO.GEN.310 (c).

AMC1 ORO.GEN.130 Changes

APPLICATION TIME FRAMES

(a) The application for the amendment of an operator certificate should be submitted at least 30 days before the date of the intended changes.

(b) In the case of a planned change of a nominated person, the operator should inform the competent authority at least 10 days before the date of the proposed change.

(c) Unforeseen changes should be notified at the earliest opportunity, in order to enable the competent authority to determine continued compliance with the applicable requirements and to amend, if necessary, the operator certificate and related terms of approval.

GM1 ORO.GEN.130(a) Changes

GENERAL

(a) Typical examples of changes that may affect the certificate or the operations specifications or the operator's management system as required in ORO.GEN.200 (a)(1) and (a)(2) are listed below:

(1) the name of the operator;

(2) a change of legal entity;

(3) the operator's principal place of business;

(4) the operator's scope of activities;

(5) additional locations of the operator;

(6) the accountable manager;

(7) any of the persons referred to in ORO.GEN.210 (a) and (b);

(8) the operator's documentation as required by this Annex, safety policy and procedures;

(9) the facilities.

(b) Prior approval by the competent authority is required for any changes to the operator's procedure describing how changes not requiring prior approval will be managed and notified to the competent authority.

(c) Changes requiring prior approval may only be implemented upon receipt of formal approval by the competent authority.

GM2 ORO.GEN.130(a) Changes

CHANGE OF NAME

A change of name requires the operator to submit a new application as a matter of urgency.

Where this is the only change to report, the new application can be accompanied by a copy of the documentation previously submitted to the competent authority under the previous name, as a means of demonstrating how the operator complies with the applicable requirements.

GM3 ORO.GEN.130(b) Changes

CHANGES REQUIRING PRIOR APPROVAL

For commercial operations, the following GM is a non-exhaustive checklist, in alphabetical order, of items that require prior approval from the competent authority as specified in the applicable Implementing Rules:

(a) alternative means of compliance;

(b) procedures regarding items to be notified to the competent authority;

(c) cabin crew:

(1) evacuation procedures with a reduced number of required cabin crew during ground operations or in unforeseen circumstances;

(2) for commercial air transport (CAT) operators, conduct of the training, examination and checking required by Annex V (Part-CC) to Regulation (EU) No 290/2012[7] and issue of cabin crew attestations;

(3) procedures for cabin crew to operate on four aircraft types;

(4) training programmes, including syllabi;

(d) leasing agreements;

[7] Commission Regulation (EU) No 290/2012 of 30 March 2012 amending Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 laying down technical requirements and administrative procedures related to civil aviation aircrew pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council.

(e) non-commercial operations by air operator certificate (AOC) holders;

(f) specific approvals in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA);

(g) dangerous goods training programmes;

(h) flight crew:

(1) alternative training and qualification programmes (ATQPs);

(2) procedures for flight crew to operate on more than one type or variant;

(3) training and checking programmes, including syllabi and use of flight simulation training devices (FSTDs);

(i) fuel policy;

(j) helicopter operations:

(1) airborne radar approaches;

(2) over a hostile environment located outside a congested area, unless the operator holds an approval to operate according to Subpart J of Annex V (SPA.HEMS);

(3) procedures for selecting off-shore alternates;

(4) to/from a public interest site;

(5) without an assured safe forced landing capability;

(k) mass and balance:

(1) standard masses for load items other than standard masses for passengers and checked baggage;

(2) use of on-board mass and balance computer systems;

(l) minimum equipment list (MEL):

(1) MEL;

(2) operating other than in accordance with the MEL, but within the constraints of the master minimum equipment list (MMEL);

(3) rectification interval extension (RIE) procedures;

(m) minimum flight altitudes:

(1) the method for establishing minimum flight altitudes;

(2) descent procedures to fly below specified minimum altitudes;

(n) performance:

(1) increased bank angles at take-off (for performance class A aeroplanes);

(2) short landing operations (for performance class A and B aeroplanes);

(3) steep approach operations (for performance class A and B aeroplanes);

(o) isolated aerodrome: using an isolated aerodrome as destination aerodrome for operations with aeroplanes;

(p) approach flight technique:

(1) all approaches not flown as stabilised approaches for a particular approach to a particular runway;

(2) non-precision approaches not flown with the continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique for each particular approach/runway combination;

(q) maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an extended range operations with two-engined aeroplanes (ETOPS) approval:

(1) air operations with two-engined performance class A aeroplanes with a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of 19 or less and a maximum take-off mass less than 45 360 kg, over a route that contains a point further than 120 minutes from an adequate aerodrome, under standard conditions in still air;

(r) aircraft categories:

(1) Applying a lower landing mass than the maximum certified landing mass for determining the indicated airspeed at threshold (VAT).

ORO.GEN.135 Continued validity

(a) The operator's certificate shall remain valid subject to:

(1) the operator remaining in compliance with the relevant requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, taking into account the provisions related to the handling of findings as specified under ORO.GEN.150;

(2) the competent authority being granted access to the operator as defined in ORO.GEN.140 to determine continued compliance with the relevant requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules; and

(3) the certificate not being surrendered or revoked.

(b) Upon revocation or surrender the certificate shall be returned to the competent authority without delay.

ORO.GEN.140 Access

(a) For the purpose of determining compliance with the relevant requirements of Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 and its Implementing Rules, the operator shall grant access at any time to any facility, aircraft, document, records, data, procedures or any other material relevant to its activity subject to certification, whether it is contracted or not, to any person authorised by one of the following authorities:

(1) the competent authority defined in ORO.GEN.105;

(2) the authority acting under the provisions of ARO.GEN.300(d), ARO.GEN.300(e) or ARO.RAMP.

(b) Access to the aircraft mentioned under (a) shall include the possibility to enter and remain in the aircraft during flight operations unless otherwise decided by the commander for the flight crew compartment in accordance with CAT.GEN.MPA.135 in the interest of safety.

ORO.GEN.150 Findings

After receipt of notification of findings, the operator shall:

(a) identify the root cause of the non-compliance;

(b) define a corrective action plan; and

(c) demonstrate corrective action implementation to the satisfaction of the competent authority within a period agreed with that authority as defined in ARO.GEN.350 (d).

AMC1 ORO.GEN.150(b) Findings

GENERAL

The corrective action plan defined by the operator should address the effects of the non-compliance, as well as its root-cause.

GM1 ORO.GEN.150 Findings

GENERAL

(a) Preventive action is the action to eliminate the cause of a potential non-compliance or other undesirable potential situation.

(b) Corrective action is the action to eliminate or mitigate the root cause(s) and prevent recurrence of an existing detected non-compliance or other undesirable condition or situation. Proper determination of the root cause is crucial for defining effective corrective actions to prevent reoccurrence.

(c) Correction is the action to eliminate a detected non-compliance.

ORO.GEN.155 Immediate reaction to a safety problem

The operator shall implement:

(a) any safety measures mandated by the competent authority in accordance with ARO.GEN.135 (c); and

(b) any relevant mandatory safety information issued by the Agency, including airworthiness directives.

ORO.GEN.160 Occurrence reporting

(a) The operator shall report to the competent authority, and to any other organisation required by the State of the operator to be informed, any accident, serious incident and occurrence as defined in Regulation (EU) No 996/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council[8] and Directive 2003/42/EC.

(b) Without prejudice to point (a) the operator shall report to the competent authority and to the organisation responsible for the design of the aircraft any incident, malfunction, technical defect, exceeding of technical limitations, occurrence that would highlight inaccurate, incomplete or ambiguous information contained in data established in accordance with Regulation 1702/2003 or other irregular circumstance that has or may have endangered the safe operation of the aircraft and that has not resulted in an accident or serious incident.

(c) Without prejudice to Regulation (EU) No 996/2010, Directive 2003/42/EC, Commission Regulation (EC) No 1321/2007[9] and Commission Regulation (EC) No 1330/2007[10], the reports referred in paragraphs (a) and (b) shall be made in a form and manner established by the competent authority and contain all pertinent information about the condition known to the operator.

(d) Reports shall be made as soon as practicable, but in any case within 72 hours of the operator identifying the condition to which the report relates, unless exceptional circumstances prevent this.

(e) Where relevant, the operator shall produce a follow-up report to provide details of actions it intends to take to prevent similar occurrences in the future, as soon as these actions have been identified. This report shall be produced in a form and manner established by the competent authority.

---

[8] OJ L 295, 12.11.2010, p. 35.
[9] OJ L 294, 13.11.2007, p. 3.
[10] OJ L 295, 14.11.2007, p 7.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.160 Occurrence reporting

GENERAL

(a) The operator should report all occurrences defined in AMC 20-8, and as required by the applicable national rules implementing Directive 2003/43/EC[11] on occurrence reporting in civil aviation.

(b) In addition to the reports required by AMC 20-8 and Directive 2003/43/EC, the operator should report volcanic ash clouds encountered during flight.

[11] Directive 2003/42/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 13 June 2003 on occurrence reporting in civil aviation *OJ L 167*, 4.7.2003, p. 23–36.

Section 2 — Management

ORO.GEN.200 Management system

(a) The operator shall establish, implement and maintain a management system that includes:

(1) clearly defined lines of responsibility and accountability throughout the operator, including a direct safety accountability of the accountable manager;

(2) a description of the overall philosophies and principles of the operator with regard to safety, referred to as the safety policy;

(3) the identification of aviation safety hazards entailed by the activities of the operator, their evaluation and the management of associated risks, including taking actions to mitigate the risk and verify their effectiveness;

(4) maintaining personnel trained and competent to perform their tasks;

(5) documentation of all management system key processes, including a process for making personnel aware of their responsibilities and the procedure for amending this documentation;

(6) a function to monitor compliance of the operator with the relevant requirements. Compliance monitoring shall include a feedback system of findings to the accountable manager to ensure effective implementation of corrective actions as necessary; and

(7) any additional requirements that are prescribed in the relevant subparts of this Annex or other applicable Annexes.

(b) The management system shall correspond to the size of the operator and the nature and complexity of its activities, taking into account the hazards and associated risks inherent in these activities.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1);(2);(3);(5) Management system

NON-COMPLEX OPERATORS – GENERAL

(a) Safety risk management may be performed using hazard checklists or similar risk management tools or processes, which are integrated into the activities of the operator.

(b) The operator should manage safety risks related to a change. The management of change should be a documented process to identify external and internal change that may have an adverse effect on safety. It should make use of the operator's existing hazard identification, risk assessment and mitigation processes.

(c) The operator should identify a person who fulfils the role of safety manager and who is responsible for coordinating the safety management system. This person may be the accountable manager or a person with an operational role within the operator.

(d) Within the operator, responsibilities should be identified for hazard identification, risk assessment and mitigation.

(e) The safety policy should include a commitment to improve towards the highest safety standards, comply with all applicable legal requirements, meet all applicable standards, consider best practices and provide appropriate resources.

(f) The operator should, in cooperation with other stakeholders, develop, coordinate and maintain an emergency response plan (ERP) that ensures orderly and safe transition from normal to emergency operations and return to normal operations. The ERP should provide the actions to be taken by the operator or specified individuals in an emergency and reflect the size, nature and complexity of the activities performed by the operator.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system

COMPLEX OPERATORS – ORGANISATION AND ACCOUNTABILITIES

The management system of an operator should encompass safety by including a safety manager and a safety review board in the organisational structure.

(a) Safety manager

(1) The safety manager should act as the focal point and be responsible for the development, administration and maintenance of an effective safety management system.

(2) The functions of the safety manager should be to:

(i) facilitate hazard identification, risk analysis and management;

(ii) monitor the implementation of actions taken to mitigate risks, as listed in the safety action plan;

(iii) provide periodic reports on safety performance;

(iv) ensure maintenance of safety management documentation;

(v) ensure that there is safety management training available and that it meets acceptable standards;

(vi) provide advice on safety matters; and

(vii) ensure initiation and follow-up of internal occurrence / accident investigations.

(b) Safety review board

(1) The Safety review board should be a high level committee that considers matters of strategic safety in support of the accountable manager's safety accountability.

(2) The board should be chaired by the accountable manager and be composed of heads of functional areas.

(3) The safety review board should monitor:

(i) safety performance against the safety policy and objectives;

(ii) that any safety action is taken in a timely manner; and

(iii) the effectiveness of the operator's safety management processes.

(c) The safety review board should ensure that appropriate resources are allocated to achieve the established safety performance.

(d) The safety manager or any other relevant person may attend, as appropriate, safety review board meetings. He/she may communicate to the accountable manager all information, as necessary, to allow decision making based on safety data.

GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system

SAFETY MANAGER

(a) Depending on the size of the operator and the nature and complexity of its activities, the safety manager may be assisted by additional safety personnel for the performance of all safety management related tasks.

(b) Regardless of the organisational set-up it is important that the safety manager remains the unique focal point as regards the development, administration and maintenance of the operator's safety management system.

GM2 ORO.GEN.200(a)(1) Management system

COMPLEX OPERATORS – SAFETY ACTION GROUP

(a) A safety action group may be established as a standing group or as an ad-hoc group to assist or act on behalf of the safety review board.

(b) More than one safety action group may be established depending on the scope of the task and specific expertise required.

(c) The safety action group should report to and take strategic direction from the safety review board and should be comprised of managers, supervisors and personnel from operational areas.

(d) The safety action group should:

  (1) monitor operational safety;

  (2) resolve identified risks;

  (3) assess the impact on safety of operational changes; and

  (4) ensure that safety actions are implemented within agreed timescales.

(e) The safety action group should review the effectiveness of previous safety recommendations and safety promotion.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system

COMPLEX OPERATORS − SAFETY POLICY

(a) The safety policy should:

(1) be endorsed by the accountable manager;

(2) reflect organisational commitments regarding safety and its proactive and systematic management;

(3) be communicated, with visible endorsement, throughout the operator; and

(4) include safety reporting principles.

(b) The safety policy should include a commitment:

(1) to improve towards the highest safety standards;

(2) to comply with all applicable legislation, meet all applicable standards and consider best practices;

(3) to provide appropriate resources;

(4) to enforce safety as one primary responsibility of all managers; and

(5) not to blame someone for reporting something which would not have been otherwise detected.

(c) Senior management should:

(1) continually promote the safety policy to all personnel and demonstrate their commitment to it;

(2) provide necessary human and financial resources for its implementation; and

(3) establish safety objectives and performance standards.

GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(2) Management system

SAFETY POLICY

The safety policy is the means whereby the operator states its intention to maintain and, where practicable, improve safety levels in all its activities and to minimise its contribution to the risk of an aircraft accident as far as is reasonably practicable.

The safety policy should state that the purpose of safety reporting and internal investigations is to improve safety, not to apportion blame to individuals.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(3) Management system

COMPLEX OPERATORS – SAFETY RISK MANAGEMENT

(a) Hazard identification processes

(1) Reactive and proactive schemes for hazard identification should be the formal means of collecting, recording, analysing, acting on and generating feedback about hazards and the associated risks that affect the safety of the operational activities of the operator.

(2) All reporting systems, including confidential reporting schemes, should include an effective feedback process.

(b) Risk assessment and mitigation processes

(1) A formal risk management process should be developed and maintained that ensures analysis (in terms of likelihood and severity of occurrence), assessment (in terms of tolerability) and control (in terms of mitigation) of risks to an acceptable level.

(2) The levels of management who have the authority to make decisions regarding the tolerability of safety risks, in accordance with (b)(1), should be specified.

(c) Internal safety investigation

(1) The scope of internal safety investigations should extend beyond the scope of occurrences required to be reported to the competent authority.

(d) Safety performance monitoring and measurement

(1) Safety performance monitoring and measurement should be the process by which the safety performance of the operator is verified in comparison to the safety policy and objectives.

(2) This process should include:

(i) safety reporting, addressing also the status of compliance with the applicable requirements;

(ii) safety studies, that is, rather large analyses encompassing broad safety concerns;

(iii) safety reviews including trends reviews, which would be conducted during introduction and deployment of new technologies, change or implementation of procedures, or in situations of structural change in operations;

(iv) safety audits focussing on the integrity of the operator's management system, and periodically assessing the status of safety risk controls; and

(v) safety surveys, examining particular elements or procedures of a specific operation, such as problem areas or bottlenecks in daily operations, perceptions and opinions of operational personnel and areas of dissent or confusion.

(e) The management of change

The operator should manage safety risks related to a change. The management of change should be a documented process to identify external and internal change that may have an adverse effect on safety. It should make use of the operator's existing hazard identification, risk assessment and mitigation processes.

(f) Continuous improvement

The operator should continuously seek to improve its safety performance. Continuous improvement should be achieved through:

(1) proactive and reactive evaluations of facilities, equipment, documentation and procedures through safety audits and surveys;

(2) proactive evaluation of individuals' performance to verify the fulfilment of their safety responsibilities; and

(3) reactive evaluations in order to verify the effectiveness of the system for control and mitigation of risk.

(g) The emergency response plan (ERP)

(1) An ERP should be established that provides the actions to be taken by the operator or specified individuals in an emergency. The ERP should reflect the size, nature and complexity of the activities performed by the operator.

(2) The ERP should ensure:

(i) an orderly and safe transition from normal to emergency operations;

(ii) safe continuation of operations or return to normal operations as soon as practicable; and

(iii) coordination with the emergency response plans of other organisations, where appropriate.

GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(3) Management system

INTERNAL OCCURRENCE REPORTING SCHEME

(a) The overall purpose of the scheme is to use reported information to improve the level of safety performance of the operator and not to attribute blame.

(b) The objectives of the scheme are to:

(1) enable an assessment to be made of the safety implications of each relevant incident and accident, including previous similar occurrences, so that any necessary action can be initiated; and

(2) ensure that knowledge of relevant incidents and accidents is disseminated, so that other persons and operators may learn from them.

(c) The scheme is an essential part of the overall monitoring function and it is complementary to the normal day-to-day procedures and 'control' systems and is not intended to duplicate or supersede any of them. The scheme is a tool to identify those instances where routine procedures have failed.

(d) All occurrence reports judged reportable by the person submitting the report should be retained as the significance of such reports may only become obvious at a later date.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(4) Management system

TRAINING AND COMMUNICATION ON SAFETY

(a) Training

(1) All personnel should receive safety training as appropriate for their safety responsibilities.

(2) Adequate records of all safety training provided should be kept.

(b) Communication

(1) The operator should establish communication about safety matters that:

(i) ensures that all personnel are aware of the safety management activities as appropriate for their safety responsibilities;

(ii) conveys safety critical information, especially relating to assessed risks and analysed hazards;

(iii) explains why particular actions are taken; and

(iv) explains why safety procedures are introduced or changed.

(2) Regular meetings with personnel where information, actions and procedures are discussed may be used to communicate safety matters.

GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(4) Management system

TRAINING AND COMMUNICATION ON SAFETY

The safety training programme may consist of self-instruction via the media (newsletters, flight safety magazines), class-room training, e-learning or similar training provided by training service providers.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(5) Management system

MANAGEMENT SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION – GENERAL

(a) The operator's management system documentation should at least include the following information:

(1) a statement signed by the accountable manager to confirm that the operator will continuously work in accordance with the applicable requirements and the operator's documentation as required by this Annex;

(2) the operator's scope of activities;

(3) the titles and names of persons referred to in ORO.GEN.210 (a) and (b);

(4) an operator chart showing the lines of responsibility between the persons referred to in ORO.GEN.210;

(5) a general description and location of the facilities referred to in ORO.GEN.215;

(6) procedures specifying how the operator ensures compliance with the applicable requirements;

(7) the amendment procedure for the operator's management system documentation.

(b) The operator's management system documentation may be included in a separate manual or in (one of) the manual(s) as required by the applicable Subpart(s). A cross reference should be included.

AMC2 ORO.GEN.200(a)(5) Management system

COMPLEX OPERATORS – SAFETY MANAGEMENT MANUAL

(a) The safety management manual (SMM) should be the key instrument for communicating the approach to safety for the whole of the operator. The SMM should document all aspects of safety management, including the safety policy, objectives, procedures and individual safety responsibilities.

(b) The contents of the safety management manual should include all of the following:

(1) scope of the safety management system;

(2) safety policy and objectives;

(3) safety accountability of the accountable manager;

(4) safety responsibilities of key safety personnel;

(5) documentation control procedures;

(6) hazard identification and risk management schemes;

(7) safety action planning;

(8) safety performance monitoring;

(9) incident investigation and reporting;

(10) emergency response planning;

(11) management of change (including organisational changes with regard to safety responsibilities);

(12) safety promotion.

(c) The SMM may be contained in (one of) the manual(s) of the operator.

GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(5) Management system

MANAGEMENT SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION − GENERAL

(a) It is not required to duplicate information in several manuals. The information may be contained in any of the operator manuals (e.g. operations manual, training manual), which may also be combined.

(b) The operator may also choose to document some of the information required to be documented in separate documents (e.g. procedures). In this case, it should ensure that manuals contain adequate references to any document kept separately. Any such documents are then to be considered an integral part of the operator's management system documentation.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system

COMPLIANCE MONITORING – GENERAL

(a) Compliance monitoring

The implementation and use of a compliance monitoring function should enable the operator to monitor compliance with the relevant requirements of this Annex and other applicable Annexes.

(1) The operator should specify the basic structure of the compliance monitoring function applicable to the activities conducted.

(2) The compliance monitoring function should be structured according to the size of the operator and the complexity of the activities to be monitored.

(b) Organisations should monitor compliance with the procedures they have designed to ensure safe activities. In doing so, they should as a minimum, and where appropriate, monitor compliance with:

(1) privileges of the operator;

(2) manuals, logs, and records;

(3) training standards;

(4) management system procedures and manuals.

(c) Organisational set up

(1) To ensure that the operator continues to meet the requirements of this Part and other applicable Parts, the accountable manager should designate a compliance monitoring manager. The role of the compliance monitoring manager is to ensure that the activities of the operator are monitored for compliance with the applicable regulatory requirements, and any additional requirements as established by the operator, and that these activities are being carried out properly under the supervision of the relevant head of functional area.

(2) The compliance monitoring manager should be responsible for ensuring that the compliance monitoring programme is properly implemented, maintained and continually reviewed and improved.

(3) The compliance monitoring manager should:

(i) have direct access to the accountable manager;

(ii) not be one of the other persons referred to in ORO.GEN.210 (b);

(iii) be able to demonstrate relevant knowledge, background and appropriate experience related to the activities of the operator, including knowledge and experience in compliance monitoring; and

(iv) have access to all parts of the operator, and as necessary, any contracted operator.

(4) In the case of a non-complex operator, this task may be exercised by the accountable manager provided he/she has demonstrated having the related competence as defined in (c)(3)(iii).

(5) In the case the same person acts as compliance monitoring manager and as safety manager, the accountable manager, with regards to his/her direct accountability for safety, should ensure that sufficient resources are allocated to both functions, taking into account the size of the operator and the nature and complexity of its activities.

(6) The independence of the compliance monitoring function should be established by ensuring that audits and inspections are carried out by personnel not responsible for the function, procedure or products being audited.

(d) Compliance monitoring documentation

(1) Relevant documentation should include the relevant part(s) of the operator's management system documentation.

(2) In addition, relevant documentation should also include the following:

(i) terminology;

(ii) specified activity standards;

(iii) a description of the operator;

(iv) the allocation of duties and responsibilities;

(v) procedures to ensure regulatory compliance;

(vi) the compliance monitoring programme, reflecting:

(A) schedule of the monitoring programme;

(B) audit procedures;

(C) reporting procedures;

(D) follow-up and corrective action procedures; and

(E) recording system.

(vii) the training syllabus referred to in (e)(2);

(viii) document control.

(e) Training

(1) Correct and thorough training is essential to optimise compliance in every operator. In order to achieve significant outcomes of such training, the operator should ensure that all personnel understand the objectives as laid down in the operator's management system documentation.

(2) Those responsible for managing the compliance monitoring function should receive training on this task. Such training should cover the requirements of compliance monitoring, manuals and procedures related to the task, audit techniques, reporting and recording.

(3) Time should be provided to train all personnel involved in compliance management and for briefing the remainder of the personnel.

(4) The allocation of time and resources should be governed by the volume and complexity of the activities concerned.

GM1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system

COMPLIANCE MONITORING – GENERAL

(a) The organisational set-up of the compliance monitoring function should reflect the size of the operator and the nature and complexity of its activities. The compliance monitoring manager may perform all audits and inspections himself/herself or appoint one or more auditors by choosing personnel having the related competence as defined in AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) point (c)(3)(iii), either from within or outside the operator.

(b) Regardless of the option chosen it must be ensured that the independence of the audit function is not affected, in particular in cases where those performing the audit or inspection are also responsible for other functions for the operator.

(c) In case external personnel are used to perform compliance audits or inspections:

(1) any such audits or inspections are performed under the responsibility of the compliance monitoring manager; and

(2) the operator remains responsible to ensure that the external personnel has relevant knowledge, background and experience as appropriate to the activities being audited or inspected; including knowledge and experience in compliance monitoring.

(d) The operator retains the ultimate responsibility for the effectiveness of the compliance monitoring function in particular for the effective implementation and follow-up of all corrective actions.

GM2 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system

COMPLEX OPERATORS – COMPLIANCE MONITORING PROGRAMME

(a) Typical subject areas for compliance monitoring audits and inspections for operators should be, as applicable:

(1) actual flight operations;

(2) ground de-icing/anti-icing;

(3) flight support services;

(4) load control;

(5) technical standards.

(b) Operators should monitor compliance with the operational procedures they have designed to ensure safe operations, airworthy aircraft and the serviceability of both operational and safety equipment. In doing so, they should, where appropriate, additionally monitor the following:

(1) operational procedures;

(2) flight safety procedures;

(3) operational control and supervision;

(4) aircraft performance;

(5) all weather operations;

(6) communications and navigational equipment and practices;

(7) mass, balance and aircraft loading;

(8) instruments and safety equipment;

(9) ground operations;

(10) flight and duty time limitations, rest requirements, and scheduling;

(11) aircraft maintenance/operations interface;

(12) use of the MEL;

(13) flight crew;

(14) cabin crew;

(15) dangerous goods;

(16) security.

GM3 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system

NON-COMPLEX OPERATORS – COMPLIANCE MONITORING

(a) Compliance monitoring audits and inspections may be documented on a 'Compliance Monitoring Checklist', and any findings recorded in a 'Non-compliance Report'. The following documents may be used for this purpose.

COMPLIANCE MONITORING CHECKLIST Year:			
Subject	Date checked	Checked by	Comments / Non-compliance Report No.
Flight Operations			
Aircraft checklists checked for accuracy and validity			
Minimum five flight plans checked and verified for proper and correct information			
Flight planning facilities checked for updated manuals, documents and access to relevant flight information			
Incident reports evaluated and reported to the appropriate competent authority			
Ground Handling			
Contracts with ground handling organisations established and valid, if applicable			
Instructions regarding fuelling and de-icing issued, if applicable			
Instructions regarding dangerous goods issued and known by all relevant personnel, if applicable			
Mass & Balance			
Min. five load sheets checked and verified for proper and correct information, if applicable			
Aircraft fleet checked for valid weight check, if applicable			
Minimum one check per aircraft of correct loading and distribution, if applicable			
Training			
Training records updated and accurate			
All pilot licenses checked for currency, correct ratings and valid medical check			
All pilots received recurrent training			
Training facilities & Instructors approved			
All pilots received daily inspection (DI) training			
Documentation			
All issues of operations manual (OM) checked for correct amendment status			

AOC checked for validity and appropriate operations specifications			
Aviation requirements applicable and updated			
Crew flight and duty time record updated, if applicable			
Flight documents record checked and updated			
Compliance monitoring records checked and updated			

– NON-COMPLIANCE REPORT – No:

To Compliance Monitoring Manager	Reported by:	Date:

Category

Flight Operations ❑	Ground Handling ❑	Mass & Balance ❑
Training ❑	Documentation ❑	Other ❑

Description:	Reference:

Level of finding:

Root-cause of non-compliance:

Suggested correction:

Compliance Monitoring Manager:

❑ Corrective action required ❑ Corrective action not required

Responsible Person:	Time limitation:
Corrective action:	Reference:
Signature Responsible Person:	Date:

Compliance Monitoring Manager

❑ Correction and corrective action verified ❑ Report Closed

Signature Compliance Monitoring Manager:	Date:

GM4 ORO.GEN.200(a)(6) Management system

AUDIT AND INSPECTION

(a) 'Audit' means a systematic, independent and documented process for obtaining evidence and evaluating it objectively to determine the extent to which requirements are complied with.

(b) 'Inspection' means an independent documented conformity evaluation by observation and judgement accompanied as appropriate by measurement, testing or gauging, in order to verify compliance with applicable requirements.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.200(b) Management system

SIZE, NATURE AND COMPLEXITY OF THE ACTIVITY

(a) An operator should be considered as complex when it has a workforce of more than 20 full time equivalents (FTEs) involved in the activity subject to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008[12] and its Implementing Rules.

(b) Operators with up to 20 FTEs involved in the activity subject to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008[13] and its Implementing Rules may also be considered complex based on an assessment of the following factors:

(1) in terms of complexity, the extent and scope of contracted activities subject to the approval;

(2) in terms of risk criteria, whether any of the following are present:

(i) operations requiring the following specific approvals: performance-based navigation (PBN), low visibility operation (LVO), extended range operations with two-engined aeroplanes (ETOPS), helicopter hoist operation (HHO), helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS), night vision imaging system (NVIS) and dangerous goods (DG);

(ii) different types of aircraft used;

(iii) the environment (offshore, mountainous area etc.).

[12] Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC. OJ L 79, 19.3.2008, p. 1.

[13] Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008 on common rules in the field of civil aviation and establishing a European Aviation Safety Agency, and repealing Council Directive 91/670/EEC, Regulation (EC) No 1592/2002 and Directive 2004/36/EC. OJ L 79, 19.3.2008, p. 1.

ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities

(a) Contracted activities include all activities within the operator's scope of approval that are performed by another organisation either itself certified to carry out such activity or if not certified, working under the operator's approval. The operator shall ensure that when contracting or purchasing any part of its activity, the contracted or purchased service or product conforms to the applicable requirements.

(b) When the certified operator contracts any part of its activity to an organisation that is not itself certified in accordance with this Part to carry out such activity, the contracted organisation shall work under the approval of the operator. The contracting organisation shall ensure that the competent authority is given access to the contracted organisation, to determine continued compliance with the applicable requirements.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities

RESPONSIBILITY WHEN CONTRACTING ACTIVITIES

(a) The operator may decide to contract certain activities to external organisations.

(b) A written agreement should exist between the operator and the contracted organisation clearly defining the contracted activities and the applicable requirements.

(c) The contracted safety related activities relevant to the agreement should be included in the operator's safety management and compliance monitoring programmes.

(d) The operator should ensure that the contracted organisation has the necessary authorisation or approval when required, and commands the resources and competence to undertake the task.

GM1 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities

CONTRACTING – GENERAL

(a) Operators may decide to contract certain activities to external organisations for the provision of services related to areas such as:

(1) ground de-icing/anti-icing;

(2) ground handling;

(3) flight support (including performance calculations, flight planning, navigation database and dispatch);

(4) training; and

(5) manual preparation.

(b) The ultimate responsibility for the product or service provided by external organisations should always remain with the operator.

GM2 ORO.GEN.205 Contracted activities

RESPONSIBILITY WHEN CONTRACTING ACTIVITIES

(a) Regardless of the approval status of the contracted organisation, the contracting operator is responsible to ensure that all contracted activities are subject to hazard identification and risk management as required by ORO.GEN.200 (a)(3) and to compliance monitoring as required by ORO.GEN.200 (a)(6).

(b) When the contracted organisation is itself certified to carry out the contracted activities, the operator's compliance monitoring should at least check that the approval effectively covers the contracted activities and that it is still valid.

ORO.GEN.210 Personnel requirements

(a) The operator shall appoint an accountable manager, who has the authority for ensuring that all activities can be financed and carried out in accordance with the applicable requirements. The accountable manager shall be responsible for establishing and maintaining an effective management system.

(b) A person or group of persons shall be nominated by the operator, with the responsibility of ensuring that the operator remains in compliance with the applicable requirements. Such person(s) shall be ultimately responsible to the accountable manager.

(c) The operator shall have sufficient qualified personnel for the planned tasks and activities to be performed in accordance with the applicable requirements.

(d) The operator shall maintain appropriate experience, qualification and training records to show compliance with point (c).

(e) The operator shall ensure that all personnel are aware of the rules and procedures relevant to the exercise of their duties.

ORO.GEN.215 Facility requirements

The operator shall have facilities allowing the performance and management of all planned tasks and activities in accordance with the applicable requirements.

ORO.GEN.220 Record-keeping

(a) The operator shall establish a system of record–keeping that allows adequate storage and reliable traceability of all activities developed, covering in particular all the elements indicated in ORO.GEN.200.

(b) The format of the records shall be specified in the operator’s procedures.

(c) Records shall be stored in a manner that ensures protection from damage, alteration and theft.

AMC1 ORO.GEN.220(b) Record-keeping

GENERAL

(a) The record-keeping system should ensure that all records are accessible whenever needed within a reasonable time. These records should be organised in a way that ensures traceability and retrievability throughout the required retention period.

(b) Records should be kept in paper form or in electronic format or a combination of both. Records stored on microfilm or optical disc format are also acceptable. The records should remain legible throughout the required retention period. The retention period starts when the record has been created or last amended.

(c) Paper systems should use robust material which can withstand normal handling and filing. Computer systems should have at least one backup system which should be updated within 24 hours of any new entry. Computer systems should include safeguards against the ability of unauthorised personnel to alter the data.

(d) All computer hardware used to ensure data backup should be stored in a different location from that containing the working data and in an environment that ensures they remain in good condition. When hardware or software changes take place, special care should be taken that all necessary data continues to be accessible at least through the full period specified in the relevant Subpart. In the absence of such indication, all records should be kept for a minimum period of 5 years.

GM1 ORO.GEN.220(b) Record-keeping

RECORDS

Microfilming or optical storage of records may be carried out at any time. The records should be as legible as the original record and remain so for the required retention period.

SUBPART AOC — AIR OPERATOR CERTIFICATION

ORO.AOC.100 Application for an air operator certificate

(a) Without prejudice to Regulation (EC) No 1008/2008 of the European Parliament and the Council[14], prior to commencing commercial air operations, the operator shall apply for and obtain an air operator certificate (AOC) issued by the competent authority.

(b) The operator shall provide the following information to the competent authority:

(1) the official name and business name, address, and mailing address of the applicant;

(2) a description of the proposed operation, including the type(s), and number of aircraft to be operated;

(3) a description of the management system, including organisational structure;

(4) the name of the accountable manager;

(5) the names of the nominated persons required by ORO.AOC.135(a) together with their qualifications and experience; and

(6) a copy of the operations manual required by ORO.MLR.100.

(7) a statement that all the documentation sent to the competent authority have been verified by the applicant and found in compliance with the applicable requirements.

(c) Applicants shall demonstrate to the competent authority that:

(1) they comply with all the applicable requirements of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, this Annex and Annex IV (Part-CAT) and Annex V (Part-SPA) to this Regulation, as applicable;

(2) all aircraft operated have a certificate of airworthiness (CofA) in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003; and

(3) its organisation and management are suitable and properly matched to the scale and scope of the operation.

[14] OJ L 293, 31.10.2008, p. 3.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.100 Application for an air operator certificate (AOC)

APPLICATION TIME FRAMES

The application for the initial issue of an AOC should be submitted at least 90 days before the intended start date of operation. The operations manual may be submitted later, but in any case not later than 60 days before the intended start date of operation.

ORO.AOC.105 Operations specifications and privileges of an AOC holder

The privileges of the operator, including those granted in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA), shall be specified in the operations specifications of the certificate.

ORO.AOC.110 Leasing agreement

Any lease-in

(a) Without prejudice to Regulation (EC) No 1008/2008, any lease agreement concerning aircraft used by an operator certified in accordance with this Part shall be subject to prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) The operator certified in accordance with this Part shall only wet lease-in aircraft from an operator that is not subject to an operating ban pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005.

Wet lease-in

(c) The applicant for the approval of the wet lease-in of an aircraft of a third country operator shall demonstrate to the competent authority that:

   (1) the third country operator holds a valid AOC issued in accordance with ICAO Annex 6;

   (2) the safety standards of the third country operator with regard to continuing airworthiness and air operations are equivalent to the applicable requirements established by Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 and this Regulation; and

   (3) the aircraft has a standard CofA issued in accordance with ICAO Annex 8.

Dry lease-in

(d) An applicant for the approval of the dry lease-in of an aircraft registered in a third country shall demonstrate to the competent authority that:

   (1) an operational need has been identified that cannot be satisfied through leasing an aircraft registered in the EU;

   (2) the duration of the dry lease-in does not exceed seven months in any 12 consecutive month period; and

   (3) compliance with the applicable requirements of Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 is ensured.

Dry lease-out

(e) The operator certified in accordance with this Part intending to dry lease-out one of its aircraft shall apply for prior approval by the competent authority. The application shall be accompanied by copies of the intended lease agreement or description of the lease provisions, except financial arrangements, and all other relevant documentation.

Wet lease-out

(f) Prior to the wet lease-out of an aircraft, the operator certified in accordance with this Part shall notify the competent authority.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.110 Leasing agreement

GENERAL

The operator intending to lease-in an aircraft should provide the competent authority with the following information:

(a) the aircraft type, registration markings and serial number;

(b) the name and address of the registered owner;

(c) a copy of the valid certificate of airworthiness;

(d) a copy of the lease agreement or description of the lease provisions, except financial arrangements;

(e) duration of the lease; and

(f) in case of wet lease-in a copy of the AOC of the third country operator and the areas of operation.

The information mentioned above should be accompanied by a statement signed by the lessee that the parties to the lease agreement fully understand their respective responsibilities under the applicable regulations.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.110(c) Leasing agreement

WET LEASE-IN

If the operator is not intending to apply EU safety requirements for air operations and continuing airworthiness when wet leasing-in an aircraft registered in a third country, it should demonstrate to the competent authority that the standards complied with are equivalent to the following requirements:

(a) for commercial air transport (CAT) operations, Annex IV (Part-CAT);

(b) Part-ORO:

(1) ORO.GEN.110 and Section 2 of Subpart GEN;

(2) ORO.MLR, excluding ORO.MLR.105;

(3) ORO.FC;

(4) ORO.CC, excluding ORO.CC.200 and ORO.CC.210(a);

(5) ORO.TC;

(6) ORO.FTL, including related CS-FTL; and

(7) ORO.SEC;

(c) Annex V (Part-SPA), if applicable;

(d) for continuing airworthiness management of the third country operator, Part-M[15] Subpart-B, Subpart-C and Subpart-G, excluding M.A.707, and M.A.710;

(e) for the maintenance organisation used by the third country operator during the lease period: Part-145[16]; and

(f) the operator shall provide the competent authority with a full description of the flight time limitation scheme(s), operating procedures and safety assessment demonstrating compliance with the safety objectives set out in points (b) (1)-(6).

AMC2 ORO.AOC.110(c) Leasing agreement

WET LEASE-IN

The lessee should maintain a record of occasions when lessors are used, for inspection by the State that issued its AOC.

15 Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 of 20 November 2003 on the continuing airworthiness of aircraft and aeronautical products, parts and appliances, and on the approval of organisations and personnel involved in these tasks (OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1). Regulation as last amended by Commission Regulation (EU) No 1149/2011 of 21 October 2011 (OJ L 298, 16.11.2011, p. 1).

16 Commission Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003 of 20 November 2003 on the continuing airworthiness of aircraft and aeronautical products, parts and appliances, and on the approval of organisations and personnel involved in these tasks (OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1). Regulation as last amended by Commission Regulation (EU) No 1149/2011 of 21 October 2011 (OJ L 298, 16.11.2011, p. 1).

GM1 ORO.AOC.110(c) Leasing agreement

SHORT TERM WET LEASE-IN

In anticipation of an operational need the operator may enter into an framework agreement with more than one third country operator provided that these operators comply with ORO.AOC.110 (c). These third country operators should be placed in a list maintained by the lessee.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.110(f) Leasing agreement

WET LEASE-OUT

When notifying the competent authority. the operator intending to wet lease-out an aircraft should provide the competent authority with the following information:

(a) the aircraft type, registration markings and serial number;

(b) the name and address of the lessee;

(c) a copy of the lease agreement or description of the lease provisions, except financial arrangements; and

(d) the duration of the lease agreement.

ORO.AOC.115 Code-share agreements

(a) Without prejudice to applicable EU safety requirements for third country operators and aircraft, an operator certified in accordance with this Part shall enter into a code-share agreement with a third country operator only after:

(1) having verified that the third country operator complies with the applicable ICAO standards; and

(2) having provided the competent authority with documented information enabling such authority to comply with ARO.OPS.105.

(b) When implementing the code-share agreement the operator shall monitor and regularly assess the ongoing compliance of the third country operator with the applicable ICAO standards.

(c) The operator certified in accordance with this Part shall not sell and issue tickets for a flight operated by a third country operator when the third country operator is subject to an operating ban pursuant to Regulation (EC) No 2111/2005 or is failing to maintain compliance with the applicable ICAO standards.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.115(a)(1) Code share agreements

INITIAL VERIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE

(a) In order to verify the third country operator's compliance with the applicable ICAO standards, in particular ICAO annexes 1, 2, 6, Part I and III, as applicable, 8 and 18, the EU operator should conduct an audit of the third country operator, including interviews of personnel and inspections carried out at the third country operator's facilities.

(b) The audit should focus on the operational, management and control systems of the operator.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.115(b) Code share arrangements

CODE-SHARE AUDIT PROGRAMME

(a) Operators should establish a code-share audit programme for monitoring continuous compliance of the third country operator with the applicable ICAO standards. Such code-share audit programme should include:

  (1) the audit methodology (audit report + compliance statements);

  (2) details of the specific operational areas to audit;

  (3) criteria for defining satisfactory audit results;

  (4) a system for reporting and correcting findings;

  (5) a continuous monitoring system;

  (6) auditor qualification and authorisation; and

  (7) the frequency of audits.

(b) The third country code-share operator should be audited at periods not exceeding 24 months. The beginning of the first 24-month oversight planning cycle is determined by the date of the first audit and should then determine the start and end dates of the recurrent 24-month planning cycle. The interval between two audits should not exceed 24 months.

(c) The EU operator should ensure a renewal audit of each third country code-share operator prior to the audit expiry date of the previous audit. The audit expiry date for the previous audit becomes the audit effective date for the renewal audit provided the closing meeting for the renewal audit is within 150 days prior to the audit expiry date for the previous audit. If the closing meeting for the renewal audit is more than 150 days prior to the audit expiry date from the previous audit, then the audit effective date for the renewal audit is the day of the closing meeting of the renewal audit. Renewal audits are valid for 24 consecutive months beginning with the audit effective date and ending with the audit expiry date.

(d) A code-share audit could be shared by several operators. In case of a shared audit the report should be made available for review by all duly identified sharing operators by any means.

(e) After closure of all findings identified during the audit, the EU operator should submit an audit compliance statement to the competent authority demonstrating that the third country operator meets all the applicable safety standards.

AMC2 ORO.AOC.115(b) Code share agreements

THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS

(a) The initial audit and/or the continuous monitoring may be performed by a third party provider on behalf of the EU operator when it is demonstrated that:

(1) a documented arrangement has been established with the third party provider;

(2) the audit standards applied by the third party provider addresses the scope of the regulation in sufficient detail;

(3) the third party provider uses an evaluation system, designed to assess the operational, management and control systems of the third country code-share operator;

(4) independence of the third party provider, its evaluation system as well as the impartiality of the auditors is ensured;

(5) the auditors are appropriately qualified and have sufficient knowledge, experience and training, including on-the-job training, to perform their allocated tasks;

(6) audits are performed on-site;

(7) access to the relevant data and facilities is granted to the level of detail necessary to verify compliance with the applicable requirements;

(8) access to the full audit report is granted to the EU operator;

(9) procedures have been established for monitoring continued compliance of the third country code-share operator with the applicable requirements, taking into account the timelines in AMC1 ORO.AOC.115(b)(b) and (c);

(10) procedures have been established to notify the third country code-share operator of any non-compliance with the applicable requirements, the corrective actions to be taken, the follow up of these corrective actions and closure of findings;

(b) The use of a third party provider for the initial audit or the monitoring of continuous compliance of the third country code-share operator does not exempt the EU operator from its responsibility under ORO.AOC.115.

(c) The EU operator should maintain a list of the third country code-share operators monitored by the third party provider. This list and the full audit report prepared by the third party provider should be made available to the competent authority upon request.

ORO.AOC.120 Approvals to provide cabin crew training and to issue cabin crew attestations

(a) When intending to provide the training course required in Annex V (Part-CC) to Commission Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX, the operator shall apply for and obtain an approval issued by the competent authority. For this purpose, the applicant shall demonstrate compliance with the requirements for the conduct and content of training course established in CC.TRA.215 and CC.TRA.220 of that Annex and shall provide the competent authority with:

(1) the date of intended commencement of activity;

(2) the personal details and qualifications of the instructors as relevant to the training elements to be covered;

(3) the name(s) and address(es) of the training site(s) at which the training is to be conducted;

(4) a description of the facilities, training methods, manuals and representative devices to be used; and

(5) the syllabi and associated programmes for the training course.

(b) If a Member State decides, in accordance with ARA.CC.200 of Annex VI (Part-ARA) to Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX, that operators may be approved to issue cabin crew attestations, the applicant shall, in addition to (a):

(1) demonstrate to the competent authority that:

(i) the organisation has the capability and accountability to perform this task;

(ii) the personnel conducting examinations are appropriately qualified and free from conflict of interest; and

(2) provide the procedures and the specified conditions for:

(i) conducting the examination required by CC.TRA.220;

(ii) issuing cabin crew attestations; and

(iii) supplying the competent authority with all relevant information and documentation related to the attestations it will issue and their holders, for the purpose of record-keeping, oversight and enforcement actions by that authority.

(c) The approvals referred to in (a) and (b) shall be specified in the operations specifications.

ORO.AOC.125 Non-commercial operations of aircraft listed in the operations specifications by the holder of an AOC

The holder of an AOC may conduct non-commercial operations with an aircraft otherwise used for commercial air transport operations that is listed in the operations specifications of its AOC, provided that the operator:

(a) describes such operations in detail in the operations manual, including:

(1) identification of the applicable requirements;

(2) a clear identification of any differences between operating procedures used when conducting commercial and non-commercial operations;

(3) a means of ensuring that all personnel involved in the operation are fully familiar with the associated procedures;

(b) submits the identified differences between the operating procedures referred to in (a)(2) to the competent authority for prior approval.

ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring — aeroplanes

(a) The operator shall establish and maintain a flight data monitoring system, which shall be integrated in its management system, for aeroplanes with a maximum certificated take-off mass of more than 27 000 kg.

(b) The flight data monitoring system shall be non-punitive and contain adequate safeguards to protect the source(s) of the data.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes

FLIGHT DATA MONITORING (FDM) PROGRAMME

(a) The safety manager, as defined under AMC1-ORO.GEN.200(a)(1), should be responsible for the identification and assessment of issues and their transmission to the manager(s) responsible for the process(es) concerned. The latter should be responsible for taking appropriate and practicable safety action within a reasonable period of time that reflects the severity of the issue.

(b) An FDM programme should allow an operator to:

(1) identify areas of operational risk and quantify current safety margins;

(2) identify and quantify operational risks by highlighting occurrences of non-standard, unusual or unsafe circumstances;

(3) use the FDM information on the frequency of such occurrences, combined with an estimation of the level of severity, to assess the safety risks and to determine which may become unacceptable if the discovered trend continues;

(4) put in place appropriate procedures for remedial action once an unacceptable risk, either actually present or predicted by trending, has been identified; and

(5) confirm the effectiveness of any remedial action by continued monitoring.

(c) FDM analysis techniques should comprise the following:

(1) Exceedance detection: searching for deviations from aircraft flight manual limits and standard operating procedures. A set of core events should be selected to cover the main areas of interest to the operator. A sample list is provided in Appendix 1 to AMC1 ORO.AOC.130. The event detection limits should be continuously reviewed to reflect the operator’s current operating procedures.

(2) All flights measurement: a system defining what is normal practice. This may be accomplished by retaining various snapshots of information from each flight.

(3) Statistics – a series of data collected to support the analysis process: this technique should include the number of flights flown per aircraft and sector details sufficient to generate rate and trend information.

(d) FDM analysis, assessment and process control tools: the effective assessment of information obtained from digital flight data should be dependent on the provision of appropriate information technology tool sets.

(e) Education and publication: sharing safety information should be a fundamental principle of aviation safety in helping to reduce accident rates. The operator should pass on the lessons learnt to all relevant personnel and, where appropriate, industry.

(f) Accident and incident data requirements specified in CAT.GEN.MPA.195 take precedence over the requirements of an FDM programme. In these cases the FDR data should be retained as part of the investigation data and may fall outside the de-identification agreements.

(g) Every crew member should be responsible to report events. Significant risk-bearing incidents detected by FDM should therefore normally be the subject of mandatory occurrence reporting by the crew. If this is not the case then they should submit a retrospective report that should be included under the normal process for reporting and analysing hazards, incidents and accidents.

(h) The data recovery strategy should ensure a sufficiently representative capture of flight information to maintain an overview of operations. Data analysis should be performed sufficiently frequently to enable action to be taken on significant safety issues.

(i) The data retention strategy should aim to provide the greatest safety benefits practicable from the available data. A full dataset should be retained until the action and review processes are complete; thereafter, a reduced dataset relating to closed issues should be maintained for longer-term trend analysis. Programme managers may wish to retain samples of de-identified full-flight data for various safety purposes (detailed analysis, training, benchmarking etc.).

(j) The data access and security policy should restrict information access to authorised persons. When data access is required for airworthiness and maintenance purposes, a procedure should be in place to prevent disclosure of crew identity.

(k) The procedure to prevent disclosure of crew identity should be written in a document, which should be signed by all parties (airline management, flight crew member representatives nominated either by the union or the flight crew themselves). This procedure should, as a minimum, define:

(1) the aim of the FDM programme;

(2) a data access and security policy that should restrict access to information to specifically authorised persons identified by their position;

(3) the method to obtain de-identified crew feedback on those occasions that require specific flight follow-up for contextual information; where such crew contact is required the authorised person(s) need not necessarily be the programme manager or safety manager, but could be a third party (broker) mutually acceptable to unions or staff and management;

(4) the data retention policy and accountability including the measures taken to ensure the security of the data;

(5) the conditions under which advisory briefing or remedial training should take place; this should always be carried out in a constructive and non-punitive manner;

(6) the conditions under which the confidentiality may be withdrawn for reasons of gross negligence or significant continuing safety concern;

(7) the participation of flight crew member representative(s) in the assessment of the data, the action and review process and the consideration of recommendations; and

(8) the policy for publishing the findings resulting from FDM.

(l) Airborne systems and equipment used to obtain FDM data should range from an already installed full quick access recorder (QAR), in a modern aircraft with digital systems, to a basic crash-protected recorder in an older or less sophisticated aircraft. The analysis potential of the reduced data set available in the latter case may reduce the safety benefits obtainable. The operator should ensure that FDM use does not adversely affect the serviceability of equipment required for accident investigation.

GM1 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes

DEFINITION OF AN FDM PROGRAMME

For the purposes of this Guidance Material, an FDM programme may be defined as a proactive and non-punitive programme for gathering and analysing data recorded during routine flights to improve aviation safety.

(a) FDM analysis techniques

(1) Exceedance detection

(i) FDM programmes are used for detecting exceedances, such as deviations from flight manual limits, standard operating procedures (SOPs), or good airmanship. Typically, a set of core events establishes the main areas of interest to operators.

Examples: high lift-off rotation rate, stall warning, ground proximity warning system (GPWS) warning, flap limit speed exceedance, fast approach, high/low on glideslope, and heavy landing.

(ii) Trigger logic expressions may be simple exceedances such as redline values. The majority, however, are composites that define a certain flight mode, aircraft configuration or payload related condition. Analysis software can also assign different sets of rules dependent on airport or geography. For example, noise sensitive airports may use higher than normal glideslopes on approach paths over populated areas. In addition, it might be valuable to define several levels of exceedance severity (such as low, medium and high).

(iii) Exceedance detection provides useful information, which can complement that provided in crew reports.

Examples: reduced flap landing, emergency descent, engine failure, rejected take-off, go-around, airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) or GPWS warning, and system malfunctions.

(iv) The operator may also modify the standard set of core events to account for unique situations they regularly experience, or the SOPs they use.

Example: to avoid nuisance exceedance reports from a non-standard instrument departure.

(v) The operator may also define new events to address specific problem areas.

Example: restrictions on the use of certain flap settings to increase component life.

(2) All-flights measurements

FDM data are retained from all flights, not just the ones producing significant events. A selection of parameters is retained that is sufficient to characterise each flight and allow a comparative analysis of a wide range of operational variability. Emerging trends and tendencies may be identified and monitored before the trigger levels associated with exceedances are reached.

Examples of parameters monitored: take-off weight, flap setting, temperature, rotation and lift-off speeds versus scheduled speeds, maximum pitch rate and attitude during rotation, and gear retraction speeds, heights and times.

Examples of comparative analyses: pitch rates from high versus low take-off weights, good versus bad weather approaches, and touchdowns on short versus long runways.

(3) Statistics

Series of data are collected to support the analysis process: these usually include the numbers of flights flown per aircraft and sector details sufficient to generate rate and trend information.

(4) Investigation of incidents flight data

Recorded flight data provide valuable information for follow-up to incidents and other technical reports. They are useful in adding to the impressions and information recalled by the flight crew. They also provide an accurate indication of system status and performance, which may help in determining cause and effect relationships.

Examples of incidents where recorded data could be useful:

– high cockpit workload conditions as corroborated by such indicators as late descent, late localizer and/or glideslope interception, late landing configuration;

– unstabilised and rushed approaches, glide path excursions, etc.;

– exceedances of prescribed operating limitations (such as flap limit speeds, engine overtemperatures); and

– wake vortex encounters, turbulence encounters or other vertical accelerations.

It should be noted that recorded flight data have limitations, e.g. not all the information displayed to the flight crew is recorded, the source of recorded data may be different from the source used by a flight instrument, the sampling rate or the recording resolution of a parameter may be insufficient to capture accurate information.

(5) Continuing airworthiness

Data of all-flight measurements and exceedance detections can be utilized to assist the continuing airworthiness function. For example, engine-monitoring programmes look at measures of engine performance to determine operating efficiency and predict impending failures.

Examples of continuing airworthiness uses: engine thrust level and airframe drag measurements, avionics and other system performance monitoring, flying control performance, and brake and landing gear usage.

(b) FDM equipment

(1) General

FDM programmes generally involve systems that capture flight data, transform the data into an appropriate format for analysis, and generate reports and visualisation to assist in assessing the data. Typically, the following equipment capabilities are needed for effective FDM programmes:

(i) an on-board device to capture and record data on a wide range of in-flight parameters;

(ii) a means to transfer the data recorded on board the aircraft to a ground-based processing station.

(iii) a ground-based computer system to analyse the data, identify deviations from expected performance, generate reports to assist in interpreting the read-outs, etc.; and

(iv) optional software for a flight animation capability to integrate all data, presenting them as a simulation of in-flight conditions, thereby facilitating visualisation of actual events.

(2) Airborne equipment

(i) The flight parameters and recording capacity required for flight data recorders (FDR) to support accident investigations may be insufficient to support an effective FDM programme. Other technical solutions are available, including the following:

(A) Quick access recorders (QARs). QARs are installed in the aircraft and record flight data onto a low-cost removable medium.

(B) Some systems automatically download the recorded information via secure wireless systems when the aircraft is in the vicinity of the gate. There are also systems that enable the recorded data to be analysed on board while the aircraft is airborne.

(ii) Fleet composition, route structure and cost considerations will determine the most cost-effective method of removing the data from the aircraft.

(3) Ground replay and analysis equipment

(i) Data are downloaded from the aircraft recording device into a ground-based processing station, where the data are held securely to protect this sensitive information.

(ii) FDM programmes generate large amounts of data requiring specialised analysis software.

(iii) The analysis software checks the downloaded flight data for abnormalities.

(iv) The analysis software may include: annotated data trace displays, engineering unit listings, visualisation for the most significant incidents, access to interpretative material, links to other safety information and statistical presentations.

(c) FDM in practice

(1) FDM process

Typically, operators follow a closed-loop process in applying an FDM programme, for example:

(i) Establish a baseline: initially, operators establish a baseline of operational parameters against which changes can be detected and measured.

Examples: rate of unstable approaches or hard landings.

(ii) Highlight unusual or unsafe circumstances: the user determines when non-standard, unusual or basically unsafe circumstances occur; by comparing them to the baseline margins of safety, the changes can be quantified.

Example: increases in unstable approaches (or other unsafe events) at particular locations.

(iii) Identify unsafe trends: based on the frequency and severity of occurrence, trends are identified. Combined with an estimation of the level of severity, the risks are assessed to determine which may become unacceptable if the trend continues.

Example: a new procedure has resulted in high rates of descent that are nearly triggering GPWS warnings.

(iv) Mitigate risks: once an unacceptable risk has been identified, appropriate risk mitigation actions are decided on and implemented.

Example: having found high rates of descent, the SOPs are changed to improve aircraft control for optimum/maximum rates of descent.

(v) Monitor effectiveness: once a remedial action has been put in place, its effectiveness is monitored, confirming that it has reduced the identified risk and that the risk has not been transferred elsewhere.

Example: confirm that other safety measures at the aerodrome with high rates of descent do not change for the worse after changes in approach procedures.

(2) Analysis and follow-up

(i) FDM data are typically compiled every month or at shorter intervals. The data are then reviewed to identify specific exceedances and emerging undesirable trends and to disseminate the information to flight crews.

(ii) If deficiencies in pilot handling technique are evident, the information is usually de-identified in order to protect the identity of the flight crew. The information on specific exceedances is passed to a person (safety manager, agreed flight crew representative, honest broker) assigned by the operator for confidential discussion with the pilot. The person assigned by the operator provides the necessary contact with the pilot in order to clarify the circumstances, obtain feedback and give advice and recommendations for appropriate action. Such appropriate action could include re-training for the pilot (carried out in a constructive and non-punitive way), revisions to manuals, changes to ATC and airport operating procedures.

(iii) Follow-up monitoring enables the effectiveness of any corrective actions to be assessed. Flight crew feedback is essential for the identification and resolution of safety problems and could be collected through interviews, for example by asking the following:

(A) Are the desired results being achieved soon enough?

(B) Have the problems really been corrected, or just relocated to another part of the system?

(C) Have new problems been introduced?

(iv) All events are usually archived in a database. The database is used to sort, validate and display the data in easy-to-understand management reports. Over time, this archived data can provide a picture of emerging trends and hazards that would otherwise go unnoticed.

(v) Lessons learned from the FDM programme may warrant inclusion in the operator's safety promotion programmes. Safety promotion media may include newsletters, flight safety magazines, highlighting examples in training and simulator exercises, periodic reports to industry and the competent authority. Care is required, however, to ensure that any information acquired through FDM is de-identified before using it in any training or promotional initiative.

(vi) All successes and failures are recorded, comparing planned programme objectives with expected results. This provides a basis for review of the FDM programme and the foundation for future programme development.

(d) Preconditions for an effective FDM programme

(1) Protection of FDM data

The integrity of FDM programmes rests upon protection of the FDM data. Any disclosure for purposes other than safety management can compromise the voluntary provision of safety data, thereby compromising flight safety.

(2) Essential trust

The trust established between management and flight crew is the foundation for a successful FDM programme. This trust can be facilitated by:

(i) early participation of the flight crew representatives in the design, implementation and operation of the FDM programme;

(ii) a formal agreement between management and flight crew, identifying the procedures for the use and protection of data; and

(iii) data security, optimised by:

(A) adhering to the agreement;

(B) the operator strictly limiting data access to selected individuals;

(C) maintaining tight control to ensure that identifying data is kept securely; and

(D) ensuring that operational problems are promptly addressed by management.

(3) Requisite safety culture

Indicators of an effective safety culture typically include:

(i) top management's demonstrated commitment to promoting a proactive safety culture;

(ii) a non-punitive operator policy that cover the FDM programme;

(iii) FDM programme management by dedicated staff under the authority of the safety manager, with a high degree of specialisation and logistical support;

(iv) involvement of persons with appropriate expertise when identifying and assessing the risks (for example, pilots experienced on the aircraft type being analysed);

(v) monitoring fleet trends aggregated from numerous operations, not focusing only on specific events;

(vi) a well-structured system to protect the confidentiality of the data; and

(vii) an efficient communication system for disseminating hazard information (and subsequent risk assessments) internally and to other organisations to permit timely safety action.

(e) Implementing an FDM programme

(1) General considerations

(i) Typically, the following steps are necessary to implement an FDM programme:

(A) implementation of a formal agreement between management and flight crew;

(B) establishment and verification of operational and security procedures;

(C) installation of equipment;

(D) selection and training of dedicated and experienced staff to operate the programme; and

(E) commencement of data analysis and validation.

(ii) An operator with no FDM experience may need a year to achieve an operational FDM programme. Another year may be necessary before any safety and cost benefits appear. Improvements in the analysis software, or the use of outside specialist service providers, may shorten these time frames.

(2) Aims and objectives of an FDM programme

(i) As with any project there is a need to define the direction and objectives of the work. A phased approach is recommended so that the foundations are in place for possible subsequent expansion into other areas. Using a building block approach will allow expansion, diversification and evolution through experience.

Example: with a modular system, begin by looking at basic safety-related issues only. Add engine health monitoring, etc. in the second phase. Ensure compatibility with other systems.

(ii) A staged set of objectives starting from the first week's replay and moving through early production reports into regular routine analysis will contribute to a sense of achievement as milestones are met.

Examples of short-term, medium-term and long-term goals:

(A) Short-term goals:

– establish data download procedures, test replay software and identify aircraft defects;

– validate and investigate exceedance data; and

– establish a user-acceptable routine report format to highlight individual exceedances and facilitate the acquisition of relevant statistics.

(B) Medium-term goals:

– Produce an annual report — include key performance indicators;

– add other modules to the analysis (e.g. continuing airworthiness); and

– plan for the next fleet to be added to programme.

(C) Long-term goals:

– Network FDM information across all of the operator's safety information systems;

– ensure FDM provision for any proposed alternative training and qualification programme (ATQP); and

– use utilisation and condition monitoring to reduce spares holdings.

(iii) Initially, focusing on a few known areas of interest will help prove the system's effectiveness. In contrast to an undisciplined 'scatter-gun' approach, a focused approach is more likely to gain early success.

Examples: rushed approaches, or rough runways at particular aerodromes. Analysis of such known problem areas may generate useful information for the analysis of other areas.

(3) The FDM team

(i) Experience has shown that the 'team' necessary to run an FDM programme could vary in size from one person for a small fleet, to a dedicated section for large fleets. The descriptions below identify various functions to be fulfilled, not all of which need a dedicated position.

(A) Team leader: it is essential that the team leader earns the trust and full support of both management and flight crew. The team leader acts independently of others in line management to make recommendations that will be seen by all to have a high level of integrity and impartiality. The individual requires good analytical, presentation and management skills.

(B) Flight operations interpreter: this person is usually a current pilot (or perhaps a recently retired senior captain or instructor), who knows the operator's route network and aircraft. This team member's in-depth knowledge of SOPs, aircraft handling characteristics, aerodromes and routes is used to place the FDM data in a credible context.

(C) Technical interpreter: this person interprets FDM data with respect to the technical aspects of the aircraft operation and is familiar with the power plant, structures and systems departments' requirements for information and any other engineering monitoring programmes in use by the operator.

(D) Gate-keeper: this person provides the link between the fleet or training managers and flight crew involved in events highlighted by FDM. The position requires good people skills and a positive attitude towards safety education. The person is typically a representative of the flight crew association or an 'honest broker' and is the only person permitted to connect the identifying data with the event. It is essential that this person earns the trust of both management and flight crew.

(E) Engineering technical support: this person is usually an avionics specialist, involved in the supervision of mandatory serviceability requirements for FDR systems. This team member is knowledgeable about FDM and the associated systems needed to run the programme.

(F) Replay operative and administrator: this person is responsible for the day-to-day running of the system, producing reports and analysis.

(ii) All FDM team members need appropriate training or experience for their respective area of data analysis. Each team member is allocated a realistic amount of time to regularly spend on FDM tasks.

Appendix 1 to AMC1 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes

TABLE OF FDM EVENTS

The following table provides examples of FDM events that may be further developed using operator and aeroplane specific limits. The table is considered illustrative and not exhaustive.

Event Group	**Description**
Rejected take-off	High speed rejected take-off
Take-off pitch	Pitch rate high on take-off
	Pitch attitude high during take-off
Unstick speeds	Unstick speed high
	Unstick speed low
Height loss in climb-out	Initial climb height loss 20 ft above ground level (AGL) to 400 ft above aerodrome level (AAL)
	Initial climb height loss 400 ft to 1 500 ft AAL
Slow climb-out	Excessive time to 1 000 ft AAL after take-off
Climb-out speeds	Climb-out speed high below 400 ft AAL
	Climb-out speed high 400 ft AAL to 1 000 ft AAL
	Climb-out speed low 35 ft AGL to 400 ft AAL
	Climb-out speed low 400 ft AAL to 1 500 ft AAL
High rate of descent	High rate of descent below 2 000 ft AGL
Missed approach	Missed approach below 1 000 ft AAL
	Missed approach above 1 000 ft AAL
Low approach	Low on approach
Glideslope	Deviation under glideslope
	Deviation above glideslope (below 600 ft AGL)
Approach power	Low power on approach
Approach speeds	Approach speed high within 90 seconds of touchdown
	Approach speed high below 500 ft AAL
	Approach speed high below 50 ft AGL
	Approach speed low within 2 minutes of touchdown
Landing flap	Late land flap (not in position below 500 ft AAL)
	Reduced flap landing
	Flap load relief system operation
Landing pitch	Pitch attitude high on landing
	Pitch attitude low on landing

Bank angles	Excessive bank below 100 ft AGL
	Excessive bank 100 ft AGL to 500 ft AAL
	Excessive bank above 500 ft AGL
	Excessive bank near ground (below 20 ft AGL)
Normal acceleration	High normal acceleration on ground
	High normal acceleration in flight flaps up (+/- increment)
	High normal acceleration in flight flaps down(+/- increment)
	High normal acceleration at landing
Abnormal configuration	Take-off configuration warning
	Early configuration change after take-off (flap)
	Speed brake with flap
	Speed brake on approach below 800 ft AAL
	Speed brake not armed below 800 ft AAL
Ground proximity warning	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS) operation – hard warning
	GPWS operation – soft warning
	GPWS operation – windshear warning
	GPWS operation – false warning
Airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS II) warning	ACAS operation – Resolution Advisory
Margin to stall/buffet	Stick shake
	False stick shake
	Reduced lift margin except near ground
	Reduced lift margin at take-off
	Low buffet margin (above 20 000 ft)
Aircraft flight manual limitations	Maximum operating speed limit (V_{MO}) exceedance
	Maximum operating speed limit (M_{MO}) exceedance
	Flap placard speed exceedance
	Gear down speed exceedance
	Gear selection up/down speed exceedance
	Flap/slat altitude exceedance
	Maximum operating altitude exceedance

GM2 ORO.AOC.130 Flight data monitoring – aeroplanes

FLIGHT DATA MONITORING

Additional guidance material for the establishment of flight data monitoring can be found in UK Civil Aviation Authority CAP 739 (Flight Data Monitoring).

ORO.AOC.135 Personnel requirements

(a) In accordance with ORO.GEN.210 (b), the operator shall nominate persons responsible for the management and supervision of the following areas:

(1) flight operations;

(2) crew training;

(3) ground operations; and

(4) continuing airworthiness in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003.

(b) Adequacy and competency of personnel

(1) The operator shall employ sufficient personnel for the planned ground and flight operations.

(2) All personnel assigned to, or directly involved in, ground and flight operations shall:

(i) be properly trained;

(ii) demonstrate their capabilities in the performance of their assigned duties; and

(iii) be aware of their responsibilities and the relationship of their duties to the operation as a whole.

(c) Supervision of personnel

(1) The operator shall appoint a sufficient number of personnel supervisors, taking into account the structure of the operator's organisation and the number of personnel employed.

(2) The duties and responsibilities of these supervisors shall be defined, and any other necessary arrangements shall be made to ensure that they can discharge their supervisory responsibilities.

(3) The supervision of crew members and personnel involved in the operation shall be exercised by individuals with adequate experience and the skills to ensure the attainment of the standards specified in the operations manual.

AMC1 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements

NOMINATED PERSONS

(a) The person may hold more than one of the nominated posts if such an arrangement is considered suitable and properly matched to the scale and scope of the operation.

(b) A description of the functions and the responsibilities of the nominated persons, including their names, should be contained in the operations manual.

(c) The holder of an AOC should make arrangements to ensure continuity of supervision in the absence of nominated persons.

(d) The person nominated by the holder of an AOC should not be nominated by another holder of an AOC, unless agreed with the competent authorities concerned.

(e) Persons nominated should be contracted to work sufficient hours to fulfil the management functions associated with the scale and scope of the operation.

AMC2 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements

COMBINATION OF NOMINATED PERSONS RESPONSIBILITIES

(a) The acceptability of a single person holding several posts, possibly in combination with being the accountable manager, should depend upon the nature and scale of the operation. The two main areas of concern should be competence and an individual's capacity to meet his/her responsibilities.

(b) As regards competence in different areas of responsibility, there should not be any difference from the requirements applicable to persons holding only one post.

(c) The capacity of an individual to meet his/her responsibilities should primarily be dependent upon the scale of the operation. However the complexity of the organisation or of the operation may prevent, or limit, combinations of posts which may be acceptable in other circumstances.

(d) In most circumstances, the responsibilities of a nominated person should rest with a single individual. However, in the area of ground operations, it may be acceptable for responsibilities to be split, provided that the responsibilities of each individual concerned are clearly defined.

GM1 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements

NOMINATED PERSONS

The smallest organisation that can be considered is the one-man organisation where all of the nominated posts are filled by the accountable manager, and audits are conducted by an independent person.

GM2 ORO.AOC.135(a) Personnel requirements

COMPETENCE OF NOMINATED PERSONS

(a) Nominated persons in accordance with ORO.AOC.135 should be expected to possess the experience and licensing provisions that are listed in (b) to (f). Exceptionally, in particular cases, the competent authority may accept a nomination that does not meet these provisions in full. In that circumstance, the nominee should have comparable experience and also the ability to perform effectively the functions associated with the post and with the scale of the operation.

(b) Nominated persons should have:

  (1) practical experience and expertise in the application of aviation safety standards and safe operating practices;

  (2) comprehensive knowledge of:

    (i) the applicable EU safety regulations and any associated requirements and procedures;

    (ii) the AOC holder’s operations specifications; and

    (iii) the need for, and content of, the relevant parts of the AOC holder’s operations manual;

  (3) familiarity with management systems preferably in the area of aviation;

  (4) appropriate management experience, preferably in a comparable organisation; and

  (5) 5 years of relevant work experience of which at least 2 years should be from the aeronautical industry in an appropriate position.

(c) Flight operations. The nominated person should hold or have held a valid flight crew licence and the associated ratings appropriate to a type of operation conducted under the AOC. In case the nominated person’s licence and ratings are not current, his/her deputy should hold a valid flight crew licence and the associated ratings.

(d) Crew training. The nominated person or his/her deputy should be a current type rating instructor on a type/class operated under the AOC. The nominated person should have a thorough knowledge of the AOC holder’s crew training concept for flight, cabin and when relevant other crew.

(e) Ground operations. The nominated person should have a thorough knowledge of the AOC holder’s ground operations concept.

(f) Continuing airworthiness. The nominated person should have the relevant knowledge and appropriate experience requirements related to aircraft continuing airworthiness as detailed in Part-M.

ORO.AOC.140 Facility requirements

In accordance with ORO.GEN.215, the operator shall:

(a) make use of appropriate ground handling facilities to ensure the safe handling of its flights;

(b) arrange operational support facilities at the main operating base, appropriate for the area and type of operation; and

(c) ensure that the available working space at each operating base is sufficient for personnel whose actions may affect the safety of flight operations. Consideration shall be given to the needs of ground crew, personnel concerned with operational control, the storage and display of essential records and flight planning by crews.

ORO.AOC.150 Documentation requirements

(a) The operator shall make arrangements for the production of manuals and any other documentation required and associated amendments.

(b) The operator shall be capable of distributing operational instructions and other information without delay.

SUBPART MLR — MANUALS, LOGS AND RECORDS

ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual — general

(a) The operator shall establish an operations manual (OM) as specified under 8.b. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008.

(b) The content of the OM shall reflect the requirements set out in this Annex, Annex IV (Part-CAT) and Annex V (Part-SPA), as applicable, and shall not contravene the conditions contained in the operations specifications to the air operator certificate (AOC).

(c) The OM may be issued in separate parts.

(d) All operations personnel shall have easy access to the portions of the OM that are relevant to their duties.

(e) The OM shall be kept up-to-date. All personnel shall be made aware of the changes that are relevant to their duties.

(f) Each crew member shall be provided with a personal copy of the relevant sections of the OM pertaining to their duties. Each holder of an OM, or appropriate parts of it, shall be responsible for keeping their copy up-to-date with the amendments or revisions supplied by the operator.

(g) For AOC holders:

(1) for amendments required to be notified in accordance with ORO.GEN.115 (b) and ORO.GEN.130 (c), the operator shall supply the competent authority with intended amendments in advance of the effective date; and

(2) for amendments to procedures associated with prior approval items in accordance with ORO.GEN.130, approval shall be obtained before the amendment becomes effective.

(h) Notwithstanding (g), when immediate amendments or revisions are required in the interest of safety, they may be published and applied immediately, provided that any approval required has been applied for.

(i) The operator shall incorporate all amendments and revisions required by the competent authority.

(j) The operator shall ensure that information taken from approved documents, and any amendment thereof, is correctly reflected in the OM. This does not prevent the operator from publishing more conservative data and procedures in the OM.

(k) The operator shall ensure that all personnel are able to understand the language in which those parts of the OM which pertain to their duties and responsibilities are written. The content of the OM shall be presented in a form that can be used without difficulty and observes human factors principles.

ORO.MLR.101 Operations manual — structure

The main structure of the OM shall be as follows:

(a) Part A: General/Basic, comprising all non-type-related operational policies, instructions and procedures;

(b) Part B: Aircraft operating matters, comprising all type-related instructions and procedures, taking into account differences between types/classes, variants or individual aircraft used by the operator;

(c) Part C: Commercial air transport operations, comprising route/role/area and aerodrome/operating site instructions and information;

(d) Part D: Training, comprising all training instructions for personnel required for a safe operation.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – general

GENERAL

(a) The operations manual (OM) may vary in detail according to the complexity of the operation and of the type and number of aircraft operated.

(b) The OM or parts thereof may be presented in any form, including electronic form. In all cases, the accessibility, usability and reliability should be assured.

(c) The OM should be such that:

(1) all parts of the manual are consistent and compatible in form and content;

(2) the manual can be readily amended; and

(3) the content and amendment status of the manual is controlled and clearly indicated.

(d) The OM should include a description of its amendment and revision process specifying:

(1) the person(s) who may approve amendments or revisions;

(2) the conditions for temporary revisions and/or immediate amendments or revision required in the interest of safety; and

(3) the methods by which operator personnel are advised of the changes.

(e) The OM content may be based on, or may refer to, industry codes of practice.

(f) When compiling an OM, the operator may take advantage of the contents of other relevant documents. Material produced by the operator for the type-related part of the OM may be supplemented with, or substituted by, applicable parts of the aircraft flight manual (AFM) or, where such a document exists, by an aircraft operating manual produced by the manufacturer of the aircraft.

(g) For the route and aerodrome part of the OM, material produced by the operator may be supplemented with or substituted by applicable route guide material produced by a specialist company.

(h) If the operator chooses to use material from another source in the OM, either the applicable material should be copied and included directly in the relevant part of the OM, or the OM should contain a reference to the appropriate section of that applicable material.

(i) If the operator chooses to make use of material from another source (e.g. a route manual producer, an aircraft manufacturer or a training organisation) this does not absolve the operator from the responsibility of verifying the applicability and suitability of this material. Any material received from an external source should be given its status by a statement in the OM.

AMC2 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – General

CONTENTS – NON-COMMERCIAL OPERATIONS WITH COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT

Reserved.

AMC3 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – general

CONTENTS – COMMERCIAL AIR TRANSPORT OPERATIONS

The OM should contain at least the following information, where applicable, as relevant for the area and type of operation:

A GENERAL/BASIC

0. ADMINISTRATION AND CONTROL OF OPERATIONS MANUAL

0.1 Introduction:

(a) A statement that the manual complies with all applicable regulations and with the terms and conditions of the applicable air operator certificate (AOC).

(b) A statement that the manual contains operational instructions that are to be complied with by the relevant personnel.

(c) A list and brief description of the various parts, their contents, applicability and use.

(d) Explanations and definitions of terms and words needed for the use of the manual.

0.2 System of amendment and revision:

(a) Details of the person(s) responsible for the issuance and insertion of amendments and revisions.

(b) A record of amendments and revisions with insertion dates and effective dates.

(c) A statement that handwritten amendments and revisions are not permitted, except in situations requiring immediate amendment or revision in the interest of safety.

(d) A description of the system for the annotation of pages or paragraphs and their effective dates.

(e) A list of effective pages or paragraphs.

(f) Annotation of changes (in the text and, as far as practicable, on charts and diagrams).

(g) Temporary revisions.

(h) A description of the distribution system for the manuals, amendments and revisions.

1. ORGANISATION AND RESPONSIBILITIES

1.1 Organisational structure. A description of the organisational structure, including the general organogram and operations departments' organograms. The organogram should depict the relationship between the operations departments and the other departments of the operator. In particular, the subordination and reporting lines of all divisions, departments etc, which pertain to the safety of flight operations, should be shown.

1.2 Nominated persons. The name of each nominated person responsible for flight operations, crew training and ground operations, as prescribed in ORO.AOC.135. A description of their function and responsibilities should be included.

1.3 Responsibilities and duties of operations management personnel. A description of the duties, responsibilities and authority of operations management personnel pertaining to the safety of flight operations and the compliance with the applicable regulations.

1.4 Authority, duties and responsibilities of the pilot-in-command/commander. A statement defining the authority, duties and responsibilities of the pilot-in-command/commander.

1.5 Duties and responsibilities of crew members other than the pilot-in-command/commander.

2. OPERATIONAL CONTROL AND SUPERVISION

2.1 Supervision of the operation by the operator. A description of the system for supervision of the operation by the operator (see ORO.GEN.110(c)). This should show how the safety of flight operations and the qualifications of personnel are supervised. In particular, the procedures related to the following items should be described:

(a) licence and qualification validity,

(b) competence of operations personnel,

(c) control, analysis and storage of the required records.

2.2 System and responsibility for promulgation of additional operational instructions and information. A description of any system for promulgating information which may be of an operational nature, but which is supplementary to that in the OM. The applicability of this information and the responsibilities for its promulgation should be included.

2.3 Operational control. A description of the procedures and responsibilities necessary to exercise operational control with respect to flight safety.

2.4 Powers of the authority. A description of the powers of the competent authority and guidance to staff on how to facilitate inspections by authority personnel.

3. MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A description of the management system, including at least the following:

(a) safety policy;

(b) the process for identifying safety hazards and for evaluating and managing the associated risks;

(c) compliance monitoring system;

(d) allocation of duties and responsibilities;

(e) documentation of all key management system processes.

4. CREW COMPOSITION

4.1 Crew composition. An explanation of the method for determining crew compositions, taking account of the following:

(a) the type of aircraft being used;

(b) the area and type of operation being undertaken;

(c) the phase of the flight;

(d) the minimum crew requirement and flight duty period planned;

(e) experience (total and on type), recency and qualification of the crew members;

(f) the designation of the pilot-in-command/commander and, if necessitated by the duration of the flight, the procedures for the relief of the pilot-in-command/commander or other members of the flight crew. (see ORO.FC.105);

(g) the designation of the senior cabin crew member and, if necessitated by the duration of the flight, the procedures for the relief of the senior cabin crew member and any other member of the cabin crew.

4.2 Designation of the pilot-in-command/commander. The rules applicable to the designation of the pilot-in-command/commander.

4.3 Flight crew incapacitation. Instructions on the succession of command in the event of flight crew incapacitation.

4.4 Operation on more than one type. A statement indicating which aircraft are considered as one type for the purpose of:

(a) flight crew scheduling; and

(b) cabin crew scheduling.

5. QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

5.1 A description of the required licence, rating(s), qualification/competency (e.g. for routes and aerodromes), experience, training, checking and recency for operations personnel to conduct their duties. Consideration should be given to the aircraft type, kind of operation and composition of the crew.

5.2 Flight crew:

(a) Pilot-in-command/commander,

(b) Pilot relieving the pilot-in-command/commander,

(c) Co-pilot,

(d) Pilot relieving the co-pilot,

(e) Pilot under supervision,

(f) System panel operator,

(g) Operation on more than one type or variant.

5.3 Cabin crew:

(a) Senior cabin crew member,

(b) Cabin crew member:

(i) Required cabin crew member,

(ii) Additional cabin crew member and cabin crew member during familiarisation flights,

(c) Operation on more than one type or variant.

5.4 Training, checking and supervision personnel:

(a) for flight crew; and

(b) for cabin crew.

5.5 Other operations personnel (including technical crew and crew members other than flight, cabin and technical crew).

6. CREW HEALTH PRECAUTIONS

6.1 Crew health precautions. The relevant regulations and guidance to crew members concerning health, including the following:

(a) alcohol and other intoxicating liquids,

(b) narcotics,

(c) drugs,

(d) sleeping tablets,

(e) anti-depressants,

(f) pharmaceutical preparations,

(g) immunisation,

(h) deep-sea diving,

(i) blood/bone marrow donation,

(j) meal precautions prior to and during flight,

(k) sleep and rest,

(l) surgical operations.

7. FLIGHT TIME LIMITATIONS

7.1 Flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements.

7.2 Exceedance of flight and duty time limitations and/or reductions of rest periods. Conditions under which flight and duty time may be exceeded or rest periods may be reduced, and the procedures used to report these modifications.

8. OPERATING PROCEDURES

8.1 Flight preparation instructions. As applicable to the operation:

8.1.1 Minimum flight altitudes. A description of the method of determination and application of minimum altitudes including:

(a) a procedure to establish the minimum altitudes/flight levels for visual flight rules (VFR) flights; and

(b) a procedure to establish the minimum altitudes/flight levels for instrument flight rules (IFR) flights.

8.1.2 Criteria and responsibilities for determining the adequacy of aerodromes to be used.

8.1.3 Methods and responsibilities for establishing aerodrome operating minima. Reference should be made to procedures for the determination of the visibility and/or runway visual range (RVR) and for the applicability of the actual visibility observed by the pilots, the reported visibility and the reported RVR.

8.1.4 En-route operating minima for VFR flights or VFR portions of a flight and, where single-engined aircraft are used, instructions for route selection with respect to the availability of surfaces that permit a safe forced landing.

8.1.5 Presentation and application of aerodrome and en-route operating minima.

8.1.6 Interpretation of meteorological information. Explanatory material on the decoding of meteorological (MET) forecasts and MET reports relevant to the area of operations, including the interpretation of conditional expressions.

8.1.7 Determination of the quantities of fuel, oil and water methanol carried. The methods by which the quantities of fuel, oil and water methanol to be carried are determined and monitored in-flight. This section should also include instructions on the measurement and distribution of the fluid carried on board. Such instructions should take account of all circumstances likely to be encountered on the flight, including the possibility of in-flight re-planning and of failure of one or more of the aircraft's power plants. The system for maintaining fuel and oil records should also be described.

8.1.8 Mass and centre of gravity. The general principles of mass and centre of gravity including the following:

(a) definitions;

(b) methods, procedures and responsibilities for preparation and acceptance of mass and centre of gravity calculations;

(c) the policy for using standard and/or actual masses;

(d) the method for determining the applicable passenger, baggage and cargo mass;

(e) the applicable passenger and baggage masses for various types of operations and aircraft type;

(f) general instructions and information necessary for verification of the various types of mass and balance documentation in use;

(g) last-minute changes procedures;

(h) specific gravity of fuel, oil and water methanol;

(i) seating policy/procedures;

(j) for helicopter operations, standard load plans.

8.1.9 Air traffic services (ATS) flight plan. Procedures and responsibilities for the preparation and submission of the ATS flight plan. Factors to be considered include the means of submission for both individual and repetitive flight plans.

8.1.10 Operational flight plan. Procedures and responsibilities for the preparation and acceptance of the operational flight plan. The use of the operational flight plan should be described including samples of the operational flight plan formats in use.

8.1.11 Operator's aircraft technical log. The responsibilities and the use of the operator's aircraft technical log should be described, including samples of the format used.

8.1.12 List of documents, forms and additional information to be carried.

8.2 Ground handling instructions. As applicable to the operation:

8.2.1 Fuelling procedures. A description of fuelling procedures, including:

(a) safety precautions during refuelling and defuelling including when an auxiliary power unit is in operation or when rotors are running or when an engine is or engines are running and the prop-brakes are on;

(b) refuelling and defuelling when passengers are embarking, on board or disembarking; and

(c) precautions to be taken to avoid mixing fuels.

8.2.2 Aircraft, passengers and cargo handling procedures related to safety. A description of the handling procedures to be used when allocating seats, embarking and disembarking passengers and when loading and unloading the aircraft. Further procedures, aimed at achieving safety whilst the aircraft is on the ramp, should also be given. Handling procedures should include:

(a) special categories of passengers, including children/infants, persons with reduced mobility, inadmissible passengers, deportees and persons in custody;

(b) permissible size and weight of hand baggage;

(c) loading and securing of items in the aircraft;

(d) positioning of ground equipment;

(e) operation of aircraft doors;

(f) safety on the aerodrome/operating site, including fire prevention and safety in blast and suction areas;

(g) start-up, ramp departure and arrival procedures including, for aeroplanes, push-back and towing operations;

(h) servicing of aircraft;

(i) documents and forms for aircraft handling;

(j) special loads and classification of load compartments; and

(k) multiple occupancy of aircraft seats.

8.2.3 Procedures for the refusal of embarkation. Procedures to ensure that persons who appear to be intoxicated, or who demonstrate by manner or physical indications that they are under the influence of drugs, are refused embarkation. This does not apply to medical patients under proper care.

8.2.4 De-icing and anti-icing on the ground. A description of the de-icing and anti-icing policy and procedures for aircraft on the ground. These should include descriptions of the types and effects of icing and other contaminants on aircraft whilst stationary, during ground movements and during take-off. In addition, a description of the fluid types used should be given, including the following:

(a) proprietary or commercial names,

(b) characteristics,

(c) effects on aircraft performance,

(d) hold-over times,

(e) precautions during usage.

8.3 Flight Procedures:

8.3.1 VFR/IFR Policy. A description of the policy for allowing flights to be made under VFR, or for requiring flights to be made under IFR, or for changing from one to the other.

8.3.2 Navigation Procedures. A description of all navigation procedures, relevant to the type(s) and area(s) of operation. Special consideration should be given to:

(a) standard navigational procedures, including policy for carrying out independent cross-checks of keyboard entries where these affect the flight path to be followed by the aircraft; and

(b) required navigation performance (RNP), minimum navigation performance specification (MNPS) and polar navigation and navigation in other designated areas;

(c) in-flight re-planning;

(d) procedures in the event of system degradation; and

(e) reduced vertical separation minima (RVSM), for aeroplanes.

8.3.3 Altimeter setting procedures, including, where appropriate, use of:

(a) metric altimetry and conversion tables; and

(b) QFE operating procedures.

8.3.4 Altitude alerting system procedures for aeroplanes or audio voice alerting devices for helicopters.

8.3.5 Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)/terrain avoidance warning system (TAWS), for aeroplanes. Procedures and instructions required for the avoidance of controlled flight into terrain, including limitations on high rate of descent near the surface (the related training requirements are covered in OM-D 2.1).

8.3.6 Policy and procedures for the use of traffic collision avoidance system (TCAS)/airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) for aeroplanes and, when applicable, for helicopters.

8.3.7 Policy and procedures for in-flight fuel management.

8.3.8 Adverse and potentially hazardous atmospheric conditions. Procedures for operating in, and/or avoiding, adverse and potentially hazardous atmospheric conditions, including the following:

(a) thunderstorms,

(b) icing conditions,

(c) turbulence,

(d) windshear,

(e) jet stream,

(f) volcanic ash clouds,

(g) heavy precipitation,

(h) sand storms,

(i) mountain waves,

(j) significant temperature inversions.

8.3.9 Wake turbulence. Wake turbulence separation criteria, taking into account aircraft types, wind conditions and runway/final approach and take-off area (FATO) location. For helicopters, consideration should also be given to rotor downwash.

8.3.10 Crew members at their stations. The requirements for crew members to occupy their assigned stations or seats during the different phases of flight or whenever deemed necessary in the interest of safety and, for aeroplane operations, including procedures for controlled rest in the flight crew compartment.

8.3.11 Use of restraint devices for crew and passengers. The requirements for crew members and passengers to use safety belts and/or restraint systems during the different phases of flight or whenever deemed necessary in the interest of safety.

8.3.12 Admission to flight crew compartment. The conditions for the admission to the flight crew compartment of persons other than the flight crew. The policy regarding the admission of inspectors from an authority should also be included.

8.3.13 Use of vacant crew seats. The conditions and procedures for the use of vacant crew seats.

8.3.14 Incapacitation of crew members. Procedures to be followed in the event of incapacitation of crew members in-flight. Examples of the types of incapacitation and the means for recognising them should be included.

8.3.15 Cabin Safety Requirements. Procedures:

(a) covering cabin preparation for flight, in-flight requirements and preparation for landing, including procedures for securing the cabin and galleys;

(b) to ensure that passengers are seated where, in the event that an emergency evacuation is required, they may best assist and not hinder evacuation from the aircraft;

(c) to be followed during passenger embarkation and disembarkation;

(d) when refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking;

(e) covering the carriage of special categories of passengers;

(f) covering smoking on board;

(g) covering the handling of suspected infectious diseases.

8.3.16 Passenger briefing procedures. The contents, means and timing of passenger briefing in accordance with Annex IV (Part-CAT).

8.3.17 Procedures for aircraft operated whenever required cosmic or solar radiation detection equipment is carried.

8.3.18 Policy on the use of autopilot and autothrottle for aircraft fitted with these systems.

8.4 Low visibility operations (LVO). A description of the operational procedures associated with LVO.

8.5 Extended-range operations with two-engined aeroplanes (ETOPS). A description of the ETOPS operational procedures. (Refer to EASA AMC 20-6)

8.6 Use of the minimum equipment and configuration deviation list(s).

8.7 Non-revenue flights. Procedures and limitations, for example, for the following:

(a) non-commercial operations by AOC holders, a description of the differences to commercial operations,

(b) training flights,

(c) test flights,

(d) delivery flights,

(e) ferry flights,

(f) demonstration flights,

(g) positioning flights, including the kind of persons who may be carried on such flights.

8.8 Oxygen Requirements:

8.8.1 An explanation of the conditions under which oxygen should be provided and used.

8.8.2 The oxygen requirements specified for the following persons:

(a) flight crew;

(b) cabin crew;

(c) passengers.

9. DANGEROUS GOODS AND WEAPONS

9.1 Information, instructions and general guidance on the transport of dangerous goods, in accordance with Subpart G of Annex V (SPA.DG) including:

(a) operator's policy on the transport of dangerous goods;

(b) guidance on the requirements for acceptance, labelling, handling, stowage and segregation of dangerous goods;

(c) special notification requirements in the event of an accident or occurrence when dangerous goods are being carried;

(d) procedures for responding to emergency situations involving dangerous goods;

(e) duties of all personnel involved; and

(f) instructions on the carriage of the operator's personnel on cargo aircraft when dangerous goods are being carried.

9.2 The conditions under which weapons, munitions of war and sporting weapons may be carried.

10. SECURITY

Security instructions, guidance, procedures, training and responsibilities, taking into account Regulation (EC) No 300/2008[17]. Some parts of the security instructions and guidance may be kept confidential.

11. HANDLING, NOTIFYING AND REPORTING ACCIDENTS, INCIDENTS AND OCCURRENCES

Procedures for handling, notifying and reporting accidents, incidents and occurrences. This section should include the following:

(a) definition of accident, incident and occurrence and of the relevant responsibilities of all persons involved;

(b) illustrations of forms to be used for reporting all types of accident, incident and occurrence (or copies of the forms themselves), instructions on how they are to be completed, the addresses to which they should be sent and the time allowed for this to be done;

(c) in the event of an accident, descriptions of which departments, authorities and other organisations have to be notified, how this will be done and in what sequence;

(d) procedures for verbal notification to air traffic service units of incidents involving ACAS resolution advisories (RAs), bird hazards, dangerous goods and hazardous conditions;

(e) procedures for submitting written reports on air traffic incidents, ACAS RAs, bird strikes, dangerous goods incidents or accidents, and unlawful interference;

(f) reporting procedures. These procedures should include internal safety-related reporting procedures to be followed by crew members, designed to ensure that the pilot-in-command/com-

[17] OJ L 97, 11.3.2008, p. 72.

mander is informed immediately of any incident that has endangered, or may have endangered, safety during the flight, and that the pilot-in-command/commander is provided with all relevant information.

(g) Procedures for the preservation of recordings following a reportable event.

12. RULES OF THE AIR

(a) Visual and instrument flight rules

(b) Territorial application of the rules of the air

(c) Communication procedures, including communication-failure procedures

(d) Information and instructions relating to the interception of civil aircraft

(e) The circumstances in which a radio listening watch is to be maintained

(f) Signals

(g) Time system used in operation

(h) ATC clearances, adherence to flight plan and position reports

(i) Visual signals used to warn an unauthorised aircraft flying in or about to enter a restricted, prohibited or danger area

(j) Procedures for flight crew observing an accident or receiving a distress transmission

(k) The ground/air visual codes for use by survivors, and description and use of signal aids

(l) Distress and urgency signals.

13. LEASING / CODE-SHARE

A description of the operational arrangements for leasing and code-share, associated procedures and management responsibilities.

B AIRCRAFT OPERATING MATTERS – TYPE RELATED

Taking account of the differences between types/classes, and variants of types, under the following headings:

0. GENERAL INFORMATION AND UNITS OF MEASUREMENT

0.1 General information (e.g. aircraft dimensions), including a description of the units of measurement used for the operation of the aircraft type concerned and conversion tables.

1. LIMITATIONS

1.1 A description of the certified limitations and the applicable operational limitations should include the following:

(a) certification status (e.g. EASA (supplemental) type certificate, environmental certification, etc.);

(b) passenger seating configuration for each aircraft type including a pictorial presentation;

(c) types of operation that are approved (e.g. VFR/IFR, CAT II/III, RNP, flights in known icing conditions etc.);

(d) crew composition;

(e) mass and centre of gravity;

(f) speed limitations;

(g) flight envelope(s);

(h) wind limits including operations on contaminated runways;

(i) performance limitations for applicable configurations;

(j) (runway) slope;

(k) for aeroplanes, limitations on wet or contaminated runways;

(l) airframe contamination;

(m) system limitations.

2. NORMAL PROCEDURES

The normal procedures and duties assigned to the crew, the appropriate checklists, the system for their use and a statement covering the necessary coordination procedures between flight and cabin/other crew members. The normal procedures and duties should include the following:

(a) pre-flight,

(b) pre-departure,

(c) altimeter setting and checking,

(d) taxi, take-off and climb,

(e) noise abatement,

(f) cruise and descent,

(g) approach, landing preparation and briefing,

(h) VFR approach,

(i) IFR approach,

(j) visual approach and circling,

(k) missed approach,

(l) normal landing,

(m) post-landing,

(n) for aeroplanes, operations on wet and contaminated runways.

3. ABNORMAL AND/OR EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

The abnormal and/or emergency procedures and duties assigned to the crew, the appropriate checklists, the system for their use and a statement covering the necessary coordination procedures between flight and cabin/other crew members. The following abnormal and/or emergency procedures and duties should include the following:

(a) crew incapacitation,

(b) fire and smoke drills,

(c) for aeroplanes, un-pressurised and partially pressurised flight,

(d) for aeroplanes, exceeding structural limits such as overweight landing,

(e) lightning strikes,

(f) distress communications and alerting ATC to emergencies,

(g) engine/burner failure,

(h) system failures,

(i) guidance for diversion in case of serious technical failure,

(j) ground proximity warning, including for helicopters audio voice alerting device (AVAD) warning,

(k) ACAS/TCAS warning for aeroplanes/audio voice alerting device (AVAD) warning for helicopters,

(l) windshear,

(m) emergency landing/ditching,

(n) for aeroplanes, departure contingency procedures.

4. PERFORMANCE

4.0 Performance data should be provided in a form that can be used without difficulty.

4.1 Performance data. Performance material that provides the necessary data for compliance with the performance requirements prescribed in Annex IV (Part-CAT). For aeroplanes, this performance data should be included to allow the determination of the following:

(a) take-off climb limits – mass, altitude, temperature;

(b) take-off field length (for dry, wet and contaminated runway conditions);

(c) net flight path data for obstacle clearance calculation or, where applicable, take-off flight path;

(d) the gradient losses for banked climb-outs;

(e) en-route climb limits;

(f) approach climb limits;

(g) landing climb limits;

(h) landing field length (for dry, wet and contaminated runway conditions) including the effects of an in-flight failure of a system or device, if it affects the landing distance;

(i) brake energy limits;

(j) speeds applicable for the various flight stages (also considering dry, wet and contaminated runway conditions).

4.1.1 Supplementary data covering flights in icing conditions. Any certified performance related to an allowable configuration, or configuration deviation, such as anti-skid inoperative.

4.1.2 If performance data, as required for the appropriate performance class, is not available in the AFM, then other data should be included. The OM may contain cross-reference to the data contained in the AFM where such data is not likely to be used often or in an emergency.

4.2 Additional performance data for aeroplanes. Additional performance data, where applicable, including the following:

(a) all engine climb gradients,

(b) drift-down data,

(c) effect of de-icing/anti-icing fluids,

(d) flight with landing gear down,

(e) for aircraft with 3 or more engines, one-engine-inoperative ferry flights,

(f) flights conducted under the provisions of the configuration deviation list (CDL).

5. FLIGHT PLANNING

5.1 Data and instructions necessary for pre-flight and in-flight planning including, for aeroplanes, factors such as speed schedules and power settings. Where applicable, procedures for engine(s)-out operations, ETOPS (particularly the one-engine-inoperative cruise speed and maximum distance to an adequate aerodrome determined in accordance with Annex IV (Part-CAT)) and flights to isolated aerodromes should be included.

5.2 The method for calculating fuel needed for the various stages of flight.

5.3 When applicable, for aeroplanes, performance data for ETOPS critical fuel reserve and area of operation, including sufficient data to support the critical fuel reserve and area of operation calculation based on approved aircraft performance data. The following data should be included:

(a) detailed engine(s)-inoperative performance data including fuel flow for standard and non-standard atmospheric conditions and as a function of airspeed and power setting, where appropriate, covering:

(i) drift down (includes net performance), where applicable;

(ii) cruise altitude coverage including 10 000 ft;

(iii) holding;

(iv) altitude capability (includes net performance); and

(v) missed approach;

(b) detailed all-engine-operating performance data, including nominal fuel flow data, for standard and non-standard atmospheric conditions and as a function of airspeed and power setting, where appropriate, covering:

(i) cruise (altitude coverage including 10 000 ft); and

(ii) holding;

(c) details of any other conditions relevant to ETOPS operations which can cause significant deterioration of performance, such as ice accumulation on the unprotected surfaces of the aircraft, ram air turbine (RAT) deployment, thrust-reverser deployment, etc.; and

(d) the altitudes, airspeeds, thrust settings, and fuel flow used in establishing the ETOPS area of operations for each airframe-engine combination should be used in showing the corresponding terrain and obstruction clearances in accordance with Annex IV (Part-CAT).

6. MASS AND BALANCE

Instructions and data for the calculation of the mass and balance including the following:

(a) calculation system (e.g. index system);

(b) information and instructions for completion of mass and balance documentation, including manual and computer generated types;

(c) limiting masses and centre of gravity for the types, variants or individual aircraft used by the operator;

(d) dry operating mass and corresponding centre of gravity or index.

7. LOADING

Procedures and provisions for loading and unloading and securing the load in the aircraft.

8. CONFIGURATION DEVIATION LIST

The CDL(s), if provided by the manufacturer, taking account of the aircraft types and variants operated including procedures to be followed when an aircraft is being dispatched under the terms of its CDL.

9. MINIMUM EQUIPMENT LIST (MEL)

The MEL for each aircraft type or variant operated and the type(s)/area(s) of operation. The MEL should also include the dispatch conditions associated with operations required for a specific approval (e.g. RNAV, RNP, RVSM, ETOPS). Consideration should be given to using the ATA number system when allocating chapters and numbers.

10. SURVIVAL AND EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT INCLUDING OXYGEN

10.1 A list of the survival equipment to be carried for the routes to be flown and the procedures for checking the serviceability of this equipment prior to take-off. Instructions regarding the location, accessibility and use of survival and emergency equipment and its associated checklist(s) should also be included.

10.2 The procedure for determining the amount of oxygen required and the quantity that is available. The flight profile, number of occupants and possible cabin decompression should be considered.

11. EMERGENCY EVACUATION PROCEDURES

11.1 Instructions for preparation for emergency evacuation including crew coordination and emergency station assignment.

11.2 Emergency evacuation procedures. A description of the duties of all members of the crew for the rapid evacuation of an aircraft and the handling of the passengers in the event of a forced landing, ditching or other emergency.

12. AIRCRAFT SYSTEMS

A description of the aircraft systems, related controls and indications and operating instructions. Consideration should be given to use the ATA number system when allocating chapters and numbers.

C ROUTE/ROLE/AREA AND AERODROME/OPERATING SITE INSTRUCTIONS AND INFORMATION

1. Instructions and information relating to communications, navigation and aerodromes/operating sites including minimum flight levels and altitudes for each route to be flown and operating minima for each aerodrome/operating site planned to be used, including the following:

(a) minimum flight level/altitude;

(b) operating minima for departure, destination and alternate aerodromes;

(c) communication facilities and navigation aids;

(d) runway/final approach and take-off area (FATO) data and aerodrome/operating site facilities;

(e) approach, missed approach and departure procedures including noise abatement procedures;

(f) communication-failure procedures;

(g) search and rescue facilities in the area over which the aircraft is to be flown;

(h) a description of the aeronautical charts that should be carried on board in relation to the type of flight and the route to be flown, including the method to check their validity;

(i) availability of aeronautical information and MET services;

(j) en-route communication/navigation procedures;

(k) aerodrome/operating site categorisation for flight crew competence qualification;

(l) special aerodrome/operating site limitations (performance limitations and operating procedures etc.).

D TRAINING

1. Description of scope: Training syllabi and checking programmes for all operations personnel assigned to operational duties in connection with the preparation and/or conduct of a flight.

2. Content: Training syllabi and checking programmes should include the following:

 2.1 for flight crew, all relevant items prescribed in Annex IV (Part-CAT), Annex V (Part-SPA) and ORO.FC;

 2.2 for cabin crew, all relevant items prescribed in Annex IV (Part-CAT), Annex V (Part-CC) of Commission Regulation (EU) xxx/XXXX and ORO.CC;

 2.3 for technical crew, all relevant items prescribed in Annex IV (Part-CAT), Annex V (Part-SPA) and ORO.TC;

 2.4 for operations personnel concerned, including crew members:

  (a) all relevant items prescribed in SPA.DG Subpart G of Annex IV (SPA.DG); and

  (b) all relevant items prescribed in Annex IV (Part-CAT) and ORO.SEC; and

 2.5 for operations personnel other than crew members (e.g. dispatcher, handling personnel etc.), all other relevant items prescribed in Annex IV (Part-CAT) and in this Annex pertaining to their duties.

3. Procedures:

 3.1 Procedures for training and checking.

 3.2 Procedures to be applied in the event that personnel do not achieve or maintain the required standards.

 3.3 Procedures to ensure that abnormal or emergency situations requiring the application of part or all of the abnormal or emergency procedures, and simulation of instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) by artificial means are not simulated during commercial air transport operations.

4. Description of documentation to be stored and storage periods.

2. Notwithstanding 1, an OM that is compiled in accordance with JAR-OPS 3 amendment 5 may be considered to be compliant.

AMC4 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – General

CONTENTS – NON-COMMERCIAL SPECIALISED OPERATIONS WITH COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT AND COMMERCIAL SPECIALISED OPERATIONS

Reserved.

GM1 ORO.MLR.100 Operations manual – general

CONTENTS

If there are sections that, because of the nature of the operation, do not apply, it is recommended that operators maintain the numbering system described in ORO.MLR.101 and AMC3 ORO.MLR.100 and insert 'Not applicable' or 'Intentionally blank' where appropriate.

GM1 ORO.MLR.100(h) Operations manual – general

HUMAN FACTORS PRINCIPLES

Guidance material on the application of human factors principles can be found in the ICAO Human Factors Training Manual (Doc 9683).

ORO.MLR.105 Minimum equipment list

(a) A minimum equipment list (MEL) shall be established as specified under 8.a.3. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, based on the relevant master minimum equipment list (MMEL) as defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

(b) The MEL and any amendment thereto shall be approved by the competent authority.

(c) The operator shall amend the MEL after any applicable change to the MMEL within the acceptable time-scales.

(d) In addition to the list of items, the MEL shall contain:

(1) a preamble, including guidance and definitions for flight crews and maintenance personnel using the MEL;

(2) the revision status of the MMEL upon which the MEL is based and the revision status of the MEL;

(3) the scope, extent and purpose of the MEL.

(e) The operator shall:

(1) establish rectification intervals for each inoperative instrument, item of equipment or function listed in the MEL. The rectification interval in the MEL shall not be less restrictive than the corresponding rectification interval in the MMEL;

(2) establish an effective rectification programme;

(3) only operate the aircraft after expiry of the rectification interval specified in the MEL when:

(i) the defect has been rectified; or

(ii) the rectification interval has been extended in accordance with (f).

(f) Subject to approval of the competent authority, the operator may use a procedure for the one time extension of category B, C and D rectification intervals, provided that:

(1) the extension of the rectification interval is within the scope of the MMEL for the aircraft type;

(2) the extension of the rectification interval is, as a maximum, of the same duration as the rectification interval specified in the MEL;

(3) the rectification interval extension is not used as a normal means of conducting MEL item rectification and is used only when events beyond the control of the operator have precluded rectification;

(4) a description of specific duties and responsibilities for controlling extensions is established by the operator;

(5) the competent authority is notified of any extension of the applicable rectification interval; and

(6) a plan to accomplish the rectification at the earliest opportunity is established.

(g) The operator shall establish the operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MEL taking into account the operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MMEL. These procedures shall be part of the operator's manuals or the MEL.

(h) The operator shall amend the operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MEL after any applicable change to the operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MMEL.

(i) Unless otherwise specified in the MEL, the operator shall complete:

(1) the operational procedures referenced in the MEL when planning for and/or operating with the listed item inoperative; and

(2) the maintenance procedures referenced in the MEL prior to operating with the listed item inoperative.

(j) Subject to a specific case-by-case approval by the competent authority, the operator may operate an aircraft with inoperative instruments, items of equipment or functions outside the constraints of the MEL but within the constraints of the MMEL, provided that:

(1) the concerned instruments, items of equipment or functions are within the scope of the MMEL as defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003;

(2) the approval is not used as a normal means of conducting operations outside the constraints of the approved MEL and is used only when events beyond the control of the operator have precluded the MEL compliance;

(3) a description of specific duties and responsibilities for controlling the operation of the aircraft under such approval is established by the operator; and

(4) a plan to rectify the inoperative instruments, items of equipment or functions or to return operating the aircraft under the MEL constraints at the earliest opportunity is established.

GM1 ORO.MLR.105(a) Minimum equipment list

GENERAL

The MEL is a document that lists the equipment that may be temporarily inoperative, subject to certain conditions, at the commencement of flight. This document is prepared by the operator for his/their own particular aircraft taking account of their aircraft configuration and all those individual variables that cannot be addressed at MMEL level, such as operating environment, route structure, geographic location, aerodromes where spare parts and maintenance capabilities are available etc., in accordance with a procedure approved by the competent authority.

NON-SAFETY RELATED EQUIPMENT

(a) Most aircraft are designed and certified with a significant amount of equipment redundancy, such that the airworthiness requirements are satisfied by a substantial margin. In addition, aircraft are generally fitted with equipment that is not required for safe operation under all operating conditions, e.g. instrument lighting in day VMC.

(b) All items related to the airworthiness, or required for the safe operation, of the aircraft and not included in the list are automatically required to be operative.

(c) Equipment, such as entertainment systems or galley equipment, may be installed for passenger convenience. If this non-safety related equipment does not affect the airworthiness or operation of the aircraft when inoperative, it does not require a rectification interval, and need not be listed in the operator's MEL, if it is not addressed in the MMEL. The exceptions to this are as follows:

    (1) Where non-safety related equipment serves a second function, such as movie equipment being used for cabin safety briefings, operators should develop and include operational contingency procedures in the MEL in case of an equipment malfunction.

    (2) Where non-safety related equipment is part of another aircraft system, for example the electrical system, procedures should be developed and included in the MEL for deactivating and securing in case of malfunction. In these cases, the item should be listed in the MEL, with compensating provisions and deactivation instructions if applicable. The rectification interval will be dependent on the secondary function of the item and the extent of its effect on other systems.

(d) If the operator chooses to list non-safety related equipment in the MEL, not listed in the MMEL, they should include a rectification interval category. These items may be given a 'D' category rectification interval provided any applicable (M) procedure (in the case of electrically supplied items) is applied.

(e) Operators should establish an effective decision making process for failures that are not listed to determine if they are related to airworthiness and required for safe operation. In order for inoperative installed equipment to be considered non-safety related, the following criteria should be considered:

    (1) the operation of the aircraft is not adversely affected such that standard operating procedures related to ground personnel, and crew members are impeded;

    (2) the condition of the aircraft is not adversely affected such that the safety of passengers and/or personnel is jeopardised;

    (3) the condition of the aircraft is configured to minimise the probability of a subsequent failure that may cause injury to passengers / personnel and/or cause damage to the aircraft;

    (4) the condition does not include the use of required emergency equipment and does not impact emergency procedures such that personnel could not perform them.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(c) Minimum equipment list

AMENDMENTS TO THE MEL FOLLOWING CHANGES TO THE MMEL − APPLICABLE CHANGES AND ACCEPTABLE TIMESCALES

(a) The following are applicable changes to the MMEL that require amendment of the MEL:

(1) a reduction of the rectification interval;

(2) change of an item, only when the change is applicable to the aircraft or type of operations and is more restrictive.

(b) An acceptable timescale for submitting the amended MEL to the competent authority is 90 days from the date of applicability specified in the approved change to the MMEL.

(c) Reduced timescales for the implementation of safety related amendments may be required if the Agency and/or competent authority consider it necessary.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(d)(3) Minimum equipment list

EXTENT OF THE MEL

The operator should include guidance in the MEL on how to deal with any failures that occur between the commencement of the flight and the start of the take-off. If a failure occurs between the commencement of the flight and the start of the take-off, any decision to continue the flight should be subject to pilot judgement and good airmanship. The pilot-in-command/commander may refer to the MEL before any decision to continue the flight is taken.

GM1 ORO.MLR.105(e);(f) Minimum equipment list

RECTIFICATION INTERVAL (RI)

The definitions and categories of rectification intervals are provided in CS-MMEL.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(f) Minimum equipment list

RECTIFICATION INTERVAL EXTENSION (RIE) − OPERATOR PROCEDURES FOR THE APPROVAL BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY AND NOTIFICATION TO THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

(a) The operator's procedures to address the extension of rectification intervals and ongoing surveillance to ensure compliance should provide the competent authority with details of the name and position of the nominated personnel responsible for the control of the operator's rectification interval extension (RIE) procedures and details of the specific duties and responsibilities established to control the use of RIEs.

(b) Personnel authorising RIEs should be adequately trained in technical and/or operational disciplines to accomplish their duties. They should have necessary operational knowledge in terms of operational use of the MEL as alleviating documents by flight crew and maintenance personnel and engineering competence. The authorising personnel should be listed by appointment and name.

(c) The operator should notify the competent authority within 1 month of the extension of the applicable rectification interval or within the appropriated timescales specified by the approved procedure for the RIE.

(d) The notification should be made in a form determined by the competent authority and should specify the original defect, all such uses, the reason for the RIE and the reasons why rectification was not carried out within the original rectification interval.

GM1 OR.OPS.MLR.105(f) Minimum equipment list

RECTIFICATION INTERVAL EXTENSION (RIE)

Procedures for the extension of rectification intervals should only be applied under certain conditions, such as a shortage of parts from manufacturers or other unforeseen situations (e.g. inability to obtain equipment necessary for proper troubleshooting and repair), in which case the operator may be unable to comply with the specified rectification intervals.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(g) Minimum equipment list

OPERATIONAL AND MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

(a) The operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MEL should be based on the operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MMEL. Modified procedures may, however, be developed by the operator when they provide the same level of safety as required by the MMEL.

(b) Providing appropriate operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MEL, regardless of who developed them, is the responsibility of the operator.

(c) Any item in the MEL requiring an operational or maintenance procedure to ensure an acceptable level of safety should be so identified in the 'remarks' or 'exceptions' column/part/section of the MEL. This will normally be '(O)' for an operational procedure, or '(M)' for a maintenance procedure. '(O)(M)' means both operational and maintenance procedures are required.

(d) The satisfactory accomplishment of all procedures, regardless of who performs them, is the responsibility of the operator.

GM1 ORO.MLR.105(g) Minimum equipment list

OPERATIONAL AND MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

(a) Operational and maintenance procedures are an integral part of the compensating conditions needed to maintain an acceptable level of safety, enabling the competent authority to approve the MEL. The competent authority may request presentation of fully developed (O) and/or (M) procedures in the course of the MEL approval process.

(b) Normally, operational procedures are accomplished by the flight crew; however, other personnel may be qualified and authorised to perform certain functions.

(c) Normally, maintenance procedures are accomplished by the maintenance personnel; however, other personnel may be qualified and authorised to perform certain functions.

(d) Operator's manuals may include the OM, the continued airworthiness management organisation manual or other documents.

(e) Unless specifically permitted by a maintenance procedure, an inoperative item may not be removed from the aircraft.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(h) Minimum equipment list

OPERATIONAL AND MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES − APPLICABLE CHANGES

Changes to the operational and maintenance procedures referenced in the MMEL are considered applicable and require the amendment of the maintenance and operating procedures referenced in the MEL when the:

(a) modified procedure is applicable to the operator's MEL; and

(b) purpose of this change is to improve compliance with the intent of the associated MMEL dispatch condition.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.105(j) Minimum equipment list

OPERATION OF AN AIRCRAFT WITHIN THE CONSTRAINTS OF THE MMEL − OPERATOR'S PROCEDURES FOR THE APPROVAL BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

(a) The operator's procedures to address the operation of an aircraft outside the constraints of the MEL but within the constraints of the MMEL and ongoing surveillance to ensure compliance should provide the competent authority with details of the name and position of the nominated personnel responsible for the control of the operations under such conditions and details of the specific duties and responsibilities established to control the use of the approval.

(b) Personnel authorising operations under such approval should be adequately trained in technical and operational disciplines to accomplish their duties. They should have the necessary operational knowledge in terms of operational use of the MEL as alleviating documents by flight crew and maintenance personnel and engineering competence. The authorising personnel should be listed by appointment and name.

GM1 ORO.MLR.105(j) Minimum equipment list

OPERATION OF AN AIRCRAFT WITHIN THE CONSTRAINTS OF THE MMEL − OPERATOR'S PROCEDURES FOR THE APPROVAL BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

Procedures for the operation of an aircraft outside the constraints of the MEL but within the constraints of the MMEL should only be applied under certain conditions, such as a shortage of parts from manufacturers or other unforeseen situations (e.g. inability to obtain equipment necessary for proper troubleshooting and repair), in which case the operator may be unable to comply with the constraints specified in the MEL.

ORO.MLR.110 Journey log

Particulars of the aircraft, its crew and each journey shall be retained for each flight, or series of flights, in the form of a journey log, or equivalent.

AMC1 ORO.MLR.110 Journey log

GENERAL

(a) The aircraft journey log, or equivalent, should include the following items, where applicable:

(1) aircraft nationality and registration,

(2) date,

(3) name(s) of crew member(s),

(4) duty assignments of crew member(s),

(5) place of departure,

(6) place of arrival,

(7) time of departure,

(8) time of arrival,

(9) hours of flight,

(10) nature of flight (scheduled or non-scheduled),

(11) incidents, observations, if any,

(12) signature of person in charge.

(b) The information, or parts thereof, may be recorded in a form other than on printed paper. Accessibility, usability and reliability should be assured.

(c) ‘Journey log, or equivalent’, means that the required information may be recorded in documentation other than a log book, such as the operational flight plan or the aircraft technical log.

(d) ‘Series of flights’, means consecutive flights, which begin and end:

(1) within a 24 hour period;

(2) at the same aerodrome or operating site or remain within a local area specified in the operations manual; and

(3) with the same pilot-in-command/commander of the aircraft.

GM1 ORO.MLR.110 Journey log

SERIES OF FLIGHTS

The term 'series of flights' is used to facilitate a single set of documentation.

ORO.MLR.115 Record-keeping

(a) The records of the activities referred to in ORO.GEN.200 shall be stored for at least 5 years.

(b) The following information used for the preparation and execution of a flight, and associated reports, shall be stored for 3 months:

(1) the operational flight plan, if applicable;

(2) route-specific notice(s) to airmen (NOTAM) and aeronautical information services (AIS) briefing documentation, if edited by the operator;

(3) mass and balance documentation;

(4) notification of special loads, including written information to the commander/pilot-in-command about dangerous goods;

(5) the journey log, or equivalent; and

(6) flight report(s) for recording details of any occurrence, or any event that the commander/pilot-in-command deems necessary to report or record;

(c) Personnel records shall be stored for the periods indicated below:

Flight crew licence and cabin crew attestation	As long as the crew member is exercising the privileges of the licence or attestation for the aircraft operator
Crew member training, checking and qualifications	3 years
Records on crew member recent experience	15 months
Crew member route and aerodrome/task and area competence, as appropriate	3 years
Dangerous goods training, as appropriate	3 years
Training/qualification records of other personnel for whom a training programme is required	last 2 training records

(d) The operator shall:

(1) maintain records of all training, checking and qualifications of each crew member, as prescribed in Part-ORO; and

(2) make such records available, on request, to the crew member concerned.

(e) The operator shall preserve the information used for the preparation and execution of a flight and personnel training records, even if the operator ceases to be the operator of that aircraft or the employer of that crew member, provided this is within the timescales prescribed in (c).

(f) If a crew member becomes a crew member for another operator, the operator shall make the crew member's records available to the new operator, provided this is within the timescales prescribed in (c).

AMC1 ORO.MLR.115 Record-keeping

TRAINING RECORDS

A summary of training should be maintained by the operator to show every crew member's completion of each stage of training and checking.

SUBPART SEC — SECURITY

ORO.SEC.100.A Flight crew compartment security

(a) In an aeroplane which is equipped with a flight crew compartment door, this door shall be capable of being locked, and means shall be provided by which the cabin crew can notify the flight crew in the event of suspicious activity or security breaches in the cabin.

(b) All passenger-carrying aeroplanes of a maximum certificated take-off mass exceeding 45 500 kg, or with a MOPSC of more than 60 engaged in the commercial transportation of passengers, shall be equipped with an approved flight crew compartment door that is capable of being locked and unlocked from either pilot's station and designed to meet the applicable airworthiness requirements.

(c) In all aeroplanes which are equipped with a flight crew compartment door in accordance with point (b) above:

(1) this door shall be closed prior to engine start for take-off and will be locked when required by security procedures or by the pilot-in-command until engine shut down after landing, except when deemed necessary for authorised persons to access or egress in compliance with national civil aviation security programmes; and

(2) means shall be provided for monitoring from either pilot's station the entire door area outside the flight crew compartment to identify persons requesting entry and to detect suspicious behaviour or potential threat.

ORO.SEC.100.H Flight crew compartment security

If installed, the flight crew compartment door on a helicopter operated for the purpose of carrying passengers shall be capable of being locked from within the flight crew compartment in order to prevent unauthorised access.

SUBPART FC — FLIGHT CREW

ORO.FC.005 Scope

This Subpart establishes requirements to be met by the operator conducting commercial air transport operations related to flight crew training, experience and qualification.

ORO.FC.100 Composition of flight crew

(a) The composition of the flight crew and the number of flight crew members at designated crew stations shall be not less than the minimum specified in the aircraft flight manual or operating limitations prescribed for the aircraft.

(b) The flight crew shall include additional flight crew members when required by the type of operation and shall not be reduced below the number specified in the operations manual.

(c) All flight crew members shall hold a licence and ratings issued or accepted in accordance with Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011[18] and appropriate to the duties assigned to them.

(d) The flight crew member may be relieved in flight of his/her duties at the controls by another suitably qualified flight crew member.

(e) When engaging the services of flight crew members who are working on a freelance or part-time basis, the operator shall verify that all applicable requirements of this Subpart and the relevant elements of Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011, including the requirements on recent experience, are complied with, taking into account all services rendered by the flight crew member to other operator(s) to determine in particular:

  (1) the total number of aircraft types or variants operated; and

  (2) the applicable flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements.

[18] OJ L 311, 25.11.2011, p. 1

AMC1 ORO.FC.100(c) Composition of flight crew

OPERATIONAL MULTI-PILOT LIMITATION (OML)

The operator should ensure that pilots with an OML on their medical certificate only operate aircraft in multi-pilot operations when the other pilot is fully qualified on the relevant type of aircraft, is not subject to an OML and has not attained the age of 60 years.

ORO.FC.105 Designation as pilot-in-command/commander

(a) In accordance with 8.e of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, one pilot amongst the flight crew, qualified as pilot-in-command in accordance with Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011, shall be designated by the operator as pilot-in-command/commander.

(b) The operator shall only designate a flight crew member to act as pilot-in-command/commander if he/she has:

(1) the minimum level of experience specified in the operations manual;

(2) adequate knowledge of the route or area to be flown and of the aerodromes, including alternate aerodromes, facilities and procedures to be used;

(3) in the case of multi-crew operations, completed an operator's command course if upgrading from co-pilot to pilot-in-command/commander.

(c) The pilot-in-command/commander or the pilot, to whom the conduct of the flight may be delegated, shall have had initial familiarisation training of the route or area to be flown and of the aerodromes, facilities and procedures to be used. This route/area and aerodrome knowledge shall be maintained by operating at least once on the route or area or to the aerodrome within a 12 month period.

(d) In the case of performance class B aeroplanes involved in commercial air transport operations under VFR by day, (c) shall not apply.

AMC1 ORO.FC.105(b)(2);(c) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander

ROUTE/AREA AND AERODROME KNOWLEDGE FOR COMMERCIAL AIR TRANSPORT OPERATIONS

For commercial air transport (CAT) operations, the experience of the route or area to be flown and of the aerodrome facilities and procedures to be used should include the following:

(a) Area and route knowledge

(1) Area and route training should include knowledge of:

(i) terrain and minimum safe altitudes;

(ii) seasonal meteorological conditions;

(iii) meteorological, communication and air traffic facilities, services and procedures;

(iv) search and rescue procedures where available; and

(v) navigational facilities associated with the area or route along which the flight is to take place.

(2) Depending on the complexity of the area or route, as assessed by the operator, the following methods of familiarisation should be used:

(i) for the less complex areas or routes, familiarisation by self-briefing with route documentation, or by means of programmed instruction; and

(ii) in addition, for the more complex areas or routes, in-flight familiarisation as a pilot-in-command/commander or co-pilot under supervision, observer, or familiarisation in a flight simulation training device (FSTD) using a database appropriate to the route concerned.

(b) Aerodrome knowledge

(1) Aerodrome training should include knowledge of obstructions, physical layout, lighting, approach aids and arrival, departure, holding and instrument approach procedures, applicable operating minima and ground movement considerations.

(2) The operations manual should describe the method of categorisation of aerodromes and, in the case of CAT operations, provide a list of those aerodrome categorised as B or C.

(3) All aerodromes to which an operator operates should be categorised in one of these three categories:

(i) category A – an aerodrome that meets all of the following requirements:

(A) an approved instrument approach procedure;

(B) at least one runway with no performance limited procedure for take-off and/or landing;

(C) published circling minima not higher than 1 000 ft above aerodrome level; and

(D) night operations capability.

(ii) category B – an aerodrome that does not meet the category A requirements or which requires extra considerations such as:

(A) non-standard approach aids and/or approach patterns;

(B) unusual local weather conditions;

(C) unusual characteristics or performance limitations; or

(D) any other relevant considerations including obstructions, physical layout, lighting etc.

(iii) category C – an aerodrome that requires additional considerations to a category B aerodrome;

(iv) offshore installations may be categorised as category B or C aerodromes, taking into account the limitations determined in accordance with AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites.

(c) Prior to operating to a:

(1) category B aerodrome, the pilot-in-command/commander should be briefed, or self-briefed by means of programmed instruction, on the category B aerodrome(s) concerned. The completion of the briefing should be recorded. This recording may be accomplished after completion or confirmed by the pilot-in-command/commander before departure on a flight involving category B aerodrome(s) as destination or alternate aerodromes.

(2) category C aerodrome, the pilot-in-command/commander should be briefed and visit the aerodrome as an observer and/or undertake instruction in a suitable FSTD. The completion of the briefing, visit and/or instruction should be recorded.

AMC1 ORO.FC.105(c) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander

ROUTE/AREA AND AERODROME RECENCY

(a) The 12-month period should be counted from the last day of the month:

(1) when the familiarisation training was undertaken; or

(2) of the latest operation on the route or area to be flown and of the aerodromes, facilities and procedures to be used.

(b) When the operation is undertaken within the last 3 calendar months of that period, the new 12-month period should be counted from the original expiry date.

AMC2 ORO.FC.105(c) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander

ROUTE/AREA AND AERODROME RECENCY – PERFORMANCE CLASS B AEROPLANES OPERATED UNDER VFR BY NIGHT OR IFR IN CAT OPERATIONS

In the case of CAT operations with performance class B aeroplanes operating under visual flight rules (VFR) by night or instrument flight rules (IFR), the knowledge should be maintained as follows:

(a) except for operations to the most demanding aerodromes, by completion of at least 10 flight sectors within the area of operation during the preceding 12 months in addition to any required self-briefing;

(b) operations to the most demanding aerodromes may be performed only if:

(1) the pilot-in-command/commander has been qualified at the aerodrome within the preceding 36 months by a visit as an operating flight crew member or as an observer;

(2) the approach is performed in visual meteorological conditions (VMC) from the applicable minimum sector altitude; and

(3) an adequate self-briefing has been made prior to the flight.

GM1 ORO.FC.105(d) Designation as pilot-in-command/commander

PERFORMANCE CLASS B AEROPLANES OPERATED UNDER VFR BY DAY IN CAT OPERATIONS

For CAT operations under VFR by day with performance class B aeroplanes, the operator should take account of any requirement that might be stipulated in specific cases by the State of the aerodrome.

ORO.FC.110 Flight engineer

When a separate flight engineer station is incorporated in the design of an aeroplane, the flight crew shall include one crew member who is suitably qualified in accordance with applicable national rules.

ORO.FC.115 Crew resource management (CRM) training

(a) Before operating, the flight crew member shall have received CRM training, appropriate to his/her role, as specified in the operations manual.

(b) Elements of CRM training shall be included in the aircraft type or class training and recurrent training as well as in the command course.

See **AMC1 ORO.FC.115&215 Crew resource management (CRM) training.**

See **AMC1.1 ORO.FC.115&.215 Crew resource management (CRM) training.**

See **GM1 ORO.FC.115&.215 Crew resource management (CRM) training.**

ORO.FC.120 Operator conversion training

(a) In the case of aeroplane or helicopter operations, the flight crew member shall complete the operator conversion training course before commencing unsupervised line flying:

(1) when changing to an aircraft for which a new type or class rating is required;

(2) when joining an operator.

(b) The operator conversion training course shall include training on the equipment installed on the aircraft as relevant to flight crew members' roles.

ORO.FC.125 Differences training and familiarisation training

(a) Flight crew members shall complete differences or familiarisation training when required by Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 and when changing equipment or procedures requiring additional knowledge on types or variants currently operated.

(b) The operations manual shall specify when such differences or familiarisation training is required.

AMC1 ORO.FC.125 Differences training and familiarisation training

GENERAL

(a) Differences training requires additional knowledge and training on the aircraft or an appropriate training device. It should be carried out:

(1) when introducing a significant change of equipment and/or procedures on types or variants currently operated; and

(2) in the case of aeroplanes, when operating another variant of an aeroplane of the same type or another type of the same class currently operated; or

(3) in the case of helicopters, when operating a variant of a helicopter currently operated.

(b) Familiarisation training requires only the acquisition of additional knowledge. It should be carried out when:

(1) operating another helicopter or aeroplane of the same type; or

(2) when introducing a significant change of equipment and/or procedures on types or variants currently operated.

ORO.FC.130 Recurrent training and checking

(a) Each flight crew member shall complete annual recurrent flight and ground training relevant to the type or variant of aircraft on which he/she operates, including training on the location and use of all emergency and safety equipment carried.

(b) Each flight crew member shall be periodically checked to demonstrate competence in carrying out normal, abnormal and emergency procedures.

ORO.FC.135 Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat

Flight crew members who may be assigned to operate in either pilot's seat shall complete appropriate training and checking as specified in the operations manual.

ORO.FC.140 Operation on more than one type or variant

(a) Flight crew members operating more than one type or variant of aircraft shall comply with the requirements prescribed in this Subpart for each type or variant, unless credits related to the training, checking, and recent experience requirements are defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants.

(b) Appropriate procedures and/or operational restrictions shall be specified in the operations manual for any operation on more than one type or variant.

ORO.FC.145 Provision of training

(a) All the training required in this Subpart shall be conducted:

   (1) in accordance with the training programmes and syllabi established by the operator in the operations manual;

   (2) by appropriately qualified personnel. In the case of flight and flight simulation training and checking, the personnel providing the training and conducting the checks shall be qualified in accordance with Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

(b) When establishing the training programmes and syllabi, the operator shall include the mandatory elements for the relevant type as defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

(c) Training and checking programmes, including syllabi and use of individual flight simulation training devices (FSTDs), shall be approved by the competent authority.

(d) The FSTD shall replicate the aircraft used by the operator, as far as practicable. Differences between the FSTD and the aircraft shall be described and addressed through a briefing or training, as appropriate.

(e) The operator shall establish a system to adequately monitor changes to the FSTD and to ensure that those changes do not affect the adequacy of the training programmes.

AMC1 ORO.FC.145(b) Provision of training

NON-MANDATORY (RECOMMENDATION) ELEMENTS

When developing the training programmes and syllabi, the operator should consider the non-mandatory (recommendation) elements for the relevant type that are provided in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003[19].

AMC1 ORO.FC.145(d) Provision of training

FULL FLIGHT SIMULATORS (FFS)

The operator should classify any differences between the aircraft and FFS in accordance with the Air Transport Association (ATA) chapters as follows:

Compliance Levels

(a) Level A differences:

(1) no influence on flight characteristics;

(2) no influence on procedures (normal and/or abnormal);

(3) differences in presentation; and

(4) differences in operation.

Method: self-instruction via the operations manual or flight crew information.

(b) Level B differences:

(1) no influence on flight characteristics;

(2) influence on procedures (normal and/or abnormal); and

(3) possible differences in presentation and operation.

Method: flight crew information, computer-based training, system device training or special instruction by instructor.

(c) Level C differences:

(1) influence on flight characteristics;

(2) influence on procedures (normal and/or abnormal); and

(3) eventually differences in presentation and operation.

Method: special instruction by instructor, a selected partial training on another FSTD or aircraft or a waiver because of previous experience, special instruction or training programme.

(d) Level D differences:

(1) influence on flight characteristics; and/or

(2) influence on procedures (normal and/or abnormal); and/or

(3) differences in presentation and/or operation; and

(4) FSTD is level D qualified and is used for zero flight-time training (ZFTT).

Method: a specified partial training on another FSTD or aircraft or a waiver because of previous experience, special instruction or training programme.

19 OJ L 243, 27.9.2003, p. 6.

ORO.FC.200 Composition of flight crew

(a) There shall not be more than one inexperienced flight crew member in any flight crew.

(b) The commander may delegate the conduct of the flight to another pilot suitably qualified in accordance with Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 provided that the requirements of ORO.FC.105 (b)(1), (b)(2) and (c) are complied with.

(c) Specific requirements for aeroplane operations under instrument flight rules (IFR) or at night.

(1) The minimum flight crew shall be two pilots for all turbo-propeller aeroplanes with a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of more than nine and all turbojet aeroplanes.

(2) Aeroplanes other than those covered by (c)(1) shall be operated with a minimum crew of two pilots, unless the requirements of ORO.FC.202 are complied with, in which case they may be operated by a single pilot.

(d) Specific requirements for helicopter operations.

(1) For all operations of helicopters with an MOPSC of more than 19 and for operations under IFR of helicopters with an MOPSC of more than 9:

(i) the minimum flight crew shall be two pilots; and

(ii) the commander shall be the holder of an airline transport pilot licence (helicopter) (ATPL(H)) with an instrument rating issued in accordance with Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

(2) Operations not covered by (d)(1) may be operated by a single pilot under IFR or at night provided that the requirements of ORO.FC.202 are complied with.

ORO.FC.A.201 In-flight relief of flight crew members

(a) The commander may delegate the conduct of the flight to:

(1) another qualified commander; or

(2) for operations only above flight level (FL) 200, a pilot who complies with the following minimum qualifications:

(i) ATPL;

(ii) conversion training and checking, including type rating training, in accordance with ORO.FC.220;

(iii) all recurrent training and checking in accordance with ORO.FC.230 and ORO.FC.240;

(iv) route/area and aerodrome competence in accordance with ORO.FC.105.

(b) The co-pilot may be relieved by:

(1) another suitably qualified pilot;

(2) for operations only above FL 200, a cruise relief co-pilot that complies with the following minimum qualifications:

(i) valid commercial pilot licence (CPL) with an instrument rating;

(ii) conversion training and checking, including type rating training, in accordance with ORO.FC.220 except the requirement for take-off and landing training;

(iii) recurrent training and checking in accordance with ORO.FC.230 except the requirement for take-off and landing training.

(c) A flight engineer may be relieved in flight by a crew member suitably qualified in accordance with applicable national rules.

ORO.FC.202 Single-pilot operations under IFR or at night

In order to be able to fly under IFR or at night with a minimum flight crew of one pilot, as foreseen in ORO.FC.200 (c)(2) and (d)(2), the following shall be complied with:

(a) The operator shall include in the operations manual a pilot's conversion and recurrent training programme that includes the additional requirements for a single-pilot operation. The pilot shall have undertaken training on the operator's procedures, in particular regarding:

(1) engine management and emergency handling;

(2) use of normal, abnormal and emergency checklist;

(3) air traffic control (ATC) communication;

(4) departure and approach procedures;

(5) autopilot management, if applicable;

(6) use of simplified in-flight documentation;

(7) single-pilot crew resource management.

(b) The recurrent checks required by ORO.FC.230 shall be performed in the single-pilot role on the relevant type or class of aircraft in an environment representative of the operation.

(c) For aeroplane operations under IFR the pilot shall have:

(1) a minimum of 50 hours flight time under IFR on the relevant type or class of aeroplane, of which 10 hours are as commander; and

(2) completed during the preceding 90 days on the relevant type or class of aeroplane:

(i) five IFR flights, including three instrument approaches, in a single-pilot role; or

(ii) an IFR instrument approach check.

(d) For aeroplane operations at night the pilot shall have:

(1) a minimum of 15 hours flight time at night which may be included in the 50 hours flight time under IFR in (c)(1); and

(2) completed during the preceding 90 days on the relevant type or class of aeroplane:

(i) three take-offs and landings at night in the single pilot role; or

(ii) a night take-off and landing check.

(e) For helicopter operations under IFR the pilot shall have:

(1) 25 hours total IFR flight experience in the relevant operating environment; and

(2) 25 hours flight experience as a single pilot on the specific type of helicopter, approved for single-pilot IFR, of which 10 hours may be flown under supervision, including five sectors of IFR line flying under supervision using the single-pilot procedures; and

(3) completed during the preceding 90 days:

(i) five IFR flights as a single pilot, including three instrument approaches, carried out on a helicopter approved for this purpose; or

(ii) an IFR instrument approach check as a single pilot on the relevant type of helicopter, flight training device (FTD) or full flight simulator (FFS).

AMC1 ORO.FC.200(a) Composition of flight crew

CREWING OF INEXPERIENCED FLIGHT CREW MEMBERS

The operator should establish procedures in the operations manual taking into account the following elements:

Aeroplanes

(a) The operator should consider that a flight crew member is inexperienced, following completion of a type rating or command course, and the associated line flying under supervision, until he/she has achieved on the type either:

(1) 100 flight hours and flown 10 sectors within a consolidation period of 120 consecutive days; or

(2) 150 flight hours and flown 20 sectors (no time limit).

(b) A lesser number of flight hours or sectors, subject to any other conditions that the competent authority may impose, may be acceptable to the competent authority when one of the following applies:

(1) a new operator is commencing operations;

(2) an operator introduces a new aeroplane type;

(3) flight crew members have previously completed a type conversion course with the same operator;

(4) credits are defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003; or

(5) the aeroplane has a maximum take-off mass of less than 10 tonnes or a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of less than 20.

Helicopters

(c) The operator should consider that, when two flight crew members are required, a flight crew member, following completion of a type rating or command course, and the associated line flying under supervision, is inexperienced until either:

(1) he/she has achieved 50 flight hours on the type and/or in the role within a period of 60 days; or

(2) he/she has achieved 100 flight hours on the type and/or in the role (no time limit).

(d) A lesser number of flight hours, on the type and/or in the role, and subject to any other conditions which the competent authority may impose, may be acceptable to the competent authority when one of the following applies:

(1) a new operator is commencing operations;

(2) an operator introduces a new helicopter type;

(3) flight crew members have previously completed a type conversion course with the same operator (reconversion); or

(4) credits are defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

ORO.FC.205 Command course

(a) For aeroplane and helicopter operations, the command course shall include at least the following elements:

(1) training in an FSTD, which includes line oriented flight training (LOFT) and/or flight training;

(2) the operator proficiency check, operating as commander;

(3) command responsibilities training;

(4) line training as commander under supervision, for a minimum of:

(i) 10 flight sectors, in the case of aeroplanes; and

(ii) 10 hours, including at least 10 flight sectors, in the case of helicopters;

(5) completion of a line check as commander and demonstration of adequate knowledge of the route or area to be flown and of the aerodromes, including alternate aerodromes, facilities and procedures to be used; and

(6) crew resource management training.

AMC1 ORO.FC.205 Command course

COMBINED UPGRADING AND CONVERSION COURSE − HELICOPTER

If a pilot is converting from one helicopter type or variant to another when upgrading to commander:

(a) the command course should also include a conversion course in accordance with ORO.FC.220; and

(b) additional flight sectors should be required for a pilot transitioning onto a new type of helicopter.

ORO.FC.215 Initial operator's crew resource management (CRM) training

(a) The flight crew member shall have completed an initial CRM training course before commencing unsupervised line flying.

(b) Initial CRM training shall be conducted by at least one suitably qualified CRM trainer who may be assisted by experts in order to address specific areas.

(c) If the flight crew member has not previously received theoretical training in human factors to the ATPL level, he/she shall complete, before or combined with the initial CRM training, a theoretical course provided by the operator and based on the human performance and limitations syllabus for the ATPL as established in Annex I (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

AMC1 ORO.FC.115&215 Crew resource management (CRM) training

CRM TRAINING – CAT OPERATIONS

(a) General

(1) CRM training should reflect the culture of the operator as well as type of operation and be conducted by means of both classroom training and practical exercises including group discussions and accident and serious incident reviews to analyse communication problems and instances or examples of a lack of information or crew management.

(2) Whenever it is practicable to do so, consideration should be given to conducting relevant parts of CRM training in FSTDs that reproduce, in an acceptable way, a realistic operational environment and permit interaction. This includes, but is not limited to, appropriate line-oriented flight training (LOFT) scenarios conducted in FSTDs.

(3) It is recommended that, whenever possible, initial CRM training be conducted in a group session away from the pressures of the usual working environment so that the opportunity is provided for flight crew members to interact and communicate in an environment conducive to learning.

(b) Initial CRM Training

(1) Initial CRM training programmes are designed to provide knowledge of, and familiarity with, human factors relevant to flight operations. The course duration should be a minimum of 1 day for single-pilot operations and 2 days for all other types of operations. It should cover all the elements indicated in (f).

(2) The CRM trainer should:

(i) possess group facilitation skills;

(ii) have and maintain adequate knowledge of the operation and the aircraft type, preferably through current CAT experience as a flight crew member;

(iii) have successfully passed the human performance and limitations (HPL) examination whilst recently obtaining the airline transport pilot licence (ATPL) in accordance with Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011[20]; or followed a theoretical HPL course covering the whole syllabus of the HPL examination;

(iv) have completed initial CRM training;

(v) have received additional education in the fields of group management, group dynamics and personal awareness; and

(vi) be supervised by suitably qualified CRM training personnel when conducting his/her first initial CRM training session.

(3) The operator should ensure that initial CRM training addresses the nature of the operations of the operator concerned, as well as the associated procedures and the culture of the operator. This will include areas of operations that produce particular difficulties or involve adverse climatic conditions and any unusual hazards.

(4) If the operator does not have sufficient means to establish initial CRM training, use may be made of a course provided by another operator, or a third party or training organisation. In this event the operator should ensure that the content of the course meets his/her operational requirements. When crew members from several companies follow the same course, CRM core elements should be specific to the nature of operations of the companies and the trainees concerned.

(5) The flight crew member's CRM skills should not be assessed during initial CRM training.

(c) Operator conversion course – CRM training

(1) If the flight crew member undergoes a conversion course with a change of aircraft type, elements of CRM should be integrated into all appropriate phases of the operator's conversion course, in accordance with (f).

(2) If the flight crew member undergoes a conversion course with a change of operator, elements of CRM should be integrated into all appropriate phases of the operator's conversion course, in accordance with (f).

(3) The flight crew member should not be assessed when completing elements of CRM training that are included in the operator conversion course.

[20] OJ L 311, 25.11.2011, p. 1.

(d) Command course – CRM training

(1) The operator should ensure that elements of CRM are integrated into the command course in accordance with (f).

(2) The flight crew member should not be assessed when completing elements of CRM training that are included in the command course, although feedback should be given.

(e) Recurrent CRM training

(1) The operator should ensure that:

(i) elements of CRM are integrated into all appropriate phases of recurrent training every year, in accordance with (f), and that modular CRM training covers the same areas over a maximum period of 3 years; and

(ii) relevant modular CRM training is conducted by CRM trainers qualified according to (b)(2).

(2) The flight crew member should not be assessed when completing elements of CRM training that are included in the recurrent training.

(f) Implementation of CRM

(1) Table 1 indicates which elements of CRM should be included in each type of training.

Table 1: Elements of CRM to be included in training

<table>
<tr><th>Core Elements</th><th>Initial CRM Training</th><th>Operator conversion course when changing type</th><th>Operator conversion course when changing operator</th><th>Command course</th><th>Recurrent training</th></tr>
<tr><td>Human error and reliability, error chain, error prevention and detection</td><td rowspan="7">In-depth</td><td>In-depth</td><td>Overview</td><td>Overview</td><td rowspan="7">Overview</td></tr>
<tr><td>Operator safety culture, standard operating procedures (SOPs), organisational factors</td><td rowspan="2">Not required</td><td>In-depth</td><td rowspan="6">In-depth</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stress, stress management, fatigue & vigilance</td><td rowspan="3">Not required</td></tr>
<tr><td>Information acquisition and processing situation awareness, workload management</td><td rowspan="4">Overview</td></tr>
<tr><td>Decision making</td></tr>
<tr><td>Communication and coordination inside and outside the flight crew compartment</td><td rowspan="2">Overview</td></tr>
<tr><td>Leadership and team behaviour synergy</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Core Elements</th><th>Initial CRM Training</th><th>Operator conversion course when changing type</th><th>Operator conversion course when changing operator</th><th>Command course</th><th>Recurrent training</th></tr>
<tr><td>Automation, philosophy of the use of automation (if relevant to the type)</td><td rowspan="2">As required</td><td rowspan="2">In-depth</td><td>In-depth</td><td rowspan="2">As required</td><td rowspan="2">As required</td></tr>
<tr><td>Specific type-related differences</td><td>Not required</td></tr>
<tr><td>Case studies</td><td>In-depth</td><td>In-depth</td><td>In-depth</td><td>In-depth</td><td>In-depth</td></tr>
</table>

(g) Coordination between flight crew and cabin/technical crew training

(1) Operators should, as far as practicable, provide combined training for flight crew and cabin/technical crew including briefing and debriefing.

(2) There should be an effective liaison between flight crew and cabin/technical crew training departments. Provision should be made for transfer of relevant knowledge and skills between flight and cabin/technical crew instructors.

(h) Assessment of CRM skills

(1) Assessment of CRM skills is the process of observing, recording, interpreting and debriefing crews and crew member's performance and knowledge using an acceptable methodology in the context of overall performance. It includes the concept of self-critique, and feedback which can be given continuously during training or in summary following a check. In order to enhance the effectiveness of the programme this methodology should, where possible, be agreed with flight crew representatives.

(2) NOTECHS (non-technical skills evaluation) or other acceptable methods of assessment should be used. The selection criteria and training requirements of the assessors and their relevant qualifications, knowledge and skills should be established.

(3) Assessment of CRM skills should:

(i) provide feedback to the crew and the individual and serve to identify retraining where needed; and

(ii) be used to improve the CRM training system.

(4) Prior to the introduction of CRM skills assessment, a detailed description of the CRM methodology including terminology used should be published in the operations manual.

(5) Methodology of CRM skills assessment

(i) The operator should establish the CRM training programme including an agreed terminology. This should be evaluated with regard to methods, length of training, depth of subjects and effectiveness.

(ii) A training and standardisation programme for training personnel should then be established.

(iii) The assessment should be based on the following principles:

(A) only observable, repetitive behaviours are assessed;

(B) the assessment should positively reflect any CRM skills that result in enhanced safety;

(C) assessments should include behaviour that contributes to a technical failure, such technical failure being errors leading to an event that requires debriefing by the person conducting the line check; and

(D) the crew and, where needed, the individual are verbally debriefed.

(6) De-identified summaries of all CRM assessments by the operator should be used to provide feedback and such feedback should be used to update and improve the operator's CRM training.

(7) Operators should establish procedures, including retraining, to be applied in the event that personnel do not achieve or maintain the required standards.

(8) If the operator proficiency check is combined with the type rating revalidation/renewal check, the assessment of CRM skills should satisfy the multi-crew cooperation requirements of the type rating revalidation/renewal. This assessment should not affect the validity of the type rating.

(i) Levels of training

(1) Overview. When overview training is required it should normally be instructional in style. Such training should refresh knowledge gained in earlier training.

(2) In-depth. When in-depth training is required it should normally be interactive in style and should include, as appropriate, case studies, group discussions, role play and consolidation of knowledge and skills. Core elements should be tailored to the specific needs of the training phase being undertaken.

(j) Use of automation

(1) The operator conversion course should include training in the use and knowledge of automation and in the recognition of systems and human limitations associated with the use of automation. The operator should therefore ensure that the flight crew member receives training on:

(i) the application of the operations policy concerning the use of automation as stated in the operations manual; and

(ii) system and human limitations associated with the use of automation.

(2) The objective of this training should be to provide appropriate knowledge, skills and behavioural patterns for managing and operating automated systems. Special attention should be given to how automation increases the need for crews to have a common understanding of the way in which the system performs, and any features of automation that make this understanding difficult.

AMC1.1 ORO.FC.115&.215 Crew resource management (CRM) training

CRM TRAINER

The acceptable means of compliance are as set out in AMC1 ORO.FC.115&.215, except for (b)(2) of that AMC, for which the following qualifications and experience are also acceptable for a CRM trainer:

(a) a flight crew member holding a recent qualification as a CRM trainer may continue to be a CRM trainer even after the cessation of active flying duties;

(b) an experienced non-flight crew CRM trainer having a knowledge of HPL; and

(c) a former flight crew member having knowledge of HPL may become a CRM trainer if he/she maintains adequate knowledge of the operation and aircraft type and meets the provisions of AMC1 ORO.FC.115&.215, (b)(2)(i), (iv), (v) and (vi).

GM1 ORO.FC.115&.215 Crew resource management (CRM) training

GENERAL

(a) Crew resource management (CRM) is the effective utilisation of all available resources (e.g. crew members, aircraft systems, supporting facilities and persons) to achieve safe and efficient operation.

(b) The objective of CRM is to enhance the communication and management skills of the flight crew member concerned. The emphasis is placed on the non-technical aspects of flight crew performance.

ORO.FC.220 Operator conversion training and checking

(a) CRM training shall be integrated into the operator conversion training course.

(b) Once an operator conversion course has been commenced, the flight crew member shall not be assigned to flying duties on another type or class of aircraft until the course is completed or terminated. Crew members operating only performance class B aeroplanes may be assigned to flights on other types of performance class B aeroplanes during conversion courses to the extent necessary to maintain the operation.

(c) The amount of training required by the flight crew member for the operator's conversion course shall be determined in accordance with the standards of qualification and experience specified in the operations manual, taking into account his/her previous training and experience.

(d) The flight crew member shall complete:

(1) the operator proficiency check and the emergency and safety equipment training and checking before commencing line flying under supervision (LIFUS); and

(2) the line check upon completion of line flying under supervision. For performance class B aeroplanes, LIFUS may be performed on any aeroplane within the applicable class.

(e) In the case of aeroplanes, pilots that have been issued a type rating based on a zero flight-time training (ZFTT) course shall:

(1) commence line flying under supervision not later than 21 days after the completion of the skill test or after appropriate training provided by the operator. The content of such training shall be described in the operations manual.

(2) complete six take-offs and landings in a FSTD not later than 21 days after the completion of the skill test under the supervision of a type rating instructor for aeroplanes (TRI(A)) occupying the other pilot seat. The number of take-offs and landings may be reduced when credits are defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) 1702/2003. If these take-offs and landings have not been performed within 21 days, the operator shall provide refresher training. The content of such training shall be described in the operations manual.

(3) conduct the first four take-offs and landings of the LIFUS in the aeroplane under the supervision of a TRI(A) occupying the other pilot seat. The number of take-offs and landings may be reduced when credits are defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) 1702/2003.

AMC1 ORO.FC.220 Operator conversion training and checking

OPERATOR CONVERSION TRAINING SYLLABUS

(a) General

(1) The operator conversion training should include, in the following order:

(i) ground training and checking, including aircraft systems, and normal, abnormal and emergency procedures;

(ii) emergency and safety equipment training and checking, (completed before any flight training in an aircraft commences);

(iii) flight training and checking (aircraft and/or FSTD); and

(iv) line flying under supervision and line check.

(2) When the flight crew member has not previously completed an operator's conversion course, he/she should undergo general first-aid training and, if applicable, ditching procedures training using the equipment in water.

(3) Where the emergency drills require action by the non-handling pilot, the check should additionally cover knowledge of these drills.

(4) The operator's conversion may be combined with a new type/class rating training as required by Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

(5) The operator should ensure that the personnel integrating elements of CRM into conversion training are suitably qualified.

(b) Ground training

(1) Ground training should comprise a properly organised programme of ground instruction supervised by training staff with adequate facilities, including any necessary audio, mechanical and visual aids. Self-study using appropriate electronic learning aids, computer-based training (CBT) etc. may be used with adequate supervision of the standards achieved. However, if the aircraft concerned is relatively simple, unsupervised private study may be adequate if the operator provides suitable manuals and/or study notes.

(2) The course of ground instruction should incorporate formal tests on such matters as aircraft systems, performance and flight planning, where applicable.

(c) Emergency and safety equipment training and checking

(1) Emergency and safety equipment training should take place in conjunction with cabin/technical crew undergoing similar training with emphasis on coordinated procedures and two-way communication between the flight crew compartment and the cabin.

(2) On the initial conversion course and on subsequent conversion courses as applicable, the following should be addressed:

(i) Instruction on first-aid in general (initial conversion course only); instruction on first-aid as relevant to the aircraft type of operation and crew complement including those situations where no cabin crew is required to be carried (initial and subsequent).

(ii) Aero-medical topics including:

(A) hypoxia;

(B) hyperventilation;

(C) contamination of the skin/eyes by aviation fuel or hydraulic or other fluids;

(D) hygiene and food poisoning; and

(E) malaria.

(iii) The effect of smoke in an enclosed area and actual use of all relevant equipment in a simulated smoke-filled environment.

(iv) Actual fire fighting, using equipment representative of that carried in the aircraft on an actual or simulated fire except that, with Halon extinguishers, an alternative extinguisher may be used.

(v) The operational procedures of security, rescue and emergency services.

(vi) Survival information appropriate to their areas of operation (e.g. polar, desert, jungle or sea) and training in the use of any survival equipment required to be carried.

(vii) A comprehensive drill to cover all ditching procedures where flotation equipment is carried. This should include practice of the actual donning and inflation of a life-jacket, together with a demonstration or audio-visual presentation of the inflation of life-rafts and/or slide-rafts and associated equipment. This practice should, on an initial conversion course, be conducted using the equipment in water, although previous certified training with another operator or the use of similar equipment will be accepted in lieu of further wet-drill training.

(viii) Instruction on the location of emergency and safety equipment, correct use of all appropriate drills, and procedures that could be required of flight crew in different emergency situations. Evacuation of the aircraft (or a representative training device) by use of a slide where fitted should be included when the operations manual procedure requires the early evacuation of flight crew to assist on the ground.

(d) Flight training

(1) Flight training should be conducted to familiarise the flight crew member thoroughly with all aspects of limitations and normal, abnormal and emergency procedures associated with the aircraft and should be carried out by suitably qualified class and type rating instructors and/or examiners. For specific operations such as steep approaches, ETOPS, or operations based on QFE, additional training should be carried out, based on any additional elements of training defined for the aircraft type in the data in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, where they exist.

(2) In planning flight training on aircraft with a flight crew of two or more, particular emphasis should be placed on the practice of LOFT with emphasis on CRM, and the use of crew coordination procedures, including coping with incapacitation.

(3) Normally, the same training and practice in the flying of the aircraft should be given to co-pilots as well as commanders. The 'flight handling' sections of the syllabus for commanders and co-pilots alike should include all the requirements of the operator proficiency check required by ORO.FC.230.

(4) Unless the type rating training programme has been carried out in an FSTD usable for ZFTT, the training should include at least three take-offs and landings in the aircraft.

(e) Line flying under supervision (LIFUS)

(1) Following completion of flight training and checking as part of the operator's conversion course, each flight crew member should operate a minimum number of sectors and/or flight hours under the supervision of a flight crew member nominated by the operator.

(2) The minimum flight sectors/hours should be specified in the operations manual and should be determined by the following:

(i) previous experience of the flight crew member;

(ii) complexity of the aircraft; and

(iii) the type and area of operation.

(3) For performance class B aeroplanes, the amount of LIFUS required is dependent on the complexity of the operations to be performed.

(f) Passenger handling for operations where no cabin crew is required

Other than general training on dealing with people, emphasis should be placed on the following:

(1) advice on the recognition and management of passengers who appear or are intoxicated with alcohol, under the influence of drugs or aggressive;

(2) methods used to motivate passengers and the crowd control necessary to expedite an aircraft evacuation; and

(3) the importance of correct seat allocation with reference to aircraft mass and balance. Particular emphasis should also be given on the seating of special categories of passengers.

(g) Discipline and responsibilities, for operations where no cabin crew is required

Emphasis should be placed on discipline and an individual's responsibilities in relation to:

(1) his/her ongoing competence and fitness to operate as a crew member with special regard to flight and duty time limitation (FTL) requirements; and

(2) security procedures.

(h) Passenger briefing/safety demonstrations, for operations where no cabin crew is required

Training should be given in the preparation of passengers for normal and emergency situations.

AMC2 ORO.FC.220 Operator conversion training and checking

OPERATOR CONVERSION TRAINING SYLLABUS − FLIGHT ENGINEERS

(a) Operator conversion training for flight engineers should approximate to that of pilots.

(b) If the flight crew includes a pilot with the duties of a flight engineer, he/she should, after training and the initial check in these duties, operate a minimum number of flight sectors under the supervision of a nominated additional flight crew member. The minimum figures should be specified in the operations manual and should be selected after due note has been taken of the complexity of the aircraft and the experience of the flight crew member.

GM1 ORO.FC.220(b) Operator conversion training and checking

COMPLETION OF AN OPERATOR'S CONVERSION COURSE

(a) The operator conversion course is deemed to have started when the flight training has begun. The theoretical element of the course may be undertaken ahead of the practical element.

(b) Under certain circumstances the course may have started and reached a stage where, for unforeseen reasons, it is not possible to complete it without a delay. In these circumstances the operator may allow the pilot to revert to the original type.

(c) Before the resumption of the operator conversion course, the operator should evaluate how much of the course needs to be repeated before continuing with the remainder of the course.

GM1 ORO.FC.220(d) Operator conversion training and checking

LINE FLYING UNDER SUPERVISION

(a) Line flying under supervision provides the opportunity for a flight crew member to carry into practice the procedures and techniques he/she has been made familiar with during the ground and flight training of an operator conversion course. This is accomplished under the supervision of a flight crew member specifically nominated and trained for the task. At the end of line flying under supervision the respective crew member should be able to perform a safe and efficient flight conducted within the tasks of his/her crew member station.

(b) A variety of reasonable combinations may exist with respect to:

(1) a flight crew member's previous experience;

(2) the complexity of the aircraft concerned; and

(3) the type of route/role/area operations.

(c) Aeroplanes.

The following minimum figures for details to be flown under supervision are guidelines for operators to use when establishing their individual requirements:

(1) turbo-jet aircraft

(i) co-pilot undertaking first operator conversion course:

(A) total accumulated 100 hours or minimum 40 flight sectors;

(ii) co-pilot upgrading to commander:

(A) minimum 20 flight sectors when converting to a new type;

(B) minimum 10 flight sectors when already qualified on the aeroplane type.

ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking

(a) Each flight crew member shall complete recurrent training and checking relevant to the type or variant of aircraft on which they operate.

(b) Operator proficiency check

(1) Each flight crew member shall complete operator proficiency checks as part of the normal crew complement to demonstrate competence in carrying out normal, abnormal and emergency procedures.

(2) When the flight crew member will be required to operate under IFR, the operator proficiency check shall be conducted without external visual reference, as appropriate.

(3) The validity period of the operator proficiency check shall be 6 calendar months. For operations under VFR by day of performance class B aeroplanes conducted during seasons not longer than 8 consecutive months, one operator proficiency check shall be sufficient. The proficiency check shall be undertaken before commencing commercial air transport operations.

(4) The flight crew member involved in operations by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks with an other-than-complex motor-powered helicopter may complete the operator proficiency check in only one of the relevant types held. The operator proficiency check shall be performed each time on the type least recently used for the proficiency check. The relevant helicopter types that may be grouped for the purpose of the operator proficiency check shall be contained in the operations manual.

(5) Notwithstanding ORO.FC.145 (a)(2), for operations of other-than-complex motor-powered helicopters by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks and performance class B aeroplanes, the check may be conducted by a suitably qualified commander nominated by the operator, trained in CRM concepts and the assessment of CRM skills. The operator shall inform the competent authority about the persons nominated.

(c) Line check

(1) Each flight crew member shall complete a line check on the aircraft to demonstrate competence in carrying out normal line operations described in the operations manual. The validity period of the line check shall be 12 calendar months.

(2) Notwithstanding ORO.FC.145 (a)(2), line checks may be conducted by a suitably qualified commander nominated by the operator, trained in CRM concepts and the assessment of CRM skills.

(d) Emergency and safety equipment training and checking

Each flight crew member shall complete training and checking on the location and use of all emergency and safety equipment carried. The validity period of an emergency and safety equipment check shall be 12 calendar months.

(e) CRM training

(1) Elements of CRM shall be integrated into all appropriate phases of the recurrent training.

(2) Each flight crew member shall undergo specific modular CRM training. All major topics of CRM training shall be covered by distributing modular training sessions as evenly as possible over each three year period.

(f) Each flight crew member shall undergo ground training and flight training in an FSTD or an aircraft, or a combination of FSTD and aircraft training, at least every 12 calendar months.

(g) The validity periods mentioned in (b)(3), (c) and (d) shall be counted from the end of the month when the check was taken.

(h) When the training or checks required above are undertaken within the last 3 months of the validity period, the new validity period shall be counted from the original expiry date.

AMC1 ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking

RECURRENT TRAINING SYLLABUS

(a) Recurrent training

Recurrent training should comprise the following:

(1) Ground training

(i) The ground training programme should include:

(A) aircraft systems;

(B) operational procedures and requirements including ground de-icing/anti-icing and pilot incapacitation; and

(C) accident/incident and occurrence review.

(ii) Knowledge of the ground training should be verified by a questionnaire or other suitable methods.

(iii) When the ground training is conducted within 3 calendar months prior to the expiry of the 12 calendar months period, the next ground and refresher training should be completed within 12 calendar months of the original expiry date of the previous training.

(2) Emergency and safety equipment training

(i) Emergency and safety equipment training may be combined with emergency and safety equipment checking and should be conducted in an aircraft or a suitable alternative training device.

(ii) Every year the emergency and safety equipment training programme should include the following:

(A) actual donning of a life-jacket, where fitted;

(B) actual donning of protective breathing equipment, where fitted;

(C) actual handling of fire extinguishers of the type used;

(D) instruction on the location and use of all emergency and safety equipment carried on the aircraft;

(E) instruction on the location and use of all types of exits;

(F) security procedures.

(iii) Every 3 years the programme of training should include the following:

(A) actual operation of all types of exits;

(B) demonstration of the method used to operate a slide where fitted;

(C) actual fire-fighting using equipment representative of that carried in the aircraft on an actual or simulated fire except that, with Halon extinguishers, an alternative extinguisher may be used;

(D) the effects of smoke in an enclosed area and actual use of all relevant equipment in a simulated smoke-filled environment;

(E) actual handling of pyrotechnics, real or simulated, where applicable;

(F) demonstration in the use of the life-rafts where fitted. In the case of helicopters involved in extended over water operations, demonstration and use of the life-rafts.

Helicopter water survival training

Where life-rafts are fitted for helicopter extended overwater operations (such as sea pilot transfer, offshore operations, regular, or scheduled, coast-to-coast overwater operations), a comprehensive wet drill to cover all ditching procedures should be practised by aircraft crew. This wet drill should include, as appropriate, practice of the actual donning and inflation of a life-jacket, together with a demonstration or audio-visual presentation of the inflation of life-rafts. Crews should board the same (or similar) life-rafts from the water whilst wearing a life-jacket. Training should include the use of all survival equipment carried on board life-rafts and any additional survival equipment carried separately on board the aircraft;

– consideration should be given to the provision of further specialist training such as underwater escape training. Where operations are predominately conducted offshore, operators should conduct 3-yearly helicopter underwater escape training at an appropriate facility;

– wet practice drill should always be given in initial training unless the crew member concerned has received similar training provided by another operator;

(G) particularly in the case where no cabin crew is required, first-aid, appropriate to the aircraft type, the kind of operation and crew complement.

(iv) The successful resolution of aircraft emergencies requires interaction between flight crew and cabin/technical crew and emphasis should be placed on the importance of effective coordination and two-way communication between all crew members in various emergency situations.

(v) Emergency and safety equipment training should include joint practice in aircraft evacuations so that all who are involved are aware of the duties other crew members should perform. When such practice is not possible, combined flight crew and cabin/technical crew training should include joint discussion of emergency scenarios.

(vi) Emergency and safety equipment training should, as far as practicable, take place in conjunction with cabin/technical crew undergoing similar training with emphasis on coordinated procedures and two-way communication between the flight crew compartment and the cabin.

(3) CRM

(i) Elements of CRM should be integrated into all appropriate phases of recurrent training.

(ii) A specific modular CRM training programme should be established such that all major topics of CRM training are covered over a period not exceeding 3 years, as follows:

(A) human error and reliability, error chain, error prevention and detection;

(B) operator safety culture, standard operating procedures (SOPs), organisational factors;

(C) stress, stress management, fatigue and vigilance;

(D) information acquisition and processing, situation awareness, workload management;

(E) decision making;

(F) communication and coordination inside and outside the flight crew compartment;

(G) leadership and team behaviour, synergy;

(H) automation and philosophy of the use of automation (if relevant to the type);

(I) specific type-related differences;

(J) case studies;

(K) additional areas which warrant extra attention, as identified by the safety management system.

(iii) Operators should establish procedures to update their CRM recurrent training programme. Revision of the programme should be conducted over a period not exceeding 3 years. The revision of the programme should take into account the de-identified results of the CRM assessments of crews, and information identified by the safety management system.

(4) Aircraft/FSTD training

(i) General

(A) The aircraft/FSTD training programme should be established in a way that all major failures of aircraft systems and associated procedures will have been covered in the preceding 3 year period.

(B) When engine-out manoeuvres are carried out in an aircraft, the engine failure should be simulated.

(C) Aircraft/FSTD training may be combined with the operator proficiency check.

(D) When the aircraft/FSTD training is conducted within 3 calendar months prior to the expiry of the 12 calendar months period, the next aircraft/FSTD training should be completed within 12 calendar months of the original expiry date of the previous training.

(ii) Helicopters

(A) Where a suitable FSTD is available it should be used for the aircraft/FSTD training programme. If the operator is able to demonstrate, on the basis of a compliance and risk assessment, that using an aircraft for this training provides equivalent standards of training with safety levels similar to those achieved using an FSTD, the aircraft may be used for this training to the extent necessary.

(B) The recurrent training should include the following additional items, which should be completed in an FSTD:

– settling with power and vortex ring;

– loss of tail rotor effectiveness.

(5) For operations with other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes, all training and checking should be relevant to the type of operation and class of aeroplane on which the flight crew member operates with due account taken of any specialised equipment used.

(b) Recurrent checking

Recurrent checking should comprise the following:

(1) Operator proficiency checks

(i) Aeroplanes

Where applicable, operator proficiency checks should include the following manoeuvres as pilot flying:

(A) rejected take-off when an FSTD is available to represent that specific aeroplane, otherwise touch drills only;

(B) take-off with engine failure between V1 and V2 (take-off safety speed) or, if carried out in an aeroplane, at a safe speed above V2;

(C) precision instrument approach to minima with, in the case of multi-engine aeroplanes, one-engine-inoperative;

(D) non-precision approach to minima;

(E) missed approach on instruments from minima with, in the case of multi-engined aeroplanes, one-engine-inoperative;

(F) landing with one-engine-inoperative. For single-engine aeroplanes a practice forced landing is required.

(ii) Helicopters

(A) Where applicable, operator proficiency checks should include the following abnormal/emergency procedures:

– engine fire;

– fuselage fire;

– emergency operation of under carriage;

– fuel dumping;

– engine failure and relight;

– hydraulic failure;

– electrical failure;

– engine failure during take-off before decision point;

– engine failure during take-off after decision point;

– engine failure during landing before decision point;

- engine failure during landing after decision point;
- flight and engine control system malfunctions;
- recovery from unusual attitudes;
- landing with one or more engine(s) inoperative;
- instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) autorotation techniques;
- autorotation to a designated area;
- pilot incapacitation;
- directional control failures and malfunctions.

(B) For pilots required to engage in IFR operations, proficiency checks include the following additional abnormal/emergency procedures:

- precision instrument approach to minima;
- go-around on instruments from minima with, in the case of multi-engined helicopters, a simulated failure of one engine;
- non-precision approach to minima;
- in the case of multi-engined helicopters, a simulated failure of one engine to be included in either the precision or non-precision approach to minima;
- landing with a simulated failure of one or more engines;
- where appropriate to the helicopter type, approach with flight control system/ flight director system malfunctions, flight instrument and navigation equipment failures.

(C) Before a flight crew member without a valid instrument rating is allowed to operate in VMC at night, he/she should be required to undergo a proficiency check at night. Thereafter, each second proficiency check should be conducted at night.

(iii) Once every 12 months the checks prescribed in (b)(1)(ii)(A) may be combined with the proficiency check for revalidation or renewal of the aircraft type rating.

(iv) Operator proficiency checks should be conducted by a type rating examiner (TRE) or a synthetic flight examiner (SFE), as applicable.

(2) Emergency and safety equipment checks. The items to be checked should be those for which training has been carried out in accordance with (a)(2).

(3) Line checks

(i) Line checks should establish the ability to perform satisfactorily a complete line operation including pre-flight and post-flight procedures and use of the equipment provided, as specified in the operations manual. The route chosen should be such as to give adequate representation of the scope of a pilot's normal operations. When weather conditions preclude a manual landing, an automatic landing is acceptable. The commander, or any pilot who may be required to relieve the commander, should also demonstrate his/her ability to 'manage' the operation and take appropriate command decisions.

(ii) The flight crew should be assessed on their CRM skills in accordance with a methodology described in the operations manual. The purpose of such assessment is to:

(A) provide feedback to the crew collectively and individually and serve to identify retraining; and

(B) be used to improve the CRM training system.

(iii) CRM assessment alone should not be used as a reason for a failure of the line check.

(iv) When pilots are assigned duties as pilot flying and pilot monitoring they should be checked in both functions.

(v) Line checks should be conducted by a commander nominated by the operator. The operator should inform the competent authority about the persons nominated. The person conducting the line check, who is described in (d)(5)(ii), should occupy an observer's seat where installed. His/her CRM assessments should solely be based on observations made during the initial briefing, cabin briefing, flight crew compartment briefing and those phases where he/she occupies the observer's seat.

(A) For aeroplanes, in the case of long haul operations where additional operating flight crew are carried, the person may fulfil the function of a cruise relief pilot and should not occupy either pilot's seat during take-off, departure, initial cruise, descent, approach and landing.

(vi) Where a pilot is required to operate as pilot flying and pilot monitoring, he/she should be checked on one flight sector as pilot flying and on another flight sector as pilot monitoring. However, where the operator's procedures require integrated flight preparation, integrated cockpit initialisation and that each pilot performs both flying and monitoring duties on the same sector, then the line check may be performed on a single flight sector.

(4) When the operator proficiency check, line check or emergency and safety equipment check are undertaken within the final 3 calendar months of validity of a previous check, the period of validity of the subsequent check should be counted from the expiry date of the previous check.

(5) In the case of single-pilot operations with helicopters, the recurrent checks referred to in (b)(1), (2) and (3) should be performed in the single-pilot role on a particular helicopter type in an environment representative of the operation.

(c) Flight crew incapacitation training, except single-pilot operations

(1) Procedures should be established to train flight crew to recognise and handle flight crew incapacitation. This training should be conducted every year and can form part of other recurrent training. It should take the form of classroom instruction, discussion, audio-visual presentation or other similar means.

(2) If an FSTD is available for the type of aircraft operated, practical training on flight crew incapacitation should be carried out at intervals not exceeding 3 years.

(d) Personnel providing training and checking

Training and checking should be provided by the following personnel:

(1) ground and refresher training by suitably qualified personnel;

(2) flight training by a flight instructor (FI), type rating instructor (TRI) or class rating instructor (CRI) or, in the case of the FSTD content, a synthetic flight instructor (SFI), providing that the FI, TRI, CRI or SFI satisfies the operator's experience and knowledge requirements sufficient to instruct on the items specified in paragraphs (a)(1)(i)(A) and (B);

(3) emergency and safety equipment training by suitably qualified personnel;

(4) CRM:

(i) integration of CRM elements into all the phases of the recurrent training by all the personnel conducting recurrent training. The operator should ensure that all personnel conducting recurrent training are suitably qualified to integrate elements of CRM into this training;

(ii) modular CRM training by at least one CRM trainer, who may be assisted by experts in order to address specific areas.

(5) recurrent checking by the following personnel:

(i) operator proficiency check by a type rating examiner (TRE), class rating examiner (CRE) or, if the check is conducted in a FSTD, a TRE, CRE or a synthetic flight examiner (SFE), trained in CRM concepts and the assessment of CRM skills.

(ii) emergency and safety equipment checking by suitably qualified personnel.

(e) Use of FSTD

(1) Training and checking provide an opportunity to practice abnormal/emergency procedures that rarely arise in normal operations and should be part of a structured programme of recurrent training. This should be carried out in an FSTD whenever possible.

(2) The line check should be performed in the aircraft. All other training and checking should be performed in an FSTD, or, if it is not reasonably practicable to gain access to such devices, in an aircraft of the same type or in the case of emergency and safety equipment training, in a representative training device. The type of equipment used for training and checking should be representative of the instrumentation, equipment and layout of the aircraft type operated by the flight crew member.

(3) Because of the unacceptable risk when simulating emergencies such as engine failure, icing problems, certain types of engine(s) (e.g. during continued take-off or go-around, total hydraulic failure), or because of environmental considerations associated with some emergencies (e.g. fuel dumping) these emergencies should preferably be covered in an FSTD. If no FSTD is available these emergencies may be covered in the aircraft using a safe airborne simulation, bearing in mind the effect of any subsequent failure, and the exercise must be preceded by a comprehensive briefing.

AMC2 ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking

FLIGHT ENGINEERS

(a) The recurrent training and checking for flight engineers should meet the requirements for pilots and any additional specific duties, omitting those items that do not apply to flight engineers.

(b) Recurrent training and checking for flight engineers should, whenever possible, take place concurrently with a pilot undergoing recurrent training and checking.

(c) The line check should be conducted by a commander or by a flight engineer nominated by the operator, in accordance with national rules, if applicable.

GM1 ORO.FC.230 Recurrent training and checking

LINE CHECK AND PROFICIENCY TRAINING AND CHECKING

(a) Line checks, route and aerodrome knowledge and recent experience requirements are intended to ensure the crew member's ability to operate efficiently under normal conditions, whereas other checks and emergency and safety equipment training are primarily intended to prepare the crew member for abnormal/emergency procedures.

(b) The line check is considered a particularly important factor in the development, maintenance and refinement of high operating standards, and can provide the operator with a valuable indication of the usefulness of his/her training policy and methods. Line checks are a test of a flight crew member's ability to perform a complete line operation, including pre-flight and post-flight procedures and use of the equipment provided, and an opportunity for an overall assessment of his/her ability to perform the duties required as specified in the operations manual. The line check is not intended to determine knowledge on any particular route.

(c) Proficiency training and checking

When an FSTD is used, the opportunity should be taken, where possible, to use LOFT.

ORO.FC.235 Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat

(a) Commanders whose duties require them to operate in either pilot seat and carry out the duties of a co-pilot, or commanders required to conduct training or checking duties, shall complete additional training and checking as specified in the operations manual. The check may be conducted together with the operator proficiency check prescribed in ORO.FC.230 (b).

(b) The additional training and checking shall include at least the following:

(1) an engine failure during take-off;

(2) a one-engine-inoperative approach and go-around; and

(3) a one-engine-inoperative landing.

(c) In the case of helicopters, commanders shall also complete their proficiency checks from left- and right-hand seats, on alternate proficiency checks, provided that when the type rating proficiency check is combined with the operator proficiency check the commander completes his/her training or checking from the normally occupied seat.

(d) When engine-out manoeuvres are carried out in an aircraft, the engine failure shall be simulated.

(e) When operating in the co-pilot's seat, the checks required by ORO.FC.230 for operating in the commander's seat shall, in addition, be valid and current.

(f) The pilot relieving the commander shall have demonstrated, concurrent with the operator proficiency checks prescribed in ORO.FC.230 (b), practice of drills and procedures that would not, normally, be his/her responsibility. Where the differences between left- and right-hand seats are not significant, practice may be conducted in either seat.

(g) The pilot other than the commander occupying the commander's seat shall demonstrate practice of drills and procedures, concurrent with the operator proficiency checks prescribed in ORO.FC.230 (b), which are the commander's responsibility acting as pilot monitoring. Where the differences between left- and right-hand seats are not significant, practice may be conducted in either seat.

AMC1 ORO.FC.235(d) Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat

SINGLE-ENGINE HELICOPTERS – AUTOROTATIVE LANDING

In the case of single-engined helicopters, the autorotative landing should be carried out from left- and right-hand seats on alternate proficiency checks.

GM1 ORO.FC.235(f);(g) Pilot qualification to operate in either pilot's seat

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN LEFT AND RIGHT-HAND SEATS

The differences between left- and right-hand seats may not be significant in cases where, for example, the auto-pilot is used.

ORO.FC.240 Operation on more than one type or variant

(a) The procedures or operational restrictions for operation on more than one type or variant established in the operations manual and approved by the competent authority shall cover:

(1) the flight crew members' minimum experience level;

(2) the minimum experience level on one type or variant before beginning training for and operation of another type or variant;

(3) the process whereby flight crew qualified on one type or variant will be trained and qualified on another type or variant; and

(4) all applicable recent experience requirements for each type or variant.

(b) When a flight crew member operates both helicopters and aeroplanes, that flight crew member shall be limited to operations on only one type of aeroplane and one type of helicopter.

(c) Point (a) shall not apply to operations of performance class B aeroplane if they are limited to single-pilot classes of reciprocating engine aeroplanes under VFR by day. Point (b) shall not apply to operations of performance class B aeroplane if they are limited to single-pilot classes of reciprocating engine aeroplanes.

AMC1 ORO.FC.240 Operation on more than one type or variant

GENERAL

(a) Aeroplanes

(1) When a flight crew member operates more than one aeroplane class, type or variant listed in Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 and associated procedures for class-single pilot and/or type-single pilot, but not within a single licence endorsement, the operator should ensure that the flight crew member does not operate more than:

(i) three reciprocating engine aeroplane types or variants;

(ii) three turbo-propeller aeroplane types or variants;

(iii) one turbo-propeller aeroplane type or variant and one reciprocating engine aeroplane type or variant; or

(iv) one turbo-propeller aeroplane type or variant and any aeroplane within a particular class.

(2) When a flight crew member operates more than one aeroplane type or variant within one or more licence endorsement as defined by Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 and associated procedures, the operator should ensure that:

(i) the minimum flight crew complement specified in the operations manual is the same for each type or variant to be operated;

(ii) the flight crew member does not operate more than two aeroplane types or variants for which a separate licence endorsement is required, unless credits related to the training, checking, and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants; and

(iii) only aeroplanes within one licence endorsement are flown in any one flight duty period, unless the operator has established procedures to ensure adequate time for preparation.

(3) When a flight crew member operates more than one aeroplane type or variant listed in Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 and associated procedures for type-single pilot and type-multi pilot, but not within a single licence endorsement, the operator should comply with points (a)(2) and (4).

(4) When a flight crew member operates more than one aeroplane type or variant listed in Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 and associated procedures for type multi-pilot, but not within a single licence endorsement, or combinations of aeroplane types or variants listed in Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 and associated procedures for class single-pilot and type multi-pilot, the operator should comply with the following:

(i) point (a)(2);

(ii) before exercising the privileges of more than one licence endorsement:

(A) flight crew members should have completed two consecutive operator proficiency checks and should have:

– 500 hours in the relevant crew position in CAT operations with the same operator; or

– for IFR and VFR night operations with performance class B aeroplanes, 100 hours or flight sectors in the relevant crew position in CAT operations with the same operator, if at least one licence endorsement is related to a class. A check flight should be completed before the pilot is released for duties as commander;

(B) in the case of a pilot having experience with an operator and exercising the privileges of more than one licence endorsement, and then being promoted to command with the same operator on one of those types, the required minimum experience as commander is 6 months and 300 hours, and the pilot should have completed two consecutive operator proficiency checks before again being eligible to exercise more than one licence endorsement;

(iii) before commencing training for and operation of another type or variant, flight crew members should have completed 3 months and 150 hours flying on the base aeroplane, which should include at least one proficiency check, unless credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants;

(iv) after completion of the initial line check on the new type, 50 hours flying or 20 sectors should be achieved solely on aeroplanes of the new type rating, unless credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants;

(v) recent experience requirements established in Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011 for each type operated;

(vi) the period within which line flying experience is required on each type should be specified in the operations manual;

(vii) when credits are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant type or variant, this should be reflected in the training required in ORO.FC.230 and:

(A) ORO.FC.230 (b) requires two operator proficiency checks every year. When credits are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for operator proficiency checks to alternate between the types, each operator proficiency check should revalidate the operator proficiency check for the other type(s). The operator proficiency check may be combined with the proficiency checks for revalidation or renewal of the aeroplane type rating or the instrument rating in accordance with Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011.

(B) ORO.FC.230 (c) requires one line check every year. When credits are defined in data established in accordance for Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for line checks to alternate between types or variants, each line check should revalidate the line check for the other type or variant.

(C) Annual emergency and safety equipment training and checking should cover all requirements for each type.

(b) Helicopters

(1) If a flight crew member operates more than one type or variant the following provisions should be met:

(i) The recency requirements and the requirements for recurrent training and checking should be met and confirmed prior to CAT operations on any type, and the minimum number of flights on each type within a 3-month period specified in the operations manual.

(ii) ORO.FC.230 requirements with regard to recurrent training.

(iii) When credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants, the requirements of ORO.FC.230 with regard to proficiency checks may be met by a 6 monthly check on any one type or variant operated. However, a proficiency check on each type or variant operated should be completed every 12 months.

(iv) For helicopters with a maximum certified take-off mass (MCTOM) of more than 5 700 kg, or with a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of more than 19:

(A) the flight crew member should not fly more than two helicopter types, unless credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants;

(B) a minimum of 3 months and 150 hours experience on the type or variant should be achieved before the flight crew member should commence the conversion course onto the new type or variant, unless credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants;

(C) 28 days and/or 50 hours flying should then be achieved exclusively on the new type or variant, unless credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants; and

(D) a flight crew member should not be rostered to fly more than one type or significantly different variant of a type during a single duty period.

(v) In the case of all other helicopters, the flight crew member should not operate more than three helicopter types or significantly different variants, unless credits related to the training, checking and recent experience requirements are defined in data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant types or variants.

(c) Combination of helicopter and aeroplane

(1) The flight crew member may fly one helicopter type or variant and one aeroplane type irrespective of their MCTOM or MOPSC.

(2) If the helicopter type is covered by paragraph (b)(1)(iv) then (b)(1)(iv)(B), (C) and (D) should also apply in this case.

ORO.FC.A.245 Alternative training and qualification programme

(a) The aeroplane operator having appropriate experience may substitute one or more of the following training and checking requirements for flight crew by an alternative training and qualification programme (ATQP), approved by the competent authority:

(1) SPA.LVO.120 on flight crew training and qualifications;

(2) conversion training and checking;

(3) differences training and familiarisation training;

(4) command course;

(5) recurrent training and checking; and

(6) operation on more than one type or variant.

(b) The ATQP shall contain training and checking that establishes and maintains at least an equivalent level of proficiency achieved by complying with the provisions of ORO.FC.220 and ORO.FC.230. The level of flight crew training and qualification proficiency shall be demonstrated prior to being granted the ATQP approval by the competent authority.

(c) The operator applying for an ATQP approval shall provide the competent authority with an implementation plan, including a description of the level of flight crew training and qualification proficiency to be achieved.

(d) In addition to the checks required by ORO.FC.230 and FCL.060 of Annex I to (Part-FCL) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011, each flight crew member shall complete a line oriented evaluation (LOE) conducted in an FSTD. The validity period of an LOE shall be 12 calendar months. The validity period shall be counted from the end of the month when the check was taken. When the LOE is undertaken within the last 3 months of the validity period, the new validity period shall be counted from the original expiry date.

(e) After 2 years of operating with an approved ATQP, the operator may, with the approval of the competent authority, extend the validity periods of the checks in ORO.FC.230 as follows:

(1) Operator proficiency check to 12 calendar months. The validity period shall be counted from the end of the month when the check was taken. When the check is undertaken within the last 3 months of the validity period, the new validity period shall be counted from the original expiry date.

(2) Line check to 24 calendar months. The validity period shall be counted from the end of the month when the check was taken. When the check is undertaken within the last 6 months of the validity period, the new validity period shall be counted from the original expiry date.

(3) Emergency and safety equipment checking to 24 calendar months. The validity period shall be counted from the end of the month when the check was taken. When the check is undertaken within the last 6 months of the validity period, the new validity period shall be counted from the original expiry date.

AMC1 ORO.FC.A.245 Alternative training and qualification programme

COMPONENTS AND IMPLEMENTATION

(a) Alternative training and qualification programme (ATQP) components

The ATQP should comprise the following:

(1) Documentation that details the scope and requirements of the programme, including the following:

(i) The programme should demonstrate that the operator is able to improve the training and qualification standards of flight crew to a level that exceeds the standards prescribed in ORO.FC and Subpart E of Annex V (SPA.LVO).

(ii) The operator's training needs and established operational and training objectives.

(iii) A description of the process for designing and gaining approval for the operator's flight crew qualification programmes. This should include quantified operational and training objectives identified by the operator's internal monitoring programmes. External sources may also be used.

(iv) A description of how the programme will:

(A) enhance safety;

(B) improve training and qualification standards of flight crew;

(C) establish attainable training objectives;

(D) integrate CRM in all aspects of training;

(E) develop a support and feedback process to form a self-correcting training system;

(F) institute a system of progressive evaluations of all training to enable consistent and uniform monitoring of the training undertaken by flight crew;

(G) enable the operator to be able to respond to new aeroplane technologies and changes in the operational environment;

(H) foster the use of innovative training methods and technology for flight crew instruction and the evaluation of training systems; and

(I) make efficient use of training resources, specifically to match the use of training media to the training needs.

(2) A task analysis to determine the:

(i) knowledge;

(ii) required skills;

(iii) associated skill-based training; and

(iv) validated behavioural markers, where appropriate.

For each aeroplane type/class to be included within the ATQP the operator should establish a systematic review that determines and defines the various tasks to be undertaken by the flight crew when operating that type/class. Data from other types/classes may also be used. The analysis should determine and describe the knowledge and skills required to complete the various tasks specific to the aeroplane type/class and/or type of operation. In addition, the analysis should identify the appropriate behavioural markers that should be exhibited. The task analysis should be suitably validated in accordance with (b)(3). The task analysis, in conjunction with the data gathering programme(s) permit the operator to establish a programme of targeted training together with the associated training objectives.

(3) Curricula. The curriculum structure and content should be determined by task analysis, and should include proficiency objectives including when and how these objectives should be met.

(i) The training programme should have the following structure:

(A) Curriculum, specifying the following elements:

(a) Entry requirements: A list of topics and content, describing what training level will be required before start or continuation of training.

(b) Topics: A description of what will be trained during the lesson.

(c) Targets/Objectives

(1) Specific target or set of targets that have to be reached and fulfilled before the training course can be continued.

(2) Each specified target should have an associated objective that is identifiable both by the flight crew and the trainers.

(3) Each qualification event that is required by the programme should specify the training that is required to be undertaken and the required standard to be achieved.

(B) Daily lesson plan

(a) Each lesson/course/training or qualification event should have the same basic structure. The topics related to the lesson should be listed and the lesson targets should be unambiguous.

(b) Each lesson/course or training event whether classroom, CBT or simulator should specify the required topics with the relevant targets to be achieved.

(4) A specific training programme for:

(i) each aeroplane type/class within the ATQP;

(ii) instructors (class rating instructor rating/synthetic flight instructor authorisation/type rating instructor rating — CRI/SFI/TRI), and other personnel undertaking flight crew instruction; and

(iii) examiners (class rating examiner/synthetic flight examiner/type rating examiner — CRE/SFE/TRE).

This should include a method for the standardisation of instructors and examiners.

Personnel who perform training and checking of flight crew in an operator's ATQP should receive the following additional training on:

(A) ATQP principles and goals;

(B) knowledge/skills/behaviour as learned from task analysis;

(C) line oriented evaluation (LOE)/ LOFT scenarios to include triggers / markers / event sets / observable behaviour;

(D) qualification standards;

(E) harmonisation of assessment standards;

(F) behavioural markers and the systemic assessment of CRM;

(G) event sets and the corresponding desired knowledge/skills and behaviour of the flight crew;

(H) the processes that the operator has implemented to validate the training and qualification standards and the instructors part in the ATQP quality control; and

(I) line oriented quality evaluation (LOQE).

(5) A feedback loop for the purpose of curriculum validation and refinement, and to ascertain that the programme meets its proficiency objectives.

(i) The feedback should be used as a tool to validate that the curricula are implemented as specified by the ATQP; this enables substantiation of the curriculum, and that proficiency and training objectives have been met. The feedback loop should include data from operations flight data monitoring, the advanced flight data monitoring (FDM) programme and LOE/LOQE programmes. In addition, the evaluation process should describe whether the overall targets/objectives of training are being achieved and should prescribe any corrective action that needs to be undertaken.

(ii) The programme's established quality control mechanisms should at least review the following:

(A) procedures for approval of recurrent training;

(B) ATQP instructor training approvals;

(C) approval of event set(s) for LOE/LOFT;

(D) procedures for conducting LOE and LOQE.

(6) A method for the assessment of flight crew during conversion and recurrent training and checking. The assessment process should include event-based assessment as part of the LOE. The assessment method should comply with ORO.FC.230.

(i) The qualification and checking programmes should include at least the following elements:

(A) a specified structure;

(B) elements to be tested/examined;

(C) targets and/or standards to be attained;

(D) the specified technical and procedural knowledge and skills, and behavioural markers to be exhibited.

(ii) An LOE event should comprise tasks and sub-tasks performed by the crew under a specified set of conditions. Each event has one or more specific training targets/objectives, which require the performance of a specific manoeuvre, the application of procedures, or the opportunity to practise cognitive, communication or other complex skills. For each event the proficiency that is required to be achieved should be established. Each event should include a range of circumstances under which the crews' performance is to be measured and evaluated. The conditions pertaining to each event should also be established and they may include the prevailing meteorological conditions (ceiling, visibility, wind, turbulence etc.), the operational environment (navigation aid inoperable etc.), and the operational contingencies (non-normal operation etc.).

(iii) The markers specified under the operator's ATQP should form one of the core elements in determining the required qualification standard. A typical set of markers is shown in the table below:

EVENT	MARKER
Awareness of Aeroplane Systems:	1. Monitors and reports changes in automation status
	2. Applies closed loop principle in all relevant situations
	3. Uses all channels for updates
	4. Is aware of remaining technical resources

(iv) The topics / targets integrated into the curriculum should be measurable and progression on any training/course is only allowed if the targets are fulfilled.

(7) A data monitoring/analysis programme consisting of the following:

(i) A flight data monitoring (FDM) programme as described in AMC1 ORO.AOC.130. Data collection should reach a minimum of 60 % of all relevant flights conducted by the operator before ATQP approval is granted. This proportion may be increased as determined by the competent authority.

(ii) An advanced FDM when an extension to the ATQP is requested: an advanced FDM programme is determined by the level of integration with other safety initiatives implemented by the operator, such as the operator's safety management system. The programme should include both systematic evaluations of data from an FDM programme and flight crew training events for the relevant crews. Data collection should reach a minimum of 80 % of all relevant flights and training conducted by the operator. This proportion may be varied as determined by the competent authority.

The purpose of an FDM or advanced FDM programme for ATQP is to enable the operator to:

(A) provide data to support the programme's implementation and justify any changes to the ATQP;

(B) establish operational and training objectives based upon an analysis of the operational environment; and

(C) monitor the effectiveness of flight crew training and qualification.

(iii) Data gathering: the data analysis should be made available to the person responsible for ATQP within the organisation. The data gathered should:

(A) include all fleets that are planned to be operated under the ATQP;

(B) include all crews trained and qualified under the ATQP;

(C) be established during the implementation phase of ATQP; and

(D) continue throughout the life of the ATQP.

(iv) Data handling: the operator should establish a procedure to ensure the confidentiality of individual flight crew members, as described by AMC1 ORO.AOC.130.

(v) The operator that has a flight data monitoring programme prior to the proposed introduction of ATQP may use relevant data from other fleets not part of the proposed ATQP.

(b) Implementation. The operator should develop an evaluation and implementation process including the following stages:

(1) A safety case that demonstrates equivalency of:

(i) the revised training and qualification standards compared to the standards of ORO.FC and/or Subpart E of Annex V (SPA.LVO) prior to the introduction of ATQP; and

(ii) any new training methods implemented as part of ATQP.

The safety case should encompass each phase of implementation of the programme and be applicable over the lifetime of the programme that is to be overseen. The safety case should:

– demonstrate the required level of safety;
– ensure the required safety is maintained throughout the lifetime of the programme; and
– minimise risk during all phases of the programme's implementation and operation.

The elements of a safety case include:

– planning: integrated and planned with the operation (ATQP) that is to be justified;
– criteria;
– safety-related documentation including a safety checklist;
– programme of implementation to include controls and validity checks; and
– oversight, including review and audits.

Criteria for the establishment of a safety case. The safety case should:

– be able to demonstrate that the required or equivalent level of safety is maintained throughout all phases of the programme;
– be valid to the application and the proposed operation;
– be adequately safe and ensure the required regulatory safety standards or approved equivalent safety standards are achieved;
– be applicable over the entire lifetime of the programme;
– demonstrate completeness and credibility of the programme;
– be fully documented;
– ensure integrity of the operation and the maintenance of the operations and training infrastructure;
– ensure robustness to system change;
– address the impact of technological advance, obsolescence and change; and
– address the impact of regulatory change.

(2) A task analysis as required by (a)(2) to establish the operator's programme of targeted training and the associated training objectives.

(3) A period of operation whilst data is collected and analysed to validate the safety case and task analysis. During this period the operator should continue to operate in accordance with ORO.FC and/or Subpart E of Annex V (SPA.LVO), as applicable. The length of this period should be determined by the competent authority.

GM1 ORO.FC.A.245 Alternative training and qualification programme

TERMINOLOGY

(a) 'Line oriented evaluation (LOE)' is an evaluation methodology used in the ATQP to evaluate trainee performance, and to validate trainee proficiency. LOEs consist of flight simulator scenarios that are developed by the operator in accordance with a methodology approved as part of the ATQP. The LOE should be realistic and include appropriate weather scenarios and in addition should fall within an acceptable range of difficulty. The LOE should include the use of validated event sets to provide the basis for event-based assessment.

(b) 'Line oriented quality evaluation (LOQE)' is one of the tools used to help evaluate the overall performance of an operation. LOQEs consist of line flights that are observed by appropriately qualified operator personnel to provide feedback to validate the ATQP. The LOQE should be designed to look at those elements of the operation that are unable to be monitored by FDM or Advanced FDM programmes.

(c) 'Skill-based training' requires the identification of specific knowledge and skills. The required knowledge and skills are identified within an ATQP as part of a task analysis and are used to provide targeted training.

(d) 'Event-based assessment' is the assessment of flight crew to provide assurance that the required knowledge and skills have been acquired. This is achieved within an LOE. Feedback to the flight crew is an integral part of event-based assessment.

(e) Safety case means a documented body of evidence that provides a demonstrable and valid justification that the ATQP is adequately safe for the given type of operation.

AMC1 ORO.FC.A.245(a) Alternative training and qualification programme

OPERATOR EXPERIENCE

The appropriate experience should be at least 2 years' continuous operation.

AMC1 ORO.FC.A.245(d)(e)(2) Alternative training and qualification programme

COMBINATION OF CHECKS

(a) The line orientated evaluation (LOE) may be undertaken with other ATQP training.

(b) The line check may be combined with a line oriented quality evaluation (LOQE).

ORO.FC.A.250 Commanders holding a CPL(A)

(a) The holder of a CPL(A) (aeroplane) shall only act as commander in commercial air transport on a single-pilot aeroplane if:

(1) when carrying passengers under VFR outside a radius of 50 NM (90 km) from an aerodrome of departure, he/she has a minimum of 500 hours of flight time on aeroplanes or holds a valid instrument rating; or

(2) when operating on a multi-engine type under IFR, he/she has a minimum of 700 hours of flight time on aeroplanes, including 400 hours as pilot-in-command. These hours shall include 100 hours under IFR and 40 hours in multi-engine operations. The 400 hours as pilot-in-command may be substituted by hours operating as co-pilot within an established multi-pilot crew system prescribed in the operations manual, on the basis of two hours of flight time as co-pilot for one hour of flight time as pilot-in command.

(b) For operations under VFR by day of performance class B aeroplanes (a)(1) shall not apply.

ORO.FC.H.250 Commanders holding a CPL(H)

(a) The holder of a CPL(H) (helicopter) shall only act as commander in commercial air transport on a single-pilot helicopter if:

(1) when operating under IFR, he/she has a minimum of 700 hours total flight time on helicopters, including 300 hours as pilot-in-command. These hours shall include 100 hours under IFR. The 300 hours as pilot-in-command may be substituted by hours operating as co-pilot within an established multi-pilot crew system prescribed in the operations manual on the basis of two hours of flight time as co-pilot for one hour flight time as pilot-in command;

(2) when operating under visual meteorological conditions (VMC) at night, he/she has:

(i) a valid instrument rating; or

(ii) 300 hours of flight time on helicopters, including 100 hours as pilot-in-command and 10 hours as pilot flying at night.

SUBPART CC — CABIN CREW

ORO.CC.005 Scope

This Subpart establishes the requirements to be met by the operator when operating an aircraft with cabin crew.

Section 1 — General requirements

ORO.CC.100 Number and composition of cabin crew

(a) The number and composition of cabin crew shall be determined in accordance with 7.a. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008, taking into account operational factors or circumstances of the particular flight to be operated. At least one cabin crew member shall be assigned for the operation of aircraft with an MOPSC of more than 19 when carrying one or more passenger(s).

(b) For the purpose of complying with (a), the minimum number of cabin crew shall be the greater of the following:

(1) the number of cabin crew members established during the aircraft certification process in accordance with the applicable certification specifications, for the aircraft cabin configuration used by the operator; or

(2) if the number under (1) has not been established, the number of cabin crew established during the aircraft certification process for the maximum certified passenger seating configuration reduced by 1 for every whole multiple of 50 passenger seats of the aircraft cabin configuration used by the operator falling below the maximum certified seating capacity; or

(3) one cabin crew member for every 50, or fraction of 50, passenger seats installed on the same deck of the aircraft to be operated.

(c) For operations where more than one cabin crew member is assigned, the operator shall nominate one cabin crew member to be responsible to the pilot-in-command/commander.

AMC1 ORO.CC.100 Number and composition of cabin crew

DETERMINATION OF THE NUMBER AND COMPOSITION OF CABIN CREW

(a) When determining the minimum number of cabin crew required to operate aircraft engaged in commercial air transport operations, factors to be taken into account should include:

 (1) the number of doors/exits;

 (2) the type(s) of doors/exits and the associated assisting evacuation means;

 (3) the location of doors/exits in relation to cabin crew stations and the cabin layout;

 (4) the location of cabin crew stations taking into account direct view requirements and cabin crew duties in an emergency evacuation including:

  (i) opening floor level doors/exits and initiating stair or slide deployment;

  (ii) assisting passengers to pass through doors/exits; and

  (iii) directing passengers away from inoperative doors/exits, crowd control and passenger flow management;

 (5) actions required to be performed by cabin crew in ditching, including the deployment of slide-rafts and the launching of life-rafts;

 (6) additional actions required to be performed by cabin crew members when responsible for a pair of doors/exits; and

 (7) the type and duration of the flight to be operated.

(b) When scheduling cabin crew for a flight, the operator should establish procedures that take account of the experience of each cabin crew member. The procedures should specify that the required cabin crew includes some cabin crew members who have at least 3 months experience as an operating cabin crew member.

GM1 ORO.CC.100 Number and composition of cabin crew

MINIMUM NUMBER OF CABIN CREW

(a) When determining the minimum required cabin crew for its specific aircraft cabin configuration, the operator should:

 (1) request information regarding the minimum number of cabin crew established by the aircraft type certificate (TC) holder or other design organisation responsible for showing compliance with the evacuation requirements of the applicable certification specifications; and

 (2) take into account the factors specified in AMC1 ORO.CC.100 as applicable.

(b) The number of cabin crew referred to in ORO.CC.100 (b)(1) means either:

 (1) the number of cabin crew who actively participated in the aircraft cabin during the relevant emergency evacuation demonstration, or who were assumed to have taken part in the relevant analysis, carried out by the aircraft TC holder when demonstrating the maximum passenger seating capacity (MPSC) of the aircraft type at the time of initial type certification; or

 (2) a lower number of cabin crew who actively participated in a subsequent emergency evacuation demonstration, or who were assumed to have taken part in the relevant analysis, and for which approval has been obtained for a cabin configuration other than the MPSC, either by the TC holder or by another design organisation. The operator should obtain a clear indication of that number which is specified in the related documentation. If a lower number is not specified, the number of cabin crew established at the time of initial type certification applies.

ORO.CC.110 Conditions for assignment to duties

(a) Cabin crew members shall only be assigned to duties on an aircraft if they:

(1) are at least 18 years of age;

(2) have been assessed, in accordance with the applicable requirements of Annex IV (Part-MED) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011, as physically and mentally fit to perform their duties and discharge their responsibilities safely; and

(3) have successfully completed all applicable training and checking required by this Subpart and are competent to perform the assigned duties in accordance with the procedures specified in the operations manual.

(b) Before assigning to duties cabin crew members who are working on a freelance or part-time basis, the operator shall verify that all applicable requirements of this Subpart are complied with, taking into account all services rendered by the cabin crew member to any other operator(s), to determine in particular:

(1) the total number of aircraft types and variants operated; and

(2) the applicable flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements.

(c) Operating cabin crew members, as well as their role with regard to the safety of passengers and flight, shall be clearly identified to the passengers.

ORO.CC.115 Conduct of training courses and associated checking

(a) A detailed programme and syllabus shall be established by the operator for each training course in accordance with the applicable requirements of this Subpart, and of Annex V (Part-CC) to Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX where applicable, to cover the duties and responsibilities to be discharged by the cabin crew members.

(b) Each training course shall include theoretical and practical instruction together with individual or collective practice, as relevant to each training subject, in order that the cabin crew member achieves and maintains the adequate level of proficiency in accordance with this Subpart.

(c) Each training course shall be:

(1) conducted in a structured and realistic manner; and

(2) performed by personnel appropriately qualified for the subject to be covered.

(d) During or following completion of all training required by this Subpart, each cabin crew member shall undergo a check covering all training elements of the relevant training programme, except for crew resource management (CRM) training. Checks shall be performed by personnel appropriately qualified to verify that the cabin crew member has achieved and/or maintains the required level of proficiency.

(e) CRM training courses and CRM modules where applicable shall be conducted by a cabin crew CRM instructor. When CRM elements are integrated in other training, a cabin crew CRM instructor shall manage the definition and implementation of the syllabus.

GM1 ORO.CC.115 Conduct of training courses and associated checking

EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURES

The following definitions apply for the purpose of training programmes, syllabi and the conduct of training and checking on equipment and procedures:

(a) 'Safety equipment' means equipment installed/carried to be used during day-to-day normal operations for the safe conduct of the flight and protection of occupants (e.g. seat belts, child restraint devices, safety card, safety demonstration kit).

(b) 'Emergency equipment' means equipment installed/carried to be used in case of abnormal and emergency situations that demand immediate action for the safe conduct of the flight and protection of occupants including life preservation (e.g. drop-out oxygen, crash axe, fire extinguisher, protective breathing equipment, manual release tool, slide-raft).

(c) 'Normal procedures' means all procedures established by the operator in the operations manual for day-to-day normal operations (e.g. pre-flight briefing of cabin crew, pre-flight checks, passenger briefing, securing of galleys and cabin, cabin surveillance during flight).

(d) 'Emergency procedures' means all procedures established by the operator in the operations manual for abnormal and emergency situations. For this purpose, 'abnormal' refers to a situation that is not typical or usual, deviates from normal operation and may result in an emergency.

AMC1 ORO.CC.115(c) Conduct of training courses and associated checking

TRAINING METHODS AND TRAINING DEVICES

(a) The operator should establish training methods that take into account the following:

(1) training should include the use of cabin training devices, audio-visual presentations, computer-based training and other types of training, as most appropriate to the training element; and

(2) a reasonable balance between the different training methods should be ensured so that the cabin crew member achieves the level of proficiency necessary for a safe performance of all related cabin crew duties and responsibilities.

(b) When assessing the representative training devices to be used, the operator should:

(1) take into account that a representative training device may be used to train cabin crew as an alternative to the use of the actual aircraft or required equipment;

(2) ensure that those items relevant to the training and checking intended to be given accurately represent the aircraft or equipment in the following particulars:

(i) layout of the cabin in relation to doors/exits, galley areas and safety and emergency equipment stowage as relevant;

(ii) type and location of passenger seats and cabin crew stations;

(iii) doors/exits in all modes of operation, particularly in relation to the method of operation, mass and balance and operating forces, including failure of power-assist systems where fitted; and

(iv) safety and emergency equipment of the type provided in the aircraft (such equipment may be 'training use only' items and, for oxygen and protective breathing equipment, units charged with or without oxygen may be used); and

(3) assess the following factors when determining whether a door/exit can be considered to be a variant of another type:

(i) door/exit arming/disarming;

(ii) direction of movement of the operating handle;

(iii) direction of door/exit opening;

(iv) power-assist mechanisms; and

(v) assisting evacuation means such as slides and ropes.

AMC1 ORO.CC.115(d) Conduct of training courses and associated checking

CHECKING

(a) Checking required for each training course should be accomplished by the method appropriate to the training element to be checked. These methods include:

(1) practical demonstration;

(2) computer-based assessment;

(3) in-flight checks;

(4) oral or written tests.

(b) Training elements that require individual practical participation may be combined with practical checks.

AMC1 ORO.CC.115(e) Conduct of training courses and associated checking

CREW RESOURCE MANAGEMENT – TRAINING PROGRAMMES AND CRM INSTRUCTORS

(a) Implementation of CRM training

Table 1 below indicates which CRM training elements should be covered in each type of training.

Table 1 – Cabin crew CRM training

CRM TRAINING ELEMENTS to be covered	Operator's CRM Training	Operator Aircraft Type Conversion Training	Annual Recurrent Training	Senior Cabin Crew (SCC) Course
General Principles				
Human factors in aviation General instructions on CRM principles and objectives Human performance and limitations	Not required (as covered under initial training required by Part-CC)	Not required	Not required	Overview
Relevant to the individual cabin crew member				
Personality awareness, human error and reliability, attitudes and behaviours, self-assessment Stress and stress management Fatigue and vigilance Assertiveness, situation awareness, information acquisition and processing	Not required (as covered under initial training required by Part-CC)	Not required	Overview (3 year cycle)	Not required
Relevant to the entire aircraft crew				
Error prevention and detection	In-depth	Relevant to the type(s)	Overview (3 year cycle)	Reinforcement (relevant to the SCC duties)
Shared situation awareness, information acquisition and processing				
Workload management				
Effective communication and coordination between all crew members including the flight crew as well as inexperienced cabin crew members, cultural differences				
Leadership, cooperation, synergy, decision-making, delegation				
Individual and team responsibilities, decision making, and actions				
Identification and management of the passenger human factors: crowd control, passenger stress, conflict management, medical factors				
Specifics related to aircraft types (narrow/ wide bodied, single/multi deck), flight crew and cabin crew composition and number of passengers	Not required	In-depth		
Relevant to the operator and the organisation				
Company safety culture, SOPs, organisational factors, factors linked to the type of operations Effective communication and coordination with other operational personnel and ground services Participation in cabin safety incident and accident reporting	In-depth	Relevant to the type(s)	Overview (3 year cycle)	Reinforcement (relevant to the SCC duties)
Case-studies	Required		Required	

(b) CRM training programmes

(1) There should be an effective liaison between flight crew and cabin crew training departments. Provision should be made to allow, whenever practicable, flight and cabin crew instructors to observe and comment on each other's training. Consideration should be given to creating films of flight crew compartment scenarios for playback to all cabin crew during recurrent training, and to providing the opportunity for cabin crew members, particularly senior cabin crew members, to participate in flight crew line oriented flying training (LOFT) exercises.

(2) The programme of each CRM training course, its content and the level to be achieved should comply with the relevant elements specified in table 1 below as applicable to the appropriate training course to be completed.

(3) CRM training for senior cabin crew members

(i) CRM training for senior cabin crew members should be the application of knowledge gained in previous CRM training and operational experience relevant to the specific duties and responsibilities of a senior cabin crew member.

(ii) The senior cabin crew member should demonstrate the ability to manage the operation and take appropriate leadership/management decisions.

(c) CRM instructor qualifications

(1) All personnel conducting training should be appropriately qualified to integrate elements of CRM into all appropriate training programmes.

(2) A training and standardisation programme for CRM instructors should be established.

(3) The cabin crew CRM instructor should:

(i) have suitable experience of commercial air transport operations as a cabin crew member;

(ii) have received instruction on human factors performance limitations (HPL);

(iii) have completed an introductory CRM course as required by Part-CC and all cabin crew CRM training required by Part-ORO;

(iv) have received instruction in training skills in order to conduct CRM courses; and

(v) be supervised by an appropriately qualified CRM instructor when conducting their first CRM training course.

(4) An experienced non-cabin crew CRM instructor may continue to be a cabin crew CRM instructor, provided that the provisions specified in (3)(ii) to (3)(v) are satisfied and that the instructor demonstrates a satisfactory knowledge of the nature of the operation, the relevant specific aircraft types and the cabin crew working environment.

(5) Instructors integrating elements of CRM into aircraft type training, recurrent training, or senior cabin crew training should have acquired relevant knowledge of human factors and have completed appropriate CRM training.

GM1 ORO.CC.115(e) Conduct of training courses and associated checking

CREW RESOURCE MANAGEMENT (CRM)

(a) CRM – General

(1) CRM should be the effective utilisation of all available resources (e.g. crew members, aircraft systems, and supporting facilities) to achieve safe and efficient operation.

(2) The objective of CRM should be to enhance the communication and management skills of the crew member, as well as the importance of effective coordination and two-way communication between all crew members.

(3) Operator's CRM training should reflect the culture of the operator, the scale and scope of the operation together with associated operating procedures and areas of operation that produce particular difficulties.

(4) Accordingly, where required during CRM training, if relevant aircraft type-specific case studies are not available, then other case studies relevant to the scale and scope of the operation should be considered.

(b) General principles for CRM training for cabin crew

(1) Cabin crew CRM training should focus on issues related to cabin crew duties and, therefore, should be different from flight crew CRM training. However, the coordination of the tasks and functions of flight crew and cabin crew should be addressed.

(2) Whenever practicable, combined training should be provided to flight crew and cabin crew, particularly senior cabin crew members. This should include feedback.

(3) Where appropriate, CRM principles should be integrated into relevant parts of cabin crew training.

(4) CRM training should include group discussions and the review of accidents and incidents (case studies).

(5) Whenever it is practicable to do so, relevant parts of CRM training should form part of the training conducted in cabin training devices or in the aircraft.

(6) CRM training courses should be conducted in a structured and realistic manner.

(7) There should be no assessment of CRM skills. Feedback from instructors or members of the group on individual performance should be given during training to the individuals concerned.

ORO.CC.120 Initial training course

(a) Each new entrant who does not already hold a valid cabin crew attestation issued in accordance with Annex V (Part-CC) to Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX:

(1) shall be provided with an initial training course as specified in CC.TRA.220 of that Annex; and

(2) shall successfully undergo the associated examination before undertaking other training required by this Subpart.

(b) Elements of the initial training programme may be combined with the first aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training, provided that the requirements of CC.TRA.220 are met and any such element(s) are recorded as elements of the initial training course in the training records of the cabin crew members concerned.

ORO.CC.125 Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training

(a) Each cabin crew member shall have completed appropriate aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training, as well as the associated checks, before being:

(1) first assigned by the operator to operate as a cabin crew member; or

(2) assigned by that operator to operate on another aircraft type.

(b) When establishing the aircraft type specific and the operator conversion training programmes and syllabi, the operator shall include, where available, the mandatory elements for the relevant type as defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

(c) The aircraft type specific training programme shall:

(1) involve training and practice on a representative training device or on the actual aircraft; and

(2) cover at least the following aircraft type specific training elements:

(i) aircraft description as relevant to cabin crew duties;

(ii) all safety equipment and systems installed relevant to cabin crew duties;

(iii) operation and actual opening, by each cabin crew member, of each type or variant of normal and emergency doors and exits in the normal and emergency modes;

(iv) demonstration of the operation of the other exits including flight crew compartment windows;

(v) fire and smoke protection equipment where installed;

(vi) evacuation slide training, where fitted;

(vii) operation of the seat, restraint system and oxygen system equipment relevant to pilot incapacitation.

(d) The operator conversion training programme for each aircraft type to be operated shall:

(1) involve training and practice on a representative training device or on the actual aircraft;

(2) include training in the operator's standard operating procedures for cabin crew members to be first assigned to duties by the operator;

(3) cover at least the following operator specific training elements as relevant to the aircraft type to be operated:

(i) description of the cabin configuration;

(ii) location, removal and use of all portable safety and emergency equipment carried on-board;

(iii) all normal and emergency procedures;

(iv) passenger handling and crowd control;

(v) fire and smoke training including the use of all related fire-fighting and protective equipment representative of that carried on-board;

(vi) evacuation procedures;

(vii) pilot incapacitation procedures;

(viii) applicable security requirements and procedures;

(ix) crew resource management.

AMC1 ORO.CC.125(c) Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training

TRAINING PROGRAMME − AIRCRAFT TYPE SPECIFIC TRAINING

The following aircraft type specific training elements should be covered as relevant to the aircraft type:

(a) Aircraft description

(1) type of aircraft, principal dimensions, narrow or wide bodied, single or double deck;

(2) speed, altitude, range;

(3) passenger seating capacity;

(4) flight crew number and minimum number of required cabin crew;

(5) cabin doors/exits location and sill height;

(6) cargo and unpressurised areas as relevant;

(7) aircraft systems relevant to cabin crew duties;

(8) flight crew compartment – general presentation, pilot seats and their mechanism, emergency exits, storage;

(9) required cabin crew stations;

(10) flight crew compartment security – general: door components and use;

(11) access to avionics bay where relevant;

(12) lavatories – general: doors, systems, calls and signs; and

(13) least risk bomb location.

(b) Safety and emergency equipment and aircraft systems installed

Each cabin crew member should receive realistic training on, and demonstration of, the location and use of all aircraft type specific safety and emergency equipment and aircraft systems installed, with emphasis on the following:

(1) slides, and where non-self-supporting slides are carried, the use of any associated assisting evacuation means;

(2) life-rafts and slide-rafts, including the equipment attached to, and/or carried in, the raft;

(3) drop-out oxygen system; and

(4) communication equipment.

(c) Operation of doors and exits

This training should be conducted in a representative training device or in the actual aircraft and should include failure of power assist systems where fitted and the action and forces required to operate and deploy evacuation slides. Training should also include operation and actual opening of the flight crew compartment security door when installed.

(d) Fire and smoke protection equipment

Each cabin crew member should be trained in using fire and/or smoke protection equipment where fitted.

(e) Evacuation slide training

(1) Each cabin crew member should descend an evacuation slide from a height representative of the aircraft main deck sill height.

(2) The slide should be fitted to a representative training device or to the actual aircraft.

(3) A further descent should be made when the cabin crew member qualifies on an aircraft type in which the main deck exit sill height differs significantly from any aircraft type previously operated.

(f) Operation of equipment related to pilot incapacitation

The training should cover any type specific elements or conditions relevant to cabin crew actions to be taken in case of pilot incapacitation. Each cabin crew member should be trained to operate all equipment that must be used in case of pilot incapacitation.

AMC1 ORO.CC.125(d) Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training

TRAINING PROGRAMME − OPERATOR CONVERSION TRAINING

The following training elements should be covered as relevant to the aircraft type and the related operator's specifics:

(a) Description of the cabin configuration

The description should cover all elements specific to the operator's cabin configuration and any differences with those previously covered in accordance with AMC1 ORO.CC.125(c), including:

(1) required and additional cabin crew stations – location (including direct view) , restraint systems, control panels;

(2) passenger seats – general presentation and associated operator's specific features and equipment;

(3) designated stowage areas;

(4) lavatories – operator's specific features, equipment and systems additional to the aircraft type specific elements;

(5) galley – location, appliances, water and waste system, including shut-off, sinks, drains, stowage, control panels, calls and signs;

and where applicable

(6) crew rest areas – location, systems, controls, safety and emergency equipment;

(7) cabin dividers, curtains, partitions;

(8) lift location, use, controls;

(9) stowage for the containment of waste; and

(10) passenger hand rail system or alternative means.

(b) Safety and emergency equipment

Each cabin crew member should receive realistic training on and demonstration of the location and use of all safety and emergency equipment carried including:

(1) life-jackets, infant life-jackets and flotation devices;

(2) first-aid and drop-out oxygen, including supplementary systems;

(3) fire extinguishers and protective breathing equipment (PBE);

(4) crash axe or crowbar;

(5) emergency lights including torches;

(6) communication equipment, including megaphones;

(7) slide-rafts and life-rafts' survival packs and their contents;

(8) pyrotechnics (actual or representative devices);

(9) first-aid kits, emergency medical kits and their contents; and

(10) other portable safety and emergency equipment, where applicable.

(c) Normal and emergency procedures

Each cabin crew member should be trained on the operator's normal and emergency procedures as applicable, with emphasis on the following:

(1) passenger briefing, safety demonstration and cabin surveillance;

(2) severe air turbulence;

(3) non–pressurisation, slow and sudden decompression, including the donning of portable oxygen equipment by each cabin crew member; and

(4) other in-flight emergencies.

(d) Passenger handling and crowd control

Training should be provided on the practical aspects of passenger preparation and handling, as well as crowd control, in various emergency situations as applicable to the operator's specific aircraft cabin configuration, and should cover the following:

(1) communications between flight crew and cabin crew and use of all communications equipment, including the difficulties of coordination in a smoke-filled environment;

(2) verbal commands;

(3) the physical contact that may be needed to encourage people out of a door/exit and onto a slide;

(4) redirection of passengers away from unusable doors/exits;

(5) marshalling of passengers away from the aircraft;

(6) evacuation of special categories of passengers with emphasis on passengers with disabilities or reduced mobility; and

(7) authority and leadership.

(e) Fire and smoke training

(1) Each cabin crew member should receive realistic and practical training in the use of all fire-fighting equipment including protective clothing representative of that carried in the aircraft.

(2) Each cabin crew member should:

(i) extinguish an actual fire characteristic of an aircraft interior fire except that, in the case of halon extinguishers, an alternative extinguishing agent may be used; and

(ii) exercise the donning and use of PBE in an enclosed simulated smoke-filled environment with particular emphasis on identifying the actual source of fire and smoke.

(f) Evacuation procedures

Training should include all the operator's procedures that are applicable to planned or unplanned evacuations on land and water. It should also include, where relevant, the additional actions required from cabin crew members responsible for a pair of doors/exits and the recognition of when doors/exits are unusable or when evacuation equipment is unserviceable.

(g) Pilot incapacitation procedures

Unless the minimum flight crew is more than two, each cabin crew member should be trained in the procedure for pilot incapacitation. Training in the use of flight crew checklists, where required by the operator's standard operating procedures (SOPs), should be conducted by a practical demonstration.

(h) Crew resource management

(1) Each cabin crew member should complete the operator's CRM training covering the applicable training elements to the level specified in the relevant column of Table 1 of AMC1 ORO.CC.115(e).

(2) When a cabin crew member undertakes the operator's conversion training on an aircraft type, the applicable training elements specified in Table 1 of AMC1 ORO.CC.115(e) should be covered to the level specified in column 'Operator's aircraft type conversion training'.

(3) The operator's CRM training and CRM training covered during operator aircraft type conversion training should be conducted by at least one cabin crew CRM instructor.

AMC1 ORO.CC.125 & ORO.CC.130 Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training & Differences training

TRAINING PROGRAMMES

The programmes and syllabi of aircraft type specific training, operator conversion training and differences training should take into account the cabin crew member's previous training as documented in his/her training records.

AMC1 ORO.CC.125(b) & ORO.CC.130(c) Aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training & Differences training

NON-MANDATORY (RECOMMENDATIONS) ELEMENTS

When developing the training programmes and syllabi for aircraft-type specific training and for differences training, the operator should consider the non-mandatory (recommendations) elements for the relevant type that are provided in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 .

ORO.CC.130 Differences training

(a) In addition to the training required in ORO.CC.125, the cabin crew member shall complete appropriate training and checking covering any differences before being assigned on:

(1) a variant of an aircraft type currently operated; or

(2) a currently operated aircraft type or variant with different:

(i) safety equipment;

(ii) safety and emergency equipment location; or

(iii) normal and emergency procedures.

(b) The differences training programme shall:

(1) be determined as necessary on the basis of a comparison with the training programme completed by the cabin crew member, in accordance with ORO.CC.125 (c) and (d), for the relevant aircraft type; and

(2) involve training and practice in a representative training device or the actual aircraft as relevant to the difference training element to be covered.

(c) When establishing a differences training programme and syllabus for a variant of an aircraft type currently operated, the operator shall include, where available, the mandatory elements for the relevant aircraft type and its variants as defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003[21].

ORO.CC.135 Familiarisation

After completion of aircraft type specific training and operator conversion training on an aircraft type, each cabin crew member shall complete appropriate supervised familiarisation on the type before being assigned to operate as a member of the minimum number of cabin crew required in accordance with ORO.CC.100.

[21] OJ L 243, 27.9.2003, p. 6.

AMC1 ORO.CC.135 Familiarisation

FAMILIARISATION FLIGHTS AND AIRCRAFT FAMILIARISATION VISITS

(a) For commercial air transport operations, familiarisation of cabin crew to a new aircraft type or variant should be completed in accordance with the following, as relevant:

(1) New entrant cabin crew

Each new entrant cabin crew member having no previous comparable operating experience should participate in:

(i) a familiarisation visit as described in (c) to the aircraft to be operated; and

(ii) familiarisation flights as described in (b).

(2) Cabin crew operating on a subsequent aircraft type

A cabin crew member assigned to operate on a subsequent aircraft type with the same operator should participate either in a:

(i) familiarisation flight as described in (b); or

(ii) familiarisation visit as described in (c) to the aircraft type to be operated.

(b) Familiarisation flights

(1) During familiarisation flights, the cabin crew member should be assigned in addition to the minimum number of cabin crew required in accordance with ORO.CC.100 and if applicable ORO.CC.200.

(2) Familiarisation flights should be:

(i) conducted under the supervision of the senior cabin crew member;

(ii) structured and conducted with the cabin crew member participating in pre-flight, in-flight and post-flight safety duties;

(iii) operated with the cabin crew member wearing the operator's cabin crew uniform; and

(iv) recorded in the training record of the cabin crew member.

(c) Aircraft familiarisation visits

(1) Aircraft visits should enable the cabin crew member to become familiar with the aircraft environment and its equipment. Accordingly, aircraft visits should be conducted by appropriately qualified persons. The aircraft visit should provide an overview of the aircraft's exterior, interior and aircraft systems with emphasis on the following:

(i) interphone and public address systems;

(ii) evacuation alarm systems;

(iii) emergency lighting;

(iv) smoke detection systems;

(v) safety and emergency equipment;

(vi) flight crew compartment;

(vii) cabin crew stations;

(viii) lavatories;

(ix) galleys, galley security and water shut-off;

(x) cargo areas if accessible from the passenger compartment during flight;

(xi) circuit breaker panels located in the passenger compartment;

(xii) crew rest areas; and

(xiii) doors/exits location and environment.

(2) An aircraft familiarisation visit may be combined with the aircraft type specific training or operator conversion training required by ORO.CC.125.

ORO.CC.140 Recurrent training

(a) Each cabin crew member shall complete annually recurrent training and checking.

(b) Recurrent training shall cover the actions assigned to each member of the cabin crew in normal and emergency procedures and drills relevant to each aircraft type and/or variant to be operated.

(c) Aircraft type specific training elements:

(1) Recurrent training shall include annually touch-drills by each cabin crew member for simulating the operation of each type or variant of normal and emergency doors and exits for passenger evacuation.

(2) Recurrent training shall also include at intervals not exceeding 3 years:

(i) operation and actual opening by each cabin crew member, in a representative training device or in the actual aircraft, of each type or variant of normal and emergency exits in the normal and emergency modes;

(ii) actual operation by each cabin crew member, in a representative training device or in the actual aircraft, of the flight crew compartment security door, in both normal and emergency modes, and of the seat and restraint system, and a practical demonstration of the oxygen system equipment relevant to pilot incapacitation;

(iii) demonstration of the operation of all other exits including the flight crew compartment windows; and

(iv) demonstration of the use of the life raft, or slide raft, where fitted.

(d) Operator specific training elements:

(1) Recurrent training shall include annually:

(i) by each cabin crew member:

(A) location and handling of all safety and emergency equipment installed or carried on board; and

(B) the donning of life-jackets, portable oxygen and protective breathing equipment (PBE);

(ii) stowage of articles in the passenger compartment;

(iii) procedures related to aircraft surface contamination;

(iv) emergency procedures;

(v) evacuation procedures;

(vi) incident and accident review;

(vii) crew resource management;

(viii) aero-medical aspects and first aid including related equipment;

(ix) security procedures.

(2) Recurrent training shall also include at intervals not exceeding 3 years:

(i) use of pyrotechnics (actual or representative devices);

(ii) practical demonstration of the use of flight crew checklists;

(iii) realistic and practical training in the use of all fire-fighting equipment, including protective clothing, representative of that carried in the aircraft;

(iv) by each cabin crew member:

(A) extinguishing a fire characteristic of an aircraft interior fire;

(B) donning and use of PBE in an enclosed simulated smoke-filled environment.

(e) Validity periods:

(1) The annual recurrent training validity period shall be 12 calendar months counted from the end of the month when the check was taken.

(2) If the recurrent training and checking required in (a) are undertaken within the last 3 calendar months of the validity period, the new validity period shall be counted from the original expiry date.

(3) For the additional triennial training elements specified in (c)(2) and (d)(2), the validity period shall be 36 calendar months counted from the end of the month when the checks were taken.

AMC1 ORO.CC.140 Recurrent training

TRAINING PROGRAMMES

(a) Elements of the annual recurrent training programme

(1) Training on the location and handling of safety and emergency equipment should include all relevant oxygen systems, and any equipment such as defibrillators if carried on board.

(2) Training on emergency procedures should cover pilot incapacitation procedures and crowd control techniques.

(3) CRM training should satisfy the following:

(i) the applicable training elements specified in Table 1 of AMC1 ORO.CC.115(e) should be covered within a 3 year cycle to the level required by Column 'Annual Recurrent Training';

(ii) the definition and implementation of the programme should be managed by a cabin crew CRM instructor; and

(iii) when CRM training is provided by stand-alone modules, it should be conducted by at least one cabin crew CRM instructor.

(b) Additional triennial elements of recurrent training programme

(1) Training on the operation of normal and emergency doors/exits should cover failure of power assist systems where fitted. This should include the actions and forces required to operate and deploy evacuation slides, and additional training when relevant for cabin crew members responsible for a pair of doors/exits.

(2) Training in the use of all fire-fighting equipment, including protective clothing, representative of that carried in the aircraft should include individual practice by each cabin crew member to extinguish a fire characteristic of an aircraft interior fire except that, in the case of halon extinguishers, an alternative extinguishing agent may be used. Training should place particular emphasis on identifying the actual source of fire or smoke.

ORO.CC.145 Refresher training

(a) When a cabin crew member, during the preceding 6 months within the validity period of the last relevant recurrent training and checking:

(1) has not performed any flying duties, he/she shall, before being reassigned to such duties, complete refresher training and checking for each aircraft type to be operated; or

(2) has not performed flying duties on one particular aircraft type, he/she shall, before being reassigned to duties, complete on that aircraft type:

(i) refresher training and checking; or

(ii) two familiarisation flights in accordance with ORO.CC.135.

(b) The refresher training programme for each aircraft type shall at least cover:

(1) emergency procedures;

(2) evacuation procedures;

(3) operation and actual opening, by each cabin crew member, of each type or variant of normal and emergency exits and of the flight crew compartment security door in the normal and emergency modes;

(4) demonstration of the operation of all other exits including the flight crew compartment windows;

(5) location and handling of all relevant safety and emergency equipment installed or carried onboard.

(c) The operator may elect to replace refresher training by recurrent training if the re-instatement of the cabin crew member's flying duties commences within the validity period of the last recurrent training and checking. If that validity period has expired, refresher training may only be replaced by aircraft type specific and operator conversion training as specified in ORO.CC.125.

AMC1 ORO.CC.145 Refresher training

TRAINING PROGRAMME

(a) Training on emergency procedures should include pilot incapacitation procedures and crowd control techniques as applicable to the aircraft type; and

(b) Operation of doors and exits by each cabin crew member should include failure of power assist systems where fitted as well as the action and forces required to operate and deploy evacuation slides.

GM1 ORO.CC.145 Refresher training

FREQUENCY OF REFRESHER TRAINING

For aircraft with complex equipment or procedures, the operator should consider the need for refresher training to be completed by cabin crew members who have been absent from flying duties for less than 6 months.

Section 2 — Additional requirements for commercial air transport operations

ORO.CC.200 Senior cabin crew member

(a) When more than one cabin crew member is required, the composition of the cabin crew shall include a senior cabin crew member nominated by the operator.

(b) The operator shall nominate cabin crew members to the position of senior cabin crew member only if they:

(1) have at least 1 year of experience as operating cabin crew member; and

(2) have successfully completed a senior cabin crew training course and the associated check.

(c) The senior cabin crew training course shall cover all duties and responsibilities of senior cabin crew members and shall include at least the following elements:

(1) pre-flight briefing;

(2) cooperation with the crew;

(3) review of operator requirements and legal requirements;

(4) accident and incident reporting;

(5) human factors and crew resource management (CRM); and

(6) flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements.

(d) The senior cabin crew member shall be responsible to the commander for the conduct and coordination of normal and emergency procedures specified in the operations manual, including for discontinuing non safety-related duties for safety or security purposes.

(e) The operator shall establish procedures to select the most appropriately qualified cabin crew member to act as senior cabin crew member if the nominated senior cabin crew member becomes unable to operate. Changes to these procedures shall be notified to the competent authority.

AMC1 ORO.CC.200(c) Senior cabin crew member

TRAINING PROGRAMME

The senior cabin crew member training course should at least cover the following elements:

(a) Pre-flight briefing:

(1) operating as a crew;

(2) allocation of cabin crew stations and responsibilities; and

(3) consideration of the particular flight, aircraft type, equipment, area and type of operation including extended range operations with two-engine aeroplanes (ETOPS) and special categories of passengers with emphasis on passengers with disabilities or reduced mobility, infants and stretcher cases.

(b) Cooperation within the crew:

(1) discipline, responsibilities and chain of command;

(2) importance of coordination and communication; and

(3) pilot incapacitation.

(c) Review of operator requirements and legal requirements:

(1) passenger briefing, safety briefing cards;

(2) securing of galleys;

(3) stowage of cabin baggage;

(4) electronic equipment;

(5) procedures when fuelling with passengers on board;

(6) turbulence; and

(7) documentation.

(d) Accident and incident reporting.

(e) Human factors and CRM:

The operator should ensure that all applicable elements specified in Table 1 of AMC1 ORO.CC.115(e) are integrated into the training and covered to the level required by Column 'Senior Cabin Crew Course'.

(f) Flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements (FTL).

AMC1 ORO.CC.200(d) Senior cabin crew member

RESPONSIBILITY TO THE COMMANDER

When the level of turbulence so requires, and in the absence of any instructions from the flight crew, the senior cabin crew member should be entitled to discontinue non-safety related duties and advise the flight crew of the level of turbulence being experienced and the need for the fasten seat belt signs to be switched on. This should be followed by the cabin crew securing the passenger cabin and other relevant areas.

ORO.CC.205 Reduction of the number of cabin crew during ground operations and in unforeseen circumstances

(a) Whenever any passengers are on board an aircraft, the minimum number of cabin crew required in accordance with ORO.CC.100 shall be present in the passenger compartment.

(b) Subject to the conditions specified in (c), this number may be reduced:

(1) during normal ground operations not involving refuelling/defuelling when the aircraft is at its parking station; or

(2) in unforeseen circumstances if the number of passengers carried on the flight is reduced. In this case a report shall be submitted to the competent authority after completion of the flight.

(c) Conditions:

(1) procedures ensuring that an equivalent level of safety is achieved with the reduced number of cabin crew, in particular for evacuation of passengers, are established in the operations manual;

(2) the reduced cabin crew includes a senior cabin crew member as specified in ORO.CC. 200;

(3) at least one cabin crew member is required for every 50, or fraction of 50, passengers present on the same deck of the aircraft;

(4) in the case of normal ground operations with aircraft requiring more than one cabin crew member, the number determined in accordance with (c)(3) shall be increased to include one cabin crew member per pair of floor level emergency exits.

AMC1 ORO.CC.205(c)(1) Reduction of the number of cabin crew during ground operations and in unforeseen circumstances

PROCEDURES WITH REDUCED NUMBER OF CABIN CREW

(a) During ground operations, if reducing the applicable minimum required number of cabin crew, the operator should ensure that the procedures required by ORO.CC.205 (c)(1) specify that:

(1) electrical power is available on the aircraft;

(2) a means of initiating an evacuation is available to the senior cabin crew member or at least one member of the flight crew is in the flight crew compartment;

(3) cabin crew stations and associated duties are specified in the operations manual; and

(4) cabin crew remain aware of the position of servicing and loading vehicles at and near the exits.

Additionally, in the case of passengers embarkation:

(5) the senior cabin crew member should have performed the pre-boarding safety briefing to the cabin crew; and

(6) the pre-boarding cabin checks should have been completed.

(b) If, in unforeseen circumstances, the number of cabin crew members is reduced below the applicable minimum required number, for example in the event of incapacitation or unavailability of cabin crew, the procedures established for this purpose in the operations manual should take into consideration at least the following:

(1) reduction of passenger numbers;

(2) reseating of passengers with due regard to doors/exits and other applicable limitations; and

(3) relocation of cabin crew taking into account the factors specified in AMC1 ORO.CC.100 and any change of procedures.

ORO.CC.210 Additional conditions for assignment to duties

Cabin crew members shall only be assigned to duties, and operate, on a particular aircraft type or variant if they:

(a) hold a valid attestation issued in accordance with Annex V (Part-CC) to Regulation (EU) No xxx/XXXX;

(b) are qualified on the type or variant in accordance with this Subpart;

(c) comply with the other applicable requirements of this Subpart and Annex IV (Part-CAT);

(d) wear the operator's cabin crew uniform.

GM1 ORO.CC.210(d) Additional conditions for assignment to duties

OPERATOR'S CABIN CREW UNIFORM

The uniform to be worn by operating cabin crew should be such as not to impede the performance of their duties as required for the safety of passengers and flight during operations, and should allow passengers to identify the operating cabin crew including in an emergency situation.

ORO.CC.215 Training and checking programs and related documentation

(a) Training and checking programmes including syllabi required by this Subpart shall be approved by the competent authority and specified in the operations manual.

(b) After a cabin crew member has successfully completed a training course and the associated check, the operator shall:

(1) update the cabin crew member's training records in accordance with ORO.MLR.115; and

(2) provide him/her with a list showing updated validity periods as relevant to the aircraft type(s) and variant(s) on which the cabin crew member is qualified to operate.

GM1 ORO.CC.215(b)(2) Training and checking programmes and related documentation

LIST OF AIRCRAFT TYPE/VARIANT QUALIFICATION(S)

When providing the updated validity list of aircraft type/variant qualifications to cabin crew members having successfully completed a training course and the associated checking, the operator may use the following format. If using another format, at least the elements in (a) to (d) and in columns (1) and (2) should be indicated to show validity of qualification(s).

<table>
<tr><th colspan="8">CABIN CREW AIRCRAFT TYPE/VARIANT QUALIFICATION(S)</th></tr>
<tr><td>(a)</td><td colspan="7">Reference number of the cabin crew attestation:</td></tr>
<tr><td>(b)</td><td colspan="7">Cabin crew attestation holder’s full name:

The above-mentioned person may act as an operating cabin crew member during flight operations only if his/her aircraft type and/or variant qualification(s) listed below, and dated DD/MM/YYYY, comply with the applicable validity period(s) specified in Part-ORO.</td></tr>
<tr><td>(c)</td><td colspan="7">Issuing organisation:

(name, postal address, AOC and/or approval reference number and stamp or logo)</td></tr>
<tr><td>(d)</td><td colspan="7">Date of issue: (DD/MM/YYYY)</td></tr>
<tr><td>(1)</td><td>(2)</td><td>(3)</td><td>(4)</td><td>(5)</td><td>(6)</td><td>(7)</td><td>(8)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Qualification valid until</td><td>Aircraft type specific training</td><td>Operator conversion training</td><td>Differences training

If relevant</td><td>Familiari-sation</td><td>Last recurrent training</td><td>Refresher training

If relevant</td></tr>
<tr><td>A/C type 1</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Variant …</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>A/C type 2</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Variant …</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>A/C type 3</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Variant …</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>If approved

A/C type 4</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

ORO.CC.250 Operation on more than one aircraft type or variant

(a) A cabin crew member shall not be assigned to operate on more than three aircraft types, except that, with the approval of the competent authority, the cabin crew member may be assigned to operate on four aircraft types if for at least two of the types:

(1) safety and emergency equipment and type-specific normal and emergency procedures are similar; and

(2) non-type-specific normal and emergency procedures are identical.

(b) For the purpose of (a) and for cabin crew training and qualifications, the operator shall determine:

(1) each aircraft as a type or a variant taking into account, where available, the relevant data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant aircraft type or variant; and

(2) variants of an aircraft type to be different types if they are not similar in the following aspects:

(i) emergency exit operation;

(ii) location and type of portable safety and emergency equipment;

(iii) type-specific emergency procedures.

AMC1 ORO.CC.250(b) Operation on more than one aircraft type or variant

DETERMINATION OF AIRCRAFT TYPES AND VARIANTS

(a) When determining similarity of location and type of portable safety and emergency equipment, the following factors should be assessed:

(1) all portable safety and emergency equipment is stowed in the same, or in exceptional circumstances, in substantially the same location;

(2) all portable safety and emergency equipment requires the same method of operation;

(3) portable safety and emergency equipment includes:

(i) fire-fighting equipment;

(ii) protective breathing equipment (PBE);

(iii) oxygen equipment;

(iv) crew life-jackets;

(v) torches;

(vi) megaphones;

(vii) first-aid equipment;

(viii) survival and signalling equipment; and

(ix) other safety and emergency equipment, where applicable.

(b) The type-specific emergency procedures to be considered should include at least the following:

(1) land and water evacuation;

(2) in-flight fire;

(3) non-pressurisation, slow and sudden decompression; and

(4) pilot incapacitation.

(c) When determining similarity of doors/exits in the absence of data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 for the relevant aircraft type(s) or variant(s), the following factors should be assessed, except for self-help exits, such as type III and type IV exits, that need not be included in the assessment:

(1) door/exit arming and disarming;

(2) direction of movement of the operating handle;

(3) direction of door/exit opening;

(4) power assist mechanisms; and

(5) assisting evacuation means.

GM1 ORO.CC.250 Operation on more than one aircraft type or variant

SAFETY BRIEFING FOR CABIN CREW

When changing aircraft type or variant during a series of flight sectors, the cabin crew safety briefing should include a representative sample of type-specific normal and emergency procedures and safety and emergency equipment applicable to the actual aircraft to be operated for the immediately subsequent flight sector.

ORO.CC.255 Single cabin crew member operations

(a) The operator shall select, recruit, train and check the proficiency of cabin crew members to be assigned to single cabin crew member operations according to criteria appropriate to this type of operation.

(b) Cabin crew members who have no previous operating experience as single cabin crew member shall only be assigned to such type of operation after they have:

(1) completed training as required in (c) in addition to other applicable training and checking required by this Subpart;

(2) successfully passed the checks verifying their proficiency in discharging their duties and responsibilities in accordance with the procedures specified in the operations manual; and

(3) undertaken familiarisation flying of at least 20 hours and 15 sectors on the relevant aircraft type under the supervision of an appropriately experienced cabin crew member.

(c) The following additional training elements shall be covered with particular emphasis to reflect single cabin crew operations:

(1) responsibility to the commander for the conduct of normal and emergency procedures;

(2) importance of coordination and communication with the flight crew, in particular when managing unruly or disruptive passengers;

(3) review of operator requirements and legal requirements;

(4) documentation;

(5) accident and incident reporting; and

(6) flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements.

SUBPART TC — TECHNICAL CREW IN HEMS, HHO OR NVIS OPERATIONS

ORO.TC.100 Scope

This Subpart establishes the requirements to be met by the operator when operating an aircraft with technical crew members in commercial air transport helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS), night vision imaging system (NVIS) operations or helicopter hoist operations (HHO).

ORO.TC.105 Conditions for assignment to duties

(a) Technical crew members in commercial air transport HEMS, HHO or NVIS operations shall only be assigned duties if they:

(1) are at least 18 years of age;

(2) are physically and mentally fit to safely discharge assigned duties and responsibilities;

(3) have completed all applicable training required by this Subpart to perform the assigned duties;

(4) have been checked as proficient to perform all assigned duties in accordance with the procedures specified in the operations manual.

(b) Before assigning to duties technical crew members who are self-employed and/or working on a freelance or part-time basis, the operator shall verify that all applicable requirements of this Subpart are complied with, taking into account all services rendered by the technical crew member to other operator(s) to determine in particular:

(1) the total number of aircraft types and variants operated;

(2) the applicable flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements.

GM1 ORO.TC.105 Conditions for assignment to duties

GENERAL

(a) The technical crew member in HEMS, HHO or NVIS operations should undergo an initial medical examination or assessment and, if applicable, a re-assessment before undertaking duties.

(b) Any medical assessment or re-assessment should be carried out according to best aero-medical practice by a medical practitioner who has sufficient detailed knowledge of the applicant's medical history.

(c) The operator should maintain a record of medical fitness for each technical crew member.

(d) Technical crew members should:

(1) be in good health;

(2) be free from any physical or mental illness that might lead to incapacitation or inability to perform crew duties;

(3) have normal cardio-respiratory function;

(4) have normal central nervous system;

(5) have adequate visual acuity 6/9 with or without glasses;

(6) have adequate hearing; and

(7) have normal function of ear, nose and throat.

ORO.TC.110 Training and checking

(a) The operator shall establish a training programme in accordance with the applicable requirements of this Subpart to cover the duties and responsibilities to be performed by technical crew members.

(b) Following the completion of initial, operator conversion, differences and recurrent training, each technical crew member shall undergo a check to demonstrate their proficiency in carrying out normal and emergency procedures.

(c) Training and checking shall be conducted for each training course by personnel suitably qualified and experienced in the subject to be covered. The operator shall inform the competent authority about the personnel conducting the checks.

AMC1 ORO.TC.110 Training and checking

GENERAL

(a) Elements of training that require individual practice may be combined with practical checks.

(b) The checks should be accomplished by the method appropriate to the type of training including:

(1) practical demonstration;

(2) computer-based assessment;

(3) in-flight checks; and/or

(4) oral or written tests.

ORO.TC.115 Initial training

Before undertaking the operator conversion training, each technical crew member shall complete initial training, including:

(a) general theoretical knowledge on aviation and aviation regulations covering all elements relevant to the duties and responsibilities required of technical crew;

(b) fire and smoke training;

(c) survival training on ground and in water, appropriate to the type and area of operation;

(d) aero-medical aspects and first-aid;

(e) communication and relevant CRM elements of ORO.FC.115 and ORO.FC.215.

AMC1 ORO.TC.115 Initial training

ELEMENTS

(a) The elements of initial training mentioned in ORO.TC.115 should include in particular:

(1) General theoretical knowledge on aviation and aviation regulations relevant to duties and responsibilities:

(i) the importance of crew members performing their duties in accordance with the operations manual;

(ii) continuing competence and fitness to operate as a crew member with special regard to flight and duty time limitations and rest requirements;

(iii) an awareness of the aviation regulations relating to crew members and the role of the competent and inspecting authority;

(iv) general knowledge of relevant aviation terminology, theory of flight, passenger distribution, meteorology and areas of operation;

(v) pre-flight briefing of the crew members and the provision of necessary safety information with regard to their specific duties;

(vi) the importance of ensuring that relevant documents and manuals are kept up-to-date with amendments provided by the operator;

(vii) the importance of identifying when crew members have the authority and responsibility to initiate an evacuation and other emergency procedures; and

(viii) the importance of safety duties and responsibilities and the need to respond promptly and effectively to emergency situations.

(2) Fire and smoke training:

(i) reactions to emergencies involving fire and smoke and identification of the fire sources;

(ii) the classification of fires and the appropriate type and techniques of application of extinguishing agents, the consequences of misapplication, and of use in a confined space; and

(iii) the general procedures of ground-based emergency services at aerodromes.

(3) When conducting extended overwater operations, water survival training, including the use of personal flotation equipment.

(4) Before first operating on an aircraft fitted with life-rafts or other similar equipment, training on the use of this equipment, including practice in water.

(5) Survival training appropriate to the areas of operation, (e.g. polar, desert, jungle, sea or mountain).

(6) Aero-medical aspects and first aid, including:

(i) instruction on first aid and the use of first-aid kits; and

(ii) the physiological effects of flying.

(7) Effective communication between technical crew members and flight crew members including common language and terminology.

(8) Relevant CRM elements of AMC1 and AMC1.1 ORO.FC.115&.215.

ORO.TC.120 Operator conversion training

Each technical crew member shall complete:

(a) operator conversion training, including relevant CRM elements,

(1) before being first assigned by the operator as a technical crew member; or

(2) when changing to a different aircraft type or class, if any of the equipment or procedures mentioned in (b) are different.

(b) Operator conversion training shall include:

(1) the location and use of all safety and survival equipment carried on the aircraft;

(2) all normal and emergency procedures;

(3) on-board equipment used to carry-out duties in the aircraft or on the ground for the purpose of assisting the pilot during HEMS, HHO or NVIS operations.

AMC1 ORO.TC.120&.125 Operator conversion training and differences training

ELEMENTS

(a) Operator conversion training mentioned in ORO.TC.120 (b) and differences training mentioned in ORO.TC.125 (a) should include the following:

(1) Fire and smoke training, including practical training in the use of all fire fighting equipment as well as protective clothing representative of that carried in the aircraft. Each technical crew member should:

(i) extinguish a fire characteristic of an aircraft interior fire except that, in the case of Halon extinguishers, an alternative extinguishing agent may be used; and

(ii) practise the donning and use of protective breathing equipment (when fitted) in an enclosed, simulated smoke-filled environment.

(2) Practical training on operating and opening all normal and emergency exits for passenger evacuation in an aircraft or representative training device and demonstration of the operation of all other exits.

(3) Evacuation procedures and other emergency situations, including:

(i) recognition of planned or unplanned evacuations on land or water – this training should include recognition of unusable exits or unserviceable evacuation equipment;

(ii) in-flight fire and identification of fire source; and

(iii) other in-flight emergencies.

(4) When the flight crew is more than one, training on assisting if a pilot becomes incapacitated, including a demonstration of:

(i) the pilot's seat mechanism;

(ii) fastening and unfastening the pilot's seat restraint system;

(iii) use of the pilot's oxygen equipment, when applicable; and

(iv) use of pilots' checklists.

(5) Training on, and demonstration of, the location and use of safety equipment including the following:

(i) life-rafts, including the equipment attached to, and/or carried in, the raft, where applicable;

(ii) life-jackets, infant life-jackets and flotation devices, where applicable;

(iii) fire extinguishers;

(iv) crash axe or crow bar;

(v) emergency lights including portable lights;

(vi) communication equipment, including megaphones;

(vii) survival packs, including their contents;

(viii) pyrotechnics (actual or representative devices);

(ix) first-aid kits, their contents and emergency medical equipment; and

(x) other safety equipment or systems, where applicable.

(6) Training on passenger briefing/safety demonstrations and preparation of passengers for normal and emergency situations.

(7) Training on the use of dangerous goods, if applicable.

(8) Task-specific training.

AMC2 ORO.TC.120&.125 Operator conversion training and differences training

GENERAL

(a) The operator should determine the content of the conversion or differences training taking account of the technical crew member's previous training as documented in the technical crew member's training records.

(b) Aircraft conversion or differences training should be conducted according to a syllabus and include the use of relevant equipment and emergency procedures and practice on a representative training device or on the actual aircraft.

(c) The operator should specify in the operations manual the maximum number of types or variants that can be operated by a technical crew member.

ORO.TC.125 Differences training

(a) Each technical crew member shall complete differences training when changing equipment or procedures on types or variants currently operated.

(b) The operator shall specify in the operations manual when such differences training is required.

ORO.TC.130 Familiarisation flights

Following completion of the operator conversion training, each technical crew member shall undertake familiarisation flights prior to operating as a required technical crew member in HEMS, HHO or NVIS operations.

ORO.TC.135 Recurrent training

(a) Within every 12 month period, each technical crew member shall undergo recurrent training relevant to the type or class of aircraft and equipment that the technical crew member operates. Elements of CRM shall be integrated into all appropriate phases of the recurrent training.

(b) Recurrent training shall include theoretical and practical instruction and practice.

AMC1 ORO.TC.135 Recurrent training

ELEMENTS

(a) The 12-month period mentioned in ORO.TC.135 (a) should be counted from the last day of the month when the first checking was made. Further training and checking should be undertaken within the last 3 calendar months of that period. The new 12-month period should be counted from the original expiry date.

(b) The recurrent practical training should include every year:

(1) emergency procedures including pilot incapacitation;

(2) evacuation procedures;

(3) touch-drills by each technical crew member for opening normal and emergency exits for (passenger) evacuation;

(4) the location and handling of emergency equipment and the donning by each technical crew member of life-jackets and protective breathing equipment (PBE), when applicable;

(5) first aid and the contents of the first-aid kit(s);

(6) stowage of articles in the cabin;

(7) use of dangerous goods, if applicable;

(8) incident and accident review; and

(9) crew resource management: all major topics of the initial CRM training should be covered over a period not exceeding 3 years.

(c) Recurrent training should include every 3 years:

(1) practical training on operating and opening all normal and emergency exits for passenger evacuation in an aircraft or representative training device and demonstration of the operation of all other exits;

(2) practical training in the use of all fire fighting equipment as well as protective clothing representative of that carried in the aircraft. Each technical crew member should:

(i) extinguish a fire characteristic of an aircraft interior fire except that, in the case of Halon extinguishers, an alternative extinguishing agent may be used; and

(ii) practise the donning and use of protective breathing equipment (when fitted) in an enclosed, simulated smoke-filled environment;

(3) use of pyrotechnics (actual or representative devices); and

(4) demonstration of the use of the life-raft, where fitted.

ORO.TC.140 Refresher training

(a) Each technical crew member who has not undertaken duties in the previous 6 months shall complete the refresher training specified in the operations manual.

(b) The technical crew member who has not performed flying duties on one particular aircraft type or class during the preceding 6 months shall, before being assigned on that type or class, complete either:

(1) refresher training on the type or class; or

(2) two familiarisation sectors on the aircraft type or class.

AMC1 ORO.TC.140 Refresher training

ELEMENTS

(a) Refresher training may include familiarisation flights.

(b) Refresher training should include at least the following:

(1) emergency procedures, including pilot incapacitation;

(2) evacuation procedures;

(3) practical training on operating and opening all normal and emergency exits for passenger evacuation in an aircraft or representative training device and demonstration of the operation of all other exits; and

(4) the location and handling of emergency equipment, and the donning of life-jackets and protective breathing equipment, when applicable.

European Aviation Safety Agency

CONSOLIDATED DOCUMENT OF ANNEX IV – COMMERCIAL AIR TRANSPORT OPERATIONS – PART-CAT

Implementing Rule, Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material

First edition: May 2013

Contents

ANNEX IV — [PART-CAT] — SUBPART A — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS....................................13
CAT.GEN.100 Competent authority 13
CAT.GEN.MPA.100 Crew responsibilities 14
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.100(b) Crew responsibilities 15
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.100(c)(1) Crew responsibilities 15
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.100(c)(2) Crew responsibilities 16
CAT.GEN.MPA.105 Responsibilities of the commander 17
CAT.GEN.MPA.110 Authority of the commander 18
CAT.GEN.MPA.115 Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew in the passenger compartment........... 18
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.115(a) Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew in the passenger compartment 19
CAT.GEN.MPA.120 Common language 20
CAT.GEN.MPA.125 Taxiing of aeroplanes.. 20
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.125 Taxiing of aeroplanes 21
CAT.GEN.MPA.130 Rotor engagement — helicopters 22
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.130 Rotor engagement – helicopters 23
CAT.GEN.MPA.135 Admission to the flight crew compartment 24
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.135(a)(3) Admission to the flight crew compartment............................ 25
CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices 26
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices 27
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices 29
GM2 CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices 29
CAT.GEN.MPA.145 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried 30
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.145 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried.............. 31
CAT.GEN.MPA.150 Ditching — aeroplanes 32
CAT.GEN.MPA.155 Carriage of weapons of war and munitions of war..................................... 32
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.155 Carriage of weapons of war and munitions of war............................. 33
CAT.GEN.MPA.160 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition 34
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.160 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition.................................. 35
CAT.GEN.MPA.161 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition — alleviations.................... 36
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.161 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition – alleviations............ 37
CAT.GEN.MPA.165 Method of carriage of persons... 38
CAT.GEN.MPA.170 Alcohol and drugs.. 38
CAT.GEN.MPA.175 Endangering safety 38
CAT.GEN.MPA.180 Documents, manuals and information to be carried 38
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180 Documents, manuals and information to be carried 40
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(1) Documents, manuals and information to be carried 41
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(5) Documents, manuals and information to be carried 41
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(9) Documents, manuals and information to be carried 41
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(13) Documents, manuals and information to be carried 42
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(14) Documents, manuals and information to be carried 43
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(23) Documents, manuals and information to be carried 43
CAT.GEN.MPA.185 Information to be retained on the ground.. 44
CAT.GEN.MPA.190 Provision of documentation and records 44
CAT.GEN.MPA.195 Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings 44
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.195(a) Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings........ 45
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.195(b) Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings 46
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.195(b) Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings 47
CAT.GEN.MPA.200 Transport of dangerous goods 48
AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.200(e) Transport of dangerous goods 49
GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.200 Transport of dangerous goods 52

SUBPART B — OPERATING PROCEDURES 53
CAT.OP.MPA.100 Use of air traffic services.. 53
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.100(a)(2) Use of air traffic services 54
CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites.. 55

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites ... 56
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites ... 56
CAT.OP.MPA.106 Use of isolated aerodromes — aeroplanes ... 61
CAT.OP.MPA.107 Adequate aerodrome ... 61
CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 61
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 62
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 63
AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 64
AMC4 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 65
AMC5 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 66
AMC6 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 69
AMC7 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 70
AMC8 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 73
AMC9 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 73
AMC10 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 73
AMC11 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 74
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 76
GM2 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 76
GM3 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima ... 77
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.110(a) Aerodrome operating minima ... 77
CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique — aeroplanes ... 78
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes ... 79
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes ... 81
AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes ... 81
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes ... 83
CAT.OP.MPA.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations — helicopters ... 85
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations – helicopters ... 86
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations – helicopters ... 87
CAT.OP.MPA.125 Instrument departure and approach procedures ... 91
CAT.OP.MPA.130 Noise abatement procedures — aeroplanes ... 91
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.130 Noise abatement procedures – aeroplanes ... 92
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.130 Noise abatement procedures – aeroplanes ... 93
CAT.OP.MPA.131 Noise abatement procedures — helicopters ... 94
CAT.OP.MPA.135 Routes and areas of operation — general ... 94
CAT.OP.MPA.136 Routes and areas of operation — single-engined aeroplanes ... 94
CAT.OP.MPA.137 Routes and areas of operation — helicopters ... 94
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.137(b) Routes and areas of operation – helicopters ... 95
CAT.OP.MPA.140 Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval ... 97
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.140(c) Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval ... 98
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.140(c) Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval ... 102
CAT.OP.MPA.145 Establishment of minimum flight altitudes ... 103
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes ... 104
AMC1.1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes ... 104
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes ... 105
CAT.OP.MPA.150 Fuel policy ... 108
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy ... 109
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy ... 112
AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy ... 112
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy ... 114
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(c)(3)(i) Fuel policy ... 114
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(c)(3)(ii) Fuel policy ... 114
CAT.OP.MPA.151 Fuel policy — alleviations ... 115
CAT.OP.MPA.155 Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs) ... 115
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.155(b) Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs) ... 116
CAT.OP.MPA.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo ... 117

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo 118
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo 118
CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating 119
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating 120
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating 120
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating 121
CAT.OP.MPA.170 Passenger briefing 122
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.170 Passenger briefing 123
AMC1.1 CAT.OP.MPA.170 Passenger briefing 124
CAT.OP.MPA.175 Flight preparation 125
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.175(a) Flight preparation 126
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.175(b)(5) Flight preparation 127
CAT.OP.MPA.180 Selection of aerodromes — aeroplanes 128
CAT.OP.MPA.181 Selection of aerodromes and operating sites — helicopters 128
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.181(b)(1) Selection of aerodromes and operating sites – helicopters 130
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.181 Selection of aerodromes and operating sites – helicopters 131
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.181(d) Selection of aerodromes and operating sites – helicopters 132
CAT.OP.MPA.185 Planning minima for IFR flights — aeroplanes 134
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.185 Planning minima for IFR flights – aeroplanes 135
GM2 CAT.OP.MPA.185 Planning minima for IFR flights – aeroplanes 135
CAT.OP.MPA.186 Planning minima for IFR flights — helicopters 137
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.186 Planning minima for IFR flights – helicopters 138
CAT.OP.MPA.190 Submission of the ATS flight plan 139
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.190 Submission of the ATS flight plan 140
CAT.OP.MPA.195 Refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking 141
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.195 Refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking 142
CAT.OP.MPA.200 Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel 143
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.200 Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel 144
CAT.OP.MPA.205 Push back and towing — aeroplanes 145
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.205 Push back and towing – aeroplanes 146
CAT.OP.MPA.210 Crew members at stations 147
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.210(b) Crew members at stations 148
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.210 Crew members at stations 149
CAT.OP.MPA.215 Use of headset — aeroplanes 150
CAT.OP.MPA.216 Use of headset — helicopters 150
CAT.OP.MPA.220 Assisting means for emergency evacuation 150
CAT.OP.MPA.225 Seats, safety belts and restraint systems 150
CAT.OP.MPA.230 Securing of passenger compartment and galley(s) 151
CAT.OP.MPA.235 Life-jackets — helicopters 151
CAT.OP.MPA.240 Smoking on board 151
CAT.OP.MPA.245 Meteorological conditions — all aircraft 151
CAT.OP.MPA.246 Meteorological conditions — aeroplanes 152
CAT.OP.MPA.247 Meteorological conditions — helicopters 152
CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants — ground procedures 152
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures 153
GM2 CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures 154
GM3 CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures 157
CAT.OP.MPA.255 Ice and other contaminants — flight procedures 159
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures 160
AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures 161
CAT.OP.MPA.260 Fuel and oil supply 162
CAT.OP.MPA.265 Take-off conditions 162
CAT.OP.MPA.270 Minimum flight altitudes 162
CAT.OP.MPA.275 Simulated abnormal situations in flight 162
CAT.OP.MPA.280 In-flight fuel management — aeroplanes 162
CAT.OP.MPA.281 In-flight fuel management — helicopters 163
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.281 In-flight fuel management – helicopters 164
CAT.OP.MPA.285 Use of supplemental oxygen 165

CAT.OP.MPA.290 Ground proximity detection 165
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.290 Ground proximity detection 166
CAT.OP.MPA.295 Use of airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) 172
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.295 Use of airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) 173
CAT.OP.MPA.300 Approach and landing conditions 181
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.300 Approach and landing conditions 182
CAT.OP.MPA.305 Commencement and continuation of approach 183
AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.305(e) Commencement and continuation of approach 184
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.305(f) Commencement and continuation of approach 186
CAT.OP.MPA.310 Operating procedures — threshold crossing height — aeroplanes 187
CAT.OP.MPA.315 Flight hours reporting — helicopters 187
GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.315 Flight hours reporting – helicopters 188
CAT.OP.MPA.320 Aircraft categories 189

SUBPART C — AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE AND OPERATING LIMITATIONS 190

CAT.POL.A.100 Performance classes 190
CAT.POL.A.105 General 190
CAT.POL.A.200 General 191
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.200 General 192
CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off 193
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off 194
GM1 CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off 196
CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance 197
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance 198
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance 198
AMC3 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance 199
GM1 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance 200
CAT.POL.A.215 En-route — one-engine-inoperative (OEI) 201
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.215 En-route – one-engine-inoperative (OEI) 202
CAT.POL.A.220 En-route — aeroplanes with three or more engines, two engines inoperative 203
CAT.POL.A.225 Landing — destination and alternate aerodromes 203
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes 204
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes 204
GM1 CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes 205
CAT.POL.A.230 Landing — dry runways 206
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.230 Landing – dry runways 207
GM1 CAT.POL.A.230 Landing – dry runways 208
CAT.POL.A.235 Landing — wet and contaminated runways 209
CAT.POL.A.240 Approval of operations with increased bank angles 209
CAT.POL.A.245 Approval of steep approach operations 210
CAT.POL.A.250 Approval of short landing operations 210
CAT.POL.A.300 General 211
CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off 211
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off 212
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off 212
GM1 CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off 213
CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance — multi-engined aeroplanes 214
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes 215
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes 216
GM1 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes 217
GM2 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes 217
CAT.POL.A.315 En-route — multi-engined aeroplanes 220
GM1 CAT.POL.A.315 En-route – multi-engined aeroplanes 221
CAT.POL.A.320 En-route — single-engined aeroplanes 222
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.320 En-route – single-engined aeroplanes 223
GM1 CAT.POL.A.320 En-route – single-engined aeroplanes 224
CAT.POL.A.325 Landing — destination and alternate aerodromes 225
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.325 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes 226
CAT.POL.A.330 Landing — dry runways 227

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways ... 228
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways ... 228
GM1 CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways ... 229
CAT.POL.A.335 Landing — wet and contaminated runways ... 230
GM1 CAT.POL.A.335 Landing – wet and contaminated runways ... 231
CAT.POL.A.340 Take-off and landing climb requirements ... 232
CAT.POL.A.345 Approval of steep approach operations ... 233
CAT.POL.A.350 Approval of short landing operations ... 233
CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off ... 234
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off ... 235
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off ... 236
GM1 CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off ... 237
CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance ... 238
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance ... 239
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance ... 239
CAT.POL.A.410 En-route — all engines operating ... 240
CAT.POL.A.415 En-route — OEI ... 240
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.415 En-route – OEI ... 241
CAT.POL.A.420 En-route — aeroplanes with three or more engines, two engines inoperative ... 242
CAT.POL.A.425 Landing — destination and alternate aerodromes ... 242
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.425 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes ... 243
CAT.POL.A.430 Landing — dry runways ... 244
AMC1 CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways ... 245
AMC2 CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways ... 245
GM1 CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways ... 246
CAT.POL.A.435 Landing — wet and contaminated runways ... 247
CAT.POL.H.100 Applicability ... 248
CAT.POL.H.105 General ... 248
GM1 CAT.POL.H.105(c)(3)(ii)(A) General ... 250
CAT.POL.H.110 Obstacle accountability ... 251
GM1 CAT.POL.H.110(a)(2)(i) Obstacle accountability ... 252
CAT.POL.H.200 General ... 253
GM1 CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400 General ... 254
CAT.POL.H.205 Take-off ... 255
AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) Take-off ... 256
GM1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) Take-off ... 257
AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(e) Take-off ... 260
AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing ... 261
GM1 CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing ... 262
CAT.POL.H.210 Take-off flight path ... 263
CAT.POL.H.215 En-route — critical engine inoperative ... 263
GM1 CAT.POL.H.215(b)(3) En-route – critical engine inoperative ... 264
CAT.POL.H.220 Landing ... 265
CAT.POL.H.225 Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site ... 265
AMC1 CAT.POL.H.225(a)(5) Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site ... 266
GM1 CAT.POL.H.225 Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site ... 267
GM1 CAT.POL.H.225(a)(6) Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site ... 268
GM to Section 2, Chapter 3 performance class 2 ... 269
CAT.POL.H.300 General ... 281
CAT.POL.H.305 Operations without an assured safe forced landing capability ... 281
AMC1 CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability ... 282
AMC2 CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability ... 284
GM1 CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability ... 286
CAT.POL.H.310 Take-off ... 287
GM1 CAT.POL.H.310&CAT.POL.H.325 Take-off and landing ... 288
GM1 CAT.POL.H.310(c)&CAT.POL.H.325(c) Take-off and landing ... 292
CAT.POL.H.315 Take-off flight path ... 295
CAT.POL.H.320 En-route — critical engine inoperative ... 295

CAT.POL.H.325 Landing.. 295
CAT.POL.H.400 General 296
GM1 CAT.POL.H.400(c) General.. 297
CAT.POL.H.405 Take-off 298
CAT.POL.H.410 En-route 298
CAT.POL.H.415 Landing.. 298
CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area 298
AMC1 CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area. 299
GM1 CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area... 300
GM2 CAT.POL.H.420(a) Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area301
CAT.POL.MAB.100 Mass and balance, loading 302
AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading.. 303
AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading.. 304
AMC3 CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading 305
AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and balance, loading.. 305
AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and balance, loading.. 306
AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading.. 306
AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading.. 309
GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading... 311
GM2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and Balance, Loading 311
GM3 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading... 316
GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(g) Mass and balance, loading... 318
GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(i) Mass and balance, loading.. 318
CAT.POL.MAB.105 Mass and balance data and documentation 319
AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(a) Mass and balance data and documentation 320
AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(b) Mass and balance data and documentation... 320
AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(c) Mass and balance data and documentation 320
AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.105(c) Mass and balance data and documentation 320
GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(e) Mass and balance data and documentation.. 321
GM2 CAT.POL.MAB.105(e) Mass and balance data and documentation.. 321

SUBPART D — INSTRUMENT, DATA, EQUIPMENT 322
CAT.IDE.A.100 Instruments and equipment — general.. 322
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.100(b) Instruments and equipment – general.. 323
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.100(d) Instruments and equipment – general 323
CAT.IDE.A.105 Minimum equipment for flight 324
CAT.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses 324
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses 325
CAT.IDE.A.115 Operating lights... 326
CAT.IDE.A.120 Equipment to clear windshield 326
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.120 Equipment to clear windshield 327
CAT.IDE.A.125 Operations under VFR by day — flight and navigational instruments
and associated equipment 328
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR
or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 329
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.125 Operations under VFR by day – flight and navigational instruments and associated
equipment 329
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(i)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(1) Operations under VFR by day & Operations
under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 329
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(ii)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(2) Operations under VFR by day & Operations
under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 329
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(iii)&CAT.IDE.A.130(b) Operations under VFR by day & Operations
under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 330
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(iv)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(3) Operations under VFR by day & Operations
under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 330
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(ix)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(8) Operations under VFR by day & operations
under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 330
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(b)&CAT.IDE.A.130(h) Operations under VFR by day & Operations
under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 330

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(c)&CAT.IDE.A.130(d) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 330
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 331
CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under IFR or at night — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 333
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(5) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 335
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.130(b) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 335
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(e) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 335
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(i)(5) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 335
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(j) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment 336
CAT.IDE.A.135 Additional equipment for single-pilot operation under IFR 337
CAT.IDE.A.140 Altitude alerting system 337
CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS) 337
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS) 338
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS) 339
CAT.IDE.A.155 Airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) 340
CAT.IDE.A.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment 340
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment 341
CAT.IDE.A.165 Additional equipment for operations in icing conditions at night 342
CAT.IDE.A.170 Flight crew interphone system 342
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.170 Flight crew interphone system 343
CAT.IDE.A.175 Crew member interphone system 344
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.175 Crew member interphone system 345
CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system 346
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system 347
CAT.IDE.A.185 Cockpit voice recorder 348
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.185 Cockpit voice recorder 349
CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 350
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 351
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 356
AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 359
AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 365
AMC5 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 367
AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 370
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder 372
CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording 373
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording 374
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording 376
CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder 378
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder 379
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder 380
CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices 381
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices 382
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices 383
AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices 383
CAT.IDE.A.210 Fasten seat belt and no smoking signs 384
CAT.IDE.A.215 Internal doors and curtains 384
CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit 384
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit 385
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit 386
CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit 387
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit 388

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit ... 389
AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit ... 389
AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit ... 389
CAT.IDE.A.230 First-aid oxygen ... 390
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.230 First-aid oxygen ... 391
CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen — pressurised aeroplanes ... 392
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes ... 394
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes ... 394
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.235(e) Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes ... 394
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.235(b)(1) Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes ... 395
CAT.IDE.A.240 Supplemental oxygen — non-pressurised aeroplanes ... 396
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.240 Supplemental oxygen – non-pressurised aeroplanes ... 397
CAT.IDE.A.245 Crew protective breathing equipment ... 398
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.245 Crew protective breathing equipment ... 399
CAT.IDE.A.250 Hand fire extinguishers ... 400
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.250 Hand fire extinguishers ... 401
CAT.IDE.A.255 Crash axe and crowbar ... 402
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.255 Crash axe and crowbar ... 403
CAT.IDE.A.260 Marking of break-in points ... 404
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.260 Marking of break-in points ... 405
CAT.IDE.A.265 Means for emergency evacuation ... 406
CAT.IDE.A.270 Megaphones ... 406
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.270 Megaphones ... 407
CAT.IDE.A.275 Emergency lighting and marking ... 408
CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) ... 408
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) ... 409
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) ... 409
CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water ... 410
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water ... 411
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.285(e)(4)&CAT.IDE.A.305(a)(2) Flight over water & Survival equipment ... 411
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.285(a) Flight over water ... 411
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.285(a) Flight over water ... 411
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.285(a) Flight over water ... 412
CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment ... 413
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment ... 414
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.305(b)(2) Survival equipment ... 414
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment ... 415
GM2 CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment ... 415
CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset ... 416
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset ... 417
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset ... 418
CAT.IDE.A.330 Radio communication equipment ... 419
CAT.IDE.A.335 Audio selector panel ... 419
CAT.IDE.A.340 Radio equipment for operations under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 419
CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 419
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 420
AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 420
AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 421
AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 421
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.345(c) Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 422

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 422
CAT.IDE.A.350 Transponder ... 423
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.350 Transponder ... 424
CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management ... 425
AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management ... 426
GM1 CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management ... 427
CAT.IDE.H.100 Instruments and equipment — general ... 428
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.100(b) Instruments and equipment – general ... 429
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.100(d) Instruments and equipment – general ... 429
CAT.IDE.H.105 Minimum equipment for flight ... 430
CAT.IDE.H.115 Operating lights ... 430
CAT.IDE.H.125 Operations under VFR by day — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 431
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment and ... 432
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(i)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(1) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 432
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(ii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(2) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 432
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(iii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(b) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 432
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(iv)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(43) Operations under VFR by day& Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 432
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(vii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(8) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 433
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(b)&CAT.IDE.H.130(h) Operations under VFR by day &Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment and ... 433
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(c)(2)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(7) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 433
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(d)&CAT.IDE.H.130(d) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 433
CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under IFR or at night — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 434
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.130(e) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 436
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.130(f)(6) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 436
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.130(i) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 436
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment ... 437
CAT.IDE.H.135 Additional equipment for single-pilot operation under IFR ... 438
CAT.IDE.H.145 Radio altimeters ... 438
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.145 Radio altimeters ... 439
CAT.IDE.H.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment ... 440
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment ... 441
CAT.IDE.H.165 Additional equipment for operations in icing conditions at night ... 442
CAT.IDE.H.170 Flight crew interphone system ... 442
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.170 Flight crew interphone system ... 443
CAT.IDE.H.175 Crew member interphone system ... 444
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.175 Crew member interphone system ... 445
CAT.IDE.H.180 Public address system ... 446
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.180 Public address system ... 447
CAT.IDE.H.185 Cockpit voice recorder ... 448
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.185 Cockpit voice recorder ... 449
CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder ... 450
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder ... 451

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder ... 455
AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder ... 458
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder ... 466
CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording ... 467
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording ... 468
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording ... 470
CAT.IDE.H.200 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder ... 472
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.200 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder ... 473
CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices ... 474
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices ... 475
AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices ... 476
AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices ... 476
CAT.IDE.H.210 Fasten seat belt and no smoking signs ... 477
CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits ... 477
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits ... 478
AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits ... 479
CAT.IDE.H.240 Supplemental oxygen — non-pressurised helicopters ... 480
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.240 Supplemental oxygen – non-pressurised helicopters ... 481
CAT.IDE.H.250 Hand fire extinguishers ... 482
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.250 Hand fire extinguishers ... 483
CAT.IDE.H.260 Marking of break-in points ... 484
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.260 Marking of break-in points ... 485
CAT.IDE.H.270 Megaphones ... 486
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.270 Megaphones ... 487
CAT.IDE.H.275 Emergency lighting and marking ... 488
CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) ... 488
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) ... 489
AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT) ... 489
CAT.IDE.H.290 Life-jackets ... 490
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.290(a) Life-jackets ... 491
AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.290(c) Life-jackets ... 491
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.290 Life-jackets ... 492
CAT.IDE.H.295 Crew survival suits ... 493
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.295 Crew survival suits ... 494
CAT.IDE.H.300 Life-rafts, survival ELTs and survival equipment on extended overwater flights ... 496
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.300 Life-rafts, survival ELTs and survival equipment on extended overwater flights ... 497
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.300(b)(3)&CAT.IDE.H.305(b) Flight over water & Survival equipment ... 497
CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment ... 498
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment ... 499
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment ... 500
GM2 CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment ... 500
CAT.IDE.H.310 Additional requirements for helicopters conducting offshore operations in a hostile sea area ... 501
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.310 Additional requirements for helicopters operating to or from helidecks located in a hostile sea area ... 502
CAT.IDE.H.315 Helicopters certified for operating on water — miscellaneous equipment ... 503
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.315 Helicopters certificated for operating on water – Miscellaneous equipment ... 504
CAT.IDE.H.320 All helicopters on flights over water — ditching ... 505
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.320(b) All helicopters on flight over water – ditching ... 506
CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset ... 507
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset ... 508
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset ... 509
CAT.IDE.H.330 Radio communication equipment ... 510
CAT.IDE.H.335 Audio selector panel ... 510
CAT.IDE.H.340 Radio equipment for operations under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 510
CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks ... 510

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks 511
AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks 511
AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks 511
GM1 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks 512
CAT.IDE.H.350 Transponder 513
AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.350 Transponder 514

ANNEX IV
COMMERCIAL TRANSPORT
AIR OPERATIONS
[PART-CAT]

SUBPART A — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

CAT.GEN.100 Competent authority

The competent authority shall be the authority designated by the Member State in which the operator has its principal place of business.

Section 1 — Motor-powered aircraft

CAT.GEN.MPA.100 Crew responsibilities

(a) The crew member shall be responsible for the proper execution of his/her duties that are:

(1) related to the safety of the aircraft and its occupants; and

(2) specified in the instructions and procedures in the operations manual.

(b) The crew member shall:

(1) report to the commander any fault, failure, malfunction or defect which the crew member believes may affect the airworthiness or safe operation of the aircraft including emergency systems, if not already reported by another crew member;

(2) report to the commander any incident that endangered, or could have endangered, the safety of the operation, if not already reported by another crew member;

(3) comply with the relevant requirements of the operator's occurrence reporting schemes;

(4) comply with all flight and duty time limitations (FTL) and rest requirements applicable to their activities;

(5) when undertaking duties for more than one operator:

(i) maintain his/her individual records regarding flight and duty times and rest periods as referred to in applicable FTL requirements; and

(ii) provide each operator with the data needed to schedule activities in accordance with the applicable FTL requirements.

(c) The crew member shall not perform duties on an aircraft:

(1) when under the influence of psychoactive substances or alcohol or when unfit due to injury, fatigue, medication, sickness or other similar causes;

(2) until a reasonable time period has elapsed after deep water diving or following blood donation;

(3) if applicable medical requirements are not fulfilled;

(4) if he/she is in any doubt of being able to accomplish his/her assigned duties; or

(5) if he/she knows or suspects that he/she is suffering from fatigue as referred to in 7.f. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 or feels otherwise unfit, to the extent that the flight may be endangered.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.100(b) Crew responsibilities

COPIES OF REPORTS

Where a written report is required, a copy of the report should be communicated to the commander concerned, unless the terms of the operator's reporting schemes prevent this.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.100(c)(1) Crew responsibilities

ALCOHOL CONSUMPTION

The operator should issue instructions concerning the consumption of alcohol by crew members. The instructions should be not less restrictive than the following:

(a) no alcohol should be consumed less than 8 hours prior to the specified reporting time for a flight duty period or the commencement of standby;

(b) the blood alcohol level should not exceed the lower of the national requirements or 0.2 per thousand at the start of a flight duty period;

(c) no alcohol should be consumed during the flight duty period or whilst on standby.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.100(c)(2) Crew responsibilities

ELAPSED TIME BEFORE RETURNING TO FLYING DUTY

24 hours is a suitable minimum length of time to allow after normal blood donation or normal recreational (sport) diving before returning to flying duties. This should be considered by operators when determining a reasonable time period for the guidance of crew members.

PART-MED

Information on the effects of medication, drugs, other treatments and alcohol can be found in Annex IV (Part-MED) to Regulation (EU) No 1178/2011[22].

[22] OJ L 311, 25.11.2011, p. 1.

CAT.GEN.MPA.105 Responsibilities of the commander

(a) The commander, in addition to complying with CAT.GEN.MPA.100, shall:

(1) be responsible for the safety of all crew members, passengers and cargo on board, as soon as the commander arrives on board the aircraft, until the commander leaves the aircraft at the end of the flight;

(2) be responsible for the operation and safety of the aircraft:

(i) for aeroplanes, from the moment the aeroplane is first ready to move for the purpose of taxiing prior to take-off, until the moment it finally comes to rest at the end of the flight and the engine(s) used as primary propulsion unit(s) is(are) shut down;

(ii) for helicopters, when the rotors are turning;

(3) have authority to give all commands and take any appropriate actions for the purpose of securing the safety of the aircraft and of persons and/or property carried therein in accordance with 7.c. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008;

(4) have authority to disembark any person, or any part of the cargo, that may represent a potential hazard to the safety of the aircraft or its occupants;

(5) not allow a person to be carried in the aircraft who appears to be under the influence of alcohol or drugs to the extent that the safety of the aircraft or its occupants is likely to be endangered;

(6) have the right to refuse transportation of inadmissible passengers, deportees or persons in custody if their carriage increases the risk to the safety of the aircraft or its occupants;

(7) ensure that all passengers are briefed on the location of emergency exits and the location and use of relevant safety and emergency equipment;

(8) ensure that all operational procedures and checklists are complied with in accordance with the operations manual;

(9) not permit any crew member to perform any activity during critical phases of flight, except duties required for the safe operation of the aircraft;

(10) ensure that flight recorders:

(i) are not disabled or switched off during flight; and

(ii) in the event of an accident or an incident that is subject to mandatory reporting:

(A) are not intentionally erased;

(B) are deactivated immediately after the flight is completed; and

(C) are reactivated only with the agreement of the investigating authority;

(11) decide on acceptance of the aircraft with unserviceabilities in accordance with the configuration deviation list (CDL) or the minimum equipment list (MEL);

(12) ensure that the pre-flight inspection has been carried out in accordance with the requirements of Annex I (Part-M) to Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003;

(13) be satisfied that relevant emergency equipment remains easily accessible for immediate use.

(b) The commander, or the pilot to whom conduct of the flight has been delegated, shall, in an emergency situation that requires immediate decision and action, take any action he/she considers necessary under the circumstances in accordance with 7.d. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008. In such cases he/she may deviate from rules, operational procedures and methods in the interest of safety.

(c) Whenever an aircraft in flight has manoeuvred in response to an airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) resolution advisory (RA), the commander shall submit an ACAS report to the competent authority.

(d) Bird hazards and strikes:

(1) Whenever a potential bird hazard is observed, the commander shall inform the air traffic service (ATS) unit as soon as flight crew workload allows.

(2) Whenever an aircraft for which the commander is responsible suffers a bird strike that results in significant damage to the aircraft or the loss or malfunction of any essential service, the commander shall submit a written bird strike report after landing to the competent authority.

CAT.GEN.MPA.110 Authority of the commander

The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that all persons carried in the aircraft obey all lawful commands given by the commander for the purpose of securing the safety of the aircraft and of persons or property carried therein.

CAT.GEN.MPA.115 Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew in the passenger compartment

The operator shall ensure that personnel or crew members, other than operating cabin crew members, carrying out their duties in the passenger compartment of an aircraft:

(a) are not confused by the passengers with operating cabin crew members;

(b) do not occupy required cabin crew assigned stations;

(c) do not impede operating cabin crew members in their duties.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.115(a) Personnel or crew members other than cabin crew in the passenger compartment

MEASURES TO PREVENT CONFUSION BY PASSENGERS

If personnel or crew members other than operating cabin crew members carry out duties in a passenger compartment, the operator should ensure that they do not perform tasks or wear a uniform in such a way that might lead passengers to identify them as members of the operating cabin crew.

CAT.GEN.MPA.120 Common language

The operator shall ensure that all crew members can communicate with each other in a common language.

CAT.GEN.MPA.125 Taxiing of aeroplanes

The operator shall ensure that an aeroplane is only taxied on the movement area of an aerodrome if the person at the controls:

(a) is an appropriately qualified pilot; or

(b) has been designated by the operator and:

 (1) is trained to taxi the aircraft;

 (2) is trained to use the radio telephone;

 (3) has received instruction in respect of aerodrome layout, routes, signs, marking, lights, air traffic control (ATC) signals and instructions, phraseology and procedures;

 (4) is able to conform to the operational standards required for safe aeroplane movement at the aerodrome.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.125 Taxiing of aeroplanes

SKILLS AND KNOWLEDGE

The following skills and knowledge may be assessed to check if a person can be authorised by the operator to taxi an aeroplane:

(a) positioning of the aeroplane to ensure safety when starting engine;

(b) obtaining automatic terminal information service (ATIS) reports and taxi clearance, where applicable;

(c) interpretation of airfield markings/lights/signals/indicators;

(d) interpretation of marshalling signals, where applicable;

(e) identification of suitable parking area;

(f) maintaining lookout and right-of-way rules and complying with air traffic control (ATC) or marshalling instructions when applicable;

(g) avoidance of adverse effect of propeller slipstream or jet wash on other aeroplanes, aerodrome facilities and personnel;

(h) inspection of taxi path when surface conditions are obscured;

(i) communication with others when controlling an aeroplane on the ground;

(j) interpretation of operational instructions;

(k) reporting of any problem that may occur while taxiing an aeroplane; and

(l) adapting the taxi speed in accordance with prevailing aerodrome, traffic, surface and weather conditions.

CAT.GEN.MPA.130 Rotor engagement — helicopters

A helicopter rotor shall only be turned under power for the purpose of flight with a qualified pilot at the controls.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.130 Rotor engagement – helicopters

INTENT OF THE RULE

(a) The following two situations where it is allowed to turn the rotor under power should be distinguished:

(1) for the purpose of flight, this is described in the Implementing Rule;

(2) for maintenance purposes.

(b) Rotor engagement for the purpose of flight: the pilot should not leave the control when the rotors are turning. For example, the pilot is not allowed to get out of the aircraft in order to welcome passengers and adjust their seat belts with the rotors turning.

(c) Rotor engagement for the purpose of maintenance: the Implementing Rule, however, does not prevent ground runs being conducted by qualified personnel other than pilots for maintenance purposes.

The following conditions should be applied:

(1) the operator should ensure that the qualification of personnel, other than pilots, who are authorised to conduct maintenance runs is described in the appropriate manual;

(2) ground runs should not include taxiing the helicopter;

(3) there should be no passengers on board; and

(4) maintenance runs should not include collective increase or autopilot engagement (due to the risk of ground resonance).

CAT.GEN.MPA.135 Admission to the flight crew compartment

(a) The operator shall ensure that no person, other than a flight crew member assigned to a flight, is admitted to, or carried in, the flight crew compartment unless that person is:

(1) an operating crew member;

(2) a representative of the competent or inspecting authority, if required to be there for the performance of his/her official duties; or

(3) permitted by and carried in accordance with instructions contained in the operations manual.

(b) The commander shall ensure that:

(1) admission to the flight crew compartment does not cause distraction or interference with the operation of the flight; and

(2) all persons carried in the flight crew compartment are made familiar with the relevant safety procedures.

(c) The commander shall make the final decision regarding the admission to the flight crew compartment.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.135(a)(3) Admission to the flight crew compartment

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SINGLE-PILOT OPERATIONS UNDER VFR BY DAY

Where an aircraft is used in a single-pilot operation under visual flight rules (VFR) by day but has more than one pilot station, the instructions of the operator may permit passengers to be carried in the unoccupied pilot seat(s), provided that the commander is satisfied that:

(a) it will not cause distraction or interference with the operation of the flight; and

(b) the passenger occupying a pilot seat is familiar with the relevant restrictions and safety procedures.

CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices

The operator shall not permit any person to use a portable electronic device (PED) on board an aircraft that could adversely affect the performance of the aircraft's systems and equipment, and shall take all reasonable measures to prevent such use.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices

GENERAL

(a) Scope

This AMC provides means to prevent that portable electronic devices (PEDs) on board aircraft adversely affect the performance of the aircraft's systems and equipment. This AMC addresses operation of PEDs in the different aircraft zones – passenger compartment, flight compartment, and cargo compartments. Furthermore, it addresses the specific case of PEDs qualified and under configuration control by the operator – controlled PEDs (C-PEDs) – for which the operator gives some credit.

(b) Restrictions on the use of PEDs in the passenger compartment

If an operator permits passengers to use PEDs on board its aircraft, procedures should be in place to control their use. The operator should ensure that all crew members and ground personnel are trained to enforce the restrictions on this equipment in line with these procedures.

These procedures should ensure the following:

(1) As the general principle all PEDs (including transmitting PEDs (T-PEDs)) are switched-off at the start of the flight when the passengers have boarded and all doors have been closed, until a passenger door has been opened at the end of the flight.

(2) The following exceptions from the general principle may be granted under the responsibility of the operator:

(i) Medical equipment necessary to support physiological functions does not need to be switched-off.

(ii) The use of PEDs, excluding T-PEDs, may be permitted during non-critical phases of flight, excluding taxiing.

(iii) T-PEDs may be used during non-critical phases of flight, excluding taxiing, if the aircraft is equipped with a system or otherwise certified allowing the operation of such technology during flight. The restrictions coming from the corresponding aircraft certification as documented in the aircraft flight manual (AFM), or equivalent document(s), stay in force.

(iv) The use of C-PEDs during critical phases of flight, however, may only be permitted if the operator has accounted for this situation in its assessment.

(v) The commander may permit the use of any kind of PED when the aircraft is stationary during prolonged departure delays, provided that sufficient time is available to check the passenger compartment before the flight proceeds. Similarly, after landing, the commander may authorise the use of any kind of PED in the event of a prolonged delay for a parking/gate position (even though doors are closed and the engines are running).

(3) Announcements should be made both prior to and during boarding of the aircraft to inform passengers of the restrictions applicable to PEDs (in particular to T-PEDs) before fastening their seat belts.

(4) Where in-seat electrical power supplies are available for passenger use the following should apply:

(i) information cards giving safety instructions are provided to the passengers;

(ii) PEDs should be disconnected from any in-seat electrical power supply, switched-off and stowed during taxiing, take-off, approach, landing, and during abnormal or emergency conditions; and

(iii) flight crew and cabin crew should be aware of the proper means to switch-off in-seat power supplies used for PEDs.

(5) During boarding and any phase of flight:

(i) appropriate coordination between flight crew and cabin crew is defined to deal with interference or other safety problems associated with PEDs;

(ii) passenger use of equipment during the flight is monitored;

(iii) suspect equipment is switched off; and

(iv) particular attention is given to passenger misuse of equipment that could include a built-in transmitting function.

(6) Thermal runaways of batteries, in particular lithium batteries, and potential resulting fire can be handled properly.

(7) Appropriate coordination between flight crew and cabin crew should be defined to deal with interference or other safety problems associated with PEDs.

(8) The commander may for any reason and during any phase of flight require deactivation and stowage of PEDs.

(9) Occurrences of suspected or confirmed interference that have potential safety implications should be reported to the competent authority. Where possible, to assist follow-up and technical investigation, reports should describe the offending device, identify the brand name and model number, its location in the aircraft at the time of the occurrence, interference symptoms and the results of actions taken by the crew.

The cooperation of the device owner should be sought by obtaining contact details.

(10) Special requests to operate a PED or T-PED during any phase of the flight for specific reasons (e.g. for security measures) should be handled properly.

(c) Restrictions on the use of PEDs in the flight compartment

Due to the higher risk of interference and potential for distracting crew from their duties, PEDs should not be used in the flight compartment. However, the operator may allow the use of PEDs, e.g. to assist the flight crew in their duties, if procedures are in place to ensure the following:

(1) The conditions for the use of PEDs in-flight are specified in the operations manual, otherwise they should be switched off and stowed during all phases of flight.

(2) The PEDs do not pose a loose-item risk or other hazard.

(3) During critical phases of flight only those C-PEDs are operated, for which the operator has demonstrated that the radio frequency (RF) interference levels are below those considered acceptable for the specific aircraft environment. Guidance for such test is provided in (e) below.

(4) During pre-flight procedures, e.g. when loading route information into navigation systems or when monitoring fuel loading, no T-PED should be operated. In all other cases, flight crew and other persons on board the aircraft involved in dispatching the aircraft should observe the same restrictions as applicable to passengers.

(5) These restrictions should not preclude use of a T-PED (specifically a mobile phone) by the flight crew to deal with an emergency. However, reliance should not be predicated on a T-PED for this purpose.

(d) PEDs not accessible during the flight

PEDs should be switched off, when not accessible for deactivation during flight. This should apply especially to PEDs contained in baggage or transported as part of the cargo. The operator may allow deviation for PEDs for which tests have demonstrated their safe operation. Other precautions, such as transporting in shielded, metal boxes, may also be used to mitigate associated risks.

In case an automated function is used to deactivate a T-PED, the unit should be qualified for safe operation on board the aircraft.

(e) Test methods

The means to demonstrate that the RF radiations (intentional or non-intentional) are tolerated by aircraft systems should be as follows:

(1) The radio frequency (RF) emissions of PEDs should meet the levels as defined by EUROCAE ED-14E/RTCA DO 160E Section 21 Category M for operation in the passenger compartment and EUROCAE ED-14E/RTCA DO 160E Section 21 Category H for operation in the cargo bay. Later revisions of those documents may be used for testing. The assessment of intentional transmissions of T-PEDs is excluded from those test standards and needs to be addressed separately.

(2) When the operator intends to allow the operation of T-PEDs, its assessment should follow the principles set out in EUROCAE ED-130.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices

DEFINITIONS

(a) Definition and categories of PEDs

PEDs are any kind of electronic device, typically but not limited to consumer electronics, brought on board the aircraft by crew members, passengers, or as part of the cargo and that are not included in the approved aircraft configuration. All equipment that is able to consume electrical energy falls under this definition. The electrical energy can be provided from internal sources as batteries (chargeable or non-rechargeable) or the devices may also be connected to specific aircraft power sources.

PEDs fall into three categories:

(1) Non-intentional transmitters can non-intentionally radiate RF transmissions. This category includes, but is not limited to, computing equipment, cameras, radio receivers, audio and video reproducers, electronic games and toys. In addition, portable, non-transmitting devices provided to assist crew members in their duties are included in this category. The category is identified as PED.

(2) Intentional transmitters can radiate RF transmissions on specific frequencies as part of their intended function. In addition they may radiate non-intentional transmissions like any PED. The term 'transmitting PED' (T-PED) is used to identify the transmitting capability of the PED. Intentional transmitters are transmitting devices such as RF based remote control equipment, which may include some toys, two-way radios (sometimes referred to as private mobile radio), mobile phones of any type, satellite phones, computer with mobile phone data connection, wireless fidelity (WIFI) or Bluetooth capability. After deactivation of the transmitting capability, e.g. by activating the so-called 'flight mode' or 'flight safety mode', the T-PED remains a PED having non-intentional emissions.

(3) A controlled PED (C-PED) is subject to administrative control by the operator. This will include, inter alia, tracking the location of the devices to specific aircraft or persons and ensuring that no unauthorised changes are made to the hardware, software or databases. A controlled PED will also be subject to procedures to ensure that it is maintained to the latest amendment state. C-PEDs can be assigned to the category of non-intentional transmitters (PEDs) or intentional transmitters (T-PEDs).

(b) Definition of the switched-off status

Many PEDs are not completely disconnected from the internal power source when switched off. The switching function may leave some remaining functionality e.g. data storage, timer, clock, etc. These devices can be considered switched off when in the deactivated status. The same applies for devices having no transmit capability and operated by coin cells without further deactivation capability, e.g. wrist watches.

GM2 CAT.GEN.MPA.140 Portable electronic devices

FIRE CAUSED BY PEDS

A detailed discussion of fire caused by PEDs can be found in CAA UK CAP 789 edition 2, chapter 31, section 6 Fires in the cabin caused by PEDs[23] and CAA PAPER 2003/4, Dealing With In-Flight Lithium Battery Fires in Portable Electronic Devices, M.J. Lain, D.A. Teagle, J. Cullen, V. Dass[24].

[23] http://www.caa.co.uk/docs/33/CAP%20789.pdf.
[24] http://www.caa.co.uk/docs/33/CAPAP2003_04.PDF.

CAT.GEN.MPA.145 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried

The operator shall at all times have available for immediate communication to rescue coordination centres (RCCs) lists containing information on the emergency and survival equipment carried on board any of their aircraft.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.145 Information on emergency and survival equipment carried

ITEMS FOR COMMUNICATION TO THE RESCUE COORDINATION CENTRE

The information, compiled in a list, should include, as applicable, the number, colour and type of life-rafts and pyrotechnics, details of emergency medical supplies, e.g. first-aid kits, emergency medical kits, water supplies and the type and frequencies of emergency portable radio equipment.

CAT.GEN.MPA.150 Ditching — aeroplanes

The operator shall only operate an aeroplane with a passenger seating configuration of more than 30 on over-water flights at a distance from land suitable for making an emergency landing, greater than 120 minutes at cruising speed, or 400 NM, whichever is less, if the aeroplane complies with the ditching provisions prescribed in the applicable airworthiness code.

CAT.GEN.MPA.155 Carriage of weapons of war and munitions of war

(a) The operator shall only transport weapons of war or munitions of war by air if an approval to do so has been granted by all States whose airspace is intended to be used for the flight.

(b) Where an approval has been granted, the operator shall ensure that weapons of war and munitions of war are:

(1) stowed in the aircraft in a place that is inaccessible to passengers during flight; and

(2) in the case of firearms, unloaded.

(c) The operator shall ensure that, before a flight begins, the commander is notified of the details and location on board the aircraft of any weapons of war and munitions of war intended to be carried.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.155 Carriage of weapons of war and munitions of war

WEAPONS OF WAR AND MUNITIONS OF WAR

(a) There is no internationally agreed definition of weapons of war and munitions of war. Some States may have defined them for their particular purposes or for national need.

(b) It is the responsibility of the operator to check, with the State(s) concerned, whether or not a particular weapon or munition is regarded as a weapon of war or munitions of war. In this context, States that may be concerned with granting approvals for the carriage of weapons of war or munitions of war are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the consignment and the State of the operator.

(c) Where weapons of war or munitions of war are also dangerous goods by definition (e.g. torpedoes, bombs, etc.), CAT.GEN.MPA.200 Transport of dangerous goods also applies.

CAT.GEN.MPA.160 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition

(a) The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that any sporting weapons intended to be carried by air are reported to the operator.

(b) The operator accepting the carriage of sporting weapons shall ensure that they are:

(1) stowed in the aircraft in a place that is inaccessible to passengers during flight; and

(2) in the case of firearms or other weapons that can contain ammunition, unloaded.

(c) Ammunition for sporting weapons may be carried in passengers' checked baggage, subject to certain limitations, in accordance with the Technical Instructions.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.160 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition

SPORTING WEAPONS

(a) There is no internationally agreed definition of sporting weapons. In general it may be any weapon that is not a weapon of war or munitions of war. Sporting weapons include hunting knives, bows and other similar articles. An antique weapon, which at one time may have been a weapon of war or munitions of war, such as a musket, may now be regarded as a sporting weapon.

(b) A firearm is any gun, rifle or pistol that fires a projectile.

(c) The following firearms are generally regarded as being sporting weapons:

(1) those designed for shooting game, birds and other animals;

(2) those used for target shooting, clay-pigeon shooting and competition shooting, providing the weapons are not those on standard issue to military forces; and

(3) airguns, dart guns, starting pistols, etc.

(d) A firearm, which is not a weapon of war or munitions of war, should be treated as a sporting weapon for the purposes of its carriage on an aircraft.

CAT.GEN.MPA.161 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition — alleviations

Notwithstanding CAT.GEN.MPA.160 (b), for helicopters with a maximum certified take-off mass (MCTOM) of 3 175 kg or less operated by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks, a sporting weapon may be carried in a place that is accessible during flight, provided that the operator has established appropriate procedures and it is impracticable to stow it in an inaccessible stowage during flight.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.161 Carriage of sporting weapons and ammunition – alleviations

SPORTING WEAPONS − HELICOPTERS

Procedures for the carriage of sporting weapons may need to be considered if the helicopter does not have a separate compartment in which the weapons can be stowed. These procedures should take into account the nature of the flight, its origin and destination, and the possibility of unlawful interference. As far as possible, the weapons should be stowed so they are not immediately accessible to the passengers, e.g. in locked boxes, in checked baggage that is stowed under other baggage or under fixed netting.

CAT.GEN.MPA.165 Method of carriage of persons

The operator shall take all measures to ensure that no person is in any part of an aircraft in flight that is not designed for the accommodation of persons unless temporary access has been granted by the commander:

(a) for the purpose of taking action necessary for the safety of the aircraft or of any person, animal or goods therein; or

(b) to a part of the aircraft in which cargo or supplies are carried, being a part that is designed to enable a person to have access thereto while the aircraft is in flight.

CAT.GEN.MPA.170 Alcohol and drugs

The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that no person enters or is in an aircraft when under the influence of alcohol or drugs to the extent that the safety of the aircraft or its occupants is likely to be endangered.

CAT.GEN.MPA.175 Endangering safety

The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that no person recklessly or negligently acts or omits to act so as to:

(a) endanger an aircraft or person therein; or

(b) cause or permit an aircraft to endanger any person or property.

CAT.GEN.MPA.180 Documents, manuals and information to be carried

(a) The following documents, manuals and information shall be carried on each flight, as originals or copies unless otherwise specified:

(1) the aircraft flight manual (AFM), or equivalent document(s);

(2) the original certificate of registration;

(3) the original certificate of airworthiness (CofA);

(4) the noise certificate, including an English translation, where one has been provided by the authority responsible for issuing the noise certificate;

(5) a certified true copy of the air operator certificate (AOC);

(6) the operations specifications relevant to the aircraft type, issued with the AOC;

(7) the original aircraft radio licence, if applicable;

(8) the third party liability insurance certificate(s);

(9) the journey log, or equivalent, for the aircraft;

(10) the aircraft technical log, in accordance with Annex I (Part-M) to Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003;

(11) details of the filed ATS flight plan, if applicable;

(12) current and suitable aeronautical charts for the route of the proposed flight and all routes along which it is reasonable to expect that the flight may be diverted;

(13) procedures and visual signals information for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft;

(14) information concerning search and rescue services for the area of the intended flight, which shall be easily accessible in the flight crew compartment;

(15) the current parts of the operations manual that are relevant to the duties of the crew members, which shall be easily accessible to the crew members;

(16) the MEL;

(17) appropriate notices to airmen (NOTAMs) and aeronautical information service (AIS) briefing documentation;

(18) appropriate meteorological information;

(19) cargo and/or passenger manifests, if applicable;

(20) mass and balance documentation;

(21) the operational flight plan, if applicable;

(22) notification of special categories of passenger (SCPs) and special loads, if applicable; and

(23) any other documentation that may be pertinent to the flight or is required by the States concerned with the flight.

(b) Notwithstanding (a), for operations under visual flight rules (VFR) by day with other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft taking off and landing at the same aerodrome or operating site within 24 hours, or remaining within a local area specified in the operations manual, the following documents and information may be retained at the aerodrome or operating site instead:

(1) noise certificate;

(2) aircraft radio licence;

(3) journey log, or equivalent;

(4) aircraft technical log;

(5) NOTAMs and AIS briefing documentation;

(6) meteorological information;

(7) notification of SCPs and special loads, if applicable; and

(8) mass and balance documentation.

(c) Notwithstanding (a), in case of loss or theft of documents specified in (a)(2) to (a)(8), the operation may continue until the flight reaches its destination or a place where replacement documents can be provided.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180 Documents, manuals and information to be carried

GENERAL

The documents, manuals and information may be available in a form other than on printed paper. An electronic storage medium is acceptable if accessibility, usability and reliability can be assured.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(1) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

AIRCRAFT FLIGHT MANUAL OR EQUIVALENT DOCUMENT(S)

'Aircraft flight manual, or equivalent document(s)' means in the context of this rule the flight manual for the aircraft, or other documents containing information required for the operation of the aircraft within the terms of its certificate of airworthiness, unless these data are available in the parts of the operations manual carried on board.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(5) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

THE AIR OPERATOR CERTIFICATE

Certified true copies may be provided:

(a) directly by the competent authority; or

(b) by persons holding privileges for certification of official documents in accordance with applicable Member State's legislation, e.g., public notaries, authorised officials in public services.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(9) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

JOURNEY LOG OR EQUIVALENT

'Journey log, or equivalent' means in this context that the required information may be recorded in documentation other than a log book, such as the operational flight plan or the aircraft technical log.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(13) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

PROCEDURES AND VISUAL SIGNALS FOR USE BY INTERCEPTING AND INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT

The procedures and the visual signals for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft should reflect those contained in the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) Annex 2. This may be part of the operations manual.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(14) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

SEARCH AND RESCUE INFORMATION

This information is usually found in the State's aeronautical information publication.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.180(a)(23) Documents, manuals and information to be carried

DOCUMENTS THAT MAY BE PERTINENT TO THE FLIGHT

Any other documents that may be pertinent to the flight or required by the States concerned with the flight may include, for example, forms to comply with reporting requirements.

STATES CONCERNED WITH THE FLIGHT

The States concerned are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the flight.

CAT.GEN.MPA.185 Information to be retained on the ground

(a) The operator shall ensure that at least for the duration of each flight or series of flights:

(1) information relevant to the flight and appropriate for the type of operation is preserved on the ground;

(2) the information is retained until it has been duplicated at the place at which it will be stored; or, if this is impracticable

(3) the same information is carried in a fireproof container in the aircraft.

(b) The information referred to in (a) includes:

(1) a copy of the operational flight plan, where appropriate;

(2) copies of the relevant part(s) of the aircraft technical log;

(3) route-specific NOTAM documentation if specifically edited by the operator;

(4) mass and balance documentation if required; and

(5) special loads notification.

CAT.GEN.MPA.190 Provision of documentation and records

The commander shall, within a reasonable time of being requested to do so by a person authorised by an authority, provide to that person the documentation required to be carried on board.

CAT.GEN.MPA.195 Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings

(a) Following an accident or an incident that is subject to mandatory reporting, the operator of an aircraft shall preserve the original recorded data for a period of 60 days unless otherwise directed by the investigating authority.

(b) The operator shall conduct operational checks and evaluations of flight data recorder (FDR) recordings, cockpit voice recorder (CVR) recordings and data link recordings to ensure the continued serviceability of the recorders.

(c) The operator shall save the recordings for the period of operating time of the FDR as required by CAT.IDE.A.190 or CAT.IDE.H.190, except that, for the purpose of testing and maintaining the FDR, up to 1 hour of the oldest recorded material at the time of testing may be erased.

(d) The operator shall keep and maintain up-to-date documentation that presents the necessary information to convert FDR raw data into parameters expressed in engineering units.

(e) The operator shall make available any flight recorder recording that has been preserved, if so determined by the competent authority.

(f) Without prejudice to Regulation (EU) No 996/2010:

(1) CVR recordings shall only be used for purposes other than for the investigation of an accident or an incident subject to mandatory reporting, if all crew members and maintenance personnel concerned consent.

(2) FDR recordings or data link recordings shall only be used for purposes other than for the investigation of an accident or an incident which is subject to mandatory reporting, if such records are:

(i) used by the operator for airworthiness or maintenance purposes only; or

(ii) de-identified; or

(iii) disclosed under secure procedures.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.195(a) Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings

REMOVAL OF RECORDERS AFTER A REPORTABLE OCCURRENCE

The need for removal of the recorders from the aircraft is determined by the investigating authority with due regard to the seriousness of an occurrence and the circumstances, including the impact on the operation.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.195(b) Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings

OPERATIONAL CHECKS

Whenever a recorder is required to be carried, the operator should:

(a) perform an annual inspection of FDR recording and CVR recording , unless one or more of the following applies:

(1) Where two solid-state FDRs both fitted with internal built-in-test equipment sufficient to monitor reception and recording of data share the same acquisition unit, a comprehensive recording inspection need only be performed for one FDR. For the second FDR, checking its internal built-in-test equipment is sufficient. The inspection should be performed alternately such that each FDR is inspected once every other year.

(2) Where the following conditions are met, the FDR recording inspection is not needed:

(i) the aircraft flight data are collected in the frame of a flight data monitoring (FDM) programme;

(ii) the data acquisition of mandatory flight parameters is the same for the FDR and for the recorder used for the FDM programme;

(iii) the integrity of all mandatory flight parameters is verified by the FDM programme; and

(iv) the FDR is solid-state and is fitted with an internal built-in-test equipment sufficient to monitor reception and recording of data.

(3) Where two solid-state CVRs are both fitted with internal built-in-test equipment sufficient to monitor reception and recording of data, a comprehensive recording inspection need only to be performed for one CVR. For the second CVR, checking its internal built-in-test equipment is sufficient. The inspection should be performed alternately such that each CVR is inspected once every other year.

(b) perform every 5 years an inspection of the data link recording.

(c) check every 5 years, or in accordance with the recommendations of the sensor manufacturer, that the parameters dedicated to the FDR and not monitored by other means are being recorded within the calibration tolerances and that there is no discrepancy in the engineering conversion routines for these parameters.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.195(b) Preservation, production and use of flight recorder recordings

INSPECTION OF THE FLIGHT RECORDERS RECORDING

(a) The inspection of the FDR recording usually consists of the following:

(1) Making a copy of the complete recording file.

(2) Examining a whole flight in engineering units to evaluate the validity of all mandatory parameters – this could reveal defects or noise in the measuring and processing chains and indicate necessary maintenance actions. The following should be considered:

(i) when applicable, each parameter should be expressed in engineering units and checked for different values of its operational range – for this purpose, some parameters may need to be inspected at different flight phases; and

(ii) if the parameter is delivered by a digital data bus and the same data are utilised for the operation of the aircraft, then a reasonableness check may be sufficient; otherwise a correlation check may need to be performed;

(A) a reasonableness check is understood in this context as a subjective, qualitative evaluation, requiring technical judgement, of the recordings from a complete flight; and

(B) a correlation check is understood in this context as the process of comparing data recorded by the flight data recorder against the corresponding data derived from flight instruments, indicators or the expected values obtained during specified portion(s) of a flight profile or during ground checks that are conducted for that purpose.

(3) Retaining the most recent copy of the complete recording file and the corresponding recording inspection report.

(b) The inspection of the CVR recording usually consists of:

(1) checking that the CVR operates correctly for the nominal duration of the recording;

(2) examining, where practicable and subject to prior approval by the flight crew, a sample of in-flight recording of the CVR for evidence that the signal is acceptable on each channel; and

(3) preparing and retaining an inspection report.

(c) The inspection of the DLR recording usually consists of:

(1) Checking the consistency of the data link recording with other recordings for example, during a designated flight, the flight crew speaks out a few data link messages sent and received. After the flight, the data link recording and the CVR recording are compared for consistency.

(2) Retaining the most recent copy of the complete recording and the corresponding inspection report.

CAT.GEN.MPA.200 Transport of dangerous goods

(a) Unless otherwise permitted by this Annex, the transport of dangerous goods by air shall be conducted in accordance with Annex 18 to the Chicago Convention as last amended and amplified by the Technical Instructions for the Safe Transport of Dangerous Goods by Air (ICAO Doc 9284-AN/905), including its supplements and any other addenda or corrigenda.

(b) Dangerous goods shall only be transported by an operator approved in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA), Subpart G, except when:

(1) they are not subject to the Technical Instructions in accordance with Part 1 of those Instructions; or

(2) they are carried by passengers or crew members, or are in baggage, in accordance with Part 8 of the Technical Instructions.

(c) An operator shall establish procedures to ensure that all reasonable measures are taken to prevent dangerous goods from being carried on board inadvertently.

(d) The operator shall provide personnel with the necessary information enabling them to carry out their responsibilities, as required by the Technical Instructions.

(e) The operator shall, in accordance with the Technical Instructions, report without delay to the competent authority and the appropriate authority of the State of occurrence in the event of:

(1) any dangerous goods accidents or incidents;

(2) the discovery of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods in cargo or mail; or

(3) the finding of dangerous goods carried by passengers or crew members, or in their baggage, when not in accordance with Part 8 of the Technical Instructions.

(f) The operator shall ensure that passengers are provided with information about dangerous goods in accordance with the Technical Instructions.

(g) The operator shall ensure that notices giving information about the transport of dangerous goods are provided at acceptance points for cargo as required by the Technical Instructions.

AMC1 CAT.GEN.MPA.200(e) Transport of dangerous goods

DANGEROUS GOODS ACCIDENT AND INCIDENT REPORTING

(a) Any type of dangerous goods accident or incident, or the finding of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods should be reported, irrespective of whether the dangerous goods are contained in cargo, mail, passengers' baggage or crew baggage. For the purposes of the reporting of undeclared and misdeclared dangerous goods found in cargo, the Technical Instructions considers this to include items of operators' stores that are classified as dangerous goods.

(b) The first report should be dispatched within 72 hours of the event. It may be sent by any means, including e-mail, telephone or fax. This report should include the details that are known at that time, under the headings identified in (c). If necessary, a subsequent report should be made as soon as possible giving all the details that were not known at the time the first report was sent. If a report has been made verbally, written confirmation should be sent as soon as possible.

(c) The first and any subsequent report should be as precise as possible and should contain the following data, where relevant:

(1) date of the incident or accident or the finding of undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods;

(2) location, the flight number and flight date;

(3) description of the goods and the reference number of the air waybill, pouch, baggage tag, ticket, etc.;

(4) proper shipping name (including the technical name, if appropriate) and UN/ID number, when known;

(5) class or division and any subsidiary risk;

(6) type of packaging, and the packaging specification marking on it;

(7) quantity;

(8) name and address of the shipper, passenger, etc.;

(9) any other relevant details;

(10) suspected cause of the incident or accident;

(11) action taken;

(12) any other reporting action taken; and

(13) name, title, address and telephone number of the person making the report.

(d) Copies of relevant documents and any photographs taken should be attached to the report.

(e) A dangerous goods accident or incident may also constitute an aircraft accident, serious incident or incident. Reports should be made for both types of occurrences when the criteria for each are met.

(f) The following dangerous goods reporting form should be used, but other forms, including electronic transfer of data, may be used provided that at least the minimum information of this AMC is supplied:

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3">DANGEROUS GOODS OCCURRENCE REPORT</td><td colspan="2">DGOR No:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">1. Operator:</td><td colspan="1">2. Date of Occurrence:</td><td colspan="2">3. Local time of occurrence:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">4. Flight date:</td><td colspan="3">5. Flight No:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">6. Departure aerodrome:</td><td colspan="3">7. Destination aerodrome:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">8. Aircraft type:</td><td colspan="3">9. Aircraft registration:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">10. Location of occurrence:</td><td colspan="3">11. Origin of the goods:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">12. Description of the occurrence, including details of injury, damage, etc.
(if necessary continue on the reverse of this form):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">13. Proper shipping name (including the technical name):</td><td>14. UN/ID No (when known):</td></tr>
<tr><td>15.Class/Division (when known):</td><td>16. Subsidiary risk(s):</td><td colspan="2">17. Packing group:</td><td>18 Category (Class 7 only):</td></tr>
<tr><td>19. Type of packaging:</td><td>20.Packaging specification marking:</td><td colspan="2">21. No of packages:</td><td>22. Quantity (or transport index, if applicable):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">23. Reference No of Airway Bill:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">24. Reference No of courier pouch, baggage tag, or passenger ticket:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">25. Name and address of shipper, agent, passenger, etc.:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">26. Other relevant information (including suspected cause, any action taken):</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">27. Name and title of person making report:</td><td colspan="3">28. Telephone No:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">29. Company:</td><td colspan="3">30. Reporters ref:</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">DANGEROUS GOODS OCCURRENCE REPORT</th><th>DGOR No:</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">31. Address:</td><td colspan="2">32. Signature:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">33. Date:</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Description of the occurrence (continuation)</td></tr>
</table>

Notes for completion of the form:

1. A dangerous goods accident is as defined in Annex I. For this purpose serious injury is as defined in Regulation (EU) No 996/2010 of the European Parliament and of the Council[25].
2. This form should also be used to report any occasion when undeclared or misdeclared dangerous goods are discovered in cargo, mail or unaccompanied baggage or when accompanied baggage contains dangerous goods which passengers or crew are not permitted to take on aircraft.
3. The initial report should be dispatched unless exceptional circumstances prevent this. This occurrence report form, duly completed, should be sent as soon as possible, even if all the information is not available.
4. Copies of all relevant documents and any photographs should be attached to this report.
5. Any further information, or any information not included in the initial report, should be sent as soon as possible to authorities identified in CAT.GEN.MPA.200 (e).
6. Providing it is safe to do so, all dangerous goods, packaging, documents, etc., relating to the occurrence should be retained until after the initial report has been sent to the authorities identified in CAT.GEN.MPA.200 (e) and they have indicated whether or not these should continue to be retained.

[25] OJ L 295, 12.11.2010, p. 35.

GM1 CAT.GEN.MPA.200 Transport of dangerous goods

GENERAL

(a) The requirement to transport dangerous goods by air in accordance with the Technical Instructions is irrespective of whether:

(1) the flight is wholly or partly within or wholly outside the territory of a state; or

(2) an approval to carry dangerous goods in accordance with Annex V (Part SPA), Subpart G is held.

(b) The Technical Instructions provide that in certain circumstances dangerous goods, which are normally forbidden on an aircraft, may be carried. These circumstances include cases of extreme urgency or when other forms of transport are inappropriate or when full compliance with the prescribed requirements is contrary to the public interest. In these circumstances all the States concerned may grant exemptions from the provisions of the Technical Instructions provided that an overall level of safety which is at least equivalent to that provided by the Technical Instructions is achieved. Although exemptions are most likely to be granted for the carriage of dangerous goods that are not permitted in normal circumstances, they may also be granted in other circumstances, such as when the packaging to be used is not provided for by the appropriate packing method or the quantity in the packaging is greater than that permitted. The Technical Instructions also make provision for some dangerous goods to be carried when an approval has been granted only by the State of Origin and the State of the Operator.

(c) When an exemption is required, the States concerned are those of origin, transit, overflight and destination of the consignment and that of the operator. For the State of overflight, if none of the criteria for granting an exemption are relevant, an exemption may be granted based solely on whether it is believed that an equivalent level of safety in air transport has been achieved.

(d) The Technical Instructions provide that exemptions and approvals are granted by the 'appropriate national authority', which is intended to be the authority responsible for the particular aspect against which the exemption or approval is being sought. The Instructions do not specify who should seek exemptions and, depending on the legislation of the particular State, this may mean the operator, the shipper or an agent. If an exemption or approval has been granted to other than the operator, the operator should ensure a copy has been obtained before the relevant flight. The operator should ensure all relevant conditions on an exemption or approval are met.

(e) The exemption or approval referred to in (b) to (d) is in addition to the approval required by Annex V (Part SPA), Subpart G.

SUBPART B — OPERATING PROCEDURES

Section 1 — Motor-powered aircraft

CAT.OP.MPA.100 Use of air traffic services

(a) The operator shall ensure that:

(1) air traffic services (ATS) appropriate to the airspace and the applicable rules of the air are used for all flights whenever available;

(2) in-flight operational instructions involving a change to the ATS flight plan, when practicable, are coordinated with the appropriate ATS unit before transmission to an aircraft.

(b) Notwithstanding (a), the use of ATS is not required unless mandated by air space requirements for:

(1) operations under VFR by day of other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes;

(2) helicopters with an MCTOM of 3 175 kg or less operated by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks; or

(3) local helicopter operations, provided that search and rescue service arrangements can be maintained.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.100(a)(2) Use of air traffic services

IN-FLIGHT OPERATIONAL INSTRUCTIONS

When coordination with an appropriate air traffic service (ATS) unit has not been possible, in-flight operational instructions do not relieve a commander of responsibility for obtaining an appropriate clearance from an ATS unit, if applicable, before making a change in flight plan.

CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

(a) The operator shall only use aerodromes and operating sites that are adequate for the type(s) of aircraft and operation(s) concerned.

(b) The use of operating sites shall only apply to:

(1) other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes; and

(2) helicopters.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

DEFINING OPERATING SITES − HELICOPTERS

When defining operating sites (including infrequent or temporary sites) for the type(s) of helicopter(s) and operation(s) concerned, the operator should take account of the following:

(a) An adequate site is a site that the operator considers to be satisfactory, taking account of the applicable performance requirements and site characteristics (guidance on standards and criteria are contained in ICAO Annex 14 Volume 2 and in the ICAO Heliport Manual (Doc 9261-AN/903)).

(b) The operator should have in place a procedure for the survey of sites by a competent person. Such a procedure should take account for possible changes to the site characteristics which may have taken place since last surveyed.

(c) Sites that are pre-surveyed should be specifically specified in the operations manual. The operations manual should contain diagrams or/and ground and aerial photographs, and depiction (pictorial) and description of:

(1) the overall dimensions of the site;

(2) location and height of relevant obstacles to approach and take-off profiles, and in the manoeuvring area;

(3) approach and take-off flight paths;

(4) surface condition (blowing dust/snow/sand);

(5) helicopter types authorised with reference to performance requirements;

(6) provision of control of third parties on the ground (if applicable);

(7) procedure for activating site with land owner or controlling authority;

(8) other useful information, for example appropriate ATS agency and frequency; and

(9) lighting (if applicable).

(d) For sites that are not pre-surveyed, the operator should have in place a procedure that enables the pilot to make, from the air, a judgment on the suitability of a site. (c)(1) to (c)(6) should be considered.

(e) Operations to non-pre-surveyed sites by night (except in accordance with SPA.HEMS.125 (b)(4)) should not be permitted.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.105 Use of aerodromes and operating sites

HELIDECK

(a) The content of Part C of the operations manual relating to the specific usage of helidecks should contain both the listing of helideck limitations in a helideck limitations list (HLL) and a pictorial representation (template) of each helideck showing all necessary information of a permanent nature. The HLL should show, and be amended as necessary to indicate, the most recent status of each helideck concerning non-compliance with ICAO Annex 14 Volume 2, limitations, warnings, cautions or other comments of operational importance. An example of a typical template is shown in Figure 1 below.

(b) In order to ensure that the safety of flights is not compromised, the operator should obtain relevant information and details for compilation of the HLL, and the pictorial representation, from the owner/operator of the helideck.

(c) When listing helidecks, if more than one name of the helideck exists, the most common name should be used and other names should also be included. After renaming a helideck, the old name should be included in the HLL for the ensuing 6 months.

(d) All helideck limitations should be included in the HLL. Helidecks without limitations should also be listed. With complex installations and combinations of installations (e.g. co-locations), a separate listing in the HLL, accompanied by diagrams where necessary, may be required.

(e) Each helideck should be assessed based on limitations, warnings, cautions or comments to determine its acceptability with respect to the following that, as a minimum, should cover the factors listed below:

(1) The physical characteristics of the helideck.

(2) The preservation of obstacle-protected surfaces is the most basic safeguard for all flights. These surfaces are:

(i) the minimum 210° obstacle-free surface (OFS);

(ii) the 150° limited obstacle surface (LOS); and

(iii) the minimum 180° falling '5:1' – gradient with respect to significant obstacles. If this is infringed or if an adjacent installation or vessel infringes the obstacle clearance surfaces or criteria related to a helideck, an assessment should be made to determine any possible negative effect that may lead to operating restrictions.

(3) Marking and lighting:

(i) adequate perimeter lighting;

(ii) adequate floodlighting;

(iii) status lights (for night and day operations e.g. signalling lamp);

(iv) dominant obstacle paint schemes and lighting;

(v) helideck markings; and

(vi) general installation lighting levels. Any limitations in this respect should be annotated 'day-light only operations' on the HLL.

(4) Deck surface:

(i) surface friction;

(ii) helideck net;

(iii) drainage system;

(iv) deck edge netting;

(v) tie down system; and

(vi) cleaning of all contaminants.

(5) Environment:

(i) foreign object damage;

(ii) physical turbulence generators;

(iii) bird control;

(iv) air quality degradation due to exhaust emissions, hot gas vents or cold gas vents; and

(v) adjacent helideck may need to be included in air quality assessment.

(6) Rescue and fire fighting:

(i) primary and complementary media types, quantities, capacity and systems personal protective equipment and clothing, breathing apparatus; and

(ii) crash box.

(7) Communications & navigation:

(i) aeronautical radio(s);

(ii) radio/telephone (R/T) call sign to match helideck name and side identification which should be simple and unique;

(iii) Non-directional beacon (NDB) or equivalent (as appropriate);

(iv) radio log; and

(v) light signal (e.g. signalling lamp).

(8) Fuelling facilities:

(i) in accordance with the relevant national guidance and regulations.

(9) Additional operational and handling equipment:

(i) windsock;

(ii) wind recording;

(iii) deck motion recording and reporting where applicable;

(iv) passenger briefing system;

(v) chocks;

(vi) tie downs; and

(vii) weighing scales.

(10) Personnel:

(i) trained helideck staff (e.g. helicopter landing officer/helicopter deck assistant and fire fighters etc.).

(11) Other:

(i) as appropriate.

(f) For helidecks about which there is incomplete information, 'limited' usage based on the information available may be specified by the operator prior to the first helicopter visit. During subsequent operations and before any limit on usage is lifted, information should be gathered and the following should apply:

(1) Pictorial (static) representation:

(i) template (see figure 1) blanks should be available, to be filled out during flight preparation on the basis of the information given by the helideck owner/operator and flight crew observations;

(ii) where possible, suitably annotated photographs may be used until the HLL and template have been completed;

(iii) until the HLL and template have been completed, operational restrictions (e.g. performance, routing etc.) may be applied;

(iv) any previous inspection reports should be obtained by the operator; and

(v) an inspection of the helideck should be carried out to verify the content of the completed HLL and template, following which the helideck may be considered as fully adequate for operations.

(2) With reference to the above, the HLL should contain at least the following:

(i) HLL revision date and number;

(ii) generic list of helideck motion limitations;

(iii) name of helideck;

(iv) 'D' value; and

(v) limitations, warnings, cautions and comments.

(3) The template should contain at least the following (see example below):

(i) installation/vessel name;

(ii) R/T call sign;

(iii) helideck identification marking;

(iv) side panel identification marking;

(v) helideck elevation;

(vi) maximum installation/vessel height;

(vii) 'D' value;

(viii) type of installation/vessel:

– fixed manned

– fixed unmanned

– ship type (e.g. diving support vessel)

– semi-submersible

– jack-up

(ix) name of owner/operator;

(x) geographical position;

(xi) communication and navigation (Com/Nav) frequencies and ident;

(xii) general drawing preferably looking into the helideck with annotations showing location of derrick, masts, cranes, flare stack, turbine and gas exhausts, side identification panels, windsock etc.;

(xiii plan view drawing, chart orientation from the general drawing, to show the above. The plan view will also show the 210° orientation in degrees true;

(xiv) type of fuelling:

– pressure and gravity

– pressure only

– gravity only

– none

(xv) type and nature of fire fighting equipment;

(xvi) availability of ground power unit (GPU);

(xvii) deck heading;

(xviii) maximum allowable mass;

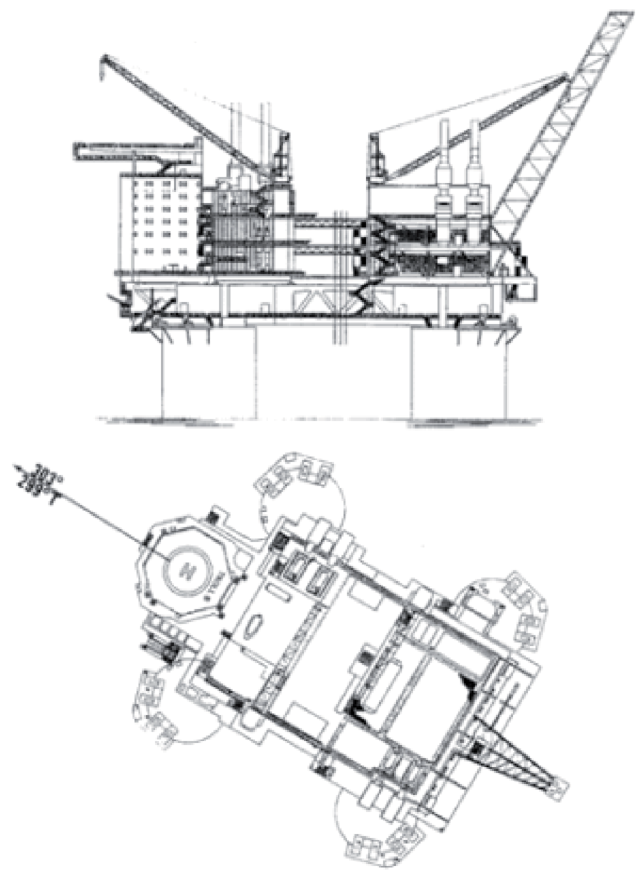
(xix) status light (Yes/No); and

(xx) revision date of publication.

Figure 1 Helideck template

Installation/vessel name	R/T callsign: …	Helideck identification: …
Helideck elevation: 200 ft	Maximum height: 350 ft	Side identification: …
Type of installation: … [1]		D value: 22 m
Position: [2]		Operator [3]
N …	W …	ATIS: VHF 123.45

COM	LOG:	VHF 123.45	NAV	NBD:	123 (ident)
	Traffic:	VHF 123.45		DME:	123
	Deck:	VHF 123.45		VOR/DME:	123
				VOR:	123



Fuelling: … [4]	GPU: … [5]	Deck heading: …
MTOM: … T	Status light: … [6]	Fire fighting equipment: … [7]
		Revision date: …

1 Fixed manned, fixed unmanned; ship type (e.g. diving support vessel); semi-submersible; jack-up.
2 WGS84 grid.
3 NAM, AMOCO, etc.
4 Pressure/gravity; pressure; gravity; no.
5 Yes; no; 28V DC.
6 Yes; no.
7 Type (e.g. aqueous film forming foams (AFFF)) and nature (e.g. deck integrated fire fighting system (DIFFS).

CAT.OP.MPA.106 Use of isolated aerodromes — aeroplanes

(a) Using an isolated aerodrome as destination aerodrome with aeroplanes requires the prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) An isolated aerodrome is one for which the alternate and final fuel reserve required to the nearest adequate destination alternate aerodrome is more than:

(1) for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, fuel to fly for 45 minutes plus 15% of the flying time planned to be spent at cruising level or 2 hours, whichever is less; or

(2) for aeroplanes with turbine engines, fuel to fly for 2 hours at normal cruise consumption above the destination aerodrome, including final reserve fuel.

CAT.OP.MPA.107 Adequate aerodrome

The operator shall consider an aerodrome as adequate if, at the expected time of use, the aerodrome is available and equipped with necessary ancillary services such as air traffic services (ATS), sufficient lighting, communications, weather reporting, navigation aids and emergency services.

CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

(a) The operator shall establish aerodrome operating minima for each departure, destination or alternate aerodrome planned to be used. These minima shall not be lower than those established for such aerodromes by the State in which the aerodrome is located, except when specifically approved by that State. Any increment specified by the competent authority shall be added to the minima.

(b) The use of a head-up display (HUD), head-up guidance landing system (HUDLS) or enhanced vision system (EVS) may allow operations with lower visibilities than the established aerodrome operating minima if approved in accordance with SPA.LVO.

(c) When establishing aerodrome operating minima, the operator shall take the following into account:

(1) the type, performance and handling characteristics of the aircraft;

(2) the composition, competence and experience of the flight crew;

(3) the dimensions and characteristics of the runways/final approach and take-off areas (FATOs) that may be selected for use;

(4) the adequacy and performance of the available visual and non-visual ground aids;

(5) the equipment available on the aircraft for the purpose of navigation and/or control of the flight path during the take-off, the approach, the flare, the landing, rollout and the missed approach;

(6) for the determination of obstacle clearance, the obstacles in the approach, missed approach and the climb-out areas necessary for the execution of contingency procedures;

(7) the obstacle clearance altitude/height for the instrument approach procedures;

(8) the means to determine and report meteorological conditions; and

(9) the flight technique to be used during the final approach.

(d) The operator shall specify the method of determining aerodrome operating minima in the operations manual.

(e) The minima for a specific approach and landing procedure shall only be used if all the following conditions are met:

(1) the ground equipment shown on the chart required for the intended procedure is operative;

(2) the aircraft systems required for the type of approach are operative;

(3) the required aircraft performance criteria are met; and

(4) the crew is appropriately qualified.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

TAKE-OFF OPERATIONS – AEROPLANES

(a) General

(1) Take-off minima should be expressed as visibility or runway visual range (RVR) limits, taking into account all relevant factors for each aerodrome planned to be used and aircraft characteristics. Where there is a specific need to see and avoid obstacles on departure and/or for a forced landing, additional conditions, e.g. ceiling, should be specified.

(2) The commander should not commence take-off unless the weather conditions at the aerodrome of departure are equal to or better than applicable minima for landing at that aerodrome unless a weather-permissible take-off alternate aerodrome is available.

(3) When the reported meteorological visibility (VIS) is below that required for take-off and RVR is not reported, a take-off should only be commenced if the commander can determine that the visibility along the take-off runway is equal to or better than the required minimum.

(4) When no reported meteorological visibility or RVR is available, a take-off should only be commenced if the commander can determine that the visibility along the take-off runway is equal to or better than the required minimum.

(b) Visual reference

(1) The take-off minima should be selected to ensure sufficient guidance to control the aircraft in the event of both a rejected take-off in adverse circumstances and a continued take-off after failure of the critical engine.

(2) For night operations, ground lights should be available to illuminate the runway and any obstacles.

(c) Required RVR/VIS – aeroplanes

(1) For multi-engined aeroplanes, with performance such that in the event of a critical engine failure at any point during take-off the aeroplane can either stop or continue the take-off to a height of 1 500 ft above the aerodrome while clearing obstacles by the required margins, the take-off minima specified by the operator should be expressed as RVR/CMV (converted meteorological visibility) values not lower than those specified in Table 1.A.

(2) For multi-engined aeroplanes without the performance to comply with the conditions in (c)(1) in the event of a critical engine failure, there may be a need to re-land immediately and to see and avoid obstacles in the take-off area. Such aeroplanes may be operated to the following take-off minima provided they are able to comply with the applicable obstacle clearance criteria, assuming engine failure at the height specified. The take-off minima specified by the operator should be based upon the height from which the one-engine-inoperative (OEI) net take-off flight path can be constructed. The RVR minima used should not be lower than either of the values specified in Table 1.A or Table 2.A.

(3) When RVR or meteorological visibility is not available, the commander should not commence take-off unless he/she can determine that the actual conditions satisfy the applicable take-off minima.

Table 1.A: Take-off – aeroplanes (without an approval for low visibility take-off (LVTO) RVR/VIS

Facilities	RVR/VIS (m) *
Day only: Nil**	500
Day: at least runway edge lights or runway centreline markings Night: at least runway edge lights and runway end lights or runway centreline lights and runway end lights	400

*: The reported RVR/VIS value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.

**: The pilot is able to continuously identify the take-off surface and maintain directional control.

Table 2.A: Take-off – aeroplanes

Assumed engine failure height above the runway versus RVR/VIS

Assumed engine failure height above the take-off runway (ft)	RVR/VIS (m) **
<50	400 (200 with LVTO approval)
51 – 100	400 (300 with LVTO approval)
101 – 150	400
151 – 200	500
201 – 300	1 000
>300 *	1 500

*: 1 500 m is also applicable if no positive take-off flight path can be constructed.

**: The reported RVR/VIS value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

TAKE-OFF OPERATIONS – HELICOPTERS

(a) General

(1) Take-off minima should be expressed as visibility or runway visual range (RVR) limits, taking into account all relevant factors for each aerodrome planned to be used and aircraft characteristics. Where there is a specific need to see and avoid obstacles on departure and/or for a forced landing, additional conditions, e.g. ceiling, should be specified.

(2) The commander should not commence take-off unless the weather conditions at the aerodrome of departure are equal to or better than applicable minima for landing at that aerodrome unless a weather-permissible take-off alternate aerodrome is available.

(3) When the reported meteorological visibility (VIS) is below that required for take-off and RVR is not reported, a take-off should only be commenced if the commander can determine that the visibility along the take-off runway/area is equal to or better than the required minimum.

(4) When no reported meteorological visibility or RVR is available, a take-off should only be commenced if the commander can determine that the visibility along the take-off runway/area is equal to or better than the required minimum.

(b) Visual reference

(1) The take-off minima should be selected to ensure sufficient guidance to control the aircraft in the event of both a rejected take-off in adverse circumstances and a continued take-off after failure of the critical engine.

(2) For night operations, ground lights should be available to illuminate the runway/final approach and take-off area (FATO) and any obstacles.

(c) Required RVR/VIS – helicopters:

(1) For performance class 1 operations, the operator should specify an RVR/VIS as take-off minima in accordance with Table 1.H.

(2) For performance class 2 operations onshore, the commander should operate to take-off minima of 800 m RVR/VIS and remain clear of cloud during the take-off manoeuvre until reaching performance class 1 capabilities.

(3) For performance class 2 operations offshore, the commander should operate to minima not less than that for performance class 1 and remain clear of cloud during the take-off manoeuvre until reaching performance class 1 capabilities.

(4) Table 8 for converting reported meteorological visibility to RVR should not be used for calculating take-off minima.

Table 1.H: Take-off – helicopters (without LVTO approval)

RVR/VIS

Onshore aerodromes with instrument flight rules (IFR) departure procedures	**RVR/VIS (m)**
No light and no markings (day only)	400 or the rejected take-off distance, whichever is the greater
No markings (night)	800
Runway edge/FATO light and centreline marking	400
Runway edge/FATO light, centreline marking and relevant RVR information	400
Offshore helideck *	
Two-pilot operations	400
Single-pilot operations	500

*: The take-off flight path to be free of obstacles.

AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

NPA, APV, CAT I operations

(a) The decision height (DH) to be used for a non-precision approach (NPA) flown with the continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique, approach procedure with vertical guidance (APV) or CAT I operation should not be lower than the highest of:

(1) the minimum height to which the approach aid can be used without the required visual reference;

(2) the obstacle clearance height (OCH) for the category of aircraft;

(3) the published approach procedure DH where applicable;

(4) the system minimum specified in Table 3; or

(5) the minimum DH specified in the aircraft flight manual (AFM) or equivalent document, if stated.

(b) The minimum descent height (MDH) for an NPA operation flown without the CDFA technique should not be lower than the highest of:

(1) the OCH for the category of aircraft;

(2) the system minimum specified in Table 3; or

(3) the minimum MDH specified in the AFM, if stated.

Table 3: System minima

Facility	Lowest DH/MDH (ft)
ILS/MLS/GLS	200
GNSS/SBAS (LPV)	200
GNSS (LNAV)	250
GNSS/Baro-VNAV (LNAV/ VNAV)	250
LOC with or without DME	250
SRA (terminating at ½ NM)	250
SRA (terminating at 1 NM)	300
SRA (terminating at 2 NM or more)	350
VOR	300
VOR/DME	250
NDB	350
NDB/DME	300
VDF	350

DME: distance measuring equipment;

GNSS: global navigation satellite system;

ILS: instrument landing system;

LNAV: lateral navigation;

LOC: localiser;

LPV: localiser performance with vertical guidance

SBAS: satellite-based augmentation system;

SRA: surveillance radar approach;

VDF: VHF direction finder;

VNAV: vertical navigation;

VOR: VHF omnidirectional radio range.

AMC4 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

CRITERIA FOR ESTABLISHING RVR/CMV

(a) Aeroplanes

The following criteria for establishing RVR/CMV should apply:

(1) In order to qualify for the lowest allowable values of RVR/CMV specified in Table 6.A the instrument approach should meet at least the following facility specifications and associated conditions:

(i) Instrument approaches with designated vertical profile up to and including 4.5° for category A and B aeroplanes, or 3.77° for category C and D aeroplanes where the facilities are:

(A) ILS / microwave landing system (MLS) / GBAS landing system (GLS) / precision approach radar (PAR); or

(B) APV; and

where the final approach track is offset by not more than 15° for category A and B aeroplanes or by not more than 5° for category C and D aeroplanes.

(ii) Instrument approach operations flown using the CDFA technique with a nominal vertical profile, up to and including 4.5° for category A and B aeroplanes, or 3.77° for category C and D aeroplanes, where the facilities are NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA or GNSS/LNAV, with a final approach segment of at least 3 NM, which also fulfil the following criteria:

(A) the final approach track is offset by not more than 15° for category A and B aeroplanes or by not more than 5° for category C and D aeroplanes;

(B) the final approach fix (FAF) or another appropriate fix where descent is initiated is available, or distance to threshold (THR) is available by flight management system / GNSS (FMS/GNSS) or DME; and

(C) if the missed approach point (MAPt) is determined by timing, the distance from FAF or another appropriate fix to THR is ≤ 8 NM.

(iii) Instrument approaches where the facilities are NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA or GNSS/LNAV, not fulfilling the criteria in (a)(1)(ii), or with an MDH ≥ 1 200 ft.

(2) The missed approach operation, after an approach operation has been flown using the CDFA technique, should be executed when reaching the DA/H or the MAPt, whichever occurs first. The lateral part of the missed approach procedure should be flown via the MAPt unless otherwise stated on the approach chart.

AMC5 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

DETERMINATION OF RVR/CMV/VIS MINIMA FOR NPA, APV, CAT I – AEROPLANES

(a) Aeroplanes

The RVR/CMV/VIS minima for NPA, APV and CAT I operations should be determined as follows:

(1) The minimum RVR/CMV/VIS should be the highest of the values specified in Table 5 or Table 6.A but not greater than the maximum values specified in Table 6.A, where applicable.

(2) The values in Table 5 should be derived from the formula below,

Required RVR/VIS (m) = [(DH/MDH (ft) x 0.3048) / tanα] – length of approach lights (m)

where α is the calculation angle, being a default value of 3.00° increasing in steps of 0.10° for each line in Table 5 up to 3.77° and then remaining constant.

(3) If the approach is flown with a level flight segment at or above MDA/H, 200 m should be added for category A and B aeroplanes and 400 m for category C and D aeroplanes to the minimum RVR/CMV/VIS value resulting from the application of Tables 5 and 6.A.

(4) An RVR of less than 750 m as indicated in Table 5 may be used:

(i) for CAT I operations to runways with full approach lighting system (FALS), runway touchdown zone lights (RTZL) and runway centreline lights (RCLL);

(ii) for CAT I operations to runways without RTZL and RCLL when using an approved head-up guidance landing system (HUDLS), or equivalent approved system, or when conducting a coupled approach or flight-director-flown approach to a DH. The ILS should not be published as a restricted facility; and

(iii) for APV operations to runways with FALS, RTZL and RCLL when using an approved head-up display (HUD).

(5) Lower values than those specified in Table 5, for HUDLS and auto-land operations may be used if approved in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA), Subpart E (SPA.LVO).

(6) The visual aids should comprise standard runway day markings and approach and runway lights as specified in Table 4. The competent authority may approve that RVR values relevant to a basic

approach lighting system (BALS) are used on runways where the approach lights are restricted in length below 210 m due to terrain or water, but where at least one cross-bar is available.

(7) For night operations or for any operation where credit for runway and approach lights is required, the lights should be on and serviceable except as provided for in Table 9.

(8) For single-pilot operations, the minimum RVR/VIS should be calculated in accordance with the following additional criteria:

(i) an RVR of less than 800 m as indicated in Table 5 may be used for CAT I approaches provided any of the following is used at least down to the applicable DH:

(A) a suitable autopilot, coupled to an ILS, MLS or GLS that is not published as restricted; or

(B) an approved HUDLS, including, where appropriate, enhanced vision system (EVS), or equivalent approved system;

(ii) where RTZL and/or RCLL are not available, the minimum RVR/CMV should not be less than 600 m; and

(iii) an RVR of less than 800 m as indicated in Table 5 may be used for APV operations to runways with FALS, RTZL and RCLL when using an approved HUDLS, or equivalent approved system, or when conducting a coupled approach to a DH equal to or greater than 250 ft.

Table 4: Approach lighting systems

Class of lighting facility	Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights
FALS	CAT I lighting system (HIALS ≥720 m) distance coded centreline, Barrette centreline
IALS	Simple approach lighting system (HIALS 420 – 719 m) single source, Barrette
BALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS 210 - 419 m)
NALS	Any other approach light system (HIALS, MALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

Note: HIALS: high intensity approach lighting system;

MALS: medium intensity approach lighting system.

Table 5: RVR/CMV vs. DH/MDH

DH or MDH			Class of lighting facility			
			FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
			See (a)(4),(5),(8) above for RVR <750/800 m			
ft			RVR/CMV (m)			
200	-	210	550	750	1 000	1 200
211	-	220	550	800	1 000	1 200
221	-	230	550	800	1 000	1 200
231	-	240	550	800	1 000	1 200
241	-	250	550	800	1 000	1 300
251	-	260	600	800	1 100	1 300
261	-	280	600	900	1 100	1 300
281	-	300	650	900	1 200	1 400
301	-	320	700	1 000	1 200	1 400
321	-	340	800	1 100	1 300	1 500

DH or MDH			Class of lighting facility			
			FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
			See (a)(4),(5),(8) above for RVR <750/800 m			
ft			RVR/CMV (m)			
341	-	360	900	1 200	1 400	1 600
361	-	380	1 000	1 300	1 500	1 700
381	-	400	1 100	1 400	1 600	1 800
401	-	420	1 200	1 500	1 700	1 900
421	-	440	1 300	1 600	1 800	2 000
441	-	460	1 400	1 700	1 900	2 100
461	-	480	1 500	1 800	2 000	2 200
481		500	1 500	1 800	2 100	2 300
501	-	520	1 600	1 900	2 100	2 400
521	-	540	1 700	2 000	2 200	2 400
541	-	560	1 800	2 100	2 300	2 500
561	-	580	1 900	2 200	2 400	2 600
581	-	600	2 000	2 300	2 500	2 700
601	-	620	2 100	2 400	2 600	2 800
621	-	640	2 200	2 500	2 700	2 900
641	-	660	2 300	2 600	2 800	3 000
661	-	680	2 400	2 700	2 900	3 100
681	-	700	2 500	2 800	3 000	3 200
701	-	720	2 600	2 900	3 100	3 300
721	-	740	2 700	3 000	3 200	3 400
741	-	760	2 700	3 000	3 300	3 500
761	-	800	2 900	3 200	3 400	3 600
801	-	850	3 100	3 400	3 600	3 800
851	-	900	3 300	3 600	3 800	4 000
901	-	950	3 600	3 900	4 100	4 300
951	-	1 000	3 800	4 100	4 300	4 500
1 001	-	1 100	4 100	4 400	4 600	4 900
1 101	-	1 200	4 600	4 900	5 000	5 000
1 201 and above			5 000	5 000	5 000	5 000

Table 6.A: CAT I, APV, NPA – aeroplanes

Minimum and maximum applicable RVR/CMV (lower and upper cut-off limits)

Facility/conditions	RVR/CMV (m)	Aeroplane category			
		A	B	C	D
ILS, MLS, GLS, PAR, GNSS/SBAS, GNSS/VNAV	Min	According to Table 5			
	Max	1 500	1 500	2 400	2 400
NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA, GNSS/LNAV with a procedure that fulfils the criteria in AMC4 CAT.OP.MPA.110, (a)(1)(ii)	Min	750	750	750	750
	Max	1 500	1 500	2 400	2 400
For NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA, GNSS/LNAV: – not fulfilling the criteria in in AMC4 CAT.OP.MPA.110, (a)(1)(ii), or – with a DH or MDH ≥1 200 ft	Min	1 000	1 000	1 200	1 200
	Max	According to Table 5 if flown using the CDFA technique, otherwise an add-on of 200 m for Category A and B aeroplanes and 400 m for Category C and D aeroplanes applies to the values in Table 5 but not to result in a value exceeding 5 000 m.			

AMC6 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

DETERMINATION OF RVR/CMV/VIS MINIMA FOR NPA, CAT I — HELICOPTERS

(a) Helicopters

The RVR/CMV/VIS minima for NPA, APV and CAT I operations should be determined as follows:

(1) For NPA operations operated in performance class 1 (PC1) or performance class 2 (PC2), the minima specified in Table 6.1.H should apply:

(i) where the missed approach point is within ½ NM of the landing threshold, the approach minima specified for FALS may be used regardless of the length of approach lights available. However, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, end lights and FATO/runway markings are still required;

(ii) for night operations, ground lights should be available to illuminate the FATO/runway and any obstacles; and

(iii) for single-pilot operations, the minimum RVR is 800 m or the minima in Table 6.1.H, whichever is higher.

(2) For CAT I operations operated in PC1 or PC2, the minima specified in Table 6.2.H should apply:

(i) for night operations, ground light should be available to illuminate the FATO/runway and any obstacles;

(ii) for single-pilot operations, the minimum RVR/VIS should be calculated in accordance with the following additional criteria:

(A) an RVR of less than 800 m should not be used except when using a suitable autopilot coupled to an ILS, MLS or GLS, in which case normal minima apply; and

(B) the DH applied should not be less than 1.25 times the minimum use height for the autopilot.

Table 6.1.H: Onshore NPA minima

MDH (ft) *	Facilities vs. RVR/CMV (m) **, ***			
	FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
250 – 299	600	800	1 000	1 000
300 – 449	800	1 000	1 000	1 000
450 and above	1 000	1 000	1 000	1 000

*: The MDH refers to the initial calculation of MDH. When selecting the associated RVR, there is no need to take account of a rounding up to the nearest 10 ft, which may be done for operational purposes, e.g. conversion to MDA.

**: The tables are only applicable to conventional approaches with a nominal descent slope of not greater than 4°. Greater descent slopes will usually require that visual glide slope guidance (e.g. precision approach path indicator (PAPI)) is also visible at the MDH.

***: FALS comprise FATO/runway markings, 720 m or more of high intensity/medium intensity (HI/MI) approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

IALS comprise FATO/runway markings, 420 – 719 m of HI/MI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

BALS comprise FATO/runway markings, <420 m of HI/MI approach lights, any length of low intensity (LI) approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

NALS comprise FATO/runway markings, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, FATO/runway end lights or no lights at all.

Table 6.2.H: Onshore CAT I minima

DH (ft) *	Facilities vs. RVR/CMV (m) **, ***			
	FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
200	500	600	700	1 000
201 – 250	550	650	750	1 000
251 – 300	600	700	800	1 000
301 and above	750	800	900	1 000

*: The DH refers to the initial calculation of DH. When selecting the associated RVR, there is no need to take account of a rounding up to the nearest 10 ft, which may be done for operational purposes, e.g. conversion to DA.

**: The table is applicable to conventional approaches with a glide slope up to and including 4°.

***: FALS comprise FATO/runway markings, 720 m or more of HI/MI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

IALS comprise FATO/runway markings, 420 – 719 m of HI/MI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

BALS comprise FATO/runway markings, <420 m of HI/MI approach lights, any length of LI approach lights, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights and FATO/runway end lights. Lights to be on.

NALS comprise FATO/runway markings, FATO/runway edge lights, threshold lights, FATO/runway end lights or no lights at all.

AMC7 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

CIRCLING OPERATIONS – AEROPLANES

(a) Circling minima

The following standards should apply for establishing circling minima for operations with aeroplanes:

(1) the MDH for circling operation should not be lower than the highest of:

(i) the published circling OCH for the aeroplane category;

(ii) the minimum circling height derived from Table 7; or

(iii) the DH/MDH of the preceding instrument approach procedure;

(2) the MDA for circling should be calculated by adding the published aerodrome elevation to the MDH, as determined by (a)(1); and

(3) the minimum visibility for circling should be the highest of:

(i) the circling visibility for the aeroplane category, if published;

(ii) the minimum visibility derived from Table 7; or

(iii) the RVR/CMV derived from Tables 5 and 6.A for the preceding instrument approach procedure.

Table 7: Circling – aeroplanes

MDH and minimum visibility vs. aeroplane category

	Aeroplane category			
	A	**B**	**C**	**D**
MDH (ft)	400	500	600	700
Minimum meteorological visibility (m)	1 500	1 600	2 400	3 600

(b) Conduct of flight – general:

(1) the MDH and OCH included in the procedure are referenced to aerodrome elevation;

(2) the MDA is referenced to mean sea level;

(3) for these procedures, the applicable visibility is the meteorological visibility; and

(4) operators should provide tabular guidance of the relationship between height above threshold and the in-flight visibility required to obtain and sustain visual contact during the circling manoeuvre.

(c) Instrument approach followed by visual manoeuvring (circling) without prescribed tracks

(1) When the aeroplane is on the initial instrument approach, before visual reference is stabilised, but not below MDA/H, the aeroplane should follow the corresponding instrument approach procedure until the appropriate instrument MAPt is reached.

(2) At the beginning of the level flight phase at or above the MDA/H, the instrument approach track determined by radio navigation aids, RNAV, RNP, ILS, MLS or GLS should be maintained until the pilot:

(i) estimates that, in all probability, visual contact with the runway of intended landing or the runway environment will be maintained during the entire circling procedure;

(ii) estimates that the aeroplane is within the circling area before commencing circling; and

(iii) is able to determine the aeroplane's position in relation to the runway of intended landing with the aid of the appropriate external references.

(3) When reaching the published instrument MAPt and the conditions stipulated in (c)(2) are unable to be established by the pilot, a missed approach should be carried out in accordance with that instrument approach procedure.

(4) After the aeroplane has left the track of the initial instrument approach, the flight phase outbound from the runway should be limited to an appropriate distance, which is required to align the aeroplane onto the final approach. Such manoeuvres should be conducted to enable the aeroplane:

(i) to attain a controlled and stable descent path to the intended landing runway; and

(ii) to remain within the circling area and in such way that visual contact with the runway of intended landing or runway environment is maintained at all times.

(5) Flight manoeuvres should be carried out at an altitude/height that is not less than the circling MDA/H.

(6) Descent below MDA/H should not be initiated until the threshold of the runway to be used has been appropriately identified. The aeroplane should be in a position to continue with a normal rate of descent and land within the touchdown zone.

(d) Instrument approach followed by a visual manoeuvring (circling) with prescribed track

(1) The aeroplane should remain on the initial instrument approach procedure until one of the following is reached:

(i) the prescribed divergence point to commence circling on the prescribed track; or

(ii) the MAPt.

(2) The aeroplane should be established on the instrument approach track determined by the radio navigation aids, RNAV, RNP, ILS, MLS or GLS in level flight at or above the MDA/H at or by the circling manoeuvre divergence point.

(3) If the divergence point is reached before the required visual reference is acquired, a missed approach should be initiated not later than the MAPt and completed in accordance with the instrument approach procedure.

(4) When commencing the prescribed circling manoeuvre at the published divergence point, the subsequent manoeuvres should be conducted to comply with the published routing and published heights/altitudes.

(5) Unless otherwise specified, once the aeroplane is established on the prescribed track(s), the published visual reference does not need to be maintained unless:

(i) required by the State of the aerodrome; or

(ii) the circling MAPt (if published) is reached.

(6) If the prescribed circling manoeuvre has a published MAPt and the required visual reference has not been obtained by that point, a missed approach should be executed in accordance with (e)(2) and (e)(3).

(7) Subsequent further descent below MDA/H should only commence when the required visual reference has been obtained.

(8) Unless otherwise specified in the procedure, final descent should not be commenced from MDA/H until the threshold of the intended landing runway has been identified and the aeroplane is in a position to continue with a normal rate of descent to land within the touchdown zone.

(e) Missed approach

(1) Missed approach during the instrument procedure prior to circling:

(i) if the missed approach procedure is required to be flown when the aeroplane is positioned on the instrument approach track defined by radio-navigation aids RNAV, RNP, or ILS, MLS, and before commencing the circling manoeuvre, the published missed approach for the instrument approach should be followed; or

(ii) if the instrument approach procedure is carried out with the aid of an ILS, MLS or an stabilised approach (SAp), the MAPt associated with an ILS, MLS procedure without glide path (GP-out procedure) or the SAp, where applicable, should be used.

(2) If a prescribed missed approach is published for the circling manoeuvre, this overrides the manoeuvres prescribed below.

(3) If visual reference is lost while circling to land after the aeroplane has departed from the initial instrument approach track, the missed approach specified for that particular instrument approach should be followed. It is expected that the pilot will make an initial climbing turn toward the intended landing runway to a position overhead the aerodrome where the pilot will establish the aeroplane in a climb on the instrument missed approach segment.

(4) The aeroplane should not leave the visual manoeuvring (circling) area, which is obstacle protected, unless:

(i) established on the appropriate missed approach procedure; or

(ii) at minimum sector altitude (MSA).

(5) All turns should be made in the same direction and the aeroplane should remain within the circling protected area while climbing either:

(i) to the altitude assigned to any published circling missed approach manoeuvre if applicable;

(ii) to the altitude assigned to the missed approach of the initial instrument approach;

(iii) to the MSA;

(iv) to the minimum holding altitude (MHA) applicable for transition to a holding facility or fix, or continue to climb to an MSA; or

(v) as directed by ATS.

When the missed approach procedure is commenced on the 'downwind' leg of the circling manoeuvre, an 'S' turn may be undertaken to align the aeroplane on the initial instrument approach missed approach path, provided the aeroplane remains within the protected circling area.

The commander should be responsible for ensuring adequate terrain clearance during the above-stipulated manoeuvres, particularly during the execution of a missed approach initiated by ATS.

(6) Because the circling manoeuvre may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to establish the aeroplane on the prescribed missed approach course depending on its position at the time visual reference is lost. In particular, all turns are to be in the prescribed direction if this is restricted, e.g. to the west/east (left or right hand) to remain within the protected circling area.

(7) If a missed approach procedure is published for a particular runway onto which the aeroplane is conducting a circling approach and the aeroplane has commenced a manoeuvre to align with the runway, the missed approach for this direction may be accomplished. The ATS unit should be informed of the intention to fly the published missed approach procedure for that particular runway.

(8) The commander should advise ATS when any missed approach procedure has been commenced, the height/altitude the aeroplane is climbing to and the position the aeroplane is proceeding towards and / or heading the aeroplane is established on.

AMC8 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

ONSHORE CIRCLING OPERATIONS – HELICOPTERS

For circling the specified MDH should not be less than 250 ft, and the meteorological visibility not less than 800 m.

AMC9 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

VISUAL APPROACH OPERATIONS

The operator should not use an RVR of less than 800 m for a visual approach operation.

AMC10 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

CONVERSION OF REPORTED METEOROLOGICAL VISIBILITY TO RVR

(a) A conversion from meteorological visibility to RVR/CMV should not be used:

(1) when reported RVR is available;

(2) for calculating take-off minima; and

(3) for any RVR minima less than 800 m.

(b) If the RVR is reported as being above the maximum value assessed by the aerodrome operator, e.g. 'RVR more than 1 500 m', it should not be considered as a reported value for (a)(1).

(c) When converting meteorological visibility to RVR in circumstances other than those in (a), the conversion factors specified in Table 8 should be used.

Table 8: Conversion of reported meteorological visibility to RVR/CMV

Light elements in operation	RVR/CMV = reported meteorological visibility x	
	Day	Night
HI approach and runway lights	1.5	2.0
Any type of light installation other than above	1.0	1.5
No lights	1.0	not applicable

AMC11 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

EFFECT ON LANDING MINIMA OF TEMPORARILY FAILED OR DOWNGRADED GROUND EQUIPMENT

(a) General

These instructions are intended for use both pre-flight and in-flight. It is however not expected that the commander would consult such instructions after passing 1 000 ft above the aerodrome. If failures of ground aids are announced at such a late stage, the approach could be continued at the commander's discretion. If failures are announced before such a late stage in the approach, their effect on the approach should be considered as described in Table 9, and the approach may have to be abandoned.

(b) Conditions applicable to Table 9:

(1) multiple failures of runway/FATO lights other than indicated in Table 9 should not be acceptable;

(2) deficiencies of approach and runway/FATO lights are treated separately; and

(3) failures other than ILS, MLS affect RVR only and not DH.

Table 9: Failed or downgraded equipment – effect on landing minima Operations without a low visibility operations (LVO) approval

Failed or downgraded equipment	Effect on landing minima	
	CAT I	APV, NPA
ILS/MLS stand-by transmitter	No effect	
Outer Marker	Not allowed except if replaced by height check at 1 000 ft	APV – not applicable NPA with FAF: no effect unless used as FAF If the FAF cannot be identified (e.g. no method available for timing of descent), non-precision operations cannot be conducted
Middle marker	No effect	No effect unless used as MAPt
RVR Assessment Systems	No effect	
Approach lights	Minima as for NALS	
Approach lights except the last 210 m	Minima as for BALS	
Approach lights except the last 420 m	Minima as for IALS	
Standby power for approach lights	No effect	
Edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights	Day: no effect; Night: not allowed	
Centreline lights	No effect if F/D, HUDLS or auto-land otherwise RVR 750 m	No effect
Centreline lights spacing increased to 30 m	No effect	
Touchdown zone lights	No effect if F/D, HUDLS or auto-land; otherwise RVR 750 m	No effect
Taxiway lighting system	No effect	

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

ONSHORE AERODROME DEPARTURE PROCEDURES – HELICOPTERS

The cloud base and visibility should be such as to allow the helicopter to be clear of cloud at take-off decision point (TDP), and for the pilot flying to remain in sight of the surface until reaching the minimum speed for flight in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) given in the AFM.

GM2 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

APPROACH LIGHTING SYSTEMS – ICAO, FAA

The following table provides a comparison of ICAO and FAA specifications.

Table 1: Approach lighting systems

Class of lighting facility	Length, configuration and intensity of approach lights
FALS	ICAO: CAT I lighting system (HIALS ≥ 900 m) distance coded centreline, Barrette centreline FAA: ALSF1, ALSF2, SSALR, MALSR, high or medium intensity and/or flashing lights, 720 m or more
IALS	ICAO: simple approach lighting system (HIALS 420 – 719 m) single source, Barrette FAA: MALSF, MALS, SALS/SALSF, SSALF, SSALS, high or medium intensity and/or flashing lights, 420 – 719 m
BALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS 210-419 m) FAA: ODALS, high or medium intensity or flashing lights 210 – 419 m
NALS	Any other approach lighting system (HIALS, MALS or ALS <210 m) or no approach lights

Note: ALSF: approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;

MALS: medium intensity approach lighting system;

MALSF: medium intensity approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;

MALSR: medium intensity approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights;

ODALS: omnidirectional approach lighting system;

SALS: simple approach lighting system;

SALSF: short approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;

SSALF: simplified short approach lighting system with sequenced flashing lights;

SSALR: simplified short approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights;

SSALS: simplified short approach lighting system.

GM3 CAT.OP.MPA.110 Aerodrome operating minima

SBAS OPERATIONS

(a) SBAS CAT I operations with a DH of 200 ft depend on an SBAS system approved for operations down to a DH of 200 ft.

(b) The following systems are in operational use or in a planning phase:

  (1) European geostationary navigation overlay service (EGNOS) operational in Europe;

  (2) wide area augmentation system (WAAS) operational in the USA;

  (3) multi-functional satellite augmentation system (MSAS) operational in Japan;

  (4) system of differential correction and monitoring (SDCM) planned by Russia;

  (5) GPS aided geo augmented navigation (GAGAN) system, planned by India; and

  (6) satellite navigation augmentation system (SNAS), planned by China.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.110(a) Aerodrome operating minima

INCREMENTS SPECIFIED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

Additional increments to the published minima may be specified by the competent authority to take into account certain operations, such as downwind approaches and single-pilot operations.

CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique — aeroplanes

(a) All approaches shall be flown as stabilised approaches unless otherwise approved by the competent authority for a particular approach to a particular runway.

(b) Non-precision approaches

(1) The continuous descent final approach (CDFA) technique shall be used for all non-precision approaches.

(2) Notwithstanding (1), another approach flight technique may be used for a particular approach/runway combination if approved by the competent authority. In such cases, the applicable minimum runway visual range (RVR):

(i) shall be increased by 200 m for Category A and B aeroplanes and by 400 m for Category C and D aeroplanes; or

(ii) for aerodromes where there is a public interest to maintain current operations and the CDFA technique cannot be applied, shall be established and regularly reviewed by the competent authority taking into account the operator's experience, training programme and flight crew qualification.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes

CONTINUOUS DESCENT FINAL APPROACH (CDFA)

(a) Flight techniques:

(1) The CDFA technique should ensure that an approach can be flown on the desired vertical path and track in a stabilised manner, without significant vertical path changes during the final segment descent to the runway. This technique applies to an approach with no vertical guidance and controls the descent path until the DA/DH. This descent path can be either:

(i) a recommended descent rate, based on estimated ground speed;

(ii) a descent path depicted on the approach chart; or

(iii) a descent path coded in the flight management system in accordance with the approach chart descent path.

(2) The operator should either provide charts which depict the appropriate cross check altitudes/heights with the corresponding appropriate range information, or such information should be calculated and provided to the flight crew in an appropriate and usable format. Generally, the MAPt is published on the chart.

(3) The approach should be flown as an SAp.

(4) The required descent path should be flown to the DA/H, observing any step-down crossing altitudes if applicable.

(5) This DA/H should take into account any add-on to the published minima as identified by the operator's management system and should be specified in the OM (aerodrome operating minima).

(6) During the descent the pilot monitoring should announce crossing altitudes as published fixes and other designated points are crossed, giving the appropriate altitude or height for the appropriate range as depicted on the chart. The pilot flying should promptly adjust the rate of descent as appropriate.

(7) The operator should establish a procedure to ensure that an appropriate callout is made when the aeroplane is approaching DA/H. If the required visual references are not established at DA/H, the missed approach procedure is to be executed promptly.

(8) The descent path should ensure that little or no adjustment of attitude or thrust/power is needed after the DA/H to continue the landing in the visual segment.

(9) The missed approach should be initiated no later than reaching the MAPt or at the DA/H, whichever comes first. The lateral part of the missed approach should be flown via the MAPt unless otherwise stated on the approach chart.

(b) Flight techniques conditions:

(1) The approach should be considered to be fully stabilised when the aeroplane is:

(i) tracking on the required approach path and profile;

(ii) in the required configuration and attitude;

(iii) flying with the required rate of descent and speed; and

(iv) flying with the appropriate thrust/power and trim.

(2) The aeroplane is considered established on the required approach path at the appropriate energy for stable flight using the CDFA technique when:

(i) it is tracking on the required approach path with the correct track set, approach aids tuned and identified as appropriate to the approach type flown and on the required vertical profile; and

(ii) it is at the appropriate attitude and speed for the required target rate of descent (ROD) with the appropriate thrust/power and trim.

(3) Stabilisation during any straight-in approach without visual reference to the ground should be achieved at the latest when passing 1 000 ft above runway threshold elevation. For approaches with a designated vertical profile applying the CDFA technique, a later stabilisation in speed may be acceptable if higher than normal approach speeds are required by ATC procedures or allowed

by the OM. Stabilisation should, however, be achieved not later than 500 ft above runway threshold elevation.

(4) For approaches where the pilot has visual reference with the ground, stabilisation should be achieved not later than 500 ft above aerodrome elevation. However, the aeroplane should be stabilised when passing 1 000 ft above runway threshold elevation; in the case of circling approaches flown after a CDFA, the aircraft should be stabilised in the circling configuration not later than passing 1 000 ft above the runway elevation.

(5) To ensure that the approach can be flown in a stabilised manner, the bank angle, rate of descent and thrust/power management should meet the following performances:

(i) The bank angle should be less than 30 degrees.

(ii) The target rate of descent (ROD) should not exceed 1 000 fpm and the ROD deviations should not exceed ± 300 fpm, except under exceptional circumstances which have been anticipated and briefed prior to commencing the approach; for example, a strong tailwind. Zero ROD may be used when the descent path needs to be regained from below the profile. The target ROD may need to be initiated prior to reaching the required descent point, typically 0.3 NM before the descent point, dependent upon ground speed, which may vary for each type/class of aeroplane.

(iii) The limits of thrust/power and the appropriate range should be specified in the OM Part B or equivalent document.

(iv) The optimum angle for the approach slope is 3° and should not exceed 4.5°.

(v) The CDFA technique should be applied only to approach procedures based on NDB, NDB/DME, VOR, VOR/DME, LOC, LOC/DME, VDF, SRA, GNSS/LNAV and fulfil the following criteria:

(A) the final approach track off-set ≤ 5° except for Category A and B aeroplanes, where the approach-track off-set is ≤ 15°; and

(B) a FAF, or another appropriate fix, e.g., final approach point, where descent initiated is available; and

(C) the distance from the FAF or another appropriate fix to the threshold (THR) is less than or equal to 8 NM in the case of timing; or

(D) the distance to the THR is available by FMS/GNSS or DME; or

(E) the minimum final-segment of the designated constant angle approach path should not be less than 3 NM from the THR unless approved by the authority.

(7) The CDFA techniques support a common method for the implementation of flight-director-guided or auto-coupled RNAV approaches.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes

NPA OPERATIONS WITHOUT APPLYING THE CDFA TECHNIQUE

(a) In case the CDFA technique is not used the approach should be flown to an altitude/height at or above the MDA/H where a level flight segment at or above MDA/H may be flown to the MAPt.

(b) Even when the approach procedure is flown without the CDFA technique the relevant procedures for ensuring a controlled and stable path to MDA/H should be followed.

(c) In case the CDFA technique is not used when flying an approach, the operator should implement procedures to ensure that early descent to the MDA/H will not result in a subsequent flight below MDA/H without adequate visual reference. These procedures could include:

(1) awareness of radio altimeter information with reference to the approach profile;

(2) terrain awareness warning system (TAWS);

(3) limitation of rate of descent;

(4) limitation of the number of repeated approaches;

(5) safeguards against too early descents with prolonged flight at MDA/H; and

(6) specification of visual requirements for the descent from the MDA/H.

(d) In case the CDFA technique is not used and when the MDA/H is high, it may be appropriate to make an early descent to MDA/H with appropriate safeguards such as the application of a significantly higher RVR/VIS.

(e) The procedures that are flown with level flight at/or above MDA/H should be listed in the OM.

(f) Operators should categorise aerodromes where there are approaches that require level flight at/or above MDA/H as B and C. Such aerodrome categorisation will depend upon the operator's experience, operational exposure, training programme(s) and flight crew qualification(s).

AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES AND INSTRUCTIONS AND TRAINING

(a) The operator should establish procedures and instructions for flying approaches using the CDFA technique and not using it. These procedures should be included in the OM and should include the duties of the flight crew during the conduct of such operations.

(b) The operator should at least specify in the OM the maximum ROD for each aeroplane type/class operated and the required visual reference to continue the approach below:

(1) the DA/H, when applying the CDFA technique; and

(2) the MDA/H, when not applying the CDFA technique.

(c) The operator should establish procedures which prohibit level flight at MDA/H without the flight crew having obtained the required visual references. It is not the intention to prohibit level flight at MDA/H when conducting a circling approach, which does not come within the definition of the CDFA technique.

(d) The operator should provide the flight crew with unambiguous details of the technique used (CDFA or not). The corresponding relevant minima should include:

(1) type of decision, whether DA/H or MDA/H;

(2) MAPt as applicable; and

(3) appropriate RVR/VIS for the approach operation and aeroplane category.

(e) Training

(1) Prior to using the CDFA technique, each flight crew member should undertake appropriate training and checking as required by Subpart FC of Annex III (ORO.FC). The operator's proficiency check should include at least one approach to a landing or missed approach as appropriate using the CDFA technique or not. The approach should be operated to the lowest appropriate DA/H or MDA/H, as appropriate; and, if conducted in a FSTD, the approach should be operated to the lowest approved RVR. The approach is not in addition to any manoeuvre currently required by either Part-FCL or Part-

CAT. The provision may be fulfilled by undertaking any currently required approach, engine out or otherwise, other than a precision approach (PA), whilst using the CDFA technique.

(2) The policy for the establishment of constant predetermined vertical path and approach stability is to be enforced both during initial and recurrent pilot training and checking. The relevant training procedures and instructions should be documented in the operations manual.

(3) The training should emphasise the need to establish and facilitate joint crew procedures and crew resource management (CRM) to enable accurate descent path control and the provision to establish the aeroplane in a stable condition as required by the operator's operational procedures.

(4) During training, emphasis should be placed on the flight crew's need to:

(i) maintain situational awareness at all times, in particular with reference to the required vertical and horizontal profile;

(ii) ensure good communication channels throughout the approach;

(iii) ensure accurate descent-path control particularly during any manually-flown descent phase. The monitoring pilot should facilitate good flight path control by:

(A) communicating any altitude/height crosschecks prior to the actual passing of the range/altitude or height crosscheck;

(B) prompting, as appropriate, changes to the target ROD; and

(C) monitoring flight path control below DA/MDA;

(iv) understand the actions to be taken if the MAPt is reached prior to the MDA/H;

(v) ensure that the decision for a missed approach is taken no later than when reaching the DA/H or MDA/H;

(vi) ensure that prompt action for a missed approach is taken immediately when reaching DA/H if the required visual reference has not been obtained as there may be no obstacle protection if the missed approach procedure manoeuvre is delayed;

(vii) understand the significance of using the CDFA technique to a DA/H with an associated MAPt and the implications of early missed approach manoeuvres; and

(viii) understand the possible loss of the required visual reference due to pitch-change/climb when not using the CDFA technique for aeroplane types or classes that require a late change of configuration and/or speed to ensure the aeroplane is in the appropriate landing configuration.

(5) Additional specific training when not using the CDFA technique with level flight at or above MDA/H

(i) The training should detail:

(A) the need to facilitate CRM with appropriate flight crew communication in particular;

(B) the additional known safety risks associated with the 'dive-and-drive' approach philosophy which may be associated with non-CDFA;

(C) the use of DA/H during approaches flown using the CDFA technique;

(D) the significance of the MDA/H and the MAPt where appropriate;

(E) the actions to be taken at the MAPt and the need to ensure that the aeroplane remains in a stable condition and on the nominal and appropriate vertical profile until the landing;

(F) the reasons for increased RVR/Visibility minima when compared to the application of CDFA;

(G) the possible increased obstacle infringement risk when undertaking level flight at MDA/H without the required visual references;

(H) the need to accomplish a prompt missed approach manoeuvre if the required visual reference is lost;

(I) the increased risk of an unstable final approach and an associated unsafe landing if a rushed approach is attempted either from:

(a) inappropriate and close-in acquisition of the required visual reference; or

(b) unstable aeroplane energy and or flight path control; and

(J) the increased risk of controlled flight into terrain (CFIT).

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.115 Approach flight technique – aeroplanes

CONTINUOUS DESCENT FINAL APPROACH (CDFA)

(a) Introduction

(1) Controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) is a major hazard in aviation. Most CFIT accidents occur in the final approach segment of non-precision approaches; the use of stabilised-approach criteria on a continuous descent with a constant, predetermined vertical path is seen as a major improvement in safety during the conduct of such approaches. Operators should ensure that the following techniques are adopted as widely as possible, for all approaches.

(2) The elimination of level flight segments at MDA close to the ground during approaches, and the avoidance of major changes in attitude and power/thrust close to the runway that can destabilise approaches, are seen as ways to reduce operational risks significantly.

(3) The term CDFA has been selected to cover a flight technique for any type of NPA operation.

(4) The advantages of CDFA are as follows:

(i) the technique enhances safe approach operations by the utilisation of standard operating practices;

(ii) the technique is similar to that used when flying an ILS approach, including when executing the missed approach and the associated missed approach procedure manoeuvre;

(iii) the aeroplane attitude may enable better acquisition of visual cues;

(iv) the technique may reduce pilot workload;

(v) the approach profile is fuel-efficient;

(vi) the approach profile affords reduced noise levels;

(vii) the technique affords procedural integration with APV operations; and

(viii) when used and the approach is flown in a stabilised manner, CDFA is the safest approach technique for all NPA operations.

(b) CDFA

(1) Continuous descent final approach is defined in Annex I to this Regulation.

(2) An approach is only suitable for application of a CDFA technique when it is flown along a nominal vertical profile: a nominal vertical profile is not forming part of the approach procedure design, but can be flown as a continuous descent. The nominal vertical profile information may be published or displayed on the approach chart to the pilot by depicting the nominal slope or range/distance vs. height. Approaches with a nominal vertical profile are considered to be:

(i) NDB, NDB/DME;

(ii) VOR, VOR/DME;

(iii) LOC, LOC/DME;

(iv) VDF, SRA; or

(v) GNSS/LNAV.

(3) Stabilised approach (SAp) is defined in Annex I to this Regulation.

(i) The control of the descent path is not the only consideration when using the CDFA technique. Control of the aeroplane's configuration and energy is also vital to the safe conduct of an approach.

(ii) The control of the flight path, described above as one of the specifications for conducting an SAp, should not be confused with the path specifications for using the CDFA technique. The predetermined path specification for conducting an SAp are established by the operator and published in the operations manual part B.

(iii) The predetermined approach slope specifications for applying the CDFA technique are established by the following:

(A) the published 'nominal' slope information when the approach has a nominal vertical profile; and

(B) the designated final-approach segment minimum of 3 NM, and maximum, when using timing techniques, of 8 NM.

(iv) An SAp will never have any level segment of flight at DA/H or MDA/H as applicable. This enhances safety by mandating a prompt missed approach procedure manoeuvre at DA/H or MDA/H.

(v) An approach using the CDFA technique will always be flown as an SAp, since this is a specification for applying CDFA. However, an SAp does not have to be flown using the CDFA technique, for example a visual approach.

CAT.OP.MPA.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations — helicopters

(a) An ARA shall only be undertaken if:

(1) the radar provides course guidance to ensure obstacle clearance; and

(2) either:

(i) the minimum descent height (MDH) is determined from a radio altimeter; or

(ii) the minimum descent altitude (MDA) plus an adequate margin is applied.

(b) ARAs to rigs or vessels under way shall only be conducted in multi-crew operations.

(c) The decision range shall provide adequate obstacle clearance in the missed approach from any destination for which an ARA is planned.

(d) The approach shall only be continued beyond decision range or below MDA/H when visual reference with the destination has been established.

(e) For single-pilot operations, appropriate increments shall be added to the MDA/H and decision range.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations – helicopters

GENERAL

(a) Before commencing the final approach the commander should ensure that a clear path exists on the radar screen for the final and missed approach segments. If lateral clearance from any obstacle will be less than 1 NM, the commander should:

(1) approach to a nearby target structure and thereafter proceed visually to the destination structure; or

(2) make the approach from another direction leading to a circling manoeuvre.

(b) The cloud ceiling should be sufficiently clear above the helideck to permit a safe landing.

(c) MDH should not be less than 50 ft above the elevation of the helideck.

(1) The MDH for an airborne radar approach should not be lower than:

(i) 200 ft by day; or

(ii) 300 ft by night.

(2) The MDH for an approach leading to a circling manoeuvre should not be lower than:

(i) 300 ft by day; or

(ii) 500 ft by night.

(d) MDA may only be used if the radio altimeter is unserviceable. The MDA should be a minimum of MDH +200 ft and should be based on a calibrated barometer at the destination or on the lowest forecast QNH for the region.

(e) The decision range should not be less than ¾ NM.

(f) The MDA/H for a single-pilot ARA should be 100 ft higher than that calculated using (c) and (d) above. The decision range should not be less than 1 NM.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.120 Airborne radar approaches (ARAs) for overwater operations – helicopters

GENERAL

(a) General

(1) The helicopter ARA procedure may have as many as five separate segments. These are the arrival, initial, intermediate, final and missed approach segments. In addition, the specifications of the circling manoeuvre to a landing under visual conditions should be considered. The individual approach segments can begin and end at designated fixes. However, the segments of an ARA may often begin at specified points where no fixes are available.

(2) The fixes, or points, are named to coincide with the associated segment. For example, the intermediate segment begins at the intermediate fix (IF) and ends at the final approach fix (FAF). Where no fix is available or appropriate, the segments begin and end at specified points; for example, intermediate point (IP) and final approach point (FAP). The order in which this GM discusses the segments is the order in which the pilot would fly them in a complete procedure: that is, from the arrival through initial and intermediate to a final approach and, if necessary, the missed approach.

(3) Only those segments that are required by local conditions applying at the time of the approach need be included in a procedure. In constructing the procedure, the final approach track, which should be orientated so as to be substantially into wind should be identified first as it is the least flexible and most critical of all the segments. When the origin and the orientation of the final approach have been determined, the other necessary segments should be integrated with it to produce an orderly manoeuvring pattern that does not generate an unacceptably high work-load for the flight crew.

(4) Examples of ARA procedures, vertical profile and missed approach procedures are contained in Figures 1 to 5.

(b) Obstacle environment

(1) Each segment of the ARA is located in an overwater area that has a flat surface at sea level. However, due to the passage of large vessels which are not required to notify their presence, the exact obstacle environment cannot be determined. As the largest vessels and structures are known to reach elevations exceeding 500 ft above mean sea level (AMSL), the uncontrolled offshore obstacle environment applying to the arrival, initial and intermediate approach segments can reasonably be assumed to be capable of reaching to at least 500 ft AMSL. But, in the case of the final approach and missed approach segments, specific areas are involved within which no radar returns are allowed. In these areas the height of wave crests and the possibility that small obstacles may be present that are not visible on radar results in an uncontrolled surface environment that extends to an elevation of 50 ft AMSL.

(2) Under normal circumstances, the relationship between the approach procedure and the obstacle environment is governed according to the concept that vertical separation is very easy to apply during the arrival, initial and intermediate segments, while horizontal separation, which is much more difficult to guarantee in an uncontrolled environment, is applied only in the final and missed approach segments.

(c) Arrival segment

The arrival segment commences at the last en-route navigation fix, where the aircraft leaves the helicopter route, and it ends either at the initial approach fix (IAF) or, if no course reversal, or similar manoeuvre is required, it ends at the IF. Standard en-route obstacle clearance criteria should be applied to the arrival segment.

(d) Initial approach segment

The initial approach segment is only required if a course reversal, race track, or arc procedure is necessary to join the intermediate approach track. The segment commences at the IAF and on completion of the manoeuvre ends at the IP. The minimum obstacle clearance (MOC) assigned to the initial approach segment is 1 000 ft.

(e) Intermediate approach segment

The intermediate approach segment commences at the IP, or in the case of straight-in approaches, where there is no initial approach segment, it commences at the IF. The segment ends at the FAP and should not be less than 2 NM in length. The purpose of the intermediate segment is to align and prepare the helicopter for the final approach. During the intermediate segment the helicopter should be lined up with the final approach track, the speed should be stabilised, the destination should be identified on the radar, and the final approach and missed approach areas should be identified and verified to be clear of radar returns. The MOC assigned to the intermediate segment is 500 ft.

(f) Final approach segment

(1) The final approach segment commences at the FAP and ends at the missed approach point (MAPt). The final approach area, which should be identified on radar, takes the form of a corridor between the FAP and the radar return of the destination. This corridor should not be less than 2 NM wide in order that the projected track of the helicopter does not pass closer than 1 NM to the obstacles lying outside the area.

(2) On passing the FAP, the helicopter will descend below the intermediate approach altitude, and follow a descent gradient which should not be steeper than 6.5 %. At this stage vertical separation from the offshore obstacle environment will be lost. However, within the final approach area the MDA/H will provide separation from the surface environment. Descent from 1 000 ft AMSL to 200 ft AMSL at a constant 6.5 % gradient will involve a horizontal distance of 2 NM. In order to follow the guideline that the procedure should not generate an unacceptably high work-load for the flight crew, the required actions of levelling at MDH, changing heading at the offset initiation point (OIP), and turning away at MAPt should not be planned to occur at the same NM time from the destination.

(3) During the final approach, compensation for drift should be applied and the heading which, if maintained, would take the helicopter directly to the destination, should be identified. It follows that, at an OIP located at a range of 1.5 NM, a heading change of 10° is likely to result in a track offset of 15° at 1 NM, and the extended centreline of the new track can be expected to have a mean position lying some 300 - 400 m to one side of the destination structure. The safety margin built in to the 0.75 NM decision range (DR) is dependent upon the rate of closure with the destination. Although the airspeed should be in the range 60 – 90 kt during the final approach, the ground speed, after due allowance for wind velocity, should be no greater than 70 kt.

(g) Missed approach segment

(1) The missed approach segment commences at the MAPt and ends when the helicopter reaches minimum en-route altitude. The missed approach manoeuvre is a 'turning missed approach' which should be of not less than 30° and should not, normally, be greater than 45°. A turn away of more than 45° does not reduce the collision risk factor any further, nor will it permit a closer DR. However, turns of more than 45° may increase the risk of pilot disorientation and, by inhibiting the rate of climb (especially in the case of an OEI missed approach procedure), may keep the helicopter at an extremely low level for longer than is desirable.

(2) The missed approach area to be used should be identified and verified as a clear area on the radar screen during the intermediate approach segment. The base of the missed approach area is a sloping surface at 2.5 % gradient starting from MDH at the MAPt. The concept is that a helicopter executing a turning missed approach will be protected by the horizontal boundaries of the missed approach area until vertical separation of more than 130 ft is achieved between the base of the area, and the offshore obstacle environment of 500 ft AMSL which prevails outside the area.

(3) A missed approach area, taking the form of a 45° sector orientated left or right of the final approach track, originating from a point 5 NM short of the destination, and terminating on an arc 3 NM beyond the destination, will normally satisfy the specifications of a 30° turning missed approach.

(h) The required visual reference

The visual reference required is that the destination should be in view in order that a safe landing may be carried out.

(i) Radar equipment

During the ARA procedure, colour mapping radar equipment with a 120° sector scan and 2.5 NM range scale selected, may result in dynamic errors of the following order:

(1) bearing/tracking error ±4.5° with 95 % accuracy;

(2) mean ranging error -250 m; or

(3) random ranging error ±250 m with 95 % accuracy.

Figure 1: Arc procedure

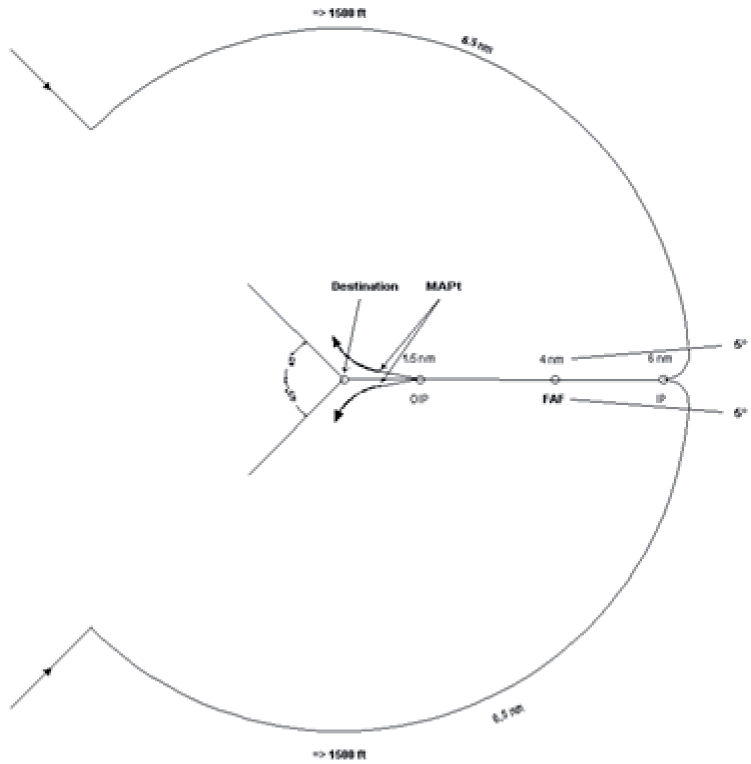


Figure 2: Base turn procedure – direct approach

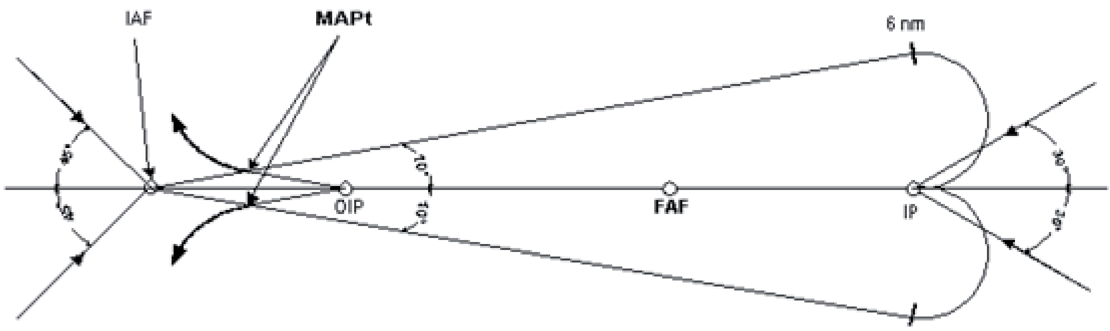
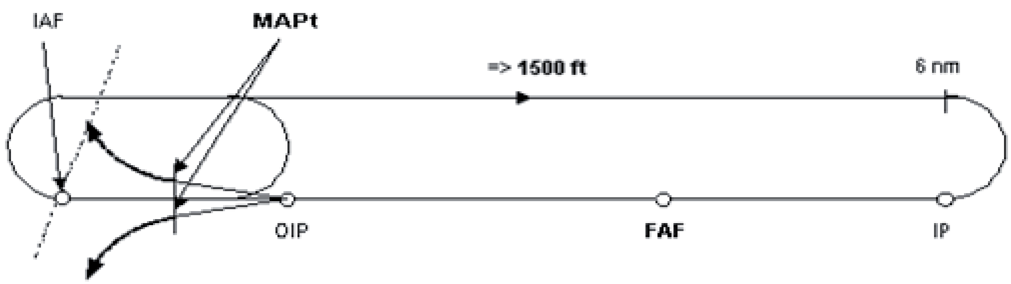


Figure 3: Holding pattern & race track procedure



AIR OPS

CAT.OP.MPA

Figure 4: Vertical profile

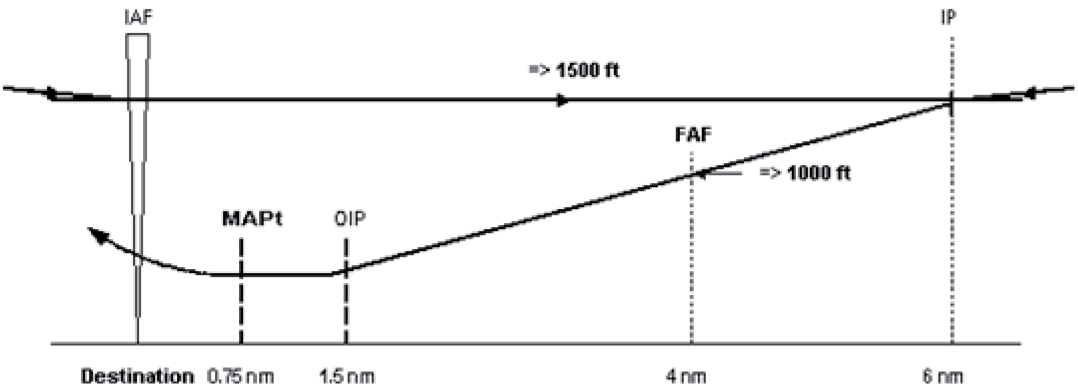
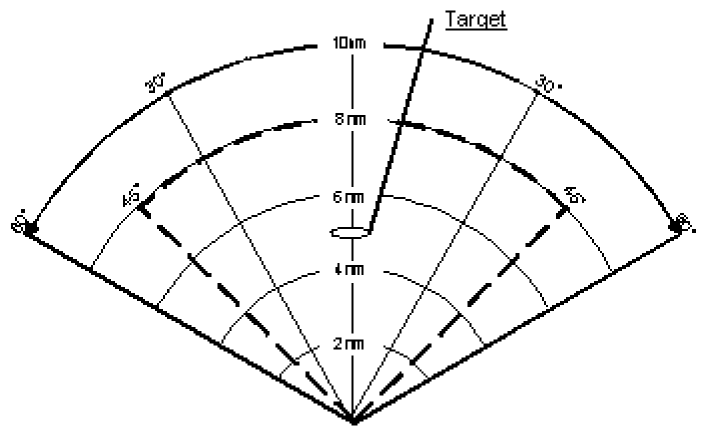


Figure 5: Missed approach area left & right



CAT.OP.MPA.125 Instrument departure and approach procedures

(a) The operator shall ensure that instrument departure and approach procedures established by the State of the aerodrome are used.

(b) Notwithstanding (a), the commander may accept an ATC clearance to deviate from a published departure or arrival route, provided obstacle clearance criteria are observed and full account is taken of the operating conditions. In any case, the final approach shall be flown visually or in accordance with the established instrument approach procedures.

(c) Notwithstanding (a), the operator may use procedures other than those referred to in (a) provided they have been approved by the State in which the aerodrome is located and are specified in the operations manual.

CAT.OP.MPA.130 Noise abatement procedures — aeroplanes

(a) Except for VFR operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplanes, the operator shall establish appropriate operating departure and arrival/approach procedures for each aeroplane type taking into account the need to minimise the effect of aircraft noise.

(b) The procedures shall:

(1) ensure that safety has priority over noise abatement; and

(2) be simple and safe to operate with no significant increase in crew workload during critical phases of flight.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.130 Noise abatement procedures – aeroplanes

NADP DESIGN

(a) For each aeroplane type two departure procedures should be defined, in accordance with ICAO Doc. 8168 (Procedures for Air Navigation Services, 'PANS-OPS'), Volume I:

(1) noise abatement departure procedure one (NADP 1), designed to meet the close-in noise abatement objective; and

(2) noise abatement departure procedure two (NADP 2), designed to meet the distant noise abatement objective.

(b) For each type of NADP (1 and 2), a single climb profile should be specified for use at all aerodromes, which is associated with a single sequence of actions. The NADP 1 and NADP 2 profiles may be identical.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.130 Noise abatement procedures – aeroplanes

TERMINOLOGY

(a) 'Climb profile' means in this context the vertical path of the NADP as it results from the pilot's actions (engine power reduction, acceleration, slats/flaps retraction).

(b) 'Sequence of actions' means the order in which these pilot's actions are done and their timing.

GENERAL

(c) The rule addresses only the vertical profile of the departure procedure. Lateral track has to comply with the standard instrument departure (SID).

EXAMPLE

(d) For a given aeroplane type, when establishing the distant NADP, the operator should choose either to reduce power first and then accelerate, or to accelerate first and then wait until slats/flaps are retracted before reducing power. The two methods constitute two different sequences of actions.

(e) For an aeroplane type, each of the two departure climb profiles may be defined by one sequence of actions (one for close-in, one for distant) and two above aerodrome level (AAL) altitudes/heights. These are:

(1) the altitude of the first pilot's action (generally power reduction with or without acceleration). This altitude should not be less than 800 ft AAL; or

(2) the altitude of the end of the noise abatement procedure. This altitude should usually not be more than 3 000 ft AAL.

These two altitudes may be runway specific when the aeroplane flight management system (FMS) has the relevant function which permits the crew to change thrust reduction and/or acceleration altitude/height. If the aeroplane is not FMS equipped or the FMS is not fitted with the relevant function, two fixed heights should be defined and used for each of the two NADPs.

CAT.OP.MPA.131 Noise abatement procedures — helicopters

(a) The operator shall ensure that take-off and landing procedures take into account the need to minimise the effect of helicopter noise.

(b) The procedures shall:

(1) ensure that safety has priority over noise abatement; and

(2) be simple and safe to operate with no significant increase in crew workload during critical phases of flight.

CAT.OP.MPA.135 Routes and areas of operation — general

(a) The operator shall ensure that operations are only conducted along routes, or within areas, for which:

(1) ground facilities and services, including meteorological services, adequate for the planned operation are provided;

(2) the performance of the aircraft is adequate to comply with minimum flight altitude requirements;

(3) the equipment of the aircraft meets the minimum requirements for the planned operation; and

(4) appropriate maps and charts are available.

(b) The operator shall ensure that operations are conducted in accordance with any restriction on the routes or the areas of operation specified by the competent authority.

(c) (a)(1) shall not apply to operations under VFR by day of other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft on flights that depart from and arrive at the same aerodrome or operating site.

CAT.OP.MPA.136 Routes and areas of operation — single-engined aeroplanes

The operator shall ensure that operations of single-engined aeroplanes are only conducted along routes, or within areas, where surfaces are available that permit a safe forced landing to be executed.

CAT.OP.MPA.137 Routes and areas of operation — helicopters

The operator shall ensure that:

(a) for helicopters operated in performance class 3, surfaces are available that permit a safe forced landing to be executed, except when the helicopter has an approval to operate in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420;

(b) for helicopters operated in performance class 3 and conducting 'coastal transit' operations, the operations manual contains procedures to ensure that the width of the coastal corridor, and the equipment carried, is consistent with the conditions prevailing at the time.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.137(b) Routes and areas of operation – helicopters

COASTAL TRANSIT

(a) General

(1) Helicopters operating overwater in performance class 3 have to have certain equipment fitted. This equipment varies with the distance from land that the helicopter is expected to operate. The aim of this GM is to discuss that distance, bring into focus what fit is required and to clarify the operator's responsibility, when a decision is made to conduct coastal transit operations.

(2) In the case of operations north of 45N or south of 45S, the coastal corridor facility may or may not be available in a particular state, as it is related to the State definition of open sea area as described in the definition of hostile environment.

(3) Where the term 'coastal transit' is used, it means the conduct of operations overwater within the coastal corridor in conditions where there is reasonable expectation that:

(i) the flight can be conducted safely in the conditions prevailing;

(ii) following an engine failure, a safe forced landing and successful evacuation can be achieved; and

(iii) survival of the crew and passengers can be assured until rescue is effected.

(4) Coastal corridor is a variable distance from the coastline to a maximum distance corresponding to three minutes' flying at normal cruising speed.

(b) Establishing the width of the coastal corridor

(1) The maximum distance from land of coastal transit, is defined as the boundary of a corridor that extends from the land, to a maximum distance of up to 3 minutes at normal cruising speed (approximately 5 - 6 NM). Land in this context includes sustainable ice (see (i) to (iii) below) and, where the coastal region includes islands, the surrounding waters may be included in the corridor and aggregated with the coast and each other. Coastal transit need not be applied to inland waterways, estuary crossing or river transit.

(i) In some areas, the formation of ice is such that it can be possible to land, or force land, without hazard to the helicopter or occupants. Unless the competent authority considers that operating to, or over, such ice fields is unacceptable, the operator may regard the definition of the 'land' extends to these areas.

(ii) The interpretation of the following rules may be conditional on (i) above:

– CAT.OP.MPA.137(a)(2)

– CAT.IDE.H.290

– CAT.IDE.H.295

– CAT.IDE.H.300

– CAT.IDE.H.320.

(iii) In view of the fact that such featureless and flat white surfaces could present a hazard and could lead to white-out conditions, the definition of land does not extend to flights over ice fields in the following rules:

– CAT.IDE.H.125 (d)

– CAT.IDE.H.145.

(2) The width of the corridor is variable from not safe to conduct operations in the conditions prevailing, to the maximum of 3 minutes wide. A number of factors will, on the day, indicate if it can be used – and how wide it can be. These factors will include but not be restricted to the following:

(i) meteorological conditions prevailing in the corridor;

(ii) instrument fit of the aircraft;

(iii) certification of the aircraft – particularly with regard to floats;

(iv) sea state;

(v) temperature of the water;

(vi) time to rescue; and

(vii) survival equipment carried.

(3) These can be broadly divided into three functional groups:

(i) those that meet the provisions for safe flying;

(ii) those that meet the provisions for a safe forced landing and evacuation; and

(iii) those that meet the provisions for survival following a forced landing and successful evacuation.

(c) Provision for safe flying

(1) It is generally recognised that when flying out of sight of land in certain meteorological conditions, such as occur in high pressure weather patterns (goldfish bowl – no horizon, light winds and low visibility), the absence of a basic panel (and training) can lead to disorientation. In addition, lack of depth perception in these conditions demands the use of a radio altimeter with an audio voice warning as an added safety benefit – particularly when autorotation to the surface of the water may be required.

(2) In these conditions the helicopter, without the required instruments and radio altimeter, should be confined to a corridor in which the pilot can maintain reference using the visual cues on the land.

(d) Provision for a safe forced landing and evacuation

(1) Weather and sea state both affect the outcome of an autorotation following an engine failure. It is recognised that the measurement of sea state is problematical and when assessing such conditions, good judgement has to be exercised by the operator and the commander.

(2) Where floats have been certificated only for emergency use (and not for ditching), operations should be limited to those sea states that meet the provisions for such use – where a safe evacuation is possible.

Ditching certification requires compliance with a comprehensive number of requirements relating to rotorcraft water entry, flotation and trim, occupant egress and occupant survival. Emergency flotation systems, generally fitted to smaller CS-27 rotorcraft, are approved against a broad specification that the equipment should perform its intended function and not hazard the rotorcraft or its occupants. In practice, the most significant difference between ditching and emergency flotation systems is substantiation of the water entry phase. Ditching rules call for water entry procedures and techniques to be established and promulgated in the AFM. The fuselage/flotation equipment should thereafter be shown to be able to withstand loads under defined water entry conditions which relate to these procedures. For emergency flotation equipment, there is no specification to define the water entry technique and no specific conditions defined for the structural substantiation.

(e) Provisions for survival

(1) Survival of crew members and passengers, following a successful autorotation and evacuation, is dependent on the clothing worn, the equipment carried and worn, the temperature of the sea and the sea state. Search and rescue (SAR) response/capability consistent with the anticipated exposure should be available before the conditions in the corridor can be considered non-hostile.

(2) Coastal transit can be conducted (including north of 45N and south of 45S – when the definition of open sea areas allows) providing the provisions of (c) and (d) are met, and the conditions for a non-hostile coastal corridor are satisfied.

CAT.OP.MPA.140 Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval

(a) Unless approved by the competent authority in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA), Subpart F, the operator shall not operate a two-engined aeroplane over a route that contains a point further from an adequate aerodrome, under standard conditions in still air, than:

(1) for performance class A aeroplanes with either:

(i) a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of 20 or more; or

(ii) a maximum take-off mass of 45 360 kg or more,

the distance flown in 60 minutes at the one-engine-inoperative (OEI) cruising speed determined in accordance with (b);

(2) for performance class A aeroplanes with:

(i) an MOPSC of 19 or less; and

(ii) a maximum take-off mass less than 45 360 kg,

the distance flown in 120 minutes or, subject to approval by the competent authority, up to 180 minutes for turbo-jet aeroplanes, at the OEI cruise speed determined in accordance with (b);

(3) for performance class B or C aeroplanes:

(i) the distance flown in 120 minutes at the OEI cruise speed determined in accordance with (b); or

(ii) 300 NM, whichever is less.

(b) The operator shall determine a speed for the calculation of the maximum distance to an adequate aerodrome for each two-engined aeroplane type or variant operated, not exceeding VMO (maximum operating speed) based upon the true airspeed that the aeroplane can maintain with one engine inoperative.

(c) The operator shall include the following data, specific to each type or variant, in the operations manual:

(1) the determined OEI cruising speed; and

(2) the determined maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome.

(d) To obtain the approval referred to in (a)(2), the operator shall provide evidence that:

(1) the aeroplane/engine combination holds an extended range operations with two-engined aeroplanes (ETOPS) type design and reliability approval for the intended operation;

(2) a set of conditions has been implemented to ensure that the aeroplane and its engines are maintained to meet the necessary reliability criteria; and

(3) the flight crew and all other operations personnel involved are trained and suitably qualified to conduct the intended operation.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.140(c) Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval

OPERATION OF NON-ETOPS COMPLIANT TWIN TURBO-JET AEROPLANES WITH MOPSC OF 19 OR LESS AND MCTOM LESS THAN 45 360 KG BETWEEN 120 AND 180 MINUTES FROM AN ADEQUATE AERODROME

(a) For operations between 120 and 180 minutes, due account should be taken of the aeroplane's design and capabilities as outlined below and the operator's experience related to such operations. Relevant information should be included in the operations manual and the operator's maintenance procedures. The term 'the aeroplane's design' in this AMC does not imply any additional type design approval specifications beyond the applicable original type certificate (TC) specifications.

(b) Systems capability

Aeroplanes should be certified to CS-25 as appropriate or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25). With respect to the capability of the aeroplane systems, the objective is that the aeroplane is capable of a safe diversion from the maximum diversion distance with particular emphasis on operations with OEI or with degraded system capability. To this end, the operator should give consideration to the capability of the following systems to support such a diversion:

(1) Propulsion systems: the aeroplane engine should meet the applicable specifications prescribed in CS-25 and CS-E or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25, FAR-E), concerning engine TC, installation and system operation. In addition to the performance standards established by the Agency or competent authority at the time of engine certification, the engines should comply with all subsequent mandatory safety standards specified by the Agency or competent authority, including those necessary to maintain an acceptable level of reliability. In addition, consideration should be given to the effects of extended duration single-engine operation (e.g. the effects of higher power demands such as bleed and electrical).

(2) Airframe systems: with respect to electrical power, three or more reliable as defined by CS-25 or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25) and independent electrical power sources should be available, each of which should be capable of providing power for all essential services which should at least include the following:

(i) sufficient instruments for the flight crew providing, as a minimum, attitude, heading, airspeed and altitude information;

(ii) appropriate pitot heating;

(iii) adequate navigation capability;

(iv) adequate radio communication and intercommunication capability;

(v) adequate flight deck and instrument lighting and emergency lighting;

(vi) adequate flight controls;

(vii) adequate engine controls and restart capability with critical type fuel (from the stand-point of flame-out and restart capability) and with the aeroplane initially at the maximum relight altitude;

(viii) adequate engine instrumentation;

(ix) adequate fuel supply system capability including such fuel boost and fuel transfer functions that may be necessary for extended duration single or dual-engine operation;

(x) such warnings, cautions and indications as are required for continued safe flight and landing;

(xi) fire protection (engines and auxiliary power unit (APU));

(xii) adequate ice protection including windshield de-icing; and

(xiii) adequate control of the flight crew compartment and cabin environment including heating and pressurisation.

The equipment including avionics necessary for extended diversion times should have the ability to operate acceptably following failures in the cooling system or electrical power systems.

For single-engine operations, the remaining power electrical, hydraulic, and pneumatic should continue to be available at levels necessary to permit continued safe flight and landing, and to provide those services necessary for the overall safety of the passengers and crew. As a minimum, following the failure of any two of the three electrical power sources, the remaining source should be capable of providing power for all of the items necessary for the duration of any diversion. If one or more of the required electrical power sources are provided by an APU, hydraulic system or air driven generator/ram air turbine (ADG/RAT), the following criteria should apply as appropriate:

(A) to ensure hydraulic power (hydraulic motor generator) reliability, it may be necessary to provide two or more independent energy sources;

(B) the ADG/RAT, if fitted, should not require engine dependent power for deployment; and

(C) the APU should meet the criteria in (b)(3).

(3) APU: the APU, if required for extended range operations, should be certified as an essential APU and should meet the applicable CS-25 and CS-APU provisions or equivalent (e.g. FAR-25).

(4) Fuel supply system: consideration should include the capability of the fuel supply system to provide sufficient fuel for the entire diversion taking account of aspects such as fuel boost and fuel transfer.

(c) Engine events and corrective action

(1) All engine events and operating hours should be reported by the operator to the airframe and engine supplemental type certificate (STC) holders as well as to the competent authority.

(2) These events should be evaluated by the operator in consultation with the competent authority and with the engine and airframe (S)TC holders. The competent authority may consult the Agency to ensure that world wide data are evaluated.

(3) Where statistical assessment alone is not applicable, e.g. where the fleet size or accumulated flight hours are small, individual engine events should be reviewed on a case-by-case basis.

(4) The evaluation or statistical assessment, when available, may result in corrective action or the application of operational restrictions.

(5) Engine events could include engine shutdowns, both on ground and in-flight, excluding normal training events, including flameout, occurrences where the intended thrust level was not achieved or where crew action was taken to reduce thrust below the normal level for whatever reason, and unscheduled removals.

(6) Arrangements to ensure that all corrective actions required by the Agency are implemented.

(d) Maintenance

The maintenance programme in accordance with Annex I to Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003[26] (Part-M) should be based upon reliability programmes including, but not limited to, the following elements:

(1) engine oil consumption programmes: such programmes are intended to support engine condition trend monitoring; and

(2) engine condition monitoring programme: a programme for each engine that monitors engine performance parameters and trends of degradation that provides for maintenance actions to be undertaken prior to significant performance loss or mechanical failure.

(e) Flight crew training

Flight crew training for this type of operation should include, in addition to the requirements of Subpart FC of Annex III (ORO.FC), particular emphasis on the following:

(1) Fuel management: verifying required fuel on board prior to departure and monitoring fuel on board en-route including calculation of fuel remaining. Procedures should provide for an independent cross-check of fuel quantity indicators, e.g. fuel flow used to calculate fuel burned compared to indicate fuel remaining. Confirmation that the fuel remaining is sufficient to satisfy the critical fuel reserves.

(2) Procedures for single and multiple failures in-flight that may give rise to go/no-go and diversion decisions – policy and guidelines to aid the flight crew in the diversion decision making process and the need for constant awareness of the closest weather-permissible alternate aerodrome in terms of time.

[26] OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1.

(3) OEI performance data: drift down procedures and OEI service ceiling data.

(4) Weather reports and flight requirements: meteorological aerodrome reports (METARs) and aerodrome forecast (TAF) reports and obtaining in-flight weather updates on the en-route alternate (ERA), destination and destination alternate aerodromes. Consideration should also be given to forecast winds including the accuracy of the forecast compared to actual wind experienced during flight and meteorological conditions along the expected flight path at the OEI cruising altitude and throughout the approach and landing.

(f) Pre-departure check

A pre-departure check, additional to the pre-flight inspection required by Part-M should be reflected in the operations manual. Flight crew members who are responsible for the pre-departure check of an aeroplane should be fully trained and competent to do it. The training programme required should cover all relevant tasks with particular emphasis on checking required fluid levels.

(g) MEL

The MEL should take into account all items specified by the manufacturer relevant to operations in accordance with this AMC.

(h) Dispatch/flight planning rules

The operator’s dispatch rules should address the following:

(1) Fuel and oil supply: an aeroplane should not be dispatched on an extended range flight unless it carries sufficient fuel and oil to comply with the applicable operational requirements and any additional reserves determined in accordance with the following:

(i) Critical fuel scenario – the critical point is the furthest point from an alternate aerodrome assuming a simultaneous failure of an engine and the pressurisation system. For those aeroplanes that are type certificated to operate above flight level 450, the critical point is the furthest point from an alternate aerodrome assuming an engine failure. The operator should carry additional fuel for the worst case fuel burn condition (one engine vs. two engines operating), if this is greater than the additional fuel calculated in accordance with the fuel requirements in CAT.OP.MPA, as follows:

(A) fly from the critical point to an alternate aerodrome:

(a) at 10 000 ft;

(b) at 25 000 ft or the single-engine ceiling, whichever is lower, provided that all occupants can be supplied with and use oxygen for the time required to fly from the critical point to an alternate aerodrome; or

(c) at the single-engine ceiling, provided that the aeroplane is type certified to operate above flight level 450;

(B) descend and hold at 1 500 ft for 15 minutes in international standard atmosphere (ISA) conditions;

(C) descend to the applicable MDA/DH followed by a missed approach (taking into account the complete missed approach procedure); followed by

(D) a normal approach and landing.

(ii) Ice protection: additional fuel used when operating in icing conditions (e.g. operation of ice protection systems (engine/airframe as applicable)) and, when manufacturer’s data are available, take account of ice accumulation on unprotected surfaces if icing conditions are likely to be encountered during a diversion.

(iii) APU operation: if an APU has to be used to provide additional electrical power, consideration should be given to the additional fuel required.

(2) Communication facilities: the availability of communications facilities in order to allow reliable two-way voice communications between the aeroplane and the appropriate ATC unit at OEI cruise altitudes.

(3) Aircraft technical log review to ensure proper MEL procedures, deferred items, and required maintenance checks completed.

(4) ERA aerodrome(s): ensuring that ERA aerodromes are available for the intended route, within the distance flown in 180 minutes based upon the OEI cruising speed which is a speed within the certificated limits of the aeroplane, selected by the operator and approved by the competent author-

ity, confirming that, based on the available meteorological information, the weather conditions at ERA aerodromes are at or above the applicable minima for the period of time during which the aerodrome(s) may be used.

Table 1: Planning minima

Approach facility	Alternate aerodrome ceiling	Weather minima RVR/VIS
PA	DA/H +200 ft	RVR/VIS +800 m
NPA Circling approach	MDA/H +400 ft	RVR/VIS +1 500 m

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.140(c) Maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome for two-engined aeroplanes without an ETOPS approval

ONE-ENGINE-INOPERATIVE (OEI) CRUISING SPEED

The OEI cruising speed is intended to be used solely for establishing the maximum distance from an adequate aerodrome.

CAT.OP.MPA.145 Establishment of minimum flight altitudes

(a) The operator shall establish for all route segments to be flown:

(1) minimum flight altitudes that provide the required terrain clearance, taking into account the requirements of Subpart C; and

(2) a method for the flight crew to determine those altitudes.

(b) The method for establishing minimum flight altitudes shall be approved by the competent authority.

(c) Where the minimum flight altitudes established by the operator and a State overflown differ, the higher values shall apply.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes

CONSIDERATIONS FOR ESTABLISHING MINIMUM FLIGHT ALTITUDES

(a) The operator should take into account the following factors when establishing minimum flight altitudes:

(1) the accuracy with which the position of the aircraft can be determined;

(2) the probable inaccuracies in the indications of the altimeters used;

(3) the characteristics of the terrain, such as sudden changes in the elevation, along the routes or in the areas where operations are to be conducted;

(4) the probability of encountering unfavourable meteorological conditions, such as severe turbulence and descending air currents; and

(5) possible inaccuracies in aeronautical charts.

(b) The operator should also consider:

(1) corrections for temperature and pressure variations from standard values;

(2) ATC requirements; and

(3) any foreseeable contingencies along the planned route.

AMC1.1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes

CONSIDERATIONS FOR ESTABLISHING MINIMUM FLIGHT ALTITUDES

This AMC provides another means of complying with the rule for VFR operations of other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft by day, compared to that presented in AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a). The safety objective should be satisfied if the operator ensures that operations are only conducted along such routes or within such areas for which a safe terrain clearance can be maintained and take account of such factors as temperature, terrain and unfavourable meteorological conditions.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.145(a) Establishment of minimum flight altitudes

MINIMUM FLIGHT ALTITUDES

(a) The following are examples of some of the methods available for calculating minimum flight altitudes.

(b) KSS formula:

(1) Minimum obstacle clearance altitude (MOCA)

(i) MOCA is the sum of:

(A) the maximum terrain or obstacle elevation, whichever is higher; plus

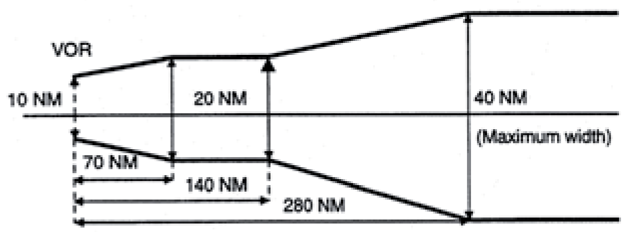
(B) 1 000 ft for elevation up to and including 6 000 ft; or

(C) 2 000 ft for elevation exceeding 6 000 ft rounded up to the next 100 ft.

(ii) The lowest MOCA to be indicated is 2 000 ft.

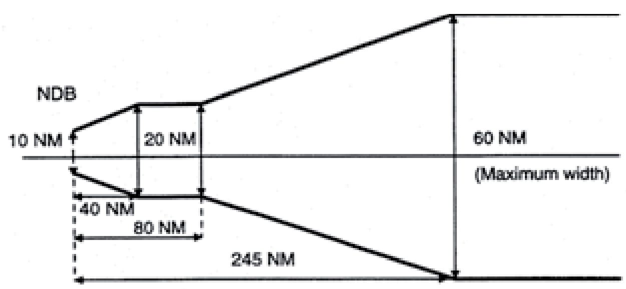
(iii) From a VOR station, the corridor width is defined as a borderline starting 5 NM either side of the VOR, diverging 4° from centreline until a width of 20 NM is reached at 70 NM out, thence paralleling the centreline until 140 NM out, thence again diverging 4° until a maximum width of 40 NM is reached at 280 NM out. Thereafter the width remains constant (see Figure 1).

Figure 1: Corridor width from a VOR station



(iv) From a non-directional beacon (NDB), similarly, the corridor width is defined as a borderline starting 5 NM either side of the NDB diverging 7° until a width of 20 NM is reached 40 NM out, thence paralleling the centreline until 80 NM out, thence again diverging 7° until a maximum width of 60 NM is reached 245 NM out. Thereafter the width remains constant (see Figure 2).

Figure 2: Corridor width from an NDB



(v) MOCA does not cover any overlapping of the corridor.

(2) Minimum off-route altitude (MORA). MORA is calculated for an area bounded by each or every second LAT/LONG square on the route facility chart (RFC) / terminal approach chart (TAC) and is based on a terrain clearance as follows:

(i) terrain with elevation up to 6 000 ft (2 000 m) – 1 000 ft above the highest terrain and obstructions;

(ii) terrain with elevation above 6 000 ft (2 000 m) – 2 000 ft above the highest terrain and obstructions.

(c) Jeppesen formula (see Figure 3)

(1) MORA is a minimum flight altitude computed by Jeppesen from current operational navigation charts (ONCs) or world aeronautical charts (WACs). Two types of MORAs are charted which are:

(i) route MORAs e.g. 9800a; and

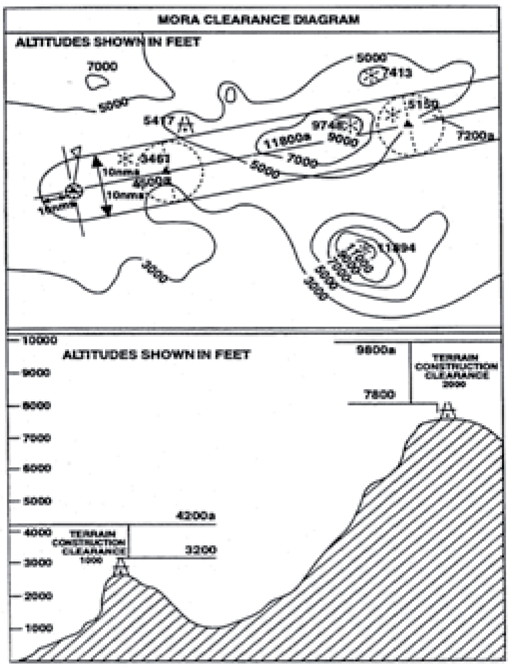
(ii) grid MORAs e.g. 98.

(2) Route MORA values are computed on the basis of an area extending 10 NM to either side of route centreline and including a 10 NM radius beyond the radio fix/reporting point or mileage break defining the route segment.

(3) MORA values clear all terrain and man-made obstacles by 1 000 ft in areas where the highest terrain elevation or obstacles are up to 5 000 ft. A clearance of 2 000 ft is provided above all terrain or obstacles that are 5 001 ft and above.

(4) A grid MORA is an altitude computed by Jeppesen and the values are shown within each grid formed by charted lines of latitude and longitude. Figures are shown in thousands and hundreds of feet (omitting the last two digits so as to avoid chart congestion). Values followed by ± are believed not to exceed the altitudes shown. The same clearance criteria as explained in (c)(3) apply.

Figure 3: Jeppesen formula



(d) ATLAS formula

(1) Minimum en-route altitude (MEA). Calculation of the MEA is based on the elevation of the highest point along the route segment concerned (extending from navigational aid to navigational aid) within a distance on either side of track as specified in Table 1 below:

Table 1: Minimum safe en-route altitude

Segment length	Distance either side of track
Up to 100 NM	10 NM *
More than 100 NM	10 % of segment length up to a maximum of 60 NM **

*: This distance may be reduced to 5 NM within terminal control areas (TMAs) where, due to the number and type of available navigational aids, a high degree of navigational accuracy is warranted.

**: In exceptional cases, where this calculation results in an operationally impracticable value, an additional special MEA may be calculated based on a distance of not less than 10 NM either side of track. Such special MEA will be shown together with an indication of the actual width of protected airspace.

(2) The MEA is calculated by adding an increment to the elevation specified above as appropriate, following Table 2 below. The resulting value is adjusted to the nearest 100 ft.

Table 2: Increment added to the elevation *

Elevation of highest point	Increment
Not above 5 000 ft	1 500 ft
Above 5 000 ft but not above 10 000 ft	2 000 ft
Above 10 000 ft	10 % of elevation plus 1 000 ft

*: For the last route segment ending over the initial approach fix, a reduction to 1 000 ft is permissible within TMAs where, due to the number and type of available navigation aids, a high degree of navigational accuracy is warranted.

(3) Minimum safe grid altitude (MGA). Calculation of the MGA is based on the elevation of the highest point within the respective grid area.

The MGA is calculated by adding an increment to the elevation specified above as appropriate, following Table 3 below. The resulting value is adjusted to the nearest 100 ft.

Table 3: Minimum safe grid altitude

Elevation of highest point	Increment
Not above 5 000 ft	1 500 ft
Above 5 000 ft but not above 10 000 ft	2 000 ft
Above 10 000 ft	10 % of elevation plus 1 000 ft

(e) Lido formula

(1) Minimum terrain clearance altitude (MTCA)

The MTCA represents an altitude providing terrain and obstacle clearance for all airways/ATS routes, all standard terminal arrival route (STAR) segments up to IAF or equivalent end point and for selected standard instrument departures (SIDs).

The MTCA is calculated by Lido and covers terrain and obstacle clearance relevant for air navigation with the following buffers:

(i) Horizontal:

(A) for SID and STAR procedures 5 NM either side of centre line; and

(B) for airways/ATS routes 10 NM either side of centre line.

(ii) Vertical:

(A) 1 000 ft up to 6 000 ft; and

(B) 2 000 ft above 6 000 ft.

MTCAs are always shown in feet. The lowest indicated MTCA is 3 100 ft.

(2) Minimum grid altitude (MGA)

MGA represents the lowest safe altitude which can be flown off-track. The MGA is calculated by rounding up the elevation of the highest obstruction within the respective grid area to the next 100 ft and adding an increment of

(i) 1 000 ft for terrain or obstructions up to 6 000 ft; and

(ii) 2 000 ft for terrain or obstructions above 6 000 ft.

MGA is shown in hundreds of feet. The lowest indicated MGA is 2 000 ft. This value is also provided for terrain and obstacles that would result in an MGA below 2 000 ft. An exception is over water areas where the MGA can be omitted.

CAT.OP.MPA.150 Fuel policy

(a) The operator shall establish a fuel policy for the purpose of flight planning and in-flight replanning to ensure that every flight carries sufficient fuel for the planned operation and reserves to cover deviations from the planned operation. The fuel policy and any change to it require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) The operator shall ensure that the planning of flights is based upon at least:

(1) procedures contained in the operations manual and:

(i) data provided by the aircraft manufacturer; or

(ii) current aircraft-specific data derived from a fuel consumption monitoring system;

and

(2) the operating conditions under which the flight is to be conducted including:

(i) aircraft fuel consumption data;

(ii) anticipated masses;

(iii) expected meteorological conditions; and

(iv) air navigation services provider(s) procedures and restrictions.

(c) The operator shall ensure that the pre-flight calculation of usable fuel required for a flight includes:

(1) taxi fuel;

(2) trip fuel;

(3) reserve fuel consisting of:

(i) contingency fuel;

(ii) alternate fuel, if a destination alternate aerodrome is required;

(iii) final reserve fuel; and

(iv) additional fuel, if required by the type of operation;

and

(4) extra fuel if required by the commander.

(d) The operator shall ensure that in-flight replanning procedures for calculating usable fuel required when a flight has to proceed along a route or to a destination aerodrome other than originally planned includes:

(1) trip fuel for the remainder of the flight; and

(2) reserve fuel consisting of:

(i) contingency fuel;

(ii) alternate fuel, if a destination alternate aerodrome is required;

(iii) final reserve fuel; and

(iv) additional fuel, if required by the type of operation;

and

(3) extra fuel if required by the commander.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy

PLANNING CRITERIA − AEROPLANES

The operator should base the defined fuel policy, including calculation of the amount of fuel to be on board for departure, on the following planning criteria:

(a) Basic procedure

The usable fuel to be on board for departure should be the sum of the following:

(1) Taxi fuel, which should not be less than the amount, expected to be used prior to take-off. Local conditions at the departure aerodrome and auxiliary power unit (APU) consumption should be taken into account.

(2) Trip fuel, which should include:

(i) fuel for take-off and climb from aerodrome elevation to initial cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;

(ii) fuel from top of climb to top of descent, including any step climb/descent;

(iii) fuel from top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure; and

(iv) fuel for approach and landing at the destination aerodrome.

(3) Contingency fuel, except as provided for in (b), which should be the higher of:

(i) Either:

(A) 5 % of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight replanning, 5 % of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight;

(B) not less than 3 % of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight replanning, 3 % of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight, provided that an en-route alternate (ERA) aerodrome is available;

(C) an amount of fuel sufficient for 20 minutes flying time based upon the planned trip fuel consumption, provided that the operator has established a fuel consumption monitoring programme for individual aeroplanes and uses valid data determined by means of such a programme for fuel calculation; or

(D) an amount of fuel based on a statistical method that ensures an appropriate statistical coverage of the deviation from the planned to the actual trip fuel. This method is used to monitor the fuel consumption on each city pair/aeroplane combination and the operator uses this data for a statistical analysis to calculate contingency fuel for that city pair/aeroplane combination;

(ii) or an amount to fly for 5 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m), above the destination aerodrome in standard conditions.

(4) Alternate fuel, which should:

(i) include:

(A) fuel for a missed approach from the applicable DA/H or MDA/H at the destination aerodrome to missed approach altitude, taking into account the complete missed approach procedure;

(B) fuel for climb from missed approach altitude to cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;

(C) fuel for cruise from top of climb to top of descent, taking into account the expected routing;

(D) fuel for descent from top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure; and

(E) fuel for executing an approach and landing at the destination alternate aerodrome;

(ii) where two destination alternate aerodromes are required, be sufficient to proceed to the alternate aerodrome that requires the greater amount of alternate fuel.

(5) Final reserve fuel, which should be:

(i) for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, fuel to fly for 45 minutes; or

(ii) for aeroplanes with turbine engines, fuel to fly for 30 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above aerodrome elevation in standard conditions, calculated with the estimated mass on arrival at the destination alternate aerodrome or the destination aerodrome, when no destination alternate aerodrome is required.

(6) The minimum additional fuel, which should permit:

(i) the aeroplane to descend as necessary and proceed to an adequate alternate aerodrome in the event of engine failure or loss of pressurisation, whichever requires the greater amount of fuel based on the assumption that such a failure occurs at the most critical point along the route, and

(A) hold there for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above aerodrome elevation in standard conditions; and

(B) make an approach and landing,

except that additional fuel is only required if the minimum amount of fuel calculated in accordance with (a)(2) to (a)(5) is not sufficient for such an event; and

(ii) holding for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above destination aerodrome elevation in standard conditions, when a flight is operated without a destination alternate aerodrome.

(7) Extra fuel, which should be at the discretion of the commander.

(b) Reduced contingency fuel (RCF) procedure

If the operator's fuel policy includes pre-flight planning to a destination 1 aerodrome (commercial destination) with an RCF procedure using a decision point along the route and a destination 2 aerodrome (optional refuel destination), the amount of usable fuel, on board for departure, should be the greater of (b)(1) or (b)(2):

(1) The sum of:

(i) taxi fuel;

(ii) trip fuel to the destination 1 aerodrome, via the decision point;

(iii) contingency fuel equal to not less than 5 % of the estimated fuel consumption from the decision point to the destination 1 aerodrome;

(iv) alternate fuel or no alternate fuel if the decision point is at less than six hours from the destination 1 aerodrome and the requirements of CAT.OP.MPA.180(b)(2), are fulfilled;

(v) final reserve fuel;

(vi) additional fuel; and

(vii) extra fuel if required by the commander.

(2) The sum of:

(i) taxi fuel;

(ii) trip fuel to the destination 2 aerodrome, via the decision point;

(iii) contingency fuel equal to not less than the amount calculated in accordance with (a)(3) above from departure aerodrome to the destination 2 aerodrome;

(iv) alternate fuel, if a destination 2 alternate aerodrome is required;

(v) final reserve fuel;

(vi) additional fuel; and

(vii) extra fuel if required by the commander.

(c) Predetermined point (PDP) procedure

If the operator's fuel policy includes planning to a destination alternate aerodrome where the distance between the destination aerodrome and the destination alternate aerodrome is such that a flight can only be routed via a predetermined point to one of these aerodromes, the amount of usable fuel, on board for departure, should be the greater of (c)(1) or (c)(2):

(1) The sum of:

(i) taxi fuel;

(ii) trip fuel from the departure aerodrome to the destination aerodrome, via the predetermined point;

(iii) contingency fuel calculated in accordance with (a)(3);

(iv) additional fuel if required, but not less than:

(A) for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines, fuel to fly for 45 minutes plus 15 % of the flight time planned to be spent at cruising level or 2 hours, whichever is less; or

(B) for aeroplanes with turbine engines, fuel to fly for 2 hours at normal cruise consumption above the destination aerodrome,

this should not be less than final reserve fuel; and

(v) extra fuel if required by the commander.

(2) The sum of:

(i) taxi fuel;

(ii) trip fuel from the departure aerodrome to the destination alternate aerodrome, via the predetermined point;

(iii) contingency fuel calculated in accordance with (a)(3);

(iv) additional fuel if required, but not less than:

(A) for aeroplanes with reciprocating engines: fuel to fly for 45 minutes; or

(B) for aeroplanes with turbine engines: fuel to fly for 30 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above the destination alternate aerodrome elevation in standard conditions,

this should not be less than final reserve fuel; and

(v) extra fuel if required by the commander.

(d) Isolated aerodrome procedure

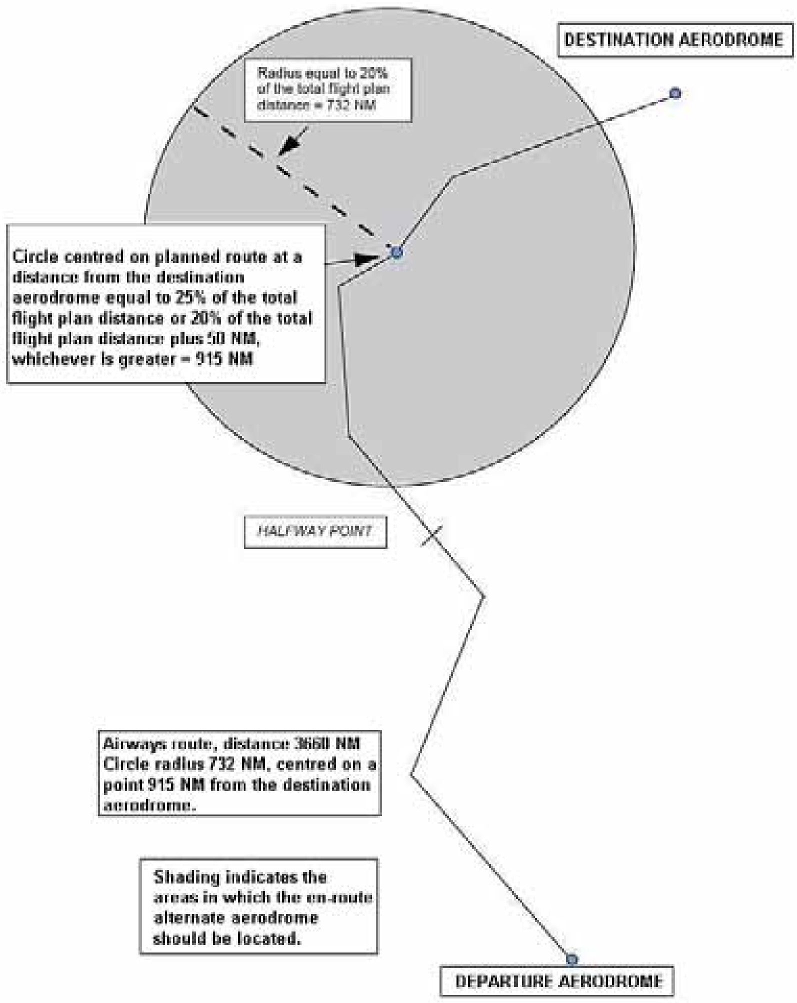
If the operator's fuel policy includes planning to an isolated aerodrome, the last possible point of diversion to any available en-route alternate (ERA) aerodrome should be used as the predetermined point.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy

LOCATION OF THE FUEL EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE (FUEL ERA) AERODROME

(a) The fuel ERA aerodrome should be located within a circle having a radius equal to 20 % of the total flight plan distance, the centre of which lies on the planned route at a distance from the destination aerodrome of 25 % of the total flight plan distance, or at least 20 % of the total flight plan distance plus 50 NM, whichever is greater. All distances should be calculated in still air conditions (see Figure 1).

Figure 1: Location of the fuel ERA aerodrome for the purposes of reducing contingency fuel to 3%



AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy

PLANNING CRITERIA – HELICOPTERS

The operator should base the company fuel policy, including calculation of the amount of fuel to be carried, on the following planning criteria:

(a) The amount of:

(1) taxi fuel, which should not be less than the amount expected to be used prior to take-off. Local conditions at the departure site and APU consumption should be taken into account;

(2) trip fuel, which should include fuel:

(i) for take-off and climb from aerodrome elevation to initial cruising level/altitude, taking into account the expected departure routing;

(ii) from top of climb to top of descent, including any step climb/descent;

(iii) from top of descent to the point where the approach procedure is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure; and

(iv) for approach and landing at the destination site;

(3) contingency fuel, which should be:

(i) for IFR flights, or for VFR flights in a hostile environment, 10 % of the planned trip fuel; or

(ii) for VFR flights in a non-hostile environment, 5 % of the planned trip fuel;

(4) alternate fuel, which should be:

(i) fuel for a missed approach from the applicable MDA/DH at the destination aerodrome to missed approach altitude, taking into account the complete missed approach procedure;

(ii) fuel for a climb from missed approach altitude to cruising level/altitude;

(iii) fuel for the cruise from top of climb to top of descent;

(iv) fuel for descent from top of descent to the point where the approach is initiated, taking into account the expected arrival procedure;

(v) fuel for executing an approach and landing at the destination alternate selected in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.181; and

(vi) or for helicopters operating to or from helidecks located in a hostile environment, 10 % of (a)(4)(i) to (v);

(5) final reserve fuel, which should be:

(i) for VFR flights navigating by day with reference to visual landmarks, 20 minutes' fuel at best range speed; or

(ii) for IFR flights or when flying VFR and navigating by means other than by reference to visual landmarks or at night, fuel to fly for 30 minutes at holding speed at 1 500 ft (450 m) above the destination aerodrome in standard conditions calculated with the estimated mass on arrival above the alternate, or the destination, when no alternate is required;

and

(6) extra fuel, which should be at the discretion of the commander.

(b) Isolated aerodrome IFR procedure

If the operator's fuel policy includes planning to an isolated aerodrome flying IFR, or when flying VFR and navigating by means other than by reference to visual landmarks, for which a destination alternate does not exist, the amount of fuel at departure should include:

(1) taxi fuel;

(2) trip fuel;

(3) contingency fuel calculated in accordance with (a)(3);

(4) additional fuel to fly for 2 hours at holding speed, including final reserve fuel; and

(5) extra fuel at the discretion of the commander.

(c) Sufficient fuel should be carried at all times to ensure that following the failure of an engine occurring at the most critical point along the route, the helicopter is able to:

(1) descend as necessary and proceed to an adequate aerodrome;

(2) hold there for 15 minutes at 1 500 ft (450 m) above aerodrome elevation in standard conditions; and

(3) make an approach and landing.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) Fuel policy

CONTINGENCY FUEL STATISTICAL METHOD − AEROPLANES

(a) As an example, the following values of statistical coverage of the deviation from the planned to the actual trip fuel provide appropriate statistical coverage.

(1) 99 % coverage plus 3 % of the trip fuel, if the calculated flight time is less than 2 hours, or more than 2 hours and no weather-permissible ERA aerodrome is available.

(2) 99 % coverage if the calculated flight time is more than 2 hours and a weather-permissible ERA aerodrome is available.

(3) 90 % coverage if:

(i) the calculated flight time is more than 2 hours;

(ii) a weather-permissible ERA aerodrome is available; and

(iii) at the destination aerodrome two separate runways are available and usable, one of which is equipped with an ILS/MLS, and the weather conditions are in compliance with CAT.OP.MPA.180(b)(2), or the ILS/MLS is operational to CAT II/III operating minima and the weather conditions are at or above 500 ft.

(b) The fuel consumption database used in conjunction with these values should be based on fuel consumption monitoring for each route/aeroplane combination over a rolling 2 year period.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(c)(3)(i) Fuel policy

CONTINGENCY FUEL

Factors that may influence fuel required on a particular flight in an unpredictable way include deviations of an individual aeroplane from the expected fuel consumption data, deviations from forecast meteorological conditions and deviations from planned routings and/or cruising levels/altitudes.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.150(c)(3)(ii) Fuel policy

DESTINATION ALTERNATE AERODROME

The departure aerodrome may be selected as the destination alternate aerodrome.

CAT.OP.MPA.151 Fuel policy — alleviations

(a) Notwithstanding CAT.OP.MPA.150 (b) to (d), for operations of performance class B aeroplanes the operator shall ensure that the pre-flight calculation of usable fuel required for a flight includes:

(1) taxi fuel, if significant;

(i) trip fuel;

(ii) reserve fuel, consisting of:

(A) contingency fuel that is not less than 5% of the planned trip fuel or, in the event of in-flight replanning, 5% of the trip fuel for the remainder of the flight; and

(B) final reserve fuel to fly for an additional period of 45 minutes for reciprocating engines or 30 minutes for turbine engines;

(iii) alternate fuel to reach the destination alternate aerodrome via the destination, if a destination alternate aerodrome is required; and

(iv) extra fuel, if specified by the commander.

(b) Notwithstanding CAT.OP.MPA.150 (b) to (d), for helicopters with an MCTOM of 3 175 kg or less, by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks or local helicopter operations, the fuel policy shall ensure that, on completion of the flight, or series of flights the final reserve fuel is not less than an amount sufficient for:

(1) 30 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed; or

(2) 20 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed when operating within an area providing continuous and suitable precautionary landing sites.

CAT.OP.MPA.155 Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs)

(a) Persons requiring special conditions, assistance and/or devices when carried on a flight shall be considered as SCPs including at least:

(1) persons with reduced mobility (PRMs) who, without prejudice to Regulation (EC) No 1107/2006, are understood to be any person whose mobility is reduced due to any physical disability, sensory or locomotory, permanent or temporary, intellectual disability or impairment, any other cause of disability, or age;

(2) infants and unaccompanied children; and

(3) deportees, inadmissible passengers or prisoners in custody.

(b) SCPs shall be carried under conditions that ensure the safety of the aircraft and its occupants according to procedures established by the operator.

(c) SCPs shall not be allocated, nor occupy, seats that permit direct access to emergency exits or where their presence could:

(1) impede crew members in their duties;

(2) obstruct access to emergency equipment; or

(3) impede the emergency evacuation of the aircraft.

(d) The commander shall be notified in advance when SCPs are to be carried on board.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.155(b) Carriage of special categories of passengers (SCPs)

PROCEDURES

When establishing the procedures for the carriage of special categories of passengers, the operator should take into account the following factors:

(a) the aircraft type and cabin configuration;

(b) the total number of passengers carried on board;

(c) the number and categories of SCPs, which should not exceed the number of passengers capable of assisting them in case of an emergency evacuation; and

(d) any other factor(s) or circumstances possibly impacting on the application of emergency procedures by the operating crew members.

CAT.OP.MPA.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that:

(a) only hand baggage that can be adequately and securely stowed is taken into the passenger compartment; and

(b) all baggage and cargo on board that might cause injury or damage, or obstruct aisles and exits if displaced, is stowed so as to prevent movement.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo

STOWAGE PROCEDURES

Procedures established by the operator to ensure that hand baggage and cargo are adequately and securely stowed should take account of the following:

(a) each item carried in a cabin should be stowed only in a location that is capable of restraining it;

(b) weight limitations placarded on or adjacent to stowages should not be exceeded;

(c) under seat stowages should not be used unless the seat is equipped with a restraint bar and the baggage is of such size that it may adequately be restrained by this equipment;

(d) items should not be stowed in lavatories or against bulkheads that are incapable of restraining articles against movement forwards, sideways or upwards and unless the bulkheads carry a placard specifying the greatest mass that may be placed there;

(e) baggage and cargo placed in lockers should not be of such size that they prevent latched doors from being closed securely;

(f) baggage and cargo should not be placed where it can impede access to emergency equipment; and

(g) checks should be made before take-off, before landing and whenever the fasten seat belts signs are illuminated or it is otherwise so ordered to ensure that baggage is stowed where it cannot impede evacuation from the aircraft or cause injury by falling (or other movement) as may be appropriate to the phase of flight.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.160 Stowage of baggage and cargo

CARRIAGE OF CARGO IN THE PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

The following should be observed before carrying cargo in the passenger compartment:

(a) for aeroplanes:

(1) dangerous goods should not be allowed; and

(2) a mix of passengers and live animals should only be allowed for pets weighing not more than 8 kg and guide dogs;

(b) for aeroplanes and helicopters:

(1) the mass of cargo should not exceed the structural loading limits of the floor or seats;

(2) the number/type of restraint devices and their attachment points should be capable of restraining the cargo in accordance with applicable certification specifications; and

(3) the location of the cargo should be such that, in the event of an emergency evacuation, it will not hinder egress nor impair the crew’s view.

CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that passengers are seated where, in the event that an emergency evacuation is required, they are able to assist and not hinder evacuation of the aircraft.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating

PROCEDURES

The operator should make provision so that:

(a) those passengers who are allocated seats that permit direct access to emergency exits appear to be reasonably fit, strong and able to assist the rapid evacuation of the aircraft in an emergency after an appropriate briefing by the crew;

(b) in all cases, passengers who, because of their condition, might hinder other passengers during an evacuation or who might impede the crew in carrying out their duties, should not be allocated seats that permit direct access to emergency exits. If procedures cannot be reasonably implemented at the time of passenger 'check-in', the operator should establish an alternative procedure which ensures that the correct seat allocations will, in due course, be made.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating

ACCESS TO EMERGENCY EXITS

The following categories of passengers are among those who should not be allocated to, or directed to, seats that permit direct access to emergency exits:

(a) passengers suffering from obvious physical or mental disability to the extent that they would have difficulty in moving quickly if asked to do so;

(b) passengers who are either substantially blind or substantially deaf to the extent that they might not readily assimilate printed or verbal instructions given;

(c) passengers who because of age or sickness are so frail that they have difficulty in moving quickly;

(d) passengers who are so obese that they would have difficulty in moving quickly or reaching and passing through the adjacent emergency exit;

(e) children (whether accompanied or not) and infants;

(f) deportees, inadmissible passengers or persons in custody; and

(g) passengers with animals.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.165 Passenger seating

DIRECT ACCESS

'Direct access' means a seat from which a passenger can proceed directly to the exit without entering an aisle or passing around an obstruction.

CAT.OP.MPA.170 Passenger briefing

The operator shall ensure that passengers are:

(a) given briefings and demonstrations relating to safety in a form that facilitates the application of the procedures applicable in the event of an emergency; and

(b) provided with a safety briefing card on which picture-type instructions indicate the operation of emergency equipment and exits likely to be used by passengers.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.170 Passenger briefing

PASSENGER BRIEFING

Passenger briefings should contain the following:

(a) Before take-off

(1) passengers should be briefed on the following items if applicable:

(i) smoking regulations;

(ii) back of the seat to be in the upright position and tray table stowed;

(iii) location of emergency exits;

(iv) location and use of floor proximity escape path markings;

(v) stowage of hand baggage;

(vi) restrictions on the use of portable electronic devices; and

(vii) the location and the contents of the safety briefing card;

and

(2) passengers should receive a demonstration of the following:

(i) the use of safety belts or restraint systems, including how to fasten and unfasten the safety belts or restraint systems;

(ii) the location and use of oxygen equipment, if required. Passengers should also be briefed to extinguish all smoking materials when oxygen is being used; and

(iii) the location and use of life-jackets, if required.

(b) After take-off

(1) passengers should be reminded of the following, if applicable:

(i) smoking regulations; and

(ii) use of safety belts or restraint systems including the safety benefits of having safety belts fastened when seated irrespective of seat belt sign illumination.

(c) Before landing

(1) passengers should be reminded of the following, if applicable:

(i) smoking regulations;

(ii) use of safety belts or restraint systems;

(iii) back of the seat to be in the upright position and tray table stowed;

(iv) re-stowage of hand baggage; and

(v) restrictions on the use of portable electronic devices.

(d) After landing

(1) passengers should be reminded of the following:

(i) smoking regulations; and

(ii) use of safety belts and/or restraint systems.

(e) Emergency during flight

(1) passengers should be instructed as appropriate to the circumstances.

AMC1.1 CAT.OP.MPA.170 Passenger briefing

PASSENGER BRIEFING

(a) The operator may replace the briefing/demonstration as set out in AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.170 with a passenger training programme covering all safety and emergency procedures for a given type of aircraft.

(b) Only passengers who have been trained according to this programme and have flown on the aircraft type within the last 90 days may be carried on board without receiving a briefing/demonstration.

CAT.OP.MPA.175 Flight preparation

(a) An operational flight plan shall be completed for each intended flight based on considerations of aircraft performance, other operating limitations and relevant expected conditions on the route to be followed and at the aerodromes/operating sites concerned.

(b) The flight shall not be commenced unless the commander is satisfied that:

(1) all items stipulated in 2.a.3 of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 concerning the airworthiness and registration of the aircraft, instrument and equipment, mass and centre of gravity (CG) location, baggage and cargo and aircraft operating limitations can be complied with;

(2) the aircraft is not operated contrary to the provisions of the configuration deviation list (CDL);

(3) the parts of the operations manual that are required for the conduct of the flight are available;

(4) the documents, additional information and forms required to be available by CAT.GEN.MPA.180 are on board;

(5) current maps, charts and associated documentation or equivalent data are available to cover the intended operation of the aircraft including any diversion that may reasonably be expected;

(6) ground facilities and services required for the planned flight are available and adequate;

(7) the provisions specified in the operations manual in respect of fuel, oil, oxygen, minimum safe altitudes, aerodrome operating minima and availability of alternate aerodromes, where required, can be complied with for the planned flight; and

(8) any additional operational limitation can be complied with.

(c) Notwithstanding (a), an operational flight plan is not required for operations under VFR of:

(1) other-than-complex motor-powered aeroplane taking off and landing at the same aerodrome or operating site; or

(2) helicopters with an MCTOM of 3 175 kg or less, by day and over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks in a local area as specified in the operations manual.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.175(a) Flight preparation

OPERATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN – COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT

(a) The operational flight plan used and the entries made during flight should contain the following items:

(1) aircraft registration;

(2) aircraft type and variant;

(3) date of flight;

(4) flight identification;

(5) names of flight crew members;

(6) duty assignment of flight crew members;

(7) place of departure;

(8) time of departure (actual off-block time, take-off time);

(9) place of arrival (planned and actual);

(10) time of arrival (actual landing and on-block time);

(11) type of operation (ETOPS, VFR, ferry flight, etc.);

(12) route and route segments with checkpoints/waypoints, distances, time and tracks;

(13) planned cruising speed and flying times between check-points/waypoints (estimated and actual times overhead);

(14) safe altitudes and minimum levels;

(15) planned altitudes and flight levels;

(16) fuel calculations (records of in-flight fuel checks);

(17) fuel on board when starting engines;

(18) alternate(s) for destination and, where applicable, take-off and en-route, including information required in (a)(12) to (15);

(19) initial ATS flight plan clearance and subsequent reclearance;

(20) in-flight replanning calculations; and

(21) relevant meteorological information.

(b) Items that are readily available in other documentation or from another acceptable source or are irrelevant to the type of operation may be omitted from the operational flight plan.

(c) The operational flight plan and its use should be described in the operations manual.

(d) All entries on the operational flight plan should be made concurrently and be permanent in nature.

OPERATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN – OTHER-THAN-COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS AND LOCAL OPERATIONS

An operational flight plan may be established in a simplified form relevant to the kind of operation for operations with other-than-complex motor-powered aircraft as well as local operations with any aircraft.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.175(b)(5) Flight preparation

CONVERSION TABLES

The documentation should include any conversion tables necessary to support operations where metric heights, altitudes and flight levels are used.

CAT.OP.MPA.180 Selection of aerodromes — aeroplanes

(a) Where it is not possible to use the departure aerodrome as a take-off alternate aerodrome due to meteorological or performance reasons, the operator shall select another adequate take-off alternate aerodrome that is no further from the departure aerodrome than:

(1) for two-engined aeroplanes:

(i) 1 hour flying time at an OEI cruising speed according to the AFM in still air standard conditions based on the actual take-off mass; or

(ii) the ETOPS diversion time approved in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA), Subpart F , subject to any MEL restriction, up to a maximum of 2 hours, at the OEI cruising speed according to the AFM in still air standard conditions based on the actual take-off mass;

(2) for three and four-engined aeroplanes, 2 hours flying time at the OEI cruising speed according to the AFM in still air standard conditions based on the actual take-off mass.

If the AFM does not contain an OEI cruising speed, the speed to be used for calculation shall be that which is achieved with the remaining engine(s) set at maximum continuous power.

(b) The operator shall select at least one destination alternate aerodrome for each instrument flight rules (IFR) flight unless the destination aerodrome is an isolated aerodrome or:

(1) the duration of the planned flight from take-off to landing or, in the event of in-flight replanning in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.150(d), the remaining flying time to destination does not exceed 6 hours; and

(2) two separate runways are available and usable at the destination aerodrome and the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts for the destination aerodrome indicate that, for the period from 1 hour before until 1 hour after the expected time of arrival at the destination aerodrome, the ceiling will be at least 2 000 ft or circling height +500 ft, whichever is greater, and the ground visibility will be at least 5 km.

(c) The operator shall select two destination alternate aerodromes when:

(1) the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts for the destination aerodrome indicate that during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival, the weather conditions will be below the applicable planning minima; or

(2) no meteorological information is available.

(d) The operator shall specify any required alternate aerodrome(s) in the operational flight plan.

CAT.OP.MPA.181 Selection of aerodromes and operating sites — helicopters

(a) For flights under instrument meteorological conditions (IMC), the commander shall select a take-off alternate aerodrome within 1 hour flying time at normal cruising speed if it would not be possible to return to the site of departure due to meteorological reasons.

(b) For IFR flights or when flying under VFR and navigating by means other than by reference to visual landmarks, the commander shall specify at least one destination alternate aerodrome in the operational flight plan unless:

(1) the destination is a coastal aerodrome and the helicopter is routing from offshore;

(2) for a flight to any other land destination, the duration of the flight and the meteorological conditions prevailing are such that, at the estimated time of arrival at the site of intended landing, an approach and landing is possible under visual meteorological conditions (VMC); or

(3) the site of intended landing is isolated and no alternate is available; in this case, a point of no return (PNR) shall be determined.

(c) The operator shall select two destination alternate aerodromes when:

(1) the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts for the destination aerodrome indicate that during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival, the weather conditions will be below the applicable planning minima; or

(2) no meteorological information is available for the destination aerodrome.

(d) The operator may select off-shore destination alternate aerodromes when the following criteria are applied:

(1) an off-shore destination alternate aerodrome shall be used only after a PNR. Prior to the PNR, on-shore alternate aerodromes shall be used;

(2) OEI landing capability shall be attainable at the alternate aerodrome;

(3) to the extent possible, deck availability shall be guaranteed. The dimensions, configuration and obstacle clearance of individual helidecks or other sites shall be assessed in order to establish operational suitability for use as an alternate aerodrome by each helicopter type proposed to be used;

(4) weather minima shall be established taking accuracy and reliability of meteorological information into account;

(5) the MEL shall contain specific provisions for this type of operation; and

(6) an off-shore alternate aerodrome shall only be selected if the operator has established a procedure in the operations manual.

(e) The operator shall specify any required alternate aerodrome(s) in the operational flight plan.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.181(b)(1) Selection of aerodromes and operating sites – helicopters

COASTAL AERODROME

(a) Any alleviation from the requirement to select an alternate aerodrome for a flight to a coastal aerodrome under IFR routing from offshore should be based on an individual safety case assessment.

(b) The following should be taken into account:

(1) suitability of the weather based on the landing forecast for the destination;

(2) the fuel required to meet the IFR requirements of CAT.OP.MPA.150 less alternate fuel;

(3) where the destination coastal aerodrome is not directly on the coast it should be:

(i) within a distance that, with the fuel specified in (b)(2), the helicopter can, at any time after crossing the coastline, return to the coast, descend safely and carry out a visual approach and landing with VFR fuel reserves intact; and

(ii) geographically sited so that the helicopter can, within the rules of the air, and within the landing forecast:

(A) proceed inbound from the coast at 500 ft AGL and carry out a visual approach and landing; or

(B) proceed inbound from the coast on an agreed route and carry out a visual approach and landing;

(4) procedures for coastal aerodromes should be based on a landing forecast no worse than:

(i) by day, a cloud base of DH/MDH +400 ft, and a visibility of 4 km, or, if descent over the sea is intended, a cloud base of 600 ft and a visibility of 4 km; or

(ii) by night, a cloud base of 1 000 ft and a visibility of 5 km;

(5) the descent to establish visual contact with the surface should take place over the sea or as part of the instrument approach;

(6) routings and procedures for coastal aerodromes nominated as such should be included in the operations manual, Part C;

(7) the MEL should reflect the requirement for airborne radar and radio altimeter for this type of operation; and

(8) operational limitations for each coastal aerodrome should be specified in the operations manual.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.181 Selection of aerodromes and operating sites – helicopters

OFFSHORE ALTERNATES

When operating offshore, any spare payload capacity should be used to carry additional fuel if it would facilitate the use of an onshore alternate aerodrome.

Landing forecast

(a) Meteorological data have been specified that conform to the standards contained in the Regional Air Navigation Plan and ICAO Annex 3. As the following meteorological data is point-specific, caution should be exercised when associating it with nearby aerodromes (or helidecks).

(b) Meteorological reports (METARs)

(1) Routine and special meteorological observations at offshore installations should be made during periods and at a frequency agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned. They should comply with the provisions contained in the meteorological section of the ICAO Regional Air Navigation Plan, and should conform to the standards and recommended practices, including the desirable accuracy of observations, promulgated in ICAO Annex 3.

(2) Routine and selected special reports are exchanged between meteorological offices in the METAR or SPECI (aviation selected special weather report) code forms prescribed by the World Meteorological Organisation.

(c) Aerodrome forecasts (TAFs)

(1) The aerodrome forecast consists of a concise statement of the mean or average meteorological conditions expected at an aerodrome or aerodrome during a specified period of validity, which is normally not less than 9 hours, or more than 24 hours in duration. The forecast includes surface wind, visibility, weather and cloud, and expected changes of one or more of these elements during the period. Additional elements may be included as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned. Where these forecasts relate to offshore installations, barometric pressure and temperature should be included to facilitate the planning of helicopter landing and take-off performance.

(2) Aerodrome forecasts are most commonly exchanged in the TAF code form, and the detailed description of an aerodrome forecast is promulgated in the ICAO Regional Air Navigation Plan and also in ICAO Annex 3, together with the operationally desirable accuracy elements. In particular, the observed cloud height should remain within ±30 % of the forecast value in 70 % of cases, and the observed visibility should remain within ±30 % of the forecast value in 80 % of cases.

(d) Landing forecasts (TRENDS)

(1) The landing forecast consists of a concise statement of the mean or average meteorological conditions expected at an aerodrome or aerodrome during the two-hour period immediately following the time of issue. It contains surface wind, visibility, significant weather and cloud elements and other significant information, such as barometric pressure and temperature, as may be agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned.

(2) The detailed description of the landing forecast is promulgated in the ICAO Regional Air Navigation Plan and also in ICAO Annex 3, together with the operationally desirable accuracy of the forecast elements. In particular, the value of the observed cloud height and visibility elements should remain within ±30 % of the forecast values in 90 % of the cases.

(3) Landing forecasts most commonly take the form of routine or special selected meteorological reports in the METAR code, to which either the code words ‘NOSIG’, i.e. no significant change expected; ‘BECMG’ (becoming), or ‘TEMPO’ (temporarily), followed by the expected change, are added. The 2-hour period of validity commences at the time of the meteorological report.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.181(d) Selection of aerodromes and operating sites – helicopters

OFFSHORE ALTERNATES

(a) Offshore alternate helideck landing environment

The landing environment of a helideck that is proposed for use as an offshore alternate should be pre-surveyed and, as well as the physical characteristics, the effect of wind direction and strength, and turbulence established. This information, which should be available to the commander at the planning stage and in flight, should be published in an appropriate form in the operations manual Part C (including the orientation of the helideck) such that the suitability of the helideck for use as an offshore alternate aerodrome can be assessed. The alternate helideck should meet the criteria for size and obstacle clearance appropriate to the performance requirements of the type of helicopter concerned.

(b) Performance considerations

The use of an offshore alternate is restricted to helicopters which can achieve OEI in ground effect (IGE) hover at an appropriate power rating at the offshore alternate aerodrome. Where the surface of the offshore alternate helideck, or prevailing conditions (especially wind velocity), precludes an OEI IGE, OEI out of ground effect (OGE) hover performance at an appropriate power rating should be used to compute the landing mass. The landing mass should be calculated from graphs provided in the relevant Part B of the operations manual. When arriving at this landing mass, due account should be taken of helicopter configuration, environmental conditions and the operation of systems that have an adverse effect on performance. The planned landing mass of the helicopter including crew, passengers, baggage, cargo plus 30 minutes final reserve fuel, should not exceed the OEI landing mass at the time of approach to the offshore alternate aerodrome.

(c) Weather considerations

(1) Meteorological observations

When the use of an offshore alternate helideck is planned, the meteorological observations at the destination and alternate aerodrome should be taken by an observer acceptable to the authority responsible for the provision of meteorological services. Automatic meteorological observations stations may be used.

(2) Weather minima

When the use of an offshore alternate helideck is planned, the operator should not select a helideck as a destination or offshore alternate helideck unless the aerodrome forecast indicates that, during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the expected time of arrival at the destination and offshore alternate aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the planning minima shown in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Planning minima

	Day	Night
Cloud Base	600 ft	800 ft
Visibility	4 km	5 km

(3) Conditions of fog

Where fog is forecast, or has been observed within the last 2 hours within 60 NM of the destination or alternate aerodrome, offshore alternate aerodromes should not be used.

(d) Actions at point of no return

Before passing the point of no return – which should not be more that 30 minutes from the destination – the following actions should have been completed:

(1) confirmation that navigation to the destination and offshore alternate helideck can be assured;

(2) radio contact with the destination and offshore alternate helideck (or master station) has been established;

(3) the landing forecast at the destination and offshore alternate helideck have been obtained and confirmed to be at or above the required minima;

(4) the requirements for OEI landing (see (b)) have been checked in the light of the latest reported weather conditions to ensure that they can be met; and

(5) to the extent possible, having regard to information on current and forecast use of the offshore alternate helideck and on conditions prevailing, the availability of the offshore alternate helideck should be guaranteed by the duty holder (the rig operator in the case of fixed installations and the owner in the case of mobiles) until the landing at the destination, or the offshore alternate aerodrome, has been achieved or until offshore shuttling has been completed.

(e) Offshore shuttling

Provided that the actions in (d) have been completed, offshore shuttling, using an offshore alternate aerodrome, may be carried out.

CAT.OP.MPA.185 Planning minima for IFR flights — aeroplanes

(a) Planning minima for a take-off alternate aerodrome

The operator shall only select an aerodrome as a take-off alternate aerodrome when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable landing minima specified in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.110. The ceiling shall be taken into account when the only approach operations available are non-precision approaches (NPA) and/or circling operations. Any limitation related to OEI operations shall be taken into account.

(b) Planning minima for a destination aerodrome other than an isolated destination aerodrome

The operator shall only select the destination aerodrome when:

(1) the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable planning minima as follows:

(i) RVR/visibility (VIS) specified in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.110; and

(ii) for an NPA or a circling operation, the ceiling at or above MDH;

or

(2) two destination alternate aerodromes are selected.

(c) Planning minima for a destination alternate aerodrome, isolated aerodrome, fuel en-route alternate (fuel ERA) aerodrome, en-route alternate (ERA) aerodrome

The operator shall only select an aerodrome for one of these purposes when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the planning minima in Table 1.

Table 1: Planning minima

Destination alternate aerodrome, isolated destination aerodrome, fuel ERA and ERA aerodrome

Type of approach	Planning minima
CAT II and III	CAT I RVR
CATI	NPA RVR/VIS Ceiling shall be at or above MDH
NPA	NPA RVR/VIS + 1 000 m Ceiling shall be at or above MDH + 200 ft
Circling	Circling

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.185 Planning minima for IFR flights – aeroplanes

PLANNING MINIMA FOR ALTERNATE AERODROMES

Non-precision minima (NPA) in Table 1 of CAT.OP.MPA.185 mean the next highest minima that apply in the prevailing wind and serviceability conditions. Localiser only approaches, if published, are considered to be non-precision in this context. It is recommended that operators wishing to publish tables of planning minima choose values that are likely to be appropriate on the majority of occasions (e.g. regardless of wind direction). Unserviceabilities should, however, be fully taken into account.

As Table 1 does not include planning minima requirements for APV, LTS CAT I and OTS CAT II operations, the operator may use the following minima:

(a) for APV operations – NPA or CAT I minima, depending on the DH/MDH;

(b) for LTS CAT I operations – CAT I minima; and

(c) for OTS CAT II operations – CAT II minima.

GM2 CAT.OP.MPA.185 Planning minima for IFR flights – aeroplanes

AERODROME WEATHER FORECASTS

APPLICATION OF AERODROME FORECASTS (TAF & TREND) TO PRE-FLIGHT PLANNING (ICAO Annex 3 refers)

1. APPLICATION OF INITIAL PART OF TAF

a) Application time period: From the start of the TAF validity period up to the time of applicability of the first subsequent 'FM…*' or 'BECMG', or if no 'FM' or 'BECMG' is given, up to the end of the validity period of the TAF.

b) Application of forecast: The prevailing weather conditions forecast in the initial part of the TAF should be fully applied with the exception of the mean wind and gusts (and crosswind) which should be applied in accordance with the policy in the column 'BECMG AT and FM' in the table below. This may however be overdue temporarily by a 'TEMPO' or 'PROB**' if applicable according to the table below.

2. APPLICATION OF FORECAST FOLLOWING CHANGE INDICATION IN TAF AND TREND

TAF or TREND for AERODROME PLANNED AS:	**FM** (alone) and **BECMG AT:**	**BECMG** (alone), **BECMG FM, BECMG TL, BECMG FM…*TL**, in case of :		**TEMPO** (alone), **TEMPO FM, TEMPO FM…TL, PROB30/40** (alone)			**PROB TEMPO**
	Deterioration and Improvement	**Deterioration**	**Improvement**	**Deterioration**		**Improvement**	**Deterioration and Improvement**
				Transient/Shower Conditions in connection with short – lived weather phenomena, e.g. thunderstorms, showers	**Persistent Conditions** in connection with e.g. haze, mist, fog, dust/ sandstorm, continuous precipitations	In any case	
DESTINATION at ETA ± 1 HR **TAKE-OFF ALTERNATE** at ETA ± 1 HR **DEST. ALTERNATE** at ETA ± 1 HR **EN-ROUTE ALTERNATE** at ETA ± 1 HR	Applicable from the **start of the change;** **Mean wind:** Should be within required limits; **Gusts:** May be disregarded.	Applicable from the time of **start of** the change; **Mean wind:** Should be within required limits; **Gusts:** May be disregarded.	Applicable from the time of **the end of** the change; **Mean wind:** Should be within required limits; **Gusts:** May be disregarded.	Not applicable **Mean wind and gusts** exceeding required limits may be disregarded.	Applicable **Mean wind:** Should be within required limits; **Gusts:** May be disregarded;	Should be disregarded.	Deterioration may be disregarded; Improvement should be disregarded including mean wind and gusts.
ETOPS ENRT ALTN at earliest/latest ETA ± 1 HR	Applicable from the **time of start** of change; **Mean wind:** should be within required limits; **Gusts** exceeding crosswind limits should be fully applied.	Applicable from the **time of start** of change; **Mean wind:** should be within required limits; **Gusts** exceeding crosswind limits should be fully applied.	Applicable from the **time of end** of change; **Mean wind:** should be within required limits; **Gusts** exceeding crosswind limits should be fully applied.	**Applicable if below applicable landing minima;** **Mean wind:** Should be within required limits; **Gusts** exceeding crosswind limits should be fully applied.	**Applicable if below applicable landing minima;** **Mean wind:** Should be within required limits; **Gusts** exceeding crosswind limits should be fully applied.		

Note 1: 'Required limits' are those contained in the Operations Manual.
Note 2: If promulgated aerodrome forecasts do not comply with the requirements of ICAO Annex 3, operators should ensure that guidance in the application of these reports is provided.
* The space following 'FM' should always include a time group e.g. 'FM1030'.

CAT.OP.MPA.186 Planning minima for IFR flights — helicopters

(a) Planning minima for take-off alternate aerodrome(s)

The operator shall only select an aerodrome or landing site as a take-off alternate aerodrome when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival at the take-off alternate aerodrome, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable landing minima specified in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.110. The ceiling shall be taken into account when the only approach operations available are NPA operations. Any limitation related to OEI operations shall be taken into account.

(b) Planning minima for destination aerodrome and destination alternate aerodrome(s)

The operator shall only select the destination and/or destination alternate aerodrome(s) when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that, during a period commencing 1 hour before and ending 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival at the aerodrome or operating site, the weather conditions will be at or above the applicable planning minima as follows:

(1) except as provided in CAT.OP.MPA.181 (d), planning minima for a destination aerodrome shall be:

(i) RVR/VIS specified in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.110; and

(ii) for NPA operations, the ceiling at or above MDH;

(2) planning minima for destination alternate aerodrome(s) are as shown in Table 1.

Table 1: Planning minima destination alternate aerodrome

Type of approach	Planning minima
CAT II and III	CAT I RVR
CAT I	CAT I + 200 ft / 400 m visibility
NPA	NPA RVR/VIS + 400 m Ceiling shall be at or above MDH + 200ft

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.186 Planning minima for IFR flights – helicopters

PLANNING MINIMA FOR ALTERNATE AERODROMES

Non-precision minima (NPA) in Table 1 of CAT.OP.MPA.186 mean the next highest minima that apply in the prevailing wind and serviceability conditions. Localiser only approaches, if published, are considered to be non-precision in this context. It is recommended that operators wishing to publish tables of planning minima choose values that are likely to be appropriate on the majority of occasions (e.g. regardless of wind direction). Unserviceabilities should, however, be fully taken into account.

As Table 1 does not include planning minima requirements for APV, LTS CAT I and OTS CAT II operations, the operator may use the following minima:

(a) for APV operations – NPA or CAT I minima, depending on the DH/MDH;

(b) for LTS CAT I operations – CAT I minima; and

(c) for OTS CAT II operations – CAT II minima.

CAT.OP.MPA.190 Submission of the ATS flight plan

(a) If an ATS flight plan is not submitted because it is not required by the rules of the air, adequate information shall be deposited in order to permit alerting services to be activated if required.

(b) When operating from a site where it is impossible to submit an ATS flight plan, the ATS flight plan shall be transmitted as soon as possible after take-off by the commander or the operator.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.190 Submission of the ATS flight plan

FLIGHTS WITHOUT ATS FLIGHT PLAN

(a) When unable to submit or to close the ATS flight plan due to lack of ATS facilities or any other means of communications to ATS, the operator should establish procedures, instructions and a list of nominated persons to be responsible for alerting search and rescue services.

(b) To ensure that each flight is located at all times, these instructions should:

  (1) provide the nominated person with at least the information required to be included in a VFR flight plan, and the location, date and estimated time for re-establishing communications;

  (2) if an aircraft is overdue or missing, provide for notification to the appropriate ATS or search and rescue facility; and

  (3) provide that the information will be retained at a designated place until the completion of the flight.

CAT.OP.MPA.195 Refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

(a) An aircraft shall not be refuelled/defuelled with Avgas (aviation gasoline) or wide-cut type fuel or a mixture of these types of fuel, when passengers are embarking, on board or disembarking.

(b) For all other types of fuel, necessary precautions shall be taken and the aircraft shall be properly manned by qualified personnel ready to initiate and direct an evacuation of the aircraft by the most practical and expeditious means available.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.195 Refuelling/defuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES − GENERAL

(a) When refuelling/defuelling with passengers on board, ground servicing activities and work inside the aircraft, such as catering and cleaning, should be conducted in such a manner that they do not create a hazard and allow emergency evacuation to take place through those aisles and exits intended for emergency evacuation.

(b) The deployment of integral aircraft stairs or the opening of emergency exits as a prerequisite to refuelling is not necessarily required.

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES − AEROPLANES

(c) Operational procedures should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

(1) one qualified person should remain at a specified location during fuelling operations with passengers on board. This qualified person should be capable of handling emergency procedures concerning fire protection and fire-fighting, handling communications and initiating and directing an evacuation;

(2) two-way communication should be established and should remain available by the aeroplane's inter-communication system or other suitable means between the ground crew supervising the refuelling and the qualified personnel on board the aeroplane; the involved personnel should remain within easy reach of the system of communication;

(3) crew, personnel and passengers should be warned that re/defuelling will take place;

(4) 'Fasten Seat Belts' signs should be off;

(5) 'NO SMOKING' signs should be on, together with interior lighting to enable emergency exits to be identified;

(6) passengers should be instructed to unfasten their seat belts and refrain from smoking;

(7) the minimum required number of cabin crew should be on board and be prepared for an immediate emergency evacuation;

(8) if the presence of fuel vapour is detected inside the aeroplane, or any other hazard arises during re/defuelling, fuelling should be stopped immediately;

(9) the ground area beneath the exits intended for emergency evacuation and slide deployment areas should be kept clear at doors where stairs are not in position for use in the event of evacuation; and

(10) provision is made for a safe and rapid evacuation.

OPERATIONAL PROCEDURES − HELICOPTERS

(d) Operational procedures should specify that at least the following precautions are taken:

(1) door(s) on the refuelling side of the helicopter remain closed;

(2) door(s) on the non-refuelling side of the helicopter remain open, weather permitting;

(3) fire-fighting facilities of the appropriate scale be positioned so as to be immediately available in the event of a fire;

(4) sufficient personnel be immediately available to move passengers clear of the helicopter in the event of a fire;

(5) sufficient qualified personnel be on board and be prepared for an immediate emergency evacuation;

(6) if the presence of fuel vapour is detected inside the helicopter, or any other hazard arises during refuelling/defuelling, fuelling be stopped immediately;

(7) the ground area beneath the exits intended for emergency evacuation be kept clear; and

(8) provision is made for a safe and rapid evacuation.

CAT.OP.MPA.200 Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel

Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel shall only be conducted if the operator has established appropriate procedures taking into account the high risk of using wide-cut fuel types.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.200 Refuelling/defuelling with wide-cut fuel

PROCEDURES

(a) 'Wide cut fuel' (designated JET B, JP-4 or AVTAG) is an aviation turbine fuel that falls between gasoline and kerosene in the distillation range and consequently, compared to kerosene (JET A or JET A1), it has the properties of higher volatility (vapour pressure), lower flash point and lower freezing point.

(b) Wherever possible, the operator should avoid the use of wide-cut fuel types. If a situation arises such that only wide-cut fuels are available for refuelling/defuelling, operators should be aware that mixtures of wide-cut fuels and kerosene turbine fuels can result in the air/fuel mixture in the tank being in the combustible range at ambient temperatures. The extra precautions set out below are advisable to avoid arcing in the tank due to electrostatic discharge. The risk of this type of arcing can be minimised by the use of a static dissipation additive in the fuel. When this additive is present in the proportions stated in the fuel specification, the normal fuelling precautions set out below are considered adequate.

(c) Wide-cut fuel is considered to be 'involved' when it is being supplied or when it is already present in aircraft fuel tanks.

(d) When wide-cut fuel has been used, this should be recorded in the technical log. The next two uplifts of fuel should be treated as though they too involved the use of wide-cut fuel.

(e) When refuelling/defuelling with turbine fuels not containing a static dissipator, and where wide-cut fuels are involved, a substantial reduction on fuelling flow rate is advisable. Reduced flow rate, as recommended by fuel suppliers and/or aeroplane manufacturers, has the following benefits:

  (1) it allows more time for any static charge build-up in the fuelling equipment to dissipate before the fuel enters the tank;

  (2) it reduces any charge which may build up due to splashing; and

  (3) until the fuel inlet point is immersed, it reduces misting in the tank and consequently the extension of the flammable range of the fuel.

(f) The flow rate reduction necessary is dependent upon the fuelling equipment in use and the type of filtration employed on the aeroplane fuelling distribution system. It is difficult, therefore, to quote precise flow rates. Reduction in flow rate is advisable whether pressure fuelling or over-wing fuelling is employed.

(g) With over-wing fuelling, splashing should be avoided by making sure that the delivery nozzle extends as far as practicable into the tank. Caution should be exercised to avoid damaging bag tanks with the nozzle.

CAT.OP.MPA.205 Push back and towing — aeroplanes

Push back and towing procedures specified by the operator shall be conducted in accordance with established aviation standards and procedures.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.205 Push back and towing – aeroplanes

BARLESS TOWING

(a) Barless towing should be based on the applicable SAE ARP (Aerospace Recommended Practices), i.e. 4852B/4853B/5283/5284/5285 (as amended).

(b) Pre- or post-taxi positioning of the aeroplanes should only be executed by barless towing if one of the following conditions are met:

(1) an aeroplane is protected by its own design from damage to the nose wheel steering system;

(2) a system/procedure is provided to alert the flight crew that damage referred to in (b)(1) may have or has occurred;

(3) the towing vehicle is designed to prevent damage to the aeroplane type; or

(4) the aeroplane manufacturer has published procedures and these are included in the operations manual.

CAT.OP.MPA.210 Crew members at stations

(a) Flight crew members

(1) During take-off and landing each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall be at the assigned station.

(2) During all other phases of flight each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall remain at the assigned station, unless absence is necessary for the performance of duties in connection with the operation or for physiological needs, provided at least one suitably qualified pilot remains at the controls of the aircraft at all times.

(3) During all phases of flight each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall remain alert. If a lack of alertness is encountered, appropriate countermeasures shall be used. If unexpected fatigue is experienced, a controlled rest procedure, organised by the commander, may be used if workload permits. Controlled rest taken in this way shall not be considered to be part of a rest period for purposes of calculating flight time limitations nor used to justify any extension of the duty period.

(b) Cabin crew members

During critical phases of flight, each cabin crew member shall be seated at the assigned station and shall not perform any activities other than those required for the safe operation of the aircraft.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.210(b) Crew members at stations

CABIN CREW SEATING POSITIONS

(a) When determining cabin crew seating positions, the operator should ensure that they are:

(1) close to a floor level door/exit;

(2) provided with a good view of the area(s) of the passenger cabin for which the cabin crew member is responsible; and

(3) evenly distributed throughout the cabin, in the above order of priority.

(b) Item (a) should not be taken as implying that, in the event of there being more cabin crew stations than required cabin crew, the number of cabin crew members should be increased.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.210 Crew members at stations

MITIGATING MEASURES – CONTROLLED REST

(a) This GM addresses controlled rest taken by the minimum certified flight crew. It is not related to planned in-flight rest by members of an augmented crew.

(b) Although flight crew members should stay alert at all times during flight, unexpected fatigue can occur as a result of sleep disturbance and circadian disruption. To cover for this unexpected fatigue, and to regain a high level of alertness, a controlled rest procedure in the flight crew compartment, organised by the commander may be used, if workload permits and a controlled rest procedure is described in the operations manual. 'Controlled rest' means a period of time 'off task' that may include actual sleep. The use of controlled rest has been shown to significantly increase the levels of alertness during the later phases of flight, particularly after the top of descent, and is considered to be good use of crew resource management (CRM) principles. Controlled rest should be used in conjunction with other on-board fatigue management countermeasures such as physical exercise, bright cockpit illumination at appropriate times, balanced eating and drinking, and intellectual activity.

(c) Controlled rest taken in this way should not be considered to be part of a rest period for the purposes of calculating flight time limitations, nor used to justify any duty period. Controlled rest may be used to manage both sudden unexpected fatigue and fatigue that is expected to become more severe during higher workload periods later in the flight. Controlled rest is not related to fatigue management, which is planned before flight.

(d) Controlled rest periods should be agreed according to individual needs and the accepted principles of CRM; where the involvement of the cabin crew is required, consideration should be given to their workload.

(e) When applying controlled rest procedures, the commander should ensure that:

(1) the other flight crew member(s) is/are adequately briefed to carry out the duties of the resting flight crew member;

(2) one flight crew member is fully able to exercise control of the aircraft at all times; and

(3) any system intervention that would normally require a cross-check according to multi-crew principles is avoided until the resting flight crew member resumes his/her duties.

(f) Controlled rest procedures should satisfy all of the following criteria:

(1) Only one flight crew member at a time should take rest at his/her station; the restraint device should be used and the seat positioned to minimise unintentional interference with the controls.

(2) The rest period should be no longer than 45 minutes (in order to limit any actual sleep to approximately 30 minutes) to limit deep sleep and associated long recovery time (sleep inertia).

(3) After this 45-minute period, there should be a recovery period of 20 minutes to overcome sleep inertia during which control of the aircraft should not be entrusted to the flight crew member. At the end of this recovery period an appropriate briefing should be given.

(4) In the case of two-crew operations, means should be established to ensure that the non-resting flight crew member remains alert. This may include:

(i) appropriate alarm systems;

(ii) on-board systems to monitor flight crew activity; and

(iii) frequent cabin crew checks. In this case, the commander should inform the senior cabin crew member of the intention of the flight crew member to take controlled rest, and of the time of the end of that rest; frequent contact should be established between the non-resting flight crew member and the cabin crew by communication means, and the cabin crew should check that the resting flight crew member is awake at the end of the period.

(5) There should be a minimum of 20 minutes between two subsequent controlled rest periods in order to overcome the effects of sleep inertia and allow for adequate briefing.

(6) If necessary, a flight crew member may take more than one rest period, if time permits, on longer sectors, subject to the restrictions above.

(7) Controlled rest periods should terminate at least 30 minutes before the top of descent.

CAT.OP.MPA.215 Use of headset — aeroplanes

(a) Each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall wear a headset with boom microphone or equivalent. The headset shall be used as the primary device for voice communications with ATS:

(1) when on the ground:

(i) when receiving the ATC departure clearance via voice communication; and

(ii) when engines are running;

(2) when in flight:

(i) below transition altitude; or

(ii) 10 000 ft, whichever is higher;

and

(3) whenever deemed necessary by the commander.

(b) In the conditions of (a), the boom microphone or equivalent shall be in a position that permits its use for two-way radio communications.

CAT.OP.MPA.216 Use of headset — helicopters

Each flight crew member required to be on duty in the flight crew compartment shall wear a headset with boom microphone, or equivalent, and use it as the primary device to communicate with ATS.

CAT.OP.MPA.220 Assisting means for emergency evacuation

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that before taxiing, take-off and landing and when safe and practicable to do so, all means of assistance for emergency evacuation that deploy automatically are armed.

CAT.OP.MPA.225 Seats, safety belts and restraint systems

(a) Crew members

(1) During take-off and landing, and whenever decided by the commander in the interest of safety, each crew member shall be properly secured by all safety belts and restraint systems provided.

(2) During other phases of the flight, each flight crew member in the flight crew compartment shall keep the assigned station safety belt fastened while at his/her station.

(b) Passengers

(1) Before take-off and landing, and during taxiing, and whenever deemed necessary in the interest of safety, the commander shall be satisfied that each passenger on board occupies a seat or berth with his/her safety belt or restraint system properly secured.

(2) The operator shall make provisions for multiple occupancy of aircraft seats that is only allowed on specified seats. The commander shall be satisfied that multiple occupancy does not occur other than by one adult and one infant who is properly secured by a supplementary loop belt or other restraint device.

CAT.OP.MPA.230 Securing of passenger compartment and galley(s)

(a) The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that before taxiing, take-off and landing all exits and escape paths are unobstructed.

(b) The commander shall ensure that before take-off and landing, and whenever deemed necessary in the interest of safety, all equipment and baggage are properly secured.

CAT.OP.MPA.235 Life-jackets — helicopters

The operator shall establish procedures to ensure that, when operating a helicopter over water in performance class 3, account is taken of the duration of the flight and conditions to be encountered when deciding if life-jackets are to be worn by all occupants.

CAT.OP.MPA.240 Smoking on board

The commander shall not allow smoking on board:

(a) whenever considered necessary in the interest of safety;

(b) during refuelling and defuelling of the aircraft;

(c) while the aircraft is on the surface unless the operator has determined procedures to mitigate the risks during ground operations;

(d) outside designated smoking areas, in the aisle(s) and lavatory(ies);

(e) in cargo compartments and/or other areas where cargo is carried that is not stored in flame-resistant containers or covered by flame-resistant canvas; and

(f) in those areas of the passenger compartment where oxygen is being supplied.

CAT.OP.MPA.245 Meteorological conditions — all aircraft

(a) On IFR flights the commander shall only:

  (1) commence take-off; or

  (2) continue beyond the point from which a revised ATS flight plan applies in the event of in-flight replanning,

  when information is available indicating that the expected weather conditions, at the time of arrival, at the destination and/or required alternate aerodrome(s) are at or above the planning minima.

(b) On IFR flights, the commander shall only continue towards the planned destination aerodrome when the latest information available indicates that, at the expected time of arrival, the weather conditions at the destination, or at least one destination alternate aerodrome, are at or above the applicable aerodrome operating minima.

(c) On VFR flights, the commander shall only commence take-off when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the meteorological conditions along the part of the route to be flown under VFR will, at the appropriate time, be at or above the VFR limits.

CAT.OP.MPA.246 Meteorological conditions — aeroplanes

In addition to CAT.OP.MPA.245, on IFR flights with aeroplanes, the commander shall only continue beyond:

(a) the decision point when using the reduced contingency fuel (RCF) procedure; or

(b) the pre-determined point when using the pre-determined point (PDP) procedure,

when information is available indicating that the expected weather conditions, at the time of arrival, at the destination and/or required alternate aerodrome(s) are at or above the applicable aerodrome operating minima.

CAT.OP.MPA.247 Meteorological conditions — helicopters

In addition to CAT.OP.MPA.245:

(a) On VFR flights overwater out of sight of land with helicopters, the commander shall only commence take-off when the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the cloud ceiling will be above 600 ft by day or 1 200 ft by night.

(b) Notwithstanding (a), when flying between helidecks located in class G airspace where the overwater sector is less than 10 NM, VFR flights may be conducted when the limits are at, or better than, the following:

Table 1: Minima for flying between helidecks located in class G airspace

	Day		Night	
	Height *	**Visibility**	**Height ***	**Visibility**
Single-pilot	300 ft	3 km	500 ft	5 km
Two pilots	300 ft	2 km **	500 ft	5 km ***

*: The cloud base shall be such as to allow flight at the specified height, below and clear of cloud.

**: Helicopters may be operated in flight visibility down to 800 m provided the destination or an intermediate structure is continuously visible.

***: Helicopters may be operated in flight visibility down to 1 500 m provided the destination or an intermediate structure is continuously visible.

(c) Flight with helicopters to a helideck or elevated FATO shall only be operated when the mean wind speed at the helideck or elevated FATO is reported to be less than 60 kt.

CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants — ground procedures

(a) The operator shall establish procedures to be followed when ground de-icing and anti-icing and related inspections of the aircraft are necessary to allow the safe operation of the aircraft.

(b) The commander shall only commence take-off if the aircraft is clear of any deposit that might adversely affect the performance or controllability of the aircraft, except as permitted under (a) and in accordance with the AFM.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

TERMINOLOGY

Terms used in the context of de-icing/anti-icing have the meaning defined in the following subparagraphs.

(a) 'Anti-icing fluid' includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(1) Type I fluid if heated to min 60 °C at the nozzle;

(2) mixture of water and Type I fluid if heated to min 60 °C at the nozzle;

(3) Type II fluid;

(4) mixture of water and Type II fluid;

(5) Type III fluid;

(6) mixture of water and Type III fluid;

(7) Type IV fluid;

(8) mixture of water and Type IV fluid.

On uncontaminated aircraft surfaces Type II, III and IV anti-icing fluids are normally applied unheated.

(b) 'Clear ice': a coating of ice, generally clear and smooth, but with some air pockets. It forms on exposed objects, the temperatures of which are at, below or slightly above the freezing temperature, by the freezing of super-cooled drizzle, droplets or raindrops.

(c) Conditions conducive to aircraft icing on the ground (e.g. freezing fog, freezing precipitation, frost, rain or high humidity (on cold soaked wings), snow or mixed rain and snow).

(d) 'Contamination', in this context, is understood as being all forms of frozen or semi-frozen moisture, such as frost, snow, slush or ice.

(e) 'Contamination check': a check of aircraft for contamination to establish the need for de-icing.

(f) 'De-icing fluid': such fluid includes, but is not limited to, the following:

(1) heated water;

(2) Type I fluid;

(3) mixture of water and Type I fluid;

(4) Type II fluid;

(5) mixture of water and Type II fluid;

(6) Type III fluid;

(7) mixture of water and Type III fluid;

(8) Type IV fluid;

(9) mixture of water and Type IV fluid.

De-icing fluid is normally applied heated to ensure maximum efficiency.

(g) 'De-icing/anti-icing': this is the combination of de-icing and anti-icing performed in either one or two steps.

(h) 'Ground ice detection system (GIDS)': system used during aircraft ground operations to inform the personnel involved in the operation and/or the flight crew about the presence of frost, ice, snow or slush on the aircraft surfaces.

(i) 'Lowest operational use temperature (LOUT)': the lowest temperature at which a fluid has been tested and certified as acceptable in accordance with the appropriate aerodynamic acceptance test whilst still maintaining a freezing point buffer of not less than:

(1) 10°C for a Type I de-icing/anti-icing fluid; or

(2) 7°C for Type II, III or IV de-icing/anti-icing fluids.

(j) 'Post-treatment check': an external check of the aircraft after de-icing and/or anti-icing treatment accomplished from suitably elevated observation points (e.g. from the de-icing/anti-icing equipment itself or other elevated equipment) to ensure that the aircraft is free from any frost, ice, snow, or slush.

(k) 'Pre take-off check': an assessment normally performed by the flight crew, to validate the applied HoT.

(l) 'Pre take-off contamination check': a check of the treated surfaces for contamination, performed when the HoT has been exceeded or if any doubt exists regarding the continued effectiveness of the applied anti-icing treatment. It is normally accomplished externally, just before commencement of the take-off run.

ANTI-ICING CODES

(m) The following are examples of anti-icing codes:

(1) 'Type I' at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with a Type I fluid;

(2) 'Type II/100' at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with undiluted Type II fluid;

(3) 'Type II/75' at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with a mixture of 75 % Type II fluid and 25 % water;

(4) 'Type IV/50' at (start time) – to be used if anti-icing treatment has been performed with a mixture of 50 % Type IV fluid and 50 % water.

(n) When a two-step de-icing/anti-icing operation has been carried out, the anti-icing code should be determined by the second step fluid. Fluid brand names may be included, if desired.

GM2 CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING – PROCEDURES

(a) De-icing and/or anti-icing procedures should take into account manufacturer's recommendations, including those that are type-specific and cover:

(1) contamination checks, including detection of clear ice and under-wing frost; limits on the thickness/area of contamination published in the AFM or other manufacturers' documentation should be followed;

(2) procedures to be followed if de-icing and/or anti-icing procedures are interrupted or unsuccessful;

(3) post-treatment checks;

(4) pre-take-off checks;

(5) pre-take-off contamination checks;

(6) the recording of any incidents relating to de-icing and/or anti-icing; and

(7) the responsibilities of all personnel involved in de-icing and/or anti-icing.

(b) Operator's procedures should ensure the following:

(1) When aircraft surfaces are contaminated by ice, frost, slush or snow, they are de-iced prior to take-off, according to the prevailing conditions. Removal of contaminants may be performed with mechanical tools, fluids (including hot water), infra-red heat or forced air, taking account of aircraft type-specific provisions.

(2) Account is taken of the wing skin temperature versus outside air temperature (OAT), as this may affect:

(i) the need to carry out aircraft de-icing and/or anti-icing; and/or

(ii) the performance of the de-icing/anti-icing fluids.

(3) When freezing precipitation occurs or there is a risk of freezing precipitation occurring that would contaminate the surfaces at the time of take-off, aircraft surfaces should be anti-iced. If both de-icing and anti-icing are required, the procedure may be performed in a one- or two-step process, depending upon weather conditions, available equipment, available fluids and the desired hold-over time (HoT). One-step de-icing/anti-icing means that de-icing and anti-icing are carried out at the same time, using a mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water. Two-step de-icing/anti-icing means that de-icing and anti-icing are carried out in two separate steps. The aircraft is first de-iced using heated water only or a heated mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water. After completion of the de-icing operation a layer of a mixture of de-icing/anti-icing fluid and water, or of de-

icing/anti-icing fluid only, is sprayed over the aircraft surfaces. The second step will be applied before the first step fluid freezes, typically within three minutes and, if necessary, area by area.

(4) When an aircraft is anti-iced and a longer HoT is needed/desired, the use of a less diluted Type II or Type IV fluid should be considered.

(5) All restrictions relative to OAT and fluid application (including, but not necessarily limited to, temperature and pressure) published by the fluid manufacturer and/or aircraft manufacturer, are followed and procedures, limitations and recommendations to prevent the formation of fluid residues are followed.

(6) During conditions conducive to aircraft icing on the ground or after de-icing and/or anti-icing, an aircraft is not dispatched for departure unless it has been given a contamination check or a post-treatment check by a trained and qualified person. This check should cover all treated surfaces of the aircraft and be performed from points offering sufficient accessibility to these parts. To ensure that there is no clear ice on suspect areas, it may be necessary to make a physical check (e.g. tactile).

(7) The required entry is made in the technical log.

(8) The commander continually monitors the environmental situation after the performed treatment. Prior to take-off he/she performs a pre-take-off check, which is an assessment of whether the applied HoT is still appropriate. This pre-take-off check includes, but is not limited to, factors such as precipitation, wind and OAT.

(9) If any doubt exists as to whether a deposit may adversely affect the aircraft's performance and/or controllability characteristics, the commander should arrange for a pre take-off contamination check to be performed in order to verify that the aircraft's surfaces are free of contamination. Special methods and/or equipment may be necessary to perform this check, especially at night time or in extremely adverse weather conditions. If this check cannot be performed just before take-off, re-treatment should be applied.

(10) When retreatment is necessary, any residue of the previous treatment should be removed and a completely new de-icing/anti-icing treatment should be applied.

(11) When a ground ice detection system (GIDS) is used to perform an aircraft surfaces check prior to and/or after a treatment, the use of GIDS by suitably trained personnel should be part of the procedure.

(c) Special operational considerations

(1) When using thickened de-icing/anti-icing fluids, the operator should consider a two-step de-icing/anti-icing procedure, the first step preferably with hot water and/or un-thickened fluids.

(2) The use of de-icing/anti-icing fluids should be in accordance with the aircraft manufacturer's documentation. This is particularly important for thickened fluids to assure sufficient flow-off during take-off.

(3) The operator should comply with any type-specific operational provision(s), such as an aircraft mass decrease and/or a take-off speed increase associated with a fluid application.

(4) The operator should take into account any flight handling procedures (stick force, rotation speed and rate, take-off speed, aircraft attitude etc.) laid down by the aircraft manufacturer when associated with a fluid application.

(5) The limitations or handling procedures resulting from (c)(3) and/or (c)(4) above should be part of the flight crew pre take-off briefing.

(d) Communications

(1) Before aircraft treatment. When the aircraft is to be treated with the flight crew on board, the flight and personnel involved in the operation should confirm the fluid to be used, the extent of treatment required and any aircraft type-specific procedure(s) to be used. Any other information needed to apply the HoT tables should be exchanged.

(2) Anti-icing code. The operator's procedures should include an anti-icing code, which indicates the treatment the aircraft has received. This code provides the flight crew with the minimum details necessary to estimate a HoT and confirms that the aircraft is free of contamination.

(3) After treatment. Before reconfiguring or moving the aircraft, the flight crew should receive a confirmation from the personnel involved in the operation that all de-icing and/or anti-icing operations are complete and that all personnel and equipment are clear of the aircraft.

(e) Hold-over protection

The operator should publish in the operations manual, when required, the HoTs in the form of a table or a diagram, to account for the various types of ground icing conditions and the different types and concentrations of fluids used. However, the times of protection shown in these tables are to be used as guidelines only and are normally used in conjunction with the pre take-off check.

(f) Training

The operator's initial and recurrent de-icing and/or anti-icing training programmes (including communication training) for flight crew and those of its personnel involved in the operation who are involved in de-icing and/or anti-icing should include additional training if any of the following is introduced:

(1) a new method, procedure and/or technique;

(2) a new type of fluid and/or equipment; or

(3) a new type of aircraft.

(g) Contracting

When the operator contracts training on de-icing/anti-icing, the operator should ensure that the contractor complies with the operator's training/qualification procedures, together with any specific procedures in respect of:

(1) de-icing and/or anti-icing methods and procedures;

(2) fluids to be used, including precautions for storage and preparation for use;

(3) specific aircraft provisions (e.g. no-spray areas, propeller/engine de-icing, APU operation etc.); and

(4) checking and communications procedures.

(h) Special maintenance considerations

(1) General

The operator should take proper account of the possible side-effects of fluid use. Such effects may include, but are not necessarily limited to, dried and/or re-hydrated residues, corrosion and the removal of lubricants.

(2) Special considerations regarding residues of dried fluids

The operator should establish procedures to prevent or detect and remove residues of dried fluid. If necessary the operator should establish appropriate inspection intervals based on the recommendations of the airframe manufacturers and/or the operator's own experience:

(i) Dried fluid residues

Dried fluid residues could occur when surfaces have been treated and the aircraft has not subsequently been flown and has not been subject to precipitation. The fluid may then have dried on the surfaces.

(ii) Re-hydrated fluid residues

Repetitive application of thickened de-icing/anti-icing fluids may lead to the subsequent formation/build-up of a dried residue in aerodynamically quiet areas, such as cavities and gaps. This residue may re-hydrate if exposed to high humidity conditions, precipitation, washing, etc., and increase to many times its original size/volume. This residue will freeze if exposed to conditions at or below 0 °C. This may cause moving parts, such as elevators, ailerons, and flap actuating mechanisms to stiffen or jam in-flight. Re-hydrated residues may also form on exterior surfaces, which can reduce lift, increase drag and stall speed. Re-hydrated residues may also collect inside control surface structures and cause clogging of drain holes or imbalances to flight controls. Residues may also collect in hidden areas, such as around flight control hinges, pulleys, grommets, on cables and in gaps.

(iii) Operators are strongly recommended to obtain information about the fluid dry-out and re-hydration characteristics from the fluid manufacturers and to select products with optimised characteristics.

(iv) Additional information should be obtained from fluid manufacturers for handling, storage, application and testing of their products.

GM3 CAT.OP.MPA.250 Ice and other contaminants – ground procedures

DE-ICING/ANTI-ICING BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Further guidance material on this issue is given in the ICAO Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations (Doc 9640) (hereinafter referred to as the ICAO Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations).

(a) General

(1) Any deposit of frost, ice, snow or slush on the external surfaces of an aircraft may drastically affect its flying qualities because of reduced aerodynamic lift, increased drag, modified stability and control characteristics. Furthermore, freezing deposits may cause moving parts, such as elevators, ailerons, flap actuating mechanism etc., to jam and create a potentially hazardous condition. Propeller/engine/auxiliary power unit (APU)/systems performance may deteriorate due to the presence of frozen contaminants on blades, intakes and components. Also, engine operation may be seriously affected by the ingestion of snow or ice, thereby causing engine stall or compressor damage. In addition, ice/frost may form on certain external surfaces (e.g. wing upper and lower surfaces, etc.) due to the effects of cold fuel/structures, even in ambient temperatures well above 0 °C.

(2) Procedures established by the operator for de-icing and/or anti-icing are intended to ensure that the aircraft is clear of contamination so that degradation of aerodynamic characteristics or mechanical interference will not occur and, following anti-icing, to maintain the airframe in that condition during the appropriate HoT.

(3) Under certain meteorological conditions, de-icing and/or anti-icing procedures may be ineffective in providing sufficient protection for continued operations. Examples of these conditions are freezing rain, ice pellets and hail, heavy snow, high wind velocity, fast dropping OAT or any time when freezing precipitation with high water content is present. No HoT guidelines exist for these conditions.

(4) Material for establishing operational procedures can be found, for example, in:

(i) ICAO Annex 3, Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation;

(ii) ICAO Manual of Aircraft Ground De-icing/Anti-icing Operations;

(iii) ISO 11075 Aircraft – De-icing/anti-icing fluids – ISO type I;

(iv) ISO 11076 Aircraft – De-icing/anti-icing methods with fluids;

(v) ISO 11077 Aerospace – Self-propelled de-icing/anti-icing vehicles – Functional requirements;

(vi) ISO 11078 Aircraft – De-icing/anti-icing fluids -- ISO types II, III and IV;

(vii) AEA 'Recommendations for de-icing/anti-icing of aircraft on the ground';

(viii) AEA 'Training recommendations and background information for de-icing/anti-icing of aircraft on the ground';

(ix) EUROCAE ED-104A Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Ground Ice Detection Systems;

(x) SAE AS5681 Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Remote On-Ground Ice Detection Systems;

(xi) SAE ARP4737 Aircraft – De-icing/anti-icing methods;

(xii) SAE AMS1424 De-icing/anti-Icing Fluid, Aircraft, SAE Type I;

(xiii) SAE AMS1428 Fluid, Aircraft De-icing/anti-Icing, Non-Newtonian, (Pseudoplastic), SAE Types II, III, and IV;

(xiv) SAE ARP1971 Aircraft De-icing Vehicle – Self-Propelled, Large and Small Capacity;

(xv) SAE ARP5149 Training Programme Guidelines for De-icing/anti-icing of Aircraft on Ground; and

(xvi) SAE ARP5646 Quality Program Guidelines for De-icing/anti-icing of Aircraft on the Ground.

(b) Fluids

(1) Type I fluid: Due to its properties, Type I fluid forms a thin, liquid-wetting film on surfaces to which it is applied which, under certain weather conditions, gives a very limited HoT. With this type of

fluid, increasing the concentration of fluid in the fluid/water mix does not provide any extension in HoT.

(2) Type II and Type IV fluids contain thickeners which enable the fluid to form a thicker liquid-wetting film on surfaces to which it is applied. Generally, this fluid provides a longer HoT than Type I fluids in similar conditions. With this type of fluid, the HoT can be extended by increasing the ratio of fluid in the fluid/water mix.

(3) Type III fluid is a thickened fluid especially intended for use on aircraft with low rotation speeds.

(4) Fluids used for de-icing and/or anti-icing should be acceptable to the operator and the aircraft manufacturer. These fluids normally conform to specifications such as SAE AMS1424, SAE AMS1428 or equivalent. Use of non-conforming fluids is not recommended due to their characteristics being unknown. The anti-icing and aerodynamic properties of thickened fluids may be seriously degraded by, for example, inappropriate storage, treatment, application, application equipment and age.

(c) Hold-over protection

(1) Hold-over protection is achieved by a layer of anti-icing fluid remaining on and protecting aircraft surfaces for a period of time. With a one-step de-icing/anti-icing procedure, the HoT begins at the commencement of de-icing/anti-icing. With a two-step procedure, the HoT begins at the commencement of the second (anti-icing) step. The hold-over protection runs out:

(i) at the commencement of the take-off roll (due to aerodynamic shedding of fluid); or

(ii) when frozen deposits start to form or accumulate on treated aircraft surfaces, thereby indicating the loss of effectiveness of the fluid.

(2) The duration of hold-over protection may vary depending on the influence of factors other than those specified in the HoT tables. Guidance should be provided by the operator to take account of such factors, which may include:

(i) atmospheric conditions, e.g. exact type and rate of precipitation, wind direction and velocity, relative humidity and solar radiation; and

(ii) the aircraft and its surroundings, such as aircraft component inclination angle, contour and surface roughness, surface temperature, operation in close proximity to other aircraft (jet or propeller blast) and ground equipment and structures.

(3) HoTs are not meant to imply that flight is safe in the prevailing conditions if the specified HoT has not been exceeded. Certain meteorological conditions, such as freezing drizzle or freezing rain, may be beyond the certification envelope of the aircraft.

(4) References to usable HoT tables may be found in the AEA ‘Recommendations for de-icing/anti-icing of aircraft on the ground’.

CAT.OP.MPA.255 Ice and other contaminants — flight procedures

(a) The operator shall establish procedures for flights in expected or actual icing conditions.

(b) The commander shall only commence a flight or intentionally fly into expected or actual icing conditions if the aircraft is certified and equipped to cope with such conditions.

(c) If icing exceeds the intensity of icing for which the aircraft is certified or if an aircraft not certified for flight in known icing conditions encounters icing, the commander shall exit the icing conditions without delay, by a change of level and/or route, if necessary by declaring an emergency to ATC.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures

FLIGHT IN EXPECTED OR ACTUAL ICING CONDITIONS − AEROPLANES

(a) In accordance with Article 2(a)5. of Annex IV to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 (Essential requirements for air operations), in case of flight into known or expected icing conditions, the aircraft must be certified, equipped and/or treated to operate safely in such conditions. The procedures to be established by the operator should take account of the design, the equipment, the configuration of the aircraft and the necessary training. For these reasons, different aircraft types operated by the same company may require the development of different procedures. In every case the relevant limitations are those which are defined in the AFM and other documents produced by the manufacturer.

(b) The operator should ensure that the procedures take account of the following:

(1) the equipment and instruments which must be serviceable for flight in icing conditions;

(2) the limitations on flight in icing conditions for each phase of flight. These limitations may be imposed by the aircraft's de-icing or anti-icing equipment or the necessary performance corrections that have to be made;

(3) the criteria the flight crew should use to assess the effect of icing on the performance and/or controllability of the aircraft;

(4) the means by which the flight crew detects, by visual cues or the use of the aircraft's ice detection system, that the flight is entering icing conditions; and

(5) the action to be taken by the flight crew in a deteriorating situation (which may develop rapidly) resulting in an adverse affect on the performance and/or controllability of the aircraft, due to:

(i) the failure of the aircraft's anti-icing or de-icing equipment to control a build-up of ice; and/or

(ii) ice build-up on unprotected areas.

(c) Training for dispatch and flight in expected or actual icing conditions. The content of the operations manual should reflect the training, both conversion and recurrent, which flight crew, cabin crew and all other relevant operational personnel require in order to comply with the procedures for dispatch and flight in icing conditions:

(1) For the flight crew, the training should include:

(i) instruction on how to recognise, from weather reports or forecasts which are available before flight commences or during flight, the risks of encountering icing conditions along the planned route and on how to modify, as necessary, the departure and in-flight routes or profiles;

(ii) instruction on the operational and performance limitations or margins;

(iii) the use of in-flight ice detection, anti-icing and de-icing systems in both normal and abnormal operation; and

(iv) instruction on the differing intensities and forms of ice accretion and the consequent action which should be taken.

(2) For the cabin crew, the training should include;

(i) awareness of the conditions likely to produce surface contamination; and

(ii) the need to inform the flight crew of significant ice accretion.

AMC2 CAT.OP.MPA.255 Ice and other contaminants – flight procedures

FLIGHT IN EXPECTED OR ACTUAL ICING CONDITIONS − HELICOPTERS

(a) The procedures to be established by the operator should take account of the design, the equipment or the configuration of the helicopter and also of the training which is needed. For these reasons, different helicopter types operated by the same company may require the development of different procedures. In every case, the relevant limitations are those that are defined in the AFM and other documents produced by the manufacturer.

(b) For the required entries in the operations manual, the procedural principles that apply to flight in icing conditions are referred to under Subpart MLR of Annex III (ORO.MLR) and should be cross-referenced, where necessary, to supplementary, type-specific data.

(c) Technical content of the procedures

The operator should ensure that the procedures take account of the following:

(1) CAT.IDE.H.165;

(2) the equipment and instruments that should be serviceable for flight in icing conditions;

(3) the limitations on flight in icing conditions for each phase of flight. These limitations may be specified by the helicopter's de-icing or anti-icing equipment or the necessary performance corrections which have to be made;

(4) the criteria the flight crew should use to assess the effect of icing on the performance and/or controllability of the helicopter;

(5) the means by which the flight crew detects, by visual cues or the use of the helicopter's ice detection system, that the flight is entering icing conditions; and

(6) the action to be taken by the flight crew in a deteriorating situation (which may develop rapidly) resulting in an adverse effect on the performance and/or controllability of the helicopter, due to either:

(i) the failure of the helicopter's anti-icing or de-icing equipment to control a build-up of ice; and/or

(ii) ice build-up on unprotected areas.

(d) Training for dispatch and flight in expected or actual icing conditions

The content of the operations manual, Part D, should reflect the training, both conversion and recurrent, which flight crew, and all other relevant operational personnel will require in order to comply with the procedures for dispatch and flight in icing conditions.

(1) For the flight crew, the training should include:

(i) instruction on how to recognise, from weather reports or forecasts that are available before flight commences or during flight, the risks of encountering icing conditions along the planned route and on how to modify, as necessary, the departure and in-flight routes or profiles;

(ii) instruction on the operational and performance limitations or margins;

(iii) the use of in-flight ice detection, anti-icing and de-icing systems in both normal and abnormal operation; and

(iv) instruction on the differing intensities and forms of ice accretion and the consequent action which should be taken.

(2) For crew members other than flight crew, the training should include;

(i) awareness of the conditions likely to produce surface contamination; and

(ii) the need to inform the flight crew of significant ice accretion.

CAT.OP.MPA.260 Fuel and oil supply

The commander shall only commence a flight or continue in the event of in-flight replanning when satisfied that the aircraft carries at least the planned amount of usable fuel and oil to complete the flight safely, taking into account the expected operating conditions.

CAT.OP.MPA.265 Take-off conditions

Before commencing take-off, the commander shall be satisfied that:

(a) according to the information available to him/her, the weather at the aerodrome or operating site and the condition of the runway or FATO intended to be used would not prevent a safe take-off and departure; and

(b) established aerodrome operating minima will be complied with.

CAT.OP.MPA.270 Minimum flight altitudes

The commander or the pilot to whom conduct of the flight has been delegated shall not fly below specified minimum altitudes except when:

(a) necessary for take-off or landing; or

(b) descending in accordance with procedures approved by the competent authority.

CAT.OP.MPA.275 Simulated abnormal situations in flight

The operator shall ensure that when carrying passengers or cargo the following are not simulated:

(a) abnormal or emergency situations that require the application of abnormal or emergency procedures; or

(b) flight in IMC by artificial means.

CAT.OP.MPA.280 In-flight fuel management — aeroplanes

The operator shall establish a procedure to ensure that in-flight fuel checks and fuel management are carried out according to the following criteria.

(a) In-flight fuel checks

  (1) The commander shall ensure that fuel checks are carried out in-flight at regular intervals. The usable remaining fuel shall be recorded and evaluated to:

    (i) compare actual consumption with planned consumption;

    (ii) check that the usable remaining fuel is sufficient to complete the flight, in accordance with (b); and

    (iii) determine the expected usable fuel remaining on arrival at the destination aerodrome.

  (2) The relevant fuel data shall be recorded.

(b) In-flight fuel management

  (1) The flight shall be conducted so that the expected usable fuel remaining on arrival at the destination aerodrome is not less than:

    (i) the required alternate fuel plus final reserve fuel; or

    (ii) the final reserve fuel if no alternate aerodrome is required.

(2) If an in-flight fuel check shows that the expected usable fuel remaining on arrival at the destination aerodrome is less than:

(i) the required alternate fuel plus final reserve fuel, the commander shall take into account the traffic and the operational conditions prevailing at the destination aerodrome, at the destination alternate aerodrome and at any other adequate aerodrome in deciding whether to proceed to the destination aerodrome or to divert so as to perform a safe landing with not less than final reserve fuel; or

(ii) the final reserve fuel if no alternate aerodrome is required, the commander shall take appropriate action and proceed to an adequate aerodrome so as to perform a safe landing with not less than final reserve fuel.

(3) The commander shall declare an emergency when the calculated usable fuel on landing, at the nearest adequate aerodrome where a safe landing can be performed, is less than final reserve fuel.

(4) Additional conditions for specific procedures

(i) On a flight using the RCF procedure, to proceed to the destination 1 aerodrome, the commander shall ensure that the usable fuel remaining at the decision point is at least the total of:

(A) trip fuel from the decision point to the destination 1 aerodrome;

(B) contingency fuel equal to 5% of trip fuel from the decision point to the destination 1 aerodrome;

(C) destination 1 aerodrome alternate fuel, if a destination 1 alternate aerodrome is required; and

(D) final reserve fuel.

(ii) On a flight using the PDP procedure to proceed to the destination aerodrome, the commander shall ensure that the usable fuel remaining at the PDP is at least the total of:

(A) trip fuel from the PDP to the destination aerodrome;

(B) contingency fuel from the PDP to the destination aerodrome; and

(C) additional fuel.

CAT.OP.MPA.281 In-flight fuel management — helicopters

(a) The operator shall establish a procedure to ensure that in-flight fuel checks and fuel management are carried out.

(b) The commander shall ensure that the amount of usable fuel remaining in flight is not less than the fuel required to proceed to an aerodrome or operating site where a safe landing can be made, with final reserve fuel remaining.

(c) The commander shall declare an emergency when the actual usable fuel on board is less than final reserve fuel.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.281 In-flight fuel management – helicopters

COMPLEX MOTOR-POWERED HELICOPTERS, OTHER THAN LOCAL OPERATIONS

The operator should base in-flight fuel management procedures on the following criteria:

(a) In-flight fuel checks

(1) The commander should ensure that fuel checks are carried out in-flight at regular intervals. The remaining fuel should be recorded and evaluated to:

(i) compare actual consumption with planned consumption;

(ii) check that the remaining fuel is sufficient to complete the flight; and

(iii) determine the expected fuel remaining on arrival at the destination.

(2) The relevant fuel data should be recorded.

(b) In-flight fuel management

(1) If, as a result of an in-flight fuel check, the expected fuel remaining on arrival at the destination is less than the required alternate fuel plus final reserve fuel, the commander should:

(i) divert; or

(ii) replan the flight in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.181 (d)(1) unless he/she considers it safer to continue to the destination.

(2) At an onshore destination, when two suitable, separate touchdown and lift-off areas are available and the weather conditions at the destination comply with those specified for planning in CAT.OP.MPA.245 (a)(2), the commander may permit alternate fuel to be used before landing at the destination.

(c) If, as a result of an in-flight fuel check on a flight to an isolated destination, planned in accordance with (b), the expected fuel remaining at the point of last possible diversion is less than the sum of:

(1) fuel to divert to an operating site selected in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.181 (a);

(2) contingency fuel; and

(3) final reserve fuel,

the commander should:

(i) divert; or

(ii) proceed to the destination provided that at onshore destinations, two suitable, separate touchdown and lift-off areas are available at the destination and the expected weather conditions at the destination comply with those specified for planning in CAT.OP.MPA.245 (a)(2).

CAT.OP.MPA.285 Use of supplemental oxygen

The commander shall ensure that flight crew members engaged in performing duties essential to the safe operation of an aircraft in flight use supplemental oxygen continuously whenever the cabin altitude exceeds 10 000 ft for a period of more than 30 minutes and whenever the cabin altitude exceeds 13 000 ft.

CAT.OP.MPA.290 Ground proximity detection

When undue proximity to the ground is detected by a flight crew member or by a ground proximity warning system, the pilot flying shall take corrective action immediately to establish safe flight conditions.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.290 Ground proximity detection

TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS) FLIGHT CREW TRAINING PROGRAMMES

(a) Introduction

(1) This GM contains performance-based training objectives for TAWS flight crew training.

(2) The training objectives cover five areas: theory of operation; pre-flight operations; general in-flight operations; response to TAWS cautions; and response to TAWS warnings.

(3) The term 'TAWS' in this GM means a ground proximity warning system (GPWS) enhanced by a forward-looking terrain avoidance function. Alerts include both cautions and warnings.

(4) The content of this GM is intended to assist operators who are producing training programmes. The information it contains has not been tailored to any specific aircraft or TAWS equipment, but highlights features which are typically available where such systems are installed. It is the responsibility of the individual operator to determine the applicability of the content of this guidance material to each aircraft and TAWS equipment installed and their operation. Operators should refer to the AFM and/or aircraft/flight crew operating manual (A/FCOM), or similar documents, for information applicable to specific configurations. If there should be any conflict between the content of this guidance material and that published in the other documents described above, then information contained in the AFM or A/FCOM will take precedence.

(b) Scope

(1) The scope of this GM is designed to identify training objectives in the areas of: academic training; manoeuvre training; initial evaluation; and recurrent qualification. Under each of these four areas, the training material has been separated into those items which are considered essential training items and those that are considered to be desirable. In each area, objectives and acceptable performance criteria are defined.

(2) No attempt is made to define how the training programme should be implemented. Instead, objectives are established to define the knowledge that a pilot operating a TAWS is expected to possess and the performance expected from a pilot who has completed TAWS training. However, the guidelines do indicate those areas in which the pilot receiving the training should demonstrate his/her understanding, or performance, using a real-time, interactive training device, i.e. a flight simulator. Where appropriate, notes are included within the performance criteria which amplify or clarify the material addressed by the training objective.

(c) Performance-based training objectives

(1) TAWS academic training

(i) This training is typically conducted in a classroom environment. The knowledge demonstrations specified in this section may be completed through the successful completion of written tests or by providing correct responses to non-real-time computer-based training (CBT) questions.

(ii) Theory of operation. The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of TAWS operation and the criteria used for issuing cautions and warnings. This training should address system operation. Objective: To demonstrate knowledge of how a TAWS functions. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the following functions:

(A) Surveillance

(a) The GPWS computer processes data supplied from an air data computer, a radio altimeter, an instrument landing system (ILS)/microwave landing system (MLS)/multi-mode (MM) receiver, a roll attitude sensor, and actual position of the surfaces and of the landing gear.

(b) The forward looking terrain avoidance function utilises an accurate source of known aircraft position, such as that which may be provided by a flight management system (FMS) or GPS, or an electronic terrain database. The source and scope of the terrain, obstacle and airport data, and features such as the terrain clearance floor, the runway picker, and geometric altitude (where provided) should all be described.

(c) Displays required to deliver TAWS outputs include a loudspeaker for voice announcements, visual alerts (typically amber and red lights), and a terrain awareness display (that may be combined with other displays). In addition, means should be provided for indicating the status of the TAWS and any partial or total failures that may occur.

(B) Terrain avoidance. Outputs from the TAWS computer provide visual and audio synthetic voice cautions and warnings to alert the flight crew about potential conflicts with terrain and obstacles.

(C) Alert thresholds. Objective: To demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing cautions and warnings. Criteria: The pilot should be able to demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by a TAWS to issue cautions and alerts and the general criteria for the issuance of these alerts, including:

(a) basic GPWS alerting modes specified in the ICAO Standard:

– Mode 1: excessive sink rate;

– Mode 2: excessive terrain closure rate;

– Mode 3: descent after take-off or go-around;

– Mode 4: unsafe proximity to terrain;

– Mode 5: descent below ILS glide slope (caution only); and

(b) an additional, optional alert mode- Mode 6: radio altitude call-out (information only); TAWS cautions and warnings which alert the flight crew to obstacles and terrain ahead of the aircraft in line with or adjacent to its projected flight path (forward-looking terrain avoidance (FLTA) and premature descent alert (PDA) functions).

(D) TAWS limitations. Objective: To verify that the pilot is aware of the limitations of TAWS. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge and an understanding of TAWS limitations identified by the manufacturer for the equipment model installed, such as:

(a) navigation should not be predicated on the use of the terrain display;

(b) unless geometric altitude data is provided, use of predictive TAWS functions is prohibited when altimeter subscale settings display 'QFE';

(c) nuisance alerts can be issued if the aerodrome of intended landing is not included in the TAWS airport database;

(d) in cold weather operations, corrective procedures should be implemented by the pilot unless the TAWS has in-built compensation, such as geometric altitude data;

(e) loss of input data to the TAWS computer could result in partial or total loss of functionality. Where means exist to inform the flight crew that functionality has been degraded, this should be known and the consequences understood;

(f) radio signals not associated with the intended flight profile (e.g. ILS glide path transmissions from an adjacent runway) may cause false alerts;

(g) inaccurate or low accuracy aircraft position data could lead to false or non-annunciation of terrain or obstacles ahead of the aircraft; and

(h) minimum equipment list (MEL) restrictions should be applied in the event of the TAWS becoming partially or completely unserviceable. (It should be noted that basic GPWS has no forward-looking capability.)

(E) TAWS inhibits. Objective: To verify that the pilot is aware of the conditions under which certain functions of a TAWS are inhibited. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge and an understanding of the various TAWS inhibits, including the following means of:

(a) silencing voice alerts;

(b) inhibiting ILS glide path signals (as may be required when executing an ILS back beam approach);

(c) inhibiting flap position sensors (as may be required when executing an approach with the flaps not in a normal position for landing);

(d) inhibiting the FLTA and PDA functions; and

(e) selecting or deselecting the display of terrain information, together with appropriate annunciation of the status of each selection.

(2) Operating procedures. The pilot should demonstrate the knowledge required to operate TAWS avionics and to interpret the information presented by a TAWS. This training should address the following topics:

(i) Use of controls. Objective: To verify that the pilot can properly operate all TAWS controls and inhibits. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate the proper use of controls, including the following means by which:

(A) before flight, any equipment self-test functions can be initiated;

(B) TAWS information can be selected for display; and

(C) all TAWS inhibits can be operated and what the consequent annunciations mean with regard to loss of functionality.

(ii) Display interpretation. Objective: To verify that the pilot understands the meaning of all information that can be annunciated or displayed by a TAWS. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate the ability to properly interpret information annunciated or displayed by a TAWS, including the following:

(A) knowledge of all visual and aural indications that may be seen or heard;

(B) response required on receipt of a caution;

(C) response required on receipt of a warning; and

(D) response required on receipt of a notification that partial or total failure of the TAWS has occurred (including annunciation that the present aircraft position is of low accuracy).

(iii) Use of basic GPWS or use of the FLTA function only. Objective: To verify that the pilot understands what functionality will remain following loss of the GPWS or of the FLTA function. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge of how to recognise the following:

(A) un-commanded loss of the GPWS function, or how to isolate this function and how to recognise the level of the remaining controlled flight into terrain (CFIT) protection (essentially, this is the FLTA function); and

(B) un-commanded loss of the FLTA function, or how to isolate this function and how to recognise the level of the remaining CFIT protection (essentially, this is the basic GPWS).

(iv) Crew coordination. Objective: To verify that the pilot adequately briefs other flight crew members on how TAWS alerts will be handled. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate that the pre-flight briefing addresses procedures that will be used in preparation for responding to TAWS cautions and warnings, including the following:

(A) the action to be taken, and by whom, in the event that a TAWS caution and/or warning is issued; and

(B) how multi-function displays will be used to depict TAWS information at take-off, in the cruise and for the descent, approach, landing (and any go-around). This will be in accordance with procedures specified by the operator, who will recognise that it may be more desirable that other data is displayed at certain phases of flight and that the terrain display has an automatic 'pop-up' mode in the event that an alert is issued.

(v) Reporting rules. Objective: To verify that the pilot is aware of the rules for reporting alerts to the controller and other authorities. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate knowledge of the following:

(A) when, following recovery from a TAWS alert or caution, a transmission of information should be made to the appropriate ATC unit; and

(B) the type of written report that is required, how it is to be compiled, and whether any cross reference should be made in the aircraft technical log and/or voyage report (in accordance with procedures specified by the operator), following a flight in which the aircraft flight path has been modified in response to a TAWS alert, or if any part of the equipment appears not to have functioned correctly.

(vi) Alert thresholds. Objective: To demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing cautions and warnings. Criteria: The pilot should be able to demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by a TAWS to issue cautions and warnings and the general criteria for the issuance of these alerts, including awareness of the following:

(A) modes associated with basic GPWS, including the input data associated with each; and

(B) visual and aural annunciations that can be issued by TAWS and how to identify which are cautions and which are warnings.

(3) TAWS manoeuvre training. The pilot should demonstrate the knowledge required to respond correctly to TAWS cautions and warnings. This training should address the following topics:

(i) Response to cautions:

(A) Objective: To verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to cautions. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the need, without delay:

(a) to initiate action required to correct the condition which has caused the TAWS to issue the caution and to be prepared to respond to a warning, if this should follow; and

(b) if a warning does not follow the caution, to notify the controller of the new position, heading and/or altitude/flight level of the aircraft, and what the commander intends to do next.

(B) The correct response to a caution might require the pilot to:

(a) reduce a rate of descent and/or to initiate a climb;

(b) regain an ILS glide path from below, or to inhibit a glide path signal if an ILS is not being flown;

(c) select more flap, or to inhibit a flap sensor if the landing is being conducted with the intent that the normal flap setting will not be used;

(d) select gear down; and/or

(e) initiate a turn away from the terrain or obstacle ahead and towards an area free of such obstructions if a forward-looking terrain display indicates that this would be a good solution and the entire manoeuvre can be carried out in clear visual conditions.

(ii) Response to warnings. Objective: To verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to warnings. Criteria: The pilot should demonstrate an understanding of the following:

(A) The need, without delay, to initiate a climb in the manner specified by the operator.

(B) The need, without delay, to maintain the climb until visual verification can be made that the aircraft will clear the terrain or obstacle ahead or until above the appropriate sector safe altitude (if certain about the location of the aircraft with respect to terrain) even if the TAWS warning stops. If, subsequently, the aircraft climbs up through the sector safe altitude, but the visibility does not allow the flight crew to confirm that the terrain hazard has ended, checks should be made to verify the location of the aircraft and to confirm that the altimeter subscale settings are correct.

(C) When the workload permits, that the flight crew should notify the air traffic controller of the new position and altitude/flight level, and what the commander intends to do next.

(D) That the manner in which the climb is made should reflect the type of aircraft and the method specified by the aircraft manufacturer (which should be reflected in the operations manual) for performing the escape manoeuvre. Essential aspects will include the need for an increase in pitch attitude, selection of maximum thrust, confirmation that external sources of drag (e.g. spoilers/speed brakes) are retracted, and respect of the stick shaker or other indication of eroded stall margin.

(E) That TAWS warnings should never be ignored. However, the pilot's response may be limited to that which is appropriate for a caution, only if:

(a) the aircraft is being operated by day in clear, visual conditions; and

(b) it is immediately clear to the pilot that the aircraft is in no danger in respect of its configuration, proximity to terrain or current flight path.

(4) TAWS initial evaluation:

(i) The flight crew member's understanding of the academic training items should be assessed by means of a written test.

(ii) The flight crew member's understanding of the manoeuvre training items should be assessed in a FSTD equipped with TAWS visual and aural displays and inhibit selectors similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft which the pilot will fly. The results should be assessed by a synthetic flight instructor, synthetic flight examiner, type rating instructor or type rating examiner.

(iii) The range of scenarios should be designed to give confidence that proper and timely responses to TAWS cautions and warnings will result in the aircraft avoiding a CFIT accident. To achieve this objective, the pilot should demonstrate taking the correct action to prevent a caution developing into a warning and, separately, the escape manoeuvre needed in response to a warning. These demonstrations should take place when the external visibility is zero, though there is much to be learnt if, initially, the training is given in 'mountainous' or 'hilly' terrain with clear visibility. This training should comprise a sequence of scenarios, rather than be included in line oriented flight training (LOFT).

(iv) A record should be made, after the pilot has demonstrated competence, of the scenarios that were practised.

(5) TAWS recurrent training:

(i) TAWS recurrent training ensures that pilots maintain the appropriate TAWS knowledge and skills. In particular, it reminds pilots of the need to act promptly in response to cautions and warnings, and of the unusual attitude associated with flying the escape manoeuvre.

(ii) An essential item of recurrent training is the discussion of any significant issues and operational concerns that have been identified by the operator. Recurrent training should also address changes to TAWS logic, parameters or procedures and to any unique TAWS characteristics of which pilots should be aware.

(6) Reporting procedures:

(i) Verbal reports. Verbal reports should be made promptly to the appropriate air traffic control unit:

(A) whenever any manoeuvre has caused the aircraft to deviate from an air traffic clearance;

(B) when, following a manoeuvre which has caused the aircraft to deviate from an air traffic clearance, the aircraft has returned to a flight path which complies with the clearance; and/or

(C) when an air traffic control unit issues instructions which, if followed, would cause the pilot to manoeuvre the aircraft towards terrain or obstacle or it would appear from the display that a potential CFIT occurrence is likely to result.

(ii) Written reports. Written reports should be submitted in accordance with the operator's occurrence reporting scheme and they also should be recorded in the aircraft technical log:

(A) whenever the aircraft flight path has been modified in response to a TAWS alert (false, nuisance or genuine);

(B) whenever a TAWS alert has been issued and is believed to have been false; and/or

(C) if it is believed that a TAWS alert should have been issued, but was not.

(iii) Within this GM and with regard to reports:

(A) the term 'false' means that the TAWS issued an alert which could not possibly be justified by the position of the aircraft in respect to terrain and it is probable that a fault or failure in the system (equipment and/or input data) was the cause;

(B) the term 'nuisance' means that the TAWS issued an alert which was appropriate, but was not needed because the flight crew could determine by independent means that the flight path was, at that time, safe;

(C) the term 'genuine' means that the TAWS issued an alert which was both appropriate and necessary; and

(D) the report terms described in (c)(6)(iii) are only meant to be assessed after the occurrence is over, to facilitate subsequent analysis, the adequacy of the equipment and the programmes it contains. The intention is not for the flight crew to attempt to classify an alert into any of these three categories when visual and/or aural cautions or warnings are annunciated.

CAT.OP.MPA.295 Use of airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS)

The operator shall establish operational procedures and training programmes when ACAS is installed and serviceable. When ACAS II is used, such procedures and training shall be in accordance with Commission Regulation (EU) No 1332/2011[27].

[27] OJ L 336, 20.12.2011, p.20

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.295 Use of airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS)

GENERAL

(a) The ACAS operational procedures and training programmes established by the operator should take into account this GM. It incorporates advice contained in:

(1) ICAO Annex 10, Volume IV;

(2) ICAO PANS-OPS, Volume 1;

(3) ICAO PANS-ATM; and

(4) ICAO guidance material 'ACAS Performance-Based Training Objectives' (published under Attachment E of State Letter AN 7/1.3.7.2-97/77).

(b) Additional guidance material on ACAS may be referred to, including information available from such sources as EUROCONTROL.

ACAS FLIGHT CREW TRAINING PROGRAMMES

(c) During the implementation of ACAS, several operational issues were identified which had been attributed to deficiencies in flight crew training programmes. As a result, the issue of flight crew training has been discussed within the ICAO, which has developed guidelines for operators to use when designing training programmes.

(d) This GM contains performance-based training objectives for ACAS II flight crew training. Information contained in this paper related to traffic advisories (TAs) is also applicable to ACAS I and ACAS II users. The training objectives cover five areas: theory of operation; pre-flight operations; general in-flight operations; response to TAs; and response to resolution advisories (RAs).

(e) The information provided is valid for version 7 and 7.1 (ACAS II). Where differences arise, these are identified.

(f) The performance-based training objectives are further divided into the areas of: academic training; manoeuvre training; initial evaluation and recurrent qualification. Under each of these four areas, the training material has been separated into those items which are considered essential training items and those which are considered desirable. In each area, objectives and acceptable performance criteria are defined.

(g) ACAS academic training

(1) This training is typically conducted in a classroom environment. The knowledge demonstrations specified in this section may be completed through the successful completion of written tests or through providing correct responses to non-real-time computer-based training (CBT) questions.

(2) Essential items

(i) Theory of operation. The flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of ACAS II operation and the criteria used for issuing TAs and RAs. This training should address the following topics:

(A) System operation

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of how ACAS functions.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the following functions:

(a) Surveillance

(1) ACAS interrogates other transponder-equipped aircraft within a nominal range of 14 NM.

(2) ACAS surveillance range can be reduced in geographic areas with a large number of ground interrogators and/or ACAS II-equipped aircraft.

(3) If the operator's ACAS implementation provides for the use of the Mode S extended squitter, the normal surveillance range may be increased beyond the nominal 14 NM. However, this information is not used for collision avoidance purposes.

(b) Collision avoidance

(1) TAs can be issued against any transponder-equipped aircraft which responds to the ICAO Mode C interrogations, even if the aircraft does not have altitude reporting capability.

(2) RAs can be issued only against aircraft that are reporting altitude and in the vertical plane only.

(3) RAs issued against an ACAS-equipped intruder are co-ordinated to ensure complementary RAs are issued.

(4) Failure to respond to an RA deprives own aircraft of the collision protection provided by own ACAS.

(5) Additionally, in ACAS-ACAS encounters, failure to respond to an RA also restricts the choices available to the other aircraft's ACAS and thus renders the other aircraft's ACAS less effective than if own aircraft were not ACAS equipped.

(B) Advisory thresholds

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing TAs and RAs.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by ACAS to issue TAs and RAs and the general criteria for the issuance of these advisories, including the following:

(a) ACAS advisories are based on time to closest point of approach (CPA) rather than distance. The time should be short and vertical separation should be small, or projected to be small, before an advisory can be issued. The separation standards provided by ATS are different from the miss distances against which ACAS issues alerts.

(b) Thresholds for issuing a TA or an RA vary with altitude. The thresholds are larger at higher altitudes.

(c) A TA occurs from 15 to 48 seconds and an RA from 15 to 35 seconds before the projected CPA.

(d) RAs are chosen to provide the desired vertical miss distance at CPA. As a result, RAs can instruct a climb or descent through the intruder aircraft's altitude.

(C) ACAS limitations

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the limitations of ACAS.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge and understanding of ACAS limitations, including the following:

(a) ACAS will neither track nor display non-transponder-equipped aircraft, nor aircraft not responding to ACAS Mode C interrogations.

(b) ACAS will automatically fail if the input from the aircraft's barometric altimeter, radio altimeter or transponder is lost.

(1) In some installations, the loss of information from other on board systems such as an inertial reference system (IRS) or attitude heading reference system (AHRS) may result in an ACAS failure. Individual operators should ensure that their flight crews are aware of the types of failure that will result in an ACAS failure.

(2) ACAS may react in an improper manner when false altitude information is provided to own ACAS or transmitted by another aircraft. Individual operators should ensure that their flight crew are aware of the types of unsafe conditions that can arise. Flight crew members should ensure that when they are advised, if their own aircraft is transmitting false altitude reports, an alternative altitude reporting source is selected, or altitude reporting is switched off.

(c) Some aeroplanes within 380 ft above ground level (AGL) (nominal value) are deemed to be 'on ground' and will not be displayed. If ACAS is able to determine an aircraft below this altitude is airborne, it will be displayed.

(d) ACAS may not display all proximate transponder-equipped aircraft in areas of high density traffic.

(e) The bearing displayed by ACAS is not sufficiently accurate to support the initiation of horizontal manoeuvres based solely on the traffic display.

(f) ACAS will neither track nor display intruders with a vertical speed in excess of 10 000 ft/min. In addition, the design implementation may result in some short-term errors in the tracked vertical speed of an intruder during periods of high vertical acceleration by the intruder.

(g) Ground proximity warning systems/ground collision avoidance systems (GPWSs/GCASs) warnings and wind shear warnings take precedence over ACAS advisories. When either a GPWS/GCAS or wind shear warning is active, ACAS aural annunciations will be inhibited and ACAS will automatically switch to the 'TA only' mode of operation.

(D) ACAS inhibits

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the conditions under which certain functions of ACAS are inhibited.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the various ACAS inhibits, including the following:

(a) 'Increase Descent' RAs are inhibited below 1 450 ft AGL;

(b) 'Descend' RAs are inhibited below 1 100 ft AGL;

(c) all RAs are inhibited below 1 000 ft AGL;

(d) all TA aural annunciations are inhibited below 500 ft AGL; and

(e) altitude and configuration under which 'Climb' and 'Increase Climb' RAs are inhibited. ACAS can still issue 'Climb' and 'Increase Climb' RAs when operating at the aeroplane's certified ceiling. (In some aircraft types, 'Climb' or 'Increase Climb' RAs are never inhibited.)

(ii) Operating procedures

The flight crew member should demonstrate the knowledge required to operate the ACAS avionics and interpret the information presented by ACAS. This training should address the following:

(A) Use of controls

Objective: to verify that the pilot can properly operate all ACAS and display controls.

Criteria: demonstrate the proper use of controls including:

(a) aircraft configuration required to initiate a self-test;

(b) steps required to initiate a self-test;

(c) recognising when the self-test was successful and when it was unsuccessful. When the self-test is unsuccessful, recognising the reason for the failure and, if possible, correcting the problem;

(d) recommended usage of range selection. Low ranges are used in the terminal area and the higher display ranges are used in the en-route environment and in the transition between the terminal and en-route environment;

(e) recognising that the configuration of the display does not affect the ACAS surveillance volume;

(f) selection of lower ranges when an advisory is issued, to increase display resolution;

(g) proper configuration to display the appropriate ACAS information without eliminating the display of other needed information;

(h) if available, recommended usage of the above/below mode selector. The above mode should be used during climb and the below mode should be used during descent; and

(i) if available, proper selection of the display of absolute or relative altitude and the limitations of using this display if a barometric correction is not provided to ACAS.

(B) Display interpretation

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member understands the meaning of all information that can be displayed by ACAS. The wide variety of display implementations require the tailoring of some criteria. When the training programme is developed, these criteria should be expanded to cover details for the operator's specific display implementation.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the ability to properly interpret information displayed by ACAS, including the following:

(a) other traffic, i.e. traffic within the selected display range that is not proximate traffic, or causing a TA or RA to be issued;

(b) proximate traffic, i.e. traffic that is within 6 NM and ±1 200 ft;

(c) non-altitude reporting traffic;

(d) no bearing TAs and RAs;

(e) off-scale TAs and RAs: the selected range should be changed to ensure that all available information on the intruder is displayed;

(f) TAs: the minimum available display range which allows the traffic to be displayed should be selected, to provide the maximum display resolution;

(g) RAs (traffic display): the minimum available display range of the traffic display which allows the traffic to be displayed should be selected, to provide the maximum display resolution;

(h) RAs (RA display): flight crew members should demonstrate knowledge of the meaning of the red and green areas or the meaning of pitch or flight path angle cues displayed on the RA display. Flight crew members should also demonstrate an understanding of the RA display limitations, i.e. if a vertical speed tape is used and the range of the tape is less than 2 500 ft/min, an increase rate RA cannot be properly displayed; and

(i) if appropriate, awareness that navigation displays oriented on 'Track-Up' may require a flight crew member to make a mental adjustment for drift angle when assessing the bearing of proximate traffic.

(C) Use of the TA only mode

Objective: to verify that a flight crew member understands the appropriate times to select the TA only mode of operation and the limitations associated with using this mode.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the following:

(a) Knowledge of the operator's guidance for the use of TA only.

(b) Reasons for using this mode. If TA only is not selected when an airport is conducting simultaneous operations from parallel runways separated by less than 1 200 ft, and to some intersecting runways, RAs can be expected. If for any reason TA only is not selected and an RA is received in these situations, the response should comply with the operator's approved procedures.

(c) All TA aural annunciations are inhibited below 500 ft AGL. As a result, TAs issued below 500 ft AGL may not be noticed unless the TA display is included in the routine instrument scan.

(D) Crew coordination

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member understands how ACAS advisories will be handled.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge of the crew procedures that should be used when responding to TAs and RAs, including the following:

(a) task sharing between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring;

(b) expected call-outs; and

(c) communications with ATC.

(E) Phraseology rules

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the rules for reporting RAs to the controller.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate the following:

(a) the use of the phraseology contained in ICAO PANS-OPS;

(b) an understanding of the procedures contained in ICAO PANS-ATM and ICAO Annex 2; and

(c) the understanding that verbal reports should be made promptly to the appropriate ATC unit:

(1) whenever any manoeuvre has caused the aeroplane to deviate from an air traffic clearance;

(2) when, subsequent to a manoeuvre that has caused the aeroplane to deviate from an air traffic clearance, the aeroplane has returned to a flight path that complies with the clearance; and/or

(3) when air traffic issue instructions that, if followed, would cause the crew to manoeuvre the aircraft contrary to an RA with which they are complying.

(F) Reporting rules

Objective: to verify that the flight crew member is aware of the rules for reporting RAs to the operator.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate knowledge of where information can be obtained regarding the need for making written reports to various states when an RA is issued. Various States have different reporting rules and the material available to the flight crew member should be tailored to the operator's operating environment. For operators involved in commercial operations, this responsibility is satisfied by the flight crew member reporting to the operator according to the applicable reporting rules.

(3) Non-essential items: advisory thresholds

Objective: to demonstrate knowledge of the criteria for issuing TAs and RAs.

Criteria: the flight crew member should demonstrate an understanding of the methodology used by ACAS to issue TAs and RAs and the general criteria for the issuance of these advisories, including the following:

(i) the minimum and maximum altitudes below/above which TAs will not be issued;

(ii) when the vertical separation at CPA is projected to be less than the ACAS-desired separation, a corrective RA which requires a change to the existing vertical speed will be issued. This separation varies from 300 ft at low altitude to a maximum of 700 ft at high altitude;

(iii) when the vertical separation at CPA is projected to be just outside the ACAS-desired separation, a preventive RA that does not require a change to the existing vertical speed will be issued. This separation varies from 600 to 800 ft; and

(iv) RA fixed range thresholds vary between 0.2 and 1.1 NM.

(h) ACAS manoeuvre training

(1) Demonstration of the flight crew member's ability to use ACAS displayed information to properly respond to TAs and RAs should be carried out in a full flight simulator equipped with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft. If a full flight simulator is utilised, CRM should be practised during this training.

(2) Alternatively, the required demonstrations can be carried out by means of an interactive CBT with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft. This interactive CBT should depict scenarios in which real-time responses should be made. The flight crew member should be informed whether or not the responses made were correct. If the response was incorrect or inappropriate, the CBT should show what the correct response should be.

(3) The scenarios included in the manoeuvre training should include: corrective RAs; initial preventive RAs; maintain rate RAs; altitude crossing RAs; increase rate RAs; RA reversals; weakening RAs; and multi-aircraft encounters. The consequences of failure to respond correctly should be demonstrated by reference to actual incidents such as those publicised in EUROCONTROL ACAS II Bulletins (available on the EUROCONTROL website).

(i) TA responses

Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to TAs.

Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the following:

(A) Proper division of responsibilities between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring. The pilot flying should fly the aircraft using any type-specific procedures and be prepared to respond to any RA that might follow. For aircraft without an RA pitch display, the pilot flying should consider the likely magnitude of an appropriate pitch change. The pilot monitoring should provide updates on the traffic location shown on the ACAS display, using this information to help visually acquire the intruder.

(B) Proper interpretation of the displayed information. Flight crew members should confirm that the aircraft they have visually acquired is that which has caused the TA to be issued. Use should be made of all information shown on the display, note being taken of the bearing and range of the intruder (amber circle), whether it is above or below (data tag) and its vertical speed direction (trend arrow).

(C) Other available information should be used to assist in visual acquisition, including ATC 'party-line' information, traffic flow in use, etc.

(D) Because of the limitations described, the pilot flying should not manoeuvre the aircraft based solely on the information shown on the ACAS display. No attempt should be made to adjust the current flight path in anticipation of what an RA would advise, except that if own aircraft is approaching its cleared level at a high vertical rate with a TA present, vertical rate should be reduced to less than 1 500 ft/min.

(E) When visual acquisition is attained, and as long as no RA is received, normal right of way rules should be used to maintain or attain safe separation. No unnecessary manoeuvres should be initiated. The limitations of making manoeuvres based solely on visual acquisition, especially at high altitude or at night, or without a definite horizon should be demonstrated as being understood.

(ii) RA responses

Objective: to verify that the pilot properly interprets and responds to RAs.

Criteria: the pilot should demonstrate the following:

(A) Proper response to the RA, even if it is in conflict with an ATC instruction and even if the pilot believes that there is no threat present.

(B) Proper task sharing between the pilot flying and the pilot monitoring. The pilot flying should respond to a corrective RA with appropriate control inputs. The pilot monitoring should monitor the response to the RA and should provide updates on the traffic location by checking the traffic display. Proper crew resource management (CRM) should be used.

(C) Proper interpretation of the displayed information. The pilot should recognise the intruder causing the RA to be issued (red square on display). The pilot should respond appropriately.

(D) For corrective RAs, the response should be initiated in the proper direction within five seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ¼ g (gravitational acceleration of 9.81 m/sec^2).

(E) Recognition of the initially displayed RA being modified. Response to the modified RA should be properly accomplished, as follows:

(a) For increase rate RAs, the vertical speed change should be started within two and a half seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ⅓ g.

(b) For RA reversals, the vertical speed reversal should be started within two and a half seconds of the RA being displayed. The change in vertical speed should be accomplished with an acceleration of approximately ⅓ g.

(c) For RA weakenings, the vertical speed should be modified to initiate a return towards the original clearance.

(d) An acceleration of approximately ¼ g will be achieved if the change in pitch attitude corresponding to a change in vertical speed of 1 500 ft/min is accomplished in approximately 5 seconds, and of ⅓ g if the change is accomplished in approximately three seconds. The change in pitch attitude required to establish a rate of climb or descent of 1 500 ft/min from level flight will be approximately 6° when the true airspeed (TAS) is 150 kt, 4° at 250 kt, and 2° at 500 kt. (These angles are derived from the formula: 1 000 divided by TAS.).

(F) Recognition of altitude crossing encounters and the proper response to these RAs.

(G) For preventive RAs, the vertical speed needle or pitch attitude indication should remain outside the red area on the RA display.

(H) For maintain rate RAs, the vertical speed should not be reduced. Pilots should recognise that a maintain rate RA may result in crossing through the intruder's altitude.

(I) When the RA weakens, or when the green 'fly to' indicator changes position, the pilot should initiate a return towards the original clearance and when 'clear of conflict' is annunciated, the pilot should complete the return to the original clearance.

(J) The controller should be informed of the RA as soon as time and workload permit, using the standard phraseology.

(K) When possible, an ATC clearance should be complied with while responding to an RA. For example, if the aircraft can level at the assigned altitude while responding to RA (an 'adjust vertical speed' RA (version 7) or 'level off' (version 7.1)) it should be done; the horizontal (turn) element of an ATC instruction should be followed.

(L) Knowledge of the ACAS multi-aircraft logic and its limitations, and that ACAS can optimise separations from two aircraft by climbing or descending towards one of them. For example, ACAS only considers intruders that it considers to be a threat when selecting an RA. As such, it is possible for ACAS to issue an RA against one intruder that results in a manoeuvre towards another intruder which is not classified as a threat. If the second intruder becomes a threat, the RA will be modified to provide separation from that intruder.

(i) ACAS initial evaluation

(1) The flight crew member's understanding of the academic training items should be assessed by means of a written test or interactive CBT that records correct and incorrect responses to phrased questions.

(2) The flight crew member's understanding of the manoeuvre training items should be assessed in a full flight simulator equipped with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft the flight crew member will fly, and the results assessed by a qualified instructor, inspector, or check airman. The range of scenarios should include: corrective RAs; initial preventive RAs; maintain rate RAs; altitude crossing RAs; increase rate RAs; RA reversals; weakening RAs; and multi-threat encounters. The scenarios should also include demonstrations of the consequences of not responding to RAs, slow or late responses, and manoeuvring opposite to the direction called for by the displayed RA.

(3) Alternatively, exposure to these scenarios can be conducted by means of an interactive CBT with an ACAS display and controls similar in appearance and operation to those in the aircraft the pilot will fly. This interactive CBT should depict scenarios in which real-time responses should be made and a record made of whether or not each response was correct.

(j) ACAS recurrent training

(1) ACAS recurrent training ensures that flight crew members maintain the appropriate ACAS knowledge and skills. ACAS recurrent training should be integrated into and/or conducted in conjunction with other established recurrent training programmes. An essential item of recurrent training is the discussion of any significant issues and operational concerns that have been identified by the operator. Recurrent training should also address changes to ACAS logic, parameters or proce-

dures and to any unique ACAS characteristics which flight crew members should be made aware of.

(2) It is recommended that the operator's recurrent training programmes using full flight simulators include encounters with conflicting traffic when these simulators are equipped with ACAS. The full range of likely scenarios may be spread over a 2-year period. If a full flight simulator, as described above, is not available, use should be made of interactive CBT that is capable of presenting scenarios to which pilot responses should be made in real-time.

CAT.OP.MPA.300 Approach and landing conditions

Before commencing an approach to land, the commander shall be satisfied that, according to the information available to him/her, the weather at the aerodrome and the condition of the runway or FATO intended to be used should not prevent a safe approach, landing or missed approach, having regard to the performance information contained in the operations manual.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.300 Approach and landing conditions

IN-FLIGHT DETERMINATION OF THE LANDING DISTANCE

The in-flight determination of the landing distance should be based on the latest available meteorological or runway state report, preferably not more than 30 minutes before the expected landing time.

CAT.OP.MPA.305 Commencement and continuation of approach

(a) The commander or the pilot to whom conduct of the flight has been delegated may commence an instrument approach regardless of the reported RVR/VIS.

(b) If the reported RVR/VIS is less than the applicable minimum the approach shall not be continued:

(1) below 1 000 ft above the aerodrome; or

(2) into the final approach segment in the case where the DA/H or MDA/H is more than 1 000 ft above the aerodrome.

(c) Where the RVR is not available, RVR values may be derived by converting the reported visibility.

(d) If, after passing 1 000 ft above the aerodrome, the reported RVR/VIS falls below the applicable minimum, the approach may be continued to DA/H or MDA/H.

(e) The approach may be continued below DA/H or MDA/H and the landing may be completed provided that the visual reference adequate for the type of approach operation and for the intended runway is established at the DA/H or MDA/H and is maintained.

(f) The touchdown zone RVR shall always be controlling. If reported and relevant, the midpoint and stopend RVR shall also be controlling. The minimum RVR value for the midpoint shall be 125 m or the RVR required for the touchdown zone if less, and 75 m for the stopend. For aircraft equipped with a rollout guidance or control system, the minimum RVR value for the midpoint shall be 75 m.

AMC1 CAT.OP.MPA.305(e) Commencement and continuation of approach

VISUAL REFERENCES FOR INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS

(a) NPA, APV and CAT I operations

At DH or MDH, at least one of the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot:

(1) elements of the approach lighting system;

(2) the threshold;

(3) the threshold markings;

(4) the threshold lights;

(5) the threshold identification lights;

(6) the visual glide slope indicator;

(7) the touchdown zone or touchdown zone markings;

(8) the touchdown zone lights;

(9) FATO/runway edge lights; or

(10) other visual references specified in the operations manual.

(b) Lower than standard category I (LTS CAT I) operations

At DH, the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot:

(1) a segment of at least three consecutive lights, being the centreline of the approach lights, or touchdown zone lights, or runway centreline lights, or runway edge lights, or a combination of these;

(2) this visual reference should include a lateral element of the ground pattern, such as an approach light crossbar or the landing threshold or a barrette of the touchdown zone light unless the operation is conducted utilising an approved HUDLS usable to at least 150 ft.

(c) CAT II or OTS CAT II operations

At DH, the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot:

(1) a segment of at least three consecutive lights being the centreline of the approach lights, or touchdown zone lights, or runway centreline lights, or runway edge lights, or a combination of these;

(2) this visual reference should include a lateral element of the ground pattern, such as an approach light crossbar or the landing threshold or a barrette of the touchdown zone light unless the operation is conducted utilising an approved HUDLS to touchdown.

(d) CAT III operations

(1) For CAT IIIA operations and for CAT IIIB operations conducted either with fail-passive flight control systems or with the use of an approved HUDLS: at DH, a segment of at least three consecutive lights being the centreline of the approach lights, or touchdown zone lights, or runway centreline lights, or runway edge lights, or a combination of these is attained and can be maintained by the pilot.

(2) For CAT IIIB operations conducted either with fail-operational flight control systems or with a fail-operational hybrid landing system using a DH: at DH, at least one centreline light is attained and can be maintained by the pilot.

(3) For CAT IIIB operations with no DH there is no specification for visual reference with the runway prior to touchdown.

(e) Approach operations utilising EVS – CAT I operations

(1) At DH, the following visual references should be displayed and identifiable to the pilot on the EVS image:

(i) elements of the approach light; or

(ii) the runway threshold, identified by at least one of the following:

(A) the beginning of the runway landing surface,

(B) the threshold lights, the threshold identification lights; or

(C) the touchdown zone, identified by at least one of the following: the runway touchdown zone landing surface, the touchdown zone lights, the touchdown zone markings or the runway lights.

(2) At 100 ft above runway threshold elevation at least one of the visual references specified below should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot without reliance on the EVS:

(i) the lights or markings of the threshold; or

(ii) the lights or markings of the touchdown zone.

(f) Approach operations utilising EVS – APV and NPA operations flown with the CDFA technique

(1) At DH/MDH, visual references should be displayed and identifiable to the pilot on the EVS image as specified under (a).

(2) At 200 ft above runway threshold elevation, at least one of the visual references specified under (a) should be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot without reliance on the EVS.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.305(f) Commencement and continuation of approach

EXPLANATION OF THE TERM ‘RELEVANT’

‘Relevant’ in this context means that part of the runway used during the high-speed phase of the landing down to a speed of approximately 60 kt.

CAT.OP.MPA.310 Operating procedures — threshold crossing height — aeroplanes

The operator shall establish operational procedures designed to ensure that an aeroplane conducting precision approaches crosses the threshold of the runway by a safe margin, with the aeroplane in the landing configuration and attitude.

CAT.OP.MPA.315 Flight hours reporting — helicopters

The operator shall make available to the competent authority the hours flown for each helicopter operated during the previous calendar year.

GM1 CAT.OP.MPA.315 Flight hours reporting – helicopters

FLIGHT HOURS REPORTING

(a) The requirement in CAT.OP.MPA.315 may be achieved by making available either:

  (1) the flight hours flown by each helicopter – identified by its serial number and registration mark – during the previous calendar year; or

  (2) the total flight hours of each helicopter – identified by its serial number and registration mark – on the 31st of December of the previous calendar year.

(b) Where possible, the operator should have available, for each helicopter, the breakdown of hours for commercial air transport operations. If the exact hours for the functional activity cannot be established, the estimated proportion will be sufficient.

CAT.OP.MPA.320 Aircraft categories

(a) Aircraft categories shall be based on the indicated airspeed at threshold (VAT) which is equal to the stalling speed (VSO) multiplied by 1.3 or one-g (gravity) stall speed (VS1g) multiplied by 1.23 in the landing configuration at the maximum certified landing mass. If both VSO and VS1g are available, the higher resulting VAT shall be used.

(b) The aircraft categories specified in the table below shall be used.

Table 1: Aircraft categories corresponding to VAT values

Aircraft category	VAT
A	Less than 91 kt
B	From 91 to 120 kt
C	From 121 to 140 kt
D	From 141 to 165 kt
E	From 166 to 210 kt

(c) The landing configuration that is to be taken into consideration shall be specified in the operations manual.

(d) The operator may apply a lower landing mass for determining the VAT if approved by the competent authority. Such a lower landing mass shall be a permanent value, independent of the changing conditions of day-to-day operations.

SUBPART C — AIRCRAFT PERFORMANCE AND OPERATING LIMITATIONS

Section 1 — Aeroplanes

Chapter 1 — General requirements

CAT.POL.A.100 Performance classes

(a) The aeroplane shall be operated in accordance with the applicable performance class requirements.

(b) Where full compliance with the applicable requirements of this Section cannot be shown due to specific design characteristics, the operator shall apply approved performance standards that ensure a level of safety equivalent to that of the appropriate chapter.

CAT.POL.A.105 General

(a) The mass of the aeroplane:

(1) at the start of the take-off; or

(2) in the event of in-flight replanning, at the point from which the revised operational flight plan applies,

shall not be greater than the mass at which the requirements of the appropriate chapter can be complied with for the flight to be undertaken. Allowance may be made for expected reductions in mass as the flight proceeds and for fuel jettisoning.

(b) The approved performance data contained in the AFM shall be used to determine compliance with the requirements of the appropriate chapter, supplemented as necessary with other data as prescribed in the relevant chapter. The operator shall specify other data in the operations manual. When applying the factors prescribed in the appropriate chapter, account may be taken of any operational factors already incorporated in the AFM performance data to avoid double application of factors.

(c) Due account shall be taken of aeroplane configuration, environmental conditions and the operation of systems that have an adverse effect on performance.

(d) For performance purposes, a damp runway, other than a grass runway, may be considered to be dry.

(e) The operator shall take account of charting accuracy when assessing the take-off requirements of the applicable chapters.

Chapter 2 — Performance class A

CAT.POL.A.200 General

(a) The approved performance data in the AFM shall be supplemented as necessary with other data if the approved performance data in the AFM is insufficient in respect of items such as:

(1) accounting for reasonably expected adverse operating conditions such as take-off and landing on contaminated runways; and

(2) consideration of engine failure in all flight phases.

(b) For wet and contaminated runways, performance data determined in accordance with applicable standards on certification of large aeroplanes or equivalent shall be used.

(c) The use of other data referred to in (a) and equivalent requirements referred to in (b) shall be specified in the operations manual.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.200 General

WET AND CONTAMINATED RUNWAY DATA

If the performance data have been determined on the basis of a measured runway friction coefficient, the operator should use a procedure correlating the measured runway friction coefficient and the effective braking coefficient of friction of the aeroplane type over the required speed range for the existing runway conditions.

CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the pressure altitude and the ambient temperature at the aerodrome of departure.

(b) The following requirements shall be met when determining the maximum permitted take-off mass:

(1) the accelerate-stop distance shall not exceed the accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA);

(2) the take-off distance shall not exceed the take-off distance available, with a clearway distance not exceeding half of the take-off run available (TORA);

(3) the take-off run shall not exceed the TORA;

(4) a single value of V1 shall be used for the rejected and continued take-off; and

(5) on a wet or contaminated runway, the take-off mass shall not exceed that permitted for a take-off on a dry runway under the same conditions.

(c) When showing compliance with (b), the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(3) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(4) the runway slope in the direction of take-off;

(5) not more than 50% of the reported headwind component or not less than 150% of the reported tailwind component; and

(6) the loss, if any, of runway length due to alignment of the aeroplane prior to take-off.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off

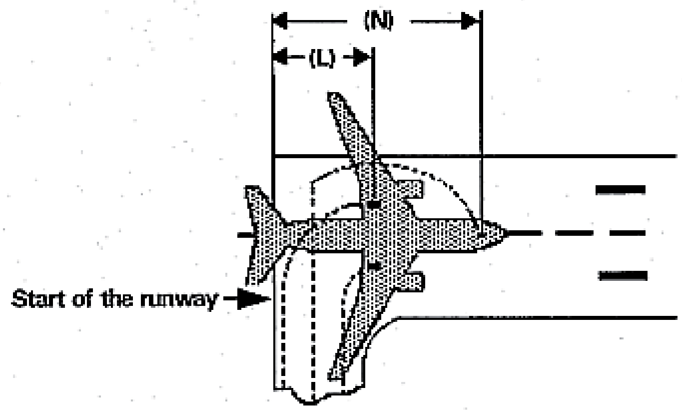
LOSS OF RUNWAY LENGTH DUE TO ALIGNMENT

(a) The length of the runway that is declared for the calculation of take-off distance available (TODA), accelerate-stop distance available (ASDA) and take-off run available (TORA) does not account for line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off on the runway in use. This alignment distance depends on the aeroplane geometry and access possibility to the runway in use. Accountability is usually required for a 90° taxiway entry to the runway and 180° turnaround on the runway. There are two distances to be considered:

(1) the minimum distance of the main wheels from the start of the runway for determining TODA and TORA,'L'; and

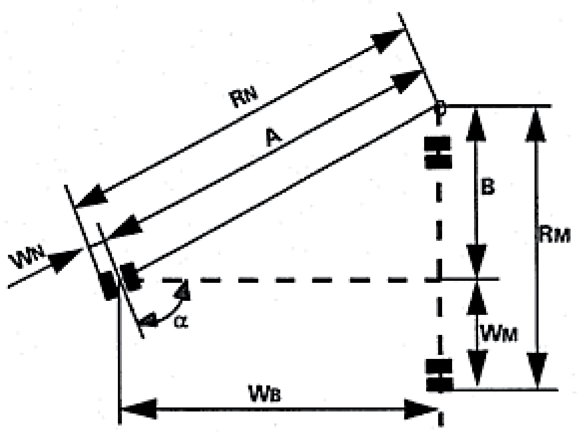
(2) the minimum distance of the most forward wheel(s) from the start of the runway for determining ASDA,'N'.

Figure 1: Line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off – L and N



Where the aeroplane manufacturer does not provide the appropriate data, the calculation method given in (b) should be used to determine the alignment distance.

(b) Alignment distance calculation



The distances mentioned in (a)(1) and (a)(2) are:

	90° entry	180° turnaround
L=	RM + X	RN + Y
N=	RM + X + WB	RN + Y + WB

where:

RN = A + WN = WB/cos(90°-α) + WN

RM = B + WM = WB tan(90°-α) + WM

X = safety distance of outer main wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

Y = safety distance of outer nose wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

Note: Minimum edge safety distances for X and Y are specified in FAA AC 150/5300-13 and ICAO Annex 14, 3.8.3

RN = radius of turn of outer nose wheel

RM = radius of turn of outer main wheel

WN = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer nose wheel

WM = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer main wheel

WB = wheel base

α = steering angle.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.205 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

(a) Operation on runways contaminated with water, slush, snow or ice implies uncertainties with regard to runway friction and contaminant drag and therefore to the achievable performance and control of the aeroplane during take-off, since the actual conditions may not completely match the assumptions on which the performance information is based. In the case of a contaminated runway, the first option for the commander is to wait until the runway is cleared. If this is impracticable, he/she may consider a take-off, provided that he/she has applied the applicable performance adjustments, and any further safety measures he/she considers justified under the prevailing conditions.

(b) An adequate overall level of safety will only be maintained if operations in accordance with AMC 25.1591 or equivalent are limited to rare occasions. Where the frequency of such operations on contaminated runways is not limited to rare occasions, the operator should provide additional measures ensuring an equivalent level of safety. Such measures could include special crew training, additional distance factoring and more restrictive wind limitations.

CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

(a) The net take-off flight path shall be determined in such a way that the aeroplane clears all obstacles by a vertical distance of at least 35 ft or by a horizontal distance of at least 90 m plus 0.125 × D, where D is the horizontal distance the aeroplane has travelled from the end of the take-off distance available (TODA) or the end of the take-off distance if a turn is scheduled before the end of the TODA. For aeroplanes with a wingspan of less than 60 m, a horizontal obstacle clearance of half the aeroplane wingspan plus 60 m, plus 0.125 × D may be used.

(b) When showing compliance with (a):

(1) The following items shall be taken into account:

(i) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(ii) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(iii) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome; and

(iv) not more than 50% of the reported headwind component or not less than 150% of the reported tailwind component.

(2) Track changes shall not be allowed up to the point at which the net take-off flight path has achieved a height equal to one half the wingspan but not less than 50 ft above the elevation of the end of the TORA. Thereafter, up to a height of 400 ft it is assumed that the aeroplane is banked by no more than 15°. Above 400 ft height bank angles greater than 15°, but not more than 25° may be scheduled.

(3) Any part of the net take-off flight path in which the aeroplane is banked by more than 15° shall clear all obstacles within the horizontal distances specified in (a), (b)(6) and (b)(7) by a vertical distance of at least 50 ft.

(4) Operations that apply increased bank angles of not more than 20° between 200 ft and 400 ft, or not more than 30° above 400 ft, shall be carried out in accordance with CAT.POL.A.240.

(5) Adequate allowance shall be made for the effect of bank angle on operating speeds and flight path including the distance increments resulting from increased operating speeds.

(6) For cases where the intended flight path does not require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles that have a lateral distance greater than:

(i) 300 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(ii) 600 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(7) For cases where the intended flight path requires track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles that have a lateral distance greater than:

(i) 600 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(ii) 900 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(c) The operator shall establish contingency procedures to satisfy the requirements in (a) and (b) and to provide a safe route, avoiding obstacles, to enable the aeroplane to either comply with the en-route requirements of CAT.POL.A.215, or land at either the aerodrome of departure or at a take-off alternate aerodrome.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

TAKE-OFF OBSTACLE CLEARANCE

(a) In accordance with the definitions used in preparing the take-off distance and take-off flight path data provided in the AFM:

(1) The net take-off flight path is considered to begin at a height of 35 ft above the runway or clearway at the end of the take-off distance determined for the aeroplane in accordance with (b) below.

(2) The take-off distance is the longest of the following distances:

(i) 115 % of the distance with all engines operating from the start of the take-off to the point at which the aeroplane is 35 ft above the runway or clearway;

(ii) the distance from the start of the take-off to the point at which the aeroplane is 35 ft above the runway or clearway assuming failure of the critical engine occurs at the point corresponding to the decision speed (V1) for a dry runway; or

(iii) if the runway is wet or contaminated, the distance from the start of the take-off to the point at which the aeroplane is 15 ft above the runway or clearway assuming failure of the critical engine occurs at the point corresponding to the decision speed (V1) for a wet or contaminated runway.

(b) The net take-off flight path, determined from the data provided in the AFM in accordance with (a)(1) and (a)(2), should clear all relevant obstacles by a vertical distance of 35 ft. When taking off on a wet or contaminated runway and an engine failure occurs at the point corresponding to the decision speed (V1) for a wet or contaminated runway, this implies that the aeroplane can initially be as much as 20 ft below the net take-off flight path in accordance with (a) and, therefore, may clear close-in obstacles by only 15 ft. When taking off on wet or contaminated runways, the operator should exercise special care with respect to obstacle assessment, especially if a take-off is obstacle-limited and the obstacle density is high.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

EFFECT OF BANK ANGLES

(a) The AFM generally provides a climb gradient decrement for a 15° bank turn. For bank angles of less than 15°, a proportionate amount should be applied, unless the manufacturer or AFM has provided other data.

(b) Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, acceptable adjustments to assure adequate stall margins and gradient corrections are provided by the following table:

Table 1: Effect of bank angles

Bank	Speed	Gradient correction
15°	V_2	1 x AFM 15° gradient loss
20°	V_2 + 5 kt	2 x AFM 15° gradient loss
25°	V_2 + 10 kt	3 x AFM 15° gradient loss

AMC3 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

REQUIRED NAVIGATIONAL ACCURACY

(a) Navigation systems

The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used if the navigation system under OEI conditions provides a two standard deviation accuracy of 150 m and 300 m respectively.

(b) Visual course guidance

(1) The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used where navigational accuracy is ensured at all relevant points on the flight path by use of external references. These references may be considered visible from the flight crew compartment if they are situated more than 45° either side of the intended track and with a depression of not greater than 20° from the horizontal.

(2) For visual course guidance navigation, the operator should ensure that the weather conditions prevailing at the time of operation, including ceiling and visibility, are such that the obstacle and/or ground reference points can be seen and identified. The operations manual should specify, for the aerodrome(s) concerned, the minimum weather conditions which enable the flight crew to continuously determine and maintain the correct flight path with respect to ground reference points, so as to provide a safe clearance with respect to obstructions and terrain as follows:

(i) the procedure should be well defined with respect to ground reference points so that the track to be flown can be analysed for obstacle clearance requirements;

(ii) the procedure should be within the capabilities of the aeroplane with respect to forward speed, bank angle and wind effects;

(iii) a written and/or pictorial description of the procedure should be provided for crew use; and

(iv) the limiting environmental conditions (such as wind, the lowest cloud base, ceiling, visibility, day/night, ambient lighting, obstruction lighting) should be specified.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.210 Take-off obstacle clearance

CONTINGENCY PROCEDURES FOR OBSTACLES CLEARANCES

If compliance with CAT.POL.A.210 is based on an engine failure route that differs from the all engine departure route or SID normal departure, a 'deviation point' can be identified where the engine failure route deviates from the normal departure route. Adequate obstacle clearance along the normal departure route with failure of the critical engine at the deviation point will normally be available. However, in certain situations the obstacle clearance along the normal departure route may be marginal and should be checked to ensure that, in case of an engine failure after the deviation point, a flight can safely proceed along the normal departure route.

CAT.POL.A.215 En-route — one-engine-inoperative (OEI)

(a) The OEI en-route net flight path data shown in the AFM, appropriate to the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, shall allow demonstration of compliance with (b) or (c) at all points along the route. The net flight path shall have a positive gradient at 1 500 ft above the aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made after engine failure. In meteorological conditions requiring the operation of ice protection systems, the effect of their use on the net flight path shall be taken into account.

(b) The gradient of the net flight path shall be positive at least 1 000 ft above all terrain and obstructions along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track.

(c) The net flight path shall permit the aeroplane to continue flight from the cruising altitude to an aerodrome where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.A.225 or CAT.POL.A.230, as appropriate. The net flight path shall clear vertically, by at least 2 000 ft, all terrain and obstructions along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track in accordance with the following:

(1) the engine is assumed to fail at the most critical point along the route;

(2) account is taken of the effects of winds on the flight path;

(3) fuel jettisoning is permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used; and

(4) the aerodrome where the aeroplane is assumed to land after engine failure shall meet the following criteria:

(i) the performance requirements at the expected landing mass are met; and

(ii) weather reports and/or forecasts and field condition reports indicate that a safe landing can be accomplished at the estimated time of landing.

(d) The operator shall increase the width margins of (b) and (c) to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy does not meet at least required navigation performance 5 (RNP5).

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.215 En-route – one-engine-inoperative (OEI)

ROUTE ANALYSIS

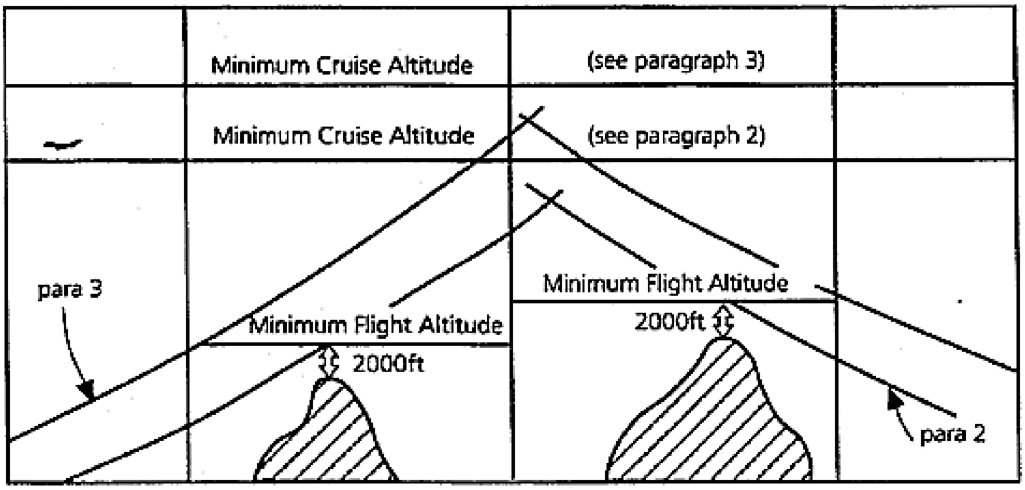
(a) The high terrain or obstacle analysis required should be carried out by a detailed analysis of the route.

(b) A detailed analysis of the route should be made using contour maps of the high terrain and plotting the highest points within the prescribed corridor's width along the route. The next step is to determine whether it is possible to maintain level flight with OEI 1 000 ft above the highest point of the crossing. If this is not possible, or if the associated weight penalties are unacceptable, a driftdown procedure should be worked out, based on engine failure at the most critical point and clearing critical obstacles during the driftdown by at least 2 000 ft. The minimum cruise altitude is determined by the intersection of the two driftdown paths, taking into account allowances for decision making (see Figure 1). This method is time-consuming and requires the availability of detailed terrain maps.

(c) Alternatively, the published minimum flight altitudes (MEA or minimum off-route altitude (MORA)) should be used for determining whether OEI level flight is feasible at the minimum flight altitude, or if it is necessary to use the published minimum flight altitudes as the basis for the driftdown construction (see Figure 1). This procedure avoids a detailed high terrain contour analysis, but could be more penalising than taking the actual terrain profile into account as in (b).

(d) In order to comply with CAT.POL.A.215 (c), one means of compliance is the use of MORA and, with CAT. POL.A.215 (d), MEA provided that the aeroplane meets the navigational equipment standard assumed in the definition of MEA.

Figure 1: Intersection of the two driftdown paths



Note: MEA or MORA normally provide the required 2 000 ft obstacle clearance for driftdown. However, at and below 6 000 ft altitude, MEA and MORA cannot be used directly as only 1 000 ft clearance is ensured.

CAT.POL.A.220 En-route — aeroplanes with three or more engines, two engines inoperative

(a) At no point along the intended track shall an aeroplane having three or more engines be more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met, unless it complies with (b) to (f).

(b) The two-engines-inoperative en-route net flight path data shall allow the aeroplane to continue the flight, in the expected meteorological conditions, from the point where two engines are assumed to fail simultaneously to an aerodrome at which it is possible to land and come to a complete stop when using the prescribed procedure for a landing with two engines inoperative. The net flight path shall clear vertically, by at least 2 000 ft, all terrain and obstructions along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track. At altitudes and in meteorological conditions requiring ice protection systems to be operable, the effect of their use on the net flight path data shall be taken into account. If the navigational accuracy does not meet at least RNP5, the operator shall increase the width margin given above to 18.5 km (10 NM).

(c) The two engines shall be assumed to fail at the most critical point of that portion of the route where the aeroplane is more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met.

(d) The net flight path shall have a positive gradient at 1 500 ft above the aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made after the failure of two engines.

(e) Fuel jettisoning shall be permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used.

(f) The expected mass of the aeroplane at the point where the two engines are assumed to fail shall not be less than that which would include sufficient fuel to proceed to an aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made, and to arrive there at least 1 500 ft directly over the landing area and thereafter to fly level for 15 minutes.

CAT.POL.A.225 Landing — destination and alternate aerodromes

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified for the altitude and the ambient temperature expected for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and alternate aerodrome.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

ALTITUDE MEASURING

The operator should use either pressure altitude or geometric altitude for its operation and this should be reflected in the operations manual.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

MISSED APPROACH

(a) For instrument approaches with a missed approach climb gradient greater than 2.5 %, the operator should verify that the expected landing mass of the aeroplane allows for a missed approach with a climb gradient equal to or greater than the applicable missed approach gradient in the OEI missed approach configuration and at the associated speed.

(b) For instrument approaches with DH below 200 ft, the operator should verify that the expected landing mass of the aeroplane allows a missed approach gradient of climb, with the critical engine failed and with the speed and configuration used for a missed approach of at least 2.5 %, or the published gradient, whichever is greater.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.225 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

MISSED APPROACH GRADIENT

(a) Where an aeroplane cannot achieve the missed approach gradient specified in AMC2 CAT.POL.A.225, when operating at or near maximum certificated landing mass and in engine-out conditions, the operator has the opportunity to propose an alternative means of compliance to the competent authority demonstrating that a missed approach can be executed safely taking into account appropriate mitigating measures.

(b) The proposal for an alternative means of compliance may involve the following:

(1) considerations to mass, altitude and temperature limitations and wind for the missed approach;

(2) a proposal to increase the DA/H or MDA/H; and

(3) a contingency procedure ensuring a safe route and avoiding obstacles.

CAT.POL.A.230 Landing — dry runways

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and at any alternate aerodrome shall allow a full stop landing from 50 ft above the threshold:

(1) for turbo-jet powered aeroplanes, within 60% of the landing distance available (LDA); and

(2) for turbo-propeller powered aeroplanes, within 70% of the LDA.

(b) For steep approach operations, the operator shall use the landing distance data factored in accordance with (a), based on a screen height of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, and shall comply with CAT.POL.A.245.

(c) For short landing operations, the operator shall use the landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) and shall comply with CAT.POL.A.250.

(d) When determining the landing mass, the operator shall take the following into account:

(1) the altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) not more than 50% of the headwind component or not less than 150% of the tailwind component; and

(3) the runway slope in the direction of landing if greater than ±2%.

(e) For dispatching the aeroplane it shall be assumed that:

(1) the aeroplane will land on the most favourable runway, in still air; and

(2) the aeroplane will land on the runway most likely to be assigned, considering the probable wind speed and direction, the ground handling characteristics of the aeroplane and other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

(f) If the operator is unable to comply with (e)(1) for a destination aerodrome having a single runway where a landing depends upon a specified wind component, the aeroplane may be dispatched if two alternate aerodromes are designated that permit full compliance with (a) to (e). Before commencing an approach to land at the destination aerodrome, the commander shall check that a landing can be made in full compliance with (a) to (d) and CAT.POL.A.225.

(g) If the operator is unable to comply with (e)(2) for the destination aerodrome, the aeroplane shall be only dispatched if an alternate aerodrome is designated that allows full compliance with (a) to (e).

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.230 Landing – dry runways

FACTORING OF AUTOMATIC LANDING DISTANCE PERFORMANCE DATA

In those cases where the landing requires the use of an automatic landing system, and the distance published in the AFM includes safety margins equivalent to those contained in CAT.POL.A.230 (a)(1) and CAT.POL.A.235, the landing mass of the aeroplane should be the lesser of:

(a) the landing mass determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.230 (a)(1) or CAT.POL.A.235 as appropriate; or

(b) the landing mass determined for the automatic landing distance for the appropriate surface condition, as given in the AFM or equivalent document. Increments due to system features such as beam location or elevations, or procedures such as use of overspeed, should also be included.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.230 Landing – dry runways

LANDING MASS

CAT.POL.A.230 establishes two considerations in determining the maximum permissible landing mass at the destination and alternate aerodromes:

(a) Firstly, the aeroplane mass will be such that on arrival the aeroplane can be landed within 60 % or 70 % (as applicable) of the landing distance available (LDA) on the most favourable (normally the longest) runway in still air. Regardless of the wind conditions, the maximum landing mass for an aerodrome/aeroplane configuration at a particular aerodrome cannot be exceeded.

(b) Secondly, consideration should be given to anticipated conditions and circumstances. The expected wind, or ATC and noise abatement procedures, may indicate the use of a different runway. These factors may result in a lower landing mass than that permitted under (a), in which case dispatch should be based on this lesser mass.

(c) The expected wind referred to in (b) is the wind expected to exist at the time of arrival.

CAT.POL.A.235 Landing — wet and contaminated runways

(a) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be wet, the LDA shall be at least 115% of the required landing distance, determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.230.

(b) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be contaminated, the LDA shall be at least the landing distance determined in accordance with (a), or at least 115% of the landing distance determined in accordance with approved contaminated landing distance data or equivalent, whichever is greater. The operator shall specify in the operations manual if equivalent landing distance data are to be applied.

(c) A landing distance on a wet runway shorter than that required by (a), but not less than that required by CAT.POL.A.230 (a), may be used if the AFM includes specific additional information about landing distances on wet runways.

(d) A landing distance on a specially prepared contaminated runway shorter than that required by (b), but not less than that required by CAT.POL.A.230 (a), may be used if the AFM includes specific additional information about landing distances on contaminated runways.

(e) For (b), (c) and (d), the criteria of CAT.POL.A.230 shall be applied accordingly, except that CAT.POL.A.230 (a) shall not be applied to (b) above.

CAT.POL.A.240 Approval of operations with increased bank angles

(a) Operations with increased bank angles require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the AFM contains approved data for the required increase of operating speed and data to allow the construction of the flight path considering the increased bank angles and speeds;

(2) visual guidance is available for navigation accuracy;

(3) weather minima and wind limitations are specified for each runway; and

(4) the flight crew has obtained adequate knowledge of the route to be flown and of the procedures to be used in accordance with ORO.OPS.FC.

CAT.POL.A.245 Approval of steep approach operations

(a) Steep approach operations using glideslope angles of 4.5° or more and with screen heights of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the AFM states the maximum approved glideslope angle, any other limitations, normal, abnormal or emergency procedures for the steep approach as well as amendments to the field length data when using steep approach criteria;

(2) for each aerodrome at which steep approach operations are to be conducted:

(i) a suitable glide path reference system comprising at least a visual glide path indicating system shall be available;

(ii) weather minima shall be specified; and

(iii) the following items shall be taken into consideration:

(A) the obstacle situation;

(B) the type of glide path reference and runway guidance;

(C) the minimum visual reference to be required at decision height (DH) and MDA;

(D) available airborne equipment;

(E) pilot qualification and special aerodrome familiarisation;

(F) AFM limitations and procedures; and

(G) missed approach criteria.

CAT.POL.A.250 Approval of short landing operations

(a) Short landing operations require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the distance used for the calculation of the permitted landing mass may consist of the usable length of the declared safe area plus the declared LDA;

(2) the State of the aerodrome has determined a public interest and operational necessity for the operation, either due to the remoteness of the aerodrome or to physical limitations relating to extending the runway;

(3) the vertical distance between the path of the pilot's eye and the path of the lowest part of the wheels, with the aeroplane established on the normal glide path, does not exceed 3 m;

(4) RVR/VIS minimum shall not be less than 1 500 m and wind limitations are specified in the operations manual;

(5) minimum pilot experience, training and special aerodrome familiarisation requirements are specified and met;

(6) the crossing height over the beginning of the usable length of the declared safe area is 50 ft;

(7) the use of the declared safe area is approved by the State of the aerodrome;

(8) the usable length of the declared safe area does not exceed 90 m;

(9) the width of the declared safe area is not less than twice the runway width or twice the wing span, whichever is greater, centred on the extended runway centre line;

(10) the declared safe area is clear of obstructions or depressions that would endanger an aeroplane undershooting the runway and no mobile object is permitted on the declared safe area while the runway is being used for short landing operations;

(11) the slope of the declared safe area does not exceed 5% upward nor 2% downward in the direction of landing; and

(12) additional conditions, if specified by the competent authority, taking into account aeroplane type characteristics, orographic characteristics in the approach area, available approach aids and missed approach/balked landing considerations.

Chapter 3 — Performance class B

CAT.POL.A.300 General

(a) The operator shall not operate a single-engined aeroplane:

(1) at night; or

(2) in IMC except under special VFR.

(b) The operator shall treat two-engined aeroplanes that do not meet the climb requirements of CAT.POL.A.340 as single-engined aeroplanes.

CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the pressure altitude and the ambient temperature at the aerodrome of departure.

(b) The unfactored take-off distance, specified in the AFM, shall not exceed:

(1) when multiplied by a factor of 1.25, the take-off run available (TORA); or

(2) when stop way and/or clearway is available, the following:

(i) the TORA;

(ii) when multiplied by a factor of 1.15, the take-off distance available (TODA); or

(iii) when multiplied by a factor of 1.3, the ASDA.

(c) When showing compliance with (b), the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(2) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(3) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(4) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(5) the runway slope in the direction of take-off; and

(6) not more than 50% of the reported headwind component or not less than 150% of the reported tailwind component.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

(a) Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the variables affecting the take-off performance and the associated factors that should be applied to the AFM data are shown in Table 1 below. They should be applied in addition to the operational factors as prescribed in CAT.POL.A.305.

Table 1: Runway surface condition – Variables

Surface type	Condition	Factor
Grass (on firm soil)	Dry	1.2
up to 20 cm long	Wet	1.3
Paved	Wet	1.0

(b) The soil should be considered firm when there are wheel impressions but no rutting.

(c) When taking off on grass with a single-engined aeroplane, care should be taken to assess the rate of acceleration and consequent distance increase.

(d) When making a rejected take-off on very short grass that is wet and with a firm subsoil, the surface may be slippery, in which case the distances may increase significantly.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the take-off distance should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of upslope except that correction factors for runways with slopes in excess of 2 % should only be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that the necessary data in the AFM or the operations manual contain the appropriated procedures and the crew is trained to take-off in runway with slopes in excess of 2 %.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.305 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

(a) Due to the inherent risks, operations from contaminated runways are inadvisable, and should be avoided whenever possible. Therefore, it is advisable to delay the take-off until the runway is cleared.

(b) Where this is impracticable, the commander should also consider the excess runway length available including the criticality of the overrun area.

CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance — multi-engined aeroplanes

(a) The take-off flight path of aeroplanes with two or more engines shall be determined in such a way that the aeroplane clears all obstacles by a vertical distance of at least 50 ft, or by a horizontal distance of at least 90 m plus 0.125 × D, where D is the horizontal distance travelled by the aeroplane from the end of the TODA or the end of the take-off distance if a turn is scheduled before the end of the TODA, except as provided in (b) and (c). For aeroplanes with a wingspan of less than 60 m, a horizontal obstacle clearance of half the aeroplane wingspan plus 60 m plus 0.125 × D may be used. It shall be assumed that:

(1) the take-off flight path begins at a height of 50 ft above the surface at the end of the take-off distance required by CAT.POL.A.305 (b) and ends at a height of 1 500 ft above the surface;

(2) the aeroplane is not banked before the aeroplane has reached a height of 50 ft above the surface, and thereafter the angle of bank does not exceed 15°;

(3) failure of the critical engine occurs at the point on the all engine take-off flight path where visual reference for the purpose of avoiding obstacles is expected to be lost;

(4) the gradient of the take-off flight path from 50 ft to the assumed engine failure height is equal to the average all-engines gradient during climb and transition to the en-route configuration, multiplied by a factor of 0.77; and

(5) the gradient of the take-off flight path from the height reached in accordance with (a)(4) to the end of the take-off flight path is equal to the OEI en-route climb gradient shown in the AFM.

(b) For cases where the intended flight path does not require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles that have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 300 m, if the flight is conducted under conditions allowing visual course guidance navigation, or if navigational aids are available enabling the pilot to maintain the intended flight path with the same accuracy; or

(2) 600 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(c) For cases where the intended flight path requires track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles that have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 600 m, for flights under conditions allowing visual course guidance navigation; or

(2) 900 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(d) When showing compliance with (a) to (c), the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(2) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(3) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome; and

(4) not more than 50% of the reported headwind component or not less than 150% of the reported tailwind component.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF FLIGHT PATH – VISUAL COURSE GUIDANCE NAVIGATION

(a) In order to allow visual course guidance navigation, the weather conditions prevailing at the time of operation, including ceiling and visibility, should be such that the obstacle and/or ground reference points can be seen and identified.

(b) The operations manual should specify, for the aerodrome(s) concerned, the minimum weather conditions that enable the flight crew to continuously determine and maintain the correct flight path with respect to ground reference points, so as to provide a safe clearance with respect to obstructions and terrain as follows:

(1) the procedure should be well defined with respect to ground reference points so that the track to be flown can be analysed for obstacle clearance requirements;

(2) the procedure should be within the capabilities of the aeroplane with respect to forward speed, bank angle and wind effects;

(3) a written and/or pictorial description of the procedure should be provided for crew use; and

(4) the limiting environmental conditions should be specified (e.g. wind, cloud, visibility, day/night, ambient lighting, obstruction lighting).

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF FLIGHT PATH CONSTRUCTION

(a) For demonstrating that the aeroplane clears all obstacles vertically, a flight path should be constructed consisting of an all-engines segment to the assumed engine failure height, followed by an engine-out segment. Where the AFM does not contain the appropriate data, the approximation given in (b) may be used for the all-engines segment for an assumed engine failure height of 200 ft, 300 ft, or higher.

(b) Flight path construction

(1) All-engines segment (50 ft to 300 ft)

The average all-engines gradient for the all-engines flight path segment starting at an altitude of 50 ft at the end of the take-off distance ending at or passing through the 300 ft point is given by the following formula:

$$Y_{300} = \frac{0.57(Y_{ERC})}{1 + (V_{ERC}^2 - V_2^2)/5647}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

Y_{300} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 300 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross climb gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines knots true airspeed (TAS);

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS;

(2) All-engines segment (50 ft to 200 ft)

This may be used as an alternative to (b)(1) where weather minima permit. The average all-engines gradient for the all-engines flight path segment starting at an altitude of 50 ft at the end of the take-off distance ending at or passing through the 200 ft point is given by the following formula:

$$Y_{200} = \frac{0.51(Y_{ERC})}{1 + (V_{ERC}^2 - V_2^2)/3388}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

Y_{200} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 200 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross climb gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines, knots TAS;

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS.

(3) All-engines segment (above 300 ft)

The all-engines flight path segment continuing from an altitude of 300 ft is given by the AFM en-route gross climb gradient, multiplied by a factor of 0.77.

(4) The OEI flight path

The OEI flight path is given by the OEI gradient chart contained in the AFM.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

OBSTACLE CLEARANCE IN LIMITED VISIBILITY

(a) Unlike the airworthiness codes applicable for performance class A aeroplanes, those for performance class B aeroplanes do not necessarily provide for engine failure in all phases of flight. It is accepted that performance accountability for engine failure need not be considered until a height of 300 ft is reached.

(b) The weather minima given up to and including 300 ft imply that if a take-off is undertaken with minima below 300 ft an OEI flight path should be plotted starting on the all-engines take-off flight path at the assumed engine failure height. This path should meet the vertical and lateral obstacle clearance specified in CAT.POL.A.310. Should engine failure occur below this height, the associated visibility is taken as being the minimum that would enable the pilot to make, if necessary, a forced landing broadly in the direction of the take-off. At or below 300 ft, a circle and land procedure is extremely inadvisable. The weather minima provisions specify that, if the assumed engine failure height is more than 300 ft, the visibility should be at least 1 500 m and, to allow for manoeuvring, the same minimum visibility should apply whenever the obstacle clearance criteria for a continued take-off cannot be met.

GM2 CAT.POL.A.310 Take-off obstacle clearance – multi-engined aeroplanes

TAKE-OFF FLIGHT PATH CONSTRUCTION

(a) This GM provides examples to illustrate the method of take-off flight path construction given in AMC2 CAT.POL.A.310. The examples are based on an aeroplane for which the AFM shows, at a given mass, altitude, temperature and wind component the following performance data:

– factored take-off distance – 1 000 m;

– take-off speed, V2 – 90 kt;

– en-route climb speed, V_{ERC} – 120 kt;

– en-route all-engines climb gradient, Y_{ERC} – 0.2;

– en-route OEI climb gradient, Y_{ERC}-1 – 0.032.

(1) Assumed engine failure height 300 ft

The average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 300 ft may be read from Figure 1 or calculated with the following formula:

$$Y_{300} = \frac{0.57(Y_{ERC})}{1 + (V_{ERC}^2 - V_2^2)/5647}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

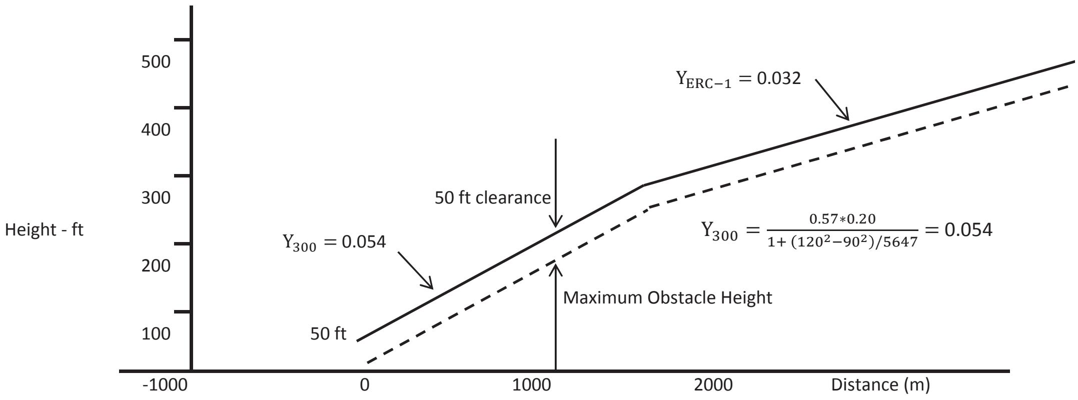
Y_{300} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 300 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross climb gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines knots TAS; and

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS.

Figure 1: Assumed engine failure height 300 ft



(2) Assumed engine failure height 200 ft

The average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 200 ft may be read from Figure 2 or calculated with the following formula:

$$Y_{200} = \frac{0.51(Y_{ERC})}{1 + (V_{ERC}^2 - V_2^2)/3388}$$

The factor of 0.77 as required by CAT.POL.A.310 is already included where:

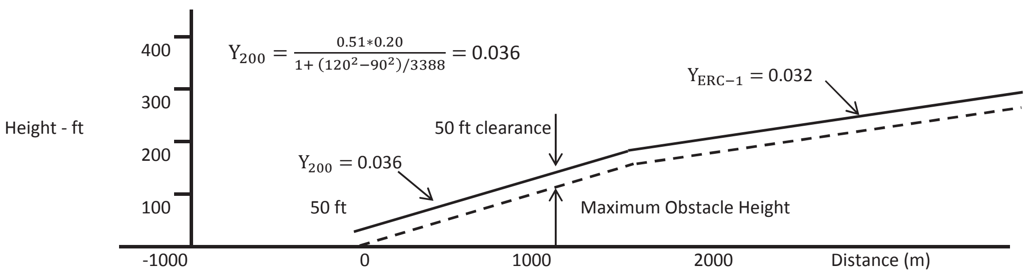
Y_{200} = average all-engines gradient from 50 ft to 200 ft;

Y_{ERC} = scheduled all engines en-route gross gradient;

V_{ERC} = en-route climb speed, all engines, knots TAS; and

V_2 = take-off speed at 50 ft, knots TAS.

Figure 2: Assumed engine failure height 200 ft



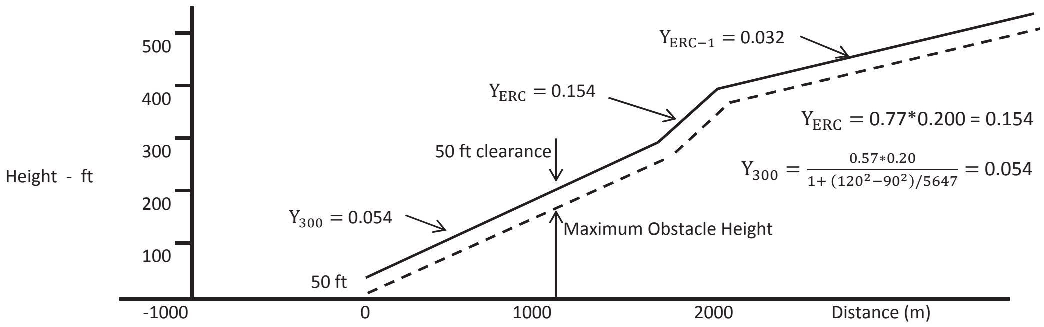
(3) Assumed engine failure height less than 200 ft

Construction of a take-off flight path is only possible if the AFM contains the required flight path data.

(4) Assumed engine failure height more than 300 ft.

The construction of a take-off flight path for an assumed engine failure height of 400 ft is illustrated below.

Figure 3: Assumed engine failure height less than 200 ft



CAT.POL.A.315 En-route — multi-engined aeroplanes

(a) The aeroplane, in the meteorological conditions expected for the flight and in the event of the failure of one engine, with the remaining engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified, shall be capable of continuing flight at or above the relevant minimum altitudes for safe flight stated in the operations manual to a point of 1 000 ft above an aerodrome at which the performance requirements can be met.

(b) It shall be assumed that, at the point of engine failure:

(1) the aeroplane is not flying at an altitude exceeding that at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute with all engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified; and

(2) the en-route gradient with OEI shall be the gross gradient of descent or climb, as appropriate, respectively increased by a gradient of 0.5%, or decreased by a gradient of 0.5%.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.315 En-route – multi-engined aeroplanes

CRUISING ALTITUDE

(a) The altitude at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute is not a restriction on the maximum cruising altitude at which the aeroplane can fly in practice, it is merely the maximum altitude from which the driftdown procedure can be planned to start.

(b) Aeroplanes may be planned to clear en-route obstacles assuming a driftdown procedure, having first increased the scheduled en-route OEI descent data by 0.5 % gradient.

CAT.POL.A.320 En-route — single-engined aeroplanes

(a) In the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, and in the event of engine failure, the aeroplane shall be capable of reaching a place at which a safe forced landing can be made.

(b) It shall be assumed that, at the point of engine failure:

(1) the aeroplane is not flying at an altitude exceeding that at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute, with the engine operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified; and

(2) the en-route gradient is the gross gradient of descent increased by a gradient of 0.5%.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.320 En-route – single-engined aeroplanes

ENGINE FAILURE

CAT.POL.A.320 (a) requires the operator to ensure that in the event of an engine failure, the aeroplane should be capable of reaching a point from which a safe forced landing can be made. Unless otherwise specified by the competent authority, this point should be 1 000 ft above the intended landing area.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.320 En-route – single-engined aeroplanes

ENGINE FAILURE

(a) In the event of an engine failure, single-engined aeroplanes have to rely on gliding to a point suitable for a safe forced landing. Such a procedure is clearly incompatible with flight above a cloud layer that extends below the relevant minimum safe altitude.

(b) The operator should first increase the scheduled engine-inoperative gliding performance data by 0.5 % gradient when verifying the en-route clearance of obstacles and the ability to reach a suitable place for a forced landing.

(c) The altitude at which the rate of climb equals 300 ft per minute is not a restriction on the maximum cruising altitude at which the aeroplane can fly in practice, it is merely the maximum altitude from which the engine-inoperative procedure can be planned to start.

CAT.POL.A.325 Landing — destination and alternate aerodromes

The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified for the altitude and the ambient temperature expected at the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and alternate aerodrome.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.325 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

ALTITUDE MEASURING

The operator should use either pressure altitude or geometric altitude for its operation and this should be reflected in the operations manual.

CAT.POL.A.330 Landing — dry runways

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and at any alternate aerodrome shall allow a full stop landing from 50 ft above the threshold within 70% of the LDA taking into account:

(1) the altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) not more than 50% of the headwind component or not less than 150% of the tailwind component;

(3) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface; and

(4) the runway slope in the direction of landing.

(b) For steep approach operations, the operator shall use landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) based on a screen height of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, and comply with CAT.POL.A.345.

(c) For short landing operations, the operator shall use landing distance data factored in accordance with (a) and comply with CAT.POL.A.350.

(d) For dispatching the aeroplane in accordance with (a) to (c), it shall be assumed that:

(1) the aeroplane will land on the most favourable runway, in still air; and

(2) the aeroplane will land on the runway most likely to be assigned considering the probable wind speed and direction, the ground handling characteristics of the aeroplane and other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

(e) If the operator is unable to comply with (d)(2) for the destination aerodrome, the aeroplane shall only be dispatched if an alternate aerodrome is designated that permits full compliance with (a) to (d).

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways

LANDING DISTANCE CORRECTION FACTORS

(a) Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturers, the variable affecting the landing performance and the associated factor that should be applied to the AFM data is shown in the table below. It should be applied in addition to the operational factors as prescribed in CAT.POL.A.330 (a).

Table 1: Landing distance correction factors

Surface type	Factor
Grass (on firm soil up to 20 cm long)	1.15

(b) The soil should be considered firm when there are wheel impressions but no rutting.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the landing distances required should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of downslope.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.330 Landing – dry runways

LANDING MASS

CAT.POL.A.330 establishes two considerations in determining the maximum permissible landing mass at the destination and alternate aerodromes.

(a) Firstly, the aeroplane mass will be such that on arrival the aeroplane can be landed within 70 % of the LDA on the most favourable (normally the longest) runway in still air. Regardless of the wind conditions, the maximum landing mass for an aerodrome/aeroplane configuration at a particular aerodrome cannot be exceeded.

(b) Secondly, consideration should be given to anticipated conditions and circumstances. The expected wind, or ATC and noise abatement procedures, may indicate the use of a different runway. These factors may result in a lower landing mass than that permitted under (a), in which case dispatch should be based on this lesser mass.

(c) The expected wind referred to in (b) is the wind expected to exist at the time of arrival.

CAT.POL.A.335 Landing — wet and contaminated runways

(a) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be wet, the LDA shall be equal to or exceed the required landing distance, determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.330, multiplied by a factor of 1.15.

(b) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be contaminated, the landing distance shall not exceed the LDA. The operator shall specify in the operations manual the landing distance data to be applied.

(c) A landing distance on a wet runway shorter than that required by (a), but not less than that required by CAT.POL.A.330 (a), may be used if the AFM includes specific additional information about landing distances on wet runways.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.335 Landing – wet and contaminated runways

LANDING ON WET GRASS RUNWAYS

(a) When landing on very short grass that is wet and with a firm subsoil, the surface may be slippery, in which case the distances may increase by as much as 60 % (1.60 factor).

(b) As it may not be possible for a pilot to determine accurately the degree of wetness of the grass, particularly when airborne, in cases of doubt, the use of the wet factor (1.15) is recommended.

CAT.POL.A.340 Take-off and landing climb requirements

The operator of a two-engined aeroplane shall fulfil the following take-off and landing climb requirements.

(a) Take-off climb

(1) All engines operating

(i) The steady gradient of climb after take-off shall be at least 4% with:

(A) take-off power on each engine;

(B) the landing gear extended, except that if the landing gear can be retracted in not more than 7 seconds, it may be assumed to be retracted;

(C) the wing flaps in the take-off position(s); and

(D) a climb speed not less than the greater of 1.1 VMC (minimum control speed on or near ground) and 1.2 VS1 (stall speed or minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration).

(2) OEI

(i) The steady gradient of climb at an altitude of 400 ft above the take-off surface shall be measurably positive with:

(A) the critical engine inoperative and its propeller in the minimum drag position;

(B) the remaining engine at take-off power;

(C) the landing gear retracted;

(D) the wing flaps in the take-off position(s); and

(E) a climb speed equal to that achieved at 50 ft.

(ii) The steady gradient of climb shall be not less than 0.75% at an altitude of 1 500 ft above the take-off surface with:

(A) the critical engine inoperative and its propeller in the minimum drag position;

(B) the remaining engine at not more than maximum continuous power;

(C) the landing gear retracted;

(D) the wing flaps retracted; and

(E) a climb speed not less than 1.2 VS1.

(b) Landing climb

(1) All engines operating

(i) The steady gradient of climb shall be at least 2.5% with:

(A) not more than the power or thrust that is available 8 seconds after initiation of movement of the power controls from the minimum flight idle position;

(B) the landing gear extended;

(C) the wing flaps in the landing position; and

(D) a climb speed equal to VREF (reference landing speed).

(2) OEI

(i) The steady gradient of climb shall be not less than 0.75% at an altitude of 1 500 ft above the landing surface with:

(A) the critical engine inoperative and its propeller in the minimum drag position;

(B) the remaining engine at not more than maximum continuous power;

(C) the landing gear retracted;

(D) the wing flaps retracted; and

(E) a climb speed not less than 1.2 VS1.

CAT.POL.A.345 Approval of steep approach operations

(a) Steep approach operations using glideslope angles of 4.5° or more and with screen heights of less than 60 ft, but not less than 35 ft, require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the AFM states the maximum approved glideslope angle, any other limitations, normal, abnormal or emergency procedures for the steep approach as well as amendments to the field length data when using steep approach criteria; and

(2) for each aerodrome at which steep approach operations are to be conducted:

(i) a suitable glide path reference system, comprising at least a visual glide path indicating system, is available;

(ii) weather minima are specified; and

(iii) the following items are taken into consideration:

(A) the obstacle situation;

(B) the type of glide path reference and runway guidance;

(C) the minimum visual reference to be required at DH and MDA;

(D) available airborne equipment;

(E) pilot qualification and special aerodrome familiarisation;

(F) AFM limitations and procedures; and

(G) missed approach criteria.

CAT.POL.A.350 Approval of short landing operations

(a) Short landing operations require prior approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain the approval, the operator shall provide evidence that the following conditions are met:

(1) the distance used for the calculation of the permitted landing mass may consist of the usable length of the declared safe area plus the declared LDA;

(2) the use of the declared safe area is approved by the State of the aerodrome;

(3) the declared safe area is clear of obstructions or depressions that would endanger an aeroplane undershooting the runway and no mobile object is permitted on the declared safe area while the runway is being used for short landing operations;

(4) the slope of the declared safe area does not exceed 5% upward nor 2% downward slope in the direction of landing;

(5) the usable length of the declared safe area does not exceed 90 m;

(6) the width of the declared safe area is not less than twice the runway width, centred on the extended runway centreline;

(7) the crossing height over the beginning of the usable length of the declared safe area is not less than 50 ft;

(8) weather minima are specified for each runway to be used and are not less than the greater of VFR or NPA minima;

(9) pilot experience, training and special aerodrome familiarisation requirements are specified and met;

(10) additional conditions, if specified by the competent authority, taking into account the aeroplane type characteristics, orographic characteristics in the approach area, available approach aids and missed approach/balked landing considerations.

Chapter 4 — Performance class C

CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the pressure altitude and the ambient temperature at the aerodrome of departure.

(b) For aeroplanes that have take-off field length data contained in their AFM that do not include engine failure accountability, the distance from the start of the take-off roll required by the aeroplane to reach a height of 50 ft above the surface with all engines operating within the maximum take-off power conditions specified, when multiplied by a factor of either:

(1) 1.33 for aeroplanes having two engines;

(2) 1.25 for aeroplanes having three engines; or

(3) 1.18 for aeroplanes having four engines,

shall not exceed the take-off run available (TORA) at the aerodrome at which the take-off is to be made.

(c) For aeroplanes that have take-off field length data contained in their AFM which accounts for engine failure, the following requirements shall be met in accordance with the specifications in the AFM:

(1) the accelerate-stop distance shall not exceed the ASDA;

(2) the take-off distance shall not exceed the take-off distance available (TODA), with a clearway distance not exceeding half of the TORA;

(3) the take-off run shall not exceed the TORA;

(4) a single value of V1 for the rejected and continued take-off shall be used; and

(5) on a wet or contaminated runway the take-off mass shall not exceed that permitted for a take-off on a dry runway under the same conditions.

(d) The following shall be taken into account:

(1) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome;

(3) the runway surface condition and the type of runway surface;

(4) the runway slope in the direction of take-off;

(5) not more that 50% of the reported headwind component or not less than 150% of the reported tailwind component; and

(6) the loss, if any, of runway length due to alignment of the aeroplane prior to take-off.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

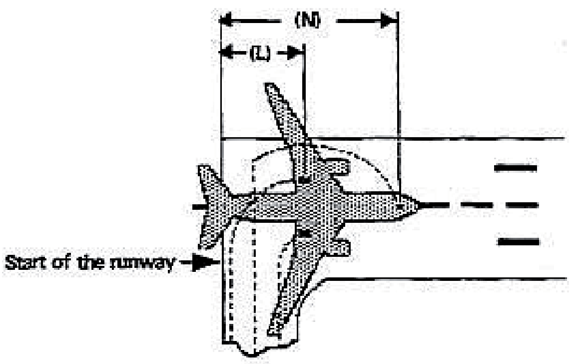
LOSS OF RUNWAY LENGTH DUE TO ALIGNMENT

(a) The length of the runway that is declared for the calculation of TODA, ASDA and TORA does not account for line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off on the runway in use. This alignment distance depends on the aeroplane geometry and access possibility to the runway in use. Accountability is usually required for a 90° taxiway entry to the runway and 180° turnaround on the runway. There are two distances to be considered:

(1) the minimum distance of the main wheels from the start of the runway for determining TODA and TORA, 'L'; and

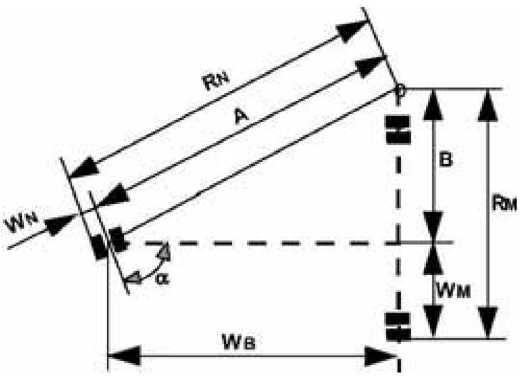
(2) the minimum distance of the most forward wheel(s) from the start of the runway for determining ASDA, 'N'.

Figure 1: Line-up of the aeroplane in the direction of take-off – L and N



Where the aeroplane manufacturer does not provide the appropriate data, the calculation method given in (b) may be used to determine the alignment distance.

(b) Alignment distance calculation



The distances mentioned in (a)(1) and (a)(2) above are:

	90° entry	180° turnaround
L =	RM + X	RN + Y
N =	RM + X + WB	RN + Y + WB

where:

$$RN = A + WN = \frac{W_B}{\cos(90° - \alpha)}$$

RM = B + WM = WB tan(90°-α) + WM

X = safety distance of outer main wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

Y = safety distance of outer nose wheel during turn to the edge of the runway

Note: Minimum edge safety distances for X and Y are specified in FAA AC 150/5300-13 and ICAO Annex 14, 3.8.3

RN = radius of turn of outer nose wheel

RM = radius of turn of outer main wheel

WN = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer nose wheel

WM = distance from aeroplane centre-line to outer main wheel

WM = wheel base

α = steering angle.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturers, the take-off distance should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of upslope. However, correction factors for runways with slopes in excess of 2 % should only be applied when:

(a) the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that the necessary data in the AFM or the operations manual contain the appropriated procedures; and

(b) the crew is trained to take-off on runways with slopes in excess of 2 %.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.400 Take-off

RUNWAY SURFACE CONDITION

Operation on runways contaminated with water, slush, snow or ice implies uncertainties with regard to runway friction and contaminant drag and therefore to the achievable performance and control of the aeroplane during take-off, since the actual conditions may not completely match the assumptions on which the performance information is based. An adequate overall level of safety can, therefore, only be maintained if such operations are limited to rare occasions. In case of a contaminated runway the first option for the commander is to wait until the runway is cleared. If this is impracticable, he/she may consider a take-off, provided that he/she has applied the applicable performance adjustments, and any further safety measures he/she considers justified under the prevailing conditions.

CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance

(a) The take-off flight path with OEI shall be determined such that the aeroplane clears all obstacles by a vertical distance of at least 50 ft plus 0.01 × D, or by a horizontal distance of at least 90 m plus 0.125 × D, where D is the horizontal distance the aeroplane has travelled from the end of the TODA. For aeroplanes with a wingspan of less than 60 m, a horizontal obstacle clearance of half the aeroplane wingspan plus 60 m plus 0.125 × D may be used.

(b) The take-off flight path shall begin at a height of 50 ft above the surface at the end of the take-off distance required by CAT.POL.A.405 (b) or (c), as applicable, and end at a height of 1 500 ft above the surface.

(c) When showing compliance with (a), the following shall be taken into account:

(1) the mass of the aeroplane at the commencement of the take-off run;

(2) the pressure altitude at the aerodrome;

(3) the ambient temperature at the aerodrome; and

(4) not more than 50% of the reported headwind component or not less than 150% of the reported tailwind component.

(d) Track changes shall not be allowed up to that point of the take-off flight path where a height of 50 ft above the surface has been achieved. Thereafter, up to a height of 400 ft it is assumed that the aeroplane is banked by no more than 15°. Above 400 ft height bank angles greater than 15°, but not more than 25°, may be scheduled. Adequate allowance shall be made for the effect of bank angle on operating speeds and flight path, including the distance increments resulting from increased operating speeds.

(e) For cases that do not require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles that have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 300 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(2) 600 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(f) For cases that do require track changes of more than 15°, the operator does not need to consider those obstacles that have a lateral distance greater than:

(1) 600 m, if the pilot is able to maintain the required navigational accuracy through the obstacle accountability area; or

(2) 900 m, for flights under all other conditions.

(g) The operator shall establish contingency procedures to satisfy (a) to (f) and to provide a safe route, avoiding obstacles, to enable the aeroplane to either comply with the en-route requirements of CAT.POL.A.410, or land at either the aerodrome of departure or at a take-off alternate aerodrome.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance

EFFECT OF BANK ANGLES

(a) The AFM generally provides a climb gradient decrement for a 15° bank turn. Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, acceptable adjustments to assure adequate stall margins and gradient corrections are provided by the following:

Table 1: Effect of bank angles

Bank	Speed	Gradient correction
15°	V_2	1 x AFM 15° gradient loss
20°	V_2 + 5 kt	2 x AFM 15° gradient loss
25°	V_2 + 10 kt	3 x AFM 15° gradient loss

(b) For bank angles of less than 15°, a proportionate amount may be applied, unless the manufacturer or AFM has provided other data.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.405 Take-off obstacle clearance

REQUIRED NAVIGATIONAL ACCURACY

(a) Navigation systems

The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used if the navigation system under OEI conditions provides a two standard deviation accuracy of 150 m and 300 m respectively.

(b) Visual course guidance

(1) The obstacle accountability semi-widths of 300 m and 600 m may be used where navigational accuracy is ensured at all relevant points on the flight path by use of external references. These references may be considered visible from the flight crew compartment if they are situated more than 45° either side of the intended track and with a depression of not greater than 20° from the horizontal.

(2) For visual course guidance navigation, the operator should ensure that the weather conditions prevailing at the time of operation, including ceiling and visibility, are such that the obstacle and/or ground reference points can be seen and identified. The operations manual should specify, for the aerodrome(s) concerned, the minimum weather conditions that enable the flight crew to continuously determine and maintain the correct flight path with respect to ground reference points, so as to provide a safe clearance with respect to obstructions and terrain as follows:

(i) the procedure should be well defined with respect to ground reference points so that the track to be flown can be analysed for obstacle clearance requirements;

(ii) the procedure should be within the capabilities of the aeroplane with respect to forward speed, bank angle and wind effects;

(iii) a written and/or pictorial description of the procedure should be provided for crew use; and

(iv) the limiting environmental conditions (such as wind, the lowest cloud base, ceiling, visibility, day/night, ambient lighting, obstruction lighting) should be specified.

CAT.POL.A.410 En-route — all engines operating

(a) In the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, at any point on its route or on any planned diversion therefrom, the aeroplane shall be capable of a rate of climb of at least 300 ft per minute with all engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified at:

(1) the minimum altitudes for safe flight on each stage of the route to be flown, or of any planned diversion therefrom, specified in or calculated from the information contained in the operations manual relating to the aeroplane; and

(2) the minimum altitudes necessary for compliance with the conditions prescribed in CAT.POL.A.415 and 420, as appropriate.

CAT.POL.A.415 En-route — OEI

(a) In the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, in the event of any one engine becoming inoperative at any point on its route or on any planned diversion therefrom and with the other engine(s) operating within the maximum continuous power conditions specified, the aeroplane shall be capable of continuing the flight from the cruising altitude to an aerodrome where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.A.430 or CAT.POL.A.435, as appropriate. The aeroplane shall clear obstacles within 9.3 km (5 NM) either side of the intended track by a vertical interval of at least:

(1) 1 000 ft, when the rate of climb is zero or greater; or

(2) 2 000 ft, when the rate of climb is less than zero.

(b) The flight path shall have a positive slope at an altitude of 450 m (1 500 ft) above the aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made after the failure of one engine.

(c) The available rate of climb of the aeroplane shall be taken to be 150 ft per minute less than the gross rate of climb specified.

(d) The width margins of (a) shall be increased to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy does not meet at least RNP5.

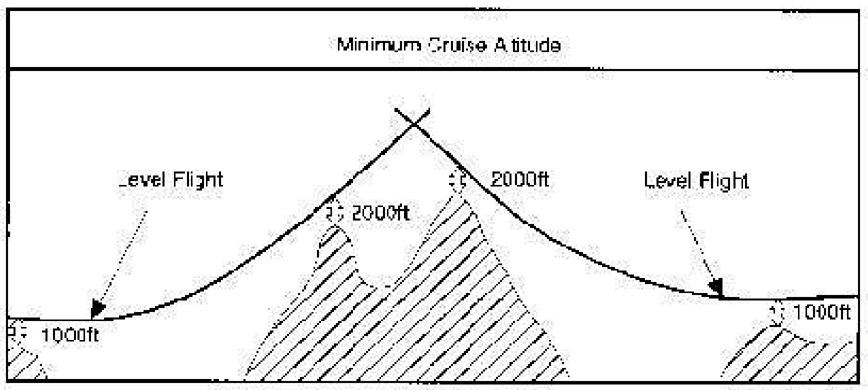
(e) Fuel jettisoning is permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.415 En-route – OEI

ROUTE ANALYSIS

The high terrain or obstacle analysis should be carried out by making a detailed analysis of the route using contour maps of the high terrain, and plotting the highest points within the prescribed corridor width along the route. The next step is to determine whether it is possible to maintain level flight with OEI 1 000 ft above the highest point of the crossing. If this is not possible, or if the associated weight penalties are unacceptable, a driftdown procedure must be evaluated, based on engine failure at the most critical point, and must show obstacle clearance during the driftdown by at least 2 000 ft. The minimum cruise altitude is determined from the driftdown path, taking into account allowances for decision making, and the reduction in the scheduled rate of climb (See Figure 1).

Figure 1: Intersection of the driftdown paths



CAT.POL.A.420 En-route — aeroplanes with three or more engines, two engines inoperative

(a) At no point along the intended track shall an aeroplane having three or more engines be more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met, unless it complies with (b) to (e).

(b) The two-engines-inoperative flight path shall permit the aeroplane to continue the flight, in the expected meteorological conditions, clearing all obstacles within 9.3 km (5 NM) either side of the intended track by a vertical interval of at least 2 000 ft, to an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met.

(c) The two engines are assumed to fail at the most critical point of that portion of the route where the aeroplane is more than 90 minutes, at the all-engines long range cruising speed at standard temperature in still air, away from an aerodrome at which the performance requirements applicable at the expected landing mass are met.

(d) The expected mass of the aeroplane at the point where the two engines are assumed to fail shall not be less than that which would include sufficient fuel to proceed to an aerodrome where the landing is assumed to be made, and to arrive there at an altitude of a least 450 m (1 500 ft) directly over the landing area and thereafter to fly level for 15 minutes.

(e) The available rate of climb of the aeroplane shall be taken to be 150 ft per minute less than that specified.

(f) The width margins of (b) shall be increased to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy does not meet at least RNP5.

(g) Fuel jettisoning is permitted to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome with the required fuel reserves, if a safe procedure is used.

CAT.POL.A.425 Landing — destination and alternate aerodromes

The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) shall not exceed the maximum landing mass specified in the AFM for the altitude and, if accounted for in the AFM, the ambient temperature expected for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and alternate aerodrome.

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.425 Landing – destination and alternate aerodromes

ALTITUDE MEASURING

The operator should use either pressure altitude or geometric altitude for its operation and this should be reflected in the operations manual.

CAT.POL.A.430 Landing — dry runways

(a) The landing mass of the aeroplane determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.105 (a) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome and any alternate aerodrome shall allow a full stop landing from 50 ft above the threshold within 70% of the LDA taking into account:

(1) the altitude at the aerodrome;

(2) not more than 50% of the headwind component or not less than 150% of the tailwind component;

(3) the type of runway surface; and

(4) the slope of the runway in the direction of landing.

(b) For dispatching the aeroplane it shall be assumed that:

(1) the aeroplane will land on the most favourable runway in still air; and

(2) the aeroplane will land on the runway most likely to be assigned considering the probable wind speed and direction, the ground handling characteristics of the aeroplane and other conditions such as landing aids and terrain.

(c) If the operator is unable to comply with (b)(2) for the destination aerodrome, the aeroplane shall only be dispatched if an alternate aerodrome is designated that permits full compliance with (a) and (b).

AMC1 CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways

LANDING DISTANCE CORRECTION FACTORS

(a) Unless otherwise specified in the AFM or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturers, the variables affecting the landing performance and the associated factors to be applied to the AFM data are shown in the table below. It should be applied in addition to the factor specified in CAT.POL.A.430.

Table 1: Landing distance correction factor

Surface type	factor
Grass (on firm soil up to 20 cm long)	1.2

(b) The soil should be considered firm when there are wheel impressions but no rutting.

AMC2 CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways

RUNWAY SLOPE

Unless otherwise specified in the AFM, or other performance or operating manuals from the manufacturer, the landing distances required should be increased by 5 % for each 1 % of downslope.

GM1 CAT.POL.A.430 Landing – dry runways

LANDING MASS

CAT.POL.A.430 establishes two considerations in determining the maximum permissible landing mass at the destination and alternate aerodromes.

(a) Firstly, the aeroplane mass will be such that on arrival the aeroplane can be landed within 70 % of the LDA on the most favourable (normally the longest) runway in still air. Regardless of the wind conditions, the maximum landing mass for an aerodrome/aeroplane configuration at a particular aerodrome cannot be exceeded.

(b) Secondly, consideration should be given to anticipated conditions and circumstances. The expected wind, or ATC and noise abatement procedures, may indicate the use of a different runway. These factors may result in a lower landing mass than that permitted under (a), in which case dispatch should be based on this lesser mass.

(c) The expected wind referred to in (b) is the wind expected to exist at the time of arrival.

CAT.POL.A.435 Landing — wet and contaminated runways

(a) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be wet, the LDA shall be equal to or exceed the required landing distance, determined in accordance with CAT.POL.A.430, multiplied by a factor of 1.15.

(b) When the appropriate weather reports and/or forecasts indicate that the runway at the estimated time of arrival may be contaminated, the landing distance shall not exceed the LDA. The operator shall specify in the operations manual the landing distance data to be applied.

Section 2 — Helicopters

Chapter 1 — General requirements

CAT.POL.H.100 Applicability

(a) Helicopters shall be operated in accordance with the applicable performance class requirements.

(b) Helicopters shall be operated in performance class 1:

(1) when operated to/from aerodromes or operating sites located in a congested hostile environment, except when operated to/from a public interest site (PIS) in accordance with CAT.POL.H.225; or

(2) when having an MOPSC of more than 19, except when operated to/from a helideck in performance class 2 under an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305.

(c) Unless otherwise prescribed by (b), helicopters that have an MOPSC of 19 or less but more than nine shall be operated in performance class 1 or 2.

(d) Unless otherwise prescribed by (b), helicopters that have an MOPSC of nine or less shall be operated in performance class 1, 2 or 3.

CAT.POL.H.105 General

(a) The mass of the helicopter:

(1) at the start of the take-off; or

(2) in the event of in-flight replanning, at the point from which the revised operational flight plan applies,

shall not be greater than the mass at which the applicable requirements of this Section can be complied with for the flight to be undertaken, taking into account expected reductions in mass as the flight proceeds and such fuel jettisoning as is provided for in the relevant requirement.

(b) The approved performance data contained in the AFM shall be used to determine compliance with the requirements of this Section, supplemented as necessary with other data as prescribed in the relevant requirement. The operator shall specify such other data in the operations manual. When applying the factors prescribed in this Section, account may be taken of any operational factors already incorporated in the AFM performance data to avoid double application of factors.

(c) When showing compliance with the requirements of this Section, account shall be taken of the following parameters:

(1) mass of the helicopter;

(2) the helicopter configuration;

(3) the environmental conditions, in particular:

(i) pressure altitude and temperature;

(ii) wind:

(A) except as provided in (C), for take-off, take-off flight path and landing requirements, accountability for wind shall be no more than 50% of any reported steady headwind component of 5 kt or more;

(B) where take-off and landing with a tailwind component is permitted in the AFM, and in all cases for the take-off flight path, not less than 150% of any reported tailwind component shall be taken into account; and

(C) where precise wind measuring equipment enables accurate measurement of wind velocity over the point of take-off and landing, wind components in excess of 50% may be established by the operator, provided that the operator demonstrates to the competent authority that the proximity to the FATO and accuracy enhancements of the wind measuring equipment provide an equivalent level of safety;

(4) the operating techniques; and

(5) the operation of any systems that have an adverse effect on performance.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.105(c)(3)(ii)(A) General

REPORTED HEADWIND COMPONENT

The reported headwind component should be interpreted as being that reported at the time of flight planning and may be used, provided there is no significant change of unfactored wind prior to take-off.

CAT.POL.H.110 Obstacle accountability

(a) For the purpose of obstacle clearance requirements, an obstacle located beyond the FATO, in the take-off flight path, or the missed approach flight path shall be considered if its lateral distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended flight path is not further than the following:

(1) For operations under VFR:

(i) half of the minimum width defined in the AFM — or, when no width is defined, ‘0.75 × D’, where D is the largest dimension of the helicopter when the rotors are turning;

(ii) plus, the greater of ‘0.25 × D’ or ‘3 m’;

(iii) plus:

(A) 0.10 × distance DR for operations under VFR by day; or

(B) 0.15 × distance DR for operations under VFR at night.

(2) For operations under IFR:

(i) ‘1.5 D’ or 30 m, whichever is greater, plus:

(A) 0.10 × distance DR, for operations under IFR with accurate course guidance;

(B) 0.15 × distance DR, for operations under IFR with standard course guidance; or

(C) 0.30 × distance DR for operations under IFR without course guidance.

(ii) When considering the missed approach flight path, the divergence of the obstacle accountability area only applies after the end of the take-off distance available.

(3) For operations with initial take-off conducted visually and converted to IFR/IMC at a transition point, the criteria required in (1) apply up to the transition point, and the criteria required in (2) apply after the transition point. The transition point cannot be located before the end of the take-off distance required for helicopters (TODRH) operating in performance class 1 or before the defined point after take-off (DPATO) for helicopters operating in performance class 2.

(b) For take-off using a back-up or a lateral transition procedure, for the purpose of obstacle clearance requirements, an obstacle located in the back-up or lateral transition area shall be considered if its lateral distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended flight path is not further than:

(1) half of the minimum width defined in the AFM or, when no width is defined, ‘0.75 × D’;

(2) plus the greater of ‘0.25 × D’ or ‘3 m’;

(3) plus:

(i) for operations under VFR by day 0.10 × the distance travelled from the back of the FATO, or

(ii) for operations under VFR at night 0.15 × the distance travelled from the back of the FATO.

(c) Obstacles may be disregarded if they are situated beyond:

(1) 7 × rotor radius (R) for day operations, if it is assured that navigational accuracy can be achieved by reference to suitable visual cues during the climb;

(2) 10 × R for night operations, if it is assured that navigational accuracy can be achieved by reference to suitable visual cues during the climb;

(3) 300 m if navigational accuracy can be achieved by appropriate navigation aids; or

(4) 900 m in all other cases.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.110(a)(2)(i) Obstacle accountability

COURSE GUIDANCE

Standard course guidance includes automatic direction finder (ADF) and VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) guidance.

Accurate course guidance includes ILS, MLS or other course guidance providing an equivalent navigational accuracy.

Chapter 2 — Performance class 1

CAT.POL.H.200 General

Helicopters operated in performance class 1 shall be certified in Category A or equivalent as determined by the Agency.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400 General

CATEGORY A AND CATEGORY B

(a) Helicopters that have been certified according to any of the following standards are considered to satisfy the Category A criteria. Provided that they have the necessary performance information scheduled in the AFM, such helicopters are therefore eligible for performance class 1 or 2 operations:

(1) certification as Category A under CS-27 or CS-29;

(2) certification as Category A under JAR-27 or JAR-29;

(3) certification as Category A under FAR Part 29;

(4) certification as group A under BCAR Section G; and

(5) certification as group A under BCAR-29.

(b) In addition to the above, certain helicopters have been certified under FAR Part 27 and with compliance with FAR Part 29 engine isolation requirements as specified in FAA Advisory Circular AC 27-1. Provided that compliance is established with the following additional requirements of CS-29:

(1) CS 29.1027(a) Independence of engine and rotor drive system lubrication;

(2) CS 29.1187(e);

(3) CS 29.1195(a) & (b) Provision of a one-shot fire extinguishing system for each engine;

(i) The requirement to fit a fire extinguishing system may be waived if the helicopter manufacturer can demonstrate equivalent safety, based on service experience for the entire fleet showing that the actual incidence of fires in the engine fire zones has been negligible.

(4) CS 29.1197;

(5) CS 29.1199;

(6) CS 29.1201; and

(7) CS 29.1323(c)(1) Ability of the airspeed indicator to consistently identify the take-off decision point,

these helicopters are considered to satisfy the requirement to be certified as equivalent to Category A.

(c) The performance operating rules of JAR-OPS 3, which were transposed into this Part, were drafted in conjunction with the performance requirements of JAR-29 Issue 1 and FAR Part 29 at amendment 29-39. For helicopters certificated under FAR Part 29 at an earlier amendment, or under BCAR section G or BCAR-29, performance data will have been scheduled in the AFM according to these earlier requirements. This earlier scheduled data may not be fully compatible with this Part.

(d) Before any AOC is issued under which performance class 1 or 2 operations are conducted, it should be established that scheduled performance data are available that are compatible with the requirements of performance class 1 and 2 respectively.

(e) Any properly certified helicopter is considered to satisfy the Category B criteria. If appropriately equipped (in accordance with CAT.IDE.H), such helicopters are therefore eligible for performance class 3 operations.

CAT.POL.H.205 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum take-off mass specified in the AFM for the procedure to be used.

(b) The take-off mass shall be such that:

(1) it is possible to reject the take-off and land on the FATO in case of the critical engine failure being recognised at or before the take-off decision point (TDP);

(2) the rejected take-off distance required (RTODRH) does not exceed the rejected take-off distance available (RTODAH); and

(3) the TODRH does not exceed the take-off distance available (TODAH).

(4) Notwithstanding (b)(3), the TODRH may exceed the TODAH if the helicopter, with the critical engine failure recognised at TDP can, when continuing the take-off, clear all obstacles to the end of the TODRH by a vertical margin of not less than 10.7 m (35 ft).

(c) When showing compliance with (a) and (b), account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105 (c) at the aerodrome or operating site of departure.

(d) That part of the take-off up to and including TDP shall be conducted in sight of the surface such that a rejected take-off can be carried out.

(e) For take-off using a backup or lateral transition procedure, with the critical engine failure recognition at or before the TDP, all obstacles in the back-up or lateral transition area shall be cleared by an adequate margin.

AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) Take-off

THE APPLICATION OF TODRH

The selected height should be determined with the use of AFM data, and be at least 10.7 m (35 ft) above:

(a) the take-off surface; or

(b) as an alternative, a level height defined by the highest obstacle in the take-off distance required.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) Take-off

THE APPLICATION OF TODRH

(a) Introduction

Original definitions for helicopter performance were derived from aeroplanes; hence the definition of take-off distance owes much to operations from runways. Helicopters on the other hand can operate from runways, confined and restricted areas and rooftop FATOs – all bounded by obstacles. As an analogy this is equivalent to a take-off from a runway with obstacles on and surrounding it.

It can therefore be seen that unless the original definitions from aeroplanes are tailored for helicopters, the flexibility of the helicopter might be constrained by the language of operational performance.

This GM concentrates on the critical term – take-off distance required (TODRH) – and describes the methods to achieve compliance with it and, in particular, the alternative procedure described in ICAO Annex 6 Attachment A 4.1.1.3:

(1) the take-off distance required does not exceed the take-off distance available; or

(2) as an alternative, the take-off distance required may be disregarded provided that the helicopter with the critical engine failure recognised at TDP can, when continuing the take-off, clear all obstacles between the end of the take-off distance available and the point at which it becomes established in a climb at V_{TOSS} by a vertical margin of 10.7 m (35 ft) or more. An obstacle is considered to be in the path of the helicopter if its distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended line of flight does not exceed 30 m or 1.5 times the maximum dimension of the helicopter, whichever is greater.

(b) Definition of TODRH

The definition of TODRH from Annex I is as follows:

'Take-off distance required (TODRH)' in the case of helicopters means the horizontal distance required from the start of the take-off to the point at which take-off safety speed (V_{TOSS}), a selected height and a positive climb gradient are achieved, following failure of the critical engine being recognised at the TDP, the remaining engines operating within approved operating limits.

AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) states how the specified height should be determined.

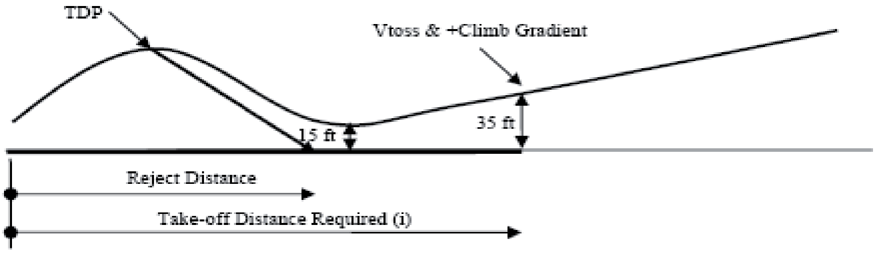
The original definition of TODRH was based only on the first part of this definition.

(c) The clear area procedure (runway)

In the past, helicopters certified in Category A would have had, at the least, a 'clear area' procedure. This procedure is analogous to an aeroplane Category A procedure and assumes a runway (either metaled or grass) with a smooth surface suitable for an aeroplane take-off (see Figure 1).

The helicopter is assumed to accelerate down the FATO (runway) outside of the height velocity (HV) diagram. If the helicopter has an engine failure before TDP, it must be able to land back on the FATO (runway) without damage to helicopter or passengers; if there is a failure at or after TDP the aircraft is permitted to lose height – providing it does not descend below a specified height above the surface (usually 15 ft if the TDP is above 15 ft). Errors by the pilot are taken into consideration but the smooth surface of the FATO limits serious damage if the error margin is eroded (e.g. by a change of wind conditions).

Figure 1: Clear Area take – off



The operator only has to establish that the distances required are within the distance available (take-off distance and reject distance). The original definition of TODRH meets this case exactly.

From the end of the TODRH obstacle clearance is given by the climb gradient of the first or second climb segment meeting the requirement of CAT.POL.H.210 (or for performance class 2 (PC2): CAT.POL.H.315). The clearance margin from obstacles in the take-off flight path takes account of the distance travelled from the end of the take-off distance required and operational conditions (IMC or VMC).

(d) Category A procedures other than clear area

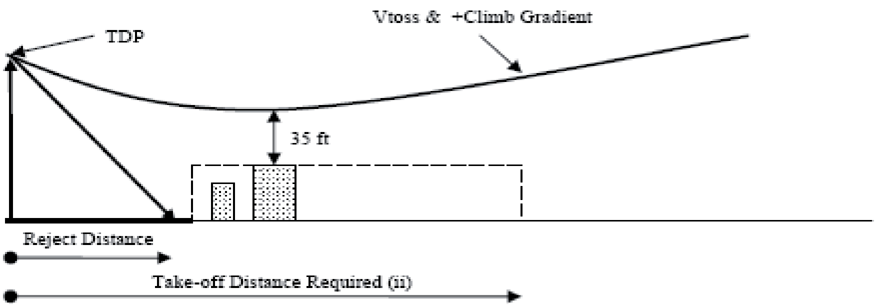
Procedures other than the clear area are treated somewhat differently. However, the short field procedure is somewhat of a hybrid as either (a) or (b) of AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) can be utilised (the term 'helipad' is used in the following section to illustrate the principle only, it is not intended as a replacement for 'aerodrome' or 'FATO').

(1) Limited area, restricted area and helipad procedures (other than elevated)

The exact names of the procedure used for other than clear area are as many as there are manufacturers. However, principles for obstacle clearance are generic and the name is unimportant.

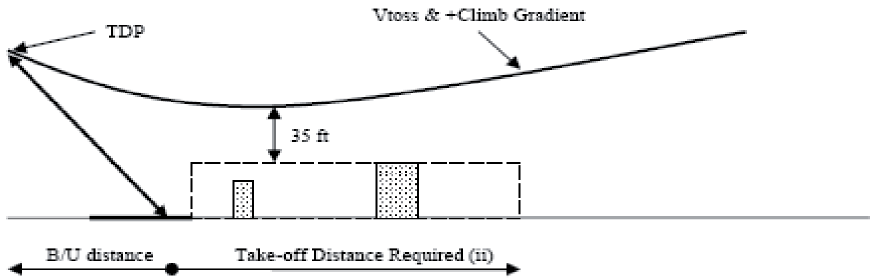
These procedures (see Figure 2 and Figure 3) are usually associated with an obstacle in the continued take-off area – usually shown as a line of trees or some other natural obstacle. As clearance above such obstacles is not readily associated with an accelerative procedure, as described in (c), a procedure using a vertical climb (or a steep climb in the forward, sideways or rearward direction) is utilised.

Figure 2: Short Field take – off



With the added complication of a TDP principally defined by height together with obstacles in the continued take off area, a drop down to within 15 ft of the take-off surface is not deemed appropriate and the required obstacle clearance is set to 35 ft (usually called min-dip). The distance to the obstacle does not need to be calculated (provided it is outside the rejected distance required), as clearance above all obstacles is provided by ensuring that helicopter does not descend below the min-dip associated with a level defined by the highest obstacle in the continued take-off area.

Figure 3: Helipad take – off



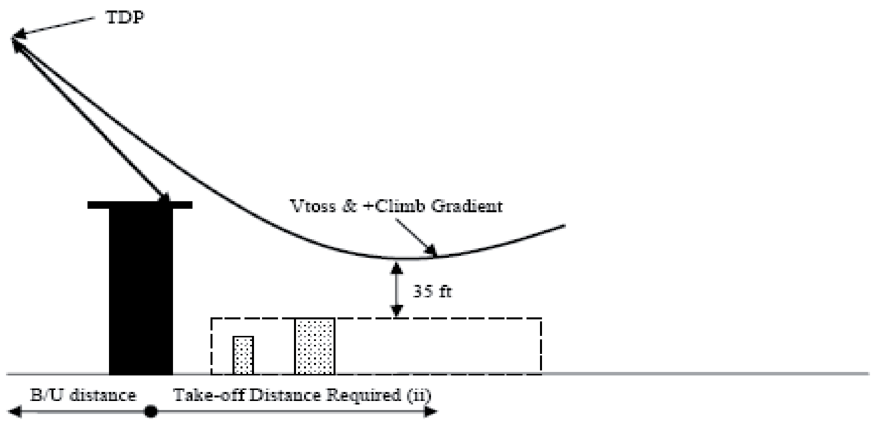
These procedures depend upon (b) of AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4).

As shown in Figure 3, the point at which VTOSS and a positive rate of climb are met defines the TODRH. Obstacle clearance from that point is assured by meeting the requirement of CAT.POL.H.210 (or for PC2 – CAT.POL.H.315). Also shown in Figure 3 is the distance behind the helipad which is the backup distance (B/U distance).

(2) Elevated helipad procedures

The elevated helipad procedure (see Figure 4) is a special case of the ground level helipad procedure discussed above.

Figure 4: Elevate Helipad take – off



The main difference is that drop down below the level of the take-off surface is permitted. In the drop down phase, the Category A procedure ensures deck-edge clearance but, once clear of the deck-edge, the 35 ft clearance from obstacles relies upon the calculation of drop down. Item (b) of AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(b)(4) is applied.

Although 35 ft is used throughout the requirements, it may be inadequate at particular elevated FATOs that are subject to adverse airflow effects, turbulence, etc.

AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205(e) Take-off

OBSTACLE CLEARANCE IN THE BACKUP AREA

(a) The requirement in CAT.POL.H.205(e) has been established in order to take into account the following factors:

(1) in the backup: the pilot has few visual cues and has to rely upon the altimeter and sight picture through the front window (if flight path guidance is not provided) to achieve an accurate rearward flight path;

(2) in the rejected take-off: the pilot has to be able to manage the descent against a varying forward speed whilst still ensuring an adequate clearance from obstacles until the helicopter gets in close proximity for landing on the FATO; and

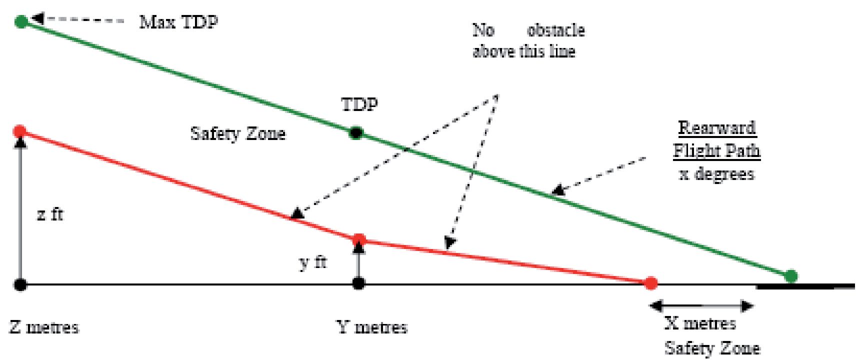
(3) in the continued take-off; the pilot has to be able to accelerate to V_{TOSS} (take-off safety speed for Category A helicopters) whilst ensuring an adequate clearance from obstacles.

(b) The requirements of CAT.POL.H.205(e) may be achieved by establishing that:

(1) in the backup area no obstacles are located within the safety zone below the rearward flight path when described in the AFM (see Figure 1 – in the absence of such data in the AFM, the operator should contact the manufacturer in order to define a safety zone);or

(2) during the backup, the rejected take-off and the continued take-off manoeuvres, obstacle clearance is demonstrated to the competent authority.

Figure 1: Rearward flight path



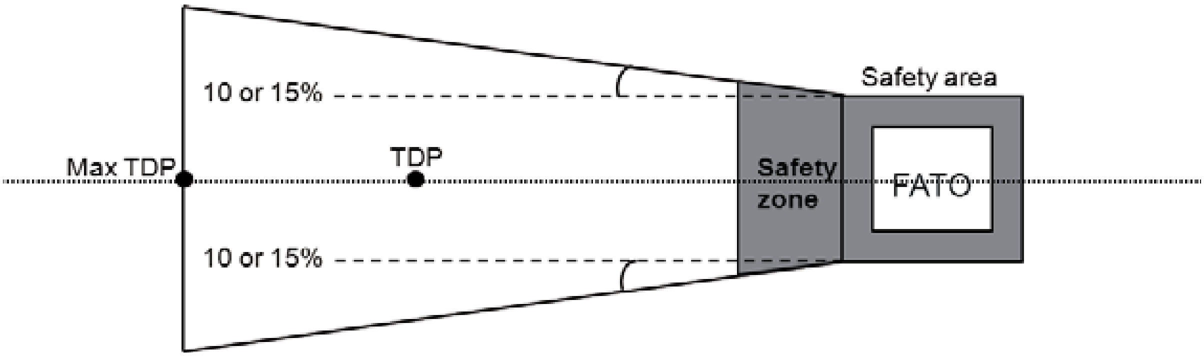
(c) An obstacle, in the backup area, is considered if its lateral distance from the nearest point on the surface below the intended flight path is not further than:

(1) half of the minimum FATO (or the equivalent term used in the AFM) width defined in the AFM (or, when no width is defined 0.75 D, where D is the largest dimension of the helicopter when the rotors are turning); plus

(2) 0.25 times D (or 3 m, whichever is greater); plus

(3) 0.10 for VFR day, or 0.15 for VFR night, of the distance travelled from the back of the FATO (see Figure 2).

Figure 2: Obstacle accountability



AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing

APPLICATION FOR ALTERNATIVE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING PROCEDURES

(a) A reduction in the size of the take-off surface may be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that compliance with the requirements of CAT.POL.H.205, 210 and 220 can be assured with:

(1) a procedure based upon an appropriate Category A take-off and landing profile scheduled in the AFM;

(2) a take-off or landing mass not exceeding the mass scheduled in the AFM for a hover-out-of-ground-effect one-engine-inoperative (HOGE OEI) ensuring that:

(i) following an engine failure at or before TDP, there are adequate external references to ensure that the helicopter can be landed in a controlled manner; and

(ii) following an engine failure at or after the landing decision point (LDP) there are adequate external references to ensure that the helicopter can be landed in a controlled manner.

(b) An upwards shift of the TDP and LDP may be applied when the operator has demonstrated to the competent authority that compliance with the requirements of CAT.POL.H.205, 210 and 220 can be assured with:

(1) a procedure based upon an appropriate Category A take-off and landing profile scheduled in the AFM;

(2) a take-off or landing mass not exceeding the mass scheduled in the AFM for a HOGE OEI ensuring that:

(i) following an engine failure at or after TDP compliance with the obstacle clearance requirements of CAT.POL.H.205 (b)(4) and CAT.POL.H.210 can be met; and

(ii) following an engine failure at or before the LDP the balked landing obstacle clearance requirements of CAT.POL.H.220 (b) and CAT.POL.H.210 can be met.

(c) The Category A ground level surface area requirement may be applied at a specific elevated FATO when the operator can demonstrate to the competent authority that the usable cue environment at that aerodrome/operating site would permit such a reduction in size.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing

APPLICATION FOR ALTERNATIVE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING PROCEDURES

The manufacturer's Category A procedure defines profiles and scheduled data for take-off, climb, performance at minimum operating speed and landing, under specific environmental conditions and masses.

Associated with these profiles and conditions are minimum operating surfaces, take-off distances, climb performance and landing distances; these are provided (usually in graphic form) with the take-off and landing masses and the take-off decision point (TDP) and landing decision point (LDP).

The landing surface and the height of the TDP are directly related to the ability of the helicopter – following an engine failure before or at TDP – to reject onto the surface under forced landing conditions. The main considerations in establishing the minimum size of the landing surface are the scatter during flight testing of the reject manoeuvre, with the remaining engine operating within approved limits, and the required usable cue environment.

Hence, an elevated site with few visual cues – apart from the surface itself – would require a greater surface area in order that the helicopter can be accurately positioned during the reject manoeuvre within the specified area. This usually results in the stipulation of a larger surface for an elevated site than for a ground level site (where lateral cues may be present).

This could have the unfortunate side-effect that a FATO that is built 3 m above the surface (and therefore elevated by definition) might be out of operational scope for some helicopters – even though there might be a rich visual cue environment where rejects are not problematical. The presence of elevated sites where ground level surface requirements might be more appropriate could be brought to the attention of the competent authority.

It can be seen that the size of the surface is directly related to the requirement of the helicopter to complete a rejected take-off following an engine failure. If the helicopter has sufficient power such that a failure before or at TDP will not lead to a requirement for rejected take-off, the need for large surfaces is removed; sufficient power for the purpose of this GM is considered to be the power required for hover-out-of-ground-effect one-engine-inoperative (HOGE OEI).

Following an engine failure at or after the TDP, the continued take-off path provides OEI clearance from the take-off surface and the distance to reach a point from where climb performance in the first, and subsequent segments, is assured.

If HOGE OEI performance exists at the height of the TDP, it follows that the continued take-off profile, which has been defined for a helicopter with a mass such that a rejected take-off would be required following an engine failure at or before TDP, would provide the same, or better, obstacle clearance and the same, or less, distance to reach a point where climb performance in the first, and subsequent segments, is assured.

If the TDP is shifted upwards, provided that the HOGE OEI performance is established at the revised TDP, it will not affect the shape of the continued take-off profile but should shift the min-dip upwards by the same amount that the revised TDP has been increased – with respect to the basic TDP.

Such assertions are concerned only with the vertical or the backup procedures and can be regarded as achievable under the following circumstances:

(a) when the procedure is flown, it is based upon a profile contained in the AFM – with the exception of the necessity to perform a rejected take-off;

(b) the TDP, if shifted upwards (or upwards and backward in the backup procedure) will be the height at which the HOGE OEI performance is established; and

(c) if obstacles are permitted in the backup area they should continue to be permitted with a revised TDP.

CAT.POL.H.210 Take-off flight path

(a) From the end of the TODRH with the critical engine failure recognised at the TDP:

(1) The take-off mass shall be such that the take-off flight path provides a vertical clearance, above all obstacles located in the climb path, of not less than 10.7 m (35 ft) for operations under VFR and 10.7 m (35 ft) + 0.01 × distance DR for operations under IFR. Only obstacles as specified in CAT.POL.H.110 have to be considered.

(2) Where a change of direction of more than 15° is made, adequate allowance shall be made for the effect of bank angle on the ability to comply with the obstacle clearance requirements. This turn is not to be initiated before reaching a height of 61 m (200 ft) above the take-off surface unless it is part of an approved procedure in the AFM.

(b) When showing compliance with (a), account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105 (c) at the aerodrome or operating site of departure.

CAT.POL.H.215 En-route — critical engine inoperative

(a) The mass of the helicopter and flight path at all points along the route, with the critical engine inoperative and the meteorological conditions expected for the flight, shall permit compliance with (1), (2) or (3):

(1) When it is intended that the flight will be conducted at any time out of sight of the surface, the mass of the helicopter permits a rate of climb of at least 50 ft/minute with the critical engine inoperative at an altitude of at least 300 m (1 000 ft), or 600 m (2 000 ft) in areas of mountainous terrain, above all terrain and obstacles along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track.

(2) When it is intended that the flight will be conducted without the surface in sight, the flight path permits the helicopter to continue flight from the cruising altitude to a height of 300 m (1 000 ft) above a landing site where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.H.220. The flight path clears vertically, by at least 300 m (1 000 ft) or 600 m (2 000 ft) in areas of mountainous terrain, all terrain and obstacles along the route within 9.3 km (5 NM) on either side of the intended track. Drift-down techniques may be used.

(3) When it is intended that the flight will be conducted in VMC with the surface in sight, the flight path permits the helicopter to continue flight from the cruising altitude to a height of 300 m (1 000 ft) above a landing site where a landing can be made in accordance with CAT.POL.H.220, without flying at any time below the appropriate minimum flight altitude. Obstacles within 900 m on either side of the route need to be considered.

(b) When showing compliance with (a)(2) or (a)(3):

(1) the critical engine is assumed to fail at the most critical point along the route;

(2) account is taken of the effects of winds on the flight path;

(3) fuel jettisoning is planned to take place only to an extent consistent with reaching the aerodrome or operating site with the required fuel reserves and using a safe procedure; and

(4) fuel jettisoning is not planned below 1 000 ft above terrain.

(c) The width margins of (a)(1) and (a)(2) shall be increased to 18.5 km (10 NM) if the navigational accuracy cannot be met for 95% of the total flight time.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.215(b)(3) En-route – critical engine inoperative

FUEL JETTISON

The presence of obstacles along the en-route flight path may preclude compliance with CAT.POL.H.215 (a)(1) at the planned mass at the critical point along the route. In this case fuel jettison at the most critical point may be planned, provided that the procedures of (c) in AMC3 CAT.OP.MPA.150(b) are complied with.

CAT.POL.H.220 Landing

(a) The landing mass of the helicopter at the estimated time of landing shall not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for the procedure to be used.

(b) In the event of the critical engine failure being recognised at any point at or before the landing decision point (LDP), it is possible either to land and stop within the FATO, or to perform a balked landing and clear all obstacles in the flight path by a vertical margin of 10.7 m (35 ft). Only obstacles as specified in CAT.POL.H.110 have to be considered.

(c) In the event of the critical engine failure being recognised at any point at or after the LDP, it is possible to:

(1) clear all obstacles in the approach path; and

(2) land and stop within the FATO.

(d) When showing compliance with (a) to (c), account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105 (c) for the estimated time of landing at the destination aerodrome or operating site, or any alternate if required.

(e) That part of the landing from the LDP to touchdown shall be conducted in sight of the surface.

See **AMC1 CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing.**

See **GM1 CAT.POL.H.205&CAT.POL.H.220 Take-off and landing.**

CAT.POL.H.225 Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site

(a) Operations to/from a public interest site (PIS) may be conducted in performance class 2, without complying with CAT.POL.H.310 (b) or CAT.POL.H.325 (b), provided that all of the following are complied with:

(1) the PIS was in use before 1 July 2002;

(2) the size of the PIS or obstacle environment does not permit compliance with the requirements for operation in performance class 1;

(3) the operation is conducted with a helicopter with an MOPSC of six or less;

(4) the operator complies with CAT.POL.H.305 (b)(2) and (b)(3);

(5) the helicopter mass does not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for a climb gradient of 8% in still air at the appropriate take-off safety speed (V_{TOSS}) with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engines operating at an appropriate power rating; and

(6) the operator has obtained prior approval for the operation from the competent authority. Before such operations take place in another Member State, the operator shall obtain an endorsement from the competent authority of that State.

(b) Site-specific procedures shall be established in the operations manual to minimise the period during which there would be danger to helicopter occupants and persons on the surface in the event of an engine failure during take-off and landing.

(c) The operations manual shall contain for each PIS: a diagram or annotated photograph, showing the main aspects, the dimensions, the non-conformance with the requirements performance class 1, the main hazards and the contingency plan should an incident occur.

AMC1 CAT.POL.H.225(a)(5) Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site

HELICOPTER MASS LIMITATION

(a) The helicopter mass limitation at take-off or landing specified in CAT.POL.H.225 (a)(5) should be determined using the climb performance data from 35 ft to 200 ft at V_{TOSS} (first segment of the take-off flight path) contained in the Category A supplement of the AFM (or equivalent manufacturer data acceptable in accordance with GM1-CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400).

(b) The first segment climb data to be considered is established for a climb at the take-off safety speed V_{TOSS}, with the landing gear extended (when the landing gear is retractable), with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engines operating at an appropriate power rating (the 2 min 30 sec or 2 min OEI power rating, depending on the helicopter type certification). The appropriate V_{TOSS}, is the value specified in the Category A performance section of the AFM for vertical take-off and landing procedures (VTOL, helipad or equivalent manufacturer terminology).

(c) The ambient conditions at the site (pressure-altitude and temperature) should be taken into account.

(d) The data is usually provided in charts in one of the following ways:

(1) Height gain in ft over a horizontal distance of 100 ft in the first segment configuration (35 ft to 200 ft, V_{TOSS}, 2 min 30 sec / 2 min OEI power rating). This chart should be entered with a height gain of 8 ft per 100 ft horizontally travelled, resulting in a mass value for every pressure-altitude/temperature combination considered.

(2) Horizontal distance to climb from 35 ft to 200 ft in the first segment configuration (V_{TOSS}, 2 min 30 sec / 2 min OEI power rating). This chart should be entered with a horizontally distance of 628 m (2 062 ft), resulting in a mass value for every pressure-altitude/temperature combination considered.

(3) Rate of climb in the first segment configuration (35 ft to 200 ft, V_{TOSS}, 2 min 30 sec / 2 min OEI power rating). This chart can be entered with a rate of climb equal to the climb speed (V_{TOSS}) value in knots (converted to true airspeed) multiplied by 8.1, resulting in a mass value for every pressure-altitude/temperature combination considered.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.225 Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site

UNDERLYING PRINCIPLES

(a) General

The original Joint Aviation Authorities (JAA) Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(i) was introduced in January 2002 to address problems that had been encountered by Member States at hospital sites due to the applicable performance requirements of JAR-OPS 3 Subparts G and H. These problems were enumerated in ACJ to Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(d) paragraph 8, part of which is reproduced below.

"8 Problems with hospital sites

During implementation of JAR-OPS 3, it was established that a number of States had encountered problems with the impact of performance rules where helicopters were operated for HEMS. Although States accept that progress should be made towards operations where risks associated with a critical power unit failure are eliminated, or limited by the exposure time concept, a number of landing sites exist which do not (or never can) allow operations to performance class 1 or 2 requirements.

These sites are generally found in a congested hostile environment:

– in the grounds of hospitals; or

– on hospital buildings;

The problem of hospital sites is mainly historical and, whilst the Authority could insist that such sites not be used – or used at such a low weight that critical power unit failure performance is assured, it would seriously curtail a number of existing operations.

Even though the rule for the use of such sites in hospital grounds for HEMS operations (Appendix 1 to JAR-OPS 3.005(d) sub-paragraph (c)(2)(i)(A)) attracts alleviation until 2005, it is only partial and will still impact upon present operations.

Because such operations are performed in the public interest, it was felt that the Authority should be able to exercise its discretion so as to allow continued use of such sites provided that it is satisfied that an adequate level of safety can be maintained – notwithstanding that the site does not allow operations to performance class 1 or 2 standards. However, it is in the interest of continuing improvements in safety that the alleviation of such operations be constrained to existing sites, and for a limited period."

As stated in this ACJ and embodied in the text of the appendix, the solution was short-term (until 31 December 2004). During the comment period of JAA NPA 18, representations were made to the JAA that the alleviation should be extended to 2009. The review committee, in not accepting this request, had in mind that this was a short-term solution to address an immediate problem, and a permanent solution should be sought.

(b) After 1 January 2005

Although elimination of such sites would remove the problem, it is recognised that phasing out, or rebuilding existing hospital sites, is a long-term goal which may not be cost-effective, or even possible, in some Member States.

It should be noted however that CAT.POL.H.225 (a) limits the problem by confining approvals to hospital sites established before 1 July 2002 (established in this context means either: built before that date, or brought into service before that date – this precise wording was used to avoid problems associated with a ground level aerodrome/operating site where no building would be required). Thus the problem of these sites is contained and reducing in severity. This date was set approximately 6 months after the intended implementation of the original JAR-OPS 3 appendix.

EASA adopted the JAA philosophy that, from 1st January 2005 approval would be confined to those sites where a CAT A procedure alone cannot solve the problem. The determination of whether the helicopter can or cannot be operated in accordance with performance class 1 should be established with the helicopter at a realistic payload and fuel to complete the mission. However, in order to reduce the risk at those sites, the application of the requirements contained in CAT.POL.H.225 (a) should be applied.

Additionally and in order to promote understanding of the problem, the text contained in CAT.POL.H.225 (b) had been amended to refer to the performance class and not to Annex 14 as in the original appendix. Thus Part C of the operations manual should reflect the non-conformance with performance class 1, as well as the site specific procedures (approach and departure paths) to minimise the danger to third parties in the event of an incident.

The following paragraphs explain the problem and solutions.

(c) The problem associated with such sites

There are a number of problems: some of which can be solved with the use of appropriate helicopters and procedures; and others which, because of the size of the site or the obstacle environment, cannot. They consist of:

(1) the size of the surface of the site (smaller than that required by the manufacturer's procedure);

(2) an obstacle environment that prevents the use of the manufacturer's procedure (obstacles in the backup area); and

(3) an obstacle environment that does not allow recovery following an engine failure in the critical phase of take-off (a line of buildings requiring a demanding gradient of climb) at a realistic payload and fuel to complete the mission.

– Problems associated with (c)(1): the inability to climb and conduct a rejected landing back to the site following an engine failure before the Decision Point (DP).

– Problems associated with (c)(2): as in (c)(1)).

– Problems associated with (c)(3): climb into an obstacle following an engine failure after DP.

Problems cannot be solved in the immediate future but can, when mitigated with the use of the latest generation of helicopters (operated at a weight that can allow useful payloads and endurance), minimise exposure to risk.

(d) Long term solution

Although not offering a complete solution, it was felt that a significant increase in safety could be achieved by applying an additional performance margin to such operations. This solution allowed the time restriction of 2004 to be removed.

The required performance level of 8 % climb gradient in the first segment reflects ICAO Annex 14 Volume II in 'Table 4-3 'Dimensions and slopes of obstacle limitations surfaces' for performance class 2.

The performance delta is achieved without the provision of further manufacturer's data by using existing graphs to provide the reduced take-off mass (RTOM).

If the solution in relation to the original problem is examined, the effects can be seen.

(1) Solution with relation to (c)(1): although the problem still exists, the safest procedure is a dynamic take-off reducing the time taken to achieve V_{stayup} and thus allowing VFR recovery – if the failure occurs at or after V_y and 200 ft, an IFR recovery is possible.

(2) Solution with relation to (c)(2): as in (c)(1) above.

(3) Solution with relation to (c)(3): once again this does not give a complete solution, however the performance delta minimises the time during which a climb over the obstacle cannot be achieved.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.225(a)(6) Helicopter operations to/from a public interest site

ENDORSEMENT FROM ANOTHER STATE

(a) Application to another State

To obtain an endorsement from another State the operator should submit to that State:

(1) the reasons that preclude compliance with the requirements for operations in performance class 1;

(2) the site-specific procedures to minimise the period during which there would be danger to helicopter occupants and person on the surface in the event of an engine failure during take-off and landing; and

(3) the extract from the operations manual to comply with CAT.POL.H.225 (c).

(b) Endorsement from another State

Upon receiving the endorsement from another State the operator should submit it together with the site specific procedures and the reasons and justification that preclude the use of performance class 1 criteria, to the competent authority issuing the AOC to obtain the approval or extend the approval to a new public interest site.

Chapter 3 — Performance class 2

GM to Section 2, Chapter 3 performance class 2

OPERATIONS IN PERFORMANCE CLASS 2

(a) Introduction

This GM describes performance class 2 as established in Part-CAT. It has been produced for the purpose of:

(1) explaining the underlying philosophy of operations in performance class 2;

(2) showing simple means of compliance; and

(3) explaining how to determine – with examples and diagrams:

(i) the take-off and landing masses;

(ii) the length of the safe forced landing area;

(iii) distances to establish obstacle clearance; and

(iv) entry point(s) into performance class 1.

It explains the derivation of performance class 2 from ICAO Annex 6 Part III and describes an alleviation that may be approved in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305 following a risk assessment.

It examines the basic requirements, discusses the limits of operation, and considers the benefits of the use of performance class 2.

It contains examples of performance class 2 in specific circumstances, and explains how these examples may be generalised to provide operators with methods of calculating landing distances and obstacle clearance.

(b) Definitions used in this GM

The definitions for the following terms, used in this GM, are contained in Annex I and its AMC:

(1) distance DR

(2) defined point after take-off (DPATO)

(3) defined point before landing (DPBL)

(4) landing distance available (LDAH)

(5) landing distance required (LDRH)

(6) performance class 2

(7) safe forced landing (SFL)

(8) take-off distance available (TODAH).

The following terms, which are not defined Annex I, are used in this GM:

– V_T : a target speed at which to aim at the point of minimum ground clearance (min-dip) during acceleration from TDP to V_{TOSS}

– $V_{50.}$: a target speed and height utilised to establish an AFM distance (in compliance with the requirement of CS/JAR 29.63) from which climb out is possible; and

– V_{stayup} : a colloquial term used to indicate a speed at which a descent would not result following an engine failure. This speed is several knots lower than V_{TOSS} at the equivalent take-off mass.

(c) What defines performance class 2

Performance class 2 can be considered as performance class 3 take-off or landing, and performance class 1 climb, cruise and descent. It comprises an all-engines-operating (AEO) obstacle clearance regime for the take-off or landing phases, and a OEI obstacle clearance regime for the climb, cruise, descent, approach and missed approach phases.

For the purpose of performance calculations in Part-CAT, the CS/JAR 29.67 Category A climb performance criteria is used:

– 150 ft/min at 1 000 ft (at V_y);

and depending on the choice of DPATO:

– 100 ft/min up to 200 ft (at V_{TOSS})

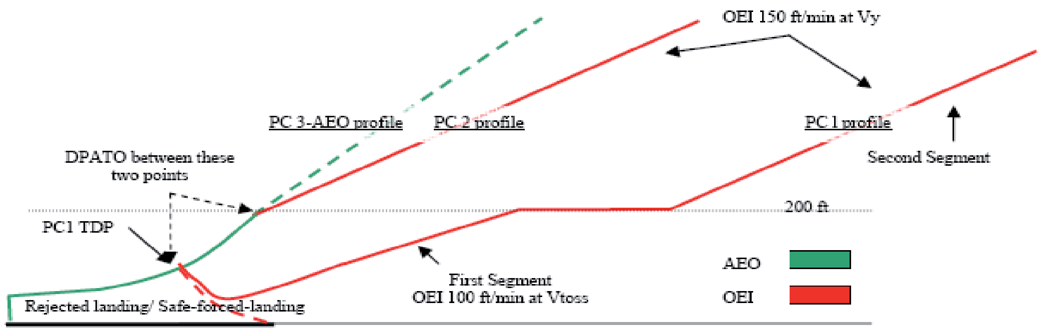
at the appropriate power settings.

(1) Comparison of obstacle clearance in all performance classes

Figure 1 shows the profiles of the three performance classes – superimposed on one diagram.

– Performance class 1 (PC1): from TDP, requires OEI obstacle clearance in all phases of flight; the construction of Category A procedures, provides for a flight path to the first climb segment, a level acceleration segment to V_y (which may be shown concurrent with the first segment), followed by the second climb segment from V_y at 200 ft (see Figure 1).

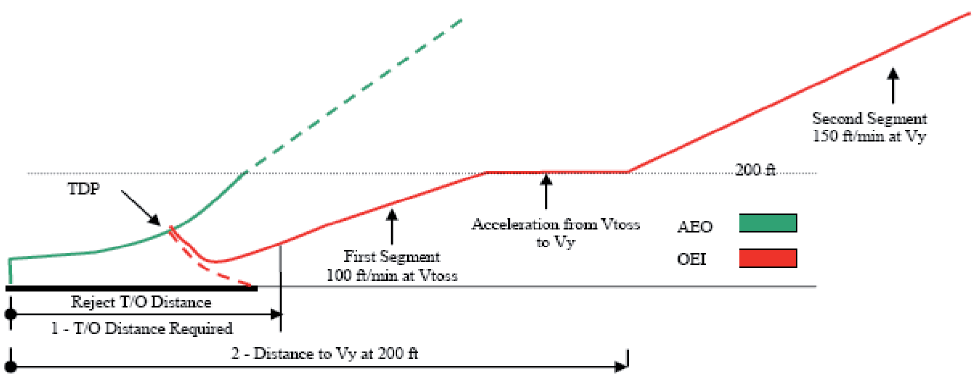
Figure 1: All Performance Classes (a comparison)



– Performance class 2 (PC2): requires AEO obstacle clearance to DPATO and OEI from then on. The take-off mass has the PC1 second segment climb performance at its basis therefore, at the point where V_y at 200 ft is reached, Performance Class 1 is achieved (see also Figure 3).

– Performance class 3 (PC3): requires AEO obstacle clearance in all phases.

Figure 2: Performance Class 1 distances



(2) Comparison of the discontinued take-off in all performance classes

(i) PC1 – requires a prepared surface on which a rejected landing can be undertaken (no damage); and

(ii) PC2 and 3 – require a safe forced landing surface (some damage can be tolerated but there must be a reasonable expectancy of no injuries to persons in the aircraft or third parties on the surface).

(d) The derivation of performance class 2

PC2 is primarily based on the text of ICAO Annex 6 Part III Section II and its attachments – which provide for the following:

(1) obstacle clearance before DPATO: the helicopter shall be able, with all engines operating, to clear all obstacles by an adequate margin until it is in a position to comply with (2);

(2) obstacle clearance after DPATO: the helicopter shall be able, in the event of the critical engine becoming inoperative at any time after reaching DPATO, to continue the take-off clearing all obstacles along the flight path by an adequate margin until it is able to comply with en-route clearances; and

(3) engine failure before DPATO: before the DPATO, failure of the critical engine may cause the helicopter to force land; therefore a safe forced landing should be possible (this is analogous to the requirement for a reject in performance class 1 but where some damage to the helicopter can be tolerated.)

(e) Benefits of performance class 2

Operations in performance class 2 permit advantage to be taken of an AEO procedure for a short period during take-off and landing – whilst retaining engine failure accountability in the climb, descent and cruise. The benefits include the ability to:

(1) use (the reduced) distances scheduled for the AEO – thus permitting operations to take place at smaller aerodromes and allowing airspace requirements to be reduced;

(2) operate when the safe forced landing distance available is located outside the boundary of the aerodrome;

(3) operate when the take-off distance required is located outside the boundary of the aerodrome; and

(4) use existing Category A profiles and distances when the surface conditions are not adequate for a reject but are suitable for a safe forced landing (for example when the ground is waterlogged).

Additionally, following a risk assessment when the use of exposure is approved by the competent authority the ability to:

(i) operate when a safe forced landing is not assured in the take-off phase; and

(ii) penetrate the HV curve for short periods during take-off or landing.

(f) Implementation of performance class 2 in Part-CAT

The following sections explain the principles of the implementation of performance class 2.

(1) Does ICAO spell it all out?

ICAO Annex 6 does not give guidance on how DPATO should be calculated nor does it require that distances be established for the take-off. However, it does require that, up to DPATO AEO, and from DPATO OEI, obstacle clearance is established (see Figure 3 and Figure 4 which are simplified versions of the diagrams contained in Annex 6 Part III, Attachment A).

(ICAO Annex 8 – Airworthiness of Aircraft (IVA 2.2.3.1.4' and 'IVB 2.2.7 d) requires that an AEO distance be scheduled for all helicopters operating in performance classes 2 & 3. ICAO Annex 6 is dependent upon the scheduling of the AEO distances, required in Annex 8, to provide data for the location of DPATO.)

When showing obstacle clearance, the divergent obstacle clearance height required for IFR is – as in performance class 1 – achieved by the application of the additional obstacle clearance of 0.01 distance DR (the distance from the end of 'take-off-distance-available' – see the pictorial representation in Figure 4 and the definition in Annex I).

As can also be seen from Figure 4, flight must be conducted in VFR until DPATO has been achieved (and deduced that if an engine failure occurs before DPATO, entry into IFR is not permitted (as the OEI climb gradient will not have been established)).

Figure 3: Performance Class 2 Obstacle Clearance

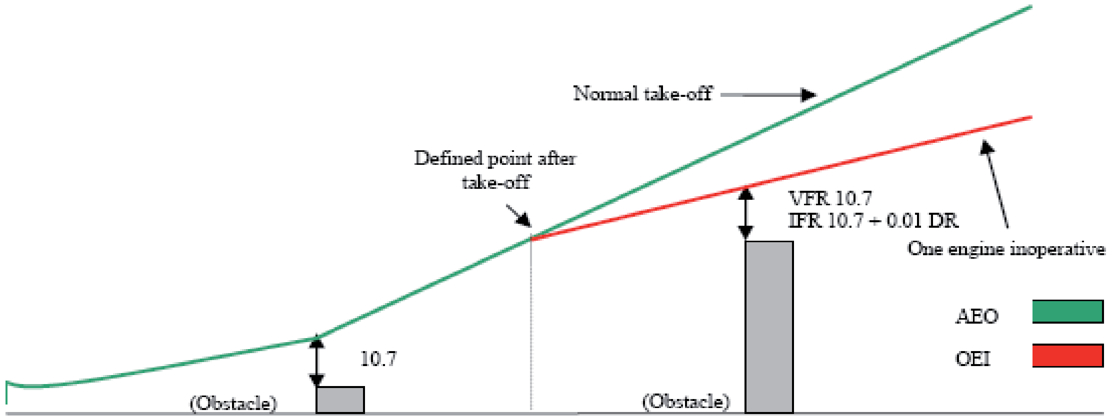
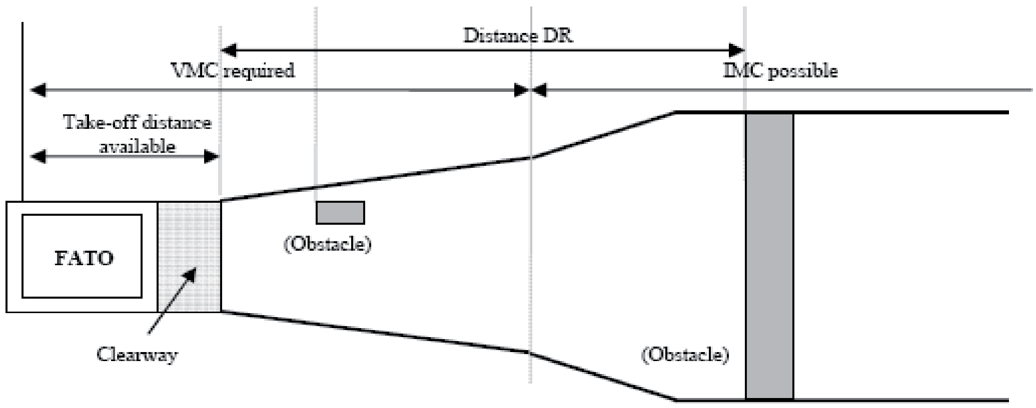


Figure 4: Performance Class 2 Obstacle Clearance (plan view)



(2) Function of DPATO

From the preceding paragraphs it can be seen that DPATO is germane to PC2. It can also be seen that, in view of the many aspects of DPATO, it has, potentially, to satisfy a number of requirements that are not necessarily synchronised (nor need to be).

It is clear that it is only possible to establish a single point for DPATO, satisfying the requirement of (d)(2) & (d)(3), when:

– accepting the TDP of a Category A procedure; or

– extending the safe forced landing requirement beyond required distances (if data are available to permit the calculation of the distance for a safe forced landing from the DPATO).

It could be argued that the essential requirement for DPATO is contained in section (d)(2) – OEI obstacle clearance. From careful examination of the flight path reproduced in Figure 3 above, it may be reasonably deduced that DPATO is the point at which adequate climb performance is established (examination of Category A procedures would indicate that this could be (in terms of mass, speed and height above the take-off surface) the conditions at the start of the first or second segments – or any point between.)

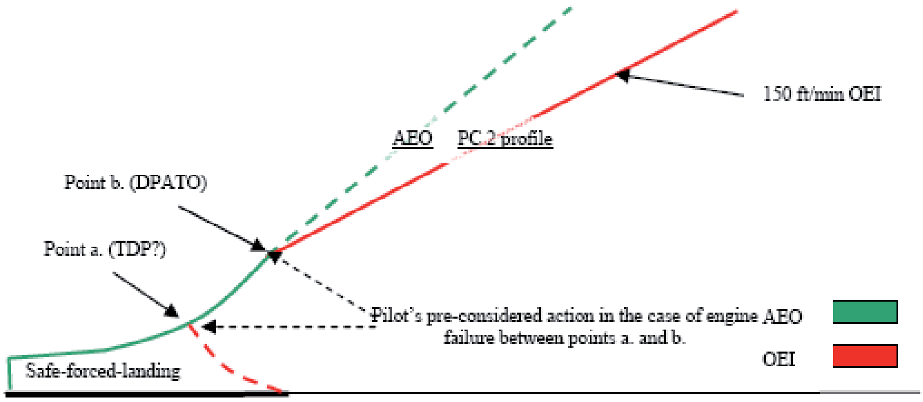
(The diagrams in Attachment A of ICAO Annex 6 do not appear to take account of drop down – permitted under Category A procedures; similarly with helideck departures, the potential for acceleration in drop down below deck level (once the deck edge has been cleared) is also not shown. These omissions could be regarded as a simplification of the diagram, as drop down is discussed and accepted in the accompanying ICAO text.)

It may reasonably be argued that, during the take-off and before reaching an appropriate climb speed (V_{TOSS} or V_y), V_{stayup} will already have been achieved (where V_{stayup} is the ability to continue the flight and accelerate without descent – shown in some Category A procedures as VT or target speed) and where, in the event of an engine failure, no landing would be required.

It is postulated that, to practically satisfy all the requirements of (d)(1), (2)and (3), DPATO does not need to be defined at one synchronised point; provisions can be met separately – i.e. defining the distance for a safe forced landing, and then establishing the OEI obstacle clearance flight path.

As the point at which the helicopter's ability to continue the flight safely, with the critical engine inoperative is the critical element, it is that for which DPATO is used in this text.

Figure 5: The three elements in a PC 2 take – off



(i) The three elements from the pilot's perspective

When seen from the pilot's perspective (see Figure 5), there are three elements of the PC 2 take-off – each with associated related actions which need to be considered in the case of an engine failure:

(A) action in the event of an engine failure – up to the point where a forced-landing will be required;

(B) action in the event of an engine failure – from the point where OEI obstacle clearance is established (DPATO); and

(C) pre-considered action in the event of an engine failure – in the period between (A) and (B)

The action of the pilot in (A) and (Bb) is deterministic, i.e. it remains the same for every occasion. For pre-consideration of the action at point (C), as is likely that the planned flight path will have to be abandoned (the point at which obstacle clearance using the OEI climb gradients not yet being reached), the pilot must (before take-off) have considered his/her options and the associated risks, and have in mind the course of action that will be pursued in the event of an engine failure during that short period. (As it is likely that any action will involve turning manoeuvres, the effect of turns on performance must be considered.)

(3) Take-off mass for performance class 2

As previously stated, performance class 2 is an AEO take-off that, from DPATO, has to meet the requirement for OEI obstacle clearance in the climb and en-route phases. Take-off mass is therefore the mass that gives at least the minimum climb performance of 150 ft/min at V_y, at 1 000 ft above the take-off point, and obstacle clearance.

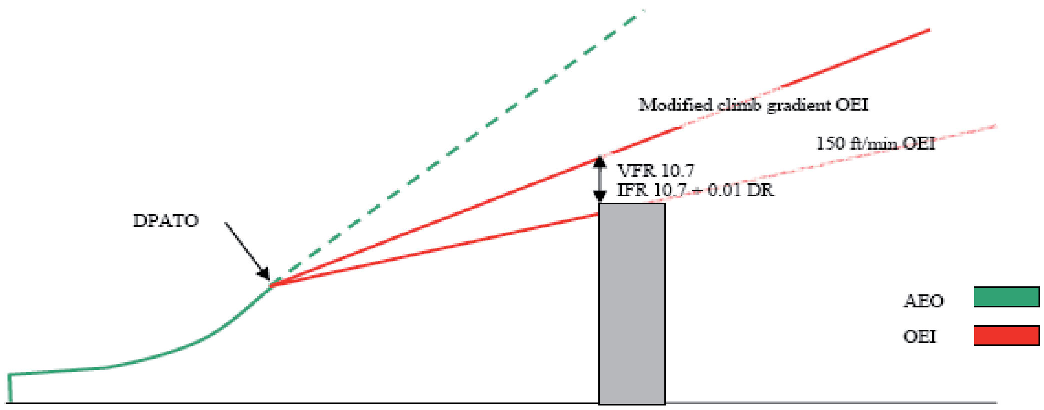
As can be seen in Figure 6 below, the take-off mass may have to be modified when it does not provide the required OEI clearance from obstacles in the take-off-flight path (exactly as in performance class 1). This could occur when taking off from an aerodrome/operating site where the flight path has to clear an obstacle such a ridge line (or line of buildings) that can neither be:

(i) flown around using VFR and see and avoid; nor

(ii) cleared using the minimum climb gradient given by the take-off mass (150 ft/min at 1 000 ft).

In this case, the take-off mass has to be modified (using data contained in the AFM) to give an appropriate climb gradient.

Figure 6: Performance Class 2 (enhanced climb gradient)



(4) Do distances have to be calculated?

Distances do not have to be calculated if, by using pilot judgement or standard practice, it can be established that:

(i) a safe forced landing is possible following an engine failure (notwithstanding that there might be obstacles in the take-off path); and

(ii) obstacles can be cleared (or avoided) – AEO in the take-off phase and OEI in the climb.

If early entry (in the sense of cloud base) into IMC is expected, an IFR departure should be planned. However, standard masses and departures can be used when described in the operations manual.

(5) The use of Category A data

In Category A procedures, TDP is the point at which either a rejected landing or a safe continuation of the flight, with OEI obstacle clearance, can be performed.

For PC2 (when using Category A data), only the safe forced landing (reject) distance depends on the equivalent of the TDP; if an engine fails between TDP and DPATO the pilot has to decide what action is required – it is not necessary for a safe forced landing distance to be established from beyond the equivalent of TDP (see Figure 5 and discussion in (f)(2)(ii)(A)).

Category A procedures based on a fixed V_{TOSS} are usually optimised either for the reduction of the rejected take-off distance, or the take-off distance. Category A procedures based on a variable V_{TOSS} allow either a reduction in required distances (low V_{TOSS}) or an improvement in OEI climb capability (high V_{TOSS}). These optimisations may be beneficial in PC2 to satisfy the dimensions of the take-off site.

In view of the different requirements for PC2 (from PC1), it is perfectly acceptable for the two calculations (one to establish the safe forced landing distance and the other to establish DPATO) to be based upon different Category A procedures. However, if this method is used, the mass resulting from the calculation cannot be more than the mass from the more limiting of the procedures.

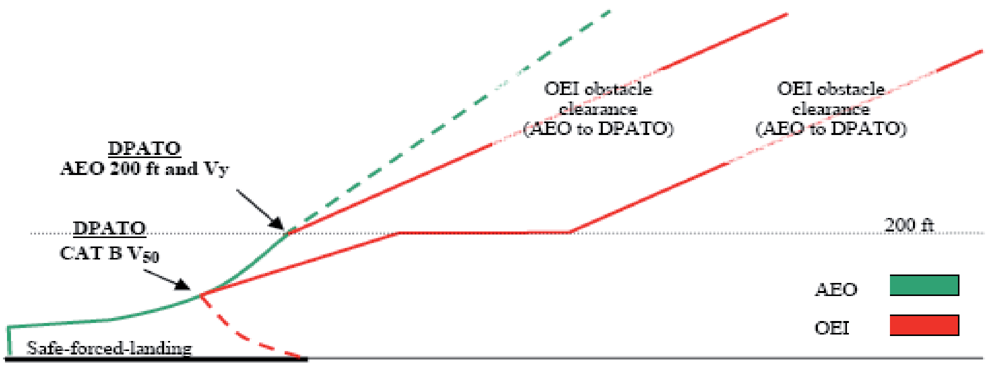
(6) DPATO and obstacle clearance

If it is necessary for OEI obstacle clearance to be established in the climb, the starting point (DPATO) for the (obstacle clearance) gradient has to be established. Once DPATO is defined, the OEI obstacle clearance is relatively easy to calculate with data from the AFM.

(i) DPATO based on AEO distance

In the simplest case; if provided, the scheduled AEO to 200 ft at V_y can be used (see Figure 7).

Figure 7: Suggested AEO locations for DPATO

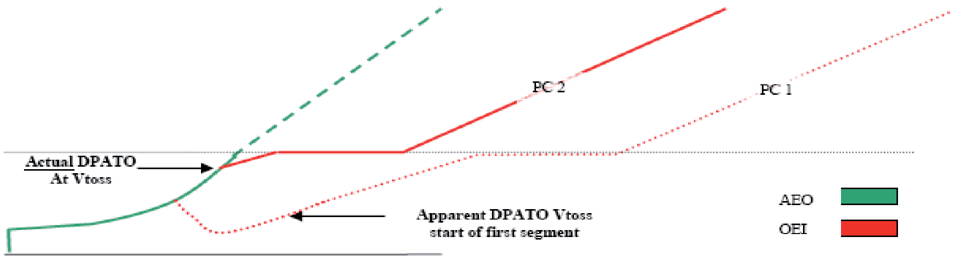


Otherwise, and if scheduled in the AFM, the AEO distance to 50 ft (V_{50}) – determined in accordance with CS/JAR 29.63 – can be used (see Figure 7). Where this distance is used, it will be necessary to ensure that the V_{50} climb out speed is associated with a speed and mass for which OEI climb data is available so that, from V_{50}, the OEI flight path can be constructed.

(ii) DPATO based on Category A distances

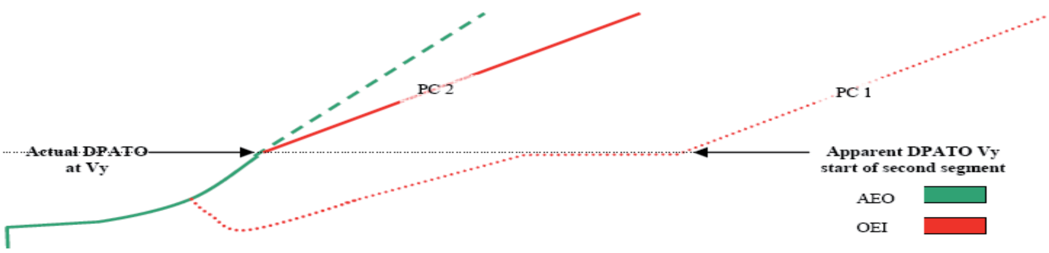
It is not necessary for specific AEO distances to be used (although for obvious reasons it is preferable); if they are not available, a flight path (with OEI obstacle clearance) can be established using Category A distances (see Figure 8 and Figure 9) – which will then be conservative.

Figure 8: Using Cat A data; actual and apparent position of DPATO (Vtoss and start of first segment)



The apparent DPATO is for planning purposes only in the case where AEO data are not available to construct the take-off flight path. The actual OEI flight path will provide better obstacle clearance than the apparent one (used to demonstrate the minimum requirement) – as seen from the firm and dashed lines in the above figure.

Figure 9: Using Cat A data; actual and apparent position of DPATO (Vy and start of second segment)



(iii) Use of most favourable Category A data

The use of AEO data is recommended for calculating DPATO. However, where an AEO distance is not provided in the flight manual, distance to V_y at 200 ft, from the most favourable of the Category A procedures, can be used to construct a flight path (provided it can be demonstrated that AEO distance to 200 ft at V_y is always closer to the take-off point than the CAT A OEI flight path).

In order to satisfy the requirement of CAT.POL.H.315, the last point from where the start of OEI obstacle clearance can be shown is at 200 ft.

(7) The calculation of DPATO – a summary

DPATO should be defined in terms of speed and height above the take-off surface and should be selected such that AFM data (or equivalent data) are available to establish the distance from the start of the take-off up to the DPATO (conservatively if necessary).

(i) First method

DPATO is selected as the AFM Category B take-off distance (V_{50} speed or any other take-off distance scheduled in accordance with CS/JAR 29.63) provided that within the distance the helicopter can achieve:

(A) one of the V_{TOSS} values (or the unique V_{TOSS} value if it is not variable) provided in the AFM, selected so as to assure a climb capability according to Category A criteria; or

(B) V_y.

Compliance with CAT.POL.H.315 would be shown from V_{50} (or the scheduled Category B take-off distance).

(ii) Second method

DPATO is selected as equivalent to the TDP of a Category A 'clear area' take-off procedure conducted in the same conditions.

Compliance with CAT.POL.H.315 would be shown from the point at which V_{TOSS}, a height of at least 35 ft above the take-off surface and a positive climb gradient are achieved (which is the Category A 'clear area' take-off distance).

Safe forced landing areas should be available from the start of the take-off, to a distance equal to the Category A 'clear area' rejected take-off distance.

(iii) Third method

As an alternative, DPATO could be selected such that AFM OEI data are available to establish a flight path initiated with a climb at that speed. This speed should then be:

(A) one of the V_{TOSS} values (or the unique V_{TOSS} value if it is not variable) provided in the AFM, selected so as to assure a climb capability according to Category A criteria; or

(B) V_y

The height of the DPATO should be at least 35 ft and can be selected up to 200 ft. Compliance with CAT.POL.H.315 would be shown from the selected height.

(8) Safe forced landing distance

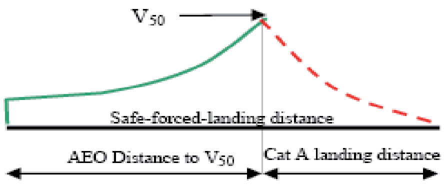
Except as provided in (f)(7)(ii), the establishment of the safe forced landing distance could be problematical as it is not likely that PC2 specific data will be available in the AFM.

By definition, the Category A reject distance may be used when the surface is not suitable for a reject, but may be satisfactory for a safe forced landing (for example where the surface is flooded or is covered with vegetation).

Any Category A (or other accepted) data may be used to establish the distance. However, once established it remains valid only if the Category A mass (or the mass from the accepted data) is used and the Category A (or accepted) AEO profile to the TDP is flown. In view of these constraints, the likeliest Category A procedures are the clear area or the short field (restricted area/site) procedures.

From Figure 10, it can be seen that if the Category B V_{50} procedure is used to establish DPATO, the combination of the distance to 50 ft and the Category A 'clear area' landing distance, required by CS/JAR 29.81 (the horizontal distance required to land and come to a complete stop from a point 50 ft above the landing surface), will give a good indication of the maximum safe forced landing distance required (see also the explanation on V_{stayup} above).

Figure 10: Category B (V_{50}) safe – forced – landing distance



(9) Performance class 2 landing

For other than PC2 operations to elevated FATOs or helidecks (see section (g)(4)(i)), the principles for the landing case are much simpler. As the performance requirements for PC1 and PC2 landings are virtually identical, the condition of the landing surface is the main issue.

If the engine fails at any time during the approach, the helicopter must be able either: to perform a go-around meeting the requirements of CAT.POL.H.315; or perform a safe forced landing on the surface. In view of this, and if using PC1 data, the LDP should not be lower that the corresponding TDP (particularly in the case of a variable TDP).

The landing mass will be identical to the take-off mass for the same site (with consideration for any reduction due to obstacle clearance – as shown in Figure 6 above).

In the case of a balked landing (i.e. the landing site becomes blocked or unavailable during the approach), the full requirement for take-off obstacle clearance must be met.

(g) Operations in performance class 2 with exposure

The Implementing Rules offer an opportunity to discount the requirement for an assured safe forced landing area in the take-off or landing phase – subject to an approval from the competent authority. The following sections deals with this option:

(1) Limit of exposure

As stated above, performance class 2 has to ensure AEO obstacle clearance to DPATO and OEI obstacle clearance from that point. This does not change with the application of exposure.

It can therefore be stated that operations with exposure are concerned only with alleviation from the requirement for the provision of a safe forced landing.

The absolute limit of exposure is 200 ft – from which point OEI obstacle clearance must be shown.

(2) The principle of risk assessment

ICAO Annex 6 Part III Chapter 3.1.2 states that:

"3.1.2 In conditions where the safe continuation of flight is not ensured in the event of a critical engine failure, helicopter operations shall be conducted in a manner that gives appropriate consideration for achieving a safe forced landing."

Although a safe forced landing may no longer be the (absolute) Standard, it is considered that risk assessment is obligatory to satisfy the amended requirement for 'appropriate consideration'.

Risk assessment used for fulfilment of this proposed Standard is consistent with principles described in 'AS/NZS 4360:1999'. Terms used in this text and defined in the AS/NZS Standard are shown in Sentence Case e.g. risk assessment or risk reduction.

(3) The application of risk assessment to performance class 2

Under circumstances where no risk attributable to engine failure (beyond that inherent in the safe forced landing) is present, operations in performance class 2 may be conducted in accordance with the non-alleviated requirements contained above – and a safe forced landing will be possible.

Under circumstances where such risk would be present, i.e. operations to an elevated FATO (deck edge strike); or, when permitted, operations from a site where a safe forced landing cannot be accomplished because the surface is inadequate; or where there is penetration into the HV curve for a short period during take-off or landing (a limitation in CS/JAR 29 AFMs), operations have to be conducted under a specific approval.

Provided such operations are risk assessed and can be conducted to an established safety target – they may be approved in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305.

(i) The elements of the risk management

The approval process consists of an operational risk assessment and the application of four principles:

(A) a safety target;

(B) a helicopter reliability assessment;

(C) continuing airworthiness; and

(D) mitigating procedures.

(ii) The safety target

The main element of the risk assessment when exposure was initially introduced by the JAA into JAR-OPS 3 (NPA OPS-8), was the assumption that turbine engines in helicopters would have failure rates of about 1:100 000 per flying hour, which would permit (against the agreed safety target of 5 x 10-8 per event) an exposure of about 9 seconds for twins during the take-off or landing event. (When choosing this target it was assumed that the majority of current well maintained turbine powered helicopters would be capable of meeting the event target – it therefore represents the residual risk).

(Residual risk is considered to be the risk that remains when all mitigating procedures – airworthiness and operational – are applied (see sections (g)(3)(iv) and (g)(3)(v))).

(iii) The reliability assessment

The reliability assessment was initiated to test the hypothesis (stated in (g)(3)(ii)) that the majority of turbine powered types would be able to meet the safety target. This hypothesis could only be confirmed by an examination of the manufacturers' power-loss data.

(iv) Mitigating procedures (airworthiness)

Mitigating procedures consist of a number of elements:

(A) the fulfilment of all manufacturers' safety modifications;

(B) a comprehensive reporting system (both failures and usage data); and

(C) the implementation of a usage monitoring system (UMS).

Each of these elements is to ensure that engines, once shown to be sufficiently reliable to meet the safety target, will sustain such reliability (or improve upon it).

The monitoring system is felt to be particularly important as it had already been demonstrated that when such systems are in place it inculcates a more considered approach to operations. In addition the elimination of 'hot starts', prevented by the UMS, itself minimises the incidents of turbine burst failures.

(v) Mitigating procedures (operations)

Operational and training procedures, to mitigate the risk – or minimise the consequences – are required of the operator. Such procedures are intended to minimise risk by ensuring that:

(A) the helicopter is operated within the exposed region for the minimum time; and

(B) simple but effective procedures are followed to minimise the consequence should an engine failure occur.

(4) Operation with exposure

When operating with exposure, there is alleviation from the requirement to establish a safe forced landing area (which extends to landing as well as take-off). However, the requirement for obstacle clearance – AEO in the take-off and from DPATO OEI in the climb and en-route phases – remains (both for take-off and landing).

The take-off mass is obtained from the more limiting of the following:

– the climb performance of 150 ft/min at 1 000 ft above the take-off point; or

– obstacle clearance (in accordance with (f)(3) above); or

– AEO hover out of ground effect (HOGE) performance at the appropriate power setting. (AEO HOGE is required to ensure acceleration when (near) vertical dynamic take-off techniques are being used. Additionally for elevated FATO or helidecks, it ensures a power reserve to offset ground cushion dissipation; and ensures that, during the landing manoeuvre, a stabilised HOGE is available – should it be required.)

(i) Operations to elevated FATOs or helidecks

PC2 operations to elevated FATOs and helidecks are a specific case of operations with exposure. In these operations, the alleviation covers the possibility of:

(A) a deck-edge strike if the engine fails early in the take-off or late in the landing;

(B) penetration into the HV Curve during take-off and landing; and

(C) forced landing with obstacles on the surface (hostile water conditions) below the elevated FATO (helideck). The take-of mass is as stated above and relevant techniques are as described in GM1 CAT.POL.H.310(c)&CAT.POL.H.325(c).

It is unlikely that the DPATO will have to be calculated with operations to helidecks (due to the absence of obstacles in the take-off path).

(ii) Additional requirements for operations to helidecks in a hostile environment

For a number of reasons (e.g. the deck size, and the helideck environment – including obstacles and wind vectors), it was not anticipated that operations in PC1 would be technically feasible or economically justifiable by the projected JAA deadline of 2010 (OEI HOGE could have provided a method of compliance but this would have resulted in a severe and unwarranted restriction on payload/range).

However, due to the severe consequences of an engine failure to helicopters involved in take-off and landings to helidecks located in hostile sea areas (such as the North Sea or the North Atlantic), a policy of risk reduction is called for. As a result, enhanced class 2 take-off and landing masses together with techniques that provide a high confidence of safety due to:

(A) deck-edge avoidance; and

(B) drop-down that provides continued flight clear of the sea,

are seen as practical measures.

For helicopters which have a Category A elevated helideck procedure, certification is satisfied by demonstrating a procedure and adjusted masses (adjusted for wind as well as temperature and pressure) that assure a 15 ft deck edge clearance on take-off and landing. It is therefore recommended that manufacturers, when providing enhanced PC2 procedures, use the provision of this deck-edge clearance as their benchmark.

As the height of the helideck above the sea is a variable, drop down has to be calculated; once clear of the helideck, a helicopter operating in PC1 would be expected to meet the 35 ft obstacle clearance. Under circumstances other than open sea areas and with less complex environmental conditions, this would not present difficulties. As the provision of drop down takes no account of operational circumstances, standard drop down graphs for enhanced PC2 – similar to those in existence for Category A procedures – are anticipated.

Under conditions of offshore operations, calculation of drop down is not a trivial matter – the following examples indicate some of the problems which might be encountered in hostile environments:

(A) Occasions when tide is not taken into account and the sea is running irregularly – the level of the obstacle (i.e. the sea) is indefinable making a true calculation of drop down impossible.

(B) Occasions when it would not be possible – for operational reasons – for the approach and departure paths to be clear of obstacles – the 'standard' calculation of drop-down could not be applied.

Under these circumstances, practicality indicates that drop-down should be based upon the height of the deck AMSL and the 35 ft clearance should be applied.

There are however, other and more complex issues which will also affect the deck-edge clearance and drop down calculations:

(C) When operating to moving decks on vessels, a recommended landing or take-off profile might not be possible because the helicopter might have to hover alongside in order that the rise and fall of the ship is mentally mapped; or, on take-off re-landing in the case of an engine failure might not be an option.

Under these circumstances, the commander might adjust the profiles to address a hazard more serious or more likely than that presented by an engine failure.

It is because of these and other (unforeseen) circumstances that a prescriptive requirement is not used. However, the target remains a 15 ft deck-edge clearance and a 35 ft obstacle clearance and data should be provided such that, where practically possible, these clearances can be planned.

As accident/incident history indicates that the main hazard is collision with obstacles on the helideck due to human error, simple and reproducible take-off and landing procedures are recommended.

In view of the reasons stated above, the future requirement for PC1 was replaced by the new requirement that the take-off mass takes into account:

– the procedure;

– deck-edge miss; and

– drop down appropriate to the height of the helideck.

This will require calculation of take-off mass from information produced by manufacturers reflecting these elements. It is expected that such information will be produced by performance modelling/simulation using a model validated through limited flight testing.

(iii) Operations to helidecks for helicopters with a maximum operational passenger seating configuration (MOPSC) of more than 19

The original requirement for operations of helicopters with an MOPSC of more than 19 was PC1 (as set out in CAT.POL.H.100 (b)(2)).

However, when operating to helidecks, the problems enumerated in (g)(4)(ii) above are equally applicable to these helicopters. In view of this, but taking into account that increased numbers are (potentially) being carried, such operations are permitted in PC2 (CAT.POL.H.100 (b)(2)) but, in all helideck environments (both hostile and non-hostile), have to satisfy, the additional requirements, set out in (g)(4)(ii) above.

CAT.POL.H.300 General

Helicopters operated in performance class 2 shall be certified in Category A or equivalent as determined by the Agency.

See **GM1 CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400 General.**

CAT.POL.H.305 Operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

(a) Operations without an assured safe forced landing capability during the take-off and landing phases shall only be conducted if the operator has been granted an approval by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain and maintain such approval the operator shall:

(1) conduct a risk assessment, specifying:

(i) the type of helicopter; and

(ii) the type of operations;

(2) implement the following set of conditions:

(i) attain and maintain the helicopter/engine modification standard defined by the manufacturer;

(ii) conduct the preventive maintenance actions recommended by the helicopter or engine manufacturer;

(iii) include take-off and landing procedures in the operations manual, where they do not already exist in the AFM;

(iv) specify training for flight crew; and

(v) provide a system for reporting to the manufacturer loss of power, engine shutdown or engine failure events;

and

(3) implement a usage monitoring system (UMS).

AMC1 CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

ENGINE RELIABILITY STATISTICS

(a) As part of the risk assessment prior to granting an approval under CAT.POL.H.305, the operator should provide appropriate engine reliability statistics available for the helicopter type and the engine type.

(b) Except in the case of new engines, such data should show sudden power loss from the set of in-flight shutdown (IFSD) events not exceeding 1 per 100 000 engine hours in a 5 year moving window. However, a rate in excess of this value, but not exceeding 3 per 100 000 engine hours, may be accepted by the competent authority after an assessment showing an improving trend.

(c) New engines should be assessed on a case-by-case basis.

(d) After the initial assessment, updated statistics should be periodically reassessed; any adverse sustained trend will require an immediate evaluation to be accomplished by the operator in consultation with the competent authority and the manufacturers concerned. The evaluation may result in corrective action or operational restrictions being applied.

(e) The purpose of this paragraph is to provide guidance on how the in-service power plant sudden power loss rate is determined.

(1) Share of roles between the helicopter and engine type certificate holders (TCH)

(i) The provision of documents establishing the in-service sudden power loss rate for the helicopter/engine installation; the interface with the operational authority of the State of the operator should be the engine TCH or the helicopter TCH depending on the way they share the corresponding analysis work.

(ii) The engine TCH should provide the helicopter TCH with a document including: the list of in-service power loss events, the applicability factor for each event (if used), and the assumptions made on the efficiency of any corrective actions implemented (if used).

(iii) The engine or helicopter TCH should provide the operational authority of the State of the operator, with a document that details the calculation results – taking into account the following:

(A) events caused by the engine and the events caused by the engine installation;

(B) applicability factor for each event (if used), the assumptions made on the efficiency of any corrective actions implemented on the engine and on the helicopter (if used); and

(C) calculation of the power plant power loss rate.

(2) Documentation

The following documentation should be updated every year:

(i) the document with detailed methodology and calculation as distributed to the authority of the State of design;

(ii) a summary document with results of computation as made available on request to any operational authority; and

(iii) a service letter establishing the eligibility for such operation and defining the corresponding required configuration as provided to the operators.

(3) Definition of 'sudden in-service power loss'

Sudden in-service power loss is an engine power loss:

(i) larger than 30 % of the take-off power;

(ii) occurring during operation; and

(iii) without the occurrence of an early intelligible warning to inform and give sufficient time for the pilot to take any appropriate action.

(4) Database documentation

Each power loss event should be documented, by the engine and/or helicopter TCHs, as follows:

(i) incident report number;

(ii) engine type;

(iii) engine serial number;

(iv) helicopter serial number;

(v) date;

(vi) event type (demanded IFSD, un-demanded IFSD);

(vii) presumed cause;

(viii) applicability factor when used; and

(ix) reference and assumed efficiency of the corrective actions that will have to be applied (if any).

(5) Counting methodology

Various methodologies for counting engine power loss rate have been accepted by authorities. The following is an example of one of these methodologies.

(i) The events resulting from:

(A) unknown causes (wreckage not found or totally destroyed, undocumented or unproven statements);

(B) where the engine or the elements of the engine installation have not been investigated (for example when the engine has not been returned by the customer); or

(C) an unsuitable or non-representative use (operation or maintenance) of the helicopter or the engine,

are not counted as engine in-service sudden power loss and the applicability factor is 0 %.

(ii) The events caused by:

(A) the engine or the engine installation; or

(B) the engine or helicopter maintenance, when the applied maintenance was compliant with the maintenance manuals,

are counted as engine in-service sudden power loss and the applicability factor is 100 %.

(iii) For the events where the engine or an element of the engine installation has been submitted for investigation but where this investigation subsequently failed to define a presumed cause, the applicability factor is 50 %.

(6) Efficiency of corrective actions.

The corrective actions made by the engine and helicopter manufacturers on the definition or maintenance of the engine or its installation may be defined as mandatory for specific operations. In this case the associated reliability improvement may be considered as a mitigating factor for the event.

A factor defining the efficiency of the corrective action may be applied to the applicability factor of the concerned event.

(7) Method of calculation of the powerplant power loss rate

The detailed method of calculation of the powerplant power loss rate should be documented by engine or helicopter TCH and accepted by the relevant authority.

AMC2 CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

IMPLEMENTATION OF THE SET OF CONDITIONS

To obtain an approval under CAT.POL.H.305 (a), the operator conducting operations without an assured safe forced landing capability should implement the following:

(a) Attain and then maintain the helicopter/engine modification standard defined by the manufacturer that has been designated to enhance reliability during the take-off and landing phases.

(b) Conduct the preventive maintenance actions recommended by the helicopter or engine manufacturer as follows:

(1) engine oil spectrometric and debris analysis – as appropriate;

(2) engine trend monitoring, based on available power assurance checks;

(3) engine vibration analysis (plus any other vibration monitoring systems where fitted); and

(4) oil consumption monitoring.

(c) The usage monitoring system should fulfil at least the following:

(1) Recording of the following data:

(i) date and time of recording, or a reliable means of establishing these parameters;

(ii) amount of flight hours recorded during the day plus total flight time;

(iii) N1 (gas producer RPM) cycle count;

(iv) N2 (power turbine RPM) cycle count (if the engine features a free turbine);

(v) turbine temperature exceedance: value, duration;

(vi) power-shaft torque exceedance: value, duration (if a torque sensor is fitted);

(vii) engine shafts speed exceedance: value, duration.

(2) Data storage of the above parameters, if applicable, covering the maximum flight time in a day, and not less than 5 flight hours, with an appropriate sampling interval for each parameter.

(3) The system should include a comprehensive self-test function with a malfunction indicator and a detection of power-off or sensor input disconnection.

(4) A means should be available for downloading and analysis of the recorded parameters. Frequency of downloading should be sufficient to ensure data is not lost through over-writing.

(5) The analysis of parameters gathered by the usage monitoring system, the frequency of such analysis and subsequent maintenance actions should be described in the maintenance documentation.

(6) The data should be stored in an acceptable form and accessible to the competent authority for at least 24 months.

(d) The training for flight crew should include the discussion, demonstration, use and practice of the techniques necessary to minimise the risks.

(e) Report to the manufacturer any loss of power control, engine shutdown (precautionary or otherwise) or engine failure for any cause (excluding simulation of engine failure during training). The content of each report should provide:

(1) date and time;

(2) operator (and maintenance organisations where relevant);

(3) type of helicopter and description of operations;

(4) registration and serial number of airframe;

(5) engine type and serial number;

(6) power unit modification standard where relevant to failure;

(7) engine position;

(8) symptoms leading up to the event;

(9) circumstances of engine failure including phase of flight or ground operation;

(10) consequences of the event;

(11) weather/environmental conditions;

(12) reason for engine failure – if known;

(13) in case of an in-flight shutdown (IFSD), nature of the IFSD (demanded/un-demanded);

(14) procedure applied and any comment regarding engine restart potential;

(15) engine hours and cycles (from new and last overhaul);

(16) airframe flight hours;

(17) rectification actions applied including, if any, component changes with part number and serial number of the removed equipment; and

(18) any other relevant information.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.305(b) Helicopter operations without an assured safe forced landing capability

USE OF FULL AUTHORITY DIGITAL ENGINE CONTROL (FADEC)

Current technology increasingly allows for the recording function required in (c)(1) of AMC2 CAT.POL.H.305(b) to be incorporated in the full authority digital engine control (FADEC).

Where a FADEC is capable of recording some of the parameters required by (c)(1) of AMC2 CAT.POL.H.305(b) it is not intended that the recording of the parameters is to be duplicated.

Providing that the functions as set out in (c) of AMC2 CAT.POL.H.305(b)are satisfied, the FADEC may partially, or in whole, fulfil the requirement for recording and storing parameters in a usage monitoring system.

CAT.POL.H.310 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum mass specified for a rate of climb of 150 ft/min at 300 m (1 000 ft) above the level of the aerodrome or operating site with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engine(s) operating at an appropriate power rating.

(b) For operations other than those specified in CAT.POL.H.305, the take-off shall be conducted such that a safe forced landing can be executed until the point where safe continuation of the flight is possible.

(c) For operations in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305, in addition to the requirements of (a):

(1) the take-off mass shall not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for an all engines operative out of ground effect (AEO OGE) hover in still air with all engines operating at an appropriate power rating; or

(2) for operations from a helideck:

(i) with a helicopter that has an MOPSC of more than 19; or

(ii) any helicopter operated from a helideck located in a hostile environment,

the take-off mass shall take into account: the procedure; deck-edge miss and drop down appropriate to the height of the helideck with the critical engine(s) inoperative and the remaining engines operating at an appropriate power rating.

(d) When showing compliance with (a) to (c), account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105 (c) at the point of departure.

(e) That part of the take-off before the requirement of CAT.POL.H.315 is met shall be conducted in sight of the surface.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.310&CAT.POL.H.325 Take-off and landing

TAKE-OFF AND LANDING TECHNIQUES

(a) This GM describes three types of operation to/from helidecks and elevated FATOs by helicopters operating in performance class 2.

(b) In two cases of take-off and landing, exposure time is used. During the exposure time (which is only approved for use when complying with CAT.POL.H.305) the probability of an engine failure is regarded as extremely remote. If an engine failure occurs during the exposure time a safe forced landing may not be possible.

(c) Take-off – non-hostile environment (without an approval to operate with an exposure time) CAT.POL.H.310 (b).

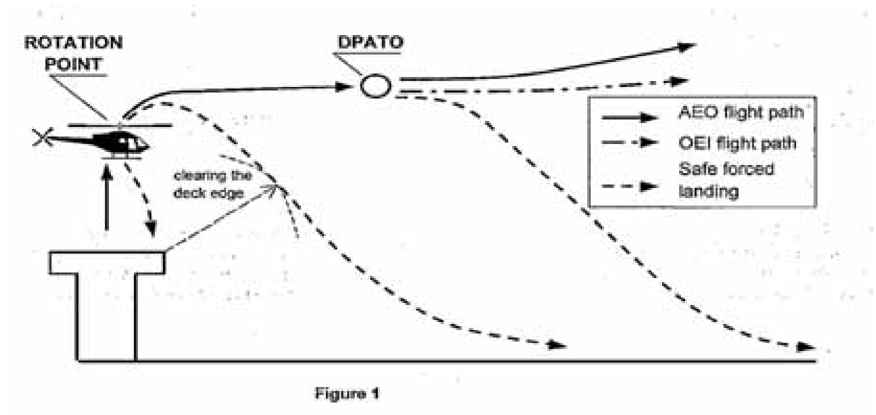
(1) Figure 1 shows a typical take-off profile for performance class 2 operations from a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment.

(2) If an engine failure occurs during the climb to the rotation point, compliance with CAT.POL.H.310 (b) will enable a safe landing or a safe forced landing on the deck.

(3) If an engine failure occurs between the rotation point and the DPATO, compliance with CAT.POL.H.310 (b) will enable a safe forced landing on the surface, clearing the deck edge.

(4) At or after the DPATO, the OEI flight path should clear all obstacles by the margins specified in CAT.POL.H.315.

Figure 1: Typical take-off profile PC2 from a helideck/elevated FATO, non-hostile environment



(d) Take-off – non-hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.310(c)

(1) Figure 2 shows a typical take-off profile for performance class 2 operations from a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment (with exposure time).

(2) If an engine failure occurs after the exposure time and before DPATO, compliance with CAT.POL.H.310 (c) will enable a safe forced landing on the surface.

(3) At or after the DPATO, the OEI flight path should clear all obstacles by the margins specified in CAT.POL.H.315.

Figure 2: Typical take-off profile PC2 from a helideck/elevated FATO with exposure time, non-hostile environment

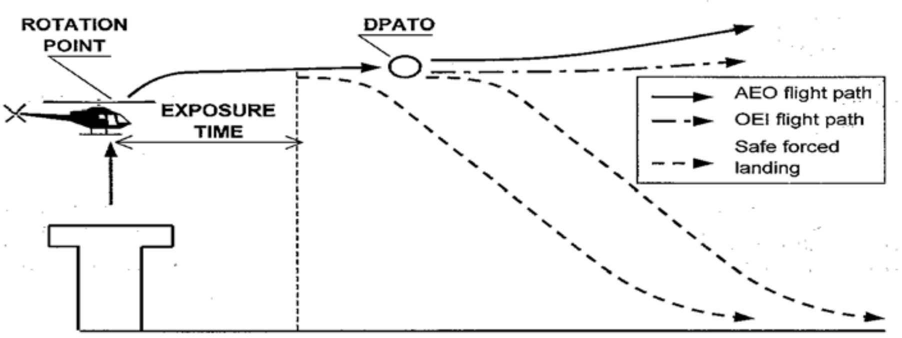


Figure 2

(e) Take-off – non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.310 (c)

(1) Figure 3 shows a typical take off profile for performance class 2 operations from a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time).

(2) If an engine failure occurs after the exposure time the helicopter is capable of a safe forced landing or safe continuation of the flight.

(3) At or after the DPATO, the OEI flight path should clear all obstacles by the margins specified in CAT. POL.H.315.

Figure 3: Typical take-off profile PC2 from a helideck/elevated FATO, non-congested hostile environment

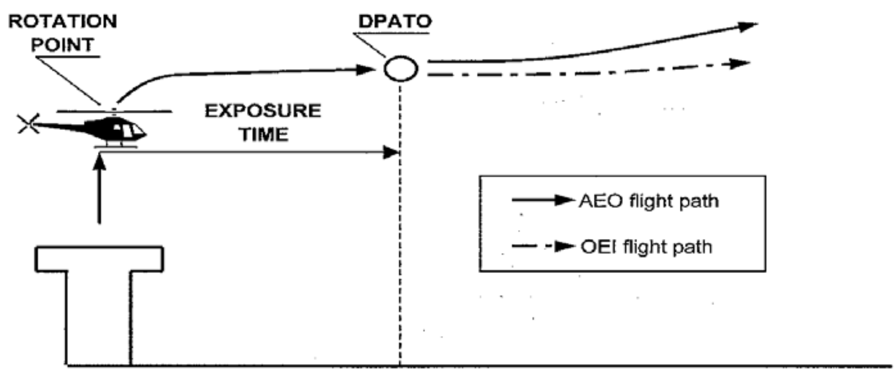


Figure 3

(f) Landing – non-hostile environment (without an approval to operate with an exposure time) CAT. POL.H.325 (b)

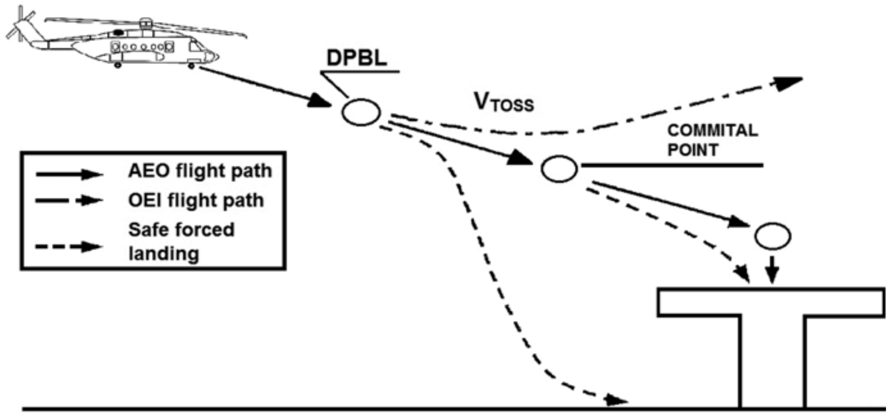
(1) Figure 4 shows a typical landing profile for performance class 2 operations to a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment.

(2) The DPBL is defined as a 'window' in terms of airspeed, rate of descent, and height above the landing surface. If an engine failure occurs before the DPBL, the pilot may elect to land or to execute a balked landing.

(3) In the event of an engine failure being recognised after the DPBL and before the committal point, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (b) will enable a safe forced landing on the surface.

(4) In the event of an engine failure at or after the committal point, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (b) will enable a safe forced landing on the deck.

Figure 4: Typical landing profile PC2 to a helideck/elevated FATO, non-hostile environment



(g) Landing – non-hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.325 (c)

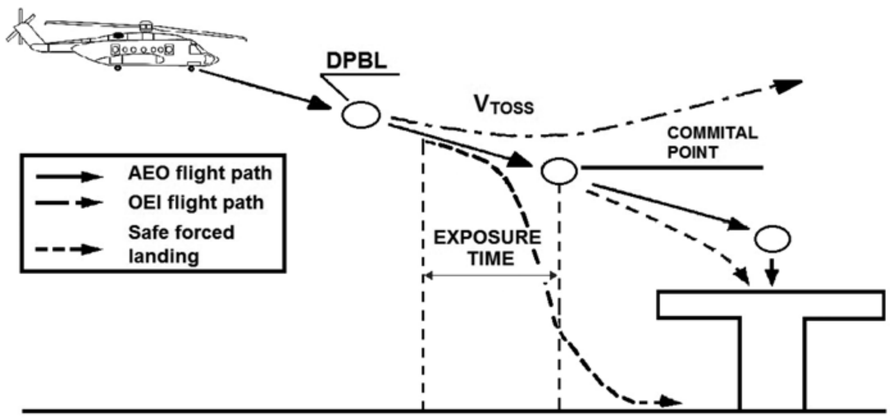
(1) Figure 5 shows a typical landing profile for performance class 2 operations to a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-hostile environment (with exposure time).

(2) The DPBL is defined as a 'window' in terms of airspeed, rate of descent, and height above the landing surface. If an engine failure occurs before the DPBL, the pilot may elect to land or to execute a balked landing.

(3) In the event of an engine failure being recognised before the exposure time compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (c) will enable a safe forced landing on the surface.

(4) In the event of an engine failure after the exposure time, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (c) will enable a safe forced landing on the deck.

Figure 5: Typical landing profile PC2 to a helideck/elevated FATO with exposure time, non-hostile environment



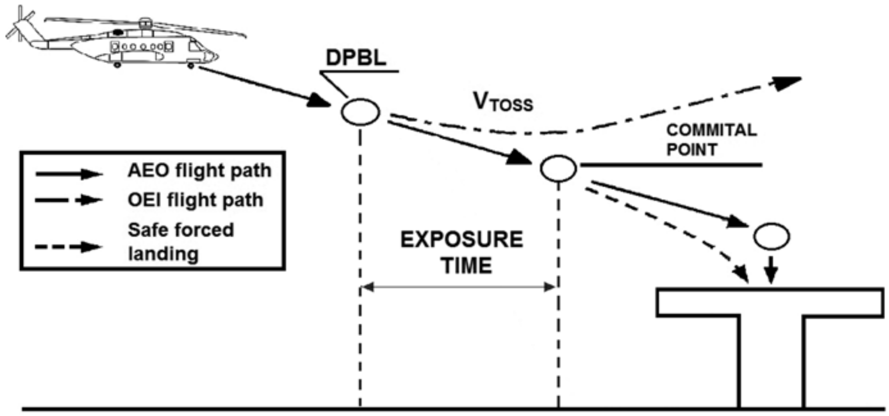
(h) Landing – non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time) CAT.POL.H.325 (c)

(1) Figure 6 shows a typical landing profile for performance class 2 operations to a helideck or an elevated FATO in a non-congested hostile environment (with exposure time).

(2) In the event of an engine failure at any point during the approach and landing phase up to the start of exposure time, compliance with CAT.POL.H.325 (b) will enable the helicopter, after clearing all obstacles under the flight path, to continue the flight.

(3) In the event of an engine failure after the exposure time (i.e. at or after the committal point), a safe forced landing should be possible on the deck.

Figure 6: Typical landing profile PC2 to a helideck/elevated FATO with exposure time, non-congested hostile environment



GM1 CAT.POL.H.310(c)&CAT.POL.H.325(c) Take-off and landing

PROCEDURE FOR CONTINUED OPERATIONS TO HELIDECKS

(a) Factors to be considered when taking off from or landing on a helideck

(1) In order to take account of the considerable number of variables associated with the helideck environment, each take-off and landing may require a slightly different profile. Factors such as helicopter mass and centre of gravity, wind velocity, turbulence, deck size, deck elevation and orientation, obstructions, power margins, platform gas turbine exhaust plumes etc., will influence both the take-off and landing. In particular, for the landing, additional considerations such as the need for a clear go-around flight path, visibility and cloud base etc., will affect the commander's decision on the choice of landing profile. Profiles may be modified, taking account of the relevant factors noted above and the characteristics of individual helicopter types.

(b) Performance

(1) To perform the following take-off and landing profiles, adequate all engines operating (AEO) hover performance at the helideck is required. In order to provide a minimum level of performance, data (derived from the AFM AEO out of ground effect (OGE)) should be used to provide the maximum take-off or landing mass. Where a helideck is affected by downdrafts or turbulence or hot gases, or where the take-off or landing profile is obstructed, or the approach or take-off cannot be made into wind, it may be necessary to decrease this take-off or landing mass by using a suitable calculation method. The helicopter mass should not exceed that required by CAT.POL.H.310 (a) or CAT.POL.H.325 (a).

(For helicopter types no longer supported by the manufacturer, data may be established by the operator, provided they are acceptable to the competent authority.)

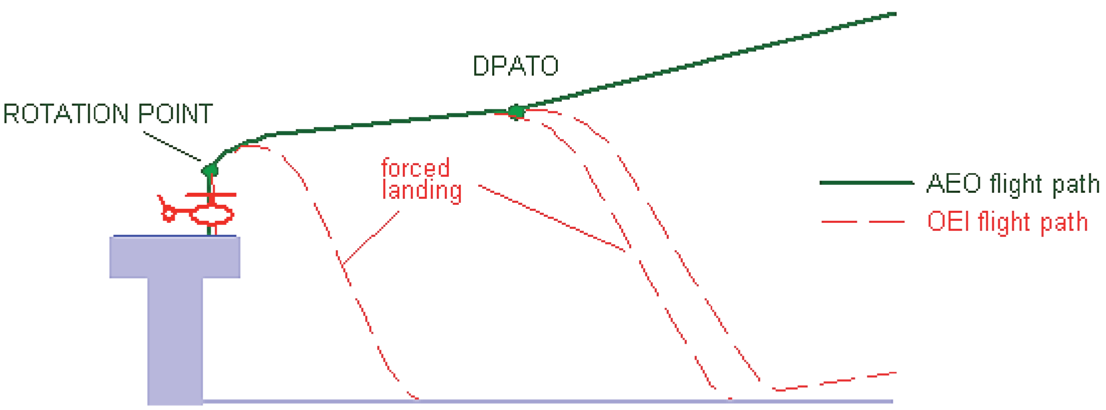
(c) Take-off profile

(1) The take-off should be performed in a dynamic manner ensuring that the helicopter continuously moves vertically from the hover to the rotation point (RP) and thence into forward flight. If the manoeuvre is too dynamic then there is an increased risk of losing spatial awareness (through loss of visual cues) in the event of a rejected take-off, particularly at night.

(2) If the transition to forward flight is too slow, the helicopter is exposed to an increased risk of contacting the deck edge in the event of an engine failure at or just after the point of cyclic input (RP).

(3) It has been found that the climb to RP is best made between 110 % and 120 % of the power required in the hover. This power offers a rate of climb that assists with deck-edge clearance following engine failure at RP, whilst minimising ballooning following a failure before RP. Individual types will require selection of different values within this range.

Figure 1: Take-off profile



(d) Selection of a lateral visual cue

(1) In order to obtain the maximum performance in the event of an engine failure being recognised at or just after RP, the RP should be at its optimum value, consistent with maintaining the necessary visual cues. If an engine failure is recognised just before RP, the helicopter, if operating at a low mass, may 'balloon' a significant height before the reject action has any effect. It is, therefore, important that the pilot flying selects a lateral visual marker and maintains it until the RP is

achieved, particularly on decks with few visual cues. In the event of a rejected take-off, the lateral marker will be a vital visual cue in assisting the pilot to carry out a successful landing.

(e) Selection of the rotation point

(1) The optimum RP should be selected to ensure that the take-off path will continue upwards and away from the deck with AEO, but minimising the possibility of hitting the deck edge due to the height loss in the event of an engine failure at or just after RP.

(2) The optimum RP may vary from type to type. Lowering the RP will result in a reduced deck edge clearance in the event of an engine failure being recognised at or just after RP. Raising the RP will result in possible loss of visual cues, or a hard landing in the event of an engine failure just prior to RP.

(f) Pilot reaction times

(1) Pilot reaction time is an important factor affecting deck edge clearance in the event of an engine failure prior to or at RP. Simulation has shown that a delay of 1 second can result in a loss of up to 15 ft in deck edge clearance.

(g) Variation of wind speed

(1) Relative wind is an important parameter in the achieved take-off path following an engine failure; wherever practicable, take-off should be made into wind. Simulation has shown that a 10 kt wind can give an extra 5 ft deck edge clearance compared to a zero wind condition.

(h) Position of the helicopter relative to the deck edge

(1) It is important to position the helicopter as close to the deck edge (including safety nets) as possible whilst maintaining sufficient visual cues, particularly a lateral marker.

(2) The ideal position is normally achieved when the rotor tips are positioned at the forward deck edge. This position minimises the risk of striking the deck edge following recognition of an engine failure at or just after RP. Any take-off heading which causes the helicopter to fly over obstructions below and beyond the deck edge should be avoided if possible. Therefore, the final take-off heading and position will be a compromise between the take-off path for least obstructions, relative wind, turbulence and lateral marker cue considerations.

(i) Actions in the event of an engine failure at or just after RP

(1) Once committed to the continued take-off, it is important, in the event of an engine failure, to rotate the aircraft to the optimum attitude in order to give the best chance of missing the deck edge. The optimum pitch rates and absolute pitch attitudes should be detailed in the profile for the specific type.

(j) Take-off from helidecks that have significant movement

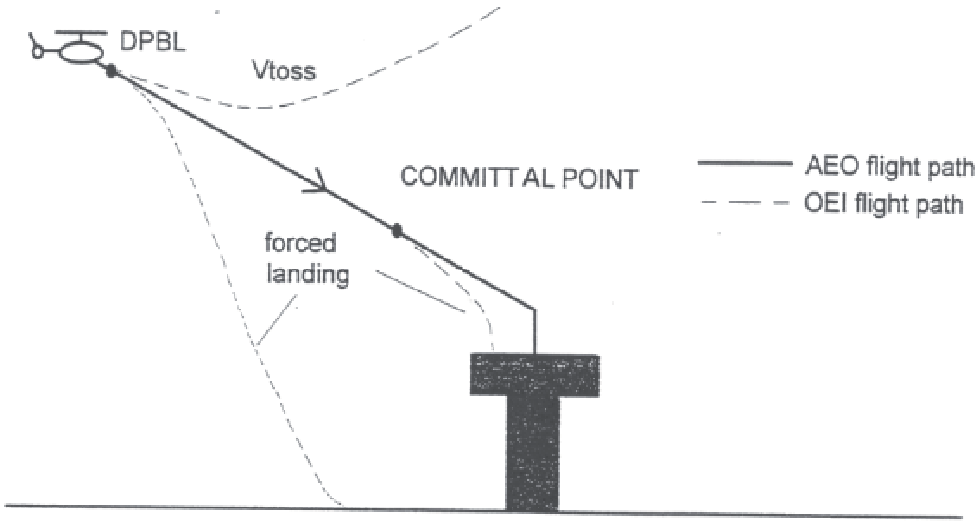
(1) This technique should be used when the helideck movement and any other factors, e.g. insufficient visual cues, makes a successful rejected take-off unlikely. Weight should be reduced to permit an improved one-engine-inoperative capability, as necessary.

(2) The optimum take-off moment is when the helideck is level and at its highest point, e.g. horizontal on top of the swell. Collective pitch should be applied positively and sufficiently to make an immediate transition to climbing forward flight. Because of the lack of a hover, the take-off profile should be planned and briefed prior to lift off from the deck.

(k) Standard landing profile

(1) The approach should be commenced into wind to a point outboard of the helideck. Rotor tip clearance from the helideck edge should be maintained until the aircraft approaches this position at the requisite height (type dependent) with approximately 10 kt of ground-speed and a minimal rate of descent. The aircraft is then flown on a flight path to pass over the deck edge and into a hover over the safe landing area.

Figure 2: Standard landing profile



(l) Offset landing profile

(1) If the normal landing profile is impracticable due to obstructions and the prevailing wind velocity, the offset procedure may be used. This should involve flying to a hover position, approximately 90° offset from the landing point, at the appropriate height and maintaining rotor tip clearance from the deck edge. The helicopter should then be flown slowly but positively sideways and down to position in a low hover over the landing point. Normally, the committal point (CP) will be the point at which helicopter begins to transition over the helideck edge.

(m) Training

(1) These techniques should be covered in the training required by Annex III (Part-ORO).

CAT.POL.H.315 Take-off flight path

From the defined point after take-off (DPATO) or, as an alternative, no later than 200 ft above the take-off surface, with the critical engine inoperative, the requirements of CAT.POL.H.210 (a)(1), (a)(2) and (b) shall be complied with.

CAT.POL.H.320 En-route — critical engine inoperative

The requirement of CAT.POL.H.215 shall be complied with.

CAT.POL.H.325 Landing

(a) The landing mass at the estimated time of landing shall not exceed the maximum mass specified for a rate of climb of 150 ft/min at 300 m (1 000 ft) above the level of the aerodrome or operating site with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engine(s) operating at an appropriate power rating.

(b) If the critical engine fails at any point in the approach path:

  (1) a balked landing can be carried out meeting the requirement of CAT.POL.H.315; or

  (2) for operations other than those specified in CAT.POL.H.305, the helicopter can perform a safe forced landing.

(c) For operations in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305, in addition to the requirements of (a):

  (1) the landing mass shall not exceed the maximum mass specified in the AFM for an AEO OGE hover in still air with all engines operating at an appropriate power rating; or

  (2) for operations to a helideck:

    (i) with a helicopter that has an MOPSC of more than 19; or

    (ii) any helicopter operated to a helideck located in a hostile environment,

    the landing mass shall take into account the procedure and drop down appropriate to the height of the helideck with the critical engine inoperative and the remaining engine(s) operating at an appropriate power rating.

(d) When showing compliance with (a) to (c), account shall be taken of the appropriate parameters of CAT.POL.H.105 (c) at the destination aerodrome or any alternate, if required.

(e) That part of the landing after which the requirement of (b)(1) cannot be met shall be conducted in sight of the surface.

See **GM1 CAT.POL.H.310&CAT.POL.H.325 Take-off and landing.**

See **GM1 CAT.POL.H.310(c)&CAT.POL.H.325(c) Take-off and landing.**

Chapter 4 — Performance class 3

CAT.POL.H.400 General

(a) Helicopters operated in performance class 3 shall be certified in Category A or equivalent as determined by the Agency, or Category B.

(b) Operations shall only be conducted in a non-hostile environment, except:

(1) when operating in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420; or

(2) for the take-off and landing phase, when operating in accordance with (c).

(c) Provided the operator is approved in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305, operations may be conducted to/from an aerodrome or operating site located outside a congested hostile environment without an assured safe forced landing capability:

(1) during take-off, before reaching V_y (speed for best rate of climb) or 200 ft above the take-off surface; or

(2) during landing, below 200 ft above the landing surface.

(d) Operations shall not be conducted:

(1) out of sight of the surface;

(2) at night;

(3) when the ceiling is less than 600 ft; or

(4) when the visibility is less than 800 m.

See **GM1 CAT.POL.H.200&CAT.POL.H.300&CAT.POL.H.400 General.**

GM1 CAT.POL.H.400(c) General

THE TAKE-OFF AND LANDING PHASES (PERFORMANCE CLASS 3)

(a) To understand the use of ground level exposure in performance class 3, it is important first to be aware of the logic behind the use of 'take-off and landing phases'. Once this is clear, it is easier to appreciate the aspects and limits of the use of ground level exposure. This GM shows the derivation of the term from the ICAO definition of the 'en-route phase' and then gives practical examples of the use, and limitations on the use, of ground level exposure in CAT.POL.400 (c).

(b) The take-off phase in performance class 1 and performance class 2 may be considered to be bounded by 'the specified point in the take-off' from which the take-off flight path begins.

(1) In performance class 1 this specified point is defined as 'the end of the take-off distance required'.

(2) In performance class 2 this specified point is defined as DPATO or, as an alternative, no later than 200 ft above the take-off surface.

(3) There is no simple equivalent point for bounding of the landing in performance classes 1 & 2.

(c) Take-off flight path is not used in performance class 3 and, consequently, the term 'take-off and landing phases' is used to bound the limit of exposure. For the purpose of performance class 3, the take-off and landing phases are as set out in CAT.POL.H.400 (c) and are considered to be bounded by:

(1) during take-off before reaching V_y (speed for best rate of climb) or 200 ft above the take-off surface; and

(2) during landing, below 200 ft above the landing surface.

(ICAO Annex 6 Part III, defines en-route phase as being "That part of the flight from the end of the take-off and initial climb phase to the commencement of the approach and landing phase." The use of take-off and landing phase in this text is used to distinguish the take-off from the initial climb, and the landing from the approach: they are considered to be complimentary and not contradictory.)

(d) Ground level exposure – and exposure for elevated FATOs or helidecks in a non-hostile environment – is permitted for operations under an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305. Exposure in this case is limited to the 'take-off and landing phases'.

The practical effect of bounding of exposure can be illustrated with the following examples:

(1) A clearing: the operator may consider a take-off/landing in a clearing when there is sufficient power, with all engines operating, to clear all obstacles in the take-off path by an adequate margin (this, in ICAO, is meant to indicate 35 ft). Thus, the clearing may be bounded by bushes, fences, wires and, in the extreme, by power lines, high trees etc. Once the obstacle has been cleared – by using a steep or a vertical climb (which itself may infringe the height velocity (HV) diagram) – the helicopter reaches V_y or 200 ft, and from that point a safe forced landing must be possible. The effect is that whilst operation to a clearing is possible, operation to a clearing in the middle of a forest is not (except when operated in accordance with CAT.POL.H.420).

(2) An aerodrome/operating site surrounded by rocks: the same applies when operating to a landing site that is surrounded by rocky ground. Once Vy or 200 ft has been reached, a safe forced landing must be possible.

(3) An elevated FATO or helideck: when operating to an elevated FATO or helideck in performance class 3, exposure is considered to be twofold: firstly, to a deck-edge strike if the engine fails after the decision to transition has been taken; and secondly, to operations in the HV diagram due to the height of the FATO or helideck. Once the take-off surface has been cleared and the helicopter has reached the knee of the HV diagram, the helicopter should be capable of making a safe forced landing.

(e) Operation in accordance with CAT.POL.400 (b) does not permit excursions into a hostile environment as such and is specifically concerned with the absence of space to abort the take-off or landing when the take-off and landing space are limited; or when operating in the HV diagram.

(f) Specifically, the use of this exception to the requirement for a safe forced landing (during take-off or landing) does not permit semi-continuous operations over a hostile environment such as a forest or hostile sea area.

CAT.POL.H.405 Take-off

(a) The take-off mass shall be the lower of:

(1) the MCTOM; or

(2) the maximum take-off mass specified for a hover in ground effect with all engines operating at take-off power, or if conditions are such that a hover in ground effect is not likely to be established, the take-off mass specified for a hover out of ground effect with all engines operating at take-off power.

(b) Except as provided in CAT.POL.H.400 (b), in the event of an engine failure the helicopter shall be able to perform a safe forced landing.

CAT.POL.H.410 En-route

(a) The helicopter shall be able, with all engines operating within the maximum continuous power conditions, to continue along its intended route or to a planned diversion without flying at any point below the appropriate minimum flight altitude.

(b) Except as provided in CAT.POL.H.420, in the event of an engine failure the helicopter shall be able to perform a safe forced landing.

CAT.POL.H.415 Landing

(a) The landing mass of the helicopter at the estimated time of landing shall be the lower of:

(1) the maximum certified landing mass; or

(2) the maximum landing mass specified for a hover in ground effect, with all engines operating at take-off power, or if conditions are such that a hover in ground effect is not likely to be established, the landing mass for a hover out of ground effect with all engines operating at take-off power.

(b) Except as provided in CAT.POL.H.400 (b), in the event of an engine failure, the helicopter shall be able to perform a safe forced landing.

CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

(a) Operations over a non-congested hostile environment without a safe forced landing capability with turbine-powered helicopters with an MOPSC of six or less shall only be conducted if the operator has been granted an approval by the competent authority, following a safety risk assessment performed by the operator. Before such operations take place in another Member State, the operator shall obtain an endorsement from the competent authority of that State.

(b) To obtain and maintain such approval the operator shall:

(1) only conduct these operations in the areas and under the conditions specified in the approval;

(2) not conduct these operations under a HEMS approval;

(3) substantiate that helicopter limitations, or other justifiable considerations, preclude the use of the appropriate performance criteria; and

(4) be approved in accordance with CAT.POL.H.305 (b).

(c) Notwithstanding CAT.IDE.H.240, such operations may be conducted without supplemental oxygen equipment, provided the cabin altitude does not exceed 10 000 ft for a period in excess of 30 minutes and never exceeds 13 000 ft pressure altitude.

AMC1 CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

SAFETY RISK ASSESSMENT

(a) Introduction

Two cases that are deemed to be acceptable for the alleviation under the conditions of CAT.POL.H.420 for the en-route phase of the flight (operations without an assured safe forced landing capability during take-off and landing phases are subject to a separate approval under CAT.POL.H.400 (c)) are flights over mountainous areas and remote areas, both already having been considered by the JAA in comparison to ground transport in the case of remote areas and respectively to multi-engined helicopters in the case of mountain areas.

(1) Remote areas

Remote area operation is acceptable when alternative surface transportation does not provide the same level of safety as helicopter transportation. In this case, the operator should demonstrate why the economic circumstances do not justify replacement of single-engined helicopters by multi-engined helicopters.

(2) Mountainous areas

Current generation twin-engined helicopters may not be able to meet the performance class 1 or 2 requirements at the operational altitude; consequently, the outcome of an engine failure is the same as a single-engined helicopter. In this case, the operator should justify the use of exposure in the en-route phase.

(b) Other areas of operation

For other areas of operations to be considered for the operational approval, a risk assessment should be conducted by the operator that should, at least, consider the following factors:

(1) type of operations and the circumstances of the flight;

(2) area/terrain over which the flight is being conducted;

(3) probability of an engine failure and the consequence of such an event;

(4) safety target;

(5) procedures to maintain the reliability of the engine(s);

(6) installation and utilisation of a usage monitoring system; and

(7) when considered relevant, any available publications on (analysis of) accident or other safety data.

GM1 CAT.POL.H.420 Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

EXAMPLE OF A SAFETY RISK ASSESSMENT

(a) Introduction

Where it can be substantiated that helicopter limitations, or other justifiable considerations, preclude the use of appropriate performance, the approval effectively alleviates from compliance with the requirement in CAT.OP.MPA.137, that requires the availability of surfaces that permit a safe forced landing to be executed.

Circumstances where an engine failure will result in a catastrophic event are those defined for a hostile environment:

(1) a lack of adequate surfaces to perform a safe landing;

(2) the inability to protect the occupants of the helicopter from the elements; or

(3) a lack of search and rescue services to provide rescue consistent with the expected survival time in such environment.

(b) The elements of the risk assessment

The risk assessment process consists of the application of three principles:

– a safety target;

– a helicopter reliability assessment; and

– continuing airworthiness.

(1) The safety target

The main element of the risk assessment when exposure was initially introduced by the JAA into JAR-OPS 3 (NPA OPS-8), was the assumption that turbine engines in helicopters would have failure rates of about 1:100 000 per flying hour – which would permit (against the agreed safety target of 5 x 10-8 per event) an exposure of about 9 seconds for twin-engined helicopters and 18 seconds for single-engined helicopters during the take-off or landing event.

An engine failure in the en-route phase over a hostile environment will inevitably result in a higher risk (in the order of magnitude of 1 x 10-5 per flying hour) to a catastrophic event.

The approval to operate with this high risk of endangering the helicopter occupants should therefore only be granted against a comparative risk assessment (i.e. compared to other means of transport the risk is demonstrated to be lower), or where there is no economic justification to replace single-engined helicopters by multi-engined helicopters.

(2) The reliability assessment

The purpose of the reliability assessment is to ensure that the engine reliability remains at or better than 1 x 10-5.

(3) Continuing airworthiness

Mitigating procedures consist of a number of elements:

(i) the fulfilment of all manufacturers' safety modifications;

(ii) a comprehensive reporting system (both failures and usage data); and

(iii) the implementation of a usage monitoring system (UMS).

Each of these elements is to ensure that engines, once shown to be sufficiently reliable to meet the safety target, will sustain such reliability (or improve upon it).

The monitoring system is felt to be particularly important as it had already been demonstrated that when such systems are in place it inculcates a more considered approach to operations. In addition the elimination of 'hot starts', prevented by the UMS, itself minimises the incidents of turbine burst failures.

GM2 CAT.POL.H.420(a) Helicopter operations over a hostile environment located outside a congested area

ENDORSEMENT FROM ANOTHER STATE

(a) Application to another State

To obtain an endorsement from another State the operator should submit to that State the safety risk assessment and the reasons and justification that preclude the use of appropriate performance criteria, over those hostile areas outside a congested area over which the operator is planning to conduct operations.

(b) Endorsement from another State

Upon receiving the endorsement from another State the operator should submit it together with the safety risk assessment and the reasons and justification that preclude the use of appropriate performance criteria, to the competent authority issuing the AOC to obtain the approval or extend the existing approval to a new area.

Section 3 — Mass and balance

Chapter 1 — Motor-powered aircraft

CAT.POL.MAB.100 Mass and balance, loading

(a) During any phase of operation, the loading, mass and centre of gravity (CG) of the aircraft shall comply with the limitations specified in the AFM, or the operations manual if more restrictive.

(b) The operator shall establish the mass and the CG of any aircraft by actual weighing prior to initial entry into service and thereafter at intervals of 4 years if individual aircraft masses are used, or 9 years if fleet masses are used. The accumulated effects of modifications and repairs on the mass and balance shall be accounted for and properly documented. Aircraft shall be reweighed if the effect of modifications on the mass and balance is not accurately known.

(c) The weighing shall be accomplished by the manufacturer of the aircraft or by an approved maintenance organisation.

(d) The operator shall determine the mass of all operating items and crew members included in the aircraft dry operating mass by weighing or by using standard masses. The influence of their position on the aircraft's CG shall be determined.

(e) The operator shall establish the mass of the traffic load, including any ballast, by actual weighing or by determining the mass of the traffic load in accordance with standard passenger and baggage masses.

(f) In addition to standard masses for passengers and checked baggage, the operator can use standard masses for other load items, if it demonstrates to the competent authority that these items have the same mass or that their masses are within specified tolerances.

(g) The operator shall determine the mass of the fuel load by using the actual density or, if not known, the density calculated in accordance with a method specified in the operations manual.

(h) The operator shall ensure that the loading of:

(1) its aircraft is performed under the supervision of qualified personnel; and

(2) traffic load is consistent with the data used for the calculation of the aircraft mass and balance.

(i) The operator shall comply with additional structural limits such as the floor strength limitations, the maximum load per running metre, the maximum mass per cargo compartment and the maximum seating limit. For helicopters, in addition, the operator shall take account of in-flight changes in loading.

(j) The operator shall specify, in the operations manual, the principles and methods involved in the loading and in the mass and balance system that meet the requirements contained in (a) to (i). This system shall cover all types of intended operations.

AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading

WEIGHING OF AN AIRCRAFT

(a) New aircraft that have been weighed at the factory may be placed into operation without reweighing if the mass and balance records have been adjusted for alterations or modifications to the aircraft. Aircraft transferred from one EU operator to another EU operator do not have to be weighed prior to use by the receiving operator, unless more than 4 years have elapsed since the last weighing.

(b) The mass and centre of gravity (CG) position of an aircraft should be revised whenever the cumulative changes to the dry operating mass exceed ±0.5 % of the maximum landing mass or for aeroplanes the cumulative change in CG position exceeds 0.5 % of the mean aerodynamic chord. This may be done by weighing the aircraft or by calculation.

(c) When weighing an aircraft, normal precautions should be taken consistent with good practices such as:

(1) checking for completeness of the aircraft and equipment;

(2) determining that fluids are properly accounted for;

(3) ensuring that the aircraft is clean; and

(4) ensuring that weighing is accomplished in an enclosed building.

(d) Any equipment used for weighing should be properly calibrated, zeroed, and used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Each scale should be calibrated either by the manufacturer, by a civil department of weights and measures or by an appropriately authorized organisation within two years or within a time period defined by the manufacturer of the weighing equipment, whichever is less. The equipment should enable the mass of the aircraft to be established accurately. One single accuracy criterion for weighing equipment cannot be given. However, the weighing accuracy is considered satisfactory if the accuracy criteria in Table 1 are met by the individual scales/cells of the weighing equipment used:

Table 1: Accuracy criteria for weighing equipment

For a scale/cell load	An accuracy of
below 2 000 kg	±1 %
from 2 000 kg to 20 000 kg	±20 kg
from 2 000 kg to 20 000 kg	±0·1 %

AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading

FLEET MASS AND CG POSITION − AEROPLANES

(a) For a group of aeroplanes of the same model and configuration, an average dry operating mass and CG position may be used as the fleet mass and CG position, provided that:

(1) the dry operating mass of an individual aeroplane does not differ by more than ±0.5 % of the maximum structural landing mass from the established dry operating fleet mass; or

(2) the CG position of an individual aeroplane does not differ by more than ±0.5 % of the mean aerodynamic chord from the established fleet CG.

(b) The operator should verify that, after an equipment or configuration change or after weighing, the aeroplane falls within the tolerances above.

(c) To add an aeroplane to a fleet operated with fleet values, the operator should verify by weighing or calculation that its actual values fall within the tolerances specified in (a)(1) and (2).

(d) To obtain fleet values, the operator should weigh, in the period between two fleet mass evaluations, a certain number of aeroplanes as specified in Table 1, where 'n' is the number of aeroplanes in the fleet using fleet values. Those aeroplanes in the fleet that have not been weighed for the longest time should be selected first.

Table 1: Minimum number of weighings to obtain fleet values

Number of aeroplanes in the fleet	Minimum number of weighings
2 or 3	n
4 to 9	(n + 3)/2
10 or more	(n + 51)/10

(e) The interval between two fleet mass evaluations should not exceed 48 months.

(f) The fleet values should be updated at least at the end of each fleet mass evaluation.

(g) Aeroplanes that have not been weighed since the last fleet mass evaluation may be kept in a fleet operated with fleet values, provided that the individual values are revised by calculation and stay within the tolerances above. If these individual values no longer fall within the tolerances, the operator should determine new fleet values or operate aeroplanes not falling within the limits with their individual values.

(h) If an individual aeroplane mass is within the dry operating fleet mass tolerance but its CG position exceeds the tolerance, the aeroplane may be operated under the applicable dry operating fleet mass but with an individual CG position.

(i) Aeroplanes for which no mean aerodynamic chord has been published should be operated with their individual mass and CG position values. They may be operated under the dry operating fleet mass and CG position, provided that a risk assessment has been completed.

AMC3 CAT.POL.MAB.100(b) Mass and balance, loading

CENTRE OF GRAVITY LIMITS – OPERATIONAL CG ENVELOPE AND IN-FLIGHT CG

In the Certificate Limitations section of the AFM, forward and aft CG limits are specified. These limits ensure that the certification stability and control criteria are met throughout the whole flight and allow the proper trim setting for take-off. The operator should ensure that these limits are respected by:

(a) Defining and applying operational margins to the certified CG envelope in order to compensate for the following deviations and errors:

(1) Deviations of actual CG at empty or operating mass from published values due, for example, to weighing errors, unaccounted modifications and/or equipment variations.

(2) Deviations in fuel distribution in tanks from the applicable schedule.

(3) Deviations in the distribution of baggage and cargo in the various compartments as compared with the assumed load distribution as well as inaccuracies in the actual mass of baggage and cargo.

(4) Deviations in actual passenger seating from the seating distribution assumed when preparing the mass and balance documentation. Large CG errors may occur when 'free seating', i.e. freedom of passengers to select any seat when entering the aircraft, is permitted. Although in most cases reasonably even longitudinal passenger seating can be expected, there is a risk of an extreme forward or aft seat selection causing very large and unacceptable CG errors, assuming that the balance calculation is done on the basis of an assumed even distribution. The largest errors may occur at a load factor of approximately 50% if all passengers are seated in either the forward or aft half of the cabin. Statistical analysis indicates that the risk of such extreme seating adversely affecting the CG is greatest on small aircraft.

(5) Deviations of the actual CG of cargo and passenger load within individual cargo compartments or cabin sections from the normally assumed mid position.

(6) Deviations of the CG caused by gear and flap positions and by application of the prescribed fuel usage procedure, unless already covered by the certified limits.

(7) Deviations caused by in-flight movement of cabin crew, galley equipment and passengers.

(8) On small aeroplanes, deviations caused by the difference between actual passenger masses and standard passenger masses when such masses are used.

(b) Defining and applying operational procedures in order to:

(1) ensure an even distribution of passengers in the cabin;

(2) take into account any significant CG travel during flight caused by passenger/crew movement; and

(3) take into account any significant CG travel during flight caused by fuel consumption/transfer.

AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and balance, loading

DRY OPERATING MASS

The dry operating mass includes:

(a) crew and crew baggage;

(b) catering and removable passenger service equipment; and

(c) tank water and lavatory chemicals.

AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) Mass and balance, loading

MASS VALUES FOR CREW MEMBERS

(a) The operator should use the following mass values for crew to determine the dry operating mass:

(1) actual masses including any crew baggage; or

(2) standard masses, including hand baggage, of 85 kg for flight crew/technical crew members and 75 kg for cabin crew members.

(b) The operator should correct the dry operating mass to account for any additional baggage. The position of this additional baggage should be accounted for when establishing the centre of gravity of the aeroplane.

AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading

MASS VALUES FOR PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE

(a) When the number of passenger seats available is:

(1) less than 10 for aeroplanes; or

(2) less than 6 for helicopters,

passenger mass may be calculated on the basis of a statement by, or on behalf of, each passenger, adding to it a predetermined mass to account for hand baggage and clothing.

The predetermined mass for hand baggage and clothing should be established by the operator on the basis of studies relevant to his particular operation. In any case, it should not be less than:

(1) 4 kg for clothing; and

(2) 6 kg for hand baggage.

The passengers' stated mass and the mass of passengers' clothing and hand baggage should be checked prior to boarding and adjusted, if necessary. The operator should establish a procedure in the operations manual when to select actual or standard masses and the procedure to be followed when using verbal statements.

(b) When determining the actual mass by weighing, passengers' personal belongings and hand baggage should be included. Such weighing should be conducted immediately prior to boarding the aircraft.

(c) When determining the mass of passengers by using standard mass values, the standard mass values in Tables 1 and 2 below should be used. The standard masses include hand baggage and the mass of any infant carried by an adult on one passenger seat. Infants occupying separate passenger seats should be considered as children for the purpose of this AMC. When the total number of passenger seats available on an aircraft is 20 or more, the standard masses for males and females in Table 1 should be used. As an alternative, in cases where the total number of passenger seats available is 30 or more, the 'All Adult' mass values in Table 1 may be used.

Table 1: Standard masses for passengers – aircraft with a total number of passenger seats of 20 or more

Passenger seats:	20 and more		30 and more
	Male	Female	All adult
All flights except holiday charters	88 kg	70 kg	84 kg
Holiday charters*	83 kg	69 kg	76 kg
Children	35 kg	35 kg	35 kg

* Holiday charter means a charter flight that is part of a holiday travel package. On such flights the entire passenger capacity is hired by one or more charterer(s) for the carriage of passengers who are travelling, all or in part by air, on a round- or circle-trip basis for holiday purposes. The holiday charter mass values apply provided that not more than 5 % of passenger seats installed in the aircraft are used for the non-revenue carriage of certain categories of passengers. Categories of passengers such as company personnel, tour operators' staff, representatives of the press, authority officials etc. can be included within the 5% without negating the use of holiday charter mass values.

Table 2: Standard masses for passengers – aircraft with a total number of passenger seats of 19 or less

Passenger seats:	1 – 5	6 – 9	10 – 19
Male	104 kg	96 kg	92 kg
Female	86 kg	78 kg	74 kg
Children	35 kg	35 kg	35 kg

(1) On aeroplane flights with 19 passenger seats or less and all helicopter flights where no hand baggage is carried in the cabin or where hand baggage is accounted for separately, 6 kg may be deducted from male and female masses in Table 2. Articles such as an overcoat, an umbrella, a small handbag or purse, reading material or a small camera are not considered as hand baggage.

(2) For helicopter operations in which a survival suit is provided to passengers, 3 kg should be added to the passenger mass value.

(d) Mass values for baggage

(1) Aeroplanes. When the total number of passenger seats available on the aeroplane is 20 or more, the standard mass values for checked baggage of Table 3 should be used.

(2) Helicopters. When the total number of passenger seats available on the helicopters is 20 or more, the standard mass value for checked baggage should be 13 kg.

(3) For aircraft with 19 passenger seats or less, the actual mass of checked baggage should be determined by weighing.

Table 3: Standard masses for baggage – aeroplanes with a total number of passenger seats of 20 or more

Type of flight	**Baggage standard mass**
Domestic	11 kg
Within the European region	13 kg
Intercontinental	15 kg
All other	13 kg

(4) For the purpose of Table 3:

(i) domestic flight means a flight with origin and destination within the borders of one State;

(ii) flights within the European region mean flights, other than domestic flights, whose origin and destination are within the area specified in (d)(5); and

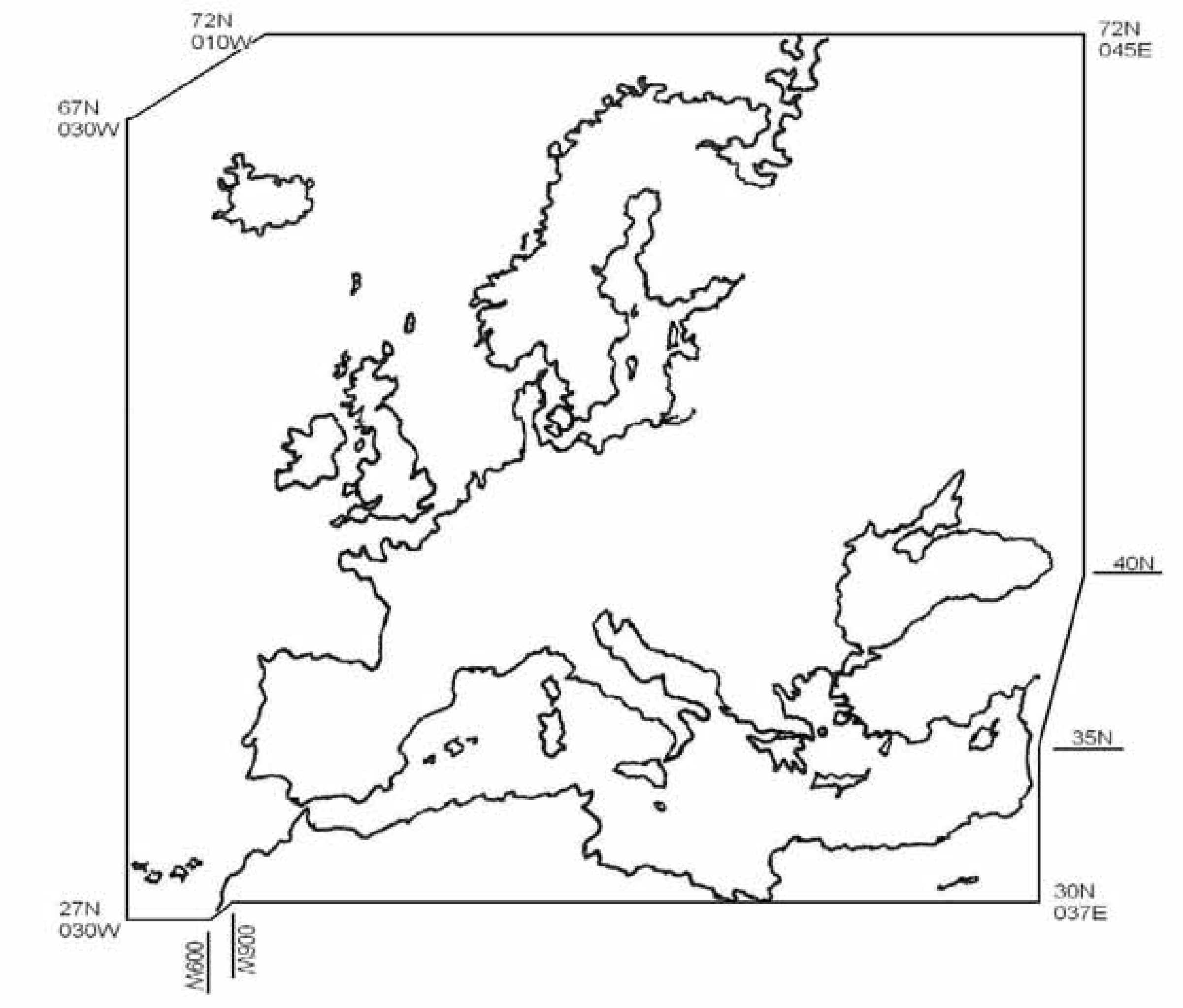
(iii) intercontinental flight means flights beyond the European region with origin and destination in different continents.

(5) Flights within the European region are flights conducted within the following area:

– N7200 E04500
– N4000 E04500
– N3500 E03700
– N3000 E03700
– N3000 W00600
– N2700 W00900
– N2700 W03000
– N6700 W03000
– N7200 W01000
– N7200 E04500

as depicted in Figure 1.

Figure 1: The European region



(f) Other standard masses may be used provided they are calculated on the basis of a detailed weighing survey plan and a reliable statistical analysis method is applied. The operator should advise the competent authority about the intent of the passenger weighing survey and explain the survey plan in general terms. The revised standard mass values should only be used in circumstances comparable with those under which the survey was conducted. Where the revised standard masses exceed those in Tables 1, 2 and 3 of, then such higher values should be used.

(g) On any flight identified as carrying a significant number of passengers whose masses, including hand baggage, are expected to significantly deviate from the standard passenger mass, the operator should determine the actual mass of such passengers by weighing or by adding an adequate mass increment.

(h) If standard mass values for checked baggage are used and a significant number of passengers checked baggage is expected to significantly deviate from the standard baggage mass, the operator should determine the actual mass of such baggage by weighing or by adding an adequate mass increment.

AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading

PROCEDURE FOR ESTABLISHING REVISED STANDARD MASS VALUES FOR PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE

(a) Passengers

(1) Weight sampling method. The average mass of passengers and their hand baggage should be determined by weighing, taking random samples. The selection of random samples should by nature and extent be representative of the passenger volume, considering the type of operation, the frequency of flights on various routes, in/outbound flights, applicable season and seat capacity of the aircraft.

(2) Sample size. The survey plan should cover the weighing of at least the greatest of:

(i) a number of passengers calculated from a pilot sample, using normal statistical procedures and based on a relative confidence range (accuracy) of 1 % for all adult and 2 % for separate male and female average masses; and

(ii) for aircraft:

(A) with a passenger seating capacity of 40 or more, a total of 2 000 passengers; or

(B) with a passenger seating capacity of less than 40, a total number of 50 multiplied by the passenger seating capacity.

(3) Passenger masses. Passenger masses should include the mass of the passengers' belongings that are carried when entering the aircraft. When taking random samples of passenger masses, infants should be weighted together with the accompanying adult.

(4) Weighing location. The location for the weighing of passengers should be selected as close as possible to the aircraft, at a point where a change in the passenger mass by disposing of or by acquiring more personal belongings is unlikely to occur before the passengers board the aircraft.

(5) Weighing machine. The weighing machine used for passenger weighing should have a capacity of at least 150 kg. The mass should be displayed at minimum graduations of 500 g. The weighing machine should have an accuracy of at least 0.5 % or 200 g, whichever is greater.

(6) Recording of mass values. For each flight included in the survey the mass of the passengers, the corresponding passenger category (i.e. male / female / children) and the flight number should be recorded.

(b) Checked baggage. The statistical procedure for determining revised standard baggage mass values based on average baggage masses of the minimum required sample size should comply with (a)(1) and (a)(2). For baggage, the relative confidence range (accuracy) should amount to 1 %. A minimum of 2 000 pieces of checked baggage should be weighed.

(c) Determination of revised standard mass values for passengers and checked baggage.

(1) To ensure that, in preference to the use of actual masses determined by weighing, the use of revised standard mass values for passengers and checked baggage does not adversely affect operational safety, a statistical analysis should be carried out. Such an analysis should generate average mass values for passengers and baggage as well as other data.

(2) On aircraft with 20 or more passenger seats, these averages apply as revised standard male and female mass values.

(3) On aircraft with 19 passenger seats or less, the increments in Table 1 should be added to the average passenger mass to obtain the revised standard mass values:

Table 1: Increments for revised standard masses values

Number of passenger seats	Required mass increment
1 – 5 incl.	16 kg
6 – 9 incl.	8 kg
10 – 19 incl.	4 kg

Alternatively, all adult revised standard (average) mass values may be applied on aircraft with 30 or more passenger seats. Revised standard (average) checked baggage mass values are applicable to aircraft with 20 or more passenger seats.

(4) The revised standard masses should be reviewed at intervals not exceeding 5 years.

(5) All adult revised standard mass values should be based on a male/female ratio of 80/20 in respect of all flights except holiday charters that are 50/50. A different ratio on specific routes or flights may be used, provided supporting data shows that the alternative male/female ratio is conservative and covers at least 84 % of the actual male/female ratios on a sample of at least 100 representative flights.

(6) The resulting average mass values should be rounded to the nearest whole number in kg. Checked baggage mass values should be rounded to the nearest 0.5 kg figure, as appropriate.

(7) When operating on similar routes or networks, operators may pool their weighing surveys provided that in addition to the joint weighing survey results, results from individual operators participating in the joint survey are separately indicated in order to validate the joint survey results.

GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading

ADJUSTMENT OF STANDARD MASSES

When standard mass values are used, AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(d) item (g) states that the operator should identify and adjust the passenger and checked baggage masses in cases where significant numbers of passengers or quantities of baggage are suspected of significantly deviating from the standard values. Therefore the operations manual should contain instructions to ensure that:

(a) check-in, operations and cabin staff and loading personnel report or take appropriate action when a flight is identified as carrying a significant number of passengers whose masses, including hand baggage, are expected to significantly deviate from the standard passenger mass, and/or groups of passengers carrying exceptionally heavy baggage (e.g. military personnel or sports teams); and

(b) on small aircraft, where the risks of overload and/or CG errors are the greatest, pilots pay special attention to the load and its distribution and make proper adjustments.

GM2 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and Balance, Loading

STATISTICAL EVALUATION OF PASSENGERS AND BAGGAGE DATA

(a) Sample size.

(1) For calculating the required sample size it is necessary to make an estimate of the standard deviation on the basis of standard deviations calculated for similar populations or for preliminary surveys. The precision of a sample estimate is calculated for 95 % reliability or 'significance', i.e. there is a 95 % probability that the true value falls within the specified confidence interval around the estimated value. This standard deviation value is also used for calculating the standard passenger mass.

(2) As a consequence, for the parameters of mass distribution, i.e. mean and standard deviation, three cases have to be distinguished:

(i) μ, σ = the true values of the average passenger mass and standard deviation, which are unknown and which are to be estimated by weighing passenger samples.

(ii) μ', σ' = the 'a priori' estimates of the average passenger mass and the standard deviation, i.e. values resulting from an earlier survey, which are needed to determine the current sample size.

(iii) $\bar{x}$, s = the estimates for the current true values of m and s, calculated from the sample.

The sample size can then be calculated using the following formula:

$$n \geq \frac{(1.96 * \sigma' * 100)^2}{(e_r' * \mu')^2}$$

where:

n = number of passengers to be weighed (sample size)

e'_r = allowed relative confidence range (accuracy) for the estimate of μ by $\bar{x}$ (see also equation in (c)). The allowed relative confidence range specifies the accuracy to be achieved when estimating the true mean. For example, if it is proposed to estimate the true mean to within ±1 %, then e'_r will be 1 in the above formula.

1.96 = value from the Gaussian distribution for 95 % significance level of the resulting confidence interval.

(b) Calculation of average mass and standard deviation. If the sample of passengers weighed is drawn at random, then the arithmetic mean of the sample ($\bar{x}$) is an unbiased estimate of the true average mass (μ) of the population.

(1) Arithmetic mean of sample where:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n} x_j}{n}$$

x_j = mass values of individual passengers (sampling units).

(2) Standard deviation where:

$$S = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(x_j - \bar{x}\right)^2}{n-1}}$$

$x_j -$ = =deviation of the individual value from the sample mean.

(c) Checking the accuracy of the sample mean. The accuracy (confidence range) which can be ascribed to the sample mean as an indicator of the true mean is a function of the standard deviation of the sample which has to be checked after the sample has been evaluated. This is done using the formula:

$$e_r = \frac{1.96 * S * 100}{\sqrt{n} * \bar{x}} \ (\%)$$

whereby e_r should not exceed 1 % for an all adult average mass and 2 % for an average male and/or female mass. The result of this calculation gives the relative accuracy of the estimate of μ at the 95 % significance level. This means that with 95 % probability, the true average mass μ lies within the interval:

$$\bar{x} \pm \frac{1.96 * S}{\sqrt{n}}$$

(d) Example of determination of the required sample size and average passenger mass

(1) Introduction. Standard passenger mass values for mass and balance purposes require passenger weighing programs be carried out. The following example shows the various steps required for establishing the sample size and evaluating the sample data. It is provided primarily for those who are not well versed in statistical computations. All mass figures used throughout the example are entirely fictitious.

(2) Determination of required sample size. For calculating the required sample size, estimates of the standard (average) passenger mass and the standard deviation are needed. The 'a priori' estimates from an earlier survey may be used for this purpose. If such estimates are not available, a small representative sample of about 100 passengers should be weighed so that the required values can be calculated. The latter has been assumed for the example.

Step 1: Estimated average passenger mass.

n	x_j (kg)
1	79.9
2	68.1
3	77.9
4	74.5
5	54.1
6	$\bar{x}$ 62.2
7	89.3
8	108.7
.	.
85	63.2
86	75.4
$\sum_{j=1}^{86}$	6 071.6

$$\mu' = \bar{x} = \frac{\sum x_j}{n} = \frac{6071.6}{86}$$

= 70.6 kg

Step 2: Estimated standard deviation.

n	x_j	$(x_j – x)$	$(x_j – x)2$
1	79.9	+9.3	86.49
2	68.1	–2.5	6.25
3	77.9	+7.3	53.29
4	74.5	+3.9	15.21
5	54.1	–16.5	272.25
6	62.2	–8.4	70.56
7	89.3	+18.7	349.69
8	108.7	+38.1	1 451.61
.	.	.	.
85	63.2	–7.4	54.76
86	75.4	–4.8	23.04
$\sum_{j=1}^{86}$	6071.6		34 683.40

$$\sigma' = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma\left(x_j - \bar{x}\right)^2}{n-1}}$$

$$\sigma' = \sqrt{\frac{34\,683.40}{86-1}}$$

σ' = 20.20 kg

Step 3: Required sample size.

The required number of passengers to be weighed should be such that the confidence range, e'_r, does not exceed 1 % as specified in (c).

$$n \geq \frac{(1.96 * \sigma' * 100)^2}{(e'_r * \mu')^2}$$

$$n \geq \frac{(1.96 * 20.20 * 100)^2}{(1 * 70.6)^2}$$

n ≥ 3145

The result shows that at least 3 145 passengers should be weighed to achieve the required accuracy. If e'_r is chosen as 2 % the result would be n ≥786.

Step 4: After having established the required sample size a plan for weighing the passengers is to be worked out.

(3) Determination of the passenger average mass

Step 1: Having collected the required number of passenger mass values, the average passenger mass can be calculated. For the purpose of this example it has been assumed that 3 180 passengers were weighed. The sum of the individual masses amounts to 231 186.2 kg.

n = 3 180

$$\sum_{j=1}^{3180} X_j = 231186.2 \text{ kg}$$

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum x_j}{n} = \frac{231186.2}{3180} \text{ kg}$$

$$\bar{x} = 72.7 \text{ kg}$$

Step 2: Calculation of the standard deviation.

For calculating the standard deviation the method shown in paragraph (2) step 2 should be applied.

$$\sum (x_j - \bar{x})^2 = 745\ 145.20$$

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x_j - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$$

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{745\ 145.20}{3180 - 1}}$$

$$s = 15.31 \text{ kg}$$

Step 3: Calculation of the accuracy of the sample mean.

$$e_r = \frac{1.96 * s * 100}{\sqrt{n} * \bar{x}} \%$$

$$e_r = \frac{1.96 * 15.31 * 100}{\sqrt{3180} * 72.7} \%$$

$$e_r = 0.73 \%$$

Step 4: Calculation of the confidence range of the sample mean.

$$\bar{x} \pm \frac{1.96 * s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

$$\bar{x} \pm \frac{1.96 * 15.31}{\sqrt{3180}} \text{ kg}$$

$$72.7 \pm 0.5 \text{ kg}$$

The result of this calculation shows that there is a 95 % probability of the actual mean for all passengers lying within the range 72.2 kg to 73.2 kg.

GM3 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Mass and balance, loading

GUIDANCE ON PASSENGER WEIGHING SURVEYS

(a) Detailed survey plan.

(1) The operator should establish and submit to the competent authority a detailed weighing survey plan that is fully representative of the operation, i.e. the network or route under consideration and the survey should involve the weighing of an adequate number of passengers.

(2) A representative survey plan means a weighing plan specified in terms of weighing locations, dates and flight numbers giving a reasonable reflection of the operator's timetable and/or area of operation.

(3) The minimum number of passengers to be weighed is the highest of the following:

(i) The number that follows from the means of compliance that the sample should be representative of the total operation to which the results will be applied; this will often prove to be the overriding requirement.

(ii) The number that follows from the statistical requirement specifying the accuracy of the resulting mean values, which should be at least 2 % for male and female standard masses and 1 % for all adult standard masses, where applicable. The required sample size can be estimated on the basis of a pilot sample (at least 100 passengers) or from a previous survey. If analysis of the results of the survey indicates that the requirements on the accuracy of the mean values for male or female standard masses or all adult standard masses, as applicable, are not met, an additional number of representative passengers should be weighed in order to satisfy the statistical requirements.

(4) To avoid unrealistically small samples a minimum sample size of 2 000 passengers (males + females) is also required, except for small aircraft where in view of the burden of the large number of flights to be weighed to cover 2 000 passengers, a lesser number is considered acceptable.

(b) Execution of weighing programme.

(1) At the beginning of the weighing programme it is important to note, and to account for, the data requirements of the weighing survey report (see (e)).

(2) As far as is practicable, the weighing programme should be conducted in accordance with the specified survey plan.

(3) Passengers and all their personal belongings should be weighed as close as possible to the boarding point and the mass, as well as the associated passenger category (male/female/child), should be recorded.

(c) Analysis of results of weighing survey. The data of the weighing survey should be analysed as explained in this GM. To obtain an insight to variations per flight, per route etc. this analysis should be carried out in several stages, i.e. by flight, by route, by area, inbound/outbound, etc. Significant deviations from the weighing survey plan should be explained as well as their possible effect(s) on the results.

(d) Results of the weighing survey

(1) The results of the weighing survey should be summarised. Conclusions and any proposed deviations from published standard mass values should be justified. The results of a passenger weighing survey are average masses for passengers, including hand baggage, which may lead to proposals to adjust the standard mass values given in AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(e) Tables 1 and 2. These averages, rounded to the nearest whole number may, in principle, be applied as standard mass values for males and females on aircraft with 20 or more passenger seats. Because of variations in actual passenger masses, the total passenger load also varies and statistical analysis indicates that the risk of a significant overload becomes unacceptable for aircraft with less than 20 seats. This is the reason for passenger mass increments on small aircraft.

(2) The average masses of males and females differ by some 15 kg or more. Because of uncertainties in the male/female ratio the variation of the total passenger load is greater if all adult standard masses are used than when using separate male and female standard masses. Statistical analysis indicates that the use of all adult standard mass values should be limited to aircraft with 30 passenger seats or more.

(3) Standard mass values for all adults must be based on the averages for males and females found in the sample, taking into account a reference male/female ratio of 80/20 for all flights except holiday

charters where a ratio of 50/50 applies. The operator may, based on the data from his weighing programme, or by proving a different male/female ratio, apply for approval of a different ratio on specific routes or flights.

(e) Weighing survey report:

The weighing survey report, reflecting the content of (d)(1) – (3), should be prepared in a standard format as follows:

WEIGHING SURVEY REPORT
1 Introduction Objective and brief description of the weighing survey.
2 Weighing survey plan Discussion of the selected flight number, airports, dates, etc. Determination of the minimum number of passengers to be weighed. Survey plan.
3 Analysis and discussion of weighing survey results Significant deviations from survey plan (if any). Variations in means and standard deviations in the network. Discussion of the (summary of) results.
4 Summary of results and conclusions Main results and conclusions. Proposed deviations from published standard mass values.
Attachment 1 Applicable summer and/or winter timetables or flight programmes.
Attachment 2 Weighing results per flight (showing individual passenger masses and sex); means and standard deviations per flight, per route, per area and for the total network.

GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(g) Mass and balance, loading

FUEL DENSITY

(a) If the actual fuel density is not known, the operator may use standard fuel density values for determining the mass of the fuel load. Such standard values should be based on current fuel density measurements for the airports or areas concerned.

(b) Typical fuel density values are:

(1) Gasoline (piston engine fuel) – 0.71

(2) JET A1 (Jet fuel JP 1) – 0.79

(3) JET B (Jet fuel JP 4) – 0.76

(4) Oil – 0.88

GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.100(i) Mass and balance, loading

IN-FLIGHT CHANGES IN LOADING – HELICOPTERS

In-flight changes in loading may occur in hoist operations.

CAT.POL.MAB.105 Mass and balance data and documentation

(a) The operator shall establish mass and balance data and produce mass and balance documentation prior to each flight specifying the load and its distribution. The mass and balance documentation shall enable the commander to determine that the load and its distribution is such that the mass and balance limits of the aircraft are not exceeded. The mass and balance documentation shall contain the following information:

(1) Aircraft registration and type;

(2) Flight identification, number and date;

(3) Name of the commander;

(4) Name of the person who prepared the document;

(5) Dry operating mass and the corresponding CG of the aircraft;

(i) for Performance Class B aeroplanes and for helicopters the CG position may not need to be on the mass and balance documentation if, for example, the load distribution is in accordance with a pre-calculated balance table or if it can be shown that for the planned operations a correct balance can be ensured, whatever the real load is.

(6) Mass of the fuel at take-off and the mass of trip fuel;

(7) Mass of consumables other than fuel, if applicable;

(8) Load components including passengers, baggage, freight and ballast;

(9) Take-off mass, landing mass and zero fuel mass;

(10) Applicable aircraft CG positions; and

(12) The limiting mass and CG values.

The information above shall be available in flight planning documents or mass and balance systems. Some of this information may be contained in other documents readily available for use.

(b) Where mass and balance data and documentation is generated by a computerised mass and balance system, the operator shall verify the integrity of the output data.

(c) The person supervising the loading of the aircraft shall confirm by hand signature or equivalent that the load and its distribution are in accordance with the mass and balance documentation given to the commander. The commander shall indicate his/her acceptance by hand signature or equivalent.

(d) The operator shall specify procedures for last minute changes to the load to ensure that:

(1) any last minute change after the completion of the mass and balance documentation is brought to the attention of the commander and entered in the flight planning documents containing the mass and balance documentation;

(2) the maximum last minute change allowed in passenger numbers or hold load is specified; and

(3) new mass and balance documentation is prepared if this maximum number is exceeded.

(e) The operator shall obtain approval by the competent authority if he/she wishes to use an onboard integrated mass and balance computer system or a stand-alone computerised mass and balance system as a primary source for dispatch. The operator shall demonstrate the accuracy and reliability of that system.

AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(a) Mass and balance data and documentation

CONTENTS

The mass and balance documentation should include advice to the commander whenever a non-standard method has been used for determining the mass of the load.

AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(b) Mass and balance data and documentation

INTEGRITY

The operator should verify the integrity of mass and balance data and documentation generated by a computerised mass and balance system, at intervals not exceeding 6 months. The operator should establish a system to check that amendments of its input data are incorporated properly in the system and that the system is operating correctly on a continuous basis.

AMC1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(c) Mass and balance data and documentation

SIGNATURE OR EQUIVALENT

Where a signature by hand is impracticable or it is desirable to arrange the equivalent verification by electronic means, the following conditions should be applied in order to make an electronic signature the equivalent of a conventional hand-written signature:

(a) electronic 'signing' by entering a personal identification number (PIN) code with appropriate security etc.;

(b) entering the PIN code generates a print-out of the individual's name and professional capacity on the relevant document(s) in such a way that it is evident, to anyone having a need for that information, who has signed the document;

(c) the computer system logs information to indicate when and where each PIN code has been entered;

(d) the use of the PIN code is, from a legal and responsibility point of view, considered to be fully equivalent to signature by hand;

(e) the requirements for record keeping remain unchanged; and.

(f) all personnel concerned are made aware of the conditions associated with electronic signature and this is documented.

AMC2 CAT.POL.MAB.105(c) Mass and balance data and documentation

MASS AND BALANCE DOCUMENTATION SENT VIA DATA LINK

Whenever the mass and balance documentation is sent to the aircraft via data link, a copy of the final mass and balance documentation as accepted by the commander should be available on the ground.

GM1 CAT.POL.MAB.105(e) Mass and balance data and documentation

ON-BOARD INTEGRATED MASS AND BALANCE COMPUTER SYSTEM

An on-board integrated mass and balance computer system may be an aircraft installed system capable of receiving input data either from other aircraft systems or from a mass and balance system on ground, in order to generate mass and balance data as an output.

GM2 CAT.POL.MAB.105(e) Mass and balance data and documentation

STAND-ALONE COMPUTERISED MASS AND BALANCE SYSTEM

A stand-alone computerised mass and balance system may be a computer, either as a part of an electronic flight bag (EFB) system or solely dedicated to mass and balance purposes, requiring input from the user, in order to generate mass and balance data as an output.

SUBPART D — INSTRUMENT, DATA, EQUIPMENT

Section 1 — Aeroplanes

CAT.IDE.A.100 Instruments and equipment — general

(a) Instruments and equipment required by this Subpart shall be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, except for the following items:

(1) Spare fuses;

(2) Independent portable lights;

(3) An accurate time piece;

(4) Chart holder;

(5) First-aid kits;

(6) Emergency medical kit;

(7) Megaphones;

(8) Survival and signalling equipment;

(9) Sea anchors and equipment for mooring; and

(10) Child restraint devices.

(b) Instruments and equipment not required by this Subpart that do not need to be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, but are carried on a flight, shall comply with the following:

(1) the information provided by these instruments, equipment or accessories shall not be used by the flight crew to comply with Annex I to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 or CAT.IDE.A.330, CAT.IDE.A.335, CAT.IDE.A.340 and CAT.IDE.A.345; and

(2) the instruments and equipment shall not affect the airworthiness of the aeroplane, even in the case of failures or malfunction.

(c) If equipment is to be used by one flight crew member at his/her station during flight, it must be readily operable from that station. When a single item of equipment is required to be operated by more than one flight crew member it must be installed so that the equipment is readily operable from any station at which the equipment is required to be operated.

(d) Those instruments that are used by any flight crew member shall be so arranged as to permit the flight crew member to see the indications readily from his/her station, with the minimum practicable deviation from the position and line of vision that he/she normally assumes when looking forward along the flight path.

(e) All required emergency equipment shall be easily accessible for immediate use.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.100(b) Instruments and equipment – general

INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATION (EC) NO 748/2012, BUT ARE CARRIED ON A FLIGHT

(a) The provision of this paragraph does not exempt the item of equipment from complying with Regulation (EC) No 748/2012[28] if the instrument or equipment is installed in the aeroplane. In this case, the installation should be approved as required in Regulation (EC) No 748/2012 and should comply with the applicable airworthiness codes as required under the same Regulation.

(b) The functionality of non-installed instruments and equipment required by this Subpart and that do not need an equipment approval should be checked against recognised industry standards appropriate to the intended purpose. The operator is responsible for ensuring the maintenance of these instruments and equipment.

(c) The failure of additional non-installed instruments or equipment not required by this Part or by Regulation (EC) No 748/2012 or any applicable airspace requirements should not adversely affect the airworthiness and/or the safe operation of the aeroplane. Examples are the following:

  (1) instruments supplying additional flight information (e.g. stand-alone global positioning system (GPS));

  (2) mission dedicated equipment (e.g. radios); and

  (3) non-installed passenger entertainment equipment.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.100(d) Instruments and equipment – general

POSITIONING OF INSTRUMENTS

This requirement implies that whenever a single instrument is required to be installed in an aeroplane operated in a multi-crew environment, the instrument needs to be visible from each flight crew station.

[28] OJ L 243, 27.9.2003, p. 6.

CAT.IDE.A.105 Minimum equipment for flight

A flight shall not be commenced when any of the aeroplane's instruments, items of equipment or functions required for the intended flight are inoperative or missing, unless:

(a) the aeroplane is operated in accordance with the operator's MEL; or

(b) the operator is approved by the competent authority to operate the aeroplane within the constraints of the master minimum equipment list (MMEL).

CAT.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with spare electrical fuses, of the ratings required for complete circuit protection, for replacement of those fuses that are allowed to be replaced in flight.

(b) The number of spare fuses that are required to be carried shall be the higher of:

(1) 10% of the number of fuses of each rating; or

(2) three fuses for each rating.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.110 Spare electrical fuses

FUSES

A ‘spare electrical fuse’ means a replaceable fuse in the flight crew compartment, not an automatic circuit breaker, or circuit breakers in the electric compartments.

CAT.IDE.A.115 Operating lights

(a) Aeroplanes operated by day shall be equipped with:

(1) an anti-collision light system;

(2) lighting supplied from the aeroplane's electrical system to provide adequate illumination for all instruments and equipment essential to the safe operation of the aeroplane;

(3) lighting supplied from the aeroplane's electrical system to provide illumination in all passenger compartments; and

(4) an independent portable light for each required crew member readily accessible to crew members when seated at their designated stations.

(b) Aeroplanes operated at night shall in addition be equipped with:

(1) navigation/position lights;

(2) two landing lights or a single light having two separately energised filaments; and

(3) lights to conform with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea if the aeroplane is operated as a seaplane.

CAT.IDE.A.120 Equipment to clear windshield

Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg shall be equipped at each pilot station with a means to maintain a clear portion of the windshield during precipitation.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.120 Equipment to clear windshield

MEANS TO MAINTAIN A CLEAR PORTION OF THE WINDSHIELD DURING PRECIPITATION

The means used to maintain a clear portion of the windshield during precipitation should be windshield wipers or an equivalent.

CAT.IDE.A.125 Operations under VFR by day — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

(a) Aeroplanes operated under VFR by day shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(1) A means of measuring and displaying:

(i) Magnetic heading;

(ii) Time in hours, minutes, and seconds;

(iii) Pressure altitude;

(iv) Indicated airspeed;

(v) Vertical speed;

(vi) Turn and slip;

(vii) Attitude;

(viii) Heading;

(ix) outside air temperature; and

(x) Mach number whenever speed limitations are expressed in terms of Mach number.

(2) A means of indicating when the supply of power to the required flight instruments is not adequate.

(b) Whenever two pilots are required for the operation, an additional separate means of displaying the following shall be available for the second pilot:

(1) Pressure altitude;

(2) Indicated airspeed;

(3) Vertical speed;

(4) Turn and slip;

(5) Attitude; and

(6) Heading.

(c) A means for preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems due to condensation or icing shall be available for:

(1) aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MOPSC of more than nine; and

(2) aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1999.

(d) Single engine aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA before 22 May 1995 are exempted from the requirements of (a)(1)(vi), (a)(1)(vii), (a)(1)(viii) and (a)(1)(ix) if the compliance would require retrofitting.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

INTEGRATED INSTRUMENTS

(a) Individual equipment requirements may be met by combinations of instruments, by integrated flight systems or by a combination of parameters on electronic displays, provided that the information so available to each required pilot is not less than that required in the applicable operational requirements, and the equivalent safety of the installation has been shown during type certification approval of the aeroplane for the intended type of operation.

(b) The means of measuring and indicating turn and slip, aeroplane attitude and stabilised aeroplane heading may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight director systems, provided that the safeguards against total failure, inherent in the three separate instruments, are retained.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.125 Operations under VFR by day – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

LOCAL FLIGHTS

For flights that do not exceed 60 minutes' duration, that take off and land at the same aerodrome and that remain within 50 NM of that aerodrome, an equivalent means of complying with CAT.IDE.A.125 (a)(1)(vi) may be:

(a) a turn and slip indicator;

(b) a turn coordinator; or

(c) both an attitude indicator and a slip indicator.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(i)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(1) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING MAGNETIC HEADING

The means of measuring and displaying magnetic direction should be a magnetic compass or equivalent.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(ii)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(2) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING THE TIME

An acceptable means of compliance is a clock displaying hours, minutes and seconds, with a sweep-second pointer or digital presentation.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(iii)&CAT.IDE.A.130(b) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING PRESSURE ALTITUDE

The instrument measuring and displaying pressure altitude should be of a sensitive type calibrated in feet (ft), with a sub-scale setting, calibrated in hectopascals/millibars, adjustable for any barometric pressure likely to be set during flight.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(iv)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(3) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE INSTRUMENT INDICATING AIRSPEED

The instrument indicating airspeed should be calibrated in knots (kt).

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(ix)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(8) Operations under VFR by day & operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF DISPLAYING OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE

(a) The means of displaying outside air temperature should be calibrated in degrees Celsius.

(b) The means of displaying outside air temperature may be an air temperature indicator that provides indications that are convertible to outside air temperature.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(b)&CAT.IDE.A.130(h) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS – DUPLICATE INSTRUMENTS

Duplicate instruments should include separate displays for each pilot and separate selectors or other associated equipment where appropriate.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(c)&CAT.IDE.A.130(d) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO CONDENSATION OR ICING

The means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system should be a heated pitot tube or equivalent.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SUMMARY TABLE

Table 1: Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SERIAL		FLIGHTS UNDER VFR		FLIGHTS UNDER IFR OR AT NIGHT	
INSTRUMENT		SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED	SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED
(a)		(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
1	Magnetic direction	1	1	1	1
2	Time	1	1	1	1
3	Pressure altitude	1	2	2 Note (5)	2 Note (5)
4	Indicated airspeed	1	2	1	2
5	Vertical speed	1	2	1	2
6	Turn and slip or turn coordinator	1 Note (1)	2 Note (1) & Note (2)	1 Note (4)	2 Note (4)
7	Attitude	1 Note (1)	2 Note (1) & Note (2)	1	2
8	Stabilised direction	1 Note (1)	2 Note (1) & Note (2)	1	2
9	Outside air temperature	1	1	1	1
10	Mach number indicator	See Note (3)			
11	Airspeed icing protection	1 Note (6)	2 Note (6)	1	2
12	Airspeed icing protection failure indicating			1 Note (7)	2 Note (7)
13	Static pressure source			2	2
14	Standby attitude indicator			1 Note (8)	1 Note (8)
15	Chart holder			1 Note (6)	1 Note (6)

Note (1) For local flights (A to A, 50 NM radius, not more than 60 minutes' duration) the instruments at serials (a)(6) and (a)(8) may be replaced by either a turn and slip indicator, or a turn coordinator, or both an attitude indicator and a slip indicator.

Note (2) The substitute instruments permitted by Note (1) above should be provided at each pilot's station.

Note (3) A Mach number indicator is required for each pilot whenever compressibility limitations are not otherwise indicated by airspeed indicators.

Note (4) For IFR or at night, a turn and slip indicator, or a slip indicator and a third (standby) attitude indicator certified according to CS 25.1303 (b)(4) or equivalent, is required.

Note (5) Except for unpressurised aeroplanes operating below 10 000 ft, neither three pointers, nor drum-pointer altimeters satisfy the requirement.

Note (6) Applicable only to aeroplanes with a maximum certified take-off mass (MCTOM) of more than 5 700 kg, or with an MOPSC of more than nine. It also applies to all aeroplanes first issued with an individual certificate of airworthiness (CofA) on or after 1 April 1999.

Note (7) The pitot heater failure annunciation applies to any aeroplane issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998. It also applies before that date when: the aeroplane has an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg and an MOPSC greater than nine.

Note (8) Applicable only to aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg, or with an MPSCMOPSC of more than nine.

CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under IFR or at night — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

Aeroplanes operated under VFR at night or under IFR shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(a) A means of measuring and displaying:

(1) Magnetic heading;

(2) Time in hours, minutes and seconds;

(3) Indicated airspeed;

(4) Vertical speed;

(5) Turn and slip, or in the case of aeroplanes equipped with a standby means of measuring and displaying attitude, slip;

(6) Attitude;

(7) Stabilised heading;

(8) Outside air temperature; and

(9) Mach number whenever speed limitations are expressed in terms of Mach number.

(b) Two means of measuring and displaying pressure altitude.

(c) A means of indicating when the supply of power to the required flight instruments is not adequate.

(d) A means for preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems required in (a)(3) and (h)(2) due to condensation or icing.

(e) A means of annunciating to the flight crew the failure of the means required in (d) for aeroplanes:

(1) issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998; or

(2) issued with an individual CofA before 1 April 1998 with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg, and with an MOPSC of more than nine.

(f) Except for propeller-driven aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, two independent static pressure systems.

(g) One static pressure system and one alternate source of static pressure for propeller-driven aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less.

(h) Whenever two pilots are required for the operation, a separate means of displaying for the second pilot:

(1) Pressure altitude;

(2) Indicated airspeed;

(3) Vertical speed;

(4) Turn and slip;

(5) Attitude; and

(6) Stabilised heading.

(i) A standby means of measuring and displaying attitude capable of being used from either pilot's station for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MOPSC of more than nine that:

(1) is powered continuously during normal operation and, after a total failure of the normal electrical generating system, is powered from a source independent from the normal electrical generating system;

(2) provides reliable operation for a minimum of 30 minutes after total failure of the normal electrical generating system, taking into account other loads on the emergency power supply and operational procedures;

(3) operates independently of any other means of measuring and displaying attitude;

(4) is operative automatically after total failure of the normal electrical generating system;

(5) is appropriately illuminated during all phases of operation, except for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, already registered in a Member State on 1 April 1995 and equipped with a standby attitude indicator in the left-hand instrument panel;

(6) is clearly evident to the flight crew when the standby attitude indicator is being operated by emergency power; and

(7) where the standby attitude indicator has its own dedicated power supply, has an associated indication, either on the instrument or on the instrument panel, when this supply is in use.

(j) A chart holder in an easily readable position that can be illuminated for night operations.

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(i)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(1) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(ii)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(2) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(iv)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(3) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(5) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SLIP INDICATOR

If only slip indication is provided, the means of measuring and displaying standby attitude should be certified according to CS 25.1303 (b)(4) or equivalent.

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(ix)&CAT.IDE.A.130(a)(8) Operations under VFR by day & operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.130(b) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

ALTIMETERS − IFR OR NIGHT OPERATIONS

Except for unpressurised aeroplanes operating below 10 000 feet, the altimeters of aeroplanes operating under IFR or at night should have counter drum-pointer or equivalent presentation.

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(a)(1)(iii)&CAT.IDE.A.130(b) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(c)&CAT.IDE.A.130(d) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(e) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF INDICATING FAILURE OF THE AIRSPEED INDICATING SYSTEM'S MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO EITHER CONDENSATION OR ICING

A combined means of indicating failure of the airspeed indicating system's means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing is acceptable provided that it is visible from each flight crew station and that there is a means to identify the failed heater in systems with two or more sensors.

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.125(b)&CAT.IDE.A.130(h) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(i)(5) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

ILLUMINATION OF STANDBY MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING ATTITUDE

The standby means of measuring and displaying attitude should be illuminated so as to be clearly visible under all conditions of daylight and artificial lighting.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.130(j) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CHART HOLDER

An acceptable means of compliance with the chart holder requirement is to display a pre-composed chart on an electronic flight bag (EFB).

See **GM1 CAT.IDE.A.125&CAT.IDE.A.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

CAT.IDE.A.135 Additional equipment for single-pilot operation under IFR

Aeroplanes operated under IFR with a single-pilot shall be equipped with an autopilot with at least altitude hold and heading mode.

CAT.IDE.A.140 Altitude alerting system

(a) The following aeroplanes shall be equipped with an altitude alerting system:

 (1) turbine propeller powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or having an MOPSC of more than nine; and

 (2) aeroplanes powered by turbo-jet engines.

(b) The altitude alerting system shall be capable of:

 (1) alerting the flight crew when approaching a preselected altitude; and

 (2) alerting the flight crew by at least an aural signal, when deviating from a preselected altitude.

(c) Notwithstanding (a), aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, having an MOPSC of more than nine, first issued with an individual CofA before 1 April 1972 and already registered in a Member State on 1 April 1995 are exempted from being equipped with an altitude alerting system.

CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)

(a) Turbine-powered aeroplanes having an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MOPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with a TAWS that meets the requirements for Class A equipment as specified in an acceptable standard.

(b) Reciprocating-engine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MOPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with a TAWS that meets the requirement for Class B equipment as specified in an acceptable standard.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)

EXCESSIVE DOWNWARDS GLIDE SLOPE DEVIATION WARNING FOR CLASS A TAWS

The requirement for a Class A TAWS to provide a warning to the flight crew for excessive downwards glide slope deviation should apply to all final approach glide slopes with angular vertical navigation (VNAV) guidance, whether provided by the instrument landing system (ILS), microwave landing system (MLS), satellite based augmentation system approach procedure with vertical guidance (SBAS APV (localiser performance with vertical guidance approach LPV)), ground-based augmentation system (GBAS (GPS landing system, GLS) or any other systems providing similar guidance. The same requirement should not apply to systems providing vertical guidance based on barometric VNAV.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.150 Terrain awareness warning system (TAWS)

ACCEPTABLE STANDARD FOR TAWS

An acceptable standard for Class A and Class B TAWS may be the applicable European technical standards order (ETSO) issued by the Agency or equivalent.

CAT.IDE.A.155 Airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS)

Unless otherwise provided for by Regulation (EU) No […]/2011, turbine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or an MOPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with ACAS II.

CAT.IDE.A.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

The following shall be equipped with airborne weather detecting equipment when operated at night or in IMC in areas where thunderstorms or other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather detecting equipment, may be expected to exist along the route:

(a) pressurised aeroplanes;

(b) non-pressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg; and

(c) non-pressurised aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than nine.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

GENERAL

The airborne weather detecting equipment should be an airborne weather radar, except for propeller-driven pressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM not more than 5 700 kg and an MOPSC of not more than nine, for which other equipment capable of detecting thunderstorms and other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather radar equipment, are also acceptable.

CAT.IDE.A.165 Additional equipment for operations in icing conditions at night

(a) Aeroplanes operated in expected or actual icing conditions at night shall be equipped with a means to illuminate or detect the formation of ice.

(b) The means to illuminate the formation of ice shall not cause glare or reflection that would handicap crew members in the performance of their duties.

CAT.IDE.A.170 Flight crew interphone system

Aeroplanes operated by more than one flight crew member shall be equipped with a flight crew interphone system, including headsets and microphones for use by all flight crew members.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.170 Flight crew interphone system

TYPE OF FLIGHT CREW INTERPHONE

The flight crew interphone system should not be of a handheld type.

CAT.IDE.A.175 Crew member interphone system

Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 15 000 kg, or with an MOPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with a crew member interphone system, except for aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA before 1 April 1965 and already registered in a Member State on 1 April 1995.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.175 Crew member interphone system

SPECIFICATIONS

The crew member interphone system should:

(a) operate independently of the public address system except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;

(b) in the case of aeroplanes where at least one cabin crew member is required, be readily accessible for use at required cabin crew member stations close to each separate or pair of floor level emergency exits;

(c) in the case of aeroplanes where at least one cabin crew member is required, have an alerting system incorporating aural or visual signals for use by flight and cabin crew;

(d) have a means for the recipient of a call to determine whether it is a normal call or an emergency call that uses:

(1) lights of different colours;

(2) codes defined by the operator (e.g. different number of rings for normal and emergency calls); and

(3) any other indicating signal specified in the operations manual;

(e) provide two-way communication between:

(1) the flight crew compartment and each passenger compartment, in the case of aeroplanes where at least one cabin crew member is required;

(2) the flight crew compartment and each galley located other than on a passenger deck level, in the case of aeroplanes where at least one cabin crew member is required;

(3) the flight crew compartment and each remote crew compartment and crew member station that is not on the passenger deck and is not accessible from a passenger compartment; and

(4) ground personnel and at least two flight crew members. This interphone system for use by the ground personnel should be, where practicable, so located that the personnel using the system may avoid detection from within the aeroplane;

and

(f) be readily accessible for use from each required flight crew station in the flight crew compartment.

CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system

Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with a public address system.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.180 Public address system

SPECIFICATIONS

The public address system should:

(a) operate independently of the interphone systems except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;

(b) be readily accessible for immediate use from each required flight crew station;

(c) have, for each floor level passenger emergency exit that has an adjacent cabin crew seat, a microphone operable by the seated cabin crew member, except that one microphone may serve more than one exit, provided the proximity of exits allows unassisted verbal communication between seated cabin crew members;

(d) be operable within 10 seconds by a cabin crew member at each of those stations; and

(e) be audible at all passenger seats, lavatories, galleys, cabin crew seats and work stations, and other crew remote areas.

CAT.IDE.A.185 Cockpit voice recorder

(a) The following aeroplanes shall be equipped with a cockpit voice recorder (CVR):

(1) aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg; and

(2) multi-engined turbine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, with an MOPSC of more than nine and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 1990.

(b) The CVR shall be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least:

(1) the preceding 2 hours in the case of aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) when the individual CofA has been issued on or after 1 April 1998;

(2) the preceding 30 minutes for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) when the individual CofA has been issued before 1 April 1998; or

(3) the preceding 30 minutes, in the case of aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2).

(c) The CVR shall record with reference to a timescale:

(1) voice communications transmitted from or received in the flight crew compartment by radio;

(2) flight crew members' voice communications using the interphone system and the public address system, if installed;

(3) the aural environment of the flight crew compartment, including without interruption:

(i) for aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998, the audio signals received from each boom and mask microphone in use;

(ii) for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2) and first issued with an individual CofA before 1 April 1998, the audio signals received from each boom and mask microphone, where practicable;

and

(4) voice or audio signals identifying navigation or approach aids introduced into a headset or speaker.

(d) The CVR shall start to record prior to the aeroplane moving under its own power and shall continue to record until the termination of the flight when the aeroplane is no longer capable of moving under its own power. In addition, in the case of aeroplanes issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998, the CVR shall start automatically to record prior to the aeroplane moving under its own power and continue to record until the termination of the flight when the aeroplane is no longer capable of moving under its own power.

(e) In addition to (d), depending on the availability of electrical power, the CVR shall start to record as early as possible during the cockpit checks prior to engine start at the beginning of the flight until the cockpit checks immediately following engine shutdown at the end of the flight, in the case of:

(1) aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) and issued with an individual CofA after 1 April 1998; or

(2) aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2).

(f) The CVR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.185 Cockpit voice recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

(a) For aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998 and before 1 January 2016, the operational performance requirements for cockpit voice recorders (CVRs) should be those laid down in the European Organisation for Civil Aviation Equipment (EUROCAE) Document ED-56A (Minimum Operational Performance Requirements For Cockpit Voice Recorder Systems) dated December 1993, or EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2 , or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) For aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 2016, the operational performance requirements for CVRs should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

(a) The following aeroplanes shall be equipped with a flight data recorder (FDR) that uses a digital method of recording and storing data and for which a method of readily retrieving that data from the storage medium is available:

(1) aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 June 1990;

(2) turbine-engined aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg and first issued with an individual CofA before 1 June 1990; and

(3) multi-engined turbine-powered aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less, with an MOPSC of more than nine and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998.

(b) The FDR shall record:

(1) time, altitude, airspeed, normal acceleration and heading and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(2) with an MCTOM of less than 27 000 kg;

(2) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and configuration of lift and drag devices and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours, for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) with an MCTOM of less than 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual CofA before 1 January 2016;

(3) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power, configuration and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours, for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) and (a)(2) with an MCTOM of over 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual CofA before 1 January 2016;

(4) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and configuration of lift and drag devices and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 10 hours, in the case of aeroplanes referred to in (a)(3) and first issued with an individual CofA before 1 January 2016; or

(5) the parameters required to determine accurately the aeroplane flight path, speed, attitude, engine power, configuration and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 25 hours, for aeroplanes referred to in (a)(1) and (a)(3) and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 2016.

(c) Data shall be obtained from aeroplane sources that enable accurate correlation with information displayed to the flight crew.

(d) The FDR shall start to record the data prior to the aeroplane being capable of moving under its own power and shall stop after the aeroplane is incapable of moving under its own power. In addition, in the case of aeroplanes issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998, the FDR shall start automatically to record the data prior to the aeroplane being capable of moving under its own power and shall stop automatically after the aeroplane is incapable of moving under its own power.

(e) The FDR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2016

(a) The operational performance requirements for flight data recorders (FDRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The FDR should record with reference to a timescale the list of parameters in Table 1 and Table 2, as applicable.

(c) The parameters to be recorded should meet the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and resolution in read-out) as defined in the relevant tables of EUROCAE Document ED-112, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

Table 1: FDR – all aeroplanes

No*	Parameter
1a 1b 1c	Time; or Relative time count Global navigation satellite system (GNSS) time synchronisation
2	Pressure altitude
3a	Indicated airspeed; or Calibrated airspeed
4	Heading (primary flight crew reference) – when true or magnetic heading can be selected, the primary heading reference, a discrete indicating selection, should be recorded
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying and CVR/FDR synchronisation reference.
9 9a 9b	Engine thrust/power Parameters required to determine propulsive thrust/power on each engine Flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position for aeroplanes with non-mechanically linked flight crew compartment – engine control
14	Total or outside air temperature
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Lateral acceleration
18 18a 18b 18c	Primary flight control surface and primary flight control pilot input (for multiple or split surfaces, a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in lieu of recording each surface separately. For aeroplanes that have a flight control break-away capability that allows either pilot to operate the controls independently, record both inputs): Pitch axis Roll axis Yaw axis
19	Pitch trim surface position
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Warnings – in addition to the master warning each 'red' warning (including smoke warnings from other compartments) should be recorded when the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the CVR
25	Each navigation receiver frequency selection

No*	Parameter
27	Air – ground status and, if the sensor is installed, each landing gear
75	All flight control input forces (for fly-by-wire flight control systems, where control surface position is a function of the displacement of the control input device only, it is not necessary to record this parameter):
75a	Control wheel
75b	Control column
75c	Rudder pedal

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE ED-112.

Table 2: FDR – Aeroplanes for which the data source for the parameter is either used by aeroplane systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the aeroplane

No*	Parameter
10 10a 10b	Flaps Trailing edge flap position Flight crew compartment control selection
11 11a 11b	Slats Leading edge flap (slat) position Flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13 13a 13b 13c 13d	Ground spoiler and speed brake Ground spoiler position Ground spoiler selection Speed brake position Speed brake selection
15	Autopilot, autothrottle and AFCS mode and engagement status
20	Radio altitude. For auto-land/Category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded.
21 21a 21b 21c	Vertical deviation – the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto-land/Category III operations, each system should be recorded. ILS/GPS/GLS glide path MLS elevation GNSS approach path / IRNAV vertical deviation
22 22a 22b 22c	Horizontal deviation – the approach aid in use should be recorded. For auto land/Category III operations, each system should be recorded. ILS/GPS/GLS localiser MLS azimuth GNSS approach path/IRNAV lateral deviation
26 26a 26b	Distance measuring equipment (DME) 1 and 2 distances Distance to runway threshold (GLS) Distance to missed approach point (IRNAV/IAN)
28 28a 28b 28c	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS) / terrain awareness warning system (TAWS) / ground collision avoidance system (GCAS) status: Selection of terrain display mode, including pop-up display status Terrain alerts, including cautions and warnings and advisories On/off switch position
29	Angle of attack
30 30a 30b	Low pressure warning (each system): Hydraulic pressure Pneumatic pressure
31	Ground speed

No*	Parameter
32	Landing gear:
32a	Landing gear
32b	Gear selector position
33	Navigation data:
33a	Drift angle
33b	Wind speed
33c	Wind direction
33d	Latitude
33e	Longitude
33f	GNSS augmentation in use
34	Brakes:
34a	Left and right brake pressure
34b	Left and right brake pedal position
35	Additional engine parameters (if not already recorded in parameter 9 of Table 1 of AMC1 CAT.IDE.190.A and if the aeroplane is equipped with a suitable data source):
35a	Engine pressure ratio (EPR)
35b	N1
35c	Indicated vibration level
35d	N2
35e	Exhaust gas temperature (EGT)
35f	Fuel flow
35g	Fuel cut-off lever position
35h	N3
36	Traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS) / airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS) a suitable combination of discretes should be recorded to determine the status of the system:
36a	Combined control
36b	Vertical control
36c	Up advisory
36d	Down advisory
36e	Sensitivity level
37	Wind shear warning
38	Selected barometric setting
38a	Pilot selected barometric setting
38b	Co-pilot selected barometric setting
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically

No*	Parameter
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
44	Selected flight path (All pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
44a	Course/desired track (DSTRK)
44b	Path angle
44c	Coordinates of final approach path (IRNAV/IAN)
45	Selected decision height – to be recorded for the aeroplane where the parameter is displayed electronically
46	Electronic flight instrument system (EFIS) display format:
46a	Pilot
46b	Co-pilot
47	Multi-function/engine/alerts display format
48	Alternating current (AC) electrical bus status – each bus
49	Direct current (DC) electrical bus status – each bus
50	Engine bleed valve position
51	Auxiliary power unit (APU) bleed valve position
52	Computer failure – (all critical flight and engine control system)
53	Engine thrust command
54	Engine thrust target
55	Computed centre of gravity (CG)
56	Fuel quantity or fuel quantity in CG trim tank
57	Head up display in use
58	Para visual display on
59	Operational stall protection, stick shaker and pusher activation
60	Primary navigation system reference:
60a	GNSS
60b	Inertial navigational system (INS)
60c	VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) /distance measuring equipment (DME)
60d	MLS
60e	Loran C
60f	ILS
61	Ice detection
62	Engine warning – each engine vibration
63	Engine warning – each engine over temperature
64	Engine warning – each engine oil pressure low
65	Engine warning – each engine over speed
66	Yaw trim surface position
67	Roll trim surface position
68	Yaw or sideslip angle
69	De-icing and/or anti-icing systems selection
70	Hydraulic pressure – each system

No*	Parameter
71	Loss of cabin pressure
72	Flight crew compartment trim control input position pitch – when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, cockpit display trim positions or trim command should be recorded
73	Flight crew compartment trim control input position roll – when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, flight crew compartment display trim positions or trim command should be recorded
74	Flight crew compartment trim control input position yaw – when mechanical means for control inputs are not available, flight crew compartment display trim positions or trim command should be recorded
76	Event marker
77	Date
78	Actual navigation performance (ANP) or estimate of position error (EPE) or estimate of position uncertainty (EPU)

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE Document ED-112.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 APRIL 1998 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016

(a) The operational performance requirements for FDRs should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-55 (Minimum Operational Performance Requirements For Flight Data Recorder Systems) dated May 1990, or EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The FDR should record, with reference to a timescale:

(1) the parameters listed in Table 1a or Table 1b below, as applicable;

(2) the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below, for those aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg;

(3) any dedicated parameters relating to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the aeroplane as determined by the competent authority; and

(4) the additional parameters listed in Table 3 below, for those aeroplanes equipped with electronic display systems.

(c) When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA before 20 August 2002 and equipped with an electronic display system does not need to record those parameters listed in Table 3 for which:

(1) the sensor is not available;

(2) the aeroplane system or equipment generating the data needs to be modified; or

(3) the signals are incompatible with the recording system;

(d) The FDR of aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 April 1998 but not later than 1 April 2001 is not required to comply with (b) above if:

(1) compliance with (a) cannot be achieved without extensive modification to the aeroplane system and equipment other than the flight recording system; and

(2) the FDR of the aeroplane can comply with AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190(a) except that parameter 15b in Table 1 of AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190 need not be recorded.

(e) The parameters to be recorded should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (ranges, sampling intervals, accuracy limits, and resolution in read-out) defined in Table 1 of AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.190

(f) For aeroplanes with novel or unique design or operational characteristics, the additional parameters should be those required in accordance with applicable Certification Specifications during type or supplemental certification or validation.

(g) If recording capacity is available, as many as possible of the additional parameters specified in table II-A.1 of EUROCAE Document ED 112 dated March 2003 should be recorded.

Table 1a: FDR – Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Propulsive thrust/power on each engine and flight crew compartment thrust / power lever position if applicable
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Total or outside air temperature
15	Autopilot, autothrottle and AFCS mode and engagement status
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Lateral acceleration

Table 1b: FDR – Aeroplanes with an MCTOM 5 700 kg or below

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Propulsive thrust/power on each engine and flight crew compartment thrust/power lever position if applicable
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse status
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Total or outside air temperature
15	Autopilot/autothrottle engagement status
16	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
17	Angle of attack (if a suitable sensor is available)

Table 2: FDR – Additional parameters for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 27 000 kg

No	Parameter
18	Primary flight controls – control surface position and/or pilot input (pitch, roll, yaw)
19	Pitch trim position
20	Radio altitude
21	Vertical beam deviation (ILS glide path or MLS elevation)
22	Horizontal beam deviation (ILS localiser or MLS azimuth)
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Warnings
25	Reserved (navigation receiver frequency selection is recommended)
26	Reserved (DME distance is recommended)
27	Landing gear squat switch status or air/ground status
28	Ground proximity warning system
29	Angle of attack
30	Low pressure warning (hydraulic and pneumatic power)
31	Groundspeed
32	Landing gear or gear selector position

Table 3: FDR – Aeroplanes equipped with electronic display systems

No	Parameter
33	Selected barometric setting (each pilot station)
34	Selected altitude
35	Selected speed
36	Selected Mach
37	Selected vertical speed
38	Selected heading
39	Selected flight path
40	Selected decision height
41	EFIS display format
42	Multi-function / engine / alerts display format

AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 APRIL 1998 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016

Table 1: FDR

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
1a or	Time	24 hours	4	± 0.125 % per hour	1 second	(a) UTC time preferred where available.
1b	Relative time count	0 to 4 095	4	± 0.125 % per hour		(b) Counter increments every 4 seconds of system operation.
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to maximum certificated altitude of aircraft +5 000 ft	1	±100 ft to ±700 ft Refer to Table II-A.3 of EUROCAE Document ED-112	5 ft	Should be obtained from air data computer when installed.
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed	50 kt or minimum value installed pitot static system to Max V_{SO} Max V_{SO} to 1.2 V_D	1	±5 % ±3 %	1 kt (0.5 kt recommended)	Should be obtained from air data computer when installed. V_{SO}: stalling speed or minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration V_D design diving speed
4	Heading	360 degrees	1	±2 degrees	0.5 degrees	
5	Normal acceleration	-3 g to +6 g	0.125	1 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of 5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
6	Pitch attitude	±75 degrees	0.25	±2 degrees	0.5 degrees	
7	Roll attitude	±180 degrees	0.5	±2 degrees	0.5 degrees	
8	Manual radio transmission keying	Discrete	1	-	-	Preferably each crew member but one discrete acceptable for all transmissions provided that the replay of a recording made by any required recorder can be synchronised in time with any other required recording to within 1 second.
9a	Propulsive thrust / power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	±2 %	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. EPR/N, or Torque/NP as appropriate to the particular engine must be recorded to determine power in both normal and reverse thrust. A margin for possible overspeed should be provided.
9b	Flight crew compartment thrust / power lever position	Full range	Each lever each second	±2 % or sufficient to determine any gated position	2 % of full range	Parameter 9b must be recorded for aeroplanes with non-mechanically linked cockpit-engine controls, otherwise recommended.

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	2	±3° or as pilot's indicator and sufficient to determine each discrete position	0.5 % of full range	Flap position and cockpit control may be sampled at 4 seconds intervals so as to give a data point each 2 seconds.
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	1	±3° or as pilot's indicator and sufficient to determine each discrete position	0.5 % of full range	Left and right sides, or flap position and cockpit control may be sampled at 2 seconds intervals so as to give a data point each second.
12	Thrust reverser status	Turbo-jet: stowed, in transit and reverse Turbo-prop: reverse	Each reverser each second	-	-	Turbo-jet: 2 discretes enable the 3 states to be determined Turbo-prop: 1 discrete
13	Ground spoiler and/or speed brake selection	Full range or each discrete position	0.5	±2° unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient to determine use of the cockpit selector and the activation and positions of the surfaces
14	Outside air temperatures or total air temperature	-50°C to +90°C or available sensor range	2	±2°C	0.3°C	
15	Autopilot / Autothrottle / AFCS mode and engagement status	A suitable combination of discretes	1	-	-	Discretes should show which systems are engaged and which primary modes are controlling the flight path and speed of the aircraft.
16	Longitudinal acceleration (Body axis)	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
17	Lateral acceleration	±1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
18	Primary flight controls, control surface positions and/ or* pilot input	Full range	1	±2° unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.2 % of full range	*For aeroplanes that can demonstrate the capability of deriving either the control input or control movement (one from the other) for all modes of operation and flight regimes, the 'or' applies. For aeroplanes with non-mechanical control systems the 'and' applies.
18a	Pitch axis		0.25			Where the input controls for each pilot can be operated independently, both inputs will need to be recorded.
18b	Roll axis		0.25			
18c	Yaw axis		0.5			For multiple or split surfaces, a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in lieu of recording each surface separately.
19	Pitch trim position	Full range	1	±3 % unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.3 % of full range	Where dual surfaces are provided it is permissible to record each surface alternately.
20	Radio altitude	-20 ft to +2 500 ft	1	As installed ±2 ft or ±3 % whichever is greater below 500 ft and ±5 % above 500 ft recommended.	1 ft below 500 ft, 1 ft +0.5 % of full range above 500 ft	For auto-land/category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded, but arranged so that at least one is recorded each second.
21	Vertical beam deviation		1	As installed ±3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	Data from both the ILS and MLS systems need not to be recorded at the same time. The approach aid in use should be recorded.
21a	ILS glide path	±0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				For auto-land/ category III operations, each radio altimeter should be recorded, but arranged so that at least one is recorded each second.
21b	MLS elevation	0.9° to 30°				
22	Horizontal beam deviation	Signal range	1	As installed ±3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	See parameter 21 remarks.
22a	ILS Localiser	±0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
22b	MLS azimuth	±62°				
23	Marker beacon passage	Discrete	1	–	–	A single discrete is acceptable for all markers.

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
24	Warnings	Discretes	1	–	–	A discrete must be recorded for the master warning. Each 'red' warning (including lavatory smoke) should be recorded when the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.
25	Reserved	–	–	–	–	
26	Reserved	–	–	–	–	
27	Landing gear squat switch status	Discrete(s)	1 (0.25 recommended for main gears)	–	–	Discretes should be recorded for the nose and main landing gears.
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)	Discrete	1	–	–	A suitable combination of discretes unless recorder capacity is limited in which case a single discrete for all modes is acceptable.
29	Angle of attack	As installed	0.5	As installed	0.3 % of full range	If left and right sensors are available, each may be recorded at 1 second intervals so as to give a data point each half second.
30	Low pressure warning	Discrete(s) or available sensor range	2	-	0.5 % of full range	Each essential system to be recorded.
30a	Hydraulic power					
30b	Pneumatic power					
31	Groundspeed	As installed	1	Data should be obtained from the most accurate system	1 kt	
32	Landing gear or gear selector position	Discrete(s)	4	-	–	A suitable combination of discretes should be recorded.

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
33	Selected barometric setting (each pilot station)	As installed	64	As installed	1 mb	Where practicable, a sampling interval of 4 seconds is recommended
33a	Pilot					
33b	Co-pilot					
34	Selected altitude	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
34a	Manual					
34b	Automatic					
35	Selected speed	As installed	1	As installed	1 kt	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
35a	Manual					
35b	Automatic					
36	Selected Mach	As installed	1	As installed	0.01	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
36a	Manual					
36b	Automatic					
37	Selected vertical speed	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft/min	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
37a	Manual					
37b	Automatic					
38	Selected heading	360 degrees	1	As installed	1 degree	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
39	Selected flight path		1	As installed		Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
39a	Course/DSTRK	360 degrees				
39b	Path Angle	As installed				
40	Selected decision height	0-500 ft	64	As installed	1 ft	

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
41	EFIS display format	Discrete(s)	4	–	–	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. off, normal, fail, composite, sector, plan, rose, nav aids, wxr, range, copy.
41a	Pilot					
41b	Co-pilot					
42	Multifunction / Engine / Alerts display format	Discrete(s)	4	–	–	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. off, normal, fail, and the identity of display pages for emergency procedures and checklists. Information in checklists and procedures need not be recorded.

AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JUNE 1990 UP TO AND INCLUDING 31 MARCH 1998

(a) The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:

(1) the parameters listed in Table 1 below; and

(2) the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below for those aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg.

(b) When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes having an MCTOM of 27 000 kg or below does not need to record parameters 14 and 15b of Table 1 below if any of the following conditions are met:

(1) the sensor is not readily available;

(2) sufficient capacity is not available in the flight recorder system; or

(3) a change is required in the equipment that generates the data.

(c) When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes having an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg does not need to record parameter 15b of Table 1 below, and parameters 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30 and 31 of Table 2 below, if any of the following conditions are met:

(1) the sensor is not readily available;

(2) sufficient capacity is not available in the FDR system;

(3) a change is required in the equipment that generates the data; or

(4) for navigational data (NAV frequency selection, DME distance, latitude, longitude, ground speed and drift) the signals are not available in digital form.

(d) When determined by the Agency, the FDR does not need to record individual parameters that can be derived by calculation from the other recorded parameters.

(e) The parameters to be recorded should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits, and resolution in read-out) defined in Table 1 of AMC5 CAT.IDE.A.190.

Table 1: Flight data recorder – Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying unless an alternate means to synchronise FDR and CVR recordings is provided
9	Power on each engine
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse position (for turbojet aeroplanes only)
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Outside air temperature or total air temperature
15a	Autopilot engagement status
15b	Autopilot operating modes, autothrottle and AFCS systems engagement status and operating modes.

Table 2: – Flight data recorder – Additional parameters for aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 27 000 kg

No	Parameter
16	Longitudinal acceleration
17	Lateral acceleration
18	Primary flight controls – control surface position and/or pilot input (pitch, roll and yaw)
19	Pitch trim position
20	Radio altitude
21	Glide path deviation
22	Localiser deviation
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Master warning
25	NAV 1 and NAV 2 frequency selection
26	DME 1 and DME 2 distance
27	Landing gear squat switch status
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)
29	Angle of attack
30	Hydraulics, each system (low pressure)
31	Navigation data
32	Landing gear or gear selector position

AMC5 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A UP TO AND INCLUDING 31 MARCH 1998

Table 1: – Flight data recorder

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
1	Time or relative time count	24 hours	4	±0.125 % per hour	1 second	Coordinated universal time (UTC) preferred where available, otherwise elapsed time
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to maximum certificated altitude of aircraft +5 000 ft	1	±100 ft to ±700 ft	5 ft	For altitude record error see EASA ETSO-C124a
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed	50 kt to max V_{SO} Max V_{SO} to 1.2 V_D	1	±5 % ±3 %	1 kt	V_{SO} stalling speed or minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration V_D design diving speed
4	Heading	360 degrees	1	±2 degrees	0.5 degrees	
5	Normal acceleration	-3 g to +6 g	0.125 ±	±1 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	
6	Pitch attitude	±75 degrees	1	±2 degrees	0.5 degrees	
7	Roll attitude	±180 degrees	1	±2 degrees	0.5 degrees	
8	Manual radio transmission keying	Discrete	1	-	-	On-off (one discrete). An FDR/CVR time synchronisation signal complying with 4.2.1 of EUROCAE ED-55 is considered to be an acceptable alternative means of compliance
9	Power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	±2 %	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. EPR/N, or Torque/NP as appropriate to the particular engine should be recorded to determine power
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	2	±5 % or as pilot's indicator	0.5 % of full range	

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection	Full range or each discrete position	2	-	0.5 % of full range	
12	Thrust reverser position	Stowed, in transit and reverse	Each reverser each second	±2 % unless higher accuracy uniquely required	-	
13	Ground spoiler and/or speed brake selection	Full range or each discrete position	1	±2 degrees	0.2 % of full range	
14	Outside air temperatures or total air temperature	Sensor range	2	-	0.3°C	
15a 15b	Autopilot engagement status Autopilot operating modes, auto-throttle and AFCS systems engagement status and operating modes	A suitable combination of discretes	1		-	
16	Longitudinal acceleration	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	
17	Lateral acceleration	±1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of maximum range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	
18	Primary flight controls, control surface positions and/or pilot input (pitch, roll, yaw)	Full range	1	±2 degrees unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.2 % of full range	For aeroplanes with conventional control systems 'or' applies For aeroplanes with non-mechanical control systems 'and' applies For aeroplanes with split surfaces a suitable combination of inputs is acceptable in lieu of recording each surface separately

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy limits (sensor input compared to FDR readout)	Recommended resolution in readout	Remarks
19	Pitch trim position	Full range	1	±3 % unless higher accuracy uniquely required	0.3 % of full range	
20	Radio altitude	-20 ft to +2 500 ft	1	±2 ft or ±3 % whichever is greater below 500 ft and ±5 % above 500 ft	1 ft below 500 ft, 1 ft +5 % of full range above 500 ft	As installed. Accuracy limits are recommended
21	Glide path deviation	Signal range	1	±3 %	0.3 % of full range	As installed. Accuracy limits are recommended
22	Localiser deviation	Signal range	1	±3 %	0.3 % of full range	As installed. Accuracy limits are recommended
23	Marker beacon passage	Discrete	1	–	–	A single discrete is acceptable for all markers
24	Master warning	Discrete	1	–	–	
25	NAV 1 and 2 frequency selection	Full range	4	As installed	–	
26	DME 1 and 2 distance	0-200 NM	4	As installed	–	Recording of latitude and longitude from INS or other navigation system is a preferred alternative
27	Landing gear squat switch status	Discrete	1	–	–	
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)	Discrete	1	–	–	
29	Angle of attack	Full range	0.5	As installed	0.3 % of full range	
30	Hydraulics	Discrete(s)	2	–	–	
31	Navigation data	As installed	1	As installed	–	
32	Landing gear or gear selector position	Discrete	4	As installed	–	

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE Document ED-112.

AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR AEROPLANES FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A BEFORE 1 JUNE 1990

(a) The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:

(1) the parameters listed in Table 1 below;

(2) the additional parameters 6 to 15b of Table 2 below, for aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 5 700 kg but not exceeding 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 1989, when the following conditions are met:

(i) sufficient capacity is available on a flight recorder system;

(ii) the sensor is readily available; and

(iii) a change is not required in the equipment that generates the data;

(3) the additional parameters from 6 to 15b of Table 2 below, for aeroplanes with a maximum certificated take-off mass exceeding 27 000 kg that are of a type first type certified after 30 September 1969; and

(4) the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below for aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 1987, when the following conditions are met:

(i) sufficient capacity is available on a flight recorder system;

(ii) the sensor is readily available; and

(iii) a change is not required in the equipment that generates the data.

(b) When determined by the Agency, the FDR of aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 27 000 kg that are of a type first type certified after 30 September 1969 does not need to record the parameters 13, 14 and 15b in Table 2 below, when any of the following conditions are met:

(1) sufficient capacity is not available on a flight recorder system;

(2) the sensor is not readily available; and

(3) a change is required in the equipment that generates the data.

(c) The parameters to be recorded should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits, and resolution in read-out) defined in Table 1 of AMC5 CAT.IDE.A.190).

(d) When so determined by the Agency, the FDR does not need to record individual parameters that can be derived by calculation from the other recorded parameters.

Table 1: Flight data recorder – aeroplanes with an MCTOM exceeding 5 700 kg

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE Document ED-112.

Table 2: Additional parameters for aeroplanes under conditions of AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190, 1 &2

No	Parameter
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying unless an alternate means to synchronise the FDR and CVR recordings is provided
9	Power on each engine
10	Trailing edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
11	Leading edge flap or flight crew compartment control selection
12	Thrust reverse position (for turbojet aeroplanes only)
13	Ground spoiler position and/or speed brake selection
14	Outside air temperature (OAT) or total air temperature
15a 15b	Autopilot engagement status Autopilot operating modes, autothrottle and AFCS, systems engagement status and operating modes.
16	Longitudinal acceleration
17	Lateral acceleration
18	Primary flight controls – control surface position and/or pilot input (pitch, roll and yaw)
19	Pitch trim position
20	Radio altitude
21	Glide path deviation
22	Localiser deviation
23	Marker beacon passage
24	Master warning
25	NAV 1 and NAV 2 frequency selection
26	DME 1 and DME 2 distance
27	Landing gear squat switch status
28	Ground proximity warning system (GPWS)
29	Angle of attack
30	Hydraulics, each system (low pressure)
31	Navigation data (latitude, longitude, ground speed and drift angle)
32	Landing gear or gear selector position

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial number depicted in EUROCAE Document ED-112.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.190 Flight data recorder

GENERAL

(a) The alleviation of AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.190(d) affects a small number of aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A on or after 1 April 1998 that were either constructed prior to this date or to a specification in force just prior to this date. These aeroplanes may not comply fully with AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.190(b), but are able to comply with AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190. In addition, this alleviation applies only if compliance with AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.190(b) would imply significant modifications to the aeroplane with a severe re-certification effort.

(b) Flight data recorder systems installed on board aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A up to and including 31 March 1998, and for which the recorded parameters do not comply with the performance specifications of Table 1 of AMC5 CAT.IDE.A.190 (i.e. range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and recommended resolution readout) may be acceptable to the Agency.

(c) The alleviations of AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190(b) and (c), and AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190(b), are acceptable only if adding the recording of missing parameters to the existing flight data recorder system would require a major upgrade of the system itself. Account is taken of the following:

(1) The extent of the modification required;

(2) The downtime period; and

(3) Equipment software development.

(d) For the purpose of of AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190(b) and (c), and AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190(a) and (b), 'capacity available' refers to the space on both the flight data acquisition unit and the flight data recorder not allocated for recording the required parameters, or the parameters recorded for the purpose of the Flight Data Monitoring programme, as determined by the Agency.

(e) For the purpose of AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190(b) and (c), and AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190(a) and (b), a sensor is considered 'readily available' when it is already available or can be easily incorporated.

(f) For aeroplanes first issued with an individual C of A up to and including 31 March 1998, the recording of the following additional parameters may be considered:

(1) Remaining parameters in Table 2 of AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.190 or Table 2 of AMC6 CAT.IDE.A.190 as applicable;

(2) Any dedicated parameter relating to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the aeroplane;

(3) Operational information from electronic display systems, such as EFIS, ECAM or EICAS, with the following order of priority:

(i) parameters selected by the flight crew relating to the desired flight path, e.g. barometric pressure setting, selected altitude, selected airspeed, decision height, and autoflight system engagement and mode indications if not recorded from another source;

(ii) display system selection/status, e.g. SECTOR, PLAN, ROSE, NAV, WXR, COMPOSITE, COPY, etc.;

(iii) warning and alerts;

(iv) the identity of displayed pages from emergency procedures and checklists.

(4) Retardation information including brake application for use in the investigation of landing overruns or rejected take offs; and

(5) Additional engine parameters (EPR, N1, EGT, fuel flow, etc.).

CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording

(a) Aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or after 8 April 2014 that have the capability to operate data link communications and are required to be equipped with a CVR, shall record on a recorder, where applicable:

(1) data link communication messages related to ATS communications to and from the aeroplane, including messages applying to the following applications:

(i) data link initiation;

(ii) controller–pilot communication;

(iii) addressed surveillance;

(iv) flight information;

(v) as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system, aircraft broadcast surveillance;

(vi) as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system, aircraft operational control data; and

(vii) as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system, graphics;

(2) information that enables correlation to any associated records related to data link communications and stored separately from the aeroplane; and

(3) information on the time and priority of data link communications messages, taking into account the system's architecture.

(b) The recorder shall use a digital method of recording and storing data and information and a method for retrieving that data. The recording method shall allow the data to match the data recorded on the ground.

(c) The recorder shall be capable of retaining data recorded for at least the same duration as set out for CVRs in CAT.IDE.A.185.

(d) The recorder shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

(e) The requirements applicable to the start and stop logic of the recorder are the same as the requirements applicable to the start and stop logic of the CVR contained in CAT.IDE.A.185 (d) and (e).

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording

GENERAL

(a) As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.A.195 (a), the recorder on which the data link messages are recorded may be:

(1) the CVR;

(2) the FDR;

(3) a combination recorder when CAT.IDE.A.200 is applicable; or

(4) a dedicated flight recorder. In that case, the operational performance requirements for this recorder should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.A.195 (a)(2), the operator should enable correlation by providing information that allows an accident investigator to understand what data were provided to the aeroplane and, when the provider identification is contained in the message, by which provider.

(c) The timing information associated with the data link communications messages required to be recorded by CAT.IDE.A.195 (a)(3) should be capable of being determined from the airborne-based recordings. This timing information should include at least the following:

(1) the time each message was generated;

(2) the time any message was available to be displayed by the crew;

(3) the time each message was actually displayed or recalled from a queue; and

(4) the time of each status change.

(d) The message priority should be recorded when it is defined by the protocol of the data link communication message being recorded.

(e) The expression 'taking into account the system architecture', in CAT.IDE.A.195 (a)(3), means that the recording of the specified information may be omitted if the existing source systems involved would require a major upgrade. The following should be considered:

(1) the extent of the modification required;

(2) the down-time period; and

(3) equipment software development.

The intention is that new designs of source systems should include this functionality and support the full recording of the required information.

(f) Data link communications messages that support the applications in Table 1 below should be recorded.

(g) Further details on the recording requirements can be found in the recording requirement matrix in Appendix D.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-93 (Minimum Aviation System Performance Specification for CNS/ATM Recorder Systems, dated November 1998).

Table 1: Applications

Item No	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
1	Data link initiation	This includes any application used to log on to, or initiate, a data link service. In future air navigation system (FANS)-1/A and air traffic navigation (ATN), these are ATS facilities notification (AFN) and context management (CM), respectively.	C
2	Controller/pilot communication	This includes any application used to exchange requests, clearances, instructions and reports between the flight crew and air traffic controllers. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application. It also includes applications used for the exchange of oceanic (OCL) and departure clearances (DCL) as well as data link delivery of taxi clearances.	C
3	Addressed surveillance	This includes any surveillance application in which the ground sets up contracts for delivery of surveillance data. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) application.	C, F2
4	Flight information	This includes any application used for delivery of flight information data to specific aeroplanes. This includes for example digital automatic terminal information service (D-ATIS), data link operational terminal information service (D-OTIS), digital weather information services (D-METAR or TWIP), data link flight information service (D-FIS), and Notice to Airmen (electronic NOTAM) delivery.	C
5	Aircraft broadcast surveillance	This includes elementary and enhanced surveillance systems, as well as automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast (ADS-B) output data.	M*, F2
6	Aeronautical operational control (AOC) data	This includes any application transmitting or receiving data used for AOC purposes (in accordance with the ICAO definition of AOC). Such systems may also process AAC messages, but there is no requirement to record AAC messages	M*
7	Graphics	This includes any application receiving graphical data to be used for operational purposes (i.e. excluding applications that are receiving such things as updates to manuals).	M* F1

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.195 Data link recording

DEFINITIONS AND ACRONYMS

(a) The letters and expressions in Table 1 of AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.195 have the following meaning:

C: complete contents recorded

M: information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.

*: Applications that are to be recorded only as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system.

F1: graphics applications may be considered as AOC messages when they are part of a data link communications application service run on an individual basis by the operator itself in the framework of the operational control.

F2: where parametric data sent by the aeroplane, such as Mode S, is reported within the message, it should be recorded unless data from the same source is recorded on the FDR.

(b) The definitions of the applications type in Table 1 of AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.195 are described in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Definitions of applications type

Item No	Application Type	Messages	Comments
1	CM		CM is an ATN service
2	AFN		AFN is a FANS 1/A service
3	CPDLC		All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
4	ADS-C	ADS-C reports	All contract requests and reports recorded
		Position reports	Only used within FANS 1/A. Only used in oceanic and remote areas.
5	ADS-B	Surveillance data	Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
6	D-FIS		D-FIS is an ATN service. All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
7	TWIP	TWIP messages	Terminal weather information for pilots
8	D-ATIS	ATIS messages	Refer to EUROCAE Document ED-89A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for the 'ATIS' Data Link Service
9	OCL	OCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE Document ED-106A dated March 2004. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Oceanic Clearance' Data Link Service
10	DCL	DCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE Document ED-85A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Departure Clearance' Data Link Service
11	Graphics	Weather maps & other graphics	Graphics exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
12	AOC	Aeronautical operational control messages	Messages exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane. Definition in EUROCAE Document ED-112, dated March 2003.
13	Surveillance	Downlinked aircraft parameters (DAP)	As defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV (Surveillance systems and ACAS).

AAC	aeronautical administrative communications
ADS-B	automatic dependent surveillance – broadcast
ADS-C	automatic dependent surveillance – contract
AFN	aircraft flight notification
AOC	aeronautical operational control
ATIS	automatic terminal information service
ATSC	air traffic service communication
CAP	controller access parameters
CPDLC	controller pilot data link communications
CM	configuration/context management
D-ATIS	digital ATIS
D-FIS	data link flight information service
D-METAR	data link meteorological airport report
DCL	departure clearance
FANS	Future Air Navigation System
FLIPCY	flight plan consistency
OCL	oceanic clearance
SAP	system access parameters
TWIP	terminal weather information for pilots

CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder

Compliance with CVR and FDR requirements may be achieved by:

(a) one flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder in the case of aeroplanes required to be equipped with a CVR or an FDR;

(b) one flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM of 5 700 kg or less and required to be equipped with a CVR and an FDR; or

(c) two flight data and cockpit voice combination recorders in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg and required to be equipped with a CVR and an FDR.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder

GENERAL

When two flight data and cockpit voice combination recorders are installed, one should be located near the flight crew compartment, in order to minimise the risk of data loss due to a failure of the wiring that gathers data to the recorder. The other should be located at the rear section of the aeroplane, in order to minimise the risk of data loss due to recorder damage in the case of a crash.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.200 Combination recorder

GENERAL

(a) A flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder is a flight recorder that records:

(1) all voice communications and aural environment required by CAT.IDE.A.185 regarding CVRs; and

(2) all parameters required by CAT.IDE.A.190 regarding FDRs,

with the same specifications required by those paragraphs.

(b) In addition a flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder may record data link communication messages and related information required by CAT.IDE.A.195.

CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with:

(1) a seat or berth for each person on board who is aged 24 months or more;

(2) a seat belt on each passenger seat and restraining belts for each berth except as specified in (3);

(3) a seat belt with upper torso restraint system on each passenger seat and restraining belts on each berth in the case of aeroplanes with an MCTOM of less than 5 700kg and with an MOPSC of less than nine, after 8 April 2015;

(4) a child restraint device (CRD) for each person on board younger than 24 months;

(5) a seat belt with upper torso restraint system incorporating a device that will automatically restrain the occupant's torso in the event of rapid deceleration:

(i) on each flight crew seat and on any seat alongside a pilot's seat;

(ii) on each observer seat located in the flight crew compartment;

(6) a seat belt with upper torso restraint system on each seat for the minimum required cabin crew.

(b) A seat belt with upper torso restraint system shall:

(1) have a single point release;

(2) on flight crew seats, on any seat alongside a pilot's seat and on the seats for the minimum required cabin crew, include two shoulder straps and a seat belt that may be used independently.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

CHILD RESTRAINT DEVICES (CRDS)

(a) A CRD is considered to be acceptable if:

(1) it is a 'supplementary loop belt' manufactured with the same techniques and the same materials as the approved safety belts; or

(2) it complies with (b).

(b) Provided the CRD can be installed properly on the respective aircraft seat, the following CRDs are considered acceptable:

(1) CRDs approved for use in aircraft by the competent authority on the basis of a technical standard and marked accordingly;

(2) CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles according to the UN standard ECE R 44, -03 or later series of amendments;

(3) CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Canadian CMVSS 213/213.1;

(4) CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to US FMVSS No 213 and manufactured to these standards on or after February 26, 1985. US approved CRDs manufactured after this date must bear the following labels in red letters:

(i) 'THIS CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS'; and

(ii) 'THIS RESTRAINT IS CERTIFIED FOR USE IN MOTOR VEHICLES AND AIRCRAFT';

(5) CRDs qualified for use in aircraft according to the German 'Qualification Procedure for Child Restraint Systems for Use in Aircraft' (TÜV Doc.: TÜV/958-01/2001); and

(6) devices approved for use in cars, manufactured and tested to standards equivalent to those listed above. The device should be marked with an associated qualification sign, which shows the name of the qualification organisation and a specific identification number, related to the associated qualification project. The qualifying organisation should be a competent and independent organisation that is acceptable to the competent authority.

(c) Location

(1) Forward facing CRDs may be installed on both forward and rearward facing passenger seats but only when fitted in the same direction as the passenger seat on which they are positioned. Rearward facing CRDs should only be installed on forward facing passenger seats. A CRD should not be installed within the radius of action of an airbag, unless it is obvious that the airbag is de-activated or it can be demonstrated that there is no negative impact from the airbag.

(2) An infant in a CRD should be located as near to a floor level exit as feasible.

(3) An infant in a CRD should not hinder evacuation for any passenger.

(4) An infant in a CRD should neither be located in the row (where rows are existing) leading to an emergency exit nor located in a row immediately forward or aft of an emergency exit. A window passenger seat is the preferred location. An aisle passenger seat or a cross aisle passenger seat that forms part of the evacuation route to exits is not recommended. Other locations may be acceptable provided the access of neighbour passengers to the nearest aisle is not obstructed by the CRD.

(5) In general, only one CRD per row segment is recommended. More than one CRD per row segment is allowed if the infants are from the same family or travelling group provided the infants are accompanied by a responsible adult sitting next to them.

(6) A row segment is the fraction of a row separated by two aisles or by one aisle and the aeroplane fuselage.

(d) Installation

(1) CRDs should only be installed on a suitable aeroplane seat with the type of connecting device they are approved or qualified for. E.g., CRDs to be connected by a three point harness only (most rearward facing baby CRDs currently available) should not be attached to an aeroplane seat with a lap belt only; a CRD designed to be attached to a vehicle seat only by means of rigid bar lower anchor-

ages (ISO-FIX or US equivalent), should only be used on aeroplane seats that are equipped with such connecting devices and should not be attached by the aeroplane seat lap belt. The method of connecting should be the one shown in the manufacturer's instructions provided with each CRD.

(2) All safety and installation instructions should be followed carefully by the responsible adult accompanying the infant. Cabin crew should prohibit the use of any inadequately installed CRD or not qualified seat.

(3) If a forward facing CRD with a rigid backrest is to be fastened by a lap belt, the restraint device should be fastened when the backrest of the passenger seat on which it rests is in a reclined position. Thereafter, the backrest is to be positioned upright. This procedure ensures better tightening of the CRD on the aircraft seat if the aircraft seat is reclinable.

(4) The buckle of the adult safety belt must be easily accessible for both opening and closing, and must be in line with the seat belt halves (not canted) after tightening.

(5) Forward facing restraint devices with an integral harness must not be installed such that the adult safety belt is secured over the infant.

(e) Operation

(1) Each CRD should remain secured to a passenger seat during all phases of flight, unless it is properly stowed when not in use.

(2) Where a CRD is adjustable in recline it must be in an upright position for all occasions when passenger restraint devices are required.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

UPPER TORSO RESTRAINT SYSTEM

An upper torso restraint system having three straps is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for restraint systems with two shoulder straps.

SAFETY BELT

A safety belt with diagonal shoulder strap (three anchorage points) is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for safety belts (two anchorage points).

AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

SEATS FOR MINIMUM REQUIRED CABIN CREW

(a) Seats for the minimum required cabin crew members should be located near required floor level emergency exits, except if the emergency evacuation of passengers would be enhanced by seating cabin crew members elsewhere. In this case other locations are acceptable.

(b) Such seats should be forward or rearward facing within 15° of the longitudinal axis of the aeroplane.

CAT.IDE.A.210 Fasten seat belt and no smoking signs

Aeroplanes in which not all passenger seats are visible from the flight crew seat(s) shall be equipped with a means of indicating to all passengers and cabin crew when seat belts shall be fastened and when smoking is not allowed.

CAT.IDE.A.215 Internal doors and curtains

Aeroplanes shall be equipped with:

(a) in the case of aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 19, a door between the passenger compartment and the flight crew compartment, with a placard indicating ‘crew only’ and a locking means to prevent passengers from opening it without the permission of a member of the flight crew;

(b) a readily accessible means for opening each door that separates a passenger compartment from another compartment that has emergency exits;

(c) a means for securing in the open position any doorway or curtain separating the passenger compartment from other areas that need to be accessed to reach any required emergency exit from any passenger seat;

(d) a placard on each internal door or adjacent to a curtain that is the means of access to a passenger emergency exit, to indicate that it must be secured open during take-off and landing; and

(e) a means for any member of the crew to unlock any door that is normally accessible to passengers and that can be locked by passengers.

CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with first-aid kits, in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1: Number of first-aid kits required

Number of passenger seats installed	Number of first-aid kits required
0 – 100	1
101 – 200	2
201 – 300	3
301 – 400	4
401 – 500	5
501 or more	6

(b) First-aid kits shall be:

(1) readily accessible for use; and

(2) kept up-to-date.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit

CONTENT OF FIRST-AID KITS

(a) First-aid kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits should be complemented by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers etc.).

(b) The following should be included in the first-aid kit:

(1) Equipment

(i) bandages (assorted sizes);

(ii) burns dressings (unspecified);

(iii) wound dressings (large and small);

(iv) adhesive dressings (assorted sizes);

(v) adhesive tape;

(vi) adhesive wound closures;

(vii) safety pins;

(viii) safety scissors;

(ix) antiseptic wound cleaner;

(x) disposable resuscitation aid;

(xi) disposable gloves;

(xii) tweezers: splinter; and

(xiii) thermometers (non-mercury).

(2) Medications

(i) simple analgesic (may include liquid form);

(ii) antiemetic;

(iii) nasal decongestant;

(iv) gastrointestinal antacid, in the case of aeroplanes carrying more than nine passengers;

(v) anti-diarrhoeal medication, in the case of aeroplanes carrying more than nine passengers; and

(vi) antihistamine.

(3) Other

(i) a list of contents in at least two languages (English and one other). This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried;

(ii) first-aid handbook, current edition;

(iii) medical incident report form;

(iv) biohazard disposal bags.

(4) An eye irrigator, whilst not required to be carried in the first-aid kit, should, where possible, be available for use on the ground.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.220 First-aid kit

MAINTENANCE OF FIRST-AID KITS

To be kept up to date, first-aid kits should be:

(a) inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use;

(b) replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant; and

(c) replenished after use in-flight at the first opportunity where replacement items are available.

CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

(a) Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 30 shall be equipped with an emergency medical kit when any point on the planned route is more than 60 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed from an aerodrome at which qualified medical assistance could be expected to be available.

(b) The commander shall ensure that drugs are only administered by appropriately qualified persons.

(c) The emergency medical kit referred to in (a) shall be:

(1) dust and moisture proof;

(2) carried in a way that prevents unauthorised access; and

(3) kept up-to-date.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

CONTENT OF EMERGENCY MEDICAL KIT

(a) Emergency medical kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits should be complemented by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers etc.).

(b) The following should be included in the emergency medical kit:

(1) Equipment

(i) sphygmomanometer – non mercury;

(ii) stethoscope;

(iii) syringes and needles;

(iv) intravenous cannulae (if intravenous fluids are carried in the first-aid kit a sufficient supply of intravenous cannulae should be stored there as well);

(v) oropharyngeal airways (three sizes);

(vi) tourniquet;

(vii) disposable gloves;

(viii) needle disposal box;

(ix) one or more urinary catheter(s), appropriate for either sex, and anaesthetic gel.;

(x) basic delivery kit;

(xi) bag-valve masks (masks two sizes: one for adults, one for children);

(xii) intubation set;

(xiii) aspirator;

(xiv) blood glucose testing equipment; and

(xv) scalpel.

(2) Instructions: the instructions should contain a list of contents (medications in trade names and generic names) in at least two languages (English and one other).This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried. There should also be basic instructions for use of the medications in the kit and ACLS cards (summarising and depicting the current algorithm for advanced cardiac life support).

(3) Medications

(i) coronary vasodilator e.g. glyceriltrinitrate-oral;

(ii) antispasmodic

(iii) epinephrine/adrenaline 1:1 000 (if a cardiac monitor is carried);

(iv) adrenocorticoid – injectable;

(v) major analgesic;

(vi) diuretic – injectable;

(vii) antihistamine – oral and injectable;

(viii) sedative/anticonvulsant – injectable, rectal and oral sedative;

(ix) medication for hypoglycaemia (e.g. hypertonic glucose);

(x) antiemetic;

(xi) atropine – injectable;

(xii) bronchial dilator – injectable or inhaled;

(xiii) IV fluids in appropriate quantity e.g. sodiumchloride 0.9 % (minimum 250 ml);

(xiv) acetylsalicylic acid 300 mg – oral and / or injectable;

(xv) antiarrhythmic – if a cardiac monitor is carried;

(xvi) antihypertensive medication;

(xvii) beta-blocker – oral.

* Epinephrine/Adrenaline 1:10 000 can be a dilution of epinephrine 1:1 000

(4) The carriage of an automated external defibrillator should be determined by the operator on the basis of a risk assessment taking into account the particular needs of the operation.

(5) The automated external defibrillator should be carried on the aircraft, though not necessarily in the emergency medical kit.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

CARRIAGE UNDER SECURITY CONDITIONS

The emergency medical kit should be kept in under secure conditions, either in the flight crew compartment or in another locked compartment.

AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

ACCESS TO EMERGENCY MEDICAL KIT

(a) When the actual situation on board so requires, the commander should limit access to the emergency medical kit.

(b) Drugs should be administered by medical doctors, qualified nurses, paramedics or emergency medical technicians.

(c) Medical students, student paramedics, student emergency medical technicians or nurses aids should only administer drugs if no person mentioned in (b) is on board the flight and appropriate advice has been received.

(d) Oral drugs should not be denied in medical emergency situations where no medically qualified persons are on board the flight.

AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.225 Emergency medical kit

MAINTENANCE OF EMERGENCY MEDICAL KIT

To be kept up to date the emergency medical kit should be:

(a) inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that the contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use;

(b) replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant; and

(c) replenished after use-in-flight at the first opportunity where replacement items are available.

CAT.IDE.A.230 First-aid oxygen

(a) Pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 25 000 ft, in the case of operations for which a cabin crew member is required, shall be equipped with a supply of undiluted oxygen for passengers who, for physiological reasons, might require oxygen following a cabin depressurisation.

(b) The oxygen supply referred to in (a) shall be calculated using an average flow rate of at least 3 litres standard temperature pressure dry (STPD)/minute/person. This oxygen supply shall be sufficient for the remainder of the flight after cabin depressurisation when the cabin altitude exceeds 8 000 ft but does not exceed 15 000 ft, for at least 2% of the passengers carried, but in no case for less than one person.

(c) There shall be a sufficient number of dispensing units, but in no case less than two, with a means for cabin crew to use the supply.

(d) The first-aid oxygen equipment shall be capable of generating a mass flow to each user of at least 4 litres STPD per minute.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.230 First-aid oxygen

GENERAL

(a) First-aid oxygen is intended for those passengers who still need to breath oxygen when the amount of supplemental oxygen required under CAT.IDE.A.235 or CAT.IDE.A.240 has been exhausted.

(b) When calculating the amount of first-aid oxygen, the operator should take into account the fact that, following a cabin depressurisation, supplemental oxygen as calculated in accordance with Table 1 of CAT.IDE.A.235 and Table 1 of CAT.IDE.A.240 should be sufficient to cope with potential effects of hypoxia for:

(1) all passengers when the cabin altitude is above 15 000 ft;

(2) at least 30 % of the passengers, for any period when, in the event of loss of pressurisation and taking into account the circumstances of the flight, the pressure altitude in the passenger compartment will be between 14 000 ft and 15 000 ft; and

(3) at least 10 % of the passengers for any period in excess of 30 minutes when the pressure altitude in the passenger compartment will be between 10 000 ft and 14 000 ft.

(c) For the above reasons, the amount of first-aid oxygen should be calculated for the part of the flight after cabin depressurisation during which the cabin altitude is between 8 000 ft and 15 000 ft, when supplemental oxygen may no longer be available.

(d) Moreover, following cabin depressurisation an emergency descent should be carried out to the lowest altitude compatible with the safety of the flight. In addition, in these circumstances, the aeroplane should land at the first available aerodrome at the earliest opportunity.

(e) The conditions above may reduce the period of time during which the first-aid oxygen may be required and consequently may limit the amount of first-aid oxygen to be carried on board.

(f) Means may be provided to decrease the flow to not less than 2 litres per minute, STPD, at any altitude.

CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen — pressurised aeroplanes

(a) Pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft shall be equipped with supplemental oxygen equipment that is capable of storing and dispensing the oxygen supplies in accordance with Table 1.

(b) Pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 25 000 ft shall be equipped with:

(1) quick donning types of masks for flight crew members;

(2) sufficient spare outlets and masks or portable oxygen units with masks distributed evenly throughout the passenger compartment, to ensure immediate availability of oxygen for use by each required cabin crew member;

(3) an oxygen dispensing unit connected to oxygen supply terminals immediately available to each cabin crew member, additional crew member and occupants of passenger seats, wherever seated; and

(4) a device to provide a warning indication to the flight crew of any loss of pressurisation.

(c) In the case of pressurised aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA after 8 November 1998 and operated at pressure altitudes above 25 000 ft, or operated at pressure altitudes at, or below 25 000 ft under conditions that would not allow them to descend safely to 13 000 ft within 4 minutes, the individual oxygen dispensing units referred to in (b)(3) shall be automatically deployable.

(d) The total number of dispensing units and outlets referred to in (b)(3) and (c) shall exceed the number of seats by at least 10%. The extra units shall be evenly distributed throughout the passenger compartment.

(e) Notwithstanding (a), the oxygen supply requirements for cabin crew member(s), additional crew member(s) and passenger(s), in the case of aeroplanes not certified to fly at altitudes above 25 000 ft, may be reduced to the entire flying time between 10 000 ft and 13 000 ft cabin pressure altitudes for all required cabin crew members and for at least 10% of the passengers if, at all points along the route to be flown, the aeroplane is able to descend safely within 4 minutes to a cabin pressure altitude of 13 000 ft.

(f) The required minimum supply in Table 1, row 1 item (b)(1) and row 2, shall cover the quantity of oxygen necessary for a constant rate of descent from the aeroplane's maximum certified operating altitude to 10 000 ft in 10 minutes and followed by 20 minutes at 10 000 ft.

(g) The required minimum supply in Table 1, row 1 item 1(b)(2), shall cover the quantity of oxygen necessary for a constant rate of descent from the aeroplane's maximum certified operating altitude to 10 000 ft in 10 minutes followed by 110 minutes at 10 000 ft.

(h) The required minimum supply in Table 1, row 3, shall cover the quantity of oxygen necessary for a constant rate of descent from the aeroplane's maximum certified operating altitude to 15 000 ft in 10 minutes.

Table 1: Oxygen minimum requirements for pressurised aeroplanes

Supply for:	Duration and cabin pressure altitude
1) Occupants of flight crew compartment seats on flight crew compartment duty	(a) The entire flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 13 000 ft. (b) The remainder of the flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 10 000 ft but does not exceed 13 000 ft, after the initial 30 minutes at these altitudes, but in no case less than: (1) 30 minutes' supply for aeroplanes certified to fly at altitudes not exceeding 25 000 ft; and (2) 2 hours' supply for aeroplanes certified to fly at altitudes of more than 25 000 ft.

Supply for:	Duration and cabin pressure altitude
2) Required cabin crew members	(a) The entire flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 13 000 ft, but not less than 30 minutes' supply. (b) The remainder of the flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 10 000 ft but does not exceed 13 000 ft, after the initial 30 minutes at these altitudes.
3) 100% of passengers *	The entire flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 15 000 ft, but in no case less than 10 minutes' supply.
4) 30% of passengers *	The entire flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 14 000 ft but does not exceed 15 000 ft.
5) 10% of passengers *	The remainder of the flying time when the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 10 000 ft but does not exceed 14 000 ft, after the initial 30 minutes at these altitudes.

* Passenger numbers in Table 1 refer to passengers actually carried on board, including persons younger than 24 months.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

DETERMINATION OF OXYGEN

(a) In the determination of the amount of supplemental oxygen required for the routes to be flown, it is assumed that the aeroplane will descend in accordance with the emergency procedures specified in the operations manual, without exceeding its operating limitations, to a flight altitude that will allow the flight to be completed safely (i.e. flight altitudes ensuring adequate terrain clearance, navigational accuracy, hazardous weather avoidance etc.).

(b) The amount of supplemental oxygen should be determined on the basis of cabin pressure altitude, flight duration and on the assumption that a cabin pressurisation failure will occur at the pressure altitude or point of flight that is most critical from the standpoint of oxygen need.

(c) Following a cabin pressurisation failure, the cabin pressure altitude should be considered to be the same as the aeroplane pressure altitude, unless it can be demonstrated to the competent authority that no probable failure of the cabin or pressurisation system will result in a cabin pressure altitude equal to the aeroplane pressure altitude. Under these circumstances, the demonstrated maximum cabin pressure altitude may be used as a basis for determination of oxygen supply.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.235 Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

OXYGEN REQUIREMENTS FOR FLIGHT CREW COMPARTMENT SEAT OCCUPANTS AND CABIN CREW IN ADDITION TO THE REQUIRED MINIMUM NUMBER OF CABIN CREW

(a) For the purpose of supplemental oxygen supply, flight crew compartment seat occupants who are:

 (1) supplied with oxygen from the flight crew source of oxygen should be considered as flight crew members; and

 (2) not supplied with oxygen by the flight crew source of oxygen should be considered as passengers.

(b) Cabin crew members in addition to the minimum number of cabin crew and additional crew members should be considered as passengers for the purpose of supplemental oxygen supply.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.235(e) Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

AEROPLANES NOT CERTIFIED TO FLY ABOVE 25 000 FT

(a) With respect to CAT.IDE.A.235 (e) the maximum altitude up to which an aeroplane can operate without a passenger oxygen system being installed and capable of providing oxygen to each cabin occupant, should be established using an emergency descent profile that takes into account the following conditions:

 (1) 17 seconds' time delay for pilot's recognition and reaction, including mask donning, for trouble shooting and configuring the aeroplane for the emergency descent (emergency descent data/charts established by the aeroplane manufacturer and published in the aircraft flight manual (AFM), and/or the AFM should be used to ensure uniform application of the option); and

 (2) maximum operational speed (V_{MO}) or the airspeed approved in the AFM for emergency descent, (emergency descent data/charts established by the aeroplane manufacturer and published in the AFM, and/or AFM should be used to ensure uniform application of the option), whichever is the less;

(b) On routes where oxygen is necessary to be carried for 10 % of the passengers for the flight time between 10 000 ft and 13 000 ft, the oxygen should be provided either by:

 (1) a plug-in or drop-out oxygen system with sufficient outlets and dispensing units uniformly distributed throughout the cabin so as to provide oxygen to each passenger at his/her own discretion when seated on his/her assigned seat; or

 (2) portable bottles, when a cabin crew member is required on board such flight.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.235(b)(1) Supplemental oxygen – pressurised aeroplanes

QUICK DONNING MASKS

A quick donning mask is a type of mask that:

(a) can be placed on the face from its ready position, properly secured, sealed and supplying oxygen upon demand, with one hand and within 5 seconds and will thereafter remain in position, both hands being free;

(b) can be donned without disturbing eye glasses and without delaying the flight crew member from proceeding with assigned emergency duties;

(c) once donned, does not prevent immediate communication between the flight crew members and other crew members over the aircraft intercommunication system; and

(d) does not inhibit radio communications.

CAT.IDE.A.240 Supplemental oxygen — non-pressurised aeroplanes

Non-pressurised aeroplanes operated at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft shall be equipped with supplemental oxygen equipment capable of storing and dispensing the oxygen supplies in accordance with Table 1.

Table 1: Oxygen minimum requirements for non-pressurised aeroplanes

Supply for:	Duration and cabin pressure altitude
Occupants of flight crew compartment seats on flight crew compartment duty and crew members assisting flight crew in their duties	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft.
Required cabin crew members	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft and for any period exceeding 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000 ft.
Additional crew members and 100% of passengers *	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft.
10% of passengers *	The entire flying time after 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000 ft.

* Passenger numbers in Table 1 refer to passengers actually carried on board, including persons younger than 24 months.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.240 Supplemental oxygen – non-pressurised aeroplanes

AMOUNT OF SUPPLEMENTAL OXYGEN

The amount of supplemental oxygen for sustenance for a particular operation should be determined on the basis of flight altitudes and flight duration, consistent with the operating procedures, including emergency procedures, established for each operation and the routes to be flown, as specified in the operations manual.

CAT.IDE.A.245 Crew protective breathing equipment

(a) All pressurised aeroplanes and those unpressurised aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or having an MOPSC of more than 19 seats shall be equipped with protective breathing equipment (PBE) to protect the eyes, nose and mouth and to provide for a period of at least 15 minutes:

(1) oxygen for each flight crew member on duty in the flight crew compartment;

(2) breathing gas for each required cabin crew member, adjacent to his/her assigned station; and

(3) breathing gas from a portable PBE for one member of the flight crew, adjacent to his/her assigned station, in the case of aeroplanes operated with a flight crew of more than one and no cabin crew member.

(b) A PBE intended for flight crew use shall be installed in the flight crew compartment and be accessible for immediate use by each required flight crew member at his/her assigned station.

(c) A PBE intended for cabin crew use shall be installed adjacent to each required cabin crew member station.

(d) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with an additional portable PBE installed adjacent to the hand fire extinguisher referred to in CAT.IDE.A.250, or adjacent to the entrance of the cargo compartment, in case the hand fire extinguisher is installed in a cargo compartment.

(e) A PBE while in use shall not prevent the use of the means of communication referred to in CAT.IDE.A.170, CAT.IDE.A.175, CAT.IDE.A.270 and CAT.IDE.A.330.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.245 Crew protective breathing equipment

PROTECTIVE BREATHING EQUIPMENT (PBE)

The supply for PBE for the flight crew members may be provided by the supplemental oxygen required in CAT.IDE.A.235 or CAT.IDE.A.240.

CAT.IDE.A.250 Hand fire extinguishers

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with at least one hand fire extinguisher in the flight crew compartment.

(b) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be located in, or readily accessible for use in, each galley not located on the main passenger compartment.

(c) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be available for use in each class A or class B cargo or baggage compartment and in each class E cargo compartment that is accessible to crew members in flight.

(d) The type and quantity of extinguishing agent for the required fire extinguishers shall be suitable for the type of fire likely to occur in the compartment where the extinguisher is intended to be used and to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentration in compartments occupied by persons.

(e) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with at least a number of hand fire extinguishers in accordance with Table 1, conveniently located to provide adequate availability for use in each passenger compartment.

Table 1: Number of hand fire extinguishers

MOPSC	Number of extinguishers
7 – 30	1
31 – 60	2
61 – 200	3
201 – 300	4
301 – 400	5
401 – 500	6
501 – 600	7
601 or more	8

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.250 Hand fire extinguishers

NUMBER, LOCATION AND TYPE

(a) The number and location of hand fire extinguishers should be such as to provide adequate availability for use, account being taken of the number and size of the passenger compartments, the need to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentrations and the location of lavatories, galleys, etc. These considerations may result in a number of fire extinguishers greater than the minimum required.

(b) There should be at least one hand fire extinguisher installed in the flight crew compartment and this should be suitable for fighting both flammable fluid and electrical equipment fires. Additional hand fire extinguishers may be required for the protection of other compartments accessible to the crew in flight. Dry chemical fire extinguishers should not be used in the flight crew compartment, or in any compartment not separated by a partition from the flight crew compartment, because of the adverse effect on vision during discharge and, if conductive, interference with electrical contacts by the chemical residues.

(c) Where only one hand fire extinguisher is required in the passenger compartments it should be located near the cabin crew member's station, where provided.

(d) Where two or more hand fire extinguishers are required in the passenger compartments and their location is not otherwise dictated by consideration of CAT.IDE.A.250 (b), an extinguisher should be located near each end of the cabin with the remainder distributed throughout the cabin as evenly as is practicable.

(e) Unless an extinguisher is clearly visible, its location should be indicated by a placard or sign. Appropriate symbols may also be used to supplement such a placard or sign.

CAT.IDE.A.255 Crash axe and crowbar

(a) Aeroplanes with an MCTOM of more than 5 700 kg or with an MOPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with at least one crash axe or crowbar located in the flight crew compartment.

(b) In the case of aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 200, an additional crash axe or crowbar shall be installed in or near the rearmost galley area.

(c) Crash axes and crowbars located in the passenger compartment shall not be visible to passengers.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.255 Crash axe and crowbar

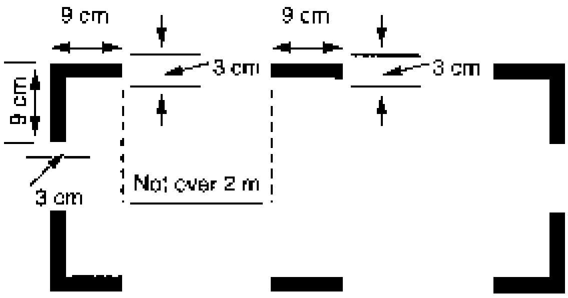
STORAGE OF CRASH AXES AND CROWBARS

Crash axes and crowbars located in the passenger compartment should be stored in a position not visible to passengers.

CAT.IDE.A.260 Marking of break-in points

If areas of the aeroplane's fuselage suitable for break-in by rescue crews in an emergency are marked, such areas shall be marked as shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Marking of break-in points



AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.260 Marking of break-in points

MARKINGS – COLOUR AND CORNERS

(a) The colour of the markings should be red or yellow and, if necessary, should be outlined in white to contrast with the background.

(b) If the corner markings are more than 2 m apart, intermediate lines 9 cm x 3 cm should be inserted so that there is no more than 2 m between adjacent markings.

CAT.IDE.A.265 Means for emergency evacuation

(a) Aeroplanes with passenger emergency exit sill heights of more than 1.83 m (6 ft) above the ground shall be equipped at each of those exits with a means to enable passengers and crew to reach the ground safely in an emergency.

(b) Notwithstanding (a), such means are not required at overwing exits if the designated place on the aeroplane structure at which the escape route terminates is less than 1.83 m (6 ft) from the ground with the aeroplane on the ground, the landing gear extended, and the flaps in the take-off or landing position, whichever flap position is higher from the ground.

(c) Aeroplanes required to have a separate emergency exit for the flight crew for which the lowest point of the emergency exit is more than 1.83 m (6 ft) above the ground shall have a means to assist all flight crew members in descending to reach the ground safely in an emergency.

(d) The heights referred to in (a) and (c) shall be measured:

(1) with the landing gear extended; and

(2) after the collapse of, or failure to extend of, one or more legs of the landing gear, in the case of aeroplanes with a type certificate issued after 31 March 2000.

CAT.IDE.A.270 Megaphones

Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 60 and carrying at least one passenger shall be equipped with the following quantities of portable battery-powered megaphones readily accessible for use by crew members during an emergency evacuation:

(a) For each passenger deck:

Table 1: Number of megaphones

Passenger seating configuration	Number of megaphones
61 to 99	1
100 or more	2

For aeroplanes with more than one passenger deck, in all cases when the total passenger seating configuration is more than 60, at least one megaphone.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.270 Megaphones

LOCATION OF MEGAPHONES

(a) Where one megaphone is required, it should be readily accessible at the assigned seat of a cabin crew member or crew members other than flight crew.

(b) Where two or more megaphones are required, they should be suitably distributed in the passenger compartment(s) and readily accessible to crew members assigned to direct emergency evacuations.

(c) This does not necessarily require megaphones to be positioned such that they can be physically reached by a crew member when strapped in a cabin crew member's seat.

CAT.IDE.A.275 Emergency lighting and marking

(a) Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with an emergency lighting system having an independent power supply to facilitate the evacuation of the aeroplane.

(b) In the case of aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 19, the emergency lighting system, referred to in (a) shall include:

(1) sources of general cabin illumination;

(2) internal lighting in floor level emergency exit areas;

(3) illuminated emergency exit marking and locating signs;

(4) in the case of aeroplanes for which the application for the type certificate or equivalent was filed before 1 May 1972, when operated by night, exterior emergency lighting at all overwing exits and at exits where descent assist means are required;

(5) in the case of aeroplanes for which the application for the type certificate or equivalent was filed after 30 April 1972, when operated by night, exterior emergency lighting at all passenger emergency exits; and

(6) in the case of aeroplanes for which the type certificate was first issued on or after 31 December 1957, floor proximity emergency escape path marking system(s) in the passenger compartments.

(c) In the case of aeroplanes with an MOPSC of 19 or less and type certified on the basis of the Agency's airworthiness codes, the emergency lighting system, referred to in (a) shall include the equipment referred to in (b)(1) to (3).

(d) In the case of aeroplanes with an MOPSC of 19 or less that are not certified on the basis of the Agency's airworthiness codes, the emergency lighting system, referred to in (a) shall include the equipment referred to in (b)(1).

(e) Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of nine or less, operated at night, shall be equipped with a source of general cabin illumination to facilitate the evacuation of the aeroplane.

CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

(a) Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with at least:

(1) two ELTs, one of which shall be automatic, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA after 1 July 2008; or

(2) one automatic ELT or two ELTs of any type, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or before 1 July 2008.

(b) Aeroplanes with an MOPSC of 19 or less shall be equipped with at least:

(1) one automatic ELT, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA after 1 July 2008; or

(2) one ELT of any type, in the case of aeroplanes first issued with an individual CofA on or before 1 July 2008.

(c) An ELT of any type shall be capable of transmitting simultaneously on 121.5 MHz and 406 MHz.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT BATTERIES

Batteries used in the ELTs should be replaced (or recharged, if the battery is rechargeable) when the equipment has been in use for more than 1 cumulative hour, and also when 50 % of their useful life (or for rechargeable, 50 % of their useful life of charge), as established by the equipment manufacturer has expired. The new expiry date for the replacement (or recharged) battery should be legibly marked on the outside of the equipment. The battery useful life (or useful life of charge) requirements of this paragraph do not apply to batteries (such as water-activated batteries) that are essentially unaffected during probable storage intervals.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TYPES OF ELT AND GENERAL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(a) The ELT required by this provision should be one of the following:

(1) Automatic fixed (ELT(AF)). An automatically activated ELT that is permanently attached to an aeroplane and is designed to aid search and rescue (SAR) teams in locating the crash site.

(2) Automatic portable (ELT(AP)). An automatically activated ELT, that is rigidly attached to an aeroplane before a crash, but is readily removable from the aeroplane after a crash. It functions as an ELT during the crash sequence. If the ELT(AP) does not employ an integral antenna, the aeroplane-mounted antenna may be disconnected and an auxiliary antenna (stored on the ELT case) attached to the ELT. The ELT can be tethered to a survivor or a life-raft. This type of ELT is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site or survivor(s).

(3) Automatic deployable (ELT(AD))an ELT that is rigidly attached to the aeroplane before the crash and that is automatically ejected, deployed and activated by an impact, and, in some cases, also by hydrostatic sensors. Manual deployment is also provided. This type of ELT should float in water and is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site.

(4) Survival ELT (ELT(S)). An ELT that is removable from an aeroplane, stowed so as to facilitate its ready use in an emergency, and manually activated by a survivor. An ELT(S) may be activated manually or automatically (e.g. by water activation). It should be designed either to be tethered to a life-raft or a survivor.

(b) To minimise the possibility of damage in the event of crash impact, the automatic ELT should be rigidly fixed to the aeroplane structure, as far aft as is practicable, with its antenna and connections arranged so as to maximise the probability of the signal being transmitted after a crash.

(c) Any ELT carried should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III communications systems and should be registered with the national agency responsible for initiating search and rescue or other nominated agency.

CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water

(a) The following aeroplanes shall be equipped with a life-jacket for each person on board or equivalent flotation device for each person on board younger than 24 months, stowed in a position that is readily accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided:

(1) landplanes operated over water at a distance of more than 50 NM from the shore or taking off or landing at an aerodrome where the take-off or approach path is so disposed over water that there would be a likelihood of a ditching; and

(2) seaplanes operated over water.

(b) Each life-jacket or equivalent individual flotation device shall be equipped with a means of electric illumination for the purpose of facilitating the location of persons.

(c) Seaplanes operated over water shall be equipped with:

(1) a sea anchor and other equipment necessary to facilitate mooring, anchoring or manoeuvring the seaplane on water, appropriate to its size, weight and handling characteristics; and

(2) equipment for making the sound signals as prescribed in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, where applicable.

(d) Aeroplanes operated over water at a distance away from land suitable for making an emergency landing, greater than that corresponding to:

(1) 120 minutes at cruising speed or 400 NM, whichever is the lesser, in the case of aeroplanes capable of continuing the flight to an aerodrome with the critical engine(s) becoming inoperative at any point along the route or planned diversions; or

(2) for all other aeroplanes, 30 minutes at cruising speed or 100 NM, whichever is the lesser,

shall be equipped with the equipment specified in (e).

(e) Aeroplanes complying with (d) shall carry the following equipment:

(1) life-rafts in sufficient numbers to carry all persons on board, stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in an emergency, and being of sufficient size to accommodate all the survivors in the event of a loss of one raft of the largest rated capacity;

(2) a survivor locator light in each life-raft;

(3) life-saving equipment to provide the means for sustaining life, as appropriate for the flight to be undertaken; and

(4) at least two survival ELTs (ELT(S)).

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.285 Flight over water

LIFE–RAFTS AND EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING DISTRESS SIGNALS

(a) The following should be readily available with each life-raft:

(1) means for maintaining buoyancy;

(2) a sea anchor:

(3) life-lines and means of attaching one life-raft to another;

(4) paddles for life-rafts with a capacity of six or less;

(5) means of protecting the occupants from the elements;

(6) a water-resistant torch;

(7) signalling equipment to make the pyrotechnic distress signals described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air;

(8) 100 g of glucose tablets for each four, or fraction of four, persons that the life-raft is designed to carry:

(9) at least 2 litres of drinkable water provided in durable containers or means of making sea water drinkable or a combination of both; and

(10) first-aid equipment.

(b) As far as practicable, items listed in (a) should be contained in a pack.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.285(e)(4)&CAT.IDE.A.305(a)(2) Flight over water & Survival equipment

SURVIVAL ELT

An ELT(AP) may be used to replace one required ELT(S) provided that it meets the ELT(S) requirements. A water-activated ELT(S) is not an ELT(AP).

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.285(a) Flight over water

ACCESSIBILITY OF LIFE-JACKETS

The life-jacket should be accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, with a safety belt or restraint system fastened.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.285(a) Flight over water

ELECTRIC ILLUMINATION OF LIFE-JACKETS

The means of electric illumination should be a survivor locator light as defined in the applicable ETSO issued by the Agency or equivalent.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.285(a) Flight over water

SEAT CUSHIONS

Seat cushions are not considered to be flotation devices.

CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

(a) Aeroplanes operated over areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult shall be equipped with:

(1) signalling equipment to make the distress signals;

(2) at least one ELT(S); and

(3) additional survival equipment for the route to be flown taking account of the number of persons on board.

(b) The additional survival equipment specified in (a)(3) does not need to be carried when the aeroplane:

(1) remains within a distance from an area where search and rescue is not especially difficult corresponding to:

(i) 120 minutes at one-engine-inoperative (OEI) cruising speed for aeroplanes capable of continuing the flight to an aerodrome with the critical engine(s) becoming inoperative at any point along the route or planned diversion routes; or

(ii) 30 minutes at cruising speed for all other aeroplanes;

(2) remains within a distance no greater than that corresponding to 90 minutes at cruising speed from an area suitable for making an emergency landing, for aeroplanes certified in accordance with the applicable airworthiness standard.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

ADDITIONAL SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT

(a) The following additional survival equipment should be carried when required:

(1) 2 litres of drinkable water for each 50, or fraction of 50, persons on board provided in durable containers;

(2) one knife;

(3) first-aid equipment; and

(4) one set of air/ground codes;

(b) In addition, when polar conditions are expected, the following should be carried:

(1) a means for melting snow;

(2) one snow shovel and one ice saw;

(3) sleeping bags for use by 1/3 of all persons on board and space blankets for the remainder or space blankets for all passengers on board; and

(4) one arctic/polar suit for each crew member.

(c) If any item of equipment contained in the above list is already carried on board the aeroplane in accordance with another requirement, there is no need for this to be duplicated.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.305(b)(2) Survival equipment

APPLICABLE AIRWORTHINESS STANDARD

The applicable airworthiness standard should be CS-25 or equivalent.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

SIGNALLING EQUIPMENT

The signalling equipment for making distress signals is described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air.

GM2 CAT.IDE.A.305 Survival equipment

AREAS IN WHICH SEARCH AND RESCUE WOULD BE ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT

The expression 'areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult' should be interpreted, in this context, as meaning:

(a) areas so designated by the authority responsible for managing search and rescue; or

(b) areas that are largely uninhabited and where:

 (1) the authority referred to in (a) has not published any information to confirm whether search and rescue would be or would not be especially difficult; and

 (2) the authority referred to in (a) does not, as a matter of policy, designate areas as being especially difficult for search and rescue.

CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with a headset with a boom or throat microphone or equivalent for each flight crew member at their assigned station in the flight crew compartment.

(b) Aeroplanes operated under IFR or at night shall be equipped with a transmit button on the manual pitch and roll control for each required flight crew member.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset

GENERAL

(a) A headset consists of a communication device that includes two earphones to receive and a microphone to transmit audio signals to the aeroplane's communication system. To comply with the minimum performance requirements, the earphones and microphone should match the communication system's characteristics and the flight crew compartment environment. The headset should be sufficiently adjustable to fit the pilot's head. Headset boom microphones should be of the noise cancelling type.

(b) If the intention is to utilise noise cancelling earphones, the operator should ensure that the earphones do not attenuate any aural warnings or sounds necessary for alerting the flight crew on matters related to the safe operation of the aeroplane.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.325 Headset

GENERAL

The term 'headset' includes any aviation helmet incorporating headphones and microphone worn by a flight crew member.

CAT.IDE.A.330 Radio communication equipment

(a) Aeroplanes shall be equipped with the radio communication equipment required by the applicable airspace requirements.

(b) The radio communication equipment shall provide for communication on the aeronautical emergency frequency 121.5 MHz.

CAT.IDE.A.335 Audio selector panel

Aeroplanes operated under IFR shall be equipped with an audio selector panel operable from each required flight crew member station.

CAT.IDE.A.340 Radio equipment for operations under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks

Aeroplanes operated under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks shall be equipped with radio communication equipment necessary under normal radio propagation conditions to fulfil the following:

(a) communicate with appropriate ground stations;

(b) communicate with appropriate ATC stations from any point in controlled airspace within which flights are intended; and

(c) receive meteorological information.

CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

(a) Aeroplanes operated under IFR or under VFR over routes that cannot be navigated by reference to visual landmarks shall be equipped with radio communication and navigation equipment in accordance with the applicable airspace requirements.

(b) Radio communication equipment shall include at least two independent radio communication systems necessary under normal operating conditions to communicate with an appropriate ground station from any point on the route, including diversions.

(c) Notwithstanding (b), aeroplanes operated for short haul operations in the North Atlantic minimum navigation performance specifications (NAT MNPS) airspace and not crossing the North Atlantic shall be equipped with at least one long range communication system, in case alternative communication procedures are published for the airspace concerned.

(d) Aeroplanes shall have sufficient navigation equipment to ensure that, in the event of the failure of one item of equipment at any stage of the flight, the remaining equipment shall allow safe navigation in accordance with the flight plan.

(e) Aeroplanes operated on flights in which it is intended to land in IMC shall be equipped with suitable equipment capable of providing guidance to a point from which a visual landing can be performed for each aerodrome at which it is intended to land in IMC and for any designated alternate aerodrome.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

TWO INDEPENDENT MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

Whenever two independent means of communication are required, each system should have an independent antenna installation, except where rigidly supported non-wire antennae or other antenna installations of equivalent reliability are used.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

ACCEPTABLE NUMBER AND TYPE OF COMMUNICATION AND NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT

(a) An acceptable number and type of communication and navigation equipment is:

  (1) one VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) receiving system, one automatic direction finder (ADF) system, one distance measuring equipment (DME), except that an ADF system need not be installed provided that the use of ADF is not required in any phase of the planned flight;

  (2) one instrument landing system (ILS) or microwave landing system (MLS) where ILS or MLS is required for approach navigation purposes;

  (3) one marker beacon receiving system where a marker beacon is required for approach navigation purposes;

  (4) area navigation equipment when area navigation is required for the route being flown (e.g. equipment required by Part-SPA);

  (5) an additional DME system on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on DME signals;

  (6) an additional VOR receiving system on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on VOR signals; and

  (7) an additional ADF system on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on non-directional beacon (NDB) signals.

(b) Aeroplanes may be operated without the navigation equipment specified in (6) and (7) provided they are equipped with alternative equipment. The reliability and the accuracy of alternative equipment should allow safe navigation for the intended route.

(c) The operator conducting extended range operations with two-engined aeroplanes (ETOPS) should ensure that the aeroplanes have a communication means capable of communicating with an appropriate ground station at normal and planned contingency altitudes. For ETOPS routes where voice communication facilities are available, voice communications should be provided. For all ETOPS operations beyond 180 minutes, reliable communication technology, either voice-based or data link, should be installed. Where voice communication facilities are not available and where voice communication is not possible or is of poor quality, communications using alternative systems should be ensured.

(d) To perform IFR operations without an ADF system installed, the operator should consider the following guidelines on equipment carriage, operational procedures and training criteria.

  (1) ADF equipment may only be removed from or not installed in an aeroplane intended to be used for IFR operations when it is not essential for navigation, and provided that alternative equipment giving equivalent or enhanced navigation capability is carried. This may be accomplished by the carriage of an additional VOR receiver or a GNSS receiver approved for IFR operations.

  (2) For IFR operations without ADF, the operator should ensure that:

    (i) route segments that rely solely on ADF for navigation are not flown;

    (ii) ADF/NDB procedures are not flown;

(iii) the minimum equipment list (MEL) has been amended to take account of the non-carriage of ADF;

(iv) the operations manual does not refer to any procedures based on NDB signals for the aeroplanes concerned; and

(v) flight planning and dispatch procedures are consistent with the above mentioned criteria.

(3) The removal of ADF should be taken into account by the operator in the initial and recurrent training of flight crew.

(e) VHF communication equipment, ILS localiser and VOR receivers installed on aeroplanes to be operated in IFR should comply with the following FM immunity performance standards:

(1) ICAO Annex 10, Volume I – Radio Navigation Aids, and Volume III, Part II – Voice Communications Systems; and

(2) acceptable equipment standards contained in EUROCAE Minimum Operational Performance Specifications, documents ED-22B for VOR receivers, ED-23B for VHF communication receivers and ED-46B for LOC receivers and the corresponding Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) documents DO-186, DO-195 and DO-196.

AMC3 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

FAILURE OF A SINGLE UNIT

Required communication and navigation equipment should be installed such that the failure of any single unit required for either communication or navigation purposes, or both, will not result in the failure of another unit required for communications or navigation purposes.

AMC4 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

LONG RANGE COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

(a) The long range communication system should be either a high frequency/HF-system or another two-way communication system if allowed by the relevant airspace procedures.

(b) When using one communication system only, the competent authority may restrict the minimum navigation performance specifications (MNPS) approval to the use of the specific routes.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.345(c) Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

SHORT HAUL OPERATIONS

The term 'short haul operations' is considered operations not crossing the North Atlantic.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

APPLICABLE AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

For aeroplanes being operated under European air traffic control, the applicable airspace requirements include the Single European Sky legislation.

CAT.IDE.A.350 Transponder

Aeroplanes shall be equipped with a pressure altitude reporting secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder and any other SSR transponder capability required for the route being flown.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.350 Transponder

SSR TRANSPONDER

(a) The secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponders of aeroplanes being operated under European air traffic control should comply with any applicable Single European Sky legislation.

(b) If the Single European Sky legislation is not applicable, the SSR transponders should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of Volume IV of ICAO Annex 10.

CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management

(a) The operator shall only use electronic navigation data products that support a navigation application meeting standards of integrity that are adequate for the intended use of the data.

(b) When the electronic navigation data products support a navigation application needed for an operation for which Annex V (Part-SPA) requires an approval, the operator shall demonstrate to the competent authority that the process applied and the delivered products meet standards of integrity that are adequate for the intended use of the data.

(c) The operator shall continuously monitor the integrity of both the process and the products, either directly or by monitoring the compliance of third party providers.

(d) The operator shall ensure the timely distribution and insertion of current and unaltered electronic navigation data to all aeroplanes that require it.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management

ELECTRONIC NAVIGATION DATA PRODUCTS

(a) When the operator of a complex motor-powered aeroplane uses a navigation database that supports an airborne navigation application as a primary means of navigation, the navigation database supplier should hold a Type 2 letter of acceptance (LoA), or equivalent.

(b) If this airborne navigation application is needed for an operation requiring a specific approval in accordance with Annex V (Part-SPA), the operator's procedures should be based upon the Type 2 LoA acceptance process.

GM1 CAT.IDE.A.355 Electronic navigation data management

LETTERS OF ACCEPTANCE AND STANDARDS FOR ELECTRONIC NAVIGATION DATA PRODUCTS

(a) A Type 2 LoA is issued by the Agency in accordance with the Agency's Opinion No 01/2005 on The Acceptance of Navigation Database Suppliers. The definitions of navigation database, navigation database supplier, data application integrator, Type 1 LoA and Type 2 LoA can be found in Opinion No 01/2005.

(b) Equivalent to a Type 2 LoA is the FAA Type 2 LoA, issued in accordance with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Advisory Circular AC 20-153 or AC 20-153A, and the Transport Canada Civil Aviation (TCCA) 'Acknowledgement Letter of an Aeronautical Data Process', which uses the same basis.

(c) EUROCAE ED-76/Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) DO-200A Standards for Processing Aeronautical Data contains guidance relating to the processes that the supplier may follow.

Section 2 — Helicopters

CAT.IDE.H.100 Instruments and equipment — general

(a) Instruments and equipment required by this Subpart shall be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003, except for the following items:

(1) Spare fuses;

(2) Independent portable lights;

(3) An accurate time piece;

(4) Chart holder;

(5) First-aid kit;

(6) Megaphones;

(7) Survival and signalling equipment;

(8) Sea anchors and equipment for mooring; and

(9) Child restraint devices.

(b) Instruments and equipment not required by this Subpart that do not need to be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 but are carried on a flight, shall comply with the following:

(1) the information provided by these instruments, equipment or accessories shall not be used by the flight crew to comply with Annex 1 to Regulation (EC) No 216/2008 or CAT.IDE.H.330, CAT.IDE.H.335, CAT.IDE.H.340 and CAT.IDE.H.345; and

(2) the instruments and equipment shall not affect the airworthiness of the helicopter, even in the case of failures or malfunction.

(c) If equipment is to be used by one flight crew member at his/her station during flight, it must be readily operable from that station. When a single item of equipment is required to be operated by more than one flight crew member it must be installed so that the equipment is readily operable from any station at which the equipment is required to be operated.

(d) Those instruments that are used by any flight crew member shall be so arranged as to permit the flight crew member to see the indications readily from his/her station, with the minimum practicable deviation from the position and line of vision that he/she normally assumes when looking forward along the flight path.

(e) All required emergency equipment shall be easily accessible for immediate use.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.100(b) Instruments and equipment – general

INSTRUMENTS AND EQUIPMENT THAT DO NOT NEED TO BE APPROVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATION (EC) NO 748/2012, BUT ARE CARRIED ON A FLIGHT

(a) The provision of this paragraph does not exempt the item of equipment from complying with Regulation (EC) No 748/2012 if the instrument or equipment is installed in the helicopter. In this case, the installation should be approved as required in Regulation (EC) No 748/2012 and should comply with the applicable airworthiness codes as required under that Regulation.

(b) The functionality of non-installed instruments and equipment required by this Subpart that do not need an equipment approval should be checked against recognised industry standards appropriated for the intended purpose. The operator is responsible for ensuring the maintenance of these instruments and equipment.

(c) The failure of additional non-installed instruments or equipment not required by this Part or the airworthiness codes as required under Regulation (EC) No 748/2012 or any applicable airspace requirements should not adversely affect the airworthiness and/or the safe operation of the aircraft. Examples are the following:

(1) instruments supplying additional flight information (e.g. stand-alone Global Positioning System (GPS));

(2) mission dedicated equipment (e.g. radios); and

(3) non-installed passenger entertainment equipment.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.100(d) Instruments and equipment – general

POSITIONING OF INSTRUMENTS

This requirement implies that whenever a single instrument is required to be installed in a helicopter operated in a multi-crew environment, the instrument needs to be visible from each flight crew station.

CAT.IDE.H.105 Minimum equipment for flight

A flight shall not be commenced when any of the helicopter's instruments, items of equipment or functions required for the intended flight are inoperative or missing, unless:

(a) the helicopter is operated in accordance with the operator's MEL; or

(b) the operator is approved by the competent authority to operate the helicopter within the constraints of the MMEL.

CAT.IDE.H.115 Operating lights

(a) Helicopters operated under VFR by day shall be equipped with an anti-collision light system.

(b) Helicopters operated at night or under IFR shall, in addition to (a), be equipped with:

(1) lighting supplied from the helicopter's electrical system to provide adequate illumination for all instruments and equipment essential to the safe operation of the helicopter;

(2) lighting supplied from the helicopter's electrical system to provide illumination in all passenger compartments;

(3) an independent portable light for each required crew member readily accessible to crew members when seated at their designated stations;

(4) navigation/position lights;

(5) two landing lights of which at least one is adjustable in flight so as to illuminate the ground in front of and below the helicopter and the ground on either side of the helicopter; and

(6) lights to conform with the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea if the helicopter is amphibious.

CAT.IDE.H.125 Operations under VFR by day — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

(a) Helicopters operated under VFR by day shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(1) A means of measuring and displaying:

(i) Magnetic heading;

(ii) Time in hours, minutes, and seconds;

(iii) Pressure altitude;

(iv) Indicated airspeed;

(v) Vertical speed;

(vi) Slip; and

(vii) outside air temperature.

(2) A means of indicating when the supply of power to the required flight instruments is not adequate.

(b) Whenever two pilots are required for the operation, an additional separate means of displaying the following shall be available for the second pilot:

(1) Pressure altitude;

(2) Indicated airspeed;

(3) Vertical speed; and

(4) Slip.

(c) Helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg or any helicopter operating over water when out of sight of land or when the visibility is less than 1 500 m, shall be equipped with a means of measuring and displaying:

(1) Attitude; and

(2) Heading.

(d) A means for preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems due to condensation or icing shall be available for helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg or an MOPSC of more than nine.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

INTEGRATED INSTRUMENTS

(a) Individual equipment requirements may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight systems or by a combination of parameters on electronic displays, provided that the information so available to each required pilot is not less than the required in the applicable operational requirements, and the equivalent safety of the installation has been shown during type certification approval of the helicopter for the intended type of operation.

(b) The means of measuring and indicating slip, helicopter attitude and stabilised helicopter heading may be met by combinations of instruments or by integrated flight director systems, provided that the safeguards against total failure, inherent in the three separate instruments, are retained.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(i)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(1) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING MAGNETIC HEADING

The means of measuring and displaying magnetic direction should be a magnetic compass or equivalent.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(ii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(2) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING THE TIME

An acceptable means of compliance is a clock displaying hours, minutes and seconds, with a sweep-second pointer or digital presentation.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(iii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(b) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING PRESSURE ALTITUDE

The instrument measuring and displaying pressure altitude should be of a sensitive type calibrated in feet (ft), with a sub-scale setting, calibrated in hectopascals/millibars, adjustable for any barometric pressure likely to be set during flight.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(iv)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(43) Operations under VFR by day& Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CALIBRATION OF THE INSTRUMENT INDICATING AIRSPEED

The instrument indicating airspeed should be calibrated in knots (kt).

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(vii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(8) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE

(a) The means of displaying outside air temperature should be calibrated in degrees Celsius.

(b) The means of displaying outside air temperature may be an air temperature indicator that provides indications that are convertible to outside air temperature.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(b)&CAT.IDE.H.130(h) Operations under VFR by day &Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MULTI-PILOT OPERATIONS − DUPLICATE INSTRUMENTS

Duplicate instruments should include separate displays for each pilot and separate selectors or other associated equipment where appropriate.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(c)(2)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(7) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

STABILISED HEADING

Stabilised heading should be achieved for VFR flights by a gyroscopic heading indicator, whereas for IFR flights, this should be achieved through a magnetic gyroscopic heading indicator.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(d)&CAT.IDE.H.130(d) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO CONDENSATION OR ICING

The means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing of the airspeed indicating system should be a heated pitot tube or equivalent.

See **GM1 CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under IFR or at night — flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

Helicopters operated under VFR at night or under IFR shall be equipped with the following equipment, available at the pilot's station:

(a) A means of measuring and displaying:

(1) Magnetic heading;

(2) Time in hours, minutes and seconds;

(3) Indicated airspeed;

(4) Vertical speed;

(5) Slip;

(6) Attitude;

(7) Stabilised heading; and

(8) Outside air temperature.

(b) Two means of measuring and displaying pressure altitude. For single-pilot operations under VFR at night one pressure altimeter may be substituted by a radio altimeter.

(c) A means of indicating when the supply of power to the required flight instruments is not adequate.

(d) A means of preventing malfunction of the airspeed indicating systems required in (a)(3) and (h)(2) due to either condensation or icing.

(e) A means of annunciating to the flight crew the failure of the means required in (d) for helicopters:

(1) issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999; or

(2) issued with an individual CofA before 1 August 1999 with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg, and with an MOPSC of more than nine.

(f) A standby means of measuring and displaying attitude that:

(1) is powered continuously during normal operation and, in the event of a total failure of the normal electrical generating system, is powered from a source independent of the normal electrical generating system;

(2) operates independently of any other means of measuring and displaying attitude;

(3) is capable of being used from either pilot's station;

(4) is operative automatically after total failure of the normal electrical generating system;

(5) provides reliable operation for a minimum of 30 minutes or the time required to fly to a suitable alternate landing site when operating over hostile terrain or offshore, whichever is greater, after total failure of the normal electrical generating system, taking into account other loads on the emergency power supply and operational procedures;

(6) is appropriately illuminated during all phases of operation; and

(7) is associated with a means to alert the flight crew when operating under its dedicated power supply, including when operated by emergency power.

(g) An alternate source of static pressure for the means of measuring altitude, airspeed and vertical speed.

(h) Whenever two pilots are required for the operation, a separate means for displaying for the second pilot:

(1) Pressure altitude;

(2) Indicated airspeed;

(3) Vertical speed;

(4) Slip;

(5) Attitude; and

(6) Stabilised heading.

(i) For IFR operations, a chart holder in an easily readable position that can be illuminated for night operations.

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(i)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(1) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(ii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(2) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(c)(2)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(7) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(vii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(8) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(iv)&CAT.IDE.H.130(a)(43) Operations under VFR by day& Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(a)(1)(iii)&CAT.IDE.H.130(b) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(d)&CAT.IDE.H.130(d) Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night operations – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.130(e) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

MEANS OF INDICATING FAILURE OF THE AIRSPEED INDICATING SYSTEM'S MEANS OF PREVENTING MALFUNCTION DUE TO EITHER CONDENSATION OR ICING

A combined means of indicating failure of the airspeed indicating system's means of preventing malfunction due to either condensation or icing is acceptable provided that it is visible from each flight crew station and that there it is a means to identify the failed heater in systems with two or more sensors.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.130(f)(6) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

ILLUMINATION OF STANDBY MEANS OF MEASURING AND DISPLAYING ATTITUDE

The standby means of measuring and displaying attitude should be illuminated so as to be clearly visible under all conditions of daylight and artificial lighting.

See **AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.125(b)&CAT.IDE.H.130(h) Operations under VFR by day &Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment.**

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.130(i) Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

CHART HOLDER

An acceptable means of compliance with the chart holder requirement is to display a pre-composed chart on an electronic flight bag (EFB).

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.125&CAT.IDE.H.130 Operations under VFR by day & Operations under IFR or at night – flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SUMMARY TABLE

Table 1: Flight and navigational instruments and associated equipment

SERIAL		FLIGHTS UNDER VFR		FLIGHTS UNDER IFR OR AT NIGHT	
INSTRUMENT		SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED	SINGLE PILOT	TWO PILOTS REQUIRED
(a)		(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)
1	Magnetic direction	1	1	1	1
2	Time	1	1	1	1
3	Pressure altitude	1	2	2 Note (1)	2
4	Indicated airspeed	1	2	1	2
5	Vertical speed	1	2	1	2
6	Slip	1	2	1	2
7	Attitude	1 Note (2)	2 Note (2)	1	2
8	Stabilised direction	1 Note (2)	2 Note (2)	1	2
9	Outside air temperature	1	1	1	1
10	Airspeed icing protection	1 Note (3)	2 Note (3)	1	2
11	Airspeed icing protection failure indicating			1 Note (4)	2 Note (4)
12	Static pressure source			2	2
13	Standby attitude			1 Note (5)	1 Note (5)
14	Chart holder			1 Note (6)	1 Note (6)

Note (1) For single pilot night operation under VFR, one means of measuring and displaying pressure altitude may be substituted by a means of measuring and displaying radio altitude.

Note (2) Applicable only to helicopters with a maximum certified take-off mass (MCTOM) of more than 3 175 kg; or helicopters operated over water when out of sight of land or when the visibility is less than 1 500 m.

Note (3) Applicable only to helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg, or with an MOPSC of more than nine.

Note (4) The pitot heater failure annunciation applies to any helicopter issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999. It also applies before that date when: the helicopter has a MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg and an MOPSC of more than nine.

Note (5) For helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg, CS 29.1303 (g) may require either a gyroscopic rate-of-turn indicator combined with a slip-skid indicator (turn and bank indicator) or a standby attitude indicator satisfying the requirements. In any case, the original type certification standard should be referred to determine the exact requirement.

Note (6) Applicable only to helicopters operating under IFR.

CAT.IDE.H.135 Additional equipment for single-pilot operation under IFR

Helicopters operated under IFR with a single-pilot shall be equipped with an autopilot with at least altitude hold and heading mode.

CAT.IDE.H.145 Radio altimeters

(a) Helicopters on flights over water shall be equipped with a radio altimeter capable of emitting an audio warning below a pre-set height and a visual warning at a height selectable by the pilot, when operating:

(1) out of sight of the land;

(2) in a visibility of less than 1 500 m;

(3) at night; or

(4) at a distance from land corresponding to more than 3 minutes at normal cruising speed.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.145 Radio altimeters

AUDIO WARNING DEVICE

The audio warning required in CAT.IDE.H.145 should be a voice warning.

CAT.IDE.H.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

Helicopters with an MOPSC of more than nine and operated under IFR or at night shall be equipped with airborne weather detecting equipment when current weather reports indicate that thunderstorms or other potentially hazardous weather conditions, regarded as detectable with airborne weather detecting equipment, may be expected to exist along the route to be flown.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.160 Airborne weather detecting equipment

GENERAL

The airborne weather detecting equipment should be an airborne weather radar.

CAT.IDE.H.165 Additional equipment for operations in icing conditions at night

(a) Helicopters operated in expected or actual icing conditions at night shall be equipped with a means to illuminate or detect the formation of ice.

(b) The means to illuminate the formation of ice shall not cause glare or reflection that would handicap crew members in the performance of their duties.

CAT.IDE.H.170 Flight crew interphone system

Helicopters operated by more than one flight crew member shall be equipped with a flight crew interphone system, including headsets and microphones for use by all flight crew members.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.170 Flight crew interphone system

TYPE OF FLIGHT CREW INTERPHONE

The flight crew interphone system should not be of a handheld type.

CAT.IDE.H.175 Crew member interphone system

Helicopters shall be equipped with a crew member interphone system when carrying a crew member other than a flight crew member.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.175 Crew member interphone system

SPECIFICATIONS

The crew member interphone system should:

(a) operate independently of the public address system except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;

(b) in the case of helicopters where at least one cabin crew member is required, be readily accessible for use at required cabin crew stations close to each separate or pair of floor level emergency exits;

(c) in the case of helicopters where at least one cabin crew member is required, have an alerting system incorporating aural or visual signals for use by flight and cabin crew;

(d) have a means for the recipient of a call to determine whether it is a normal call or an emergency call that uses:

  (1) lights of different colours;

  (2) codes defined by the operator (e.g. different number of rings for normal and emergency calls); and

  (3) any other indicating signal specified in the operations manual;

(e) provide a means of two-way communication between the flight crew compartment and each crew member station;

and

(f) be readily accessible for use from each required flight crew station in the flight crew compartment.

CAT.IDE.H.180 Public address system

(a) Helicopters with an MOPSC of more than nine shall be equipped with a public address system, with the exception of (b):

(b) Notwithstanding (a) helicopters with an MOPSC of more than nine and less than 20 are exempted from having a public address system, if:

(1) the helicopter is designed without a bulkhead between pilot and passengers; and

(2) the operator is able to demonstrate that when in flight, the pilot's voice is audible and intelligible at all passengers' seats.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.180 Public address system

SPECIFICATIONS

The public address system should:

(a) operate independently of the interphone systems except for handsets, headsets, microphones, selector switches and signalling devices;

(b) be readily accessible for immediate use from each required flight crew station;

(c) have, for each floor level passenger emergency exit that has an adjacent cabin crew seat, a microphone operable by the seated cabin crew member, except that one microphone may serve more than one exit, provided the proximity of exits allows unassisted verbal communication between seated cabin crew members;

(d) be operable within 10 seconds by a cabin crew member at each of those stations;

(e) be audible at all passenger seats, lavatories, cabin crew seats and work stations and any other location or compartment that may be occupied by persons; and

(f) following a total failure of the normal electrical generating system, provide reliable operation for a minimum of 10 minutes.

CAT.IDE.H.185 Cockpit voice recorder

(a) The following helicopter types shall be equipped with a cockpit voice recorder (CVR):

(1) all helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg; and

(2) helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 1987.

(b) The CVR shall be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least:

(1) the preceding 2 hours for helicopters referred to in (a)(1) and (a)(2), when first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 2016;

(2) the preceding 1 hour for helicopters referred to in (a)(1), when first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999 and before 1 January 2016;

(3) the preceding 30 minutes for helicopters referred to in (a)(1), when first issued with an individual CofA before 1 August 1999; or

(4) the preceding 30 minutes for helicopters referred to in (a)(2), when first issued with an individual CofA before 1 January 2016.

(c) The CVR shall record with reference to a timescale:

(1) voice communications transmitted from or received in the flight crew compartment by radio;

(2) flight crew members' voice communications using the interphone system and the public address system, if installed;

(3) the aural environment of the flight crew compartment, including without interruption:

(i) for helicopters first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999, the audio signals received from each crew microphone;

(ii) for helicopters first issued with an individual CofA before 1 August 1999, the audio signals received from each crew microphone, where practicable;

(4) voice or audio signals identifying navigation or approach aids introduced into a headset or speaker.

(d) The CVR shall start to record prior to the helicopter moving under its own power and shall continue to record until the termination of the flight when the helicopter is no longer capable of moving under its own power.

(e) In addition to (d), for helicopters referred to in (a)(2) issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999:

(1) the CVR shall start automatically to record prior to the helicopter moving under its own power and continue to record until the termination of the flight when the helicopter is no longer capable of moving under its own power; and

(2) depending on the availability of electrical power, the CVR shall start to record as early as possible during the cockpit checks prior to engine start at the beginning of the flight until the cockpit checks immediately following engine shutdown at the end of the flight.

(f) The CVR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.185 Cockpit voice recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

For helicopters first issued with an individual CofA on or after 01 January 2016 the operational performance requirements for cockpit voice recorders (CVRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

(a) The following helicopters shall be equipped with an FDR that uses a digital method of recording and storing data and for which a method of readily retrieving that data from the storage medium is available:

(1) helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 3 175 kg and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999;

(2) helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg, or an MOPSC of more than nine, and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 1989 but before 1 August 1999.

(b) The FDR shall record the parameters required to determine accurately the:

(1) flight path, speed, attitude, engine power, operation and configuration and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 10 hours, for helicopters referred to in (a)(1) and first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 January 2016;

(2) flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 8 hours, for helicopters referred to in (a)(1) and first issued with an individual CofA before 1 January 2016;

(3) flight path, speed, attitude, engine power and operation and be capable of retaining the data recorded during at least the preceding 5 hours, for helicopters referred to in (a)(2).

(c) Data shall be obtained from helicopter sources that enable accurate correlation with information displayed to the flight crew.

(d) The FDR shall automatically start to record the data prior to the helicopter being capable of moving under its own power and shall stop automatically after the helicopter is incapable of moving under its own power.

(e) The FDR shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL C OF A ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 2016

(a) The operational performance requirements for flight data recorders (FDRs) should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(b) The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:

(1) the parameters listed in Table 1 below;

(2) the additional parameters listed in Table 2 below, when the information data source for the parameter is used by helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter; and

(3) any dedicated parameters related to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the helicopter as determined by the Agency.

(c) The FDR parameters should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and minimum in read-out) defined in the operational performance requirements and specifications of EUROCAE Document ED-112, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(d) FDR systems for which some recorded parameters do not meet the performance specifications of EUROCAE Document ED-112 may be acceptable to the Agency.

Table 1: FDR – all helicopters

No*	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying CVR/FDR synchronisation reference
9 9a 9b 9c 9d 9e	Power on each engine Free power turbine speed (NF) Engine torque Engine gas generator speed (NG) Cockpit power control position Other parameters to enable engine power to be determined
10a 10b	Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)
11 11a 11b 11c 11d 11e 11f	Primary flight controls – Pilot input and/or control output position (if applicable) Collective pitch Longitudinal cyclic pitch Lateral cyclic pitch Tail rotor pedal Controllable stabilator (if applicable) Hydraulic selection
12	Hydraulics low pressure (each system should be recorded.)
13	Outside air temperature
18	Yaw rate or yaw acceleration
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
21	Lateral acceleration
25	Marker beacon passage
26	Warnings – a discrete should be recorded for the master warning, gearbox low oil pressure and stability augmentation system failure. Other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.
27	Each navigation receiver frequency selection
37	Engine control modes

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial numbers depicted in EUROCAE Document ED-112

Table 2: Helicopters for which the data source for the parameter is either used by helicopter systems or is available on the instrument panel for use by the flight crew to operate the helicopter

No*	Parameter
14	AFCS mode and engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement (each system should be recorded)
16	Main gear box oil pressure
17 17a 17b 17c	Gear box oil temperature Main gear box oil temperature Intermediate gear box oil temperature Tail rotor gear box oil temperature
19	Indicated sling load force (if signals readily available)
22	Radio altitude
23 23a 23b 23c	Vertical deviation – the approach aid in use should be recorded. ILS glide path MLS elevation GNSS approach path
24 24a 24b 24c	Horizontal deviation – the approach aid in use should be recorded. ILS localiser MLS azimuth GNSS approach path
28	DME 1 & 2 distances
29 29a 29b 29c 29d 29e 29f	Navigation data Drift angle Wind speed Wind direction Latitude Longitude Ground speed
30	Landing gear or gear selector position
31	Engine exhaust gas temperature (T4)
32	Turbine inlet temperature (TIT/ITT)
33	Fuel contents
34	Altitude rate (vertical speed) – only necessary when available from cockpit instruments
35	Ice detection
36 36a 36b 36c 36d 36e	Helicopter health and usage monitor system (HUMS) Engine data Chip detector Track timing Exceedance discretes Broadband average engine vibration

No*	Parameter
38	Selected barometric setting – to be recorded for helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
38a	Pilot
38b	Co-pilot
39	Selected altitude (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
40	Selected speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
41	Selected Mach (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
42	Selected vertical speed (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
43	Selected heading (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
44	Selected flight path (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
45	Selected decision height (all pilot selectable modes of operation) – to be recorded for the helicopters where the parameter is displayed electronically
46	EFIS display format
47	Multi-function / engine / alerts display format
48	Event marker

* The number in the left hand column reflects the serial numbers depicted in EUROCAE Document ED-112

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

LIST OF PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 AUGUST 1999 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016 AND HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 7 000 KG OR AN MOPSC OF MORE THAN NINE AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 1989 AND BEFORE 1 AUGUST 1999

(a) The FDR should, with reference to a timescale, record:

 (1) for helicopters with an MCTOM between 3 175 kg and 7 000 kg the parameters listed in Table 1 below;

 (2) for helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg the parameters listed in Table 2 below;

 (3) for helicopters equipped with electronic display systems, the additional parameters listed in Table 3 below; and

 (4) any dedicated parameters relating to novel or unique design or operational characteristics of the helicopter.

(b) When determined by the Agency, the FDR of helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg do not need to record parameter 19 of Table 2 below, if any of the following conditions are met:

 (1) the sensor is not readily available; or

 (2) a change is required in the equipment that generates the data.

(c) Individual parameters that can be derived by calculation from the other recorded parameters need not to be recorded, if agreed by the competent authority.

(d) The parameters should meet, as far as practicable, the performance specifications (range, sampling intervals, accuracy limits and resolution in read-out) defined in AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.190.

(e) If recording capacity is available, as many of the additional parameters as possible specified in table II-A.2 of EUROCAE Document ED 112 dated March 2003 should be recorded.

(f) For the purpose of this AMC a sensor is considered 'readily available' when it is already available or can be easily incorporated.

Table 1: Helicopters with an MCTOM of 7 000 kg or less

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Power on each engine (free power turbine speed and engine torque) / cockpit power control position (if applicable)
10a	Main rotor speed
10b	Rotor brake (if installed)
11	Primary flight controls – pilot input and control output position (if applicable)
11a	Collective pitch
11b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch
11d	Tail rotor pedal
11e	Controllable stabilator
11f	Hydraulic selection
13	Outside air temperature
14	Autopilot engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement
26	Warnings

Table 2: Helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg

No	Parameter
1	Time or relative time count
2	Pressure altitude
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed
4	Heading
5	Normal acceleration
6	Pitch attitude
7	Roll attitude
8	Manual radio transmission keying
9	Power on each engine (free power turbine speed and engine torque) / cockpit power control position (if applicable)
10a 10b	Main rotor speed Rotor brake (if installed)
11 11a 11b 11c 11d 11e 11f	Primary flight controls – pilot input and control output position (if applicable) Collective pitch Longitudinal cyclic pitch Lateral cyclic pitch Tail rotor pedal Controllable stabilator Hydraulic selection
12	Hydraulics low pressure
13	Outside air temperature
14	AFCS mode and engagement status
15	Stability augmentation system engagement
16	Main gear box oil pressure
17	Main gear box oil temperature
18	Yaw rate or yaw acceleration
19	Indicated sling load force (if installed)
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)
21	Lateral acceleration
22	Radio altitude
23	Vertical beam deviation (ILS glide path or MLS elevation)
24	Horizontal beam deviation (ILS localiser or MLS azimuth)
25	Marker beacon passage
26	Warnings
27	Reserved (navigation receiver frequency selection is recommended)
28	Reserved (DME distance is recommended)
29	Reserved (navigation data is recommended)
30	Landing gear or gear selector position

Table 3: Helicopters equipped with electronic display systems

No	Parameter
38	Selected barometric setting (each pilot station)
39	Selected altitude
40	Selected speed
41	Selected Mach
42	Selected vertical speed
43	Selected heading
44	Selected flight path
45	Selected decision height
46	EFIS display format
47	Multi-function / engine / alerts display format

AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE PARAMETERS TO BE RECORDED FOR HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 3 175 KG AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 AUGUST 1999 AND BEFORE 1 JANUARY 2016 AND HELICOPTERS HAVING AN MCTOM OF MORE THAN 7 000 KG OR AN MOPSC OF MORE THAN NINE AND FIRST ISSUED WITH AN INDIVIDUAL COFA ON OR AFTER 1 JANUARY 1989 AND BEFORE 1 AUGUST 1999

Table 1: Helicopters with an MCTOM of 7 000 kg or less

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
1	Time or relative time count					
1a or	Time	24 hours	4	± 0.125 % per hour	1 second	(a) UTC time preferred where available.
1b	Relative Time Count	0 to 4 095	4	± 0.125 % per hour		(b) Counter increments every 4 seconds of system operation.
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to 20 000 ft	1	±100 ft to ±700 ft Refer to table II.A-2 of EUROCAE Document ED-112	25 ft	
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed	As the installed measuring system	1	± 5 % or ± 10 kt, whichever is greater	1 kt	
4	Heading	360 °	1	± 5°	1 °	
5	Normal acceleration	- 3 g to + 6 g	0.125	± 0.2 g in addition to a maximum offset of ± 0.3 g	0.01 g	The resolution may be rounded from 0.01 g to 0.05 g, provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
6	Pitch attitude	100 % of usable range	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.8 degree	
7	Roll attitude	± 60 ° or 100 % of usable range from installed system if greater	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.8 degree	.
8	Manual radio transmission keying	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	Preferably each crew member but one discrete acceptable for all transmissions.
9	Power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	± 5 %	1 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. Power Turbine Speed and Engine Torque should be recorded to enable engine power to be determined. A margin for possible overspeed should be provided. Data may be obtained from cockpit indicators used for aircraft certification. Parameter 9c is required for helicopters with non mechanically linked cockpit-engine controls
9a	Power turbine speed	Maximum range				
9b	Engine torque	Maximum range				
9c	Cockpit power control position	Full range or each discrete position	Each control each second	±2 % or sufficient to determine any gated position	2 % of full range	

No	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
10	Rotor					
10a	Main rotor speed	Maximum range	1	± 5 %	1 % of full range	
10b	Rotor brake	Discrete	1	-		Where available
11	Primary flight controls – Pilot input and/or* control output position					* For helicopters that can demonstrate the capability of deriving either the control input or control movement (one from the other) for all modes of operation and flight regimes, the 'or' applies. For helicopters with non-mechanical control systems the 'and' applies. Where the input controls for each pilot can be operated independently, both inputs will need to be recorded.
11a	Collective pitch	Full range	0.5	± 3 %	1 % of full range	
11b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch		0.5			
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch		0.5			
11d	Tail rotor pedal		0.5			
11e	Controllable stabilator		0.5			
11f	Hydraulic selection	Discretes	1	-	-	
12	Outside air temperature	Available range from installed system	2	± 2°C	0.3°C	
13	Autopilot engagement status	Discrete(s)	1			Where practicable, discretes should show which primary modes are controlling the flight path of the helicopter
14	Stability augmentation system engagement	Discrete(s)	1			
15	Warnings	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	A discrete should be recorded for the master warning, low hydraulic pressure (each system) gearbox low oil pressure and SAS fault status. Other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.

Table 2: Helicopters with an MCTOM of more than 7 000 kg

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
1	Time or relative time count					
1a or	Time	24 hours	4	± 0.125 % per hour	1 second	(a) UTC time preferred where available.
1b	Relative time count	0 to 4095	4	± 0.125 % per hour		(b) Counter increments every 4 seconds of system operation.
2	Pressure altitude	-1 000 ft to maximum certificated altitude of aircraft +5 000 ft	1	± 100 ft to ± 700 ft Refer to table II-A.3 EUROCAE Document ED-112	5 ft	Should be obtained from the air data computer when installed.
3	Indicated airspeed or calibrated airspeed	As the installed measuring system	1	± 3 %	1 kt	Should be obtained from the air data computer when installed.
4	Heading	360 degrees	1	± 2 degrees	0.5 degree	
5	Normal acceleration	-3 g to +6 g	0.125	1 % of range excluding a datum error of 5 %	0.004 g	The recording resolution may be rounded from 0.004 g to 0.01 g provided that one sample is recorded at full resolution at least every 4 seconds.
6	Pitch attitude	± 75 degrees	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.5 degree	
7	Roll attitude	± 180 degrees	0.5	± 2 degrees	0.5 degree	.
8	Manual radio transmission Keying and CVR/FDR synchronization reference	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	Preferably each crew member but one discrete acceptable for all transmissions provided that the replay of a recording made by any required recorder can be synchronised in time with any other required recording to within 1 second.
9	Power on each engine	Full range	Each engine each second	± 2 %	0.2 % of full range	Sufficient parameters e.g. Power Turbine Speed and engine torque should be recorded to enable engine power to be determined. A margin for possible overspeed should be provided.
9a	Free power turbine speed (NF)	0-130 %				
9b	Engine torque	Full range				
9c	Cockpit power control position	Full range or each discrete position	Each control each second	± 2 % or sufficient to determine any gated position	2 % of full range	Parameter 9c is required for helicopters with non mechanically linked cockpit-engine controls

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
10 10a	Rotor Main rotor speed	50 to 130 %	0.5	2 %	0.3 % of full range	.
10b	Rotor brake	Discrete	1			Where available
11	Primary flight controls – Pilot input and/or* control output position					* For helicopters that can demonstrate the capability of deriving either the control input or control movement (one from the other) for all modes of operation and flight regimes, the 'or' applies. For helicopters with non-mechanical control systems the 'and' applies. Where the input controls for each pilot can be operated independently, both inputs will need to be recorded.
11a	Collective pitch	Full range	0.5	± 3 % unless higher accuracy is uniquely required	0.5 % of operating range	
11b	Longitudinal cyclic pitch		0.5			
11c	Lateral cyclic pitch		0.5			
11d	Tail rotor pedal		0.5			
11e	Controllable stabilator		0.5			
11f	Hydraulic selection	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	
12	Hydraulics low pressure	Discrete(s)	1	-	-	Each essential system should be recorded.
13	Outside air temperature	-50° to +90°C or available sensor range	2	± 2°C	0.3°C	
14	AFCS mode and engagement status	A suitable combination of discretes	1	-	-	Discretes should show which systems are engaged and which primary modes are controlling the flight path of the helicopter
15	Stability augmentation system engagement	Discrete	1	-	-	
16	Main gearbox oil pressure	As installed	1	As installed	6.895 kN/m^2 (1 psi)	
17	Main gearbox oil temperature	As installed	2	As installed	1°C	
18	Yaw rate	± 400 degrees/ second	0.25	± 1 %	2 degrees per second	An equivalent yaw acceleration is an acceptable alternative.
19	Indicated sling load force	0 to 200 % of maximum certified load	0.5	± 3 % of maximum certified load	0.5 % for maximum certified load	With reasonable practicability if sling load indicator is installed.

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
20	Longitudinal acceleration (body axis)	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	See comment to parameter 5.
21	Lateral acceleration	± 1 g	0.25	±1.5 % of range excluding a datum error of ±5 %	0.004 g	See comment to parameter 5.
22	Radio altitude	-20 ft to +2 500 ft	1	As installed. ± 2 ft or ± 3 % whichever is greater below 500 ft and ± 5 % above 500 ft recommended	1 ft below 500 ft, 1 ft + 0.5 % of full range above 500 ft	
23	Vertical beam deviation		1	As installed ± 3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	Data from both the ILS and MLS systems need not to be recorded at the same time. The approach aid in use should be recorded.
23a	ILS glide path	± 0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
23b	MLS elevation	+0.9 to +30 degrees				
24	Horizontal beam deviation		1	As installed. ± 3 % recommended	0.3 % of full range	See comment to parameter 23
24a	ILS localiser	± 0.22 DDM or available sensor range as installed				
24b	MLS azimuth	± 62 degrees				
25	Marker beacon passage	Discrete	1	-	-	One discrete is acceptable for all markers.
26	Warnings	Discretes	1	-	-	A discrete should be recorded for the master warning, gearbox low oil pressure and SAS failure. Other 'red' warnings should be recorded where the warning condition cannot be determined from other parameters or from the cockpit voice recorder.
27	Reserved					
28	Reserved					
29	Reserved					

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
30	Landing gear or gear selector position	Discrete(s)	4	-	-	Where installed.

Table 3: Helicopters equipped with electronic display systems

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
38	Selected barometric setting (each pilot station)	As installed	64	As installed	1mb	Where practicable, a sampling interval of 4 seconds is recommended
38a	Pilot					
38b	Co-pilot					
39	Selected altitude	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
39a	Manual					
39b	Automatic					
40	Selected speed	As installed	1	As installed	1 kt	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
40a	Manual					
40b	Automatic					
41	Selected Mach	As installed	1	As installed	0.01	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
41a	Manual					
41b	Automatic					
42	Selected vertical speed	As installed	1	As installed	100 ft /min	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
42a	Manual					
42b	Automatic					

N°	Parameter	Range	Sampling interval in seconds	Accuracy Limits (sensor input compared to FDR read out)	Minimum Resolution in read out	Remarks
43	Selected heading	360 degrees	1	As installed	100 ft /min	Where capacity is limited a sampling interval of 64 seconds is permissible
44	Selected flight path		1	As installed		
44a	Course/DSTRK				1 degree	
44b	Path angle				0.1 degree	
45	Selected decision height	0-500 ft	64	As installed	1ft	
46	EFIS display format	Discrete(s)	4	-	-	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. normal, fail, composite, sector, plan, rose, nav aids, wxr, range, copy
46a	Pilot					
46b	Co-pilot					
47	Multi-function / engine / alerts display format	Discrete(s)	4	-	-	Discretes should show the display system status e.g. normal, fail, and the identity of the display pages for the emergency procedures and checklists. Information in checklists and procedures need not be recorded.

The term 'where practicable' used in the remarks column of Table 3 means that account should be taken of the following:

(a) if the sensor is already available or can be easily incorporated;

(b) sufficient capacity is available in the flight recorder system;

(c) for navigational data (nav frequency selection, DME distance, latitude, longitude, groundspeed and drift) the signals are available in digital form;

(d) the extent of modification required;

(e) the down-time period; and

(f) equipment software development.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.190 Flight data recorder

GENERAL

For the purpose of AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.190(b) a sensor is considered 'readily available' when it is already available or can be easily incorporated.

CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording

(a) Helicopters first issued with an individual CofA on or after 8 April 2014 that have the capability to operate data link communications and are required to be equipped with a CVR, shall record on a recorder, where applicable:

(1) data link communication messages related to ATS communications to and from the helicopter, including messages applying to the following applications:

(i) data link initiation;

(ii) controller–pilot communication;

(iii) addressed surveillance;

(iv) flight information;

(v) as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system, aircraft broadcast surveillance;

(vi) as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system, aircraft operational control data;

(vii) as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system, graphics;

(2) information that enables correlation to any associated records related to data link communications and stored separately from the helicopter; and

(3) information on the time and priority of data link communications messages, taking into account the system's architecture.

(b) The recorder shall use a digital method of recording and storing data and information and a method of readily retrieving that data shall be available. The recording method shall allow the data to match the data recorded on the ground.

(c) The recorder shall be capable of retaining data recorded for at least the same duration as set out for CVRs in CAT.IDE.H.185.

(d) The recorder shall have a device to assist in locating it in water.

(e) The requirements applicable to the start and stop logic of the recorder are the same as the requirements applicable to the start and stop logic of the CVR contained in CAT.IDE.H.185 (d) and (e).

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording

GENERAL

(a) The helicopter should be capable of recording the messages as specified in this AMC.

(b) As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.H.195(a), the recorder on which the data link messages are recorded may be:

(1) the CVR;

(2) the FDR;

(3) a combination recorder when CAT.IDE.H.200 is applicable; or

(4) a dedicated flight recorder. In that case, the operational performance requirements for this recorder should be those laid down in EUROCAE Document ED-112 (Minimum Operational Performance Specification for Crash Protected Airborne Recorder Systems) dated March 2003, including amendments n°1 and n°2, or any later equivalent standard produced by EUROCAE.

(c) As a means of compliance with CAT.IDE.H.195 (a)(2), the operator should enable correlation by providing information that allows an accident investigator to understand what data were provided to the helicopter and, when the provider identification is contained in the message, by which provider.

(d) The timing information associated with the data link communications messages required to be recorded by CAT.IDE.H.195 (a)(3) should be capable of being determined from the airborne-based recordings. This timing information should include at least the following:

(1) the time each message was generated;

(2) the time any message was available to be displayed by the crew;

(3) the time each message was actually displayed or recalled from a queue; and

(4) the time of each status change.

(e) The message priority should be recorded when it is defined by the protocol of the data link communication message being recorded.

(f) The expression 'taking into account the system architecture', in CAT.IDE.H.195 (a)(3), means that the recording of the specified information may be omitted if the existing source systems involved would require a major upgrade. The following should be considered:

(1) the extent of the modification required;

(2) the down-time period; and

(3) equipment software development.

(g) The intention is that new designs of source systems should include this functionality and support the full recording of the required information.

(h) Data link communications messages that support the applications in Table 1 below should be recorded.

(i) Further details on the recording requirements can be found in the recording requirement matrix in Appendix D.2 of EUROCAE Document ED-93 (Minimum Aviation System Performance Specification for CNS/ATM Recorder Systems, dated November 1998).

Table 1: Applications

Item No	Application Type	Application Description	Required Recording Content
1	Data link initiation	This includes any application used to log on to, or initiate, a data link service. In future air navigation system (FANS)-1/A and air traffic navigation (ATN), these are ATS facilities notification (AFN) and context management (CM), respectively.	C
2	Controller/pilot communication	This includes any application used to exchange requests, clearances, instructions and reports between the flight crew and air traffic controllers. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the controller pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application. CPDLC includes the exchange of oceanic clearances (OCLs) and departure clearances (DCLs).	C
3	Addressed surveillance	This includes any surveillance application in which the ground sets up contracts for delivery of surveillance data. In FANS-1/A and ATN, this includes the automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) application.	C, F2
4	Flight information	This includes any application used for delivery of flight information data to specific aeroplanes. This includes for example data link-automatic terminal information service (D-ATIS), data link-operational terminal information service (D-OTIS), digital weather information services (D-METAR or TWIP), data link flight information service (D-FIS) and Notice to Airmen (D-NOTAM) delivery.	C
5	Aircraft broadcast surveillance	This includes elementary and enhanced surveillance systems, as well as automatic dependent surveillance-broadcast (ADS-B) output data.	M*, F2
6	Airlines operations centre (AOC) data	This includes any application transmitting or receiving data used for AOC purposes (in accordance with the ICAO definition of AOC). Such systems may also process AAC messages, but there is no requirement to record AAC messages	M*
7	Graphics	This includes any application receiving graphical data to be used for operational purposes (i.e. excluding applications that are receiving such things as updates to manuals).	M* F1

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.195 Data link recording

DEFINITIONS AND ACRONYMS

(a) The letters and expressions in Table 1 of AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.195 have the following meaning:

C: Complete contents recorded

M: Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter.

*: Applications that are to be recorded only as far as is practicable, given the architecture of the system.

F1: Graphics applications may be considered as AOC data when they are part of a data link communications application service run on an individual basis by the operator itself in the framework of the operational control.

F2: Where parametric data sent by the helicopter, such as Mode S, is reported within the message, it should be recorded unless data from the same source is recorded on the FDR.

(b) The definitions of the applications type in Table 1 of AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.195 are described in Table 1 below.

Table 1: Descriptions of the applications type

Item No	Application Type	Messages	Comments
1	CM		CM is an ATN service
2	AFN		AFN is a FANS 1/A service
3	CPDLC		All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
4	ADS-C	ADS-C reports	All contract requests and reports recorded
		Position reports	Only used within FANS 1/A. Only used in oceanic and remote areas.
5	ADS-B	Surveillance data	Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter.
6	D-FIS		D-FIS is an ATN service. All implemented up and downlink messages to be recorded
7	TWIP	TWIP messages	Terminal weather information for pilots
8	D-ATIS	ATIS messages	Refer to EUROCAE Document ED-89A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for the 'ATIS' Data Link Service
9	OCL	OCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE Document ED-106A dated March 2004. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Oceanic Clearance' Data Link Service
10	DCL	DCL messages	Refer to EUROCAE Document ED-85A dated December 2003. Data Link Application System Document (DLASD) for 'Departure Clearance' Data Link Service
11	Graphics	Weather maps & other graphics	Graphics exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the aeroplane.
12	AOC	Aeronautical operational control messages	Messages exchanged in the framework of procedures within the operational control, as specified in Part-ORO. Information that enables correlation with any associated records stored separately from the helicopter. Definition in EUROCAE Document ED-112, dated March 2003.
13	Surveillance	Downlinked aircraft parameters (DAP)	As defined in ICAO Annex 10 Volume IV (Surveillance systems and ACAS).

AAC	aeronautical administrative communications
ADS-B	automatic dependent surveillance – broadcast
ADS-C	automatic dependent surveillance – contract
AFN	aircraft flight notification
AOC	aeronautical operational control
ATIS	automatic terminal information service
ATSC	air traffic service communication
CAP	controller access parameters
CPDLC	controller pilot data link communications
CM	configuration/context management
D-ATIS	data link ATIS
D-FIS	data link flight information service
DCL	departure clearance
FANS	Future Air Navigation System
FLIPCY	flight plan consistency
OCL	oceanic clearance
SAP	system access parameters
TWIP	terminal weather information for pilots

CAT.IDE.H.200 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

Compliance with CVR and FDR requirements may be achieved by the carriage of one combination recorder.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.200 Flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder

GENERAL

(a) A flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder is a flight recorder that records:

(1) all voice communications and the aural environment required by CAT.IDE.H.185 regarding CVRs; and

(2) all parameters required by CAT.IDE.H.190 regarding FDRs, with the same specifications required by those paragraphs.

(b) In addition a flight data and cockpit voice combination recorder may record data link communication messages and related information required by CAT.IDE.H.195.

CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with:

(1) a seat or berth for each person on board who is aged 24 months or more;

(2) a seat belt on each passenger seat and restraining belts for each berth;

(3) for helicopters first issued with an individual CofA on or after 1 August 1999, a safety belt with upper torso restraint system for use on each passenger seat for each passenger aged 24 months or more;

(4) a child restraint device (CRD) for each person on board younger than 24 months;

(5) a seat belt with upper torso restraint system incorporating a device that will automatically restrain the occupant's torso in the event of rapid deceleration on each flight crew seat;

(6) a seat belt with upper torso restraint system on each seat for the minimum required cabin crew.

(b) A seat belt with upper torso restraint system shall:

(1) have a single point release; and

(2) on flight crew seats and on the seats for the minimum required cabin crew include two shoulder straps and a seat belt that may be used independently.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

CHILD RESTRAINT DEVICES (CRDS)

(a) A CRD is considered to be acceptable if:

(1) it is a 'supplementary loop belt' manufactured with the same techniques and the same materials of the approved safety belts; or

(2) it complies with (b).

(b) Provided the CRD can be installed properly on the respective helicopter seat, the following CRDs are considered acceptable:

(1) CRDs approved for use in aircraft by a competent authority on the basis of a technical standard and marked accordingly;

(2) CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles according to the UN standard ECE R 44, -03 or later series of amendments;

(3) CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to Canadian CMVSS 213/213.1;

(4) CRDs approved for use in motor vehicles and aircraft according to US FMVSS No 213 and are manufactured to these standards on or after February 26, 1985. US approved CRDs manufactured after this date must bear the following labels in red letters:

(i) "THIS CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS"; and

(ii) "THIS RESTRAINT IS CERTIFIED FOR USE IN MOTOR VEHICLES AND AIRCRAFT";

(5) CRDs qualified for use in aircraft according to the German 'Qualification Procedure for Child Restraint Systems for Use in Aircraft' (TÜV Doc.: TÜV/958-01/2001); and

(6) devices approved for use in cars, manufactured and tested to standards equivalent to those listed above. The device should be marked with an associated qualification sign, which shows the name of the qualification organisation and a specific identification number, related to the associated qualification project. The qualifying organisation should be a competent and independent organisation that is acceptable to the competent authority.

(c) Location

(1) Forward facing CRDs may be installed on both forward and rearward facing passenger seats but only when fitted in the same direction as the passenger seat on which they are positioned. Rearward facing CRDs should only be installed on forward facing passenger seats. A CRD should not be installed within the radius of action of an airbag, unless it is obvious that the airbag is de-activated or it can be demonstrated that there is no negative impact from the airbag.

(2) An infant in a CRD should be located as near to a floor level exit as feasible.

(3) An infant in a CRD should not hinder evacuation for any passenger.

(4) An infant in a CRD should neither be located in the row (where rows are existing) leading to an emergency exit nor located in a row immediately forward or aft of an emergency exit. A window passenger seat is the preferred location. An aisle passenger seat or a cross aisle passenger seat that forms part of the evacuation route to exits is not recommended. Other locations may be acceptable provided the access of neighbour passengers to the nearest aisle is not obstructed by the CRD.

(5) In general, only one CRD per row segment is recommended. More than one CRD per row segment is allowed if the infants are from the same family or travelling group provided the infants are accompanied by a responsible adult sitting next to them.

(6) A row segment is the fraction of a row separated by two aisles or by one aisle and the helicopter fuselage.

(d) Installation

(1) CRDs should only be installed on a suitable helicopter seat with the type of connecting device they are approved or qualified for. E.g., CRDs to be connected by a three point harness only (most rearward facing baby CRDs currently available) should not be attached to a helicopter seat with a lap belt only, a CRD designed to be attached to a vehicle seat by means of rigid bar lower anchorages

(ISO-FIX or US equivalent) only, should only be used on helicopter seats that are equipped with such connecting devices and should not be attached by the helicopter seat lap belt. The method of connecting should be the one shown in the manufacturer's instructions provided with each CRD.

(2) All safety and installation instructions must be followed carefully by the responsible person accompanying the infant. Cabin crew should prohibit the use of any inadequately installed CRD or not qualified seat.

(3) If a forward facing CRD with a rigid backrest is to be fastened by a lap belt, the restraint device should be fastened when the backrest of the passenger seat on which it rests is in a reclined position. Thereafter, the backrest is to be positioned upright. This procedure ensures better tightening of the CRD on the aircraft seat if the aircraft seat is reclinable.

(4) The buckle of the adult safety belt must be easily accessible for both opening and closing, and must be in line with the seat belt halves (not canted) after tightening.

(5) Forward facing restraint devices with an integral harness must not be installed such that the adult safety belt is secured over the infant.

(e) Operation

(1) Each CRD should remain secured to a passenger seat during all phases of flight, unless it is properly stowed when not in use.

(2) Where a CRD is adjustable in recline it must be in an upright position for all occasions when passenger restraint devices are required.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

UPPER TORSO RESTRAINT SYSTEM

An upper torso restraint system having three straps is deemed to be compliant with the requirement for restraint systems with two shoulder straps.

SAFETY BELT

A safety belt with diagonal should strap (three anchorage points) is deemed to be compliant with safety belts (two anchorage points).

AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.205 Seats, seat safety belts, restraint systems and child restraint devices

SEATS FOR MINIMUM REQUIRED CABIN CREW

(a) Seats for the minimum required cabin crew members should be located near required floor level emergency exits, except if the emergency evacuation of passengers would be enhanced by seating the cabin crew members elsewhere. In this case other locations are acceptable. This criterion should also apply if the number of required cabin crew members exceeds the number of floor level emergency exits.

(b) Seats for cabin crew member(s) should be forward or rearward facing within 15° of the longitudinal axis of the helicopter.

CAT.IDE.H.210 Fasten seat belt and no smoking signs

Helicopters in which not all passenger seats are visible from the flight crew seat(s) shall be equipped with a means of indicating to all passengers and cabin crew when seat belts shall be fastened and when smoking is not allowed.

CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with at least one first-aid kit.

(b) First-aid kits shall be:

  (1) readily accessible for use;

  (2) kept up-to-date.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits

CONTENT OF FIRST-AID KITS

(a) First-aid kits should be equipped with appropriate and sufficient medications and instrumentation. However, these kits should be complemented by the operator according to the characteristics of the operation (scope of operation, flight duration, number and demographics of passengers etc.).

(b) The following should be included in the first-aid kit:

(1) Equipment

(i) bandages (assorted sizes);

(ii) burns dressings (unspecified);

(iii) wound dressings (large and small);

(iv) adhesive dressings (assorted sizes);

(v) adhesive tape;

(vi) adhesive wound closures;

(vii) safety pins;

(viii) safety scissors;

(ix) antiseptic wound cleaner;

(x) disposable resuscitation aid;

(xi) disposable gloves;

(xii) tweezers: splinter; and

(xiii) thermometers (non-mercury).

(2) Medications

(i) simple analgesic (may include liquid form);

(ii) antiemetic;

(iii) nasal decongestant;

(iv) gastrointestinal antacid, in the case of helicopters carrying more than nine passengers;

(v) anti-diarrhoeal medication in the case of helicopters carrying more than nine passengers; and

(vi) antihistamine.

(3) Other

(i) a list of contents in at least two languages (English and one other). This should include information on the effects and side effects of medications carried;

(ii) first-aid handbook, current edition;

(iii) medical incident report form;

(iv) biohazard disposal bags.

(4) An eye irrigator, whilst not required to be carried in the first-aid kit, should, where possible, be available for use on the ground.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.220 First-aid kits

MAINTENANCE OF FIRST-AID KITS

To be kept up to date first-aid kits should be:

(a) inspected periodically to confirm, to the extent possible, that contents are maintained in the condition necessary for their intended use;

(b) replenished at regular intervals, in accordance with instructions contained on their labels, or as circumstances warrant; and

(c) replenished after use-in-flight at the first opportunity where replacement items are available.

CAT.IDE.H.240 Supplemental oxygen — non-pressurised helicopters

Non-pressurised helicopters operated at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft shall be equipped with supplemental oxygen equipment capable of storing and dispensing the oxygen supplies in accordance with the following tables.

Table 1: Oxygen minimum requirements for complex non-pressurised helicopters

Supply for:		Duration and cabin pressure altitude
1)	Occupants of flight crew compartment seats on flight crew compartment duty and crew members assisting flight crew in their duties	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft.
2)	Required cabin crew members	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft and for any period exceeding 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000 ft.
3)	Additional crew members and 100% of passengers*	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft.
4)	10% of passengers*	The entire flying time after 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000 ft.

* Passenger numbers in Table 1 refer to passengers actually carried on board including persons younger than 24 months.

Table 2: Oxygen minimum requirements for other-than-complex non-pressurised helicopters

Supply for:		Duration and cabin pressure altitude
1)	Occupants of flight crew compartment seats on flight crew compartment duty, crew members assisting flight crew in their duties, and required cabin crew members	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft and for any period exceeding 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000 ft.
2)	Additional crew members and 100% of passengers*	The entire flying time at pressure altitudes above 13 000 ft.
3)	10% of passengers*	The entire flying time after 30 minutes at pressure altitudes above 10 000 ft but not exceeding 13 000 ft.

* Passenger numbers in Table 2 refer to passengers actually carried on board including persons younger than 24 months.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.240 Supplemental oxygen – non-pressurised helicopters

DETERMINATION OF OXYGEN

The amount of supplemental oxygen for sustenance for a particular operation should be determined on the basis of flight altitudes and flight duration, consistent with the operating procedures, including emergency, procedures, established for each operation and the routes to be flown as specified in the operations manual.

CAT.IDE.H.250 Hand fire extinguishers

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with at least one hand fire extinguisher in the flight crew compartment.

(b) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be located in, or readily accessible for use in, each galley not located on the main passenger compartment.

(c) At least one hand fire extinguisher shall be available for use in each cargo compartment that is accessible to crew members in flight.

(d) The type and quantity of extinguishing agent for the required fire extinguishers shall be suitable for the type of fire likely to occur in the compartment where the extinguisher is intended to be used and to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentration in compartments occupied by persons.

(e) The helicopter shall be equipped with at least a number of hand fire extinguishers in accordance with Table 1, conveniently located to provide adequate availability for use in each passenger compartment.

Table 1: Number of hand fire extinguishers

MOPSC	Number of extinguishers
7 – 30	1
31 – 60	2
61 – 200	3

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.250 Hand fire extinguishers

NUMBER, LOCATION AND TYPE

(a) The number and location of hand fire extinguishers should be such as to provide adequate availability for use, account being taken of the number and size of the passenger compartments, the need to minimise the hazard of toxic gas concentrations and the location of lavatories, galleys etc. These considerations may result in a number of fire extinguishers greater than the minimum required.

(b) There should be at least one hand fire extinguisher installed in the flight crew compartment and this should be suitable for fighting both flammable fluid and electrical equipment fires. Additional hand fire extinguishers may be required for the protection of other compartments accessible to the crew in flight. Dry chemical fire extinguishers should not be used in the flight crew compartment, or in any compartment not separated by a partition from the flight crew compartment, because of the adverse effect on vision during discharge and, if conductive, interference with electrical contacts by the chemical residues.

(c) Where only one hand fire extinguisher is required in the passenger compartments it should be located near the cabin crew member's station, where provided.

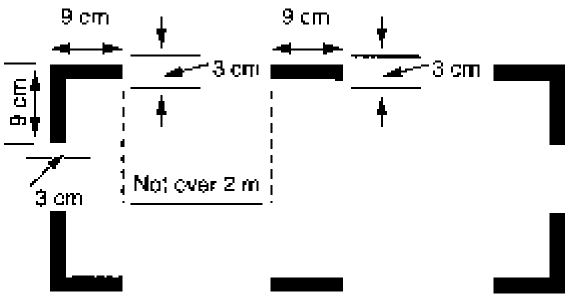
(d) Where two or more hand fire extinguishers are required in the passenger compartments and their location is not otherwise dictated by consideration of (a), an extinguisher should be located near each end of the cabin with the remainder distributed throughout the cabin as evenly as is practicable.

(e) Unless an extinguisher is clearly visible, its location should be indicated by a placard or sign. Appropriate symbols may also be used to supplement such a placard or sign.

CAT.IDE.H.260 Marking of break-in points

If areas of the helicopter's fuselage suitable for break-in by rescue crews in an emergency are marked, such areas shall be marked as shown in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Marking of break-in points



AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.260 Marking of break-in points

MARKINGS – COLOUR AND CORNERS

(a) The colour of the markings should be red or yellow and, if necessary, should be outlined in white to contrast with the background.

(b) If the corner markings are more than 2 m apart, intermediate lines 9 cm x 3 cm should be inserted so that there is no more than 2 m between adjacent markings.

CAT.IDE.H.270 Megaphones

Helicopters with an MOPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with one portable battery-powered megaphone readily accessible for use by crew members during an emergency evacuation.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.270 Megaphones

LOCATION OF MEGAPHONES

(a) The megaphone should be readily accessible at the assigned seat of a cabin crew member or crew members other than flight crew.

(b) This does not necessarily require megaphones to be positioned such that they can be physically reached by a crew member when strapped in a cabin crew member's seat.

CAT.IDE.H.275 Emergency lighting and marking

(a) Helicopters with an MOPSC of more than 19 shall be equipped with:

(1) an emergency lighting system having an independent power supply to provide a source of general cabin illumination to facilitate the evacuation of the helicopter; and

(2) emergency exit marking and locating signs visible in daylight or in the dark.

(b) Helicopters shall be equipped with emergency exit markings visible in daylight or in the dark when operated:

(1) in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed;

(2) in performance class 3 on a flight over water at a distance corresponding to more than 3 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed.

CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with at least one automatic ELT.

(b) Helicopters operating in performance class 1 or 2 used in offshore operations on a flight over water in a hostile environment and at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed shall be equipped with an automatically deployable ELT (ELT(AD)).

(c) An ELT of any type shall be capable of transmitting simultaneously on 121.5 MHz and 406 MHz.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

ELT BATTERIES

Batteries used in the ELTs should be replaced (or recharged, if the battery is rechargeable) when the equipment has been in use for more than 1 cumulative hour, and also when 50 % of their useful life (or for rechargeable, 50 % of their useful life of charge), as established by the equipment manufacturer has expired. The new expiry date for the replacement (or recharged) battery should be legibly marked on the outside of the equipment. The battery useful life (or useful life of charge) requirements of this paragraph do not apply to batteries (such as water-activated batteries) that are essentially unaffected during probable storage intervals.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.280 Emergency locator transmitter (ELT)

TYPES OF ELT AND GENERAL TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

(a) The ELT required by this provision should be one of the following:

   (1) Automatic Fixed (ELT(AF)). An automatically activated ELT that is permanently attached to an helicopter and is designed to aid search and rescue (SAR) teams in locating the crash site.

   (2) Automatic Portable (ELT(AP)). An automatically activated ELT, which is rigidly attached to a helicopter before a crash, but is readily removable from the helicopter after a crash. It functions as an ELT during the crash sequence. If the ELT does not employ an integral antenna, the helicopter-mounted antenna may be disconnected and an auxiliary antenna (stored on the ELT case) attached to the ELT. The ELT can be tethered to a survivor or a life-raft. This type of ELT is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site or survivor(s).

   (3) Automatic Deployable (ELT(AD)). An ELT that is rigidly attached to the helicopter before the crash and that is automatically ejected, deployed and activated by an impact, and, in some cases, also by hydrostatic sensors. Manual deployment is also provided. This type of ELT should float in water and is intended to aid SAR teams in locating the crash site.

   (4) Survival ELT (ELT(S)). An ELT that is removable from a helicopter, stowed so as to facilitate its ready use in an emergency, and manually activated by a survivor. An ELT(S) may be activated manually or automatically (e.g. by water activation). It should be designed either to be tethered to a life-raft or a survivor.

(b) To minimise the possibility of damage in the event of crash impact, the automatic ELT should be rigidly fixed to the helicopter structure, as far aft as is practicable, with its antenna and connections arranged so as to maximise the probability of the signal being transmitted after a crash.

(c) Any ELT carried should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of ICAO Annex 10, Volume III Communications Systems and should be registered with the national agency responsible for initiating search and rescue or other nominated agency.

CAT.IDE.H.290 Life-jackets

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with a life-jacket for each person on board or equivalent floatation device for each person on board younger than 24 months, stowed in a position that is readily accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, when operated in:

(1) performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed;

(2) performance class 3 on a flight over water beyond autorotational distance from land;

(3) performance class 2 or 3 when taking off or landing at an aerodrome or operating site where the take-off or approach path is over water.

(b) Each life-jacket or equivalent individual flotation device shall be equipped with a means of electric illumination for the purpose of facilitating the location of persons.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.290(a) Life-jackets

ACCESSIBILITY

The life-jacket should be accessible from the seat or berth of the person for whose use it is provided, with a safety belt or harness fastened.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.290(c) Life-jackets

ELECTRIC ILLUMINATION

The means of electric illumination should be a survivor locator light as defined in the applicable ETSO issued by the Agency or equivalent.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.290 Life-jackets

SEAT CUSHIONS

Seat cushions are not considered to be flotation devices.

CAT.IDE.H.295 Crew survival suits

Each crew member shall wear a survival suit when operating:

(a) in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water in support of offshore operations, at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed, when the weather report or forecasts available to the commander indicate that the sea temperature will be less than plus 10°C during the flight, or when the estimated rescue time exceeds the estimated survival time;

(b) in performance class 3 on a flight over water beyond autorotational distance or safe forced landing distance from land, when the weather report or forecasts available to the commander indicate that the sea temperature will be less than plus 10°C during the flight.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.295 Crew survival suits

ESTIMATING SURVIVAL TIME

(a) Introduction

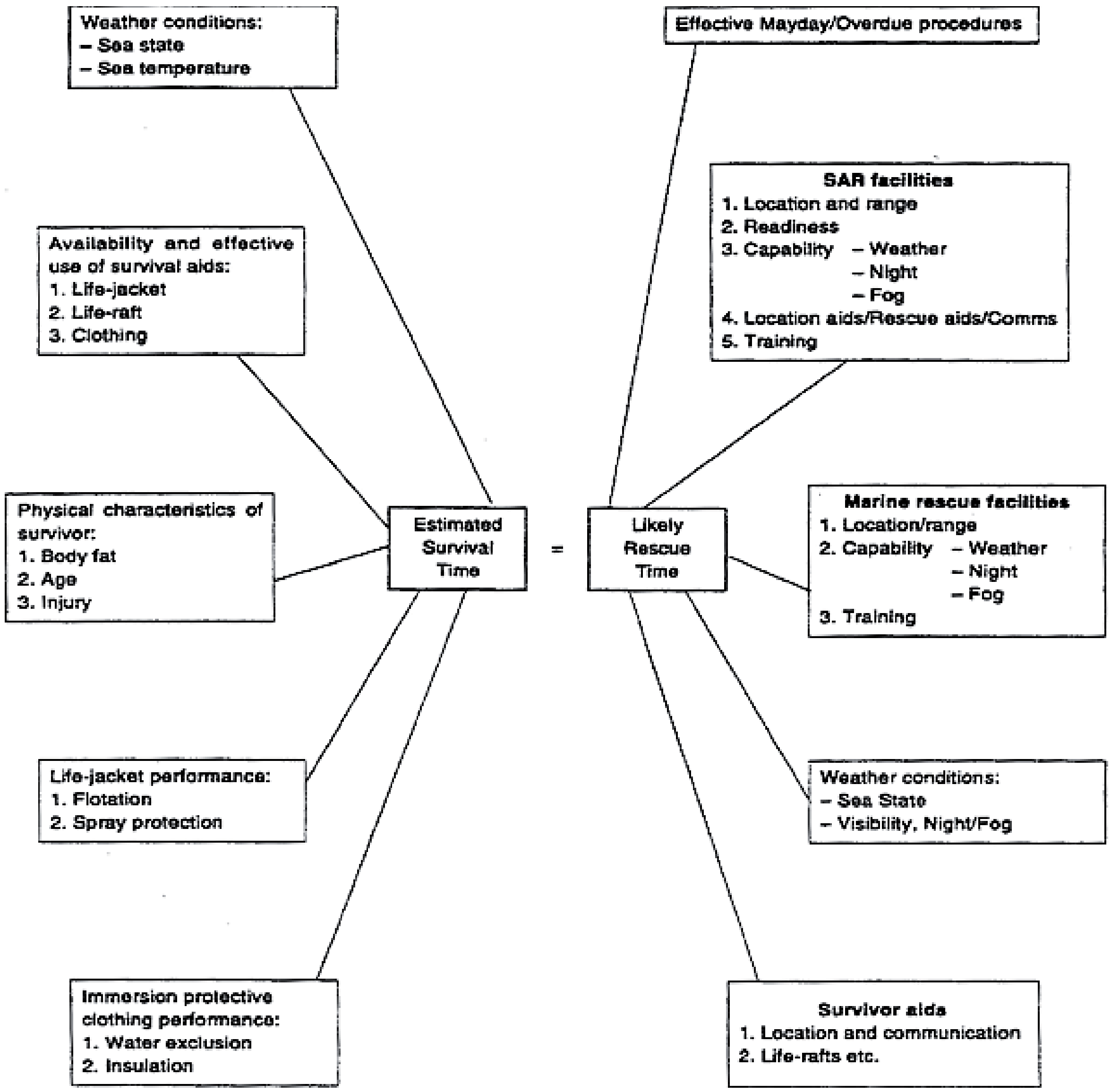
(1) A person accidentally immersed in cold seas (typically offshore Northern Europe) will have a better chance of survival if he/she is wearing an effective survival suit in addition to a life-jacket. By wearing the survival suit, he/she can slow down the rate which his/her body temperature falls and, consequently, protect himself/herself from the greater risk of drowning brought about by incapacitation due to hypothermia.

(2) The complete survival suit system – suit, life-jacket and clothes worn under the suit – should be able to keep the wearer alive long enough for the rescue services to find and recover him/her. In practice the limit is about 3 hours. If a group of persons in the water cannot be rescued within this time they are likely to have become so scattered and separated that location will be extremely difficult, especially in the rough water typical of Northern European sea areas. If it is expected that in water protection could be required for periods greater than 3 hours, improvements should, rather, be sought in the search and rescue procedures than in the immersion suit protection.

(b) Survival times

(1) The aim should be to ensure that a person in the water can survive long enough to be rescued, i.e. the survival time must be greater than the likely rescue time. The factors affecting both times are shown in Figure 1 below. The figure emphasises that survival time is influenced by many factors, physical and human. Some of the factors are relevant to survival in cold water and some are relevant in water at any temperature.

Figure 1: The survival equation



(2) Broad estimates of likely survival times for the thin individual offshore are given in Table 1 below. As survival time is significantly affected by the prevailing weather conditions at the time of immersion, the Beaufort wind scale has been used as an indicator of these surface conditions.

Table 1: Timescale within which the most vulnerable individuals are likely to succumb to the prevailing conditions.

Clothing assembly	**Beaufort wind force**	**Times within which the most vulnerable individuals are likely to drown**	
		(water temp 5°c)	(water temp 13°c)
Working clothes (no immersion suit)	0 – 2	Within ¾ hour	Within 1 ¼ hours
	3 – 4	Within ½ hour	Within ½ hour
	5 and above	Significantly less than ½ hour	Significantly less than ½ hour
Immersion suit worn over working clothes (with leakage inside suit)	0 -2	May well exceed 3 hours	May well exceed 3 hours
	3 – 4	Within 2 ¾ hours	May well exceed 3 hours
	5 and above	Significantly less than 2 ¾ hours. May well exceed 1 hour	May well exceed 3 hours

(3) Consideration should also be given to escaping from the helicopter itself should it submerge or invert in the water. In this case escape time is limited to the length of time the occupants can hold their breath. The breath holding time can be greatly reduced by the effect of cold shock. Cold shock is caused by the sudden drop in skin temperature on immersion, and is characterised by a gasp reflex and uncontrolled breathing. The urge to breathe rapidly becomes overwhelming and, if still submerged, the individual will inhale water resulting in drowning. Delaying the onset of cold shock by wearing an immersion suit will extend the available escape time from a submerged helicopter.

(4) The effects of water leakage and hydrostatic compression on the insulation quality of clothing are well recognised. In a nominally dry system the insulation is provided by still air trapped within the clothing fibres and between the layers of suit and clothes. It has been observed that many systems lose some of their insulative capacity either because the clothes under the 'waterproof' survival suit get wet to some extent or because of hydrostatic compression of the whole assembly. As a result of water leakage and compression, survival times will be shortened. The wearing of warm clothing under the suit is recommended.

(5) Whatever type of survival suit and other clothing is provided, it should not be forgotten that significant heat loss can occur from the head.

CAT.IDE.H.300 Life-rafts, survival ELTs and survival equipment on extended overwater flights

Helicopters operated:

(a) in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed;

(b) in performance class 3 on a flight over water at a distance corresponding to more than 3 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed, shall be equipped with:

(1) in the case of a helicopter carrying less than 12 persons, at least one life raft with a rated capacity of not less than the maximum number of persons on board, stowed so as to facilitate its ready use in an emergency;

(2) in the case of a helicopter carrying more than 11 persons, at least two life-rafts, stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in an emergency, sufficient together to accommodate all persons capable of being carried on board and, if one is lost, the remaining life-raft(s) having, the overload capacity sufficient to accommodate all persons on the helicopter;

(3) at least one survival ELT (ELT(S)) for each required life-raft; and

(4) life-saving equipment, including means of sustaining life, as appropriate to the flight to be undertaken.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.300 Life-rafts, survival ELTs and survival equipment on extended overwater flights

LIFE–RAFTS AND EQUIPMENT FOR MAKING DISTRESS SIGNALS – HELICOPTERS

(a) Each required life-raft should conform to the following specifications:

(1) be of an approved design and stowed so as to facilitate their ready use in an emergency;

(2) be radar conspicuous to standard airborne radar equipment;

(3) when carrying more than one life-raft on board, at least 50 % should be able to be deployed by the crew while seated at their normal station, where necessary by remote control; and

(4) life-rafts that are not deployable by remote control or by the crew should be of such weight as to permit handling by one person. 40 kg should be considered a maximum weight.

(b) Each required life-raft should contain at least the following:

(1) one approved survivor locator light;

(2) one approved visual signalling device;

(3) one canopy (for use as a sail, sunshade or rain catcher) or other mean to protect occupants from the elements;

(4) one radar reflector;

(5) one 20 m retaining line designed to hold the life-raft near the helicopter but to release it if the helicopter becomes totally submerged;

(6) one sea anchor;

(7) one survival kit, appropriately equipped for the route to be flown, which should contain at least the following:

(i) one life-raft repair kit;

(ii) one bailing bucket;

(iii) one signalling mirror;

(iv) one police whistle;

(v) one buoyant raft knife;

(vi) one supplementary means of inflation;

(vii) sea sickness tablets;

(viii) one first-aid kit;

(ix) one portable means of illumination;

(x) 500 ml of pure water and one sea water desalting kit; and

(xi) one comprehensive illustrated survival booklet in an appropriate language.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.300(b)(3)&CAT.IDE.H.305(b) Flight over water & Survival equipment

SURVIVAL ELT

An ELT(AP) may be used to replace one required ELT(S) provided that it meets the ELT(S) requirements. A water-activated ELT(S) is not an ELT(AP).

CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

Helicopters operated over areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult shall be equipped with:

(a) signalling equipment to make distress signals;

(b) at least one ELT(S); and

(c) additional survival equipment for the route to be flown taking account of the number of persons on board.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

ADDITIONAL SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT

(a) The following additional survival equipment should be carried when required:

   (1) 500 ml of water for each 4, or fraction of 4, persons on board;

   (2) one knife;

   (3) first-aid equipment; and

   (4) one set of air/ground codes.

(b) In addition, when polar conditions are expected, the following should be carried:

   (1) a means for melting snow;

   (2) one snow shovel and 1 ice saw;

   (3) sleeping bags for use by 1/3 of all persons on board and space blankets for the remainder or space blankets for all passengers on board; and

   (4) one arctic/polar suit for each crew member.

(c) If any item of equipment contained in the above list is already carried on board the helicopter in accordance with another requirement, there is no need for this to be duplicated.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

SIGNALLING EQUIPMENT

The signalling equipment for making distress signals is described in ICAO Annex 2, Rules of the Air.

GM2 CAT.IDE.H.305 Survival equipment

AREAS IN WHICH SEARCH AND RESCUE WOULD BE ESPECIALLY DIFFICULT

The expression 'areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult' should be interpreted, in this context, as meaning:

(a) areas so designated by the authority responsible for managing search and rescue; or

(b) areas that are largely uninhabited and where:

  (1) the authority referred to in (a) has not published any information to confirm whether search and rescue would be or would not be especially difficult; and

  (2) the authority referred to in (a) does not, as a matter of policy, designate areas as being especially difficult for search and rescue.

CAT.IDE.H.310 Additional requirements for helicopters conducting offshore operations in a hostile sea area

Helicopters operated in offshore operations in a hostile sea area, at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruising speed, shall comply with the following:

(a) When the weather report or forecasts available to the commander indicate that the sea temperature will be less than plus 10°C during the flight, or when the estimated rescue time exceeds the calculated survival time, or the flight is planned to be conducted at night, all persons on board shall wear a survival suit.

(b) All life-rafts carried in accordance with CAT.IDE.H.300 shall be installed so as to be usable in the sea conditions in which the helicopter's ditching, flotation and trim characteristics were evaluated in order to comply with the ditching requirements for certification.

(c) The helicopter shall be equipped with an emergency lighting system with an independent power supply to provide a source of general cabin illumination to facilitate the evacuation of the helicopter.

(d) All emergency exits, including crew emergency exits, and the means for opening them shall be conspicuously marked for the guidance of occupants using the exits in daylight or in the dark. Such markings shall be designed to remain visible if the helicopter is capsized and the cabin is submerged.

(e) All non-jettisonable doors that are designated as ditching emergency exits shall have a means of securing them in the open position so that they do not interfere with occupants' egress in all sea conditions up to the maximum required to be evaluated for ditching and flotation.

(f) All doors, windows or other openings in the passenger compartment assessed as suitable for the purpose of underwater escape shall be equipped so as to be operable in an emergency.

(g) Life-jackets shall be worn at all times, unless the passenger or crew member is wearing an integrated survival suit that meets the combined requirement of the survival suit and life-jacket.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.310 Additional requirements for helicopters operating to or from helidecks located in a hostile sea area

INSTALLATION OF THE LIFE-RAFT

(a) Projections on the exterior surface of the helicopter, that are located in a zone delineated by boundaries that are 1.22 m (4 ft) above and 0.61 m (2 ft) below the established static water line could cause damage to a deployed life-raft. Examples of projections that need to be considered are aerials, overboard vents, unprotected split-pin tails, guttering and any projection sharper than a three dimensional right angled corner.

(b) While the boundaries specified in (a) are intended as a guide, the total area that should be considered should also take into account the likely behaviour of the life-raft after deployment in all sea states up to the maximum in which the helicopter is capable of remaining upright.

(c) Wherever a modification or alteration is made to a helicopter within the boundaries specified, the need to prevent the modification or alteration from causing damage to a deployed life-raft should be taken into account in the design.

(d) Particular care should also be taken during routine maintenance to ensure that additional hazards are not introduced by, for example, leaving inspection panels with sharp corners proud of the surrounding fuselage surface, or allowing door sills to deteriorate to a point where sharp edges become a hazard.

CAT.IDE.H.315 Helicopters certified for operating on water — miscellaneous equipment

Helicopters certified for operating on water shall be equipped with:

(a) a sea anchor and other equipment necessary to facilitate mooring, anchoring or manoeuvring the helicopter on water, appropriate to its size, weight and handling characteristics; and

(b) equipment for making the sound signals prescribed in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, where applicable.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.315 Helicopters certificated for operating on water – Miscellaneous equipment

INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS FOR PREVENTING COLLISIONS AT SEA

International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea are those that were published by the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) in 1972.

CAT.IDE.H.320 All helicopters on flights over water — ditching

(a) Helicopters shall be designed for landing on water or certified for ditching in accordance with the relevant airworthiness code when operated in performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water in a hostile environment at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruise speed.

(b) Helicopters shall be designed for landing on water or certified for ditching in accordance the relevant airworthiness code or fitted with emergency flotation equipment when operated in:

(1) performance class 1 or 2 on a flight over water in a non-hostile environment at a distance from land corresponding to more than 10 minutes flying time at normal cruise speed;

(2) performance class 2, when taking off or landing over water, except in the case of helicopter emergency medical services (HEMS) operations, where for the purpose of minimising exposure, the landing or take-off at a HEMS operating site located in a congested environment is conducted over water;

(3) performance class 3 on a flight over water beyond safe forced landing distance from land.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.320(b) All helicopters on flight over water – ditching

GENERAL

The same considerations of AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.310 should apply in respect of emergency flotation equipment.

CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset

Whenever a radio communication and/or radio navigation system is required, helicopters shall be equipped with a headset with boom microphone or equivalent and a transmit button on the flight controls for each required pilot and/or crew member at his/her assigned station.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset

GENERAL

(a) A headset consists of a communication device that includes two earphones to receive and a microphone to transmit audio signals to the helicopter's communication system. To comply with the minimum performance requirements, the earphones and microphone should match the communication system's characteristics and the cockpit environment. The headset should be adequately adjustable in order to fit the pilot's head. Headset boom microphones should be of the noise cancelling type.

(b) If the intention is to utilise noise cancelling earphones, the operator should ensure that the earphones do not attenuate any aural warnings or sounds necessary for alerting the flight crew on matters related to the safe operation of the helicopter.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.325 Headset

GENERAL

The term ‘headset’ includes any aviation helmet incorporating headphones and microphone worn by a flight crew member.

CAT.IDE.H.330 Radio communication equipment

(a) Helicopters shall be equipped with the radio communication equipment required by the applicable airspace requirements.

(b) The radio communication equipment shall provide for communication on the aeronautical emergency frequency 121.5 MHz.

CAT.IDE.H.335 Audio selector panel

Helicopters operated under IFR shall be equipped with an audio selector panel operable from each required flight crew member station.

CAT.IDE.H.340 Radio equipment for operations under VFR over routes navigated by reference to visual landmarks

Helicopters operated under VFR over routes that can be navigated by reference to visual landmarks shall be equipped with radio communication equipment necessary under normal radio propagation conditions to fulfil the following:

(a) communicate with appropriate ground stations;

(b) communicate with appropriate ATC stations from any point in controlled airspace within which flights are intended; and

(c) receive meteorological information.

CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

(a) Helicopters operated under IFR or under VFR over routes that cannot be navigated by reference to visual landmarks shall be equipped with radio communication and navigation equipment in accordance with the applicable airspace requirements.

(b) Radio communication equipment shall include at least two independent radio communication systems necessary under normal operating conditions to communicate with an appropriate ground station from any point on the route, including diversions.

(c) Helicopters shall have sufficient navigation equipment to ensure that, in the event of the failure of one item of equipment at any stage of the flight, the remaining equipment shall allow safe navigation in accordance with the flight plan.

(d) Helicopters operated on flights in which it is intended to land in IMC shall be equipped with suitable equipment capable of providing guidance to a point from which a visual landing can be performed for each aerodrome at which it is intended to land in IMC and for any designated alternate aerodromes.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

TWO INDEPENDENT MEANS OF COMMUNICATION

Whenever two independent means of communication are required, each system should have an independent antenna installation, except where rigidly supported non-wire antennae or other antenna installations of equivalent reliability are used.

AMC2 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

ACCEPTABLE NUMBER AND TYPE OF COMMUNICATION AND NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT

(a) An acceptable number and type of communication and navigation equipment is:

   (1) two VHF omnidirectional radio range (VOR) receiving systems on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on VOR signals;

   (2) two automatic direction finder (ADF) systems on any route, or part thereof, where navigation is based only on non-directional beacon (NDB) signals; and

   (3) area navigation equipment when area navigation is required for the route being flown (e.g. equipment required by Part-SPA).

(b) The helicopter may be operated without the navigation equipment specified in (a)(1) and (a)(2) provided it is equipped with alternative equipment. The reliability and the accuracy of alternative equipment should allow safe navigation for the intended route.

(c) VHF communication equipment, instrument landing system (ILS) localiser and VOR receivers installed on helicopters to be operated under IFR should comply with the following FM immunity performance standards:

   (1) ICAO Annex 10, Volume I – Radio Navigation Aids, and Volume III, Part II – Voice Communications Systems; and

   (2) acceptable equipment standards contained in EUROCAE Minimum Operational Performance Specifications, documents ED-22B for VOR receivers, ED-23B for VHF communication receivers and ED-46B for LOC receivers and the corresponding Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics (RTCA) documents DO-186, DO-195 and DO-196.

AMC3 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

FAILURE OF A SINGLE UNIT

Required communication and navigation equipment should be installed such that the failure of any single unit required for either communication or navigation purposes, or both, will not result in the failure of another unit required for communications or navigation purposes.

GM1 CAT.IDE.H.345 Communication and navigation equipment for operations under IFR or under VFR over routes not navigated by reference to visual landmarks

APPLICABLE AIRSPACE REQUIREMENTS

For helicopters being operated under European air traffic control, the applicable airspace requirements include the Single European Sky legislation.

CAT.IDE.H.350 Transponder

Helicopters shall be equipped with a pressure altitude reporting secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder and any other SSR transponder capability required for the route being flown.

AMC1 CAT.IDE.H.350 Transponder

SSR TRANSPONDER

(a) The secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponders of aircraft being operated under European air traffic control should comply with any applicable Single European Sky legislation.

(b) If the Single European Sky legislation is not applicable, the SSR transponders should operate in accordance with the relevant provisions of Volume IV of ICAO Annex 10.

European Aviation Safety Agency

CONSOLIDATED DOCUMENT OF ANNEX V – SPECIFIC APPROVALS – PART-SPA

Implementing Rule, Acceptable Means of Compliance and Guidance Material

First edition: May 2013

Contents

ANNEX V — [PART-SPA] — SUBPART A — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 5
SPA.GEN.100 Competent authority 5
SPA.GEN.105 Application for a specific approval 5
AMC1 SPA.GEN.105(a) Application for a specific approval 6
SPA.GEN.110 Privileges of an operator holding a specific approval 7
SPA.GEN.115 Changes to a specific approval 7
SPA.GEN.120 Continued validity of a specific approval 7

SUBPART B — PERFORMANCE-BASED NAVIGATION (PBN) OPERATIONS 8
SPA.PBN.100 PBN operations 8
GM1 SPA.PBN.100 PBN operations 9
SPA.PBN.105 PBN operational approval 12

SUBPART C — OPERATIONS WITH SPECIFIED MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE (MNPS)......13
SPA.MNPS.100 MNPS operations 13
GM1 SPA.MNPS.100 MNPS operations 14
SPA.MNPS.105 MNPS operational approval 15
AMC1 SPA.MNPS.105 MNPS operational approval 16

SUBPART D — OPERATIONS IN AIRSPACE WITH REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA (RVSM)....17
SPA.RVSM.100 RVSM operations 17
SPA.RVSM.105 RVSM operational approval 17
AMC1 SPA.RVSM.105 RVSM operational approval 18
AMC2 SPA.RVSM.105 RVSM operational approval 19
GM1 SPA.RVSM.105(d)(9) RVSM operational approval 22
SPA.RVSM.110 RVSM equipment requirements 23
AMC1 SPA.RVSM.110(a) RVSM equipment requirements 24
SPA.RVSM.115 RVSM height-keeping errors 25

SUBPART E — LOW VISIBILITY OPERATIONS (LVO) 26
SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 26
AMC1 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 27
AMC2 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 28
AMC3 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 28
AMC4 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 29
AMC5 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 30
AMC6 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 31
AMC7 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 33
GM1 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 35
GM2 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations 35
GM1 SPA.LVO.100(c),(e) Low visibility operations 35
GM1 SPA.LVO.100(e) Low visibility operations 37
GM1 SPA.LVO.100(f) Low visibility operations 37
SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 39
AMC1 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 40
AMC2 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 41
AMC3 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 43
AMC4 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 43
AMC5 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 43
AMC6 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 44
GM1 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval 45
SPA.LVO.110 General operating requirements 46
GM1 SPA.LVO.110(c)(4)(i) General operating requirements 47
SPA.LVO.115 Aerodrome related requirements 48
SPA.LVO.120 Flight crew training and qualifications 48
AMC1 SPA.LVO.120 Flight crew training and qualifications 49
GM1 SPA.LVO.120 Flight crew training and qualifications 55
SPA.LVO.125 Operating procedures 56

AMC1 SPA.LVO.125 Operating procedures 57
SPA.LVO.130 Minimum equipment 58

SUBPART F — EXTENDED RANGE OPERATIONS WITH TWO-ENGINED AEROPLANES (ETOPS).....59
SPA.ETOPS.100 ETOPS 59
SPA.ETOPS.105 ETOPS operational approval 59
GM1 SPA.ETOPS.105 ETOPS operational approval 60
SPA.ETOPS.110 ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome 61
SPA.ETOPS.115 ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome planning minima 61

SUBPART G — TRANSPORT — OF DANGEROUS GOODS 62
SPA.DG.100 Transport of dangerous goods 62
SPA.DG.105 Approval to transport dangerous goods 62
AMC1 SPA.DG.105(a) Approval to transport dangerous goods 63
AMC1 SPA.DG.105(b) Approval to transport dangerous goods 63
GM1 SPA.DG.105(b)(6) Approval to transport dangerous goods 64
SPA.DG.110 Dangerous goods information and documentation 65
AMC1 SPA.DG.110(a) Dangerous goods information and documentation 66
AMC1 SPA.DG.110(b) Dangerous goods information and documentation 66

SUBPART H — HELICOPTER OPERATIONS WITH NIGHT VISION IMAGING SYSTEMS........67
SPA.NVIS.100 Night vision imaging system (NVIS) operations 67
SPA.NVIS.110 Equipment requirements for NVIS operations 67
AMC1 SPA.NVIS.110(b) Equipment requirements for NVIS operations 68
GM1 SPA.NVIS.110(b) Equipment requirements for NVIS operations 69
GM1 SPA.NVIS.110(f) Equipment requirements for NVIS operations 69
SPA.NVIS.120 NVIS operating minima 70
SPA.NVIS.130 Crew requirements for NVIS operations 70
GM1 SPA.NVIS.130(e) Crew requirements for NVIS operations 71
GM1 SPA.NVIS.130(e) Crew requirements for NVIS operations 71
AMC1 SPA.NVIS.130(f)(1) Crew requirements for NVIS operations 72
AMC1 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements 72
GM1 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements 73
GM2 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements 76
GM3 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements 81
GM4 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements 82
SPA.NVIS.140 Information and documentation 83
AMC1 SPA.NVIS.140 Information and documentation 84
GM1 SPA.NVIS.140 Information and documentation 85

SUBPART I — HELICOPTER HOIST OPERATIONS........105
SPA.HHO.100 Helicopter hoist operations (HHO) 105
SPA.HHO.110 Equipment requirements for HHO 105
AMC1 SPA.HHO.110(a) Equipment requirements for HHO 106
SPA.HHO.115 HHO communication 107
SPA.HHO.125 Performance requirements for HHO 107
SPA.HHO.130 Crew requirements for HHO 108
AMC1 SPA.HHO.130(b)(2)(ii) Crew requirements for HHO 109
AMC1 SPA.HHO.130(e) Crew requirements for HHO 109
AMC1 SPA.HHO.130(f)(1) Crew requirements for HHO 109
SPA.HHO.135 HHO passenger briefing 111
SPA.HHO.140 Information and documentation 111
AMC1 SPA.HHO.140 Information and documentation 112

SUBPART J — HELICOPTER EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICE OPERATIONS 113
SPA.HEMS.100 Helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS) operations 113
GM1 SPA.HEMS.100(a) Helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS) operations 114
SPA.HEMS.110 Equipment requirements for HEMS operations 117
SPA.HEMS.115 Communication 117
SPA.HEMS.120 HEMS operating minima 117
GM1 SPA.HEMS.120 HEMS operating minima 118

SPA.HEMS.125 Performance requirements for HEMS operations 119
GM1 SPA.HEMS.125(b)(3) Performance requirements for HEMS operations 120
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.125(b)(4) Performance requirements for HEMS operations..................... 121
SPA.HEMS.130 Crew requirements 122
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(b)(2) Crew requirements 124
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(d) Crew requirements 124
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(e) Crew requirements 124
GM1 SPA.HEMS.130(e)(2)(ii) Crew requirements 125
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(e)(2)(ii)(B) Crew requirements 126
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(f)(1) Crew requirements 126
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(f)(2)(ii)(B) Crew requirements 127
SPA.HEMS.135 HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing 128
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.135(a) HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing 129
AMC1.1 SPA.HEMS.135(a) HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing 129
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.135(b) HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing 129
SPA.HEMS.140 Information and documentation 130
AMC1 SPA.HEMS.140 Information and documentation..................... 131
SPA.HEMS.145 HEMS operating base facilities 132
SPA.HEMS.150 Fuel supply..................... 132
SPA.HEMS.155 Refuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking 132

ANNEX V
SPECIFIC APPROVALS
[PART-SPA]

SUBPART A — GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SPA.GEN.100 Competent authority

The competent authority for issuing a specific approval for the commercial air transport operator shall be the authority of the Member State in which the operator has its principal place of business.

SPA.GEN.105 Application for a specific approval

(a) The operator applying for the initial issue of a specific approval shall provide to the competent authority the documentation required in the applicable Subpart, together with the following information:

(1) the name, address and mailing address of the applicant;

(2) a description of the intended operation.

(b) The operator shall provide the following evidence to the competent authority:

(1) compliance with the requirements of the applicable Subpart;

(2) that the relevant elements defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003 are taken into account.

(c) The operator shall retain records relating to (a) and (b) at least for the duration of the operation requiring a specific approval, or, if applicable, in accordance with Annex III (Part-ORO).

AMC1 SPA.GEN.105(a) Application for a specific approval

DOCUMENTATION

(a) Operating procedures should be documented in the operations manual.

(b) If an operations manual is not required, operating procedures may be described in a procedures manual.

SPA.GEN.110 Privileges of an operator holding a specific approval

The scope of the activity that an operator holding an air operator certificate (AOC) is approved to conduct shall be documented and specified in the operations specifications to the AOC.

SPA.GEN.115 Changes to a specific approval

When the conditions of a specific approval are affected by changes, the operator shall provide the relevant documentation to the competent authority and obtain prior approval for the operation.

SPA.GEN.120 Continued validity of a specific approval

Specific approvals shall be issued for an unlimited duration and shall remain valid subject to the operator remaining in compliance with the requirements associated with the specific approval and taking into account the relevant elements defined in the data established in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

SUBPART B — PERFORMANCE-BASED NAVIGATION (PBN) OPERATIONS

SPA.PBN.100 PBN operations

Aircraft shall only be operated in designated airspace, on routes or in accordance with procedures where performance-based navigation (PBN) specifications are established if the operator has been granted an approval by the competent authority to conduct such operations. No specific approval is required for operations in area navigation 5 (RNAV5 (basic area navigation, B-RNAV)) designated airspace.

GM1 SPA.PBN.100 PBN operations

GENERAL

(a) There are two kinds of navigation specifications: area navigation (RNAV) and required navigation performance (RNP). These specifications are similar. The key difference is that a navigation specification that includes a requirement to have an on-board performance monitoring and alerting system is referred to as an RNP specification. An RNAV specification does not have such a requirement. The performance-monitoring and alerting system provides some automated assurance functions to the flight crew. These functions monitor system performance and alert the flight crew when the RNP parameters are not met, or cannot be guaranteed with a sufficient level of integrity. RNAV and RNP performance is expressed by the total system error (TSE). This is the deviation from the nominal or desired position and the aircraft's true position, measured in nautical miles. The TSE should remain equal to or less than the required accuracy expected to be achieved at least 95 % of the flight time by the population of aircraft operating within the airspace, route or procedure.

(b) The structure of RNAV and RNP navigation specifications can be classified by phases of flight as detailed in Table 1. Some of these special approvals are in current use, some are under development, and some apply to emerging standards for which AMC-20 material has yet to be defined.

(c) The following RNAV and RNP navigation specifications are considered:

(1) Oceanic/Remote, RNAV10 (designated and authorised as RNP10)

Acceptable means of compliance for RNAV10 (RNP10) are provided in EASA AMC 20-12, "Recognition of FAA order 8400.12a for RNP10 Operations". Although RNAV10 airspace is, for historical reasons, also called RNP10 airspace, there is no requirement for on-board monitoring and alerting systems. RNAV10 can support 50 NM track spacing. For an aircraft to operate in RNAV10 (RNP10) airspace it needs to be fitted with a minimum of two independent long range navigation systems (LRNSs). Each LRNS should in principle have a flight management system (FMS) that utilises positional information from either an approved global navigation satellite system (GNSS) or an approved inertial reference system (IRS) or mixed combination. The mix of sensors (pure GNSS, pure IRS or mixed IRS/GNSS) determines pre-flight and in-flight operation and contingencies in the event of system failure.

(2) Oceanic/Remote, RNP4

Guidance for this RNP standard is provided in ICAO Doc 9613. RNP4 is the oceanic/remote navigation specification to support 30 NM track spacing with ADS-C and CPDLC required. To meet this more accurate navigation requirement, two independent LRNS are required for which GNSS sensors are mandatory. If GNSS is used as a stand-alone LRNS, an integrity check is foreseen (fault detection and exclusion).Additional aircraft requirements include two long range communication systems (LRCSs) in order to operate in RNP4 designated airspace. The appropriate air information publication (AIP) should be consulted to assess coverage of HF and SATCOM. The additional requirements may include use of automatic dependent surveillance (ADS) and/or controller pilot data link communication (CPDLC).

(3) RNAV5 (B-RNAV)

Acceptable means of compliance for RNAV5 are provided in AMC 20-4, "Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for the Use of Navigation Systems in European Airspace Designated for the Basic-RNAV Operations". No specific approval required.

(4) RNAV2

This is a non-European en-route standard. Guidance for this RNP standard is provided in ICAO Doc 9613.

(5) RNAV1 (P-RNAV)

Acceptable means of compliance for RNAV1 (P-RNAV) are provided in JAA TGL-10 'Airworthiness and Operational approval for precision RNAV operations in designated European Airspace', planned to be replaced by AMC 20 material.

(6) Basic–RNP1

This is a future standard yet to be implemented. Guidance material is provided in ICAO Doc 9613.

(7) RNP APCH (RNP Approach)

Non-precision approaches supported by GNSS and APV (approach procedure with vertical guidance) which are themselves divided in two types of APV approaches: APV Baro and APV SBAS.

RNP APCH is charted as RNAV (GNSS). A minima line is provided for each of the available types of non-precision approaches and the APV procedure at a specific runway:

– non-precision approach – lateral navigation (LNAV) or localiser performance (LP) minima line;

– APV Baro – LNAV/VNAV (vertical navigation) minima line; and

– APV SBAS – localiser performance with vertical guidance (LPV) minima line.

Non-precision approaches to LNAV minima and APV approaches to LNAV/VNAV minima are addressed in AMC 20-27, "Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP approach (RNP APCH) operations including APV Baro VNAV operations".

APV approaches to LPV minima are addressed in AMC 20-28 "Airworthiness Approval and. Operational Criteria for RNAV GNSS approach operation to LPV minima using SBAS".

Non-precision approaches to LP minima have not yet been addressed in AMC 20.

(8) RNP AR APCH (approach)

RNP AR criteria have been developed to support RNP operations to RNP minima using RNP less than or equal to 0.3 NM or fixed radius turns (RF). The vertical performance is defined by a vertical error budget based upon Baro VNAV. Equivalent means of compliance using SBAS may be demonstrated.

RNP AR APCH is charted as RNAV (RNP). A minima line is provided for each available RNP value.

Acceptable Means of Compliance for RNP AR are provided in AMC20-26 'Airworthiness Approval and Operational Criteria for RNP Authorisation Required (RNP AR) Operations'.

Each RNP AR approach requires a special approval.

(d) Guidance material for the global performances specifications, approval process, aircraft requirement (e.g. generic system performances, accuracy, integrity, continuity, signal-in-space, RNP navigation specifications required for the on-board performance monitoring and alerting system), requirements for specific sensor technologies, functional requirements, operating procedures, flight crew knowledge and training and navigation databases integrity requirements, can be found in:

(1) ICAO Doc 9613 Performance-Based Navigation (PBN) Manual; and

(2) Table 1.

Table 1: Overview of PBN specifications

FLIGHT PHASE

	En-route		Arrival	Approach				Departure	EASA AMC
	Oceanic/ Remote	Continental		Initial	Intermediate	Final	Missed		
RNAV10	10								AMC 20-12
RNP 4	4								To be developed
RNAV 5		5	5						AMC 20-4
RNAV2		2	2					2	To be developed
RNAV1 (P-RNAV)			1	1	1		1	1	To be developed
BASIC-RNP 1			1	1	1		1	1	To be developed
RNP APCH (LNAV & LNAV/VNAV)				1	1	0.3	1		AMC 20-27
RNP APCH (LPV)						0.3	1		AMC 20-28
RNP AR APCH				1-0.1	1-0.1	0.3-0.1	1-0.1		AMC 20-26

SPA.PBN.105 PBN operational approval

To obtain a PBN operational approval from the competent authority, the operator shall provide evidence that:

(a) the relevant airworthiness approval of the RNAV system has been obtained;

(b) a training programme for the flight crew members involved in these operations has been established;

(c) operating procedures have been established specifying:

  (1) the equipment to be carried, including its operating limitations and appropriate entries in the minimum equipment list (MEL);

  (2) flight crew composition and experience requirements;

  (3) normal procedures;

  (4) contingency procedures;

  (5) monitoring and incident reporting;

  (6) electronic navigation data management.

SUBPART C — OPERATIONS WITH SPECIFIED MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE (MNPS)

SPA.MNPS.100 MNPS operations

Aircraft shall only be operated in designated minimum navigation performance specifications (MNPS) airspace in accordance with Regional Supplementary Procedures, where minimum navigation performance specifications are established, if the operator has been granted an approval by the competent authority to conduct such operations.

GM1 SPA.MNPS.100 MNPS operations

DOCUMENTATION

MNPS and the procedures governing their application are published in the Regional Supplementary Procedures, ICAO Doc 7030, as well as in national AIPs.

SPA.MNPS.105 MNPS operational approval

To obtain an MNPS operational approval from the competent authority, the operator shall provide evidence that:

(a) the navigation equipment meets the required performance;

(b) navigation displays, indicators and controls are visible and operable by either pilot seated at his/her duty station;

(c) a training programme for the flight crew members involved in these operations has been established;

(d) operating procedures have been established specifying:

(1) the equipment to be carried, including its operating limitations and appropriate entries in the MEL;

(2) flight crew composition and experience requirements;

(3) normal procedures;

(4) contingency procedures including those specified by the authority responsible for the airspace concerned;

(5) monitoring and incident reporting.

AMC1 SPA.MNPS.105 MNPS operational approval

LONG RANGE NAVIGATION SYSTEM (LRNS)

(a) For unrestricted operation in MNPS airspace an aircraft should be equipped with two independent LRNSs.

(b) An LRNS may be one of the following:

(1) one inertial navigation system (INS);

(2) one global navigation satellite system (GNSS); or

(3) one navigation system using the inputs from one or more inertial reference system (IRS) or any other sensor system complying with the MNPS requirement.

(c) In case of the GNSS is used as a stand-alone system for LRNS, an integrity check should be carried out.

(d) For operation in MNPS airspace along notified special routes the aeroplane should be equipped with one LRNS.

SUBPART D — OPERATIONS IN AIRSPACE WITH REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA (RVSM)

SPA.RVSM.100 RVSM operations

Aircraft shall only be operated in designated airspace where a reduced vertical separation minimum of 300 m (1 000 ft) applies between flight level (FL) 290 and FL 410, inclusive, if the operator has been granted an approval by the competent authority to conduct such operations.

SPA.RVSM.105 RVSM operational approval

To obtain an RVSM operational approval from the competent authority, the operator shall provide evidence that:

(a) the RVSM airworthiness approval has been obtained;

(b) procedures for monitoring and reporting height-keeping errors have been established;

(c) a training programme for the flight crew members involved in these operations has been established;

(d) operating procedures have been established specifying:

   (1) the equipment to be carried, including its operating limitations and appropriate entries in the MEL;

   (2) flight crew composition and experience requirements;

   (3) flight planning;

   (4) pre-flight procedures;

   (5) procedures prior to RVSM airspace entry;

   (6) in-flight procedures;

   (7) post-flight procedures;

   (8) incident reporting;

   (9) specific regional operating procedures.

AMC1 SPA.RVSM.105 RVSM operational approval

CONTENT OF OPERATOR RVSM APPLICATION

The following material should be made available to the competent authority, in sufficient time to permit evaluation, before the intended start of RVSM operations:

(a) Airworthiness documents

Documentation that shows that the aircraft has RVSM airworthiness approval. This should include an aircraft flight manual (AFM) amendment or supplement.

(b) Description of aircraft equipment

A description of the aircraft appropriate to operations in an RVSM environment.

(c) Training programmes, operating practices and procedures

The operator should submit training syllabi for initial and recurrent training programmes together with other relevant material. The material should show that the operating practices, procedures and training items, related to RVSM operations in airspace that requires State operational approval, are incorporated.

(d) Operations manual and checklists

The appropriate manuals and checklists should be revised to include information/guidance on standard operating procedures. Manuals should contain a statement of the airspeeds, altitudes and weights considered in RVSM aircraft approval, including identification of any operating limitations or conditions established for that aircraft type. Manuals and checklists may need to be submitted for review by the competent authority as part of the application process.

(e) Past performance

Relevant operating history, where available, should be included in the application. The applicant should show that any required changes have been made in training, operating or maintenance practices to improve poor height-keeping performance.

(f) Minimum equipment list

Where applicable, a minimum equipment list (MEL), adapted from the master minimum equipment list (MMEL), should include items pertinent to operating in RVSM airspace.

(g) Plan for participation in verification/monitoring programmes

The operator should establish a plan for participation in any applicable verification/monitoring programme acceptable to the competent authority. This plan should include, as a minimum, a check on a sample of the operator's fleet by an regional monitoring agency (RMA)'s independent height-monitoring system.

AMC2 SPA.RVSM.105 RVSM operational approval

OPERATING PROCEDURES

(a) Flight planning

(1) During flight planning the flight crew should pay particular attention to conditions that may affect operation in RVSM airspace. These include, but may not be limited to:

(i) verifying that the airframe is approved for RVSM operations;

(ii) reported and forecast weather on the route of flight;

(iii) minimum equipment requirements pertaining to height-keeping and alerting systems; and

(iv) any airframe or operating restriction related to RVSM operations.

(b) Pre-flight procedures

(1) The following actions should be accomplished during the pre-flight procedure:

(i) Review technical logs and forms to determine the condition of equipment required for flight in the RVSM airspace. Ensure that maintenance action has been taken to correct defects to required equipment.

(ii) During the external inspection of aircraft, particular attention should be paid to the condition of static sources and the condition of the fuselage skin near each static source and any other component that affects altimetry system accuracy. This check may be accomplished by a qualified and authorised person other than the pilot (e.g. a flight engineer or ground engineer).

(iii) Before take-off, the aircraft altimeters should be set to the QNH (atmospheric pressure at nautical height) of the airfield and should display a known altitude, within the limits specified in the aircraft operating manuals. The two primary altimeters should also agree within limits specified by the aircraft operating manual. An alternative procedure using QFE (atmospheric pressure at aerodrome elevation/runway threshold) may also be used. The maximum value of acceptable altimeter differences for these checks should not exceed 23 m (75 ft). Any required functioning checks of altitude indicating systems should be performed.

(iv) Before take-off, equipment required for flight in RVSM airspace should be operative and any indications of malfunction should be resolved.

(c) Prior to RVSM airspace entry

(1) The following equipment should be operating normally at entry into RVSM airspace:

(i) two primary altitude measurement systems. A cross-check between the primary altimeters should be made. A minimum of two will need to agree within ±60 m (±200 ft). Failure to meet this condition will require that the altimetry system be reported as defective and air traffic control (ATC) notified;

(ii) one automatic altitude-control system;

(iii) one altitude-alerting device; and

(iv) operating transponder.

(2) Should any of the required equipment fail prior to the aircraft entering RVSM airspace, the pilot should request a new clearance to avoid entering this airspace.

(d) In-flight procedures

(1) The following practices should be incorporated into flight crew training and procedures:

(i) Flight crew should comply with any aircraft operating restrictions, if required for the specific aircraft type, e.g. limits on indicated Mach number, given in the RVSM airworthiness approval.

(ii) Emphasis should be placed on promptly setting the sub-scale on all primary and standby altimeters to 1013.2 hPa / 29.92 in Hg when passing the transition altitude, and rechecking for proper altimeter setting when reaching the initial cleared flight level.

(iii) In level cruise it is essential that the aircraft is flown at the cleared flight level. This requires that particular care is taken to ensure that ATC clearances are fully understood and followed.

The aircraft should not intentionally depart from cleared flight level without a positive clearance from ATC unless the crew are conducting contingency or emergency manoeuvres.

(iv) When changing levels, the aircraft should not be allowed to overshoot or undershoot the cleared flight level by more than 45 m (150 ft). If installed, the level off should be accomplished using the altitude capture feature of the automatic altitude-control system.

(v) An automatic altitude-control system should be operative and engaged during level cruise, except when circumstances such as the need to re-trim the aircraft or turbulence require disengagement. In any event, adherence to cruise altitude should be done by reference to one of the two primary altimeters. Following loss of the automatic height-keeping function, any consequential restrictions will need to be observed.

(vi) Ensure that the altitude-alerting system is operative.

(vii) At intervals of approximately 1 hour, cross-checks between the primary altimeters should be made. A minimum of two will need to agree within ±60 m (±200 ft). Failure to meet this condition will require that the altimetry system be reported as defective and ATC notified or contingency procedures applied:

(A) the usual scan of flight deck instruments should suffice for altimeter cross-checking on most flights; and

(B) before entering RVSM airspace, the initial altimeter cross-check of primary and standby altimeters should be recorded.

(viii) In normal operations, the altimetry system being used to control the aircraft should be selected for the input to the altitude reporting transponder transmitting information to ATC.

(ix) If the pilot is notified by ATC of a deviation from an assigned altitude exceeding ±90 m (±300 ft) then the pilot should take action to return to cleared flight level as quickly as possible.

(2) Contingency procedures after entering RVSM airspace are as follows:

(i) The pilot should notify ATC of contingencies (equipment failures, weather) that affect the ability to maintain the cleared flight level and coordinate a plan of action appropriate to the airspace concerned. The pilot should obtain to the guidance on contingency procedures is contained in the relevant publications dealing with the airspace.

(ii) Examples of equipment failures that should be notified to ATC are:

(A) failure of all automatic altitude-control systems aboard the aircraft;

(B) loss of redundancy of altimetry systems;

(C) loss of thrust on an engine necessitating descent; or

(D) any other equipment failure affecting the ability to maintain cleared flight level.

(iii) The pilot should notify ATC when encountering greater than moderate turbulence.

(iv) If unable to notify ATC and obtain an ATC clearance prior to deviating from the cleared flight level, the pilot should follow any established contingency procedures for the region of operation and obtain ATC clearance as soon as possible.

(e) Post-flight procedures

(1) In making technical log entries against malfunctions in height-keeping systems, the pilot should provide sufficient detail to enable maintenance to effectively troubleshoot and repair the system. The pilot should detail the actual defect and the crew action taken to try to isolate and rectify the fault.

(2) The following information should be recorded when appropriate:

(i) primary and standby altimeter readings;

(ii) altitude selector setting;

(iii) subscale setting on altimeter;

(iv) autopilot used to control the aircraft and any differences when an alternative autopilot system was selected;

(v) differences in altimeter readings, if alternate static ports selected;

(vi) use of air data computer selector for fault diagnosis procedure; and

(vii) the transponder selected to provide altitude information to ATC and any difference noted when an alternative transponder was selected.

(f) Crew training

(1) The following items should also be included in flight crew training programmes:

(i) knowledge and understanding of standard ATC phraseology used in each area of operations;

(ii) importance of crew members cross-checking to ensure that ATC clearances are promptly and correctly complied with;

(iii) use and limitations in terms of accuracy of standby altimeters in contingencies. Where applicable, the pilot should review the application of static source error correction/position error correction through the use of correction cards; such correction data should be available on the flight deck;

(iv) problems of visual perception of other aircraft at 300 m (1 000 ft) planned separation during darkness, when encountering local phenomena such as northern lights, for opposite and same direction traffic, and during turns;

(v) characteristics of aircraft altitude capture systems that may lead to overshoots;

(vi) relationship between the aircraft's altimetry, automatic altitude control and transponder systems in normal and abnormal conditions; and

(vii) any airframe operating restrictions, if required for the specific aircraft group, related to RVSM airworthiness approval.

GM1 SPA.RVSM.105(d)(9) RVSM operational approval

SPECIFIC REGIONAL PROCEDURES

(a) The areas of applicability (by Flight Information Region) of RVSM airspace in identified ICAO regions is contained in the relevant sections of ICAO Document 7030/4. In addition, these sections contain operating and contingency procedures unique to the regional airspace concerned, specific flight planning requirements and the approval requirements for aircraft in the designated region.

(b) Comprehensive guidance on operational matters for European RVSM airspace is contained in EUROCONTROL Document ASM ET1.ST.5000 entitled "The ATC Manual for a Reduced Vertical Separation (RVSM) in Europe" with further material included in the relevant State aeronautical publications.

SPA.RVSM.110 RVSM equipment requirements

Aircraft used for operations in RVSM airspace shall be equipped with:

(a) two independent altitude measurement systems;

(b) an altitude alerting system;

(c) an automatic altitude control system;

(d) a secondary surveillance radar (SSR) transponder with altitude reporting system that can be connected to the altitude measurement system in use for altitude control.

AMC1 SPA.RVSM.110(a) RVSM equipment requirements

TWO INDEPENDENT ALTITUDE MEASUREMENT SYSTEMS

Each system should be composed of the following components:

(a) cross-coupled static source/system, with ice protection if located in areas subject to ice accretion;

(b) equipment for measuring static pressure sensed by the static source, converting it to pressure altitude and displaying the pressure altitude to the flight crew:

(c) equipment for providing a digitally encoded signal corresponding to the displayed pressure altitude, for automatic altitude reporting purposes;

(d) static source error correction (SSEC), if needed to meet the performance criteria for RVSM flight envelopes; and

(e) signals referenced to a flight crew selected altitude for automatic control and alerting. These signals will need to be derived from an altitude measurement system meeting the performance criteria for RVSM flight envelopes.

SPA.RVSM.115 RVSM height-keeping errors

(a) The operator shall report recorded or communicated occurrences of height-keeping errors caused by malfunction of aircraft equipment or of operational nature, equal to or greater than:

(1) a total vertical error (TVE) of ±90 m (±300 ft);

(2) an altimetry system error (ASE) of ±75 m (±245 ft); and

(3) an assigned altitude deviation (AAD) of ±90 m (±300 ft).

(b) Reports of such occurrences shall be sent to the competent authority within 72 hours. Reports shall include an initial analysis of causal factors and measures taken to prevent repeat occurrences.

(c) When height-keeping errors are recorded or received, the operator shall take immediate action to rectify the conditions that caused the errors and provide follow-up reports, if requested by the competent authority.

SUBPART E — LOW VISIBILITY OPERATIONS (LVO)

SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

The operator shall only conduct the following low visibility operations (LVO) when approved by the competent authority:

(a) low visibility take-off (LVTO) operation;

(b) lower than Standard Category I (LTS CAT I) operation;

(c) Standard Category II (CAT II) operation;

(d) other than Standard Category II (OTS CAT II) operation;

(e) Standard Category III (CAT III) operation;

(f) approach operation utilising enhanced vision systems (EVS) for which an operational credit is applied to reduce the runway visual range (RVR) minima by no more than one third of the published RVR.

AMC1 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

LVTO OPERATIONS − AEROPLANES

For a low visibility take-off (LVTO) with an aeroplane the following provisions should apply:

(a) for an LVTO with a runway visual range (RVR) below 400 m the criteria specified in Table 1.A;

(b) for an LVTO with an RVR below 150 m but not less than 125 m:

(1) high intensity runway centre line lights spaced 15 m or less apart and high intensity edge lights spaced 60 m or less apart that are in operation;

(2) a 90 m visual segment that is available from the flight crew compartment at the start of the take-off run; and

(3) the required RVR value is achieved for all of the relevant RVR reporting points;

(c) for an LVTO with an RVR below 125 m but not less than 75 m:

(1) runway protection and facilities equivalent to CAT III landing operations are available; and

(2) the aircraft is equipped with an approved lateral guidance system.

Table 1.A: LVTO – aeroplanes

RVR vs. facilities

Facilities	RVR (m) *, **
Day: runway edge lights and runway centre line markings Night: runway edge lights and runway end lights or runway centre line lights and runway end lights	300
Runway edge lights and runway centre line lights	200
Runway edge lights and runway centre line lights	TDZ, MID, rollout 150***
High intensity runway centre line lights spaced 15 m or less and high intensity edge lights spaced 60 m or less are in operation	TDZ, MID, rollout 125***
Runway protection and facilities equivalent to CAT III landing operations are available and the aircraft is equipped either with an approved lateral guidance system or an approved HUD / HUDLS for take-off.	TDZ, MID, rollout 75

*: The reported RVR value representative of the initial part of the take-off run can be replaced by pilot assessment.

**: Multi-engined aeroplanes that in the event of an engine failure at any point during take-off can either stop or continue the take-off to a height of 1 500 ft above the aerodrome while clearing obstacles by the required margins.

***: The required RVR value to be achieved for all relevant RVRs

TDZ: touchdown zone, equivalent to the initial part of the take-off run

MID: midpoint

AMC2 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

LVTO OPERATIONS – HELICOPTERS

For LVTOs with helicopters the provisions specified in Table 1.H should apply.

Table 1.H: LVTO – helicopters

RVR vs. facilities

Facilities	RVR (m) *, **
Onshore aerodromes with IFR departure procedures	
No light and no markings (day only)	250 or the rejected take-off distance, whichever is the greater
No markings (night)	800
Runway edge/FATO light and centre line marking	200
Runway edge/FATO light, centre line marking and relevant RVR information	150
Offshore helideck *	
Two-pilot operations	250
Single-pilot operations	500

*: The take-off flight path to be free of obstacles

FATO: final approach and take-off area

AMC3 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

LTS CAT I OPERATIONS

(a) For lower than Standard Category I (LTS CAT I) operations the following provisions should apply:

(1) The decision height (DH) of an LTS CAT I operation should not be lower than the highest of:

(i) the minimum DH specified in the AFM, if stated;

(ii) the minimum height to which the precision approach aid can be used without the specified visual reference;

(iii) the applicable obstacle clearance height (OCH) for the category of aeroplane;

(iv) the DH to which the flight crew is qualified to operate; or

(v) 200 ft.

(2) An instrument landing system / microwave landing system (ILS/MLS) that supports an LTS CAT I operation should be an unrestricted facility with a straight-in course, ≤ 3° offset, and the ILS should be certified to:

(i) class I/T/1 for operations to a minimum of 450 m RVR; or

(ii) class II/D/2 for operations to less than 450 m RVR.

Single ILS facilities are only acceptable if level 2 performance is provided.

(3) The following visual aids should be available:

(i) standard runway day markings, approach lights, runway edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights;

(ii) for operations with an RVR below 450 m, additionally touch-down zone and/or runway centre line lights.

(4) The lowest RVR / converted meteorological visibility (CMV) minima to be used are specified in Table 2.

Table 2: LTS CAT I operation minima

RVR/CMV vs. approach lighting system

DH (ft)	Class of light facility *			
	FALS	IALS	BALS	NALS
	RVR/CMV (m)			
200 – 210	400	500	600	750
211 – 220	450	550	650	800
221 – 230	500	600	700	900
231 – 240	500	650	750	1 000
241 – 249	550	700	800	1 100

*: FALS: full approach lighting system

IALS: intermediate approach lighting system

BALS: basic approach lighting system

NALS: no approach lighting system

AMC4 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

CAT II AND OTS CAT II OPERATIONS

(a) For CAT II and other than Standard Category II (OTS CAT II) operations the following provisions should apply:

(1) The ILS / MLS that supports OTS CAT II operation should be an unrestricted facility with a straight in course (≤ 3º offset) and the ILS should be certified to class II/D/2.

Single ILS facilities are only acceptable if level 2 performance is provided.

(2) The DH for CAT II and OTS CAT II operation should not be lower than the highest of:

(i) the minimum DH specified in the AFM, if stated;

(ii) the minimum height to which the precision approach aid can be used without the specified visual reference;

(iii) the applicable OCH for the category of aeroplane;

(iv) the DH to which the flight crew is qualified to operate; or

(v) 100 ft.

(3) The following visual aids should be available:

(i) standard runway day markings and approach and the following runway lights: runway edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights;

(ii) for operations in RVR below 450 m, additionally touch-down zone and/or runway centre line lights;

(iii) for operations with an RVR of 400 m or less, additionally centre line lights.

(4) The lowest RVR minima to be used are specified:

(i) for CAT II operations in Table 3; and

(ii) for OTS CAT II operations in Table 4.

(b) For OTS CAT II operations, the terrain ahead of the runway threshold should have been surveyed.

Table 3: CAT II operation minima

RVR vs. DH

DH (ft)	Auto-coupled or approved HUDLS to below DH *	
	Aircraft categories A, B, C RVR (m)	Aircraft category D RVR (m)
100 – 120	300	300/350**
121 – 140	400	400
141 – 199	450	450

*: This means continued use of the automatic flight control system or the HUDLS down to a height of 80 % of the DH.

**: An RVR of 300 m may be used for a category D aircraft conducting an auto-land.

Table 4: OTS CAT II operation minima

RVR vs. approach lighting system

	Auto-land or approved HUDLS utilised to touchdown				
	Class of light facility				
	FALS		IALS	BALS	NALS
	Aircraft categories A – C	Aircraft category D	Aircraft categories A – D	Aircraft categories A – D	Aircraft categories A – D
DH (ft)	RVR (m)				
100 – 120	350	400	450	600	700
121 – 140	400	450	500	600	700
141 – 160	400	500	500	600	750
161 – 199	400	500	550	650	750

AMC5 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

CAT III OPERATIONS

The following provisions should apply to CAT III operations:

(a) Where the DH and RVR do not fall within the same category, the RVR should determine in which category the operation is to be considered.

(b) For operations in which a DH is used, the DH should not be lower than:

(1) the minimum DH specified in the AFM, if stated;

(2) the minimum height to which the precision approach aid can be used without the specified visual reference; or

(3) the DH to which the flight crew is qualified to operate.

(c) Operations with no DH should only be conducted if:

(1) the operation with no DH is specified in the AFM;

(2) the approach aid and the aerodrome facilities can support operations with no DH; and

(3) the flight crew is qualified to operate with no DH.

(d) The lowest RVR minima to be used are specified in Table 5.

Table 5: CAT III operations minima

RVR vs. DH and rollout control/guidance system

CAT	DH (ft) *	Rollout control/guidance system	RVR (m)
IIIA	Less than 100	Not required	200
IIIB	Less than 100	Fail-passive	150**
IIIB	Less than 50	Fail-passive	125
IIIB	Less than 50 or no DH	Fail-operational ***	75

*: Flight control system redundancy is determined under CS-AWO by the minimum certified DH.

**: For aeroplanes certified in accordance with CS-AWO 321(b)(3) or equivalent.

***: The fail-operational system referred to may consist of a fail-operational hybrid system.

AMC6 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

OPERATIONS UTILISING EVS

The pilot using a certified enhanced vision system (EVS) in accordance with the procedures and limitations of the AFM:

(a) may reduce the RVR/CMV value in column 1 to the value in column 2 of Table 6 for CAT I operations, APV operations and NPA operations flown with the CDFA technique;

(b) for CAT I operations:

(1) may continue an approach below DH to 100 ft above the runway threshold elevation provided that a visual reference is displayed and identifiable on the EVS image; and

(2) should only continue an approach below 100 ft above the runway threshold elevation provided that a visual reference is distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot without reliance on the EVS;

(c) for APV operations and NPA operations flown with the CDFA technique:

(1) may continue an approach below DH/MDH to 200 ft above the runway threshold elevation provided that a visual reference is displayed and identifiable on the EVS image; and

(2) should only continue an approach below 200 ft above the runway threshold elevation provided that a visual reference is distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot without reliance on the EVS.

Table 6: Operations utilising EVS

RVR/CMV reduction vs. normal RVR/CMV

RVR/CMV (m) normally required	RVR/CMV (m) utilising EVS
550	350
600	400
650	450
700	450
750	500
800	550
900	600
1 000	650
1 100	750

RVR/CMV (m) normally required	RVR/CMV (m) utilising EVS
1 200	800
1 300	900
1 400	900
1 500	1 000
1 600	1 100
1 700	1 100
1 800	1 200
1 900	1 300
2 000	1 300
2 100	1 400
2 200	1 500
2 300	1 500
2 400	1 600
2 500	1 700
2 600	1 700
2 700	1 800
2 800	1 900
2 900	1 900
3 000	2 000
3 100	2 000
3 200	2 100
3 300	2 200
3 400	2 200
3 500	2 300
3 600	2 400
3 700	2 400
3 800	2 500
3 900	2 600
4 000	2 600
4 100	2 700
4 200	2 800
4 300	2 800
4 400	2 900
4 500	3 000
4 600	3 000
4 700	3 100
4 800	3 200
4 900	3 200
5 000	3 300

AMC7 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

EFFECT ON LANDING MINIMA OF TEMPORARILY FAILED OR DOWNGRADED EQUIPMENT

(a) General

These instructions are intended for use both pre-flight and in-flight. It is however not expected that the pilot-in-command/commander would consult such instructions after passing 1 000 ft above the aerodrome. If failures of ground aids are announced at such a late stage, the approach could be continued at the pilot-in-command/commander's discretion. If failures are announced before such a late stage in the approach, their effect on the approach should be considered as described in Table 7, and the approach may have to be abandoned.

(b) The following conditions should be applicable to the tables below:

(1) multiple failures of runway/FATO lights other than indicated in Table 7 are not acceptable;

(2) deficiencies of approach and runway/FATO lights are treated separately;

(3) for CAT II and CAT III operations, a combination of deficiencies in runway/FATO lights and RVR assessment equipment are not permitted; and

(4) failures other than ILS and MLS affect RVR only and not DH.

Table 7: Failed or downgraded equipment – effect on landing minima

Operations with an LVO approval

Failed or downgraded equipment	**Effect on landing minima**			
	CAT IIIB (no DH)	**CAT IIIB**	**CAT IIIA**	**CAT II**
ILS/MLS stand-by transmitter	Not allowed	RVR 200 m	No effect	
Outer marker	No effect if replaced by height check at 1 000 ft			
Middle marker	No effect			
RVR assessment systems	At least one RVR value to be available on the aerodrome	On runways equipped with two or more RVR assessment units, one may be inoperative		
Approach lights	No effect	Not allowed for operations with DH >50 ft		Not allowed
Approach lights except the last 210 m	No effect			Not allowed
Approach lights except the last 420 m	No effect			
Standby power for approach lights	No effect			
Edge lights, threshold lights and runway end lights	No effect		Day: no effect Night: RVR 550 m	Day: no effect Night: not allowed

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Failed or downgraded equipment</th><th colspan="4">Effect on landing minima</th></tr>
<tr><th>CAT IIIB (no DH)</th><th>CAT IIIB</th><th>CAT IIIA</th><th>CAT II</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Centre line lights</td><td>Day: RVR 200 m</td><td rowspan="2">Not allowed</td><td>Day: RVR 300 m</td><td>Day: RVR 350 m</td></tr>
<tr><td>Night: not allowed</td><td>Night: RVR 400 m</td><td>Night: RVR 550 m (400 m with HUDLS or auto-land)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Centre line lights spacing increased to 30 m</td><td colspan="2">RVR 150 m</td><td colspan="2">No effect</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Touchdown zone lights</td><td rowspan="2">No effect</td><td>Day: RVR 200 m</td><td colspan="2">Day: RVR 300 m</td></tr>
<tr><td>Night: RVR 300 m</td><td colspan="2">Night: RVR 550 m, 350 m with HUDLS or auto-land</td></tr>
<tr><td>Taxiway light system</td><td colspan="4">No effect</td></tr>
</table>

GM1 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

DOCUMENTS CONTAINING INFORMATION RELATED TO LOW VISIBILITY OPERATIONS

The following documents provide further information to low visibility operations (LVO):

(a) ICAO Annex 2 Rules of the Air;

(b) ICAO Annex 6 Operation of Aircraft;

(c) ICAO Annex 10 Telecommunications Vol. 1;

(d) ICAO Annex 14 Aerodromes Vol. 1;

(e) ICAO Doc 8168 PANS – OPS Aircraft Operations;

(f) ICAO Doc 9365 AWO Manual;

(g) ICAO Doc 9476 Manual of surface movement guidance and control systems (SMGCS);

(h) ICAO Doc 9157 Aerodrome Design Manual;

(i) ICAO Doc 9328 Manual of RVR Observing and Reporting Practices;

(j) ICAO EUR Doc 013: European Guidance Material on Aerodrome Operations under Limited Visibility Conditions;

(k) ECAC Doc 17, Issue 3; and

(l) CS-AWO All weather operations.

GM2 SPA.LVO.100 Low visibility operations

ILS CLASSIFICATION

The ILS classification system is specified in ICAO Annex 10.

GM1 SPA.LVO.100(c),(e) Low visibility operations

ESTABLISHMENT OF MINIMUM RVR FOR CAT II AND CAT III OPERATIONS

(a) General

(1) When establishing minimum RVR for CAT II and CAT III operations, operators should pay attention to the following information that originates in ECAC Doc 17 3rd Edition, Subpart A. It is retained as background information and, to some extent, for historical purposes although there may be some conflict with current practices.

(2) Since the inception of precision approach and landing operations various methods have been devised for the calculation of aerodrome operating minima in terms of DH and RVR. It is a comparatively straightforward matter to establish the DH for an operation but establishing the minimum RVR to be associated with that DH so as to provide a high probability that the required visual reference will be available at that DH has been more of a problem.

(3) The methods adopted by various States to resolve the DH/RVR relationship in respect of CAT II and CAT III operations have varied considerably. In one instance there has been a simple approach that entailed the application of empirical data based on actual operating experience in a particular environment. This has given satisfactory results for application within the environment for which it was developed. In another instance a more sophisticated method was employed which utilised a fairly complex computer programme to take account of a wide range of variables. However, in the latter case, it has been found that with the improvement in the performance of visual aids, and the increased use of automatic equipment in the many different types of new aircraft, most of the variables cancel each other out and a simple tabulation can be constructed that is applicable to a wide range of aircraft. The basic principles that are observed in establishing the values in such a table are that the scale of visual reference required by a pilot at and below DH depends on the task that he/she has to carry out, and that the degree to which his/her vision is obscured depends on the obscuring medium, the general rule in fog being that it becomes more dense with increase

in height. Research using flight simulation training devices (FSTDs) coupled with flight trials has shown the following:

(i) most pilots require visual contact to be established about 3 seconds above DH though it has been observed that this reduces to about 1 second when a fail-operational automatic landing system is being used;

(ii) to establish lateral position and cross-track velocity most pilots need to see not less than a three light segment of the centre line of the approach lights, or runway centre line, or runway edge lights;

(iii) for roll guidance most pilots need to see a lateral element of the ground pattern, i.e. an approach light cross bar, the landing threshold, or a barrette of the touchdown zone light; and

(iv) to make an accurate adjustment to the flight path in the vertical plane, such as a flare, using purely visual cues, most pilots need to see a point on the ground which has a low or zero rate of apparent movement relative to the aircraft.

(v) With regard to fog structure, data gathered in the United Kingdom over a 20 year period have shown that in deep stable fog there is a 90 % probability that the slant visual range from eye heights higher than 15 ft above the ground will be less than the horizontal visibility at ground level, i.e. RVR. There are at present no data available to show what the relationship is between the slant visual range and RVR in other low visibility conditions such as blowing snow, dust or heavy rain, but there is some evidence in pilot reports that the lack of contrast between visual aids and the background in such conditions can produce a relationship similar to that observed in fog.

(b) CAT II operations

The selection of the dimensions of the required visual segments that are used for CAT II operations is based on the following visual provisions:

(1) a visual segment of not less than 90 m will need to be in view at and below DH for pilot to be able to monitor an automatic system;

(2) a visual segment of not less than 120 m will need to be in view for a pilot to be able to maintain the roll attitude manually at and below DH; and

(3) for a manual landing using only external visual cues, a visual segment of 225 m will be required at the height at which flare initiation starts in order to provide the pilot with sight of a point of low relative movement on the ground.

Before using a CAT II ILS for landing, the quality of the localiser between 50 ft and touchdown should be verified.

(c) CAT III fail-passive operations

(1) CAT III operations utilising fail-passive automatic landing equipment were introduced in the late 1960s and it is desirable that the principles governing the establishment of the minimum RVR for such operations be dealt with in some detail.

(2) During an automatic landing the pilot needs to monitor the performance of the aircraft system, not in order to detect a failure that is better done by the monitoring devices built into the system, but so as to know precisely the flight situation. In the final stages the pilot should establish visual contact and, by the time the pilot reaches DH, the pilot should have checked the aircraft position relative to the approach or runway centre line lights. For this the pilot will need sight of horizontal elements (for roll reference) and part of the touchdown area. The pilot should check for lateral position and cross-track velocity and, if not within the pre-stated lateral limits, the pilot should carry out a missed approach procedure. The pilot should also check longitudinal progress and sight of the landing threshold is useful for this purpose, as is sight of the touchdown zone lights.

(3) In the event of a failure of the automatic flight guidance system below DH, there are two possible courses of action; the first is a procedure that allows the pilot to complete the landing manually if there is adequate visual reference for him/her to do so, or to initiate a missed approach procedure if there is not; the second is to make a missed approach procedure mandatory if there is a system disconnect regardless of the pilot's assessment of the visual reference available:

(i) If the first option is selected then the overriding rule in the determination of a minimum RVR is for sufficient visual cues to be available at and below DH for the pilot to be able to carry out a manual landing. Data presented in ECAC Doc 17 showed that a minimum value of

300 m would give a high probability that the cues needed by the pilot to assess the aircraft in pitch and roll will be available and this should be the minimum RVR for this procedure.

(ii) The second option, to require a missed approach procedure to be carried out should the automatic flight-guidance system fail below DH, will permit a lower minimum RVR because the visual reference provision will be less if there is no need to provide for the possibility of a manual landing. However, this option is only acceptable if it can be shown that the probability of a system failure below DH is acceptably low. It should be recognised that the inclination of a pilot who experiences such a failure would be to continue the landing manually but the results of flight trials in actual conditions and of simulator experiments show that pilots do not always recognise that the visual cues are inadequate in such situations and present recorded data reveal that pilots' landing performance reduces progressively as the RVR is reduced below 300 m. It should further be recognised that there is some risk in carrying out a manual missed approach procedure from below 50 ft in very low visibility and it should therefore be accepted that if an RVR lower than 300 m is to be approved, the flight deck procedure should not normally allow the pilot to continue the landing manually in such conditions and the aircraft system should be sufficiently reliable for the missed approach procedure rate to be low.

(4) These criteria may be relaxed in the case of an aircraft with a fail-passive automatic landing system that is supplemented by a head-up display that does not qualify as a fail-operational system but that gives guidance that will enable the pilot to complete a landing in the event of a failure of the automatic landing system. In this case it is not necessary to make a missed approach procedure mandatory in the event of a failure of the automatic landing system when the RVR is less than 300 m.

(d) CAT III fail-operational operations – with a DH

(1) For CAT III operations utilising a fail-operational landing system with a DH, a pilot should be able to see at least one centre line light.

(2) For CAT III operations utilising a fail-operational hybrid landing system with a DH, a pilot should have a visual reference containing a segment of at least three consecutive lights of the runway centre line lights.

(e) CAT III fail operational operations – with no DH

(1) For CAT III operations with no DH the pilot is not required to see the runway prior to touchdown. The permitted RVR is dependent on the level of aircraft equipment.

(2) A CAT III runway may be assumed to support operations with no DH unless specifically restricted as published in the AIP or NOTAM.

GM1 SPA.LVO.100(e) Low visibility operations

CREW ACTIONS IN CASE OF AUTOPILOT FAILURE AT OR BELOW DH IN FAIL-PASSIVE CAT III OPERATIONS

For operations to actual RVR values less than 300 m, a missed approach procedure is assumed in the event of an autopilot failure at or below DH. This means that a missed approach procedure is the normal action. However, the wording recognises that there may be circumstances where the safest action is to continue the landing. Such circumstances include the height at which the failure occurs, the actual visual references, and other malfunctions. This would typically apply to the late stages of the flare. In conclusion, it is not forbidden to continue the approach and complete the landing when the pilot-in-command/commander determines that this is the safest course of action. The operator's policy and the operational instructions should reflect this information.

GM1 SPA.LVO.100(f) Low visibility operations

OPERATIONS UTILISING EVS

(a) Introduction

(1) Enhanced vision systems use sensing technology to improve a pilot's ability to detect objects, such as runway lights or terrain, which may otherwise not be visible. The image produced from the sensor and/or image processor can be displayed to the pilot in a number of ways including use

of a HUD. The systems can be used in all phases of flight and can improve situational awareness. In particular, infra-red systems can display terrain during operations at night, improve situational awareness during night and low-visibility taxiing, and may allow earlier acquisition of visual references during instrument approaches.

(b) Background to EVS provisions

(1) The provisions for EVS were developed after an operational evaluation of two different EVS systems, along with data and support provided by the FAA. Approaches using EVS were flown in a variety of conditions including fog, rain and snow showers, as well as at night to aerodromes located in mountainous terrain. The infra-red EVS performance can vary depending on the weather conditions encountered. Therefore, the provisions take a conservative approach to cater for the wide variety of conditions which may be encountered. It may be necessary to amend the provisions in the future to take account of greater operational experience.

(2) Provisions for the use of EVS during take-off have not been developed. The systems evaluated did not perform well when the RVR was below 300 m. There may be some benefit for use of EVS during take-off with greater visibility and reduced light; however, such operations would need to be evaluated.

(3) Provisions have been developed to cover use of infra-red systems only. Other sensing technologies are not intended to be excluded; however, their use will need to be evaluated to determine the appropriateness of this, or any other provision. During the development, it was envisaged what minimum equipment should be fitted to the aircraft. Given the present state of technological development, it is considered that a HUD is an essential element of the EVS equipment.

(4) In order to avoid the need for tailored charts for approaches utilising EVS, it is envisaged that the operator will use AMC6 SPA.LVO.110 Table 6 Operations utilising EVS RVR/CMV reduction vs. normal RVR/CMV to determine the applicable RVR at the commencement of the approach.

(c) Additional operational considerations

(1) EVS equipment should have:

(i) a head-up display system (capable of displaying, airspeed, vertical speed, aircraft attitude, heading, altitude, command guidance as appropriate for the approach to be flown, path deviation indications, flight path vector and flight path angle reference cue and the EVS imagery);

(ii) a head-down view of the EVS image, or other means of displaying the EVS-derived information easily to the pilot monitoring the progress of the approach; and

(iii) means to ensure that the pilot monitoring is kept in the ‘loop’ and crew resource management (CRM) does not break down.

SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

To obtain an LVO approval from the competent authority, the operator shall demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this Subpart.

AMC1 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

OPERATIONAL DEMONSTRATION − AEROPLANES

(a) General

(1) The purpose of the operational demonstration should be to determine or validate the use and effectiveness of the applicable aircraft flight guidance systems, including HUDLS if appropriate, training, flight crew procedures, maintenance programme, and manuals applicable to the CAT II/III programme being approved.

(i) At least 30 approaches and landings should be accomplished in operations using the CAT II/III systems installed in each aircraft type if the requested DH is 50 ft or higher. If the DH is less than 50 ft, at least 100 approaches and landings should be accomplished.

(ii) If the operator has different variants of the same type of aircraft utilising the same basic flight control and display systems, or different basic flight control and display systems on the same type of aircraft, the operator should show that the various variants have satisfactory performance, but need not conduct a full operational demonstration for each variant. The number of approaches and landings may be based on credit given for the experience gained by another operator, using the same aeroplane type or variant and procedures.

(iii) If the number of unsuccessful approaches exceeds 5 % of the total, e.g. unsatisfactory landings, system disconnects, the evaluation programme should be extended in steps of at least 10 approaches and landings until the overall failure rate does not exceed 5 %.

(2) The operator should establish a data collection method to record approach and landing performance. The resulting data and a summary of the demonstration data should be made available to the competent authority for evaluation.

(3) Unsatisfactory approaches and/or automatic landings should be documented and analysed.

(b) Demonstrations

(1) Demonstrations may be conducted in line operations or any other flight where the operator's procedures are being used.

(2) In unique situations where the completion of 100 successful landings could take an unreasonably long period of time and equivalent reliability assurance can be achieved, a reduction in the required number of landings may be considered on a case-by-case basis. Reduction of the number of landings to be demonstrated requires a justification for the reduction. This justification should take into account factors such as a small number of aircraft in the fleet, limited opportunity to use runways having CAT II/III procedures or the inability to obtain ATS sensitive area protection during good weather conditions. However, at the operator's option, demonstrations may be made on other runways and facilities. Sufficient information should be collected to determine the cause of any unsatisfactory performance (e.g. sensitive area was not protected).

(3) If the operator has different variants of the same type of aircraft utilising the same basic flight control and display systems, or different basic flight control and display systems on the same type or class of aircraft, the operator should show that the various variants have satisfactory performance, but need not conduct a full operational demonstration for each variant.

(4) Not more than 30 % of the demonstration flights should be made on the same runway.

(c) Data collection for operational demonstrations

(1) Data should be collected whenever an approach and landing is attempted utilising the CAT II/III system, regardless of whether the approach is abandoned, unsatisfactory, or is concluded successfully.

(2) The data should, as a minimum, include the following information:

(i) Inability to initiate an approach. Identify deficiencies related to airborne equipment that preclude initiation of a CAT II/III approach.

(ii) Abandoned approaches. Give the reasons and altitude above the runway at which approach was discontinued or the automatic landing system was disengaged.

(iii) Touchdown or touchdown and rollout performance. Describe whether or not the aircraft landed satisfactorily within the desired touchdown area with lateral velocity or cross track error that could be corrected by the pilot or automatic system so as to remain within the lateral confines of the runway without unusual pilot skill or technique. The approximate lateral and longitudinal position of the actual touchdown point in relation to the runway centre line and the runway threshold, respectively, should be indicated in the report. This report should also include any CAT II/III system abnormalities that required manual intervention by the pilot to ensure a safe touchdown or touchdown and rollout, as appropriate.

(d) Data analysis

Unsuccessful approaches due to the following factors may be excluded from the analysis:

(1) ATS factors. Examples include situations in which a flight is vectored too close to the final approach fix/point for adequate localiser and glide slope capture, lack of protection of ILS sensitive areas, or ATS requests the flight to discontinue the approach.

(2) Faulty navaid signals. Navaid (e.g. ILS localiser) irregularities, such as those caused by other aircraft taxiing, over-flying the navaid (antenna).

(3) Other factors. Any other specific factors that could affect the success of CAT II/ III operations that are clearly discernible to the flight crew should be reported.

AMC2 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

OPERATIONAL DEMONSTRATION − HELICOPTERS

(a) The operator should comply with the provisions prescribed below when introducing into CAT II or III service a helicopter type that is new to the EU.

(1) Operational reliability

The CAT II and III success rate should not be less than that required by CS-AWO or equivalent.

(2) Criteria for a successful approach

An approach is regarded as successful if:

(i) the criteria are as specified in CS-AWO or equivalent are met; and

(ii) no relevant helicopter system failure occurs.

For helicopter types already used for CAT II or III operations in another Member State, the in-service proving programme in (e) should be used instead.

(b) Data collection during airborne system demonstration – general

(1) The operator should establish a reporting system to enable checks and periodic reviews to be made during the operational evaluation period before the operator is approved to conduct CAT II or III operations. The reporting system should cover all successful and unsuccessful approaches, with reasons for the latter, and include a record of system component failures. This reporting system should be based upon flight crew reports and automatic recordings as prescribed in (c) and (d) below.

(2) The recordings of approaches may be made during normal line flights or during other flights performed by the operator.

(c) Data collection during airborne system demonstration – operations with DH not less than 50 ft

(1) For operations with DH not less than 50 ft, data should be recorded and evaluated by the operator and evaluated by the competent authority when necessary.

(2) It is sufficient for the following data to be recorded by the flight crew:

(i) FATO and runway used;

(ii) weather conditions;

(iii) time;

(iv) reason for failure leading to an aborted approach;

(v) adequacy of speed control;

(vi) trim at time of automatic flight control system disengagement;

(vii) compatibility of automatic flight control system, flight director and raw data;

(viii) an indication of the position of the helicopter relative to the ILS, MLS centre line when descending through 30 m (100 ft); and

(ix) touchdown position.

(3) The number of approaches made during the initial evaluation should be sufficient to demonstrate that the performance of the system in actual airline service is such that a 90 % confidence and a 95 % approach success will result.

(d) Data collection during airborne system demonstration – operations with DH less than 50 ft or no DH

(1) For operations with DH less than 50 ft or no DH, a flight data recorder (FDR), or other equipment giving the appropriate information, should be used in addition to the flight crew reports to confirm that the system performs as designed in actual airline service. The following data should be recorded:

(i) distribution of ILS, MLS deviations at 30 m (100 ft), at touchdown and, if appropriate, at disconnection of the rollout control system and the maximum values of the deviations between those points; and

(ii) sink rate at touchdown.

(2) Any landing irregularity should be fully investigated using all available data to determine its cause.

(e) In-service proving

The operator fulfilling the provisions of (f) above should be deemed to have met the in-service proving contained in this subparagraph.

(1) The system should demonstrate reliability and performance in line operations consistent with the operational concepts. A sufficient number of successful landings should be accomplished in line operations, including training flights, using the auto-land and rollout system installed in each helicopter type.

(2) The demonstration should be accomplished using a CAT II or CAT III ILS. Demonstrations may be made on other ILS or MLS facilities if sufficient data are recorded to determine the cause of unsatisfactory performance.

(3) If the operator has different variants of the same type of helicopter utilising the same basic flight control and display systems, or different basic flight control and display systems on the same type of helicopter, the operator should show that the variants comply with the basic system performance criteria, but the operator need not conduct a full operational demonstration for each variant.

(4) Where the operator introduces a helicopter type that has already been approved by the competent authority of any Member State for CAT II and/or CAT III operations, a reduced proving programme may be acceptable.

AMC3 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

CONTINUOUS MONITORING – ALL AIRCRAFT

(a) After obtaining the initial approval, the operations should be continuously monitored by the operator to detect any undesirable trends before they become hazardous. Flight crew reports may be used to achieve this.

(b) The following information should be retained for a period of 12 months:

(1) the total number of approaches, by aircraft type, where the airborne CAT II or III equipment was utilised to make satisfactory, actual or practice, approaches to the applicable CAT II or III minima; and

(2) reports of unsatisfactory approaches and/or automatic landings, by aerodrome and aircraft registration, in the following categories:

(i) airborne equipment faults;

(ii) ground facility difficulties;

(iii) missed approaches because of ATC instructions; or

(iv) other reasons.

(c) The operator should establish a procedure to monitor the performance of the automatic landing system or HUDLS to touchdown performance, as appropriate, of each aircraft.

AMC4 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

TRANSITIONAL PERIODS FOR CAT II AND CAT III OPERATIONS

(a) Operators with no previous CAT II or CAT III experience

(1) The operator without previous CAT II or III operational experience, applying for a CAT II or CAT IIIA operational approval, should demonstrate to the competent authority that it has gained a minimum experience of 6 months of CAT I operations on the aircraft type.

(2) The operator applying for a CAT IIIB operational approval should demonstrate to the competent authority that it has already completed 6 months of CAT II or IIIA operations on the aircraft type.

(b) Operators with previous CAT II or III experience

(1) The operator with previous CAT II or CAT III experience, applying for a CAT II or CAT III operational approval with reduced transition periods as set out in (a), should demonstrate to the competent authority that it has maintained the experience previously gained on the aircraft type.

(2) The operator approved for CAT II or III operations using auto-coupled approach procedures, with or without auto-land, and subsequently introducing manually flown CAT II or III operations using a HUDLS should provide the operational demonstrations set out in AMC1 SPA.LVO.105 and AMC2 SPA.LVO.105 as if it would be a new applicant for a CAT II or CAT III approval.

AMC5 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

MAINTENANCE OF CAT II, CAT III AND LVTO EQUIPMENT

Maintenance instructions for the on-board guidance systems should be established by the operator, in liaison with the manufacturer, and included in the operator's aircraft maintenance programme in accordance with Annex I to Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003[29] (Part-M).

[29] OJ L 315, 28.11.2003, p. 1.

AMC6 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

ELIGIBLE AERODROMES AND RUNWAYS

(a) Each aircraft type/runway combination should be verified by the successful completion of at least one approach and landing in CAT II or better conditions, prior to commencing CAT III operations.

(b) For runways with irregular pre-threshold terrain or other foreseeable or known deficiencies, each aircraft type/runway combination should be verified by operations in CAT I or better conditions, prior to commencing LTS CAT I, OTS CAT II or CAT III operations.

(c) If the operator has different variants of the same type of aircraft in accordance with (d), utilising the same basic flight control and display systems, or different basic flight control and display systems on the same type of aircraft in accordance with (d), the operator should show that the variants have satisfactory operational performance, but need not conduct a full operational demonstration for each variant/runway combination.

(d) For the purpose of this AMC, an aircraft type or variant of an aircraft type should be deemed to be the same type/variant of aircraft if that type/variant has the same or similar:

(1) level of technology, including the following:

(i) flight control/guidance system (FGS) and associated displays and controls;

(ii) FMS and level of integration with the FGS; and

(iii) use of HUDLS;

(2) operational procedures, including:

(i) alert height;

(ii) manual landing /automatic landing;

(iii) no DH operations; and

(iv) use of HUD/HUDLS in hybrid operations;

(3) handling characteristics, including:

(i) manual landing from automatic or HUDLS guided approach;

(ii) manual missed approach procedure from automatic approach; and

(iii) automatic/manual rollout.

(e) Operators using the same aircraft type/class or variant of a type in accordance with (d) above may take credit from each other's experience and records in complying with this subparagraph.

(f) Where an approval is sought for OTS CAT II, the same provisions as set out for CAT II should be applied.

GM1 SPA.LVO.105 LVO approval

CRITERIA FOR A SUCCESSFUL CAT II, OTS CAT II, CAT III APPROACH AND AUTOMATIC LANDING

(a) The purpose of this GM is to provide operators with supplemental information regarding the criteria for a successful approach and landing to facilitate fulfilling the requirements prescribed in SPA.LVO.105.

(b) An approach may be considered to be successful if:

(1) from 500 ft to start of flare:

(i) speed is maintained as specified in AMC-AWO 231, paragraph 2 'Speed Control'; and

(ii) no relevant system failure occurs;

and

(2) from 300 ft to DH:

(i) no excess deviation occurs; and

(ii) no centralised warning gives a missed approach procedure command (if installed).

(c) An automatic landing may be considered to be successful if:

(1) no relevant system failure occurs;

(2) no flare failure occurs;

(3) no de-crab failure occurs (if installed);

(4) longitudinal touchdown is beyond a point on the runway 60 m after the threshold and before the end of the touchdown zone light (900 m from the threshold);

(5) lateral touchdown with the outboard landing gear is not outside the touchdown zone light edge;

(6) sink rate is not excessive;

(7) bank angle does not exceed a bank angle limit; and

(8) no rollout failure or deviation (if installed) occurs.

(d) More details can be found in CS-AWO 131, CS-AWO 231 and AMC-AWO 231.

SPA.LVO.110 General operating requirements

(a) The operator shall only conduct LTS CAT I operations if:

(1) each aircraft concerned is certified for operations to conduct CAT II operations; and

(2) the approach is flown:

(i) auto-coupled to an auto-land that needs to be approved for CAT IIIA operations; or

(ii) using an approved head-up display landing system (HUDLS) to at least 150 ft above the threshold.

(b) The operator shall only conduct CAT II, OTS CAT II or CAT III operations if:

(1) each aircraft concerned is certified for operations with a decision height (DH) below 200 ft, or no DH, and equipped in accordance with the applicable airworthiness requirements;

(2) a system for recording approach and/or automatic landing success and failure is established and maintained to monitor the overall safety of the operation;

(3) the DH is determined by means of a radio altimeter;

(4) the flight crew consists of at least two pilots;

(5) all height call-outs below 200 ft above the aerodrome threshold elevation are determined by a radio altimeter

(c) The operator shall only conduct approach operations utilising an EVS if:

(1) the EVS is certified for the purpose of this subpart and combines infra-red sensor image and flight information on the HUD;

(2) for operations with an RVR below 550 m, the flight crew consists of at least two pilots;

(3) for CAT I operations, natural visual reference to runway cues is attained at least at 100 ft above the aerodrome threshold elevation;

(4) for approach procedure with vertical guidance (APV) and non-precision approach (NPA) operations flown with CDFA technique, natural visual reference to runway cues is attained at least at 200 ft above the aerodrome threshold elevation and the following requirements are complied with:

(i) the approach is flown using an approved vertical flight path guidance mode;

(ii) the approach segment from final approach fix (FAF) to runway threshold is straight and the difference between the final approach course and the runway centreline is not greater than 2°;

(iii) the final approach path is published and not greater than 3.7°;

(iv) the maximum cross-wind components established during certification of the EVS are not exceeded.

GM1 SPA.LVO.110(c)(4)(i) General operating requirements

APPROVED VERTICAL FLIGHT PATH GUIDANCE MODE

The term 'approved' means that the vertical flight path guidance mode has been certified by the Agency as part of the avionics product.

SPA.LVO.115 Aerodrome related requirements

(a) The operator shall not use an aerodrome for LVOs below a visibility of 800 m unless:

(1) the aerodrome has been approved for such operations by the State of the aerodrome; and

(2) low visibility procedures (LVP) have been established.

(b) If the operator selects an aerodrome where the term LVP is not used, the operator shall ensure that there are equivalent procedures that adhere to the requirements of LVP at the aerodrome. This situation shall be clearly noted in the operations manual or procedures manual including guidance to the flight crew on how to determine that the equivalent LVP are in effect.

SPA.LVO.120 Flight crew training and qualifications

The operator shall ensure that, prior to conducting an LVO:

(a) each flight crew member:

(1) complies with the training and checking requirements prescribed in the operations manual, including flight simulation training device (FSTD) training, in operating to the limiting values of RVR/VIS (visibility) and DH specific to the operation and the aircraft type;

(2) is qualified in accordance with the standards prescribed in the operations manual;

(b) the training and checking is conducted in accordance with a detailed syllabus.

AMC1 SPA.LVO.120 Flight crew training and qualifications

GENERAL PROVISIONS

(a) The operator should ensure that flight crew member training programmes for LVO include structured courses of ground, FSTD and/or flight training.

(1) Flight crew members with no CAT II or CAT III experience should complete the full training programme prescribed in (b), (c), and (d) below.

(2) Flight crew members with CAT II or CAT III experience with a similar type of operation (auto-coupled/auto-land, HUDLS/hybrid HUDLS or EVS) or CAT II with manual land, if appropriate, with another EU operator may undertake an:

(i) abbreviated ground training course if operating a different type or class from that on which the previous CAT II or CAT III experience was gained;

(ii) abbreviated ground, FSTD and/or flight training course if operating the same type or class and variant of the same type or class on which the previous CAT II or CAT III experience was gained. The abbreviated course should include at least the provisions of (d)(1), (d)(2)(i) or (d)(2)(ii) as appropriate and (d)(3)(i). The operator may reduce the number of approaches/landings required by (d)(2)(i) if the type/class or the variant of the type or class has the same or similar:

(A) level of technology – flight control/guidance system (FGS);

(B) operating procedures;

(C) handling characteristics;

(D) use of HUDLS/hybrid HUDLS; and

(E) use of EVS,

as the previously operated type or class, otherwise the provisions of (d)(2)(i) should be met.

(3) Flight crew members with CAT II or CAT III experience with the operator may undertake an abbreviated ground, FSTD and/or flight training course.

(i) When changing aircraft type or class, the abbreviated course should include at least the provisions of (d)(1), (d)(2)(i) or (d)(2)(ii) as appropriate and (d)(3)(i).

(ii) When changing to a different variant of aircraft within the same type or class rating that has the same or similar:

(A) level of technology – FGS;

(B) operating procedures – integrity;

(C) handling characteristics;

(D) use of HUDLS/Hybrid HUDLS; and

(E) use of EVS,

as the previously operated type or class, a difference course or familiarisation appropriate to the change of variant should fulfil the abbreviated course provisions.

(iii) When changing to a different variant of aircraft within the same type or class rating that has a significantly different:

(A) level of technology – FGS;

(B) operating procedures – integrity;

(C) handling characteristics;

(D) use of HUDLS/Hybrid HUDLS; or

(E) use of EVS,

the provisions of (d)(1), (d)(2)(i) or (d)(2)(ii) as appropriate and (d)(3)(i) should be fulfilled.

(4) The operator should ensure when undertaking CAT II or CAT III operations with different variant(s) of aircraft within the same type or class rating that the differences and/or similarities of the aircraft concerned justify such operations, taking into account at least the following:

(i) the level of technology, including the:

(A) FGS and associated displays and controls;

(B) FMS and its integration or not with the FGS; and

(C) use of HUD/HUDLS with hybrid systems and/or EVS;

(ii) operating procedures, including:

(A) fail-passive / fail-operational, alert height;

(B) manual landing / automatic landing;

(C) no DH operations; and

(D) use of HUD/HUDLS with hybrid systems;

(iii) handling characteristics, including:

(A) manual landing from automatic HUDLS and/or EVS guided approach;

(B) manual missed approach procedure from automatic approach; and

(C) automatic/manual rollout.

GROUND TRAINING

(b) The initial ground training course for LVO should include at least the following:

(1) characteristics and limitations of the ILS and/or MLS;

(2) characteristics of the visual aids;

(3) characteristics of fog;

(4) operational capabilities and limitations of the particular airborne system to include HUD symbology and EVS characteristics, if appropriate;

(5) effects of precipitation, ice accretion, low level wind shear and turbulence;

(6) effect of specific aircraft/system malfunctions;

(7) use and limitations of RVR assessment systems;

(8) principles of obstacle clearance requirements;

(9) recognition of and action to be taken in the event of failure of ground equipment;

(10) procedures and precautions to be followed with regard to surface movement during operations when the RVR is 400 m or less and any additional procedures required for take-off in conditions below 150 m (200 m for category D aeroplanes);

(11) significance of DHs based upon radio altimeters and the effect of terrain profile in the approach area on radio altimeter readings and on the automatic approach/landing systems;

(12) importance and significance of alert height, if applicable, and the action in the event of any failure above and below the alert height;

(13) qualification requirements for pilots to obtain and retain approval to conduct LVOs; and

(14) importance of correct seating and eye position.

FSTD TRAINING AND/OR FLIGHT TRAINING

(c) FSTD training and/or flight training

(1) FSTD and/or flight training for LVO should include at least:

(i) checks of satisfactory functioning of equipment, both on the ground and in flight;

(ii) effect on minima caused by changes in the status of ground installations;

(iii) monitoring of:

(A) automatic flight control systems and auto-land status annunciators with emphasis on the action to be taken in the event of failures of such systems; and

(B) HUD/HUDLS/EVS guidance status and annunciators as appropriate, to include head-down displays;

(iv) actions to be taken in the event of failures such as engines, electrical systems, hydraulics or flight control systems;

(v) the effect of known unserviceabilities and use of MELs;

(vi) operating limitations resulting from airworthiness certification;

(vii) guidance on the visual cues required at DH together with information on maximum deviation allowed from glide path or localiser; and

(viii) the importance and significance of alert height if applicable and the action in the event of any failure above and below the alert height.

(2) Flight crew members should be trained to carry out their duties and instructed on the coordination required with other crew members. Maximum use should be made of suitably equipped FSTDs for this purpose.

(3) Training should be divided into phases covering normal operation with no aircraft or equipment failures but including all weather conditions that may be encountered and detailed scenarios of aircraft and equipment failure that could affect CAT II or III operations. If the aircraft system involves the use of hybrid or other special systems, such as HUD/HUDLS or enhanced vision equipment, then flight crew members should practise the use of these systems in normal and abnormal modes during the FSTD phase of training.

(4) Incapacitation procedures appropriate to LVTO, CAT II and CAT III operations should be practised.

(5) For aircraft with no FSTD available to represent that specific aircraft, operators should ensure that the flight training phase specific to the visual scenarios of CAT II operations is conducted in a specifically approved FSTD. Such training should include a minimum of four approaches. Thereafter, the training and procedures that are type specific should be practised in the aircraft.

(6) Initial CAT II and III training should include at least the following exercises:

(i) approach using the appropriate flight guidance, autopilots and control systems installed in the aircraft, to the appropriate DH and to include transition to visual flight and landing;

(ii) approach with all engines operating using the appropriate flight guidance systems, autopilots, HUDLS and/or EVS and control systems installed in the aircraft down to the appropriate DH followed by missed approach – all without external visual reference;

(iii) where appropriate, approaches utilising automatic flight systems to provide automatic flare, hover, landing and rollout; and

(iv) normal operation of the applicable system both with and without acquisition of visual cues at DH.

(7) Subsequent phases of training should include at least:

(i) approaches with engine failure at various stages on the approach;

(ii) approaches with critical equipment failures, such as electrical systems, auto flight systems, ground and/or airborne ILS, MLS systems and status monitors;

(iii) approaches where failures of auto flight equipment and/or HUD/HUDLS/EVS at low level require either:

(A) reversion to manual flight to control flare, hover, landing and rollout or missed approach; or

(B) reversion to manual flight or a downgraded automatic mode to control missed approaches from, at or below DH including those which may result in a touchdown on the runway;

(iv) failures of the systems that will result in excessive localiser and/or glideslope deviation, both above and below DH, in the minimum visual conditions specified for the operation. In addition, a continuation to a manual landing should be practised if a head-up display forms a downgraded mode of the automatic system or the head-up display forms the only flare mode; and

(v) failures and procedures specific to aircraft type or variant.

(8) The training programme should provide practice in handling faults which require a reversion to higher minima.

(9) The training programme should include the handling of the aircraft when, during a fail-passive CAT III approach, the fault causes the autopilot to disconnect at or below DH when the last reported RVR is 300 m or less.

(10) Where take-offs are conducted in RVRs of 400 m and below, training should be established to cover systems failures and engine failure resulting in continued as well as rejected take-offs.

(11) The training programme should include, where appropriate, approaches where failures of the HUDLS and/or EVS equipment at low level require either:

(i) reversion to head down displays to control missed approach; or

(ii) reversion to flight with no, or downgraded, HUDLS guidance to control missed approaches from DH or below, including those which may result in a touchdown on the runway.

(12) When undertaking LVTO, LTS CAT I, OTS CAT II, CAT II and CAT III operations utilising a HUD/HUDLS, hybrid HUD/HUDLS or an EVS, the training and checking programme should include, where appropriate, the use of the HUD/HUDLS in normal operations during all phases of flight.

CONVERSION TRAINING

(d) Flight crew members should complete the following low visibility procedures (LVPs) training if converting to a new type or class or variant of aircraft in which LVTO, LTS CAT I, OTS CAT II, approach operations utilising EVS with an RVR of 800 m or less and CAT II and CAT III operations will be conducted. Conditions for abbreviated courses are prescribed in (a)(2), (a)(3) and (a)(4).

(1) Ground training

The appropriate provisions are as prescribed in (b), taking into account the flight crew member's CAT II and CAT III training and experience.

(2) FSTD training and/or flight training

(i) A minimum of six, respectively eight for HUDLS with or without EVS, approaches and/or landings in an FSTD. The provisions for eight HUDLS approaches may be reduced to six when conducting hybrid HUDLS operations.

(ii) Where no FSTD is available to represent that specific aircraft, a minimum of three, respectively five for HUDLS and/or EVS, approaches including at least one missed approach procedure is required on the aircraft. For hybrid HUDLS operations a minimum of three approaches is required, including at least one missed approach procedure.

(iii) Appropriate additional training if any special equipment is required such as head up displays or enhanced vision equipment. When approach operations utilising EVS are conducted with an RVR of less than 800 m, a minimum of five approaches, including at least one missed approach procedure are required on the aircraft.

(3) Flight crew qualification

The flight crew qualification provisions are specific to the operator and the type of aircraft operated.

(i) The operator should ensure that each flight crew member completes a check before conducting CAT II or III operations.

(ii) The check specified in (d)(3)(i) may be replaced by successful completion of the FSTD and/or flight training specified in (d)(2).

(4) Line flying under supervision

Flight crew member should undergo the following line flying under supervision (LIFUS):

(i) For CAT II when a manual landing or a HUDLS approach to touchdown is required, a minimum of:

(A) three landings from autopilot disconnect; and

(B) four landings with HUDLS used to touchdown,

except that only one manual landing, respectively two using HUDLS, to touchdown is required when the training required in (d)(2) has been carried out in an FSTD qualified for zero flight time conversion.

(ii) For CAT III, a minimum of two auto-lands, except that:

(A) only one auto-land is required when the training required in (d)(2) has been carried out in an FSTD qualified for zero flight time conversion;

(B) no auto-land is required during LIFUS when the training required in (d)(2) has been carried out in an FSTD qualified for zero flight time (ZFT) conversion and the flight crew member successfully completed the ZFT type rating conversion course; and

(C) the flight crew member, trained and qualified in accordance with (B), is qualified to operate during the conduct of LIFUS to the lowest approved DA/H and RVR as stipulated in the operations manual.

(iii) For CAT III approaches using HUDLS to touchdown, a minimum of four approaches.

TYPE AND COMMAND EXPERIENCE

(e) Type and command experience

(1) Before commencing CAT II operations, the following additional provisions should be applicable to pilots-in-command/commanders, or pilots to whom conduct of the flight may be delegated, who are new to the aircraft type or class:

(i) 50 hours or 20 sectors on the type, including LIFUS; and

(ii) 100 m should be added to the applicable CAT II RVR minima when the operation requires a CAT II manual landing or use of HUDLS to touchdown until:

(A) a total of 100 hours or 40 sectors, including LIFUS, has been achieved on the type; or

(B) a total of 50 hours or 20 sectors, including LIFUS, has been achieved on the type where the flight crew member has been previously qualified for CAT II manual landing operations with an EU operator;

(C) for HUDLS operations the sector provisions in (e)(1) and (e)(2)(i) should always be applicable; the hours on type or class do not fulfil the provisions.

(2) Before commencing CAT III operations, the following additional provisions should be applicable to pilots-in-command/commanders, or pilots to whom conduct of the flight may be delegated, who are new to the aircraft type:

(i) 50 hours or 20 sectors on the type, including LIFUS; and

(ii) 100 m should be added to the applicable CAT II or CAT III RVR minima unless he/she has previously qualified for CAT II or III operations with an EU operator, until a total of 100 hours or 40 sectors, including LIFUS, has been achieved on the type.

RECURRENT TRAINING AND CHECKING

(f) Recurrent training and checking – LVO

(1) The operator should ensure that, in conjunction with the normal recurrent training and operator's proficiency checks, the pilot's knowledge and ability to perform the tasks associated with the particular category of operation, for which the pilot is authorised by the operator, are checked. The required number of approaches to be undertaken in the FSTD within the validity period of the operator's proficiency check should be a minimum of two, respectively four when HUDLS and/or EVS is utilised to touchdown, one of which should be a landing at the lowest approved RVR. In addition one, respectively two for HUDLS and/or operations utilising EVS, of these approaches may be substituted by an approach and landing in the aircraft using approved CAT II and CAT III procedures. One missed approach should be flown during the conduct of an operator proficiency check. If the operator is approved to conduct take-off with RVR less than 150 m, at least one LVTO to the lowest applicable minima should be flown during the conduct of the operator's proficiency check.

(2) For CAT III operations the operator should use an FSTD approved for this purpose.

(3) For CAT III operations on aircraft with a fail-passive flight control system, including HUDLS, a missed approach should be completed by each flight crew member at least once over the period of three consecutive operator proficiency checks as the result of an autopilot failure at or below DH when the last reported RVR was 300 m or less.

LVTO OPERATIONS

(g) LVTO with RVR less than 400 m

(1) Prior to conducting take-offs in RVRs below 400 m, the flight crew should undergo the following training:

(i) normal take-off in minimum approved RVR conditions;

(ii) take-off in minimum approved RVR conditions with an engine failure:

(A) for aeroplanes between V1 and V2 (take-off safety speed), or as soon as safety considerations permit;

(B) for helicopters at or after take-off decision point (TDP); and

(iii) take-off in minimum approved RVR conditions with an engine failure:

(A) for aeroplanes before V1 resulting in a rejected take-off; and

(B) for helicopters before the TDP.

(2) The operator approved for LVTOs with an RVR below 150 m should ensure that the training specified by (g)(1) is carried out in an FSTD. This training should include the use of any special procedures and equipment.

(3) The operator should ensure that a flight crew member has completed a check before conducting LVTO in RVRs of less than 150 m. The check may be replaced by successful completion of the FSTD and/or flight training prescribed in (g)(1) on conversion to an aircraft type.

LTS CAT I, OTS CAT II, OPERATIONS UTILISING EVS

(h) Additional training provisions

(1) General

Operators conducting LTS CAT I operations, OTS CAT II operations and operations utilising EVS with RVR of 800 m or less should comply with the provisions applicable to CAT II operations and include the provisions applicable to HUDLS, if appropriate. The operator may combine these additional provisions where appropriate provided that the operational procedures are compatible.

(2) LTS CAT I

During conversion training the total number of approaches should not be additional to the requirements of Subpart FC of Annex III (ORO.FC) provided the training is conducted utilising the lowest applicable RVR. During recurrent training and checking the operator may also combine the separate requirements provided the above operational procedure provision is met and at least one approach using LTS CAT I minima is conducted at least once every 18 months.

(3) OTS CAT II

During conversion training the total number of approaches should not be less than those to complete CAT II training utilising a HUD/HUDLS. During recurrent training and checking the operator may also combine the separate provisions provided the above operational procedure provision is met and at least one approach using OTS CAT II minima is conducted at least once every 18 months.

(4) Operations utilising EVS with RVR of 800 m or less

During conversion training the total number of approaches required should not be less than that required to complete CAT II training utilising a HUD. During recurrent training and checking the operator may also combine the separate provisions provided the above operational procedure provision is met and at least one approach utilising EVS is conducted at least once every 12 months.

GM1 SPA.LVO.120 Flight crew training and qualifications

FLIGHT CREW TRAINING

The number of approaches referred to in AMC1 SPA.LVO.120 (g)(1) includes one approach and landing that may be conducted in the aircraft using approved CAT II/III procedures. This approach and landing may be conducted in normal line operation or as a training flight.

SPA.LVO.125 Operating procedures

(a) The operator shall establish procedures and instructions to be used for LVOs. These procedures and instructions shall be included in the operations manual or procedures manual and contain the duties of flight crew members during taxiing, take-off, approach, flare, landing, rollout and missed approach operations, as appropriate.

(b) Prior to commencing an LVO, the pilot-in-command/commander shall be satisfied that:

(1) the status of the visual and non-visual facilities is sufficient;

(2) appropriate LVPs are in force according to information received from air traffic services (ATS);

(3) flight crew members are properly qualified.

AMC1 SPA.LVO.125 Operating procedures

GENERAL

(a) LVOs should include the following:

(1) manual take-off, with or without electronic guidance systems or HUDLS/hybrid HUD/HUDLS;

(2) approach flown with the use of a HUDLS/hybrid HUD/HUDLS and/or EVS;

(3) auto-coupled approach to below DH, with manual flare, hover, landing and rollout;

(4) auto-coupled approach followed by auto-flare, hover, auto-landing and manual rollout; and

(5) auto-coupled approach followed by auto-flare, hover, auto-landing and auto-rollout, when the applicable RVR is less than 400 m.

PROCEDURES AND INSTRUCTIONS

(b) The operator should specify detailed operating procedures and instructions in the operations manual.

(1) The precise nature and scope of procedures and instructions given should depend upon the airborne equipment used and the flight deck procedures followed. The operator should clearly define flight crew member duties during take-off, approach, flare, hover, rollout and missed approach in the operations manual. Particular emphasis should be placed on flight crew responsibilities during transition from non-visual conditions to visual conditions, and on the procedures to be used in deteriorating visibility or when failures occur. Special attention should be paid to the distribution of flight deck duties so as to ensure that the workload of the pilot making the decision to land or execute a missed approach enables him/her to devote himself/herself to supervision and the decision making process.

(2) The instructions should be compatible with the limitations and mandatory procedures contained in the AFM and cover the following items in particular:

(i) checks for the satisfactory functioning of the aircraft equipment, both before departure and in flight;

(ii) effect on minima caused by changes in the status of the ground installations and airborne equipment;

(iii) procedures for the take-off, approach, flare, hover, landing, rollout and missed approach;

(iv) procedures to be followed in the event of failures, warnings to include HUD/HUDLS/EVS and other non-normal situations;

(v) the minimum visual reference required;

(vi) the importance of correct seating and eye position;

(vii) action that may be necessary arising from a deterioration of the visual reference;

(viii) allocation of crew duties in the carrying out of the procedures according to (b)(2)(i) to (iv) and (vi), to allow the pilot-in-command/commander to devote himself/herself mainly to supervision and decision making;

(ix) the rule for all height calls below 200 ft to be based on the radio altimeter and for one pilot to continue to monitor the aircraft instruments until the landing is completed;

(x) the rule for the localiser sensitive area to be protected;

(xi) the use of information relating to wind velocity, wind shear, turbulence, runway contamination and use of multiple RVR assessments;

(xii) procedures to be used for:

(A) LTS CAT I;

(B) OTS CAT II;

(C) approach operations utilising EVS; and

(D) practice approaches and landing on runways at which the full CAT II or CAT III aerodrome procedures are not in force;

(xiii) operating limitations resulting from airworthiness certification; and

(xiv) information on the maximum deviation allowed from the ILS glide path and/or localiser.

SPA.LVO.130 Minimum equipment

(a) The operator shall include the minimum equipment that has to be serviceable at the commencement of an LVO in accordance with the aircraft flight manual (AFM) or other approved document in the operations manual or procedures manual, as applicable.

(b) The pilot-in-command/commander shall be satisfied that the status of the aircraft and of the relevant airborne systems is appropriate for the specific operation to be conducted.

SUBPART F — EXTENDED RANGE OPERATIONS WITH TWO-ENGINED AEROPLANES (ETOPS)

SPA.ETOPS.100 ETOPS

In commercial air transport operations, two-engined aeroplanes shall only be operated beyond the threshold distance determined in accordance with CAT.OP.MPA.140 if the operator has been granted an ETOPS operational approval by the competent authority.

SPA.ETOPS.105 ETOPS operational approval

To obtain an ETOPS operational approval from the competent authority, the operator shall provide evidence that:

(a) the aeroplane/engine combination holds an ETOPS type design and reliability approval for the intended operation;

(b) a training programme for the flight crew members and all other operations personnel involved in these operations has been established and the flight crew members and all other operations personnel involved are suitably qualified to conduct the intended operation;

(c) the operator's organisation and experience are appropriate to support the intended operation;

(d) operating procedures have been established.

GM1 SPA.ETOPS.105 ETOPS operational approval

AMC 20-6

AMC 20-6 provides further criteria for the operational approval of ETOPS.

SPA.ETOPS.110 ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome

(a) An ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome shall be considered adequate, if, at the expected time of use, the aerodrome is available and equipped with necessary ancillary services such as air traffic services (ATS), sufficient lighting, communications, weather reporting, navigation aids and emergency services and has at least one instrument approach procedure available.

(b) Prior to conducting an ETOPS flight, the operator shall ensure that an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome is available, within either the operator's approved diversion time, or a diversion time based on the MEL generated serviceability status of the aeroplane, whichever is shorter.

(c) The operator shall specify any required ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome(s) in the operational flight plan and ATS flight plan.

SPA.ETOPS.115 ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome planning minima

(a) The operator shall only select an aerodrome as an ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome when the appropriate weather reports or forecasts, or any combination thereof, indicate that, between the anticipated time of landing until 1 hour after the latest possible time of landing, conditions will exist at or above the planning minima calculated by adding the additional limits of Table 1.

(b) The operator shall include in the operations manual the method for determining the operating minima at the planned ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome.

Table 1: Planning minima for the ETOPS en-route alternate aerodrome

Type of approach	**Planning minima**
Precision approach	DA/H + 200 ft
	RVR/VIS + 800 m *
Non-precision approach or	MDA/H + 400 ft *
Circling approach	RVR/VIS + 1 500 m

*: VIS: visibility; MDA/H: minimum descent altitude/height

SUBPART G — TRANSPORT OF DANGEROUS GOODS

SPA.DG.100 Transport of dangerous goods

Except as provided for in Annex IV (Part-CAT), the operator shall only transport dangerous goods by air if the operator has been approved by the competent authority.

SPA.DG.105 Approval to transport dangerous goods

To obtain the approval to transport dangerous goods, the operator shall in accordance with the Technical Instructions:

(a) establish and maintain a training programme for all personnel involved and demonstrate to the competent authority that adequate training has been given to all personnel;

(b) establish operating procedures to ensure the safe handling of dangerous goods at all stages of air transport, containing information and instructions on:

  (1) the operator's policy to transport dangerous goods;

  (2) the requirements for acceptance, handling, loading, stowage and segregation of dangerous goods;

  (3) actions to take in the event of an aircraft accident or incident when dangerous goods are being carried;

  (4) the response to emergency situations involving dangerous goods;

  (5) the removal of any possible contamination;

  (6) the duties of all personnel involved, especially with relevance to ground handling and aircraft handling;

  (7) inspection for damage, leakage or contamination;

  (8) dangerous goods accident and incident reporting.

AMC1 SPA.DG.105(a) Approval to transport dangerous goods

TRAINING PROGRAMME

(a) The operator should indicate for the approval of the training programme how the training will be carried out. For formal training courses, the course objectives, the training programme syllabus/curricula and examples of the written examination to be undertaken should be included.

(b) Instructors should have knowledge of training techniques as well as in the field of transport of dangerous goods by air so that the subject is covered fully and questions can be adequately answered.

(c) Training intended to give general information and guidance may be by any means including handouts, leaflets, circulars, slide presentations, videos, computer-based training, etc., and may take place on-the-job or off-the-job. The person being trained should receive an overall awareness of the subject. This training should include a written, oral or computer-based examination covering all areas of the training programme, showing that a required minimum level of knowledge has been acquired.

(d) Training intended to give an in-depth and detailed appreciation of the whole subject or particular aspects of it should be by formal training courses, which should include a written examination, the successful passing of which will result in the issue of the proof of qualification. The course may be by means of tuition, as a self-study programme, or a mixture of both. The person being trained should gain sufficient knowledge so as to be able to apply the detailed rules of the Technical Instructions.

(e) Training in emergency procedures should include as a minimum:

(1) for personnel other than crew members:

(i) dealing with damaged or leaking packages; and

(ii) other actions in the event of ground emergencies arising from dangerous goods;

(2) for flight crew members:

(i) actions in the event of emergencies in flight occurring in the passenger compartment or in the cargo compartments; and

(ii) the notification to ATS should an in-flight emergency occur;

(3) for crew members other than flight crew members:

(i) dealing with incidents arising from dangerous goods carried by passengers; or

(ii) dealing with damaged or leaking packages in flight.

(f) Training should be conducted at intervals of no longer than 2 years.

AMC1 SPA.DG.105(b) Approval to transport dangerous goods

PROVISION OF INFORMATION IN THE EVENT OF AN IN-FLIGHT EMERGENCY

If an in-flight emergency occurs the pilot-in-command/commander should, as soon as the situation permits, inform the appropriate ATS unit of any dangerous goods carried as cargo on board the aircraft, as specified in the Technical Instructions.

GM1 SPA.DG.105(b)(6) Approval to transport dangerous goods

PERSONNEL

Personnel include all persons involved in the transport of dangerous goods, whether they are employees of the operator or not.

SPA.DG.110 Dangerous goods information and documentation

The operator shall, in accordance with the Technical Instructions:

(a) provide written information to the pilot-in-command/commander:

(1) about dangerous goods to be carried on the aircraft;

(2) for use in responding to in-flight emergencies;

(b) use an acceptance checklist;

(c) ensure that dangerous goods are accompanied by the required dangerous goods transport document(s), as completed by the person offering dangerous goods for air transport, except when the information applicable to the dangerous goods is provided in electronic form;

(d) ensure that where a dangerous goods transport document is provided in written form, a copy of the document is retained on the ground where it will be possible to obtain access to it within a reasonable period until the goods have reached their final destination;

(e) ensure that a copy of the information to the pilot-in-command/commander is retained on the ground and that this copy, or the information contained in it, is readily accessible to the aerodromes of last departure and next scheduled arrival, until after the flight to which the information refers;

(f) retain the acceptance checklist, transport document and information to the pilot-in-command/commander for at least 3 months after completion of the flight;

(g) retain the training records of all personnel for at least 3 years.

AMC1 SPA.DG.110(a) Dangerous goods information and documentation

INFORMATION TO THE PILOT-IN-COMMAND/COMMANDER

If the volume of information provided to the pilot-in-command/commander by the operator is such that it would be impracticable to transmit it in the event of an in-flight emergency, an additional summary of the information should also be provided, containing at least the quantities and class or division of the dangerous goods in each cargo compartment.

AMC1 SPA.DG.110(b) Dangerous goods information and documentation

ACCEPTANCE OF DANGEROUS GOODS

(a) The operator should not accept dangerous goods unless:

  (1) the package, overpack or freight container has been inspected in accordance with the acceptance procedures in the Technical Instructions;

  (2) they are accompanied by two copies of a dangerous goods transport document or the information applicable to the consignment is provided in electronic form, except when otherwise specified in the Technical Instructions; and

  (3) the English language is used for:

    (i) package marking and labelling; and

    (ii) the dangerous goods transport document,

  in addition to any other language provision.

(b) The operator or his/her handling agent should use an acceptance checklist which allows for:

  (1) all relevant details to be checked; and

  (2) the recording of the results of the acceptance check by manual, mechanical or computerised means.

SUBPART H — HELICOPTER OPERATIONS WITH NIGHT VISION IMAGING SYSTEMS

SPA.NVIS.100 Night vision imaging system (NVIS) operations

(a) Helicopters shall only be operated under VFR at night with the aid of NVIS if the operator has been approved by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain such approval by the competent authority, the operator shall:

(1) operate in commercial air transport (CAT) and hold a CAT AOC in accordance with Annex III (Part-ORO);

(2) demonstrate to the competent authority:

(i) compliance with the applicable requirements contained in this Subpart;

(ii) the successful integration of all elements of the NVIS.

SPA.NVIS.110 Equipment requirements for NVIS operations

(a) Before conducting NVIS operations each helicopter and all associated NVIS equipment shall have been issued with the relevant airworthiness approval in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

(b) Radio altimeter. The helicopter shall be equipped with a radio altimeter capable of emitting an audio warning below a pre-set height and an audio and visual warning at a height selectable by the pilot, instantly discernible during all phases of NVIS flight.

(c) Aircraft NVIS compatible lighting. To mitigate the reduced peripheral vision cues and the need to enhance situational awareness, the following shall be provided:

(1) NVIS-compatible instrument panel flood-lighting, if installed, that can illuminate all essential flight instruments;

(2) NVIS-compatible utility lights;

(3) portable NVIS compatible flashlight; and

(4) a means for removing or extinguishing internal NVIS non-compatible lights.

(d) Additional NVIS equipment. The following additional NVIS equipment shall be provided:

(1) a back-up or secondary power source for the night vision goggles (NVG);

(2) a helmet with the appropriate NVG attachment.

(e) All required NVGs on an NVIS flight shall be of the same type, generation and model.

(f) Continuing airworthiness

(1) Procedures for continuing airworthiness shall contain the information necessary for carrying out ongoing maintenance and inspections on NVIS equipment installed in the helicopter and shall cover, as a minimum:

(i) helicopter windscreens and transparencies;

(ii) NVIS lighting;

(iii) NVGs; and

(iv) any additional equipment that supports NVIS operations.

(2) Any subsequent modification or maintenance to the aircraft shall be in compliance with the NVIS airworthiness approval.

AMC1 SPA.NVIS.110(b) Equipment requirements for NVIS operations

RADIO ALTIMETER

(a) The radio altimeter should:

(1) be of an analogue type display presentation that requires minimal interpretation for both an instantaneous impression of absolute height and rate of change of height;

(2) be positioned to be instantly visible and discernible from each cockpit crew station;

(3) have an integral audio and visual low height warning that operates at a height selectable by the pilot; and

(4) provide unambiguous warning to the crew of radio altimeter failure.

(b) The visual warning should provide:

(1) clear visual warning at each cockpit crew station of height below the pilot-selectable height; and

(2) adequate attention-getting-capability for typical NVIS operations.

(c) The audio warning should:

(1) be unambiguous and readily cancellable;

(2) not extinguish any visual low height warnings when cancelled; and

(3) operate at the same pilot-selectable height as the visual warning.

GM1 SPA.NVIS.110(b) Equipment requirements for NVIS operations

RADIO ALTIMETER

An analogue type display presentation may be, for example, a representation of a dial, ribbon or bar, but not a display that provides numbers only. An analogue type display may be embedded into an electronic flight instrumentation system (EFIS).

GM1 SPA.NVIS.110(f) Equipment requirements for NVIS operations

MODIFICATION OR MAINTENANCE TO THE HELICOPTER

It is important that the operator reviews and considers all modifications or maintenance to the helicopter with regard to the NVIS airworthiness approval. Special emphasis needs to be paid to modification and maintenance of equipment such as light emitting or reflecting devices, transparencies and avionics equipment, as the function of this equipment may interfere with the NVGs.

SPA.NVIS.120 NVIS operating minima

(a) Operations shall not be conducted below the VFR weather minima for the type of night operations being conducted.

(b) The operator shall establish the minimum transition height from where a change to/from aided flight may be continued.

SPA.NVIS.130 Crew requirements for NVIS operations

(a) Selection. The operator shall establish criteria for the selection of crew members for the NVIS task.

(b) Experience. The minimum experience for the commander shall not be less than 20 hours VFR at night as pilot-in-command/commander of a helicopter before commencing training.

(c) Operational training. All pilots shall have completed the operational training in accordance with the NVIS procedures contained in the operations manual.

(d) Recency. All pilots and NVIS technical crew members conducting NVIS operations shall have completed three NVIS flights in the last 90 days. Recency may be re-established on a training flight in the helicopter or an approved full flight simulator (FFS), which shall include the elements of (f)(1).

(e) Crew composition. The minimum crew shall be the greater of that specified:

- (1) in the aircraft flight manual (AFM);
- (2) for the underlying activity; or
- (3) in the operational approval for the NVIS operations.

(f) Crew training and checking

- (1) Training and checking shall be conducted in accordance with a detailed syllabus approved by the competent authority and included in the operations manual.
- (2) Crew members
  - (i) Crew training programmes shall: improve knowledge of the NVIS working environment and equipment; improve crew coordination; and include measures to minimise the risks associated with entry into low visibility conditions and NVIS normal and emergency procedures.
  - (ii) The measures referred to in (f)(2)(i) shall be assessed during:
    - (A) night proficiency checks; and
    - (B) line checks.

GM1 SPA.NVIS.130(e) Crew requirements for NVIS operations

UNDERLYING ACTIVITY

Examples of an underlying activity are:

(a) commercial air transport;

(b) helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS); and

(c) helicopter hoist operation (HHO).

GM1 SPA.NVIS.130(e) Crew requirements for NVIS operations

OPERATIONAL APPROVAL

(a) When determining the composition of the minimum crew, the competent authority should take account of the type of operation that is to be conducted. The minimum crew should be part of the operational approval.

(b) If the operational use of NVIS is limited to the en-route phase of a commercial air transport flight, a single-pilot operation may be approved.

(c) Where operations to/from a HEMS operating site are to be conducted, a crew of at least one pilot and one NVIS technical crew member would be necessary (this may be the suitably qualified HEMS technical crew member).

(d) A similar assessment may be made for night HHO, when operating to unprepared sites.

AMC1 SPA.NVIS.130(f)(1) Crew requirements for NVIS operations

TRAINING AND CHECKING SYLLABUS

(a) The flight crew training syllabus should include the following items:

(1) NVIS working principles, eye physiology, vision at night, limitations and techniques to overcome these limitations;

(2) preparation and testing of NVIS equipment;

(3) preparation of the helicopter for NVIS operations;

(4) normal and emergency procedures including all NVIS failure modes;

(5) maintenance of unaided night flying;

(6) crew coordination concept specific to NVIS operations;

(7) practice of the transition to and from NVG procedures;

(8) awareness of specific dangers relating to the operating environment; and

(9) risk analysis, mitigation and management.

(b) The flight crew checking syllabus should include:

(1) night proficiency checks, including emergency procedures to be used on NVIS operations; and

(2) line checks with special emphasis on the following:

(i) local area meteorology;

(ii) NVIS flight planning;

(iii) NVIS in-flight procedures;

(iv) transitions to and from night vision goggles (NVG);

(v) normal NVIS procedures; and

(vi) crew coordination specific to NVIS operations.

(c) Whenever the crew is required to also consist of an NVIS technical crew member, he/she should be trained and checked in the following items:

(1) NVIS working principles, eye physiology, vision at night, limitations, and techniques to overcome these limitations;

(2) duties in the NVIS role, with and without NVGs;

(3) the NVIS installation;

(4) operation and use of the NVIS equipment;

(5) preparing the helicopter and specialist equipment for NVIS operations;

(6) normal and emergency procedures;

(7) crew coordination concepts specific to NVIS operations;

(8) awareness of specific dangers relating to the operating environment; and

(9) risk analysis, mitigation and management.

AMC1 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements

CHECKING OF NVIS CREW MEMBERS

The checks required in SPA.NVIS.130 (f) may be combined with those checks required for the underlying activity.

GM1 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements

TRAINING GUIDELINES AND CONSIDERATIONS

(a) Purpose

The purpose of this GM is to recommend the minimum training guidelines and any associated considerations necessary for the safe operation of a helicopter while operating with night vision imaging systems (NVISs).

To provide an appropriate level of safety, training procedures should accommodate the capabilities and limitations of the NVIS and associated systems as well as the restraints of the operational environment.

(b) Assumptions

The following assumptions were used in the creation of this material:

(1) Most civilian operators may not have the benefit of formal NVIS training, similar to that offered by the military. Therefore, the stated considerations are predicated on that individual who has no prior knowledge of NVIS or how to use them in flight. The degree to which other applicants who have had previous formal training should be exempted from this training will be dependent on their prior NVIS experience.

(2) While NVIS are principally an aid to flying under VFR at night, the two- dimensional nature of the NVG image necessitates frequent reference to the flight instruments for spatial and situational awareness information. The reduction of peripheral vision and increased reliance on focal vision exacerbates this requirement to monitor flight instruments. Therefore, any basic NVIS training syllabus should include some instruction on basic instrument flight.

(c) Two-tiered approach: basic and advance training

To be effective, the NVIS training philosophy would be based on a two-tiered approach: basic and advanced NVIS training. The basic NVIS training would serve as the baseline standard for all individuals seeking an NVIS endorsement. The content of this initial training would not be dependent on any operational requirements. The training required for any individual pilot should take into account the previous NVIS flight experience. The advanced training would build on the basic training by focusing on developing specialised skills required to operate a helicopter during NVIS operations in a particular operational environment. Furthermore, while there is a need to stipulate minimum flight hour requirements for an NVIS endorsement, the training should also be event-based. This necessitates that operators be exposed to all of the relevant aspects, or events, of NVIS flight in addition to acquiring a minimum number of flight hours. NVIS training should include flight in a variety of actual ambient light and weather conditions.

(d) Training requirements

(1) Flight crew ground training

The ground training necessary to initially qualify a pilot to act as the pilot of a helicopter using NVGs should include at least the following subjects:

(i) applicable aviation regulations that relate to NVIS limitations and flight operations;

(ii) aero-medical factors relating to the use of NVGs to include how to protect night vision, how the eyes adapt to operate at night, self-imposed stresses that affect night vision, effects of lighting (internal and external) on night vision, cues utilized to estimate distance and depth perception at night, and visual illusions;

(iii) NVG performance and scene interpretation;

(iv) normal, abnormal, and emergency operations of NVGs; and

(v) NVIS operations flight planning to include night terrain interpretation and factors affecting terrain interpretation.

The ground training should be the same for flight crew and crew members other than flight crew. An example of a ground training syllabus is presented in Table 1 of GM2 SPA.NVIS.130(f).

(2) Flight crew flight training

The flight training necessary to initially qualify a pilot to act as the pilot of a helicopter using NVGs may be performed in a helicopter or FSTD approved for the purpose, and should include at least the following subjects:

(i) preparation and use of internal and external helicopter lighting systems for NVIS operations;

(ii) pre-flight preparation of NVGs for NVIS operations;

(iii) proper piloting techniques (during normal, abnormal, and emergency helicopter operations) when using NVGs during the take-off, climb, en-route, descent, and landing phases of flight that includes unaided flight and aided flight; and

(iv) normal, abnormal, and emergency operations of the NVIS during flight.

Crew members other than flight crew should be involved in relevant parts of the flight training. An example of a flight training syllabus is presented in Table 1 of GM3 SPA.NVIS.130(f).

(3) Training crew members other than flight crew

Crew members other than flight crew (including the technical crew member) should be trained to operate around helicopters employing NVIS. These individuals should complete all phases of NVIS ground training that is given to flight crew. Due to the importance of crew coordination, it is imperative that all crew members are familiar with all aspects of NVIS flight. Furthermore, these crew members may have task qualifications specific to their position in the helicopter or areas of responsibility. To this end, they should demonstrate competency in those areas, both on the ground and in flight.

(4) Ground personnel training

Non-flying personnel who support NVIS operations should also receive adequate training in their areas of expertise. The purpose is to ensure, for example, that correct light discipline is used when helicopters are landing in a remote area.

(5) Instructor qualifications

An NVIS flight instructor should at least have the following licences and qualifications:

(i) at least flight instructor (FI(H)) or type rating instructor (TRI(H)) with the applicable type rating on which NVIS training will be given; and

(ii) logged at least 100 NVIS flights or 30 hours' flight time under NVIS as pilot-in-command/commander.

(6) NVIS equipment minimum requirements (training)

While minimum equipment lists and standard NVIS equipment requirements may be stipulated elsewhere, the following procedures and minimum equipment requirements should also be considered:

(i) NVIS: the following is recommended for minimum NVIS equipment and procedural requirements:

(A) back-up power supply;

(B) NVIS adjustment kit or eye lane;

(C) use of helmet with the appropriate NVG attachment; and

(D) both the instructor and student should wear the same NVG type, generation and model.

(ii) Helicopter NVIS compatible lighting, flight instruments and equipment: given the limited peripheral vision cues and the need to enhance situational awareness, the following is recommended for minimum compatible lighting requirements:

(A) NVIS compatible instrument panel flood lighting that can illuminate all essential flight instruments;

(B) NVIS compatible hand-held utility lights;

(C) portable NVIS compatible flashlight;

(D) a means for removing or extinguishing internal NVIS non-compatible lights;

(E) NVIS pre-flight briefing/checklist (an example of an NVIS pre-flight briefing/checklist is in Table 1 of GM4-SPA.NVIS.130(f));

(F) training references:

a number of training references are available, some of which are listed below:

- DO 295 US CONOPS civil operator training guidelines for integrated NVIS equipment
- United States Marine Corp MAWTS-1 Night Vision Device (NVD) Manual;
- U.S. Army Night Flight (TC 1-204);
- U.S. Army NVIS Operations, Exportable Training Package;
- U.S. Army TM 11-5855-263-10;
- Air Force TO 12S10-2AVS6-1;
- Navy NAVAIR 16-35AVS-7; and
- U.S. Border Patrol, Helicopter NVIS Ground and Flight Training Syllabus.

There may also be further documents available from European civil or military sources.

GM2 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements

INSTRUCTION – GROUND TRAINING AREAS OF INSTRUCTION

A detailed example of possible subjects to be instructed in an NVIS ground instruction is included below. (The exact details may not always be applicable, e.g. due to goggle configuration differences.)

Table 1: Ground training areas of instruction

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
1	General anatomy and characteristics of the eye	Anatomy: • Overall structure of the eye • Cones • Rods Visual deficiencies: • myopia • hyperopia • astigmatism • presbyopia Effects of light on night vision & NV protection physiology: • Light levels – illumination – luminance – reflectance – contrast • Types of vision: – photopic – mesopic – scotopic • Day versus night vision • Dark adaptation process: – dark adaptation – pre-adaptive state • Purkinje shift • Ocular chromatic aberration • Photochromatic interval	1 hour
2	Night vision human factors	• Night blind spot (as compared to day blind spot) • Field of view and peripheral vision • Distance estimation and depth perception: – monocular cues – motion parallax – geometric perspective – size constancy – overlapping contours or interposition of objects • Aerial perspective: – variations in colour or shade – loss of detail or texture – position of light source – direction of shadows • Binocular cues • Night vision techniques: – off-centre vision – scanning – shapes and silhouettes	1 hour

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
		• Vestibular illusions • Somatogyral illusions: – leans – graveyard spin – coriolis illusion • Somatogravic illusions: – oculographic illusions – elevator illusion – oculoagravic illusions • Proprioceptive illusions • Dealing with spatial disorientation • Visual illusions: – auto kinetic illusion – confusion with ground lights – relative motion – reversible perspective illusion – false vertical and horizontal cues – altered planes of reference – height /depth perception illusion – flicker vertigo – fascination (fixation) – structural illusions – size-distance illusion • Helicopter design limitations: – windscreen condition – helicopter instrument design – helicopter structural obstruction – interior lights – exterior lights • Self-imposed stresses: – drugs – exhaustion – alcohol – tobacco – hypoglycaemia – injuries – physical fitness • Stress & fatigue: – acute vs. chronic – prevention • Hypoxia issues and night vision • Weather/environmental conditions: – snow (white-out) – dust (brown-out) – haze – fog – rain – light level • Astronomical lights (moon, star, northern lights) • Effects of cloud cover	

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
3	NVIS general characteristics	• Definitions and types of NVIS: – light spectrum – types of NVIS • Thermal-imaging devices • Image-intensifier devices • Image-intensifier operational theory • Types of image intensifier systems: – generation 1 – generation 2 – generation 3 – generation 4 – type I / II – class A & B minus blue filter • NVIS equipment – shipping and storage case – carrying case – binocular assembly – lens caps – lens paper – operators manual – power pack (dual battery) – batteries • Characteristics of NVIS: – light amplification – light intensification – frequency sensitivity – visual range acuity – unaided peripheral vision – weight – flip-up device – break-away feature – neck cord – maintenance issues – human factor issues • Description and functions of NVIS components: – helmet visor cover and extension strap – helmet NVIS mount and attachment points – different mount options for various helmets – lock release button – vertical adjustment knob – low battery indicator – binocular assembly – monocular tubes – fore and aft adjustment knob – eye span knob – tilt adjustment lever – objective focus rings – eyepiece focus rings – battery pack	1 hour

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
4	NVIS care & cleaning	• Handling procedures • NVIS operating instructions: – pre-mounting inspection – mounting procedures – focusing procedures – faults • Post-flight procedures; • Deficiencies: type and recognition of faults: – acceptable faults black spots chicken wire fixed pattern noise (honeycomb effect) output brightness variation bright spots image disparity image distortion emission points – unacceptable faults: shading edge glow fashing, flickering or intermittent operation • Cleaning procedures • Care of batteries • Hazardous material considerations;	1 hour
5	Pre- & post-flight procedures	• Inspect NVIS • Carrying case condition • Nitrogen purge due date • Collimation test due date • Screens diagram(s) of any faults • NVIS kit: complete • NVIS binocular assembly condition • Battery pack and quick disconnect condition • Batteries life expended so far • Mount battery pack onto helmet: – verify no LED showing (good battery) – fail battery by opening cap and LED illuminates (both compartments) • Mount NVIS onto helmet • Adjust and focus NVIS • Eye-span to known inter-pupillary distance • Eye piece focus ring to zero • Adjustments: – vertical – fore and aft – tilt – eye-span (fine-tuning) • Focus (one eye at a time at 20 ft, then at 30 ft from an eye chart) – objective focus ring – eye piece focus ring – verify both images are harmonised – read eye-chart 20/40 line from 20 ft • NVIS mission planning • NVIS light level planning • NVIS risk assessment	1 hour

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
6	NVIS terrain interpretation and environmental factors	• Night terrain interpretation • Light sources: – natural – lunar – solar – starlight – northern lights – artificial – cultural – infra-red • Meteorological conditions: – clouds/fog – indications of restriction to visibility: – loss of celestial lights – loss of ground lights – reduced ambient light levels – reduced visual acuity – increase in video noise – increase in halo effect • Cues for visual recognition: – object size – object shape – contrast – ambient light – colour – texture – background – reflectivity • Factors affecting terrain interpretation: – ambient light – flight altitudes – terrain type • Seasons • Night navigation cues: – terrain relief – vegetation – hydrographical features – cultural features	1 hour
7	NVIS training & equipment requirements	Cover the relevant regulations and guidelines that pertain to night and NVIS flight to include as a minimum: • Crew experience requirements; • Crew training requirements; • Airspace requirements; • Night / NVIS MEL; • NVIS / night weather limits; • NVIS equipment minimum standard requirements.	1 hour
8	NVIS emergency procedures	Cover relevant emergency procedures: • Inadvertent IMC procedures • NVIS goggle failure • Helicopter emergencies: – with goggles – transition from goggles	1 hour
9	NVIS flight techniques	Respective flight techniques for each phase of flight for the type and class of helicopter used for NVIS training	1 hour

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
10	Basic instrument techniques	Present and confirm understanding of basic instrument flight techniques: • Instrument scan • Role of instruments in NVIS flight • Unusual attitude recovery procedures	1 hour
11	Blind cockpit drills	Perform blind cockpit drills: • Switches • Circuit breakers • Exit mechanisms • External / internal lighting • Avionics	1 hour

GM3 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements

FLIGHT TRAINING – AREAS OF INSTRUCTION

A detailed example of possible subjects to be instructed in a NVIS flight instruction is included below.

Table 1: Flight training areas of instruction

Item	Subject Area	Subject Details	Recommended Time
1	Ground operations	• NVIS equipment assembly • Pre-flight inspection of NVISs • Helicopter pre-flight • NVIS flight planning: – light level planning – meteorology – obstacles and known hazards – risk analysis matrix – CRM concerns – NVIS emergency procedures review • Start-up/shut down • Goggling and degoggling	1 hour
2	General handling	• Level turns, climbs, and descents • For helicopters, confined areas and sloped landings • Operation specific flight tasks • Transition from aided to unaided flight • Demonstration of NVIS related ambient and cultural effects	1 hour
3	Take-offs & landings	• At both improved illuminated areas such as airports/ airfields and unimproved unlit areas such as open fields • Traffic pattern • Low speed manoeuvres for helicopters	1 hour
4	Navigation	• Navigation over variety of terrain and under different cultural lighting conditions	1 hour
5	Emergency procedures	• Goggle failure • Helicopter emergencies • Inadvertent IMC • Unusual attitude recovery	1 hour

GM4 SPA.NVIS.130(f) Crew requirements

NVIS PRE-FLIGHT BRIEFING/CHECKLIST

A detailed example of a pre-flight briefing/checklist is included below.

Table 1: NVIS pre-flight briefing/checklist

Item	Subject
1	Weather: • METAR/forecast • Cloud cover/dew point spread/precipitation
2	OPS items: • NOTAMs • IFR publications backup/maps • Goggles adjusted using test set (RTCA Document DO-275 [NVIS MOPS], Appendices G & H give suggested NVG pre-flight and adjustment procedures and a ground test checklist)
3	Ambient light: • Moon rise/set/phase/position/elevation • % illumination and millilux (MLX) for duration of flight • Recommended minimum MLX: 1.5
4	Mission: • Mission outline • Terrain appreciation • Detailed manoeuvres • Flight timings • Start/airborne/debrief • Airspace coordination for NVIS • Obstacles/minimum safe altitude • NVIS goggle up/degoggle location/procedure • Instrument IFR checks
5	Crew: • Crew day/experience • Crew position • Equipment: NVIS, case, video, flashlights • Lookout duties: left hand seat (LHS) – from 90° left to 45° right, RHS – from 90° right to 45° left; • Calling of hazards/movements landing light • Transfer of control terminology • Below 100 ft AGL – pilot monitoring (PM) ready to assume control
6	Helicopter: • Helicopter configuration • Fuel and CG
7	Emergencies: • NVIS failure: cruise and low level flight • Inadvertent IMC/IFR recovery • Helicopter emergency: critical & non-critical

SPA.NVIS.140 Information and documentation

The operator shall ensure that, as part of its risk analysis and management process, risks associated with the NVIS environment are minimised by specifying in the operations manual: selection, composition and training of crews; levels of equipment and dispatch criteria; and operating procedures and minima, such that normal and likely abnormal operations are described and adequately mitigated.

AMC1 SPA.NVIS.140 Information and documentation

OPERATIONS MANUAL

The operations manual should include:

(a) equipment to be carried and its limitations;

(b) the minimum equipment list (MEL) entry covering the equipment specified;

(c) risk analysis, mitigation and management;

(d) pre- and post-flight procedures and documentation;

(e) selection and composition of crew;

(f) crew coordination procedures, including:

  (1) flight briefing;

  (2) procedures when one crew member is wearing NVG and/or procedures when two or more crew members are wearing NVGs;

  (3) procedures for the transition to and from NVIS flight;

  (4) use of the radio altimeter on an NVIS flight; and

  (5) inadvertent instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) and helicopter recovery procedures, including unusual attitude recovery procedures;

(g) the NVIS training syllabus;

(h) in-flight procedures for assessing visibility, to ensure that operations are not conducted below the minima stipulated for non-assisted night VFR operations;

(i) weather minima, taking the underlying activity into account; and

(j) the minimum transition heights to/from an NVIS flight.

GM1 SPA.NVIS.140 Information and documentation

CONCEPT OF OPERATIONS

Night Vision Imaging System for Civil Operators

Foreword

This document, initially incorporated in JAA TGL-34, prepared by a Sub-Group of EUROCAE Working Group 57 "Night Vision Imaging System (NVIS) Standardisation" is an abbreviated and modified version of the RTCA Report DO-268 "Concept Of Operations – Night Vision Imaging Systems For Civil Operators" which was prepared in the USA by RTCA Special Committee 196 (SC-196) and approved by the RTCA Technical Management Committee in March 2001.

The EUROCAE Working Group 57 (WG-57) Terms of Reference included a task to prepare a Concept of Operations (CONOPS) document describing the use of NVIS in Europe. To complete this task, a Sub-Group of WG-57 reviewed the RTCA SC-196 CONOPS (DO-268) to assess its applicability for use in Europe. Whilst the RTCA document was considered generally applicable, some of its content, such as crew eligibility and qualifications and the detail of the training requirements, was considered to be material more appropriately addressed in Europe by at that time other Joint Aviation Requirements (JAR) documents such as JAR-OPS and JAR-FCL. Consequently, WG-57 condensed the RTCA CONOPS document by removing this material which is either already addressed by other JAR documents or will be covered by the Agency's documents in the future.

In addition, many of the technical standards already covered in the Minimum Operational Performance Standards (MOPS) for Integrated Night Vision Imaging System Equipment (DO-275) have been deleted in this European CONOPS.

Executive summary

The hours of darkness add to a pilot's workload by decreasing those visual cues commonly used during daylight operations. The decreased ability of a pilot to see and avoid obstructions at night has been a subject of discussion since aviators first attempted to operate at night. Technology advancements in the late 1960s and early 1970s provided military aviators some limited ability to see at night and therein changed the scope of military night operations. Continuing technological improvements have advanced the capability and reliability of night vision imaging systems to the point that they are receiving increasing scrutiny are generally accepted by the public and are viewed by many as a tool for night flight.

Simply stated, night vision imaging systems are an aid to night VFR flight. Currently, such systems consist of a set of night vision goggles and normally a complimentary array of cockpit lighting modifications. The specifications of these two sub-system elements are interdependent and, as technology advances, the characteristics associated with each element are expected to evolve. The complete description and performance standards of the night vision goggles and cockpit lighting modifications appropriate to civil aviation are contained in the Minimum Operational Performance Standards for Integrated Night Vision Imaging System Equipment.

An increasing interest on the part of civil operators to conduct night operations has brought a corresponding increased level of interest in employing night vision imaging systems. However, the night vision imaging systems do have performance limitations. Therefore, it is incumbent on the operator to employ proper training methods and operating procedures to minimise these limitations to ensure safe operations. In turn, operators employing night vision imaging systems must have the guidance and support of their regulatory agency in order to safely train and operate with these systems.

The role of the regulatory agencies in this matter is to develop the technical standard orders for the hardware as well as the advisory material and inspector handbook materials for the operations and training aspect. In addition, those agencies charged with providing flight weather information should modify their products to include the night vision imaging systems flight data elements not currently provided.

An FAA study (DOT/FAA/RD-94/21, 1994) best summarised the need for night vision imaging systems by stating, "When properly used, NVGs can increase safety, enhance situational awareness, and reduce pilot workload and stress that are typically associated with night operations."

Contents

Foreword **85**
Executive summary **85**
2. Terminology **88**
2.1 Night vision goggles 88
2.1.1 Type 88
2.1.2 Class 88
2.1.2.1 Class A *88*
2.1.2.2 Class B *88*
2.1.2.3 Modified class B *88*
2.1.3 Generation 88
2.1.4 OMNIBUS 88
2.1.5 Resolution and visual acuity 89
2.2 Aviation night vision imaging system (NVIS) 89
2.2.1 Look under (under view) 89
2.3 NVIS lighting 89
2.3.1 Design considerations 89
2.3.2 Compatible 89
2.4. NVIS operation 89
2.4.1 Aided 90
2.4.2 Unaided 90
3. System description **90**
3.1 NVIS capabilities 90
3.1.1 Critical elements 90
3.1.2 Situation awareness 90
3.1.2.1 Environment detection and identification *90*
3.1.3 Emergency situations 90
3.2.1 NVG design characteristics 91
3.2.1.1 Visual acuity *91*
3.2.1.2 Field of view *91*
3.2.1.3 Field of regard *91*
3.2.1.4 NVG weight & centre of gravity *91*
3.2.1.5 Monochromatic image *91*
3.2.1.6 Ambient or artificial light *91*
3.2.2 Physiological and other conditions 91
3.2.2.1 Cockpit resource management *91*
3.2.2.2 Fatigue *92*
3.2.2.3 Over-confidence *92*
3.2.2.4 Spatial orientation *92*
3.2.2.5 Depth perception & distance estimation *92*
3.2.2.6 Instrument lighting brightness considerations *93*
3.2.2.7 Dark adaptation time from NVG to unaided operations *93*
3.2.2.8 Complacency *93*
3.2.2.9 Experience *93*
4. Operations **93**
4.1 Pilot eligibility 93
4.2 Operating environment considerations 94
4.2.1 Weather and atmospheric obscurants 94
4.2.1.1 Weather *94*
4.2.1.2 Deteriorating weather *94*
4.2.1.3 Airborne obscurants *94*
4.2.1.4 Winter operations *95*
4.2.1.4.1 Snow 95
4.2.1.4.2 Ice fog 95
4.2.1.4.3 Icing 95
4.2.1.4.4 Low ambient temperatures 95
4.2.2 Illumination 95

4.2.2.1 Natural illumination 95
4.2.2.1.1 Moon phase 95
4.2.2.1.2 Lunar azimuth and elevation 96
4.2.2.1.3 Shadowing 96
4.2.2.1.3.1 Benefits of shadows 96
4.2.2.1.3.2 Disadvantages due to shadows 96
4.2.2.1.4 Sky glow 96
4.2.2.2 Artificial illumination 96
4.2.3 Terrain contrast 97
4.3 Aircraft considerations 97
4.3.1 Lighting 97
4.3.2 Cockpit ergonomics 97
4.3.3 Windshield reflectivity 97
4.4 Generic operating considerations 97
4.4.1 Normal procedures 97
4.4.1.1 Scanning 97
4.4.1.1.1 Instrument crosscheck scan 98
4.4.1.1.2 NVG scan 98
4.4.1.1.3 Unaided scan 98
4.4.1.1.4 Scan patterns 98
4.4.1.2 Pre-flight planning 98
4.4.1.2.1 Illumination criteria 98
4.4.1.2.2 NVIS operations 98
4.4.1.2.3 Aircraft pre-flight 99
4.4.1.2.4 Equipment 99
4.4.1.2.5 Risk assessment 99
4.4.1.3 Flight operations 99
4.4.1.3.1 Elevated terrain 99
4.4.1.3.2 Over-water 99
4.4.1.4 Remote area considerations 99
4.4.1.5 Reconnaissance 99
4.4.1.6 Sources of high illumination 100
4.4.2 Emergency procedures 100
4.4.3 Inadvertent IMC 100
5. Training 100
6. Continuing airworthiness 100
Acronyms used in this GM 101
Glossary of terms used in this GM 102
References 104

2. Terminology

2.1 Night vision goggles

An NVG is a binocular appliance that amplifies ambient light and is worn by a pilot. The NVG enhances the wearer's ability to maintain visual surface reference at night.

2.1.1 Type

Type refers to the design of the NVG with regards to the manner in which the image is relayed to the pilot. A Type 1 NVG is one in which the image is viewed directly in-line with the image intensification process. A Type 1 NVG is also referred to as "direct view" goggle. A Type 2 NVG is one in which the image intensifier is not in-line with the image viewed by the pilot. In this design, the image may be reflected several times before being projected onto a combiner in front of the pilot's eyes. A Type 2 NVG is also referred to as an "indirect view" goggle.

2.1.2 Class

Class is a terminology used to describe the filter present on the NVG objective lens. The filter restricts the transmission of light below a determined frequency. This allows the cockpit lighting to be designed and installed in a manner that does not adversely affect NVG performance.

2.1.2.1 Class A

Class A or "minus blue" NVGs incorporate a filter, which generally imposes a 625 nanometercutoff. Thus, the use of colours in the cockpit (e.g., colour displays, colour warning lights, etc.) may be limited. The blue green region of the light spectrum is allowed through the filter.

2.1.2.2 Class B

Class B NVGs incorporate a filter that generally imposes a 665 nanometercutoff. Thus, the cockpit lighting design may incorporate more colours since the filter eliminates some yellows and oranges from entering the intensification process.

2.1.2.3 Modified class B

Modified Class B NVGs incorporate a variation of a Class B filter but also incorporates a notch filter in the green spectrum that allows a small percentage of light into the image intensification process. Therefore, a Modified Class B NVG allows pilots to view fixed head-up display (HUD) symbology through the NVG without the HUD energy adversely affecting NVG performance.

2.1.3 Generation

Generation refers to the technological design of an image intensifier. Systems incorporating these light-amplifying image intensifiers were first used during WWII and were operationally fielded by the US military during the Vietnam era. These systems were large, heavy and poorly performing devices that were unsuitable for aviation use, and were termed Generation I (Gen I). Gen II devices represented a significant technological advancement and provided a system that could be head-mounted for use in ground vehicles. Gen III devices represented another significant technological advancement in image intensification, and provided a system that was designed for aviation use. Although not yet fielded, there are prototype NVGs that include technological advances that may necessitate a Gen IV designation if placed into production. Because of the variations in interpretations as to generation, NVGs will not be referred to by the generation designation.

2.1.4 OMNIBUS

The term OMNIBUS refers to a US Army contract vehicle that has been used over the years to procure NVGs. Each successive OMNIBUS contract included NVGs that demonstrated improved performance. There have been five contracts since the mid 1980s, the most current being OMNIBUS V. There may be several variations of NVGs within a single OMNIBUS purchase, and some NVGs from previous OMNIBUS contracts have been upgraded in performance to match the performance of goggles from later contracts. Because of these variations, NVGs will not be referred to by the OMNIBUS designation.

2.1.5 Resolution and visual acuity

Resolution refers to the capability of the NVG to present an image that makes clear and distinguishable the separate components of a scene or object.

Visual acuity is the relative ability of the human eye to resolve detail and interpret an image.

2.2 Aviation night vision imaging system (NVIS)

The Night Vision Imaging System is the integration of all elements required to successfully and safely operate an aircraft with night vision goggles. The system includes at a minimum NVGs, NVIS lighting, other aircraft components, training, and continuing airworthiness.

2.2.1 Look under (under view)

Look under is the ability of pilots to look under or around the NVG to view inside and outside the aircraft.

2.3 NVIS lighting

An aircraft lighting system that has been modified or designed for use with NVGs and which does not degrade the performance of the NVG beyond acceptable standards, is designated as NVIS lighting. This can apply to both interior and exterior lighting.

2.3.1 Design considerations

As the choice of NVG filter drives the cockpit lighting design, it is important to know which goggle will be used in which cockpit. Since the filter in a Class A NVG allows wavelengths above 625 nanometers into the intensification process, it should not be used in a cockpit designed for Class B or Modified Class B NVGs. However, since the filter in a Class B and Modified Class B NVGs is more restrictive than that in a Class ANVG, the Class B or Modified Class B NVG can be used with either Class A or Class B cockpit lighting designs.

2.3.2 Compatible

Compatibility, with respect to an NVIS system, includes a number of different factors: compatibility of internal and external lighting with the NVG, compatibility of the NVG with the crew station design (e.g., proximity of the canopy or windows, proximity of overhead panels, operability of controls, etc.), compatibility of crew equipment with the NVG and compatibility with respect to colour discrimination and identification (e.g., caution and warning lights still maintain amber and red colours). The purpose of this paragraph is to discuss compatibility with respect to aircraft lighting. An NVIS lighting system, internal and external, is considered compatible if it adheres to the following requirements:

1. the internal and external lighting does not adversely affect the operation of the NVG during any phase of the NVIS operation;
2. the internal lighting provides adequate illumination of aircraft cockpit instruments, displays and controls for unaided operations and for “look-under” viewing during aided operations; and
3. The external lighting aids in the detection and separation by other aircraft.

NVIS lighting compatibility can be achieved in a variety of ways that can include, but is not limited to, modification of light sources, light filters or by virtue of location. Once aircraft lighting is modified for using NVGs, it is important to keep in mind that changes in the crew station (e.g., addition of new display) must be assessed relative to the effect on NVIS compatibility.

2.4. NVIS operation

A night flight wherein the pilot maintains visual surface reference using NVGs in an aircraft that is NVIS approved

2.4.1 Aided

Aided flight is flight with NVGs in an operational position.

2.4.2 Unaided

Unaided flight is a flight without NVGs or a flight with NVGs in a non-operational position.

3. System description

3.1 NVIS capabilities

NVIS generally provides the pilot an image of the outside scene that is enhanced compared to that provided by the unaided, dark-adapted eye. However, NVIS may not provide the user an image equal to that observed during daylight. Since the user has an enhanced visual capability, situational awareness is generally improved.

3.1.1 Critical elements

The following critical elements are the underlying assumptions in the system description for NVIS:

1. aircraft internal lighting has been modified or initially designed to be compatible;
2. environmental conditions are adequate for the use of NVIS (e.g. enough illumination is present, weather conditions are favourable, etc.);
3. the NVIS has been properly maintained in accordance with the minimum operational performance standards;
4. a proper pre-flight has been performed on the NVIS confirming operation in accordance with the continued airworthiness standards and training guidelines; and
5. the pilot(s) has been properly trained and meets recency of experience requirements.

Even when insuring that these conditions are met, there still are many variables that can adversely affect the safe and effective use of NVIS (e.g., flying towards a low angle moon, flying in a shadowed area, flying near extensive cultural lighting, flying over low contrast terrain, etc.). It is important to understand these assumptions and limitations when discussing the capabilities provided by the use of NVIS.

3.1.2 Situation awareness

Situation awareness, being defined as the degree of perceptual accuracy achieved in the comprehension of all factors affecting an aircraft and crew at a given time, is improved at night when using NVG during NVIS operations. This is achieved by providing the pilot with more visual cues than is normally available under most conditions when operating an aircraft unaided at night. However, it is but one source of the factors necessary for maintaining an acceptable level of situational awareness.

3.1.2.1 Environment detection and identification

An advantage of using NVIS is the enhanced ability to detect, identify, and avoid terrain and/or obstacles that present a hazard to night operations. Correspondingly, NVIS aid in night navigation by allowing the aircrew to view waypoints and features.

Being able to visually locate and then (in some cases) identify objects or areas critical to operational success will also enhance operational effectiveness. Finally, use of NVIS may allow pilots to detect other aircraft more easily.

3.1.3 Emergency situations

NVIS generally improve situational awareness, facilitating the pilot's workload during emergencies. Should an emergency arise that requires an immediate landing, NVIS may provide the pilot with a means of locating a suitable landing area and conducting a landing. The pilot must determine if the use of NVIS during emergencies is appropriate. In certain instances, it may be more advantageous for the pilot to remove the NVG during the performance of an emergency procedure.

3.2.1 NVG design characteristics

There are limitations inherent in the current NVG design.

3.2.1.1 Visual acuity

The pilot's visual acuity with NVGs is less than normal daytime visual acuity.

3.2.1.2 Field of view

Unaided field of view (FOV) covers an elliptical area that is approximately 120° lateral by 80° vertical, whereas the field of view of current Type I NVG systems is nominally 40° and is circular. Both the reduced field of view of the image and the resultant decrease in peripheral vision can increase the pilot's susceptibility to misperceptions and illusions. Proper scanning techniques must be employed to reduce the susceptibility to misperception and illusions.

3.2.1.3 Field of regard

The NVG has a limited FOV but, because it is head-mounted, that FOV can be scanned when viewing the outside scene. The total area that the FOV can be scanned is called the field of regard (FOR). The FOR will vary depending on several factors: physiological limit of head movement, NVG design (e.g., protrusion of the binocular assembly, etc.) and cockpit design issues (e.g., proximity of canopy or window, seat location, canopy bow, etc.).

3.2.1.4 NVG weight & centre of gravity

The increased weight and forward CG projection of head supported devices may have detrimental effects on pilot performance due to neck muscle strain and fatigue. There also maybe an increased risk of neck injury in crashes.

3.2.1.5 Monochromatic image

The NVG image currently appears in shades of green. Since there is only one colour, the image is said to be "monochromatic". This colour was chosen mostly because the human eye can see more detail at lower brightness levels when viewing shades of green. Colour differences between components in a scene helps one discriminate between objects and aids in object recognition, depth perception and distance estimation. The lack of colour variation in the NVG image will degrade these capabilities to varying degrees.

3.2.1.6 Ambient or artificial light

The NVG requires some degree of light (energy) in order to function. Low light levels, non-compatible aircraft lighting and poor windshield/window light transmissibility, diminish the performance capability of the NVG. It is the pilot's responsibility to determine when to transition from aided to unaided due to unacceptable NVG performance.

3.2.2 Physiological and other conditions

3.2.2.1 Cockpit resource management

Due to the inherent limitations of NVIS operations, there is a requirement to place emphasis on NVIS related cockpit resource management (CRM). This applies to both single and multi-pilot cockpit environments. Consequently, NVIS flight requires effective CRM between the pilot(s), controlling agencies and other supporting personnel. An appropriate venue for addressing this issue is the pre-flight NVIS mission brief.

3.2.2.2 Fatigue

Physiological limitations that are prevalent during the hours of darkness along with the limitations associated with NVGs, may have a significant impact on NVIS operations. Some of these limitations are the effects of fatigue (both acute and chronic), stress, eyestrain, working outside the pilot's normal circadian rhythm envelope, increased helmet weight, aggressive scanning techniques associated with NVIS, and various human factors engineering concerns that may have a direct influence on how the pilot works in the aircraft while wearing NVGs. These limitations may be mitigated through proper training and recognition, experience, adaptation, rest, risk management, and proper crew rest/duty cycles.

3.2.2.3 Over-confidence

Compared to other types of flight operations, there may be an increased tendency by the pilot to over-estimate the capabilities of the NVIS.

3.2.2.4 Spatial orientation

There are two types of vision used in maintaining spatial orientation: central (focal) vision and peripheral (ambient) vision. Focal vision requires conscious processing and is slow, whereas peripheral information is processed subconsciously at a very fast rate. During daytime, spatial orientation is maintained by inputs from both focal vision and peripheral vision, with peripheral vision providing the great majority of the information. When using NVGs, peripheral vision can be significantly degraded if not completely absent. In this case, the pilot must rely on focal vision to interpret the NVG image as well as the information from flight instruments in order to maintain spatial orientation and situation awareness. Even though maintaining spatial orientation requires more effort when using NVGs than during daytime, it is much improved over night unaided operations where the only information is obtained through flight instruments. However, anything that degrades the NVG image to a point where the horizon is not visualised and/or ground reference is lost or significantly degraded will necessitate a reversion to flight on instruments until adequate external visual references can be established. Making this transition quickly and effectively is vital in order to avoid spatial disorientation. Additionally, added focal task loading during the operation (e.g., communications, looking at displays, processing navigational information, etc.) will compete with the focal requirement for interpreting the NVG image and flight instruments. Spatial disorientation can result when the task loading increases to a point where the outside scene and/or the flight instruments are not properly scanned. This potential can be mitigated to some extent through effective training and experience.

3.2.2.5 Depth perception & distance estimation

When flying, it is important for pilots to be able to accurately employ depth perception and distance estimation techniques. To accomplish this, pilots use both binocular and monocular vision. Binocular vision requires the use of both eyes working together, and, practically speaking, is useful only out to approximately 100 ft.

Binocular vision is particularly useful when flying close to the ground and/or near objects (e.g. landing a helicopter in a small landing zone). Monocular vision can be accomplished with either eye alone, and is the type of vision used for depth perception and distance estimation when viewing beyond approximately 100 ft. Monocular vision is the predominant type of vision used when flying fixed wing aircraft, and also when flying helicopters and using cues beyond 100 ft. When viewing an NVG image, the two eyes can no longer provide accurate binocular information, even though the NVG used when flying is a binocular system. This has to do with the way the eyes function physiologically (e.g. accommodation, stereopsis, etc.) and the design of the NVG (i.e. a binocular system with a fixed channel for each eye). Therefore, binocular depth perception and distance estimation tasking when viewing terrain or objects with an NVG within 100 ft is significantly degraded. Since monocular vision does not require both eyes working together, the adverse impact on depth perception and distance estimation is much less, and is mostly dependent on the quality of the NVG image. If the image is very good and there are objects in the scene to use for monocular cueing (especially objects with which the pilot is familiar), then distance estimation and depth perception tasking will remain accurate. However, if the image is degraded (e.g., low illumination, airborne obscurants, etc.) and/or there are few or unfamiliar objects in the scene, depth perception and distance estimation will be degraded to some extent. In summary, pilots using NVG will maintain the ability to accurately perceive depth and estimate distances, but it will depend on the distances used and the quality of the NVG image.

Pilots maintain some ability to perceive depth and distance when using NVGs by employing monocular cues. However, these capabilities may be degraded to varying degrees.

3.2.2.6 Instrument lighting brightness considerations

When viewing the NVG image, the brightness of the image will affect the amount of time it takes to adapt to the brightness level of the instrument lighting, thereby affecting the time it takes to interpret information provided by the instruments. For example, if the instrument lighting is fairly bright, the time it takes to interpret information provided by the instruments may be instantaneous. However, if the brightness of the lighting is set to a very low level, it may take several seconds to interpret the information, thus increasing the heads-down time and increasing the risk of spatial disorientation. It is important to ensure that instrument lighting is kept at a brightness level that makes it easy to rapidly interpret the information. This will likely be brighter than one is used to during unaided operations.

3.2.2.7 Dark adaptation time from NVG to unaided operations

When viewing an NVG image, both rods and cones are being stimulated (i.e., mesopic vision), but the brightness of the image is reducing the effectiveness of rod cells. If the outside scene is bright enough (e.g., urban area, bright landing pad, etc.), both rods and cones will continue to be stimulated. In this case there will be no improvement in acuity over time and the best acuity is essentially instantaneous. In some cases (e.g., rural area with scattered cultural lights), the outside scene will not be bright enough to stimulate the cones and some amount of time will be required for the rods to fully adapt. In this case it may take the rods one to two minutes to fully adapt for the best acuity to be realised. If the outside scene is very dark (e.g., no cultural lights and no moon), it may take up to five minutes to fully adapt to the outside scene after removing the NVGs. The preceding are general guidelines and the time required to fully adapt to the outside scene once removing the NVG depends on many variables: the length of time the NVG has been used, whether or not the pilot was dark adapted prior to flight, the brightness of the outside scene, the brightness of cockpit lighting, and variability in visual function among the population. It is important to understand the concept and to note the time requirements for the given operation.

3.2.2.8 Complacency

Pilots must understand the importance of avoiding complacency during NVG flights. Similar to other specialised flight operations, complacency may lead to an acceptance of situations that would normally not be permitted. Attention span and vigilance are reduced, important elements in a task series are overlooked, and scanning patterns, which are essential for situational awareness, break down (usually due to fixation on a single instrument, object or task). Critical but routine tasks are often skipped.

3.2.2.9 Experience

High levels of NVIS proficiency, along with a well-balanced NVIS experience base, will help to offset many of the visual performance degradations associated with night operations. NVIS experience is a result of proper training coupled with numerous NVIS operations. An experienced NVIS pilot is acutely aware of the NVIS operational envelope and its correlation to various operational effects, visual illusions and performance limitations. This experience base is gained (and maintained) over time through a continual, holistic NVIS training programme that exposes the pilot to NVIS operations conducted under various moon angles, percentage of available illumination, contrast levels, visibility levels, and varying degrees of cloud coverage. A pilot should be exposed to as many of these variations as practicable during the initial NVIS qualification programme. Continued exposure during the NVIS recurrent training will help strengthen and solidify this experience base.

4. Operations

Operations procedures should accommodate the capabilities and limitations of the systems described in Section 3 of this GM as well as the restraints of the operational environment.

All NVG operations should fulfil all applicable requirements in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 216/2008.

4.1 Pilot eligibility

About 54% of the civil pilot population wears some sort of ophthalmic device to correct vision necessary to safely operate an aircraft. The use of inappropriate ophthalmic devices with NVGs may result in vision performance decrement, fatigue, and other human factor problems, which could result in increased risk for aviation accidents and incidents.

4.2 Operating environment considerations

4.2.1 Weather and atmospheric obscurants

Any atmospheric condition, which absorbs, scatters, or refracts illumination, either before or after it strikes terrain, may reduce the usable energy available to the NVG.

4.2.1.1 Weather

During NVIS operations, pilots can see areas of moisture that are dense (e.g., clouds, thick fog, etc.) but may not see areas that are less dense (e.g., thin fog, light rain showers, etc.). The inability to see some areas of moisture may lead to hazardous flight conditions during NVIS operations and will be discussed separately in the next section.

The different types of moisture will have varying effects and it is important to understand these effects and how they apply to NVIS operations. For example:

1. It is important to know when and where fog may form in the flying area. Typically, coastal, low-lying river, and mountainous areas are most susceptible.
2. Light rain or mist may not be observed with NVIS but will affect contrast, distance estimation, and depth perception. Heavy rain is more easily perceived due to large droplet size and energy attenuation.
3. Snow occurs in a wide range of particle sizes, shapes, and densities. As with clouds, rain, and fog, the denser the airborne snow, the greater the effect on NVG performance. On the ground, snow has mixed effect depending on terrain type and the illumination level. In mountainous terrain, snow may add contrast, especially if trees and rocks protrude through the snow. In flatter terrain, snow may cover high contrast areas, reducing them to areas of low contrast. On low illumination nights, snow may reflect the available energy better than the terrain it covers and thus increase the level of illumination.

All atmospheric conditions reduce the illumination level to some degree and recognition of this reduction with NVGs can be difficult. Thus, a good weather briefing, familiarity with the local weather patterns and understanding the effects on NVG performance are important for a successful NVIS flight.

4.2.1.2 Deteriorating weather

It is important to remain cognizant of changes in the weather when using NVGs. It is possible to “see through” areas of light moisture when using NVGs, thus increasing the risk of inadvertently entering IMC. Some ways to help reduce this possibility include the following:

1. Be attentive to changes in the NVG image. Halos may become larger and more diffuse due to diffraction of light in moisture. Scintillation in the image may increase due to a lowering of the illumination level caused by the increased atmospheric moisture. Loss of scene detail may be secondary to the lowering illumination caused by the changing moisture conditions.
2. Obtain a thorough weather brief with emphasis on NVG effects prior to flight.
3. Be familiar with weather patterns in the flying area.
4. Occasionally scan the outside scene. The unaided eye may detect weather conditions that are not detectable to the NVG.

Despite the many methods of inadvertent instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) prevention, one should have established IMC recovery procedures and be familiar with them.

4.2.1.3 Airborne obscurants

In addition to weather, there may be other obscurants in the atmosphere that could block energy from reaching the NVG, such as haze, dust, sand, or smoke. As with moisture, the size and concentration of the particles will determine the degree of impact. Examples of these effects include the following:

1. high winds during the day can place a lot of dust in the air that will still be present at night when the wind may have reduced in intensity;
2. forest fires produce heavy volumes of smoke that may cover areas well away from the fire itself;

3. the effects of rotor wash may be more pronounced when using NVGs depending on the material (e.g. sand, snow, dust, etc.); and
4. pollution in and around major cultural areas may have an adverse effect on NVG performance.

4.2.1.4 Winter operations

Using NVGs during winter conditions provide unique issues and challenges to pilots.

4.2.1.4.1 Snow

Due to the reflective nature of snow, it presents pilots with significant visual challenges both en-route and in the terminal area. During the en-route phase of a flight the snow may cause distractions to the flying pilot if any aircraft external lights (e.g., anti-collision beacons/strobes, position lights, landing lights, etc.) are not compatible with NVGs. In the terminal area, whiteout landings can create the greatest hazard to unaided night operations. With NVGs the hazard is not lessened, and can be more disorienting due to lights reflecting from the snow that is swirling around the aircraft during the landing phase. Any emergency vehicle lighting or other airport lighting in the terminal area may exaggerate the effects.

4.2.1.4.2 Ice fog

Ice fog presents the pilot with hazards normally associated with IMC in addition to problems associated with snow operations. The highly reflective nature of ice fog will further aggravate any lighting problems. Ice fog conditions can be generated by aircraft operations under extremely cold temperatures and the right environmental conditions.

4.2.1.4.3 Icing

Airframe ice is difficult to detect while looking through NVGs. The pilot will need to develop a proper crosscheck to ensure airframe icing does not exceed operating limits for that aircraft. Pilots should already be aware of icing indicator points on their aircraft. These areas require consistent oversight to properly determine environmental conditions.

4.2.1.4.4 Low ambient temperatures

Depending on the cockpit heating system, fogging of the NVGs can be a problem and this will significantly reduce the goggle effectiveness. Another issue with cockpit temperatures is the reduced battery duration. Operations in a cold environment may require additional battery resources.

4.2.2 Illumination

NVGs require illumination, either natural or artificial, to produce an image. Although current NVG technology has significantly improved low light level performance, some illumination, whether natural or artificial, is still required to provide the best possible image.

4.2.2.1 Natural illumination

The main sources of natural illumination include the moon and stars. Other sources can include sky glow, the aurora borealis, and ionisation processes that take place in the upper atmosphere.

4.2.2.1.1 Moon phase

The moon provides the greatest source of natural illumination during night time. Moon phase and elevation determines how much moonlight will be available, while moonrise and moonset times determine when it will be available. Lunar illumination is reported in terms of percent illumination, 100% illumination being full moon. It should be noted that this is different from the moon phase (e.g., 25% illumination does not mean the same thing as a quarter moon). Currently, percent lunar illumination can only be obtained from sources on the Internet, military weather facilities and some publications (e.g. Farmers Almanac).

4.2.2.1.2 Lunar azimuth and elevation

The moon can have a detrimental effect on night operations depending on its relationship to the flight path. When the moon is on the same azimuth as the flight path, and low enough to be within or near the NVG field of view, the effect on NVG performance will be similar to that caused by the sun on the unaided eye during daytime. The brightness of the moon drives the NVG gain down, thus reducing image detail. This can also occur with the moon at relatively high elevations. For example, it is possible to bring the moon near the NVG field of view when climbing to cross a ridgeline or other obstacle, even when the moon is at a relatively high elevation. It is important to consider lunar azimuth and elevation during pre-flight planning. Shadowing, another effect of lunar azimuth and elevation, will be discussed separately.

4.2.2.1.3 Shadowing

Moonlight creates shadows during night time just as sunlight creates shadows during daytime. However, night time shadows contain very little energy for the NVG to use in forming an image. Consequently, image quality within a shadow will be degraded relative to that obtained outside the shadowed area. Shadows can be beneficial or can be a disadvantage to operations depending on the situation.

4.2.2.1.3.1 Benefits of shadows

Shadows alert aircrew to subtle terrain features that may not otherwise be noted due to the reduced resolution in the NVG image. This may be particularly important in areas where there is little contrast differentiation; such as flat featureless deserts, where large dry washes and high sand dunes may go unnoticed if there is no contrast to note their presence. The contrast provided by shadows helps make the NVG scene appear more natural.

4.2.2.1.3.2 Disadvantages due to shadows

When within a shadow, terrain detail can be significantly degraded, and objects can be regarding flight in or around shadowed areas is the pilot’s response to loss of terrain detail. During flight under good illumination conditions, a pilot expects to see a certain level of detail. If flight into a shadow occurs while the pilot is preoccupied with other matters (e.g., communication, radar, etc.), it is possible that the loss in terrain detail may not have been immediately noted. Once looking outside again, the pilot may think the reduced detail is due to an increase in flight altitude and thus begin a descent – even though already at a low altitude. Consideration should be given during mission planning to such factors as lunar azimuth and elevation, terrain type (e.g., mountainous, flat, etc.), and the location of items significant to operation success (e.g., ridgelines, pylons, targets, waypoints, etc.). Consideration of these factors will help predict the location of shadows and the potential adverse effects.

4.2.2.1.4 Sky glow

Sky glow is an effect caused by solar light and continues until the sun is approximately 18 degrees below the horizon. When viewing in the direction of sky glow there may be enough energy present to adversely affect the NVG image (i.e., reduce image quality). For the middle latitudes the effect on NVG performance may last up to an hour after official sunset. For more northern and southern latitudes the effect may last for extended periods of times (e.g., days to weeks) during seasons when the sun does not travel far below the horizon. This is an important point to remember if planning NVG operations in those areas. Unlike sky glow after sunset, the sky glow associated with sunrise does not have an obvious effect on NVG performance until fairly close to official sunrise. The difference has to do with the length of time the atmosphere is exposed to the sun’s irradiation, which causes ionisation processes that release near-IR energy. It is important to know the difference in these effects for planning purposes.

4.2.2.2 Artificial illumination

Since the NVGs are sensitive to any source of energy in the visible and near infrared spectrums, there are also many types of artificial illumination sources (e.g., flares, IR searchlights, cultural lighting, etc). As with any illumination source, these can have both positive and detrimental effects on NVG utilisation. For example, viewing a scene indirectly illuminated by a searchlight can enable the pilot to more clearly view the scene; conversely, viewing the same scene with the searchlight near or within the NVG field of view will reduce the available visual cues. It is important to be familiar with the effects of cultural lighting in the flying area in order to be able to avoid the associated problems and to be able to use the advantages provided. Also, it is important to know how to properly use artificial light sources (e.g., aircraft IR spotlight). It should be noted that artificial light sources may not always be available or dependable, and this should be taken into consideration during flight planning.

4.2.3 Terrain contrast

Contrast is one of the more important influences on the ability to correctly interpret the NVG image, particularly in areas where there are few cultural features. Any terrain that contains varying albedos (e.g., forests, cultivated fields, etc.) will likely increase the level of contrast in a NVG image, thus enhancing detail. The more detail in the image, the more visual information aircrews have for manoeuvring and navigating. Low contrast terrain (e.g., flat featureless desert, snow-covered fields, water, etc.) contains few albedo variations, thus the NVG image will contain fewer levels of contrast and less detail.

4.3 Aircraft considerations

4.3.1 Lighting

Factors such as aircraft internal and external lighting have the potential to adversely impact NVG gain and thus image quality. How well the windshield, canopy, or window panels transmit near infrared energy can also affect the image. Cleanliness of the windshield directly impacts this issue.

4.3.2 Cockpit ergonomics

While wearing NVGs, the pilot may have limited range of head movement in the aircraft. For example, switches on the overhead console may be difficult to read while wearing NVGs. Instruments, controls, and switches that are ordinarily accessible, may now be more difficult to access due to the extended mass (fore/aft) associated with NVGs.

In addition, scanning may require a more concentrated effort due to limited field of view. Lateral viewing motion can be hindered by cockpit obstructions (i.e. door post or seat back design).

4.3.3 Windshield reflectivity

Consideration within the cockpit and cabin should be given to the reflectivity of materials and equipment upon the windshield. Light that is reflected may interfere with a clear and unobstructed view. Items such as flight suits, helmets, and charts, if of a light colour such as white, yellow, and orange, can produce significant reflections. Colours that impart the least reflection are black, purple, and blue. This phenomena is not limited to windshields but may include side windows, chin bubbles, canopies, etc.

4.4 Generic operating considerations

This section lists operating topics and procedures, which should be considered when employing NVIS. The list and associated comments are not to be considered all inclusive. NVIS operations vary in scope widely and this section is not intended to instruct a prospective operator on how to implement an NVIS programme.

4.4.1 Normal procedures

4.4.1.1 Scanning

When using NVGs there are three different scan patterns to consider and each is used for different reasons: instrument scan, aided scan outside, and unaided scan outside. Normally, all three are integrated and there is a continuous transition from one to the other depending on the mission, environmental conditions, immediate tasking, flight altitude and many other variables. For example, scanning with the NVG will allow early detection of external lights. However, the bloom caused by the lights will mask the aircraft until fairly close or until the lighting scheme is changed. Once close to the aircraft (e.g., approximately one-half mile for smaller aircraft), visual acquisition can possibly be made unaided or with the NVG. Whether to use the NVG or unaided vision depends on many variables (e.g., external lighting configuration, distance to aircraft, size of aircraft, environmental conditions, etc.). The points to be made are that a proper scan depends on the situation and variables present, and that scanning outside is critical when close to another aircraft. Additionally, for a multi-crew environment, coordination of scan responsibilities is vital.

4.4.1.1.1 Instrument crosscheck scan

In order to effect a proper and effective instrument scan, it is important to predict when it will be important. A start can be made during pre-flight planning when critical phases of flight can be identified and prepared for. For example, it may be possible when flying over water or featureless terrain to employ a good instrument crosscheck. However, the most important task is to make the appropriate decision during flight as conditions and events change. In this case, experience, training and constant attention to the situation are vital contributors to the pilot's assessment of the situation.

4.4.1.1.2 NVG scan

To counteract the limited field of view, pilots should continually scan throughout the field of regard. This allows aircrew to build a mental image of the surrounding environment. How quickly the outside scene is scanned to update the mental image is determined by many variables. For example, when flying over flat terrain where the highest obstacle is below the flight path, the scan may be fairly slow. However, if flying low altitude in mountainous terrain, the scan will be more aggressive and rapid due to the presence of more information and the increased risk. How much of the field of regard to scan is also determined by many variables. For example, if a pilot is anticipating a turn, more attention may be placed in the area around the turn point, or in the direction of the new heading. In this situation, the scan will be limited briefly to only a portion of the field of regard.

As with the instrument scan, it is very important to plan ahead. It may, for example, be possible to determine when the scan may be interrupted due to other tasks, when it may be possible to become fixated on a specific task, or when it is important to maximise the outside scan. An important lesson to learn regarding the NVG scan is when not to rely on visual information. It is easy to overestimate how well one can see with NVGs, especially on high illumination nights, and it is vital to maintain a constant awareness regarding their limitations. This should be pointed out often during training and, as a reminder, should be included as a briefing item for NVG flights.

4.4.1.1.3 Unaided scan

Under certain conditions, this scan can be as important as the others can. For example, it may be possible to detect distance and/or closure to another aircraft more easily using unaided vision, especially if the halo caused by the external lights is masking aircraft detail on the NVG image. Additionally, there are other times when unaided information can be used in lieu of or can augment NVG and instrument information.

4.4.1.1.4 Scan patterns

Environmental factors will influence scan by limiting what may be seen in specific directions or by degrading the overall image. If the image is degraded, aircrew may scan more aggressively in a subconscious attempt to obtain more information, or to avoid the chance of missing information that suddenly appears and/or disappears. The operation itself may influence the scan pattern. For example, looking for another aircraft, landing zone, or airport may require focusing the scan in a particular direction. In some cases, the operation may require aircrew in a multi place aircraft to assign particular pilots responsibility for scanning specific sectors.

The restrictions to scan and the variables affecting the scan patter are not specific to night operations or the use of NVGs, but, due to the NVG's limited field of view, the degree of impact is magnified.

4.4.1.2 Pre-flight planning

4.4.1.2.1 Illumination criteria

The pilot should provide a means for forecasting the illumination levels in the operational area. The pilot should make the effort to request at least the following information in addition to that normally requested for night VFR: cloud cover and visibility during all phases of flight, sunset, civil and nautical twilight, moon phase, moonrise and moonset, and moon and/or lux illumination levels, and unlit tower NOTAMS.

4.4.1.2.2 NVIS operations

An inspection of the power pack, visor, mount, power cable and the binocular assembly should be performed in accordance with the operations manual.

To ensure maximum performance of the NVGs, proper alignment and focus must be accomplished following the equipment inspection. Improper alignment and focus may degrade NVIS performance.

4.4.1.2.3 Aircraft pre-flight

A normal pre-flight inspection should be conducted prior to an NVIS flight with emphasis on proper operation of the NVIS lighting. The aircraft windshield must also be clean and free of major defects, which might degrade NVIS performance.

4.4.1.2.4 Equipment

The basic equipment required for NVIS operations should be those instruments and equipment specified within the current applicable regulations for VFR night operations. Additional equipment required for NVIS operations, e.g. NVIS lighting system and a radio altimeter must be installed and operational. All NVIS equipment, including any subsequent modifications, shall be approved.

4.4.1.2.5 Risk assessment

A risk assessment is suggested prior to any NVIS operation. The risk assessment should include as a minimum:

1. illumination level
2. weather
3. pilot recency of experience
4. pilot experience with NVG operations
5. pilot vision
6. pilot rest condition and health
7. windshield/window condition
8. NVG tube performance
9. NVG battery condition
10. types of operations allowed
11. external lighting environment.

4.4.1.3 Flight operations

4.4.1.3.1 Elevated terrain

Safety may be enhanced by NVGs during operations near elevated terrain at night. The obscuration of elevated terrain is more easily detected with NVGs thereby allowing the pilot to make alternate flight path decisions.

4.4.1.3.2 Over-water

Flying over large bodies of water with NVGs is difficult because of the lack of contrast in terrain features. Reflections of the moon or starlight may cause disorientation with the natural horizon. The radio altimeter must be used as a reference to maintain altitude.

4.4.1.4 Remote area considerations

A remote area is a site that does not qualify as an aerodrome as defined by the applicable regulations. Remote area landing sites do not have the same features as an aerodrome, so extra care must be given to locating any obstacles that may be in the approach/departure path.

A reconnaissance must be made prior to descending at an unlighted remote site. Some features or objects may be easy to detect and interpret with the unaided eye. Other objects will be invisible to the unaided eye, yet easily detected and evaluated with NVGs.

4.4.1.5 Reconnaissance

The reconnaissance phase should involve the coordinated use of NVGs and white lights. The aircraft's external white lights such as landing lights, searchlights, and floodlights, should be used during this phase of flight. The pilot should select and evaluate approach and departure paths to the site considering wind speed and direction, and obstacles or signs of obstacles.

4.4.1.6 Sources of high illumination

Sources of direct high illumination may have the potential to reduce the effectiveness of the NVGs. In addition, certain colour lights, such as red, will appear brighter, closer and may display large halos.

4.4.2 Emergency procedures

No modification for NVG operations is necessary to the aircraft emergency procedures as approved in the operations manual or approved checklist. Special training may be required to accomplish the appropriate procedures.

4.4.3 Inadvertent IMC

Some ways to help reduce the potential for inadvertent flight into IMC conditions are:

1. obtaining a thorough weather brief (including pilot reports);
2. being familiar with weather patterns in the local flying area; and
3. by looking beneath the NVG at the outside scene.

However, even with thorough planning a risk still exists. To help mitigate this risk it is important to know how to recognise subtle changes to the NVG image that occur during entry into IMC conditions. Some of these include the onset of scintillation, loss of scene detail, and changes in the appearance of halos.

5. Training

To provide an appropriate level of safety, training procedures must accommodate the capabilities and limitations of the systems described in Section 3 of this GM as well as the restraints of the operational environment.

To be effective, the NVIS training philosophy would be based on a two-tiered approach: basic and advanced NVIS training. The basic NVIS training would serve as the baseline standard for all individuals seeking an NVIS endorsement. The content of this initial training would not be dependent on any operational requirements. The advanced training would build on the basic training by focusing on developing specialised skills required to operate an aircraft during NVIS operations in a particular operational environment. Furthermore, while there is a need to stipulate minimum flight hour requirements for an NVIS endorsement, the training must also be event based. This necessitates that pilots be exposed to all of the relevant aspects, or events, of NVIS flight in addition to acquiring a minimum number of flight hours.

6. Continuing airworthiness

The reliability of the NVIS and safety of operations are dependent on the pilots adhering to the instructions for continuing airworthiness. Personnel who conduct the maintenance and inspection on the NVIS must be qualified and possess the appropriate tools and facilities to perform the maintenance.

Acronyms used in this GM

AC	Advisory Circular
AGL	above ground level
ATC	air traffic control
CONOPs	concept of operations
CG	centre of gravity
CRM	cockpit resource management
DOD	Department of Defence
DOT	Department of Transportation
EFIS	electronic flight instrumentation systems
EMS	emergency medical service
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FLIR	forward looking infrared radar
FOR	field of regard
FOV	field of view
GEN	generation
HUD	head-up display
IFR	instrument flight rules
IMC	instrument meteorological conditions
IR	infrared
JAA	Joint Aviation Authorities
MOPS	Minimum Operational Performance Standard
NAS	national airspace system
NOTAMS	Notices to Airmen
NVD	night vision device
NVED	night vision enhancement device
NVG	night vision goggles
NVIS	night vision imaging system
SC	special committee
TFR	temporary flight restrictions
VA	visual acuity
VFR	visual flight rules
VMC	visual meteorological conditions

Glossary of terms used in this GM

1. 'Absorptance': the ratio of the radiant energy absorbed by a body to that incident upon it.
2. 'Albedo': the ratio of the amount of light reflected from a surface to the amount of incident light.
3. 'Automatic brightness control (ABC)': one of the automatic gain control circuits found in second and third generation NVG devices. It attempts to provide consistent image output brightness by automatic control of the micro channel plate voltage.
4. 'Automatic gain control (AGC)': comprised of the automatic brightness control and bright source protection circuits. Is designed to maintain image brightness and protect the user and the image tube from excessive light levels. This is accomplished by controlling the gain of the intensifier tube.
5. 'Blackbody': an ideal body of surface that completely absorbs all radiant energy falling upon with no reflection.
6. 'Blooming': common term used to denote the "washing out" of all or part of the NVG image due to degaining of the image intensifier tube when a bright light source is in or near the NVG field of view.
7. 'Bright source protection (BSP)': protective feature associated with second and third generation NVGs that protects the intensifier tube and the user by controlling the voltage at the photo cathode.
8. 'Brownout': condition created by blowing sand, dust, etc., which can cause the pilots to lose sight of the ground. This is most commonly associated with landings in the desert or in dusty LZs.
9. 'Civil nautical twilight': the time when the true altitude of the centre of the sun is six degrees below the horizon. Illuminance level is approximately 3.40 lux and is above the usable level for NVG operations.
10. 'Diopter': a measure of the refractive (light bending) power of a lens.
11. 'Electro-optics (EO)': the term used to describe the interaction between optics and electronics, leading to transformation of electrical energy into light or vice versa.
12. 'Electroluminescent (EL)': referring to light emission that occurs from application of an alternating current to a layer of phosphor.
13. 'Foot-candle': a measure of illuminance; specifically, the illuminance of a surface upon which one lumen is falling per square foot.
14. 'Foot-Lambert': a measure of luminance; specifically the luminance of a surface that is receiving an illuminance of one foot-candle.
15. 'Gain': when referring to an image intensification tube, the ratio of the brightness of the output in units of foot-lambert, compared to the illumination of the input in foot-candles. A typical value for a GEN III tube is 25,000 to 30,000 Fl/fc. A "tube gain" of 30,000 Fl/fc provides an approximate "system gain" of 3,000. This means that the intensified NVG image is 3,000 times brighter to the aided eye than that of the unaided eye.
16. 'Illuminance': also referred to as illumination. The amount, ratio or density of light that strikes a surface at any given point.
17. 'Image intensifier': an electro-optic device used to detect and intensify optical images in the visible and near infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum for the purpose of providing visible images. The component that actually performs the intensification process in a NVG. This component is composed of the photo cathode, MCP, screen optic, and power supply. It does not include the objective and eyepiece lenses.
18. 'Incandescent': refers to a source that emits light based on thermal excitation, i.e., heating by an electrical current, resulting in a very broad spectrum of energy that is dependent primarily on the temperature of the filament.
19. 'Infrared': that portion of the electromagnetic spectrum in which wavelengths range from 0.7 microns to 1 mm. This segment is further divided into near infrared (0.7-3.0 microns), mid infrared (3.0-6.0 microns), far infrared (6.0-15 microns), and extreme infrared (15 microns-1 mm). A NVG is sensitive to near infrared wavelengths approaching 0.9 microns.
20. 'Irradiance': the radiant flux density incident on a surface. For the purpose of this document the terms irradiance and illuminance shall be interchangeable.
21. 'Lumen': a measurement of luminous flux equal to the light emitted in a unit solid angle by a uniform point source of one candle intensity.

22. 'Luminance': the luminous intensity (reflected light) of a surface in a given direction per unit of projected area. This is the energy used by NVGs.
23. 'Lux': a unit measurement of illumination. The illuminance produced on a surface that is one-meter square, from a uniform point source of one candle intensity, or one lumen per square meter.
24. 'Microchannel plate': a wafer containing between 3 and 6 million specially treated microscopic glass tubes designed to multiply electrons passing from the photo cathode to the phosphor screen in second and third generation intensifier tubes.
25. 'Micron': a unit of measure commonly used to express wavelength in the infrared region; equal to one millionth of a meter.
26. 'Nanometer (nm)': a unit of measure commonly used to express wavelength in the visible and near infra-red region; equal to one billionth of a meter.
27. 'Night vision device (NVD)': an electro-optical device used to provide a visible image using the electro-magnetic energy available at night.
28. 'Photon': a quantum (basic unit) of radiant energy (light).
29. 'Photopic vision': vision produced as a result of the response of the cones in the retina as the eye achieves a light adapted state (commonly referred to as day vision).
30. 'Radiance': the flux density of radiant energy reflected from a surface. For the purposes of this manual the terms radiance and luminance shall be interchangeable.
31. 'Reflectivity': the fraction of energy reflected from a surface.
32. 'Scotopic vision': that vision produced as a result of the response of the rods in the retina as the eye achieves a dark-adapted state (commonly referred to as night vision).
33. 'Situational awareness (SA)': degree of perceptual accuracy achieved in the comprehension of all factors affecting an aircraft and crew at a given time.
34. 'Starlight': the illuminance provided by the available (observable) stars in a subject hemisphere. The stars provide approximately 0.00022 lux ground illuminance on a clear night. This illuminance is equivalent to about one-quarter of the actual light from the night sky with no moon.
35. 'Stereopsis': visual system binocular cues that are used for distance estimation and depth perception. Three dimensional visual perception of objects. The use of NVGs seriously degrades this aspect of near-depth perception.
36. 'Transmittance': the fraction of radiant energy that is transmitted through a layer of absorbing material placed in its path.
37. 'Ultraviolet': that portion of the electromagnetic spectrum in which wavelengths range between 0.1 and 0.4 microns.
38. 'Wavelength': the distance in the line of advance of a wave from any one point to the next point of corresponding phase; is used to express electromagnetic energy including IR and visible light.
39. 'Whiteout': a condition similar to brownout but caused by blowing snow.

References

1. Air Force Manual 11-217 Volume 2, Chapter 3, Night Vision Devices, August 6, 1998.
2. Department of Army, Training Circular 1-204, Night Flight: Techniques and Procedures, 1988.
3. DOT/FAA, Report no DOT/FAA/RD-94/21– Night Vision Goggles in Emergency Medical Services (EMS) Helicopters, March 1994.
4. FAA, Guide for Aviation Medical Examiners, November 1996.
5. FAA, Notice for Proposed Rulemaking Statement- Night Vision Goggles, Draft, September 7, 1999.
6. FAA Handbook 8083-21, Rotorcraft Flying Handbook, 2000.
7. FAA Operation Specification, Rocky Mountain Helicopters Night Vision Goggle Operations, February 4,1999.
8. FAA Supplemental Type Certificate Number SR09208RC, Rocky Mountain Holdings, BO-105, January 19,1999.
9. FAA, Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM), February 24, 2000.
10. ITT Industries, Operator's Manual-Image Intensifier Set, Night Vision AV4949UL, June 21,1999.
11. RTCA, Inc. – Basic Document Style Guide, July 1999.
12. JAA, JAR-OPS Night Vision Goggle Operations, Draft, 1999.
13. Mobility Air Forces, Concept of Operations-Aircrew Night Vision Goggles, September 8, 1998.
14. Perfetto, Nicholas J., Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University, The Feasibility of Metropolitan Police Department Helicopter Pilots Using Night Vision Goggles, May 2000.
15. Simpson, Carol Dr., William, Doug., Gardner, Donald., Haworth, Loran., Analysis of Response to Survey of Issues in the Application of Night Vision Goggles to Civil Rotorcraft Flight Operations, Draft, July 12, 1999.
16. United States Marine Corps, Marine Aviation Weapons and Tactics Squadron One, Helicopter Night Vision Device Manual, Summer 1995.

SUBPART I — HELICOPTER HOIST OPERATIONS

SPA.HHO.100 Helicopter hoist operations (HHO)

(a) Helicopters shall only be operated for the purpose of CAT hoist operations if the operator has been approved by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain such approval by the competent authority, the operator shall:

(1) operate in CAT and hold a CAT AOC in accordance with Annex III (Part-ORO);

(2) demonstrate to the competent authority compliance with the requirements contained in this Subpart.

SPA.HHO.110 Equipment requirements for HHO

(a) The installation of all helicopter hoist equipment, including any radio equipment to comply with SPA.HHO.115, and any subsequent modifications, shall have an airworthiness approval appropriate to the intended function. Ancillary equipment shall be designed and tested to the appropriate standard as required by the competent authority.

(b) Maintenance instructions for HHO equipment and systems shall be established by the operator in liaison with the manufacturer and included in the operator's helicopter maintenance programme as required by Regulation (EC) No 2042/2003.

AMC1 SPA.HHO.110(a) Equipment requirements for HHO

AIRWORTHINESS APPROVAL FOR HUMAN EXTERNAL CARGO

(a) Hoist installations that have been certificated according to any of the following standards should be considered to satisfy the airworthiness criteria for human external cargo (HEC) operations:

(1) CS 27.865 or CS 29.865;

(2) JAR 27 Amendment 2 (27.865) or JAR 29 Amendment 2 (29.865) or later;

(3) FAR 27 Amendment 36 (27.865) or later – including compliance with CS 27.865(c)(6); or

(4) FAR 29 Amendment 43 (29.865) or later.

(b) Hoist installations that have been certified prior to the issuance of the airworthiness criteria for HEC as defined in (a) may be considered as eligible for HHO provided that following a risk assessment either:

(1) the service history of the hoist installation is found satisfactory to the competent authority; or

(2) for hoist installations with an unsatisfactory service history, additional substantiation to allow acceptance by the competent authority should be provided by the hoist installation certificate holder (type certificate (TC) or supplemental type certificate (STC)) on the basis of the following requirements:

(i) The hoist installation should withstand a force equal to a limit static load factor of 3.5, or some lower load factor, not less than 2.5, demonstrated to be the maximum load factor expected during hoist operations, multiplied by the maximum authorised external load.

(ii) The reliability of the primary and back-up quick release systems at helicopter level should be established and failure mode and effect analysis at equipment level should be available. The assessment of the design of the primary and back-up quick release systems should consider any failure that could be induced by a failure mode of any other electrical or mechanical rotorcraft system.

(iii) The operations or flight manual contains one-engine-inoperative (OEI) hover performance data and procedures for the weights, altitudes, and temperatures throughout the flight envelope for which hoist operations are accepted.

(iv) Information concerning the inspection intervals and retirement life of the hoist cable should be provided in the instructions for continued airworthiness.

(v) Any airworthiness issue reported from incidents or accidents and not addressed by (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) should be addressed.

SPA.HHO.115 HHO communication

Two-way radio communication shall be established with the organisation for which the HHO is being provided and, where possible, a means of communicating with ground personnel at the HHO site for:

(a) day and night offshore operations;

(b) night onshore operations, except for HHO at a helicopter emergency medical services (HEMS) operating site.

SPA.HHO.125 Performance requirements for HHO

Except for HHO at a HEMS operating site, HHO shall be capable of sustaining a critical engine failure with the remaining engine(s) at the appropriate power setting without hazard to the suspended person(s)/cargo, third parties or property.

SPA.HHO.130 Crew requirements for HHO

(a) Selection. The operator shall establish criteria for the selection of flight crew members for the HHO task, taking previous experience into account.

(b) Experience. The minimum experience level for the commander conducting HHO flights shall not be less than:

(1) Offshore:

(i) 1 000 hours as pilot-in-command/commander of helicopters, or 1 000 hours as co-pilot in HHO of which 200 hours is as pilot-in-command under supervision; and

(ii) 50 hoist cycles conducted offshore, of which 20 cycles shall be at night if night operations are being conducted, where a hoist cycle means one down-and-up cycle of the hoist hook.

(2) Onshore:

(i) 500 hours as pilot-in-command/commander of helicopters, or 500 hours as co-pilot in HHO of which 100 hours is as pilot-in-command under supervision;

(ii) 200 hours operating experience in helicopters gained in an operational environment similar to the intended operation; and

(iii) 50 hoist cycles, of which 20 cycles shall be at night if night operations are being conducted.

(c) Operational training and experience. Successful completion of training in accordance with the HHO procedures contained in the operations manual and relevant experience in the role and environment under which HHO are conducted.

(d) Recency. All pilots and HHO crew members conducting HHO shall have completed in the last 90 days:

(1) when operating by day: any combination of three day or night hoist cycles, each of which shall include a transition to and from the hover;

(2) when operating by night: three night hoist cycles, each of which shall include a transition to and from the hover.

(e) Crew composition. The minimum crew for day or night operations shall be as stated in the operations manual. The minimum crew will be dependent on the type of helicopter, the weather conditions, the type of task, and, in addition for offshore operations, the HHO site environment, the sea state and the movement of the vessel. In no case shall the minimum crew be less than one pilot and one HHO crew member.

(f) Training and checking

(1) Training and checking shall be conducted in accordance with a detailed syllabus approved by the competent authority and included in the operations manual.

(2) Crew members

(i) Crew training programmes shall: improve knowledge of the HHO working environment and equipment; improve crew coordination; and include measures to minimise the risks associated with HHO normal and emergency procedures and static discharge.

(ii) The measures referred to in (f)(2)(i) shall be assessed during visual meteorological conditions (VMC) day proficiency checks, or VMC night proficiency checks when night HHO are undertaken by the operator.

AMC1 SPA.HHO.130(b)(2)(ii) Crew requirements for HHO

RELEVANT EXPERIENCE

The experience considered should take into account the geographical characteristics (sea, mountain, big cities with heavy traffic, etc.).

AMC1 SPA.HHO.130(e) Crew requirements for HHO

CRITERIA FOR TWO PILOT HHO

A crew of two pilots should be used when:

(a) the weather conditions are below VFR minima at the offshore vessel or structure;

(b) there are adverse weather conditions at the HHO site (i.e. turbulence, vessel movement, visibility); and

(c) the type of helicopter requires a second pilot to be carried because of:

(1) cockpit visibility;

(2) handling characteristics; or

(3) lack of automatic flight control systems.

AMC1 SPA.HHO.130(f)(1) Crew requirements for HHO

TRAINING AND CHECKING SYLLABUS

(a) The flight crew training syllabus should include the following items:

(1) fitting and use of the hoist;

(2) preparing the helicopter and hoist equipment for HHO;

(3) normal and emergency hoist procedures by day and, when required, by night;

(4) crew coordination concepts specific to HHO;

(5) practice of HHO procedures; and

(6) the dangers of static electricity discharge.

(b) The flight crew checking syllabus should include:

(1) proficiency checks, which should include procedures likely to be used at HHO sites with special emphasis on:

(i) local area meteorology;

(ii) HHO flight planning;

(iii) HHO departures;

(iv) a transition to and from the hover at the HHO site;

(v) normal and simulated emergency HHO procedures; and

(vi) crew coordination.

(c) HHO technical crew members should be trained and checked in the following items:

(1) duties in the HHO role;

(2) fitting and use of the hoist;

(3) operation of hoist equipment;

(4) preparing the helicopter and specialist equipment for HHO;

(5) normal and emergency procedures;

(6) crew coordination concepts specific to HHO;

(7) operation of inter-communication and radio equipment;

(8) knowledge of emergency hoist equipment;

(9) techniques for handling HHO passengers;

(10) effect of the movement of personnel on the centre of gravity and mass during HHO;

(11) effect of the movement of personnel on performance during normal and emergency flight conditions;

(12) techniques for guiding pilots over HHO sites;

(13) awareness of specific dangers relating to the operating environment; and

(14) the dangers of static electricity discharge.

SPA.HHO.135 HHO passenger briefing

Prior to any HHO flight, or series of flights, HHO passengers shall have been briefed and made aware of the dangers of static electricity discharge and other HHO considerations.

SPA.HHO.140 Information and documentation

(a) The operator shall ensure that, as part of its risk analysis and management process, risks associated with the HHO environment are minimised by specifying in the operations manual: selection, composition and training of crews; levels of equipment and dispatch criteria; and operating procedures and minima, such that normal and likely abnormal operations are described and adequately mitigated.

(b) Relevant extracts from the operations manual shall be available to the organisation for which the HHO is being provided.

AMC1 SPA.HHO.140 Information and documentation

OPERATIONS MANUAL

The operations manual should include:

(a) performance criteria;

(b) if applicable, the conditions under which offshore HHO transfer may be conducted including the relevant limitations on vessel movement and wind speed;

(c) the weather limitations for HHO;

(d) the criteria for determining the minimum size of the HHO site, appropriate to the task;

(e) the procedures for determining minimum crew; and

(f) the method by which crew members record hoist cycles.

SUBPART J — HELICOPTER EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICE OPERATIONS

SPA.HEMS.100 Helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS) operations

(a) Helicopters shall only be operated for the purpose of HEMS operations if the operator has been approved by the competent authority.

(b) To obtain such approval by the competent authority, the operator shall:

(1) operate in CAT and hold a CAT AOC in accordance with Annex III (Part-ORO);

(2) demonstrate to the competent authority compliance with the requirements contained in this Subpart.

GM1 SPA.HEMS.100(a) Helicopter emergency medical service (HEMS) operations

THE HEMS PHILOSOPHY

(a) Introduction

This GM outlines the HEMS philosophy. Starting with a description of acceptable risk and introducing a taxonomy used in other industries, it describes how risk has been addressed in this Subpart to provide a system of safety to the appropriate standard. It discusses the difference between HEMS and air ambulance – in regulatory terms. It also discusses the application of operations to public interest sites in the HEMS context.

(b) Acceptable risk

The broad aim of any aviation legislation is to permit the widest spectrum of operations with the minimum risk. In fact it may be worth considering who/what is at risk and who/what is being protected. In this view three groups are being protected:

(1) third parties (including property) – highest protection;

(2) passengers (including patients); and

(3) crew members (including technical crew members) – lowest.

It is for the Legislator to facilitate a method for the assessment of risk – or as it is more commonly known, safety management (refer to Part-ORO).

(c) Risk management

Safety management textbooks[30] describe four different approaches to the management of risk. All but the first have been used in the production of this section and, if it is considered that the engine failure accountability of performance class 1 equates to zero risk, then all four are used (this of course is not strictly true as there are a number of helicopter parts – such as the tail rotor which, due to a lack of redundancy, cannot satisfy the criteria):

(1) Applying the taxonomy to HEMS gives:

(i) zero risk; no risk of accident with a harmful consequence – performance class 1 (within the qualification stated above) – the HEMS operating base;

(ii) de minimis; minimised to an acceptable safety target – for example the exposure time concept where the target is less than 5 x 10-8 (in the case of elevated final approach and take-off areas (elevated FATOs) at hospitals in a congested hostile environment the risk is contained to the deck edge strike case – and so in effect minimised to an exposure of seconds);

(iii) comparative risk; comparison to other exposure – the carriage of a patient with a spinal injury in an ambulance that is subject to ground effect compared to the risk of a HEMS flight (consequential and comparative risk);

(iv) as low as reasonably practicable; where additional controls are not economically or reasonably practicable – operations at the HEMS operating site (the accident site).

(2) HEMS operations are conducted in accordance with the requirements contained in Annex IV (Part-CAT) and Annex III (Part-ORO), except for the variations contained in SPA.HEMS, for which a specific approval is required. In simple terms there are three areas in HEMS operations where risk, beyond that allowed in Part-CAT and Part-ORO, are identified and related risks accepted:

(i) in the en-route phase, where alleviation is given from height and visibility rules;

(ii) at the accident site, where alleviation is given from the performance and size requirement; and

(iii) at an elevated hospital site in a congested hostile environment, where alleviation is given from the deck edge strike – providing elements of the CAT.POL.H.305 are satisfied.

In mitigation against these additional and considered risks, experience levels are set, specialist training is required (such as instrument training to compensate for the increased risk of inadvertent entry into cloud) and operation with two crew (two pilots, or one pilot and a HEMS technical crew member) is mandated. (HEMS crews and medical passengers are also expected to operate in accordance with good crew resource management (CRM) principles.)

[30] Reason, J., 1997. Managing the Risks of Organizational Accidents. Ashgate, Farnham.

(d) Air ambulance

In regulatory terms, air ambulance is considered to be a normal transport task where the risk is no higher than for operations to the full OPS.CAT and Part-ORO compliance. This is not intended to contradict/complement medical terminology but is simply a statement of policy; none of the risk elements of HEMS should be extant and therefore none of the additional requirements of HEMS need be applied.

To provide a road ambulance analogy:

(1) if called to an emergency: an ambulance would proceed at great speed, sounding its siren and proceeding against traffic lights – thus matching the risk of operation to the risk of a potential death (= HEMS operations);

(2) for a transfer of a patient (or equipment) where life and death (or consequential injury of ground transport) is not an issue: the journey would be conducted without sirens and within normal rules of motoring – once again matching the risk to the task (= air ambulance operations).

The underlying principle is that the aviation risk should be proportionate to the task.

It is for the medical professional to decide between HEMS or air ambulance – not the pilot. For that reason, medical staff who undertake to task medical sorties should be fully aware of the additional risks that are (potentially) present under HEMS operations (and the pre-requisite for the operator to hold a HEMS approval). (For example in some countries, hospitals have principal and alternative sites. The patient may be landed at the safer alternative site (usually in the grounds of the hospital) thus eliminating risk – against the small inconvenience of a short ambulance transfer from the site to the hospital.)

Once the decision between HEMS or air ambulance has been taken by the medical professional, the commander makes an operational judgement over the conduct of the flight.

Simplistically, the above type of air ambulance operations could be conducted by any operator holding an AOC (HEMS operators hold an AOC) – and usually are when the carriage of medical supplies (equipment, blood, organs, drugs etc.) is undertaken and when urgency is not an issue.

(e) Operating under a HEMS approval

There are only two possibilities: transportation as passengers or cargo under the full auspices of OPS.CAT and Part-ORO (this does not permit any of the alleviations of SPA.HEMS – landing and take-off performance should be in compliance with the performance Subparts of Part-CAT), or operations under a HEMS approval as contained in this Subpart.

(f) HEMS operational sites

The HEMS philosophy attributes the appropriate levels of risk for each operational site; this is derived from practical considerations and in consideration of the probability of use. The risk is expected to be inversely proportional to the amount of use of the site. The types of site are as follows:

(1) HEMS operating base: from which all operations will start and finish. There is a high probability of a large number of take-offs and landings at this HEMS operating base and for that reason no alleviation from operating procedures or performance rules are contained in this Subpart.

(2) HEMS operating site: because this is the primary pick-up site related to an incident or accident, its use can never be pre-planned and therefore attracts alleviations from operating procedures and performance rules, when appropriate.

(3) The hospital site: is usually at ground level in hospital grounds or, if elevated, on a hospital building. It may have been established during a period when performance criteria were not a consideration. The amount of use of such sites depends on their location and their facilities; normally, it will be greater than that of the HEMS operating site but less than for a HEMS operating base. Such sites attract some alleviation under this Subpart.

(g) Problems with hospital sites

During implementation of the original HEMS rules contained in JAR-OPS 3, it was established that a number of States had encountered problems with the impact of performance rules where helicopters were operated for HEMS. Although States accept that progress should be made towards operations where risks associated with a critical engine failure are eliminated, or limited by the exposure time concept, a number of landing sites exist that do not (or never can) allow operations to performance class 1 or 2 requirements.

These sites are generally found in a congested hostile environment:

(1) in the grounds of hospitals; or

(2) on hospital buildings.

The problem of hospital sites is mainly historical and, whilst the authority could insist that such sites are not used – or used at such a low weight that critical engine failure performance is assured – it would seriously curtail a number of existing operations.

Even though the rule for the use of such sites in hospital grounds for HEMS operations attracts alleviation, it is only partial and will still impact upon present operations.

Because such operations are performed in the public interest, it was felt that the authority should be able to exercise its discretion so as to allow continued use of such sites provided that it is satisfied that an adequate level of safety can be maintained – notwithstanding that the site does not allow operations to performance class 1 or 2 standards. However, it is in the interest of continuing improvements in safety that the alleviation of such operations be constrained to existing sites, and for a limited period.

It is felt that the use of public interest sites should be controlled. This will require that a State directory of sites be kept and approval given only when the operator has an entry in the route manual section of the operations manual.

The directory (and the entry in the operations manual) should contain for each approved site:

(i) the dimensions;

(ii) any non-conformance with ICAO Annex 14;

(iii) the main risks; and

(iv) the contingency plan should an incident occur.

Each entry should also contain a diagram (or annotated photograph) showing the main aspects of the site.

(h) Summary

In summary, the following points are considered to be pertinent to the HEMS philosophy and HEMS regulations:

(1) absolute levels of safety are conditioned by society;

(2) potential risk must only be to a level proportionate to the task;

(3) protection is afforded at levels appropriate to the occupants;

(4) this Subpart addresses a number of risk areas and mitigation is built in;

(5) only HEMS operations are dealt with by this Subpart;

(6) there are three main categories of HEMS sites and each is addressed appropriately; and

(7) State alleviation from the requirement at a hospital site is available but such alleviations should be strictly controlled by a system of registration.

SPA.HEMS.110 Equipment requirements for HEMS operations

The installation of all helicopter dedicated medical equipment and any subsequent modifications and, where appropriate, its operation shall be approved in accordance with Regulation (EC) No 1702/2003.

SPA.HEMS.115 Communication

In addition to that required by CAT.IDE.H, helicopters conducting HEMS flights shall have communication equipment capable of conducting two-way communication with the organisation for which the HEMS is being conducted and, where possible, to communicate with ground emergency service personnel.

SPA.HEMS.120 HEMS operating minima

(a) HEMS flights operated in performance class 1 and 2 shall comply with the weather minima in Table 1 for dispatch and en-route phase of the HEMS flight. In the event that during the en-route phase the weather conditions fall below the cloud base or visibility minima shown, helicopters certified for flights only under VMC shall abandon the flight or return to base. Helicopters equipped and certified for instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) operations may abandon the flight, return to base or convert in all respects to a flight conducted under instrument flight rules (IFR), provided the flight crew are suitably qualified.

Table 1: HEMS operating minima

2 PILOTS		**1 PILOT**	
DAY			
Ceiling	Visibility	Ceiling	Visibility
500 ft and above	As defined by the applicable airspace VFR minima	500 ft and above	As defined by the applicable airspace VFR minima
499 – 400 ft	1 000 m*	499 – 400 ft	2 000 m
399 – 300 ft	2 000 m	399 – 300 ft	3 000 m
NIGHT			
Cloud base	Visibility	Cloud base	Visibility
1 200 ft**	2 500 m	1 200 m**	3 000 m

* During the en-route phase visibility may be reduced to 800 m for short periods when in sight of land if the helicopter is manoeuvred at a speed that will give adequate opportunity to observe any obstacles in time to avoid a collision.

** During the en-route phase, cloud base may be reduced to 1 000 ft for short periods.

(b) The weather minima for the dispatch and en-route phase of a HEMS flight operated in performance class 3 shall be a cloud ceiling of 600 ft and a visibility of 1 500 m. Visibility may be reduced to 800 m for short periods when in sight of land if the helicopter is manoeuvred at a speed that will give adequate opportunity to observe any obstacle and avoid a collision.

GM1 SPA.HEMS.120 HEMS operating minima

REDUCED VISIBILITY

(a) In the rule the ability to reduce the visibility for short periods has been included. This will allow the commander to assess the risk of flying temporarily into reduced visibility against the need to provide emergency medical service, taking into account the advisory speeds included in Table 1. Since every situation is different it was not felt appropriate to define the short period in terms of absolute figures. It is for the commander to assess the aviation risk to third parties, the crew and the aircraft such that it is proportionate to the task, using the principles of GM1 SPA.HEMS.100(a).

(b) When flight with a visibility of less than 5 km is permitted, the forward visibility should not be less than the distance travelled by the helicopter in 30 seconds so as to allow adequate opportunity to see and avoid obstacles (see table below).

Table 1: Operating minima – reduced visibility

Visibility (m)	Advisory speed (kt)
800	50
1 500	100
2 000	120

SPA.HEMS.125 Performance requirements for HEMS operations

(a) Performance class 3 operations shall not be conducted over a hostile environment.

(b) Take-off and landing

(1) Helicopters conducting operations to/from a final approach and take-off area (FATO) at a hospital that is located in a congested hostile environment and that is used as a HEMS operating base shall be operated in accordance with performance class 1.

(2) Helicopters conducting operations to/from a FATO at a hospital that is located in a congested hostile environment and that is not a HEMS operating base shall be operated in accordance with performance class 1, except when the operator holds an approval in accordance with CAT.POL.H.225.

(3) Helicopters conducting operations to/from a HEMS operating site located in a hostile environment shall be operated in accordance with performance class 2 and be exempt from the approval required by CAT.POL.H.305 (a), provided compliance is shown with CAT.POL.H.305 (b)(2) and (b)(3).

(4) The HEMS operating site shall be big enough to provide adequate clearance from all obstructions. For night operations, the site shall be illuminated to enable the site and any obstructions to be identified.

GM1 SPA.HEMS.125(b)(3) Performance requirements for HEMS operations

PERFORMANCE CLASS 2 OPERATIONS AT A HEMS OPERATING SITE

As the risk profile at a HEMS operating site is already well known, operations without an assured safe forced landing capability do not need a separate approval and the requirements does not call for the additional risk assessment that is specified in CAT.POL.H.305 (b)(1).

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.125(b)(4) Performance requirements for HEMS operations

HEMS OPERATING SITE DIMENSIONS

(a) When selecting a HEMS operating site it should have a minimum dimension of at least 2 x D (the largest dimensions of the helicopter when the rotors are turning). For night operations, unsurveyed HEMS operating sites should have dimensions of at least 4 x D in length and 2 x D in width.

(b) For night operations, the illumination may be either from the ground or from the helicopter.

SPA.HEMS.130 Crew requirements

(a) Selection. The operator shall establish criteria for the selection of flight crew members for the HEMS task, taking previous experience into account.

(b) Experience. The minimum experience level for the commander conducting HEMS flights shall not be less than:

(1) either:

(i) 1 000 hours as pilot-in-command/commander of aircraft of which 500 hours are as pilot-in-command/commander on helicopters; or

(ii) 1 000 hours as co-pilot in HEMS operations of which 500 hours are as pilot-in-command under supervision and 100 hours pilot-in-command/commander of helicopters;

(2) 500 hours' operating experience in helicopters, gained in an operational environment similar to the intended operation; and

(3) for pilots engaged in night operations, 20 hours of VMC at night as pilot-in-command/commander.

(c) Operational training. Successful completion of operational training in accordance with the HEMS procedures contained in the operations manual.

(d) Recency. All pilots conducting HEMS operations shall have completed a minimum of 30 minutes' flight by sole reference to instruments in a helicopter or in an FSTD within the last 6 months.

(e) Crew composition

(1) Day flight. The minimum crew by day shall be one pilot and one HEMS technical crew member.

(i) This may be reduced to one pilot only when:

(A) at a HEMS operating site the commander is required to fetch additional medical supplies. In such case the HEMS technical crew member may be left to give assistance to ill or injured persons while the commander undertakes this flight;

(B) after arriving at the HEMS operating site, the installation of the stretcher precludes the HEMS technical crew member from occupying the front seat; or

(C) the medical passenger requires the assistance of the HEMS technical crew member in flight.

(ii) In the cases described in (i), the operational minima shall be as defined by the applicable airspace requirements; the HEMS operating minima contained in Table 1 of SPA.HEMS.120 shall not be used.

(iii) Only in the case described in (i)(A) may the commander land at a HEMS operating site without the technical crew member assisting from the front seat.

(2) Night flight. The minimum crew by night shall be:

(i) two pilots; or

(ii) one pilot and one HEMS technical crew member in specific geographical areas defined by the operator in the operations manual taking into account the following:

(A) adequate ground reference;

(B) flight following system for the duration of the HEMS mission;

(C) reliability of weather reporting facilities;

(D) HEMS minimum equipment list;

(E) continuity of a crew concept;

(F) minimum crew qualification, initial and recurrent training;

(G) operating procedures, including crew coordination;

(H) weather minima; and

(I) additional considerations due to specific local conditions.

(f) Crew training and checking

(1) Training and checking shall be conducted in accordance with a detailed syllabus approved by the competent authority and included in the operations manual.

(2) Crew members

(i) Crew training programmes shall: improve knowledge of the HEMS working environment and equipment; improve crew coordination; and include measures to minimise the risks associated with en-route transit in low visibility conditions, selection of HEMS operating sites and approach and departure profiles.

(ii) The measures referred to in (f)(2)(i) shall be assessed during:

(A) VMC day proficiency checks, or VMC night proficiency checks when night HEMS operations are undertaken by the operator; and

(B) line checks.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(b)(2) Crew requirements

EXPERIENCE

The minimum experience level for a commander conducting HEMS flights should take into account the geographical characteristics of the operation (sea, mountain, big cities with heavy traffic, etc.).

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(d) Crew requirements

RECENCY

This recency may be obtained in a visual flight rules (VFR) helicopter using vision limiting devices such as goggles or screens, or in an FSTD.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(e) Crew requirements

HEMS TECHNICAL CREW MEMBER

(a) When the crew is composed of one pilot and one HEMS technical crew member, the latter should be seated in the front seat (co-pilot seat) during the flight, so as to be able to carry out his/her primary task of assisting the commander in:

(1) collision avoidance;

(2) the selection of the landing site; and

(3) the detection of obstacles during approach and take-off phases.

(b) The commander may delegate other aviation tasks to the HEMS technical crew member, as necessary:

(1) assistance in navigation;

(2) assistance in radio communication/radio navigation means selection;

(3) reading of checklists; and

(4) monitoring of parameters.

(c) The commander may also delegate to the HEMS technical crew member tasks on the ground:

(1) assistance in preparing the helicopter and dedicated medical specialist equipment for subsequent HEMS departure; or

(2) assistance in the application of safety measures during ground operations with rotors turning (including: crowd control, embarking and disembarking of passengers, refuelling etc.).

(d) There may be exceptional circumstances when it is not possible for the HEMS technical crew member to carry out his/her primary task as defined under (a).

This is to be regarded as exceptional and is only to be conducted at the discretion of the commander, taking into account the dimensions and environment of the HEMS operating site.)

(e) When two pilots are carried, there is no requirement for a HEMS technical crew member, provided that the pilot monitoring performs the aviation tasks of a technical crew member.

GM1 SPA.HEMS.130(e)(2)(ii) Crew requirements

SPECIFIC GEOGRAPHICAL AREAS

In defining those specific geographical areas, the operator should take account of the cultural lighting and topography. In those areas where the cultural lighting an topography make it unlikely that the visual cues would degrade sufficiently to make flying of the aircraft problematical, the HEMS technical crew member is assumed to be able to sufficiently assist the pilot, since under such circumstances instrument and control monitoring would not be required. In those cases where instrument and control monitoring would be required the operations should be conducted with two pilots.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(e)(2)(ii)(B) Crew requirements

FLIGHT FOLLOWING SYSTEM

A flight following system is a system providing contact with the helicopter throughout its operational area.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(f)(1) Crew requirements

TRAINING AND CHECKING SYLLABUS

(a) The flight crew training syllabus should include the following items:

(1) meteorological training concentrating on the understanding and interpretation of available weather information;

(2) preparing the helicopter and specialist medical equipment for subsequent HEMS departure;

(3) practice of HEMS departures;

(4) the assessment from the air of the suitability of HEMS operating sites; and

(5) the medical effects air transport may have on the patient.

(b) The flight crew checking syllabus should include:

(1) proficiency checks, which should include landing and take-off profiles likely to be used at HEMS operating sites; and

(2) line checks, with special emphasis on the following:

(i) local area meteorology;

(ii) HEMS flight planning;

(iii) HEMS departures;

(iv) the selection from the air of HEMS operating sites;

(v) low level flight in poor weather; and

(vi) familiarity with established HEMS operating sites in the operator's local area register.

(c) HEMS technical crew members should be trained and checked in the following items:

(1) duties in the HEMS role;

(2) map reading, navigation aid principles and use;

(3) operation of radio equipment;

(4) use of on-board medical equipment;

(5) preparing the helicopter and specialist medical equipment for subsequent HEMS departure;

(6) instrument reading, warnings, use of normal and emergency checklists in assistance of the pilot as required;

(7) basic understanding of the helicopter type in terms of location and design of normal and emergency systems and equipment;

(8) crew coordination;

(9) practice of response to HEMS call out;

(10) conducting refuelling and rotors running refuelling;

(11) HEMS operating site selection and use;

(12) techniques for handling patients, the medical consequences of air transport and some knowledge of hospital casualty reception;

(13) marshalling signals;

(14) underslung load operations as appropriate;

(15) winch operations as appropriate;

(16) the dangers to self and others of rotor running helicopters including loading of patients; and

(17) the use of the helicopter inter-communications system.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.130(f)(2)(ii)(B) Crew requirements

LINE CHECKS

Where due to the size, the configuration, or the performance of the helicopter, the line check cannot be conducted on an operational flight, it may be conducted on a specially arranged representative flight. This flight may be immediately adjacent to, but not simultaneous with, one of the biannual proficiency checks.

SPA.HEMS.135 HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing

(a) Medical passenger. Prior to any HEMS flight, or series of flights, medical passengers shall have been briefed to ensure that they are familiar with the HEMS working environment and equipment, can operate on-board medical and emergency equipment and can take part in normal and emergency entry and exit procedures.

(b) Ground emergency service personnel. The operator shall take all reasonable measures to ensure that ground emergency service personnel are familiar with the HEMS working environment and equipment and the risks associated with ground operations at a HEMS operating site.

(c) Medical patient. Notwithstanding CAT.OP.MPA.170, a briefing shall only be conducted if the medical condition makes this practicable.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.135(a) HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing

HEMS MEDICAL PASSENGER BRIEFING

The briefing should ensure that the medical passenger understands his/her role in the operation, which includes:

(a) familiarisation with the helicopter type(s) operated;

(b) entry and exit under normal and emergency conditions both for self and patients;

(c) use of the relevant on-board specialist medical equipment;

(d) the need for the commander's approval prior to use of specialised equipment;

(e) method of supervision of other medical staff;

(f) the use of helicopter inter-communication systems; and

(g) location and use of on board fire extinguishers.

AMC1.1 SPA.HEMS.135(a) HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing

HEMS MEDICAL PASSENGER BRIEFING

Another means of complying with the rule as compared to that contained in AMC1-SPA.HEMS.135(a) is to make use of a training programme as mentioned in AMC1.1 CAT.OP.MPA.170.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.135(b) HEMS medical passenger and other personnel briefing

GROUND EMERGENCY SERVICE PERSONNEL

(a) The task of training large numbers of emergency service personnel is formidable. Wherever possible, helicopter operators should afford every assistance to those persons responsible for training emergency service personnel in HEMS support. This can be achieved by various means, such as, but not limited to, the production of flyers, publication of relevant information on the operator's web site and provision of extracts from the operations manual.

(b) The elements that should be covered include:

    (1) two-way radio communication procedures with helicopters;

    (2) the selection of suitable HEMS operating sites for HEMS flights;

    (3) the physical danger areas of helicopters;

    (4) crowd control in respect of helicopter operations; and

    (5) the evacuation of helicopter occupants following an on-site helicopter accident.

SPA.HEMS.140 Information and documentation

(a) The operator shall ensure that, as part of its risk analysis and management process, risks associated with the HEMS environment are minimised by specifying in the operations manual: selection, composition and training of crews; levels of equipment and dispatch criteria; and operating procedures and minima, such that normal and likely abnormal operations are described and adequately mitigated.

(b) Relevant extracts from the operations manual shall be made available to the organisation for which the HEMS is being provided.

AMC1 SPA.HEMS.140 Information and documentation

OPERATIONS MANUAL

The operations manual should include:

(a) the use of portable equipment on board;

(b) guidance on take-off and landing procedures at previously unsurveyed HEMS operating sites;

(c) the final reserve fuel, in accordance with SPA.HEMS.150;

(d) operating minima;

(e) recommended routes for regular flights to surveyed sites, including the minimum flight altitude;

(f) guidance for the selection of the HEMS operating site in case of a flight to an unsurveyed site;

(g) the safety altitude for the area overflown; and

(h) procedures to be followed in case of inadvertent entry into cloud.

SPA.HEMS.145 HEMS operating base facilities

(a) If crew members are required to be on standby with a reaction time of less than 45 minutes, dedicated suitable accommodation shall be provided close to each operating base.

(b) At each operating base the pilots shall be provided with facilities for obtaining current and forecast weather information and shall be provided with satisfactory communications with the appropriate air traffic services (ATS) unit. Adequate facilities shall be available for the planning of all tasks.

SPA.HEMS.150 Fuel supply

(a) When the HEMS mission is conducted under VFR within a local and defined geographical area, standard fuel planning can be employed provided the operator establishes final reserve fuel to ensure that, on completion of the mission the fuel remaining is not less than an amount of fuel sufficient for:

(1) 30 minutes of flying time at normal cruising conditions; or

(2) when operating within an area providing continuous and suitable precautionary landing sites, 20 minutes of flying time at normal cruising speed.

SPA.HEMS.155 Refuelling with passengers embarking, on board or disembarking

When the commander considers refuelling with passengers on board to be necessary, it can be undertaken either rotors stopped or rotors turning provided the following requirements are met:

(a) door(s) on the refuelling side of the helicopter shall remain closed;

(b) door(s) on the non-refuelling side of the helicopter shall remain open, weather permitting;

(c) fire fighting facilities of the appropriate scale shall be positioned so as to be immediately available in the event of a fire; and

(d) sufficient personnel shall be immediately available to move patients clear of the helicopter in the event of a fire.